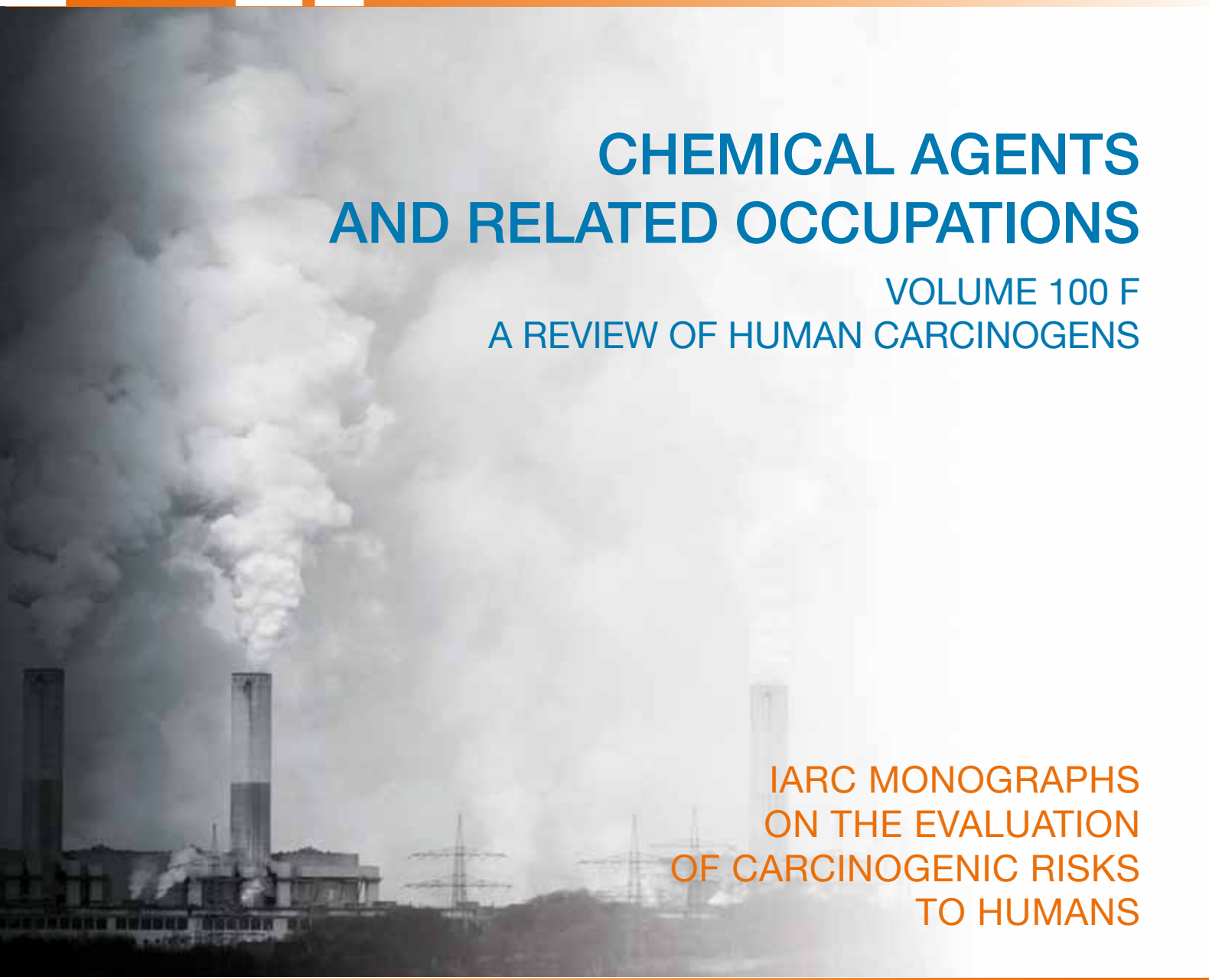
IARC MONOGRAPHS



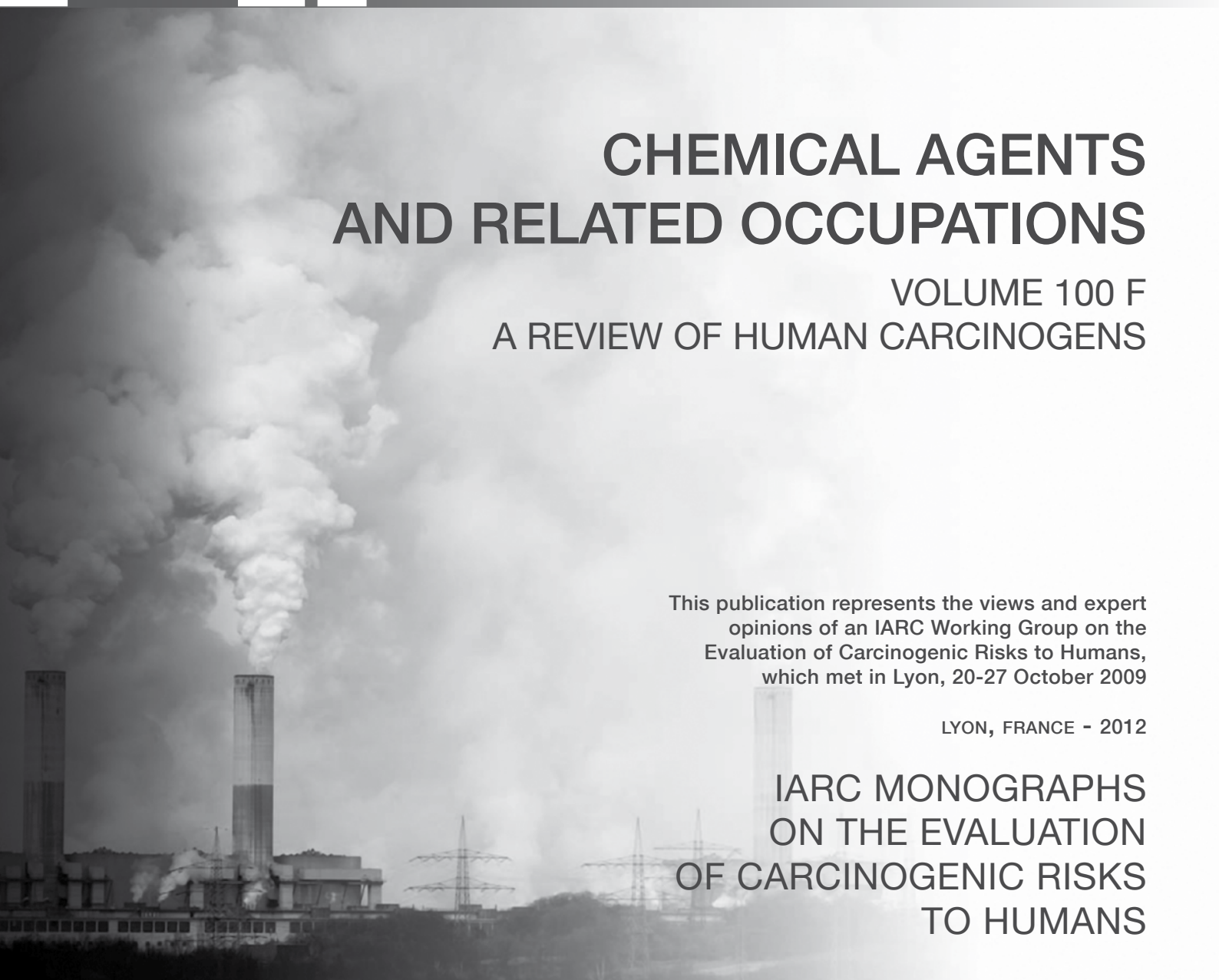
CHEMICAL AGENTS AND RELATED OCCUPATIONS

VOLUME 100 F
A REVIEW OF HUMAN CARCINOGENS

IARC MONOGRAPHS
ON THE EVALUATION
OF CARCINOGENIC RISKS
TO HUMANS

International Agency for Research on Cancer
World Health Organization

IARC MONOGRAPHS



CHEMICAL AGENTS AND RELATED OCCUPATIONS

VOLUME 100 F
A REVIEW OF HUMAN CARCINOGENS

This publication represents the views and expert opinions of an IARC Working Group on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, which met in Lyon, 20-27 October 2009

LYON, FRANCE - 2012

IARC MONOGRAPHS ON THE EVALUATION OF CARCINOGENIC RISKS TO HUMANS

International Agency for Research on Cancer
World Health Organization

IARC MONOGRAPHS

In 1969, the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) initiated a programme on the evaluation of the carcinogenic risk of chemicals to humans involving the production of critically evaluated monographs on individual chemicals. The programme was subsequently expanded to include evaluations of carcinogenic risks associated with exposures to complex mixtures, lifestyle factors and biological and physical agents, as well as those in specific occupations. The objective of the programme is to elaborate and publish in the form of monographs critical reviews of data on carcinogenicity for agents to which humans are known to be exposed and on specific exposure situations; to evaluate these data in terms of human risk with the help of international working groups of experts in chemical carcinogenesis and related fields; and to indicate where additional research efforts are needed. The lists of IARC evaluations are regularly updated and are available on the Internet at http://monographs.iarc.fr/.

This programme has been supported since 1982 by Cooperative Agreement U01 CA33193 with the United States National Cancer Institute, Department of Health and Human Services. Additional support has been provided since 1986 by the Health, Safety and Hygiene at Work Unit of the European Commission Directorate-General for Employment, Social Affairs and Equal Opportunities, and since 1992 by the United States National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences, Department of Health and Human Services. The contents of this volume are solely the responsibility of the Working Group and do not necessarily represent the official views of the U.S. National Cancer Institute, the U.S. National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences, the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or the European Commission Directorate-General for Employment, Social Affairs and Equal Opportunities.

This volume was made possible, in part, through Cooperative Agreement CR 834012 with the United States Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development. The contents of this volume do not necessarily reflect the views or policies of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer,
150 cours Albert Thomas, 69372 Lyon Cedex 08, France

Distributed by WHO Press, World Health Organization, 20 Avenue Appia, 1211 Geneva 27, Switzerland
(tel.: +41 22 791 3264; fax: +41 22 791 4857; e-mail: bookorders@who.int).

IARC Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A review of human carcinogens. Part F: Chemical agents and related occupations / IARC Working Group on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans (2009: Lyon, France)

(IARC monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans ; v. 100F)

1. Carcinogens 2. Occupational Exposure – adverse effects 3. Neoplasms – etiology
I. IARC Working Group on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans
II. Series

ISBN 978 92 832 1323 9 (NLM Classification: W1)
ISSN 1017-1606

PRINTED IN FRANCE

Lorenzo Tomatis (1929-2007)
Founder of the *IARC Monographs* Programme

Lorenzo Tomatis, MD, with other colleagues knowledgeable in primary prevention and environmental carcinogenesis, perceived in the 1960s the growing need to objectively evaluate carcinogenic risks by international groups of experts in chemical carcinogenesis. His vision and determination to provide a reliable source of knowledge and information on environmental and occupational causes of cancer led to his creating the *IARC Monographs* Programme for evaluating cancer risks to humans from exposures to chemicals. The first meeting, held in Geneva in December 1971, resulted in Volume 1 of the IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man [1972], a series known affectionately since as the "orange books". As a champion of chemical carcinogenesis bioassays, Tomatis defined and promoted the applicability and utility of experimental animal findings for identifying carcinogens and for preventing cancers in humans, especially in workers and children, and to eliminate inequalities in judging cancer risks between industrialized and developing countries. Tomatis' foresight, guidance, leadership, and staunch belief in primary prevention continued to influence the *IARC Monographs* as they expanded to encompass personal habits, as well as physical and biological agents. Lorenzo Tomatis had a distinguished career at the Agency, arriving in 1967 and heading the Unit of Chemical Carcinogenesis, before being Director from 1982 to 1993.

Volume 100 of the *IARC Monographs* Series is respectfully dedicated to him.

(photo: Roland Dray)

CONTENTS

NOTE TO THE READER **1**

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS **3**

PREAMBLE **9**
A. GENERAL PRINCIPLES AND PROCEDURES 9
1. Background 9
2. Objective and scope 10
3. Selection of agents for review 11
4. Data for the *Monographs* 11
5. Meeting participants 12
6. Working procedures 13
B. SCIENTIFIC REVIEW AND EVALUATION 14
1. Exposure data 15
2. Studies of cancer in humans 16
3. Studies of cancer in experimental animals 20
4. Mechanistic and other relevant data 23
5. Summary 26
6. Evaluation and rationale 27
References 31

GENERAL REMARKS **33**

4-AMINOBIPHENYL **41**
1. Exposure Data 41
1.1 Identification of the agent 41
1.2 Uses 41
1.3 Human exposure 41
2. Cancer in Humans 42
2.1 Descriptive studies 42
2.2 Cohort studies 42
2.3 Synthesis 43
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 43
4. Other Relevant Data 43

4.1 Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility. . . . 43
4.2 4-Aminobiphenyl 49
5. Evaluation 50
References 50

BENZIDINE 53
1. Exposure Data 53
1.1 Identification of the agents 53
1.2 Uses 53
1.3 Human exposure 54
2. Cancer in Humans 55
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 55
4. Other Relevant Data 60
5. Evaluation 61
References 61

DYES METABOLIZED TO BENZIDINE 65
1. Exposure Data 65
1.1 Identification of the agents 65
1.2 Uses 66
1.3 Human exposure 66
2. Cancer in Humans 68
2.1 Cohort Studies 68
2.2 Case–control studies 68
2.3 Synthesis 68
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 68
4. Other Relevant Data 71
5. Evaluation 71
References 72

4,4′-METHYLENEBIS(2-CHLOROBENZENAMINE) 73
1. Exposure Data 73
1.1 Identification of the agent 73
1.2 Uses 73
1.3 Human exposure 73
2. Cancer in Humans 75
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 75
4. Other Relevant Data 79
5. Evaluation 80
References 80

2-NAPHTHYLAMINE 83
1. Exposure Data 83
1.1 Identification of the agent 83
1.2 Uses 83
1.3 Human exposure 84
2. Cancer in Humans 85

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 86
4. Other Relevant Data 86
5. Evaluation 90
References 90

***ortho*-TOLUIDINE 93**
1. Exposure Data 93
   1.1 Identification of the agent 93
   1.2 Uses 93
   1.3 Human exposure 93
2. Cancer in Humans 94
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 95
4. Other Relevant Data 98
5. Evaluation 98
References 99

AURAMINE AND AURAMINE PRODUCTION 101
1. Exposure Data 101
   1.1 Identification of the agent 101
   1.2 Manufacture and use 101
   1.3 Human exposure 102
2. Cancer in Humans 102
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 102
4. Other Relevant Data 102
5. Evaluation 104
References 104

MAGENTA AND MAGENTA PRODUCTION 105
1. Exposure Data 105
   1.1 Identification of the agents 105
   1.2 Manufacturing processes 106
   1.3 Human exposure 107
2. Cancer in Humans 107
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 107
   3.1 Magenta 107
   3.2 CI Basic Red 9 109
4. Other Relevant Data 109
5. Evaluation 109
References 109

BENZO[*a*]PYRENE 111
1. Exposure Data 111
   1.1 Identification of the agent 111
   1.2 Occurrence and exposure 111
2. Cancer in Humans 112
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 112
   3.1 Skin application 113

3.2 Subcutaneous injection....113
3.3 Oral administration....113
3.4 Intraperitoneal injection....130
3.5 Inhalation....130
3.6 Intrapulmonary injection....130
3.7 Intratracheal administration....130
3.8 Buccal pouch application....131
3.9 Subcutaneous tracheal grafts transplantation....131
3.10 Intramammilary administration....131
3.11 Intracolonic instillation....131
3.12 Intravaginal application....131
3.13 Intrafetal injection....131
4. Other Relevant Data....131
4.1 Metabolism....131
4.2 Diolepoxide mechanism....132
4.3 Radical-cation mechanism....133
4.4 Other activation mechanisms of benzo[*a*]pyrene....133
4.5 Human exposure to PAH-rich mixtures....135
4.6 Synthesis....137
5. Evaluation....137
References....138

COAL GASIFICATION....145
1. Exposure Data....145
2. Cancer in Humans....146
2.1 Cohort studies of coal-gasification workers....146
2.2 Synthesis....146
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals....146
4. Other Relevant Data....149
4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazards from occupational exposures during coal gasification....149
4.2 Synthesis....150
5. Evaluation....150
References....150

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES DURING COAL-TAR DISTILLATION....153
1. Exposure Data....153
1.1 Manufacturing process....153
1.2 Occupational exposure....155
2. Cancer in Humans....155
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals....155
4. Other Relevant Data....156
4.1 Mechanistic considerations relevant to the carcinogenic hazards of exposures during coal-tar distillation....156
4.2 Synthesis....158
5. Evaluation....158
References....159

COAL-TAR PITCH 161
1. Exposure Data 161
   1.1 Identification of the agent 161
   1.2 Human exposure 161
2. Cancer in Humans 163
   2.1 Cohort Studies 164
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 164
4. Other Relevant Data 164
   4.1 Mechanistic considerations relevant to the cancer hazards from exposure during roofing and paving with coal-tar pitch 164
   4.2 Synthesis 165
5. Evaluation 165

References 165

COKE PRODUCTION 167
1. Exposure Data 167
   1.1 Production process 167
   1.2 Human exposure 169
2. Cancer in Humans 169
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 170
   3.1 Skin application 170
   3.2 Inhalation 171
4. Other Relevant Data 172
   4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazard from occupational exposures during coke production 172
   4.2 Synthesis 175
5. Evaluation 175

References 175

MINERAL OILS, UNTREATED OR MILDLY TREATED 179
1. Exposure Data 179
   1.1 Identification of the agent 179
   1.2 Uses 180
   1.3 Human exposure 180
2. Cancer in Humans 181
   2.1 Introduction 181
   2.2 Cancer of the skin/scrotum 181
   2.3 Other cancers 182
   2.4 Synthesis 183
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 183
   3.1 Earlier studies 184
   3.2 Studies published since the previous evaluation 191
4. Other relevant data 191
   4.1 Humans 191
   4.2 Experimental systems 192
5. Evaluation 193

References 193

SHALE OILS 197
1. Exposure Data 197
   1.1 Identification of the agent 197
   1.2 Uses 197
   1.3 Human exposure 198
2. Cancer in Humans 198
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 199
   3.1 Raw and spent oil-shale 199
   3.2 Crude shale oils from low-temperature retorting 202
   3.3 Crude shale oils from high-temperature retorting 202
   3.4 Shale-oil fractions 202
   3.5 Shale-oil distillates, blends and other commercial products 203
   3.6 Synthesis 203
4. Other Relevant Data 203
   4.1 Humans 203
   4.2 Experimental systems 204
   4.3 Synthesis 204
5. Evaluation 204
References 205

SOOT, AS FOUND IN OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE OF CHIMNEY SWEEPS 209
1. Exposure Data 209
2. Cancer in Humans 211
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 212
4. Other Relevant Data 212
   4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazards from occupational exposure as a chimney sweep 212
   4.2 Synthesis 213
5. Evaluation 213
References 214

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES DURING ALUMINIUM PRODUCTION 215
1. Exposure Data 215
   1.1 Natural occurrence 215
   1.2 Manufacturing processes 215
   1.3 Human exposure 217
2. Cancer in Humans 217
   2.1 Cancer of the urinary bladder 219
   2.3 Synthesis 219
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 219
4. Other Relevant Data 220
   4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazard from occupational exposures during aluminium production 220
   4.2 Synthesis 221
5. Evaluation 221
References 222

AFLATOXINS **225**
1. Exposure Data 225
1.1 Identification of the agents 225
1.2 Sources and uses 226
1.3 Human exposure 227
2. Cancer in Humans 229
2.1 Hepatocellular carcinoma 229
2.2 Synthesis 230
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 230
3.1 Previous evaluations 230
3.2 Aflatoxin B1 235
3.3 Aflatoxin G1 235
3.4 Synthesis 235
4. Other Relevant Data 236
4.1 Toxicokinetics 236
4.2 Metabolism 237
4.3 Aflatoxin–albumin adducts 239
4.4 Aflatoxin–DNA adducts 240
4.5 Mutagenicity 241
4.6 Molecular lesions 241
4.7 Synthesis 243
5. Evaluation 243
References 244

BENZENE **249**
1. Exposure Data 249
1.1 Identification of the agent 249
1.2 Uses 249
1.3 Human exposure 250
2. Cancer in Humans 257
2.1 Leukemias and lymphomas 258
2.2 Cancer of the lung 261
2.3 Cancer of the kidney 262
2.4 Other cancers 262
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 262
4. Other Relevant Data 276
4.1 Genetic and related effects 276
4.2 Leukaemogenic potential of benzene 276
5. Evaluation 285
References 285

BIS(CHLOROMETHYL) ETHER AND CHLOROMETHYL METHYL ETHER **295**
1. Exposure Data 295
1.1 Identification of the agents 295
1.2 Uses 295
1.3 Human exposure 296

2. Cancer in Humans 296
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 297
3.1 BCME 297
3.2 CMME 305
4. Other Relevant Data 305
4.1 Toxicokinetics and toxicity 305
4.2 Genetic and related effects 305
4.3 Mechanistic considerations 306
4.4 Synthesis 306
5. Evaluation 306
References 306

1,3-BUTADIENE 309
1. Exposure Data 309
1.1 Identification of the agent 309
1.2 Use 309
1.3 Human exposure 309
2. Cancer in Humans 311
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 313
3.1 1,3-Butadiene 313
3.2 Diepoxybutane 313
4. Other Relevant Data 327
4.1 Metabolism of butadiene 327
4.2 Haemoglobin adducts 329
4.3 DNA adducts 330
4.4 Mutagenicity of butadiene and butadiene metabolites 331
4.5 Synthesis 332
5. Evaluation 333
References 333

2,3,7,8-TETRACHLORODIBENZO-*para*-DIOXIN, 2,3,4,7,8-PENTACHLORODIBENZOFURAN, AND 3,3',4,4',5-PENTACHLOROBIPHENYL 339
1. Exposure Data 339
1.1 Identification of the agents 339
1.2 Occurrence and use 340
1.3 Human exposure 341
2. Cancer in Humans 344
2.1 Description of the most informative studies 345
2.2 All cancers combined 347
2.3 Cancer of the lung 347
2.4 Soft-tissue sarcoma 348
2.5 Non-Hodgkin lymphoma 348
2.6 Other cancers 348
2.7 Synthesis 348
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 349
3.1 *2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo*-para-*dioxin* 349

3.2 Dioxin-like compounds 365
4. Other Relevant Data 365
4.1 AhR activation 365
4.2 Mechanisms of carcinogenicity 366
4.3 Dioxin-like compounds 367
4.4 Synthesis 369
5. Evaluation 370
References 371

ETHYLENE OXIDE 379
1. Exposure Data 379
1.1 Identification of the agent 379
1.2 Uses 379
1.3 Human exposure 380
2. Cancer in Humans 382
2.1 Lympho-haematopoietic malignancies 382
2.2 Cancer of the breast 384
2.3 Other cancers 384
2.4 Synthesis 384
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 384
3.1 Inhalation exposure 384
3.2 Other routes of exposure 388
4. Other Relevant Data 388
4.1 Absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion 388
4.2 Genetic and related effects 389
5. Evaluation 395
References 396

FORMALDEHYDE 401
1 Exposure Data 401
1.1 Identification of the agent 401
1.2 Use 401
1.3 Occurrence and exposure 402
2. Cancer in Humans 404
2.1 Cancer of the nasopharynx 404
2.2 Leukaemia 406
2.3 Cancer of the nasal sinuses 408
2.4 Other cancers 409
2.5 Synthesis 409
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 410
3.1 Inhalation 410
3.2 Oral administration (drinking-water) 410
3.3 Skin application 410
4. Other Relevant Data 417
4.1 Absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion 417
4.2 Toxic effects 419

4.3 Genetic and related effects....419
4.4 Mechanistic considerations....427
4.5 Synthesis....430
5. Evaluation....430
References....430

SULFUR MUSTARD....437
1. Exposure Data....437
1.1 Identification of the agent....437
1.2 Uses....437
1.3 Human exposure....438
2. Cancer in Humans....438
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals....440
4. Other Relevant Data....442
4.1 Absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion....442
4.2 Genetic and related effects....443
4.3 Synthesis....446
5. Evaluation....446
References....446

VINYL CHLORIDE....451
1. Exposure Data....451
1.1 Identification of the agent....451
1.2 Uses....451
1.3 Human exposure....451
2. Cancer in Humans....454
2.1 Angiosarcoma of the liver....455
2.2 Hepatocellular carcinoma....455
2.3 Cancer of the lung....456
2.4 Malignant neoplasms of connective and soft tissue....456
2.5 Other cancers....457
2.6 Synthesis....457
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals....457
3.1 Inhalation exposure....458
3.2 Oral administration....458
3.3 Subcutaneous and intraperitoneal injection....458
3.4 Transplacental administration and perinatal exposure....458
3.5 Carcinogenicity of metabolites....467
4. Other Relevant Data....467
4.1 Kinetics and metabolism – studies in humans....467
4.2 Kinetics and metabolism – studies in animals....469
4.3 Reaction with cellular macromolecules....470
4.4 Synthesis....472
5. Evaluation....473
References....473

ISOPROPYL ALCOHOL MANUFACTURE BY THE STRONG-ACID PROCESS 479
1. Exposure Data 479
   1.1 Manufacturing processes 479
   1.2 Human exposure 479
2. Cancer in Humans 480
   2.1 Cohort studies 480
   2.2 Case–Control Studies 481
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 481
4. Other Relevant Data 481
   4.1 Absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion 481
   4.2 Genetic and related effects 483
   4.3 Toxicity relevant to carcinogenicity 483
   4.4 Synthesis 483
5. Evaluation 484
References 484

MISTS FROM STRONG INORGANIC ACIDS 487
1. Exposure Data 487
   1.1 Manufacturing processes 487
   1.2 Human exposure 487
2. Cancer in Humans 489
   2.1 Cohort studies 489
   2.2 Case–control studies 491
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 493
4. Other Relevant Data 493
5. Evaluation 493
References 493

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES DURING IRON AND STEEL FOUNDING 497
1. Exposure Data 497
   1.1 Manufacturing process 497
   1.2 Human exposures 497
2. Cancer in Humans 504
   2.1 Cohort studies 504
   2.2 Case–control studies 504
   2.3 Synthesis 505
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 505
4. Other Relevant Data 505
   4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazards from occupational exposures during iron and steel founding 505
   4.2 Synthesis 505
5. Evaluation 505
References 506

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE AS A PAINTER 509
1. Exposure Data 509
   1.1 Description of paint products 509
   1.2 Human exposure 518
2. Cancer in Humans 519
   2.1 Cancer of the lung 519
   2.2 Mesothelioma 521
   2.3 Cancer of the urinary bladder 521
   2.4 Childhood leukaemia 522
   2.5 Lympho-haematopoietic cancers 523
   2.6 Other cancers 523
   2.7 Synthesis 523
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 524
4. Other Relevant Data 524
   4.1 Toxicokinetics and metabolism 524
   4.2 Genetics and related effects 526
   4.3 Susceptible populations 530
   4.4 Synthesis 531
5. Evaluation 531
References 531

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES IN THE RUBBER-MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY 541
1. Exposure Data 541
   1.1 Manufacturing process 541
   1.2 Chemicals used in the rubber-production process 542
   1.3 Human exposure 543
2. Cancer in Humans 546
   2.1 Cancer of the bladder 546
   2.2 Leukaemia 547
   2.3 Malignant lymphoma including multiple myeloma and other lymphopoietic cancers 548
   2.4 Cancer of the lung 549
   2.5 Cancer of the larynx 550
   2.6 Cancer of the stomach 550
   2.7 Cancer of the oesophagus 551
   2.8 Cancer of the prostate 552
   2.9 Other cancers 552
3. Cancer in Experimental Animals 552
4. Other Relevant Data 552
5. Evaluation 559
References 559

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS 563

CUMULATIVE CROSS INDEX TO *IARC MONOGRAPHS* 567

NOTE TO THE READER

The term 'carcinogenic risk' in the *IARC Monographs* series is taken to mean that an agent is capable of causing cancer. The *Monographs* evaluate cancer hazards, despite the historical presence of the word 'risks' in the title.

Inclusion of an agent in the *Monographs* does not imply that it is a carcinogen, only that the published data have been examined. Equally, the fact that an agent has not yet been evaluated in a *Monograph* does not mean that it is not carcinogenic. Similarly, identification of cancer sites with *sufficient evidence* or *limited evidence* in humans should not be viewed as precluding the possibility that an agent may cause cancer at other sites.

The evaluations of carcinogenic risk are made by international working groups of independent scientists and are qualitative in nature. No recommendation is given for regulation or legislation.

Anyone who is aware of published data that may alter the evaluation of the carcinogenic risk of an agent to humans is encouraged to make this information available to the Section of IARC Monographs, International Agency for Research on Cancer, 150 cours Albert Thomas, 69372 Lyon Cedex 08, France, in order that the agent may be considered for re-evaluation by a future Working Group.

Although every effort is made to prepare the *Monographs* as accurately as possible, mistakes may occur. Readers are requested to communicate any errors to the Section of IARC Monographs, so that corrections can be reported in future volumes.

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

Members[1]

J. Carl Barrett (unable to attend)

Novartis Institutes for BioMedical Research, Inc.
Oncology Biomarker Development
Cambridge, MA 02139
USA

Laura Beane-Freeman

Occupational Epidemiology Branch
National Cancer Institute
Rockville, MD 20852
USA

James A. Bond[2]

Chemico-Biological Interactions
Santa Fe, NM 87506
USA

Tania Carreón-Valencia

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
Cincinnati, OH 45226
USA

[1] Working Group Members and Invited Specialists serve in their individual capacities as scientists and not as representatives of their government or any organization with which they are affiliated. Affiliations are provided for identification purposes only. Invited specialists are marked by an asterisk.

Each participant was asked to disclose pertinent research, employment, and financial interests. Current financial interests and research and employment interests during the past 3 years or anticipated in the future are identified here. Minor pertinent interests are not listed and include stock valued at no more than US$10 000 overall, grants that provide no more than 5% of the research budget of the expert's organization and that do not support the expert's research or position, and consulting or speaking on matters not before a court or government agency that does not exceed 2% of total professional time or compensation. All grants that support the expert's research or position and all consulting or speaking on behalf of an interested party on matters before a court or government agency are listed as significant pertinent interests.

[2] Dr Bond reviewed a draft report (on a chemical that is not being reviewed at this meeting) for the American Petroleum Institute, a trade association that represents corporations that produce and distribute some of the chemicals under review.

Michael R. Elwell

NSA Toxicology/Pathology Science
Covance Laboratories, Inc.
Vienna, VA 22182
USA

Marlin D. Friesen

Department of Environmental Health Sciences
Bloomberg School of Public Health
Johns Hopkins University
Baltimore, MD 21205
USA

Mostafa Ghanei

Research Center of Chemical Injuries
Baqiyatallah University of Medical Sciences
Tehran, 14359151371
Iran

Bernard D. Goldstein[3]

Department of Environmental and Occupational Health
University of Pittsburgh
Pittsburgh, PA 15261
USA

John D. Groopman[4]

Department of Environmental Health Sciences
Johns Hopkins University
Bloomberg School of Public Health
Baltimore MD 21205
USA

Per Gustavsson

Institute of Environmental Medicine
Karolinska Institutet
171 76 Stockholm
Sweden

Richard B. Hayes

Division of Epidemiology
New York University Langone Medical Center
New York University Cancer Institute
New York, NY 10016
USA

Ronald A. Herbert

Pathology Support Group
Cellular and Molecular Pathology Branch
National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709
USA

[3] Dr Goldstein serves as an expert witness in court cases involving benzene. Support for one position in a dispute generally poses a conflicting interest, however, Dr Goldstein lists similar numbers of cases on behalf of plaintiffs and corporate defendants, and for this reason IARC exceptionally regards this activity as not warranting a limitation on participation. Dr Goldstein also consulted with an insurance company to estimate the number of worker disability cases that will result from the World Trade Center attack.

[4] Dr Groopman served on an advisory board for VICAM, which makes test kits for aflatoxins.

Charles William Jameson (retired)[5]

National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences
National Institutes of Health
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709
USA

Manolis Kogevinas

Centre for Research in Environmental Epidemiology
Municipal Institute of Medical Research
Barcelona 08003
Spain

Hans Kromhout

Environmental Epidemiology Division
Institute for Risk Assessment Sciences
Utrecht University
3508 TD Utrecht
The Netherlands

Ronald Melnick

Ron Melnick Consulting, LLC
Chapel Hill, NC 27514
USA

Stephen Nesnow

Environmental Carcinogenesis Division
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Research Triangle Park, NC 27711
USA

Christopher J. Portier

Office of Risk Assessment Research
National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709
USA

Nathaniel Rothman

Occupational and Environmental Epidemiology Branch
Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics
National Cancer Institute
Rockville, MD 20852
USA

Avima Ruder

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
Cincinnati, OH 45226
USA

David A. Savitz[6]

Disease Prevention and Public Health Institute
Mount Sinai School of Medicine
New York, NY 10029
USA

Martyn T. Smith (attended by teleconference)

Division of Environmental Health Sciences
School of Public Health
University of California
Berkeley, California 94720
USA

[5] Dr Jameson has retired from and continues to consult for NIEHS/NTP.
[6] Until 2006 Dr Savitz served as a consultant for Alcoa Corp.

Mark A. Toraason

Division of Applied Research and Technology
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
Cincinnati, OH 45226
USA

Harri Vainio

Finnish Institute of Occupational Health
00250 Helsinki
Finland

Representatives

Danielle DeVoney

National Center for Environmental Assessment
US Environmental Protection Agency
Washington, DC 20460
USA

Alicia Huici-Montagud

European Commission
DG for Employment, Social Affairs and Equal Opportunities
2557 Gasperich
Luxembourg

Elodie Pasquier

French Agency for Environmental and Occupational Health Safety (AFSSET)
94701 Maisons-Alfort
France

Observers

Michael G. Bird[7]

Toxicology & Environmental Sciences Division
ExxonMobil Biomedical Sciences, Inc.
Annandale, New Jersey 08801
USA

Angelo Bracco

European Tyre & Rubber Manufacturer's Association
1210 Brussels
Belgium

James J. Collins[8]

Dow Chemical Company
Midland, Michigan 48674
USA

Paolo Crosignani[9]

National Cancer Institute
20133 Milan
Italy

Stefan Gabriel

BGIA – Institute for Occupational Health and Safety of the German Social Accident Insurance
53757 Sankt Augustin
Germany

[7] Observer for Exxonmobil Corp, USA. Dr Bird's employer, ExxonMobil, produces several agents under review, including benzene, butadiene, isopropyl alcohol, acid mists containing sulfuric acid, mineral and shale oils, and benzo[*a*]pyrene as a product component.
[8] Observer for the Formaldehyde Council, USA.
[9] Observer for International Society of Doctors for the Environment, Switzerland.

Heinz-Peter Gelbke[10]

67346 Speyer
Germany

Peter F. Infante[11]

Peter F. Infante Consulting, L.L.C.
Falls Church, Virginia 22046
USA

Robert Jeffrey Lewis[12]

ExxonMobil Biomedical Sciences, Inc.
Epidemiology & Health Surveillance Section
Annandale, NJ 08801
USA

Kenneth A. Mundt[13]

ENVIRON International Corporation
Amherst, MA 01002
USA

Gerard Swaen[14]

Epidemiology Health Services
The Dow Chemical Company
4530 AK Terneuzen
The Netherlands

IARC Secretariat

Robert Baan (*Responsible Officer*)
Lamia Benbrahim-Tallaa (*Rapporteur, Mechanistic and Other Relevant Data*)
Véronique Bouvard (*Rapporteur, Mechanistic and Other Relevant Data*)
Rafael Carel (*Visiting Scientist*)
Vincent Cogliano (*Head of Programme*)
Fatiha El Ghissassi (*Rapporteur, Mechanistic and Other Relevant Data*)
Crystal Freeman (*Rapporteur, Cancer in Humans*)
Laurent Galichet (*Editor*)
Yann Grosse (*Rapporteur, Cancer in Experimental Animals*)
Neela Guha (*Rapporteur, Cancer in Humans*)
Hind Hafsi
Zdenko Herceg
Clarisse Hery
Béatrice Lauby-Secretan (*Rapporteur, Cancer in Experimental Animals*)
Ann Olsson
Chiara Scoccianti
Kurt Straif (*Rapporteur, Cancer in Humans*)

[10] Observer for the European Chemical Industry Council CEFIC, Belgium. Dr Gelbke serves as a consultant for FormaCare, the formaldehyde sector group of the European Chemical Industry Council (CEFIC) (Belgium).
[11] Private consultant. Dr Infante serves as an expert witness for plaintiffs in litigation involving benzene and vinyl chloride.
[12] Observer for the International Institute of Synthetic Rubber Producers, USA. Dr Lewis's employer, ExxonMobil, produces several agents under review, including benzene, butadiene, isopropyl alcohol, acid mists containing sulfuric acid, mineral and shale oils, and benzo[*a*]pyrene as a product component.
[13] Observer for the International Paint and Printing Ink Council, USA.
[14] Observer for the American Chemistry Council, USA; the American Petroleum Institute, USA; CONCAWE, Belgium; and ECETOC, Belgium. In addition to employment with The Dow Chemical Company, Dr Swaen received funding for an epidemiologic study on ethylene oxide from the American Chemistry Council.

Pre-Meeting Scientific Assistance

Ted Junghans
Bethesda, MD
USA

Steve Olin
Washington, DC
USA

Administrative Assistance

Sandrine Egraz
Anne-Sophie Hameau
Michel Javin
Brigitte Kajo
Helene Lorenzen-Augros
Karine Racinoux

Post-Meeting Scientific Assistance

Han Kang *(Visiting Scientist)*
Washington, DC
USA

Anya Keefe
Vancouver, BC
Canada

Anthony B Miller (*Visiting Scientist, Editor*)
Toronto, Ontario
Canada

Production Team

Arthur Bouvard *(Reproduction of Graphics)*
Elisabeth Elbers
Sylvia Moutinho
Annick Papin
Dorothy Russell

Laurent Galichet's colleagues gratefully acknowledge his years of service in the *IARC Monographs* Programme, in particular his unrelenting efforts to modernize the production process of the *Monographs*. The new style and layout of the Volume 100 series are the fruits of these efforts. Laurent left the IARC in October 2011.

PREAMBLE

The Preamble to the *IARC Monographs* describes the objective and scope of the programme, the scientific principles and procedures used in developing a *Monograph*, the types of evidence considered and the scientific criteria that guide the evaluations. The Preamble should be consulted when reading a *Monograph* or list of evaluations.

A. GENERAL PRINCIPLES AND PROCEDURES

1. Background

Soon after IARC was established in 1965, it received frequent requests for advice on the carcinogenic risk of chemicals, including requests for lists of known and suspected human carcinogens. It was clear that it would not be a simple task to summarize adequately the complexity of the information that was available, and IARC began to consider means of obtaining international expert opinion on this topic. In 1970, the IARC Advisory Committee on Environmental Carcinogenesis recommended '...that a compendium on carcinogenic chemicals be prepared by experts. The biological activity and evaluation of practical importance to public health should be referenced and documented.' The IARC Governing Council adopted a resolution concerning the role of IARC in providing government authorities with expert, independent, scientific opinion on environmental carcinogenesis. As one means to that end, the Governing Council recommended that IARC should prepare monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risk of chemicals to man, which became the initial title of the series.

In the succeeding years, the scope of the programme broadened as *Monographs* were developed for groups of related chemicals, complex mixtures, occupational exposures, physical and biological agents and lifestyle factors. In 1988, the phrase 'of chemicals' was dropped from the title, which assumed its present form, *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans*.

Through the *Monographs* programme, IARC seeks to identify the causes of human cancer. This is the first step in cancer prevention, which is needed as much today as when IARC was established. The global burden of cancer is high and continues to increase: the annual number of new cases was estimated at 10.1 million in 2000 and is expected to reach 15 million by 2020 (Stewart & Kleihues, 2003). With current trends in demographics and exposure, the cancer burden has been shifting from high-resource countries to low- and medium-resource countries. As a result of *Monographs* evaluations, national health agencies have been able, on scientific grounds, to take measures to reduce human exposure to carcinogens in the workplace and in the environment.

The criteria established in 1971 to evaluate carcinogenic risks to humans were adopted by the Working Groups whose deliberations resulted in the first 16 volumes of the *Monographs* series. Those criteria were subsequently updated by further ad hoc Advisory Groups (IARC, 1977, 1978, 1979, 1982, 1983, 1987, 1988, 1991; Vainio *et al.*, 1992; IARC, 2005, 2006).

The Preamble is primarily a statement of scientific principles, rather than a specification of working procedures. The procedures through which a Working Group implements these principles are not specified in detail. They usually involve operations that have been established as being effective during previous *Monograph* meetings but remain, predominantly, the prerogative of each individual Working Group.

2. Objective and scope

The objective of the programme is to prepare, with the help of international Working Groups of experts, and to publish in the form of *Monographs*, critical reviews and evaluations of evidence on the carcinogenicity of a wide range of human exposures. The *Monographs* represent the first step in carcinogen risk assessment, which involves examination of all relevant information to assess the strength of the available evidence that an agent could alter the age-specific incidence of cancer in humans. The *Monographs* may also indicate where additional research efforts are needed, specifically when data immediately relevant to an evaluation are not available.

In this Preamble, the term 'agent' refers to any entity or circumstance that is subject to evaluation in a *Monograph*. As the scope of the programme has broadened, categories of agents now include specific chemicals, groups of related chemicals, complex mixtures, occupational or environmental exposures, cultural or behavioural practices, biological organisms and physical agents. This list of categories may expand as causation of, and susceptibility to, malignant disease become more fully understood.

A cancer 'hazard' is an agent that is capable of causing cancer under some circumstances, while a cancer 'risk' is an estimate of the carcinogenic effects expected from exposure to a cancer hazard. The *Monographs* are an exercise in evaluating cancer hazards, despite the historical presence of the word 'risks' in the title. The distinction between hazard and risk is important, and the *Monographs* identify cancer hazards even when risks are very low at current exposure levels, because new uses or unforeseen exposures could engender risks that are significantly higher.

In the *Monographs*, an agent is termed 'carcinogenic' if it is capable of increasing the incidence of malignant neoplasms, reducing their latency, or increasing their severity or multiplicity. The induction of benign neoplasms may in some circumstances (see Part B, Section 3a) contribute to the judgement that the agent is carcinogenic. The terms 'neoplasm' and 'tumour' are used interchangeably.

The Preamble continues the previous usage of the phrase 'strength of evidence' as a matter of historical continuity, although it should be understood that *Monographs* evaluations consider studies that support a finding of a cancer hazard as well as studies that do not.

Some epidemiological and experimental studies indicate that different agents may act at different stages in the carcinogenic process, and several different mechanisms may be involved. The aim of the *Monographs* has been, from their inception, to evaluate evidence of carcinogenicity at any stage in the carcinogenesis process, independently of the underlying mechanisms. Information on mechanisms may, however, be used in making the overall evaluation (IARC, 1991; Vainio *et al.*, 1992; IARC, 2005, 2006; see also Part B, Sections 4 and 6). As mechanisms of carcinogenesis are elucidated, IARC convenes international scientific conferences to determine whether a broad-based consensus has emerged

on how specific mechanistic data can be used in an evaluation of human carcinogenicity. The results of such conferences are reported in IARC Scientific Publications, which, as long as they still reflect the current state of scientific knowledge, may guide subsequent Working Groups.

Although the *Monographs* have emphasized hazard identification, important issues may also involve dose–response assessment. In many cases, the same epidemiological and experimental studies used to evaluate a cancer hazard can also be used to estimate a dose–response relationship. A *Monograph* may undertake to estimate dose–response relationships within the range of the available epidemiological data, or it may compare the dose–response information from experimental and epidemiological studies. In some cases, a subsequent publication may be prepared by a separate Working Group with expertise in quantitative dose–response assessment.

The *Monographs* are used by national and international authorities to make risk assessments, formulate decisions concerning preventive measures, provide effective cancer control programmes and decide among alternative options for public health decisions. The evaluations of IARC Working Groups are scientific, qualitative judgements on the evidence for or against carcinogenicity provided by the available data. These evaluations represent only one part of the body of information on which public health decisions may be based. Public health options vary from one situation to another and from country to country and relate to many factors, including different socioeconomic and national priorities. Therefore, no recommendation is given with regard to regulation or legislation, which are the responsibility of individual governments or other international organizations.

3. Selection of agents for review

Agents are selected for review on the basis of two main criteria: (a) there is evidence of human exposure and (b) there is some evidence or suspicion of carcinogenicity. Mixed exposures may occur in occupational and environmental settings and as a result of individual and cultural habits (such as tobacco smoking and dietary practices). Chemical analogues and compounds with biological or physical characteristics similar to those of suspected carcinogens may also be considered, even in the absence of data on a possible carcinogenic effect in humans or experimental animals.

The scientific literature is surveyed for published data relevant to an assessment of carcinogenicity. Ad hoc Advisory Groups convened by IARC in 1984, 1989, 1991, 1993, 1998 and 2003 made recommendations as to which agents should be evaluated in the *Monographs* series. Recent recommendations are available on the *Monographs* programme web site (http://monographs.iarc.fr). IARC may schedule other agents for review as it becomes aware of new scientific information or as national health agencies identify an urgent public health need related to cancer.

As significant new data become available on an agent for which a *Monograph* exists, a re-evaluation may be made at a subsequent meeting, and a new *Monograph* published. In some cases it may be appropriate to review only the data published since a prior evaluation. This can be useful for updating a database, reviewing new data to resolve a previously open question or identifying new tumour sites associated with a carcinogenic agent. Major changes in an evaluation (e.g. a new classification in Group 1 or a determination that a mechanism does not operate in humans, see Part B, Section 6) are more appropriately addressed by a full review.

4. Data for the *Monographs*

Each *Monograph* reviews all pertinent epidemiological studies and cancer bioassays in experimental animals. Those judged inadequate

or irrelevant to the evaluation may be cited but not summarized. If a group of similar studies is not reviewed, the reasons are indicated.

Mechanistic and other relevant data are also reviewed. A *Monograph* does not necessarily cite all the mechanistic literature concerning the agent being evaluated (see Part B, Section 4). Only those data considered by the Working Group to be relevant to making the evaluation are included.

With regard to epidemiological studies, cancer bioassays, and mechanistic and other relevant data, only reports that have been published or accepted for publication in the openly available scientific literature are reviewed. The same publication requirement applies to studies originating from IARC, including meta-analyses or pooled analyses commissioned by IARC in advance of a meeting (see Part B, Section 2c). Data from government agency reports that are publicly available are also considered. Exceptionally, doctoral theses and other material that are in their final form and publicly available may be reviewed.

Exposure data and other information on an agent under consideration are also reviewed. In the sections on chemical and physical properties, on analysis, on production and use and on occurrence, published and unpublished sources of information may be considered.

Inclusion of a study does not imply acceptance of the adequacy of the study design or of the analysis and interpretation of the results, and limitations are clearly outlined in square brackets at the end of each study description (see Part B). The reasons for not giving further consideration to an individual study also are indicated in the square brackets.

5. Meeting participants

Five categories of participant can be present at *Monograph* meetings.

(a) The Working Group

The Working Group is responsible for the critical reviews and evaluations that are developed during the meeting. The tasks of Working Group Members are: (i) to ascertain that all appropriate data have been collected; (ii) to select the data relevant for the evaluation on the basis of scientific merit; (iii) to prepare accurate summaries of the data to enable the reader to follow the reasoning of the Working Group; (iv) to evaluate the results of epidemiological and experimental studies on cancer; (v) to evaluate data relevant to the understanding of mechanisms of carcinogenesis; and (vi) to make an overall evaluation of the carcinogenicity of the exposure to humans. Working Group Members generally have published significant research related to the carcinogenicity of the agents being reviewed, and IARC uses literature searches to identify most experts. Working Group Members are selected on the basis of (a) knowledge and experience and (b) absence of real or apparent conflicts of interests. Consideration is also given to demographic diversity and balance of scientific findings and views.

(b) Invited Specialists

Invited Specialists are experts who also have critical knowledge and experience but have a real or apparent conflict of interests. These experts are invited when necessary to assist in the Working Group by contributing their unique knowledge and experience during subgroup and plenary discussions. They may also contribute text on non-influential issues in the section on exposure, such as a general description of data on production and use (see Part B, Section 1). Invited Specialists do not serve as meeting chair or subgroup chair, draft text that pertains to the description or interpretation of cancer data, or participate in the evaluations.

(c) Representatives of national and international health agencies

Representatives of national and international health agencies often attend meetings because their agencies sponsor the programme or are interested in the subject of a meeting. Representatives do not serve as meeting chair or subgroup chair, draft any part of a *Monograph*, or participate in the evaluations.

(d) Observers with relevant scientific credentials

Observers with relevant scientific credentials may be admitted to a meeting by IARC in limited numbers. Attention will be given to achieving a balance of Observers from constituencies with differing perspectives. They are invited to observe the meeting and should not attempt to influence it. Observers do not serve as meeting chair or subgroup chair, draft any part of a *Monograph*, or participate in the evaluations. At the meeting, the meeting chair and subgroup chairs may grant Observers an opportunity to speak, generally after they have observed a discussion. Observers agree to respect the Guidelines for Observers at *IARC Monographs* meetings (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr).

(e) The IARC Secretariat

The IARC Secretariat consists of scientists who are designated by IARC and who have relevant expertise. They serve as rapporteurs and participate in all discussions. When requested by the meeting chair or subgroup chair, they may also draft text or prepare tables and analyses.

Before an invitation is extended, each potential participant, including the IARC Secretariat, completes the WHO Declaration of Interests to report financial interests, employment and consulting, and individual and institutional research support related to the subject of the meeting. IARC assesses these interests to determine whether there is a conflict that warrants some limitation on participation. The declarations are updated and reviewed again at the opening of the meeting. Interests related to the subject of the meeting are disclosed to the meeting participants and in the published volume (Cogliano *et al.*, 2004).

The names and principal affiliations of participants are available on the *Monographs* programme web site (http://monographs.iarc.fr) approximately two months before each meeting. It is not acceptable for Observers or third parties to contact other participants before a meeting or to lobby them at any time. Meeting participants are asked to report all such contacts to IARC (Cogliano *et al.*, 2005).

All participants are listed, with their principal affiliations, at the beginning of each volume. Each participant who is a Member of a Working Group serves as an individual scientist and not as a representative of any organization, government or industry.

6. Working procedures

A separate Working Group is responsible for developing each volume of *Monographs*. A volume contains one or more *Monographs*, which can cover either a single agent or several related agents. Approximately one year in advance of the meeting of a Working Group, the agents to be reviewed are announced on the *Monographs* programme web site (http://monographs.iarc.fr) and participants are selected by IARC staff in consultation with other experts. Subsequently, relevant biological and epidemiological data are collected by IARC from recognized sources of information on carcinogenesis, including data storage and retrieval systems such as PubMed. Meeting participants who are asked to prepare preliminary working papers for specific sections are expected to supplement the IARC literature searches with their own searches.

For most chemicals and some complex mixtures, the major collection of data and the preparation of working papers for the sections on chemical and physical properties, on analysis, on production and use, and on occurrence are carried out under a separate contract funded by the US National Cancer Institute. Industrial associations, labour unions and other knowledgeable organizations may be asked to provide input to the sections on production and use, although this involvement is not required as a general rule. Information on production and trade is obtained from governmental, trade and market research publications and, in some cases, by direct contact with industries. Separate production data on some agents may not be available for a variety of reasons (e.g. not collected or made public in all producing countries, production is small). Information on uses may be obtained from published sources but is often complemented by direct contact with manufacturers. Efforts are made to supplement this information with data from other national and international sources.

Six months before the meeting, the material obtained is sent to meeting participants to prepare preliminary working papers. The working papers are compiled by IARC staff and sent, before the meeting, to Working Group Members and Invited Specialists for review.

The Working Group meets at IARC for seven to eight days to discuss and finalize the texts and to formulate the evaluations. The objectives of the meeting are peer review and consensus. During the first few days, four subgroups (covering exposure data, cancer in humans, cancer in experimental animals, and mechanistic and other relevant data) review the working papers, develop a joint subgroup draft and write summaries. Care is taken to ensure that each study summary is written or reviewed by someone not associated with the study being considered. During the last few days, the Working Group meets in plenary session to review the subgroup drafts and develop the evaluations. As a result, the entire volume is the joint product of the Working Group, and there are no individually authored sections.

IARC Working Groups strive to achieve a consensus evaluation. Consensus reflects broad agreement among Working Group Members, but not necessarily unanimity. The chair may elect to poll Working Group Members to determine the diversity of scientific opinion on issues where consensus is not readily apparent.

After the meeting, the master copy is verified by consulting the original literature, edited and prepared for publication. The aim is to publish the volume within six months of the Working Group meeting. A summary of the outcome is available on the *Monographs* programme web site soon after the meeting.

B. SCIENTIFIC REVIEW AND EVALUATION

The available studies are summarized by the Working Group, with particular regard to the qualitative aspects discussed below. In general, numerical findings are indicated as they appear in the original report; units are converted when necessary for easier comparison. The Working Group may conduct additional analyses of the published data and use them in their assessment of the evidence; the results of such supplementary analyses are given in square brackets. When an important aspect of a study that directly impinges on its interpretation should be brought to the attention of the reader, a Working Group comment is given in square brackets.

The scope of the *IARC Monographs* programme has expanded beyond chemicals to include complex mixtures, occupational exposures, physical and biological agents, lifestyle factors and other potentially carcinogenic exposures. Over time, the structure of a *Monograph* has evolved to include the following sections:

Exposure data
Studies of cancer in humans
Studies of cancer in experimental animals
Mechanistic and other relevant data
Summary
Evaluation and rationale

In addition, a section of General Remarks at the front of the volume discusses the reasons the agents were scheduled for evaluation and some key issues the Working Group encountered during the meeting.

This part of the Preamble discusses the types of evidence considered and summarized in each section of a *Monograph*, followed by the scientific criteria that guide the evaluations.

1. Exposure data

Each *Monograph* includes general information on the agent: this information may vary substantially between agents and must be adapted accordingly. Also included is information on production and use (when appropriate), methods of analysis and detection, occurrence, and sources and routes of human occupational and environmental exposures. Depending on the agent, regulations and guidelines for use may be presented.

(a) General information on the agent

For chemical agents, sections on chemical and physical data are included: the Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number, the latest primary name and the IUPAC systematic name are recorded; other synonyms are given, but the list is not necessarily comprehensive. Information on chemical and physical properties that are relevant to identification, occurrence and biological activity is included. A description of technical products of chemicals includes trade names, relevant specifications and available information on composition and impurities. Some of the trade names given may be those of mixtures in which the agent being evaluated is only one of the ingredients.

For biological agents, taxonomy, structure and biology are described, and the degree of variability is indicated. Mode of replication, life cycle, target cells, persistence, latency, host response and clinical disease other than cancer are also presented.

For physical agents that are forms of radiation, energy and range of the radiation are included. For foreign bodies, fibres and respirable particles, size range and relative dimensions are indicated.

For agents such as mixtures, drugs or lifestyle factors, a description of the agent, including its composition, is given.

Whenever appropriate, other information, such as historical perspectives or the description of an industry or habit, may be included.

(b) Analysis and detection

An overview of methods of analysis and detection of the agent is presented, including their sensitivity, specificity and reproducibility. Methods widely used for regulatory purposes are emphasized. Methods for monitoring human exposure are also given. No critical evaluation or recommendation of any method is meant or implied.

(c) Production and use

The dates of first synthesis and of first commercial production of a chemical, mixture or other agent are provided when available; for agents that do not occur naturally, this information may allow a reasonable estimate to be made of the date before which no human exposure to the agent could have occurred. The dates of first reported occurrence of an exposure are also provided when available. In addition, methods of synthesis used in past and present commercial production and different methods of production,

which may give rise to different impurities, are described.

The countries where companies report production of the agent, and the number of companies in each country, are identified. Available data on production, international trade and uses are obtained for representative regions. It should not, however, be inferred that those areas or nations are necessarily the sole or major sources or users of the agent. Some identified uses may not be current or major applications, and the coverage is not necessarily comprehensive. In the case of drugs, mention of their therapeutic uses does not necessarily represent current practice nor does it imply judgement as to their therapeutic efficacy.

(d) Occurrence and exposure

Information on the occurrence of an agent in the environment is obtained from data derived from the monitoring and surveillance of levels in occupational environments, air, water, soil, plants, foods and animal and human tissues. When available, data on the generation, persistence and bioaccumulation of the agent are also included. Such data may be available from national databases.

Data that indicate the extent of past and present human exposure, the sources of exposure, the people most likely to be exposed and the factors that contribute to the exposure are reported. Information is presented on the range of human exposure, including occupational and environmental exposures. This includes relevant findings from both developed and developing countries. Some of these data are not distributed widely and may be available from government reports and other sources. In the case of mixtures, industries, occupations or processes, information is given about all agents known to be present. For processes, industries and occupations, a historical description is also given, noting variations in chemical composition, physical properties and levels of occupational exposure with date and place. For biological agents, the epidemiology of infection is described.

(e) Regulations and guidelines

Statements concerning regulations and guidelines (e.g. occupational exposure limits, maximal levels permitted in foods and water, pesticide registrations) are included, but they may not reflect the most recent situation, since such limits are continuously reviewed and modified. The absence of information on regulatory status for a country should not be taken to imply that that country does not have regulations with regard to the exposure. For biological agents, legislation and control, including vaccination and therapy, are described.

2. Studies of cancer in humans

This section includes all pertinent epidemiological studies (see Part A, Section 4). Studies of biomarkers are included when they are relevant to an evaluation of carcinogenicity to humans.

(a) Types of study considered

Several types of epidemiological study contribute to the assessment of carcinogenicity in humans — cohort studies, case–control studies, correlation (or ecological) studies and intervention studies. Rarely, results from randomized trials may be available. Case reports and case series of cancer in humans may also be reviewed.

Cohort and case–control studies relate individual exposures under study to the occurrence of cancer in individuals and provide an estimate of effect (such as relative risk) as the main measure of association. Intervention studies may provide strong evidence for making causal inferences, as exemplified by cessation of smoking and the subsequent decrease in risk for lung cancer.

In correlation studies, the units of investigation are usually whole populations (e.g. in

particular geographical areas or at particular times), and cancer frequency is related to a summary measure of the exposure of the population to the agent under study. In correlation studies, individual exposure is not documented, which renders this kind of study more prone to confounding. In some circumstances, however, correlation studies may be more informative than analytical study designs (see, for example, the *Monograph* on arsenic in drinking-water; IARC, 2004).

In some instances, case reports and case series have provided important information about the carcinogenicity of an agent. These types of study generally arise from a suspicion, based on clinical experience, that the concurrence of two events — that is, a particular exposure and occurrence of a cancer — has happened rather more frequently than would be expected by chance. Case reports and case series usually lack complete ascertainment of cases in any population, definition or enumeration of the population at risk and estimation of the expected number of cases in the absence of exposure.

The uncertainties that surround the interpretation of case reports, case series and correlation studies make them inadequate, except in rare instances, to form the sole basis for inferring a causal relationship. When taken together with case–control and cohort studies, however, these types of study may add materially to the judgement that a causal relationship exists.

Epidemiological studies of benign neoplasms, presumed preneoplastic lesions and other end-points thought to be relevant to cancer are also reviewed. They may, in some instances, strengthen inferences drawn from studies of cancer itself.

(b) Quality of studies considered

It is necessary to take into account the possible roles of bias, confounding and chance in the interpretation of epidemiological studies. Bias is the effect of factors in study design or execution that lead erroneously to a stronger or weaker association than in fact exists between an agent and disease. Confounding is a form of bias that occurs when the relationship with disease is made to appear stronger or weaker than it truly is as a result of an association between the apparent causal factor and another factor that is associated with either an increase or decrease in the incidence of the disease. The role of chance is related to biological variability and the influence of sample size on the precision of estimates of effect.

In evaluating the extent to which these factors have been minimized in an individual study, consideration is given to several aspects of design and analysis as described in the report of the study. For example, when suspicion of carcinogenicity arises largely from a single small study, careful consideration is given when interpreting subsequent studies that included these data in an enlarged population. Most of these considerations apply equally to case–control, cohort and correlation studies. Lack of clarity of any of these aspects in the reporting of a study can decrease its credibility and the weight given to it in the final evaluation of the exposure.

First, the study population, disease (or diseases) and exposure should have been well defined by the authors. Cases of disease in the study population should have been identified in a way that was independent of the exposure of interest, and exposure should have been assessed in a way that was not related to disease status.

Second, the authors should have taken into account — in the study design and analysis — other variables that can influence the risk of disease and may have been related to the exposure of interest. Potential confounding by such variables should have been dealt with either in the design of the study, such as by matching, or in the analysis, by statistical adjustment. In cohort studies, comparisons with local rates of disease may or may not be more appropriate than those with national rates. Internal comparisons of

frequency of disease among individuals at different levels of exposure are also desirable in cohort studies, since they minimize the potential for confounding related to the difference in risk factors between an external reference group and the study population.

Third, the authors should have reported the basic data on which the conclusions are founded, even if sophisticated statistical analyses were employed. At the very least, they should have given the numbers of exposed and unexposed cases and controls in a case–control study and the numbers of cases observed and expected in a cohort study. Further tabulations by time since exposure began and other temporal factors are also important. In a cohort study, data on all cancer sites and all causes of death should have been given, to reveal the possibility of reporting bias. In a case–control study, the effects of investigated factors other than the exposure of interest should have been reported.

Finally, the statistical methods used to obtain estimates of relative risk, absolute rates of cancer, confidence intervals and significance tests, and to adjust for confounding should have been clearly stated by the authors. These methods have been reviewed for case–control studies (Breslow & Day, 1980) and for cohort studies (Breslow & Day, 1987).

(c) Meta-analyses and pooled analyses

Independent epidemiological studies of the same agent may lead to results that are difficult to interpret. Combined analyses of data from multiple studies are a means of resolving this ambiguity, and well conducted analyses can be considered. There are two types of combined analysis. The first involves combining summary statistics such as relative risks from individual studies (meta-analysis) and the second involves a pooled analysis of the raw data from the individual studies (pooled analysis) (Greenland, 1998).

The advantages of combined analyses are increased precision due to increased sample size and the opportunity to explore potential confounders, interactions and modifying effects that may explain heterogeneity among studies in more detail. A disadvantage of combined analyses is the possible lack of compatibility of data from various studies due to differences in subject recruitment, procedures of data collection, methods of measurement and effects of unmeasured co-variates that may differ among studies. Despite these limitations, well conducted combined analyses may provide a firmer basis than individual studies for drawing conclusions about the potential carcinogenicity of agents.

IARC may commission a meta-analysis or pooled analysis that is pertinent to a particular *Monograph* (see Part A, Section 4). Additionally, as a means of gaining insight from the results of multiple individual studies, ad hoc calculations that combine data from different studies may be conducted by the Working Group during the course of a *Monograph* meeting. The results of such original calculations, which would be specified in the text by presentation in square brackets, might involve updates of previously conducted analyses that incorporate the results of more recent studies or de-novo analyses. Irrespective of the source of data for the meta-analyses and pooled analyses, it is important that the same criteria for data quality be applied as those that would be applied to individual studies and to ensure also that sources of heterogeneity between studies be taken into account.

(d) Temporal effects

Detailed analyses of both relative and absolute risks in relation to temporal variables, such as age at first exposure, time since first exposure, duration of exposure, cumulative exposure, peak exposure (when appropriate) and time since cessation of exposure, are reviewed and summarized when available. Analyses of temporal

relationships may be useful in making causal inferences. In addition, such analyses may suggest whether a carcinogen acts early or late in the process of carcinogenesis, although, at best, they allow only indirect inferences about mechanisms of carcinogenesis.

(e) Use of biomarkers in epidemiological studies

Biomarkers indicate molecular, cellular or other biological changes and are increasingly used in epidemiological studies for various purposes (IARC, 1991; Vainio *et al.*, 1992; Toniolo *et al.*, 1997; Vineis *et al.*, 1999; Buffler *et al.*, 2004). These may include evidence of exposure, of early effects, of cellular, tissue or organism responses, of individual susceptibility or host responses, and inference of a mechanism (see Part B, Section 4b). This is a rapidly evolving field that encompasses developments in genomics, epigenomics and other emerging technologies.

Molecular epidemiological data that identify associations between genetic polymorphisms and interindividual differences in susceptibility to the agent(s) being evaluated may contribute to the identification of carcinogenic hazards to humans. If the polymorphism has been demonstrated experimentally to modify the functional activity of the gene product in a manner that is consistent with increased susceptibility, these data may be useful in making causal inferences. Similarly, molecular epidemiological studies that measure cell functions, enzymes or metabolites that are thought to be the basis of susceptibility may provide evidence that reinforces biological plausibility. It should be noted, however, that when data on genetic susceptibility originate from multiple comparisons that arise from subgroup analyses, this can generate false-positive results and inconsistencies across studies, and such data therefore require careful evaluation. If the known phenotype of a genetic polymorphism can explain the carcinogenic mechanism of the agent being evaluated, data on this phenotype may be useful in making causal inferences.

(f) Criteria for causality

After the quality of individual epidemiological studies of cancer has been summarized and assessed, a judgement is made concerning the strength of evidence that the agent in question is carcinogenic to humans. In making its judgement, the Working Group considers several criteria for causality (Hill, 1965). A strong association (e.g. a large relative risk) is more likely to indicate causality than a weak association, although it is recognized that estimates of effect of small magnitude do not imply lack of causality and may be important if the disease or exposure is common. Associations that are replicated in several studies of the same design or that use different epidemiological approaches or under different circumstances of exposure are more likely to represent a causal relationship than isolated observations from single studies. If there are inconsistent results among investigations, possible reasons are sought (such as differences in exposure), and results of studies that are judged to be of high quality are given more weight than those of studies that are judged to be methodologically less sound.

If the risk increases with the exposure, this is considered to be a strong indication of causality, although the absence of a graded response is not necessarily evidence against a causal relationship. The demonstration of a decline in risk after cessation of or reduction in exposure in individuals or in whole populations also supports a causal interpretation of the findings.

Several scenarios may increase confidence in a causal relationship. On the one hand, an agent may be specific in causing tumours at one site or of one morphological type. On the other, carcinogenicity may be evident through the causation of multiple tumour types. Temporality, precision of estimates of effect, biological plausibility and

coherence of the overall database are considered. Data on biomarkers may be employed in an assessment of the biological plausibility of epidemiological observations.

Although rarely available, results from randomized trials that show different rates of cancer among exposed and unexposed individuals provide particularly strong evidence for causality.

When several epidemiological studies show little or no indication of an association between an exposure and cancer, a judgement may be made that, in the aggregate, they show evidence of lack of carcinogenicity. Such a judgement requires first that the studies meet, to a sufficient degree, the standards of design and analysis described above. Specifically, the possibility that bias, confounding or misclassification of exposure or outcome could explain the observed results should be considered and excluded with reasonable certainty. In addition, all studies that are judged to be methodologically sound should (a) be consistent with an estimate of effect of unity for any observed level of exposure, (b) when considered together, provide a pooled estimate of relative risk that is at or near to unity, and (c) have a narrow confidence interval, due to sufficient population size. Moreover, no individual study nor the pooled results of all the studies should show any consistent tendency that the relative risk of cancer increases with increasing level of exposure. It is important to note that evidence of lack of carcinogenicity obtained from several epidemiological studies can apply only to the type(s) of cancer studied, to the dose levels reported, and to the intervals between first exposure and disease onset observed in these studies. Experience with human cancer indicates that the period from first exposure to the development of clinical cancer is sometimes longer than 20 years; latent periods substantially shorter than 30 years cannot provide evidence for lack of carcinogenicity.

3. Studies of cancer in experimental animals

All known human carcinogens that have been studied adequately for carcinogenicity in experimental animals have produced positive results in one or more animal species (Wilbourn *et al.*, 1986; Tomatis *et al.*, 1989). For several agents (e.g. aflatoxins, diethylstilbestrol, solar radiation, vinyl chloride), carcinogenicity in experimental animals was established or highly suspected before epidemiological studies confirmed their carcinogenicity in humans (Vainio *et al.*, 1995). Although this association cannot establish that all agents that cause cancer in experimental animals also cause cancer in humans, it is biologically plausible that agents for which there is *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* in experimental animals (see Part B, Section 6b) also present a carcinogenic hazard to humans. Accordingly, in the absence of additional scientific information, these agents are considered to pose a carcinogenic hazard to humans. Examples of additional scientific information are data that demonstrate that a given agent causes cancer in animals through a species-specific mechanism that does not operate in humans or data that demonstrate that the mechanism in experimental animals also operates in humans (see Part B, Section 6).

Consideration is given to all available long-term studies of cancer in experimental animals with the agent under review (see Part A, Section 4). In all experimental settings, the nature and extent of impurities or contaminants present in the agent being evaluated are given when available. Animal species, strain (including genetic background where applicable), sex, numbers per group, age at start of treatment, route of exposure, dose levels, duration of exposure, survival and information on tumours (incidence, latency, severity or multiplicity of neoplasms or preneoplastic lesions) are reported. Those studies in experimental animals that are judged to be irrelevant to the evaluation or judged to be inadequate

(e.g. too short a duration, too few animals, poor survival; see below) may be omitted. Guidelines for conducting long-term carcinogenicity experiments have been published (e.g. OECD, 2002).

Other studies considered may include: experiments in which the agent was administered in the presence of factors that modify carcinogenic effects (e.g. initiation–promotion studies, co-carcinogenicity studies and studies in genetically modified animals); studies in which the end-point was not cancer but a defined precancerous lesion; experiments on the carcinogenicity of known metabolites and derivatives; and studies of cancer in non-laboratory animals (e.g. livestock and companion animals) exposed to the agent.

For studies of mixtures, consideration is given to the possibility that changes in the physicochemical properties of the individual substances may occur during collection, storage, extraction, concentration and delivery. Another consideration is that chemical and toxicological interactions of components in a mixture may alter dose–response relationships. The relevance to human exposure of the test mixture administered in the animal experiment is also assessed. This may involve consideration of the following aspects of the mixture tested: (i) physical and chemical characteristics, (ii) identified constituents that may indicate the presence of a class of substances and (iii) the results of genetic toxicity and related tests.

The relevance of results obtained with an agent that is analogous (e.g. similar in structure or of a similar virus genus) to that being evaluated is also considered. Such results may provide biological and mechanistic information that is relevant to the understanding of the process of carcinogenesis in humans and may strengthen the biological plausibility that the agent being evaluated is carcinogenic to humans (see Part B, Section 2f).

(a) Qualitative aspects

An assessment of carcinogenicity involves several considerations of qualitative importance, including (i) the experimental conditions under which the test was performed, including route, schedule and duration of exposure, species, strain (including genetic background where applicable), sex, age and duration of follow-up; (ii) the consistency of the results, for example, across species and target organ(s); (iii) the spectrum of neoplastic response, from preneoplastic lesions and benign tumours to malignant neoplasms; and (iv) the possible role of modifying factors.

Considerations of importance in the interpretation and evaluation of a particular study include: (i) how clearly the agent was defined and, in the case of mixtures, how adequately the sample characterization was reported; (ii) whether the dose was monitored adequately, particularly in inhalation experiments; (iii) whether the doses, duration of treatment and route of exposure were appropriate; (iv) whether the survival of treated animals was similar to that of controls; (v) whether there were adequate numbers of animals per group; (vi) whether both male and female animals were used; (vii) whether animals were allocated randomly to groups; (viii) whether the duration of observation was adequate; and (ix) whether the data were reported and analysed adequately.

When benign tumours (a) occur together with and originate from the same cell type as malignant tumours in an organ or tissue in a particular study and (b) appear to represent a stage in the progression to malignancy, they are usually combined in the assessment of tumour incidence (Huff *et al.*, 1989). The occurrence of lesions presumed to be preneoplastic may in certain instances aid in assessing the biological plausibility of any neoplastic response observed. If an agent induces only benign neoplasms that appear to be end-points that do not readily undergo

transition to malignancy, the agent should nevertheless be suspected of being carcinogenic and requires further investigation.

(b) Quantitative aspects

The probability that tumours will occur may depend on the species, sex, strain, genetic background and age of the animal, and on the dose, route, timing and duration of the exposure. Evidence of an increased incidence of neoplasms with increasing levels of exposure strengthens the inference of a causal association between the exposure and the development of neoplasms.

The form of the dose–response relationship can vary widely, depending on the particular agent under study and the target organ. Mechanisms such as induction of DNA damage or inhibition of repair, altered cell division and cell death rates and changes in intercellular communication are important determinants of dose–response relationships for some carcinogens. Since many chemicals require metabolic activation before being converted to their reactive intermediates, both metabolic and toxicokinetic aspects are important in determining the dose–response pattern. Saturation of steps such as absorption, activation, inactivation and elimination may produce nonlinearity in the dose–response relationship (Hoel et al., 1983; Gart *et al.*, 1986), as could saturation of processes such as DNA repair. The dose–response relationship can also be affected by differences in survival among the treatment groups.

(c) Statistical analyses

Factors considered include the adequacy of the information given for each treatment group: (i) number of animals studied and number examined histologically, (ii) number of animals with a given tumour type and (iii) length of survival. The statistical methods used should be clearly stated and should be the generally accepted techniques refined for this purpose (Peto *et al.*, 1980; Gart *et al.*, 1986; Portier & Bailer, 1989; Bieler & Williams, 1993). The choice of the most appropriate statistical method requires consideration of whether or not there are differences in survival among the treatment groups; for example, reduced survival because of non-tumour-related mortality can preclude the occurrence of tumours later in life. When detailed information on survival is not available, comparisons of the proportions of tumour-bearing animals among the effective number of animals (alive at the time the first tumour was discovered) can be useful when significant differences in survival occur before tumours appear. The lethality of the tumour also requires consideration: for rapidly fatal tumours, the time of death provides an indication of the time of tumour onset and can be assessed using life-table methods; non-fatal or incidental tumours that do not affect survival can be assessed using methods such as the Mantel-Haenzel test for changes in tumour prevalence. Because tumour lethality is often difficult to determine, methods such as the Poly-K test that do not require such information can also be used. When results are available on the number and size of tumours seen in experimental animals (e.g. papillomas on mouse skin, liver tumours observed through nuclear magnetic resonance tomography), other more complicated statistical procedures may be needed (Sherman *et al.*, 1994; Dunson *et al.*, 2003).

Formal statistical methods have been developed to incorporate historical control data into the analysis of data from a given experiment. These methods assign an appropriate weight to historical and concurrent controls on the basis of the extent of between-study and within-study variability: less weight is given to historical controls when they show a high degree of variability, and greater weight when they show little variability. It is generally not appropriate to discount a tumour response that is significantly increased compared with concurrent controls by arguing that it falls within the range of historical controls,

particularly when historical controls show high between-study variability and are, thus, of little relevance to the current experiment. In analysing results for uncommon tumours, however, the analysis may be improved by considering historical control data, particularly when between-study variability is low. Historical controls should be selected to resemble the concurrent controls as closely as possible with respect to species, gender and strain, as well as other factors such as basal diet and general laboratory environment, which may affect tumour-response rates in control animals (Haseman *et al.*, 1984; Fung *et al.*, 1996; Greim *et al.*, 2003).

Although meta-analyses and combined analyses are conducted less frequently for animal experiments than for epidemiological studies due to differences in animal strains, they can be useful aids in interpreting animal data when the experimental protocols are sufficiently similar.

4. Mechanistic and other relevant data

Mechanistic and other relevant data may provide evidence of carcinogenicity and also help in assessing the relevance and importance of findings of cancer in animals and in humans. The nature of the mechanistic and other relevant data depends on the biological activity of the agent being considered. The Working Group considers representative studies to give a concise description of the relevant data and issues that they consider to be important; thus, not every available study is cited. Relevant topics may include toxicokinetics, mechanisms of carcinogenesis, susceptible individuals, populations and life-stages, other relevant data and other adverse effects. When data on biomarkers are informative about the mechanisms of carcinogenesis, they are included in this section.

These topics are not mutually exclusive; thus, the same studies may be discussed in more than one subsection. For example, a mutation in a gene that codes for an enzyme that metabolizes the agent under study could be discussed in the subsections on toxicokinetics, mechanisms and individual susceptibility if it also exists as an inherited polymorphism.

(a) Toxicokinetic data

Toxicokinetics refers to the absorption, distribution, metabolism and elimination of agents in humans, experimental animals and, where relevant, cellular systems. Examples of kinetic factors that may affect dose–response relationships include uptake, deposition, biopersistence and half-life in tissues, protein binding, metabolic activation and detoxification. Studies that indicate the metabolic fate of the agent in humans and in experimental animals are summarized briefly, and comparisons of data from humans and animals are made when possible. Comparative information on the relationship between exposure and the dose that reaches the target site may be important for the extrapolation of hazards between species and in clarifying the role of in-vitro findings.

(b) Data on mechanisms of carcinogenesis

To provide focus, the Working Group attempts to identify the possible mechanisms by which the agent may increase the risk of cancer. For each possible mechanism, a representative selection of key data from humans and experimental systems is summarized. Attention is given to gaps in the data and to data that suggests that more than one mechanism may be operating. The relevance of the mechanism to humans is discussed, in particular, when mechanistic data are derived from experimental model systems. Changes in the affected organs, tissues or cells can be divided into three non-exclusive levels as described below.

(i) Changes in physiology

Physiological changes refer to exposure-related modifications to the physiology and/or response of cells, tissues and organs. Examples of potentially adverse physiological changes include mitogenesis, compensatory cell division, escape from apoptosis and/or senescence, presence of inflammation, hyperplasia, metaplasia and/or preneoplasia, angiogenesis, alterations in cellular adhesion, changes in steroidal hormones and changes in immune surveillance.

(ii) Functional changes at the cellular level

Functional changes refer to exposure-related alterations in the signalling pathways used by cells to manage critical processes that are related to increased risk for cancer. Examples of functional changes include modified activities of enzymes involved in the metabolism of xenobiotics, alterations in the expression of key genes that regulate DNA repair, alterations in cyclin-dependent kinases that govern cell cycle progression, changes in the patterns of post-translational modifications of proteins, changes in regulatory factors that alter apoptotic rates, changes in the secretion of factors related to the stimulation of DNA replication and transcription and changes in gap–junction-mediated intercellular communication.

(iii) Changes at the molecular level

Molecular changes refer to exposure-related changes in key cellular structures at the molecular level, including, in particular, genotoxicity. Examples of molecular changes include formation of DNA adducts and DNA strand breaks, mutations in genes, chromosomal aberrations, aneuploidy and changes in DNA methylation patterns. Greater emphasis is given to irreversible effects.

The use of mechanistic data in the identification of a carcinogenic hazard is specific to the mechanism being addressed and is not readily described for every possible level and mechanism discussed above.

Genotoxicity data are discussed here to illustrate the key issues involved in the evaluation of mechanistic data.

Tests for genetic and related effects are described in view of the relevance of gene mutation and chromosomal aberration/aneuploidy to carcinogenesis (Vainio *et al.*, 1992; McGregor *et al.*, 1999). The adequacy of the reporting of sample characterization is considered and, when necessary, commented upon; with regard to complex mixtures, such comments are similar to those described for animal carcinogenicity tests. The available data are interpreted critically according to the end-points detected, which may include DNA damage, gene mutation, sister chromatid exchange, micronucleus formation, chromosomal aberrations and aneuploidy. The concentrations employed are given, and mention is made of whether the use of an exogenous metabolic system in vitro affected the test result. These data are listed in tabular form by phylogenetic classification.

Positive results in tests using prokaryotes, lower eukaryotes, insects, plants and cultured mammalian cells suggest that genetic and related effects could occur in mammals. Results from such tests may also give information on the types of genetic effect produced and on the involvement of metabolic activation. Some end-points described are clearly genetic in nature (e.g. gene mutations), while others are associated with genetic effects (e.g. unscheduled DNA synthesis). In-vitro tests for tumour promotion, cell transformation and gap–junction intercellular communication may be sensitive to changes that are not necessarily the result of genetic alterations but that may have specific relevance to the process of carcinogenesis. Critical appraisals of these tests have been published (Montesano *et al.*, 1986; McGregor *et al.*, 1999).

Genetic or other activity manifest in humans and experimental mammals is regarded to be of

greater relevance than that in other organisms. The demonstration that an agent can induce gene and chromosomal mutations in mammals in vivo indicates that it may have carcinogenic activity. Negative results in tests for mutagenicity in selected tissues from animals treated in vivo provide less weight, partly because they do not exclude the possibility of an effect in tissues other than those examined. Moreover, negative results in short-term tests with genetic end-points cannot be considered to provide evidence that rules out the carcinogenicity of agents that act through other mechanisms (e.g. receptor-mediated effects, cellular toxicity with regenerative cell division, peroxisome proliferation) (Vainio *et al.*, 1992). Factors that may give misleading results in short-term tests have been discussed in detail elsewhere (Montesano *et al.*, 1986; McGregor *et al.*, 1999).

When there is evidence that an agent acts by a specific mechanism that does not involve genotoxicity (e.g. hormonal dysregulation, immune suppression, and formation of calculi and other deposits that cause chronic irritation), that evidence is presented and reviewed critically in the context of rigorous criteria for the operation of that mechanism in carcinogenesis (e.g. Capen *et al.*, 1999).

For biological agents such as viruses, bacteria and parasites, other data relevant to carcinogenicity may include descriptions of the pathology of infection, integration and expression of viruses, and genetic alterations seen in human tumours. Other observations that might comprise cellular and tissue responses to infection, immune response and the presence of tumour markers are also considered.

For physical agents that are forms of radiation, other data relevant to carcinogenicity may include descriptions of damaging effects at the physiological, cellular and molecular level, as for chemical agents, and descriptions of how these effects occur. 'Physical agents' may also be considered to comprise foreign bodies, such as surgical implants of various kinds, and poorly soluble fibres, dusts and particles of various sizes, the pathogenic effects of which are a result of their physical presence in tissues or body cavities. Other relevant data for such materials may include characterization of cellular, tissue and physiological reactions to these materials and descriptions of pathological conditions other than neoplasia with which they may be associated.

(c) Other data relevant to mechanisms

A description is provided of any structure–activity relationships that may be relevant to an evaluation of the carcinogenicity of an agent, the toxicological implications of the physical and chemical properties, and any other data relevant to the evaluation that are not included elsewhere.

High-output data, such as those derived from gene expression microarrays, and high-throughput data, such as those that result from testing hundreds of agents for a single end-point, pose a unique problem for the use of mechanistic data in the evaluation of a carcinogenic hazard. In the case of high-output data, there is the possibility to overinterpret changes in individual end-points (e.g. changes in expression in one gene) without considering the consistency of that finding in the broader context of the other end-points (e.g. other genes with linked transcriptional control). High-output data can be used in assessing mechanisms, but all end-points measured in a single experiment need to be considered in the proper context. For high-throughput data, where the number of observations far exceeds the number of end-points measured, their utility for identifying common mechanisms across multiple agents is enhanced. These data can be used to identify mechanisms that not only seem plausible, but also have a consistent pattern of carcinogenic response across entire classes of related compounds.

(d) Susceptibility data

Individuals, populations and life-stages may have greater or lesser susceptibility to an agent, based on toxicokinetics, mechanisms of carcinogenesis and other factors. Examples of host and genetic factors that affect individual susceptibility include sex, genetic polymorphisms of genes involved in the metabolism of the agent under evaluation, differences in metabolic capacity due to life-stage or the presence of disease, differences in DNA repair capacity, competition for or alteration of metabolic capacity by medications or other chemical exposures, pre-existing hormonal imbalance that is exacerbated by a chemical exposure, a suppressed immune system, periods of higher-than-usual tissue growth or regeneration and genetic polymorphisms that lead to differences in behaviour (e.g. addiction). Such data can substantially increase the strength of the evidence from epidemiological data and enhance the linkage of in-vivo and in-vitro laboratory studies to humans.

(e) Data on other adverse effects

Data on acute, subchronic and chronic adverse effects relevant to the cancer evaluation are summarized. Adverse effects that confirm distribution and biological effects at the sites of tumour development, or alterations in physiology that could lead to tumour development, are emphasized. Effects on reproduction, embryonic and fetal survival and development are summarized briefly. The adequacy of epidemiological studies of reproductive outcome and genetic and related effects in humans is judged by the same criteria as those applied to epidemiological studies of cancer, but fewer details are given.

5. Summary

This section is a summary of data presented in the preceding sections. Summaries can be found on the *Monographs* programme web site (http://monographs.iarc.fr).

(a) Exposure data

Data are summarized, as appropriate, on the basis of elements such as production, use, occurrence and exposure levels in the workplace and environment and measurements in human tissues and body fluids. Quantitative data and time trends are given to compare exposures in different occupations and environmental settings. Exposure to biological agents is described in terms of transmission, prevalence and persistence of infection.

(b) Cancer in humans

Results of epidemiological studies pertinent to an assessment of human carcinogenicity are summarized. When relevant, case reports and correlation studies are also summarized. The target organ(s) or tissue(s) in which an increase in cancer was observed is identified. Dose–response and other quantitative data may be summarized when available.

(c) Cancer in experimental animals

Data relevant to an evaluation of carcinogenicity in animals are summarized. For each animal species, study design and route of administration, it is stated whether an increased incidence, reduced latency, or increased severity or multiplicity of neoplasms or preneoplastic lesions were observed, and the tumour sites are indicated. If the agent produced tumours after prenatal exposure or in single-dose experiments, this is also mentioned. Negative findings, inverse relationships, dose–response and other quantitative data are also summarized.

(d) Mechanistic and other relevant data

Data relevant to the toxicokinetics (absorption, distribution, metabolism, elimination) and

the possible mechanism(s) of carcinogenesis (e.g. genetic toxicity, epigenetic effects) are summarized. In addition, information on susceptible individuals, populations and life-stages is summarized. This section also reports on other toxic effects, including reproductive and developmental effects, as well as additional relevant data that are considered to be important.

6. Evaluation and rationale

Evaluations of the strength of the evidence for carcinogenicity arising from human and experimental animal data are made, using standard terms. The strength of the mechanistic evidence is also characterized.

It is recognized that the criteria for these evaluations, described below, cannot encompass all of the factors that may be relevant to an evaluation of carcinogenicity. In considering all of the relevant scientific data, the Working Group may assign the agent to a higher or lower category than a strict interpretation of these criteria would indicate.

These categories refer only to the strength of the evidence that an exposure is carcinogenic and not to the extent of its carcinogenic activity (potency). A classification may change as new information becomes available.

An evaluation of the degree of evidence is limited to the materials tested, as defined physically, chemically or biologically. When the agents evaluated are considered by the Working Group to be sufficiently closely related, they may be grouped together for the purpose of a single evaluation of the degree of evidence.

(a) Carcinogenicity in humans

The evidence relevant to carcinogenicity from studies in humans is classified into one of the following categories:

***Sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity*:** The Working Group considers that a causal relationship has been established between exposure to the agent and human cancer. That is, a positive relationship has been observed between the exposure and cancer in studies in which chance, bias and confounding could be ruled out with reasonable confidence. A statement that there is *sufficient evidence* is followed by a separate sentence that identifies the target organ(s) or tissue(s) where an increased risk of cancer was observed in humans. Identification of a specific target organ or tissue does not preclude the possibility that the agent may cause cancer at other sites.

***Limited evidence of carcinogenicity*:** A positive association has been observed between exposure to the agent and cancer for which a causal interpretation is considered by the Working Group to be credible, but chance, bias or confounding could not be ruled out with reasonable confidence.

***Inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity*:** The available studies are of insufficient quality, consistency or statistical power to permit a conclusion regarding the presence or absence of a causal association between exposure and cancer, or no data on cancer in humans are available.

***Evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity*:** There are several adequate studies covering the full range of levels of exposure that humans are known to encounter, which are mutually consistent in not showing a positive association between exposure to the agent and any studied cancer at any observed level of exposure. The results from these studies alone or combined should have narrow confidence intervals with an upper limit close to the null value (e.g. a relative risk of 1.0). Bias and confounding should be ruled out with reasonable confidence, and the studies should have an adequate length of follow-up. A conclusion of *evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity* is inevitably limited to the cancer sites, conditions and levels of exposure, and length of observation covered by the available studies. In

addition, the possibility of a very small risk at the levels of exposure studied can never be excluded.

In some instances, the above categories may be used to classify the degree of evidence related to carcinogenicity in specific organs or tissues.

When the available epidemiological studies pertain to a mixture, process, occupation or industry, the Working Group seeks to identify the specific agent considered most likely to be responsible for any excess risk. The evaluation is focused as narrowly as the available data on exposure and other aspects permit.

(b) Carcinogenicity in experimental animals

Carcinogenicity in experimental animals can be evaluated using conventional bioassays, bioassays that employ genetically modified animals, and other in-vivo bioassays that focus on one or more of the critical stages of carcinogenesis. In the absence of data from conventional long-term bioassays or from assays with neoplasia as the end-point, consistently positive results in several models that address several stages in the multistage process of carcinogenesis should be considered in evaluating the degree of evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals.

The evidence relevant to carcinogenicity in experimental animals is classified into one of the following categories:

***Sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity*:** The Working Group considers that a causal relationship has been established between the agent and an increased incidence of malignant neoplasms or of an appropriate combination of benign and malignant neoplasms in (a) two or more species of animals or (b) two or more independent studies in one species carried out at different times or in different laboratories or under different protocols. An increased incidence of tumours in both sexes of a single species in a well conducted study, ideally conducted under Good Laboratory Practices, can also provide *sufficient evidence*.

A single study in one species and sex might be considered to provide *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* when malignant neoplasms occur to an unusual degree with regard to incidence, site, type of tumour or age at onset, or when there are strong findings of tumours at multiple sites.

***Limited evidence of carcinogenicity*:** The data suggest a carcinogenic effect but are limited for making a definitive evaluation because, e.g. (a) the evidence of carcinogenicity is restricted to a single experiment; (b) there are unresolved questions regarding the adequacy of the design, conduct or interpretation of the studies; (c) the agent increases the incidence only of benign neoplasms or lesions of uncertain neoplastic potential; or (d) the evidence of carcinogenicity is restricted to studies that demonstrate only promoting activity in a narrow range of tissues or organs.

***Inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity*:** The studies cannot be interpreted as showing either the presence or absence of a carcinogenic effect because of major qualitative or quantitative limitations, or no data on cancer in experimental animals are available.

***Evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity*:** Adequate studies involving at least two species are available which show that, within the limits of the tests used, the agent is not carcinogenic. A conclusion of *evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity* is inevitably limited to the species, tumour sites, age at exposure, and conditions and levels of exposure studied.

(c) Mechanistic and other relevant data

Mechanistic and other evidence judged to be relevant to an evaluation of carcinogenicity and of sufficient importance to affect the overall evaluation is highlighted. This may include data on preneoplastic lesions, tumour pathology, genetic and related effects, structure–activity relationships, metabolism and toxicokinetics,

physicochemical parameters and analogous biological agents.

The strength of the evidence that any carcinogenic effect observed is due to a particular mechanism is evaluated, using terms such as 'weak', 'moderate' or 'strong'. The Working Group then assesses whether that particular mechanism is likely to be operative in humans. The strongest indications that a particular mechanism operates in humans derive from data on humans or biological specimens obtained from exposed humans. The data may be considered to be especially relevant if they show that the agent in question has caused changes in exposed humans that are on the causal pathway to carcinogenesis. Such data may, however, never become available, because it is at least conceivable that certain compounds may be kept from human use solely on the basis of evidence of their toxicity and/or carcinogenicity in experimental systems.

The conclusion that a mechanism operates in experimental animals is strengthened by findings of consistent results in different experimental systems, by the demonstration of biological plausibility and by coherence of the overall database. Strong support can be obtained from studies that challenge the hypothesized mechanism experimentally, by demonstrating that the suppression of key mechanistic processes leads to the suppression of tumour development. The Working Group considers whether multiple mechanisms might contribute to tumour development, whether different mechanisms might operate in different dose ranges, whether separate mechanisms might operate in humans and experimental animals and whether a unique mechanism might operate in a susceptible group. The possible contribution of alternative mechanisms must be considered before concluding that tumours observed in experimental animals are not relevant to humans. An uneven level of experimental support for different mechanisms may reflect that disproportionate resources have been focused on investigating a favoured mechanism.

For complex exposures, including occupational and industrial exposures, the chemical composition and the potential contribution of carcinogens known to be present are considered by the Working Group in its overall evaluation of human carcinogenicity. The Working Group also determines the extent to which the materials tested in experimental systems are related to those to which humans are exposed.

(d) Overall evaluation

Finally, the body of evidence is considered as a whole, to reach an overall evaluation of the carcinogenicity of the agent to humans.

An evaluation may be made for a group of agents that have been evaluated by the Working Group. In addition, when supporting data indicate that other related agents, for which there is no direct evidence of their capacity to induce cancer in humans or in animals, may also be carcinogenic, a statement describing the rationale for this conclusion is added to the evaluation narrative; an additional evaluation may be made for this broader group of agents if the strength of the evidence warrants it.

The agent is described according to the wording of one of the following categories, and the designated group is given. The categorization of an agent is a matter of scientific judgement that reflects the strength of the evidence derived from studies in humans and in experimental animals and from mechanistic and other relevant data.

Group 1: The agent is carcinogenic to humans.

This category is used when there is *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* in humans. Exceptionally, an agent may be placed in this category when evidence of carcinogenicity in humans is less than *sufficient* but there is *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* in experimental

animals and strong evidence in exposed humans that the agent acts through a relevant mechanism of carcinogenicity.

Group 2.

This category includes agents for which, at one extreme, the degree of evidence of carcinogenicity in humans is almost *sufficient*, as well as those for which, at the other extreme, there are no human data but for which there is evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals. Agents are assigned to either Group 2A (*probably carcinogenic to humans*) or Group 2B (*possibly carcinogenic to humans*) on the basis of epidemiological and experimental evidence of carcinogenicity and mechanistic and other relevant data. The terms *probably carcinogenic* and *possibly carcinogenic* have no quantitative significance and are used simply as descriptors of different levels of evidence of human carcinogenicity, with *probably carcinogenic* signifying a higher level of evidence than *possibly carcinogenic*.

Group 2A: The agent is probably carcinogenic to humans.

This category is used when there is *limited evidence of carcinogenicity* in humans and *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* in experimental animals. In some cases, an agent may be classified in this category when there is *inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity* in humans and *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* in experimental animals and strong evidence that the carcinogenesis is mediated by a mechanism that also operates in humans. Exceptionally, an agent may be classified in this category solely on the basis of *limited evidence of carcinogenicity* in humans. An agent may be assigned to this category if it clearly belongs, based on mechanistic considerations, to a class of agents for which one or more members have been classified in Group 1 or Group 2A.

Group 2B: The agent is possibly carcinogenic to humans.

This category is used for agents for which there is *limited evidence of carcinogenicity* in humans and less than *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* in experimental animals. It may also be used when there is *inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity* in humans but there is *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* in experimental animals. In some instances, an agent for which there is *inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity* in humans and less than *sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity* in experimental animals together with supporting evidence from mechanistic and other relevant data may be placed in this group. An agent may be classified in this category solely on the basis of strong evidence from mechanistic and other relevant data.

Group 3: The agent is not classifiable as to its carcinogenicity to humans.

This category is used most commonly for agents for which the evidence of carcinogenicity is *inadequate* in humans and *inadequate* or *limited* in experimental animals.

Exceptionally, agents for which the evidence of carcinogenicity is *inadequate* in humans but *sufficient* in experimental animals may be placed in this category when there is strong evidence that the mechanism of carcinogenicity in experimental animals does not operate in humans.

Agents that do not fall into any other group are also placed in this category.

An evaluation in Group 3 is not a determination of non-carcinogenicity or overall safety. It often means that further research is needed, especially when exposures are widespread or the cancer data are consistent with differing interpretations.

Group 4: The agent is probably not carcinogenic to humans.

This category is used for agents for which there is *evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity*

in humans and in experimental animals. In some instances, agents for which there is *inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity* in humans but *evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity* in experimental animals, consistently and strongly supported by a broad range of mechanistic and other relevant data, may be classified in this group.

(e) Rationale

The reasoning that the Working Group used to reach its evaluation is presented and discussed. This section integrates the major findings from studies of cancer in humans, studies of cancer in experimental animals, and mechanistic and other relevant data. It includes concise statements of the principal line(s) of argument that emerged, the conclusions of the Working Group on the strength of the evidence for each group of studies, citations to indicate which studies were pivotal to these conclusions, and an explanation of the reasoning of the Working Group in weighing data and making evaluations. When there are significant differences of scientific interpretation among Working Group Members, a brief summary of the alternative interpretations is provided, together with their scientific rationale and an indication of the relative degree of support for each alternative.

References

Bieler GS & Williams RL (1993). Ratio estimates, the delta method, and quantal response tests for increased carcinogenicity. *Biometrics*, 49: 793–801. doi:10.2307/2532200 PMID:8241374

Breslow NE & Day NE (1980). Statistical methods in cancer research. Volume I - The analysis of case-control studies. *IARC Sci Publ*, 32: 5–338. PMID:7216345

Breslow NE & Day NE (1987). Statistical methods in cancer research. Volume II–The design and analysis of cohort studies. *IARC Sci Publ*, 82: 1–406. PMID:3329634

Buffler P, Rice J, Baan R *et al.* (2004). Workshop on Mechanisms of Carcinogenesis: Contributions of Molecular Epidemiology. Lyon, 14–17 November 2001. Workshop report. *IARC Sci Publ*, 157: 1–27. PMID:15055286

Capen CC, Dybing E, Rice JM, Wilbourn JD (1999). Species Differences in Thyroid, Kidney and Urinary Bladder Carcinogenesis. Proceedings of a consensus conference. Lyon, France, 3–7 November 1997. *IARC Sci Publ*, 147: 1–225.

Cogliano V, Baan R, Straif K *et al.* (2005). Transparency in IARC Monographs. *Lancet Oncol*, 6: 747. doi:10.1016/S1470-2045(05)70380-6

Cogliano VJ, Baan RA, Straif K *et al.* (2004). The science and practice of carcinogen identification and evaluation. *Environ Health Perspect*, 112: 1269–1274. doi:10.1289/ehp.6950 PMID:15345338

Dunson DB, Chen Z, Harry J (2003). A Bayesian approach for joint modeling of cluster size and subunit-specific outcomes. *Biometrics*, 59: 521–530. doi:10.1111/1541-0420.00062 PMID:14601753

Fung KY, Krewski D, Smythe RT (1996). A comparison of tests for trend with historical controls in carcinogen bioassay. *Can J Stat*, 24: 431–454. doi:10.2307/3315326

Gart JJ, Krewski D, Lee PN *et al.* (1986). Statistical methods in cancer research. Volume III–The design and analysis of long-term animal experiments. *IARC Sci Publ*, 79: 1–219. PMID:3301661

Greenland S (1998). Meta-analysis. In: *Modern Epidemiology.* Rothman KJ, Greenland S, editors. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, pp. 643–673

Greim H, Gelbke H-P, Reuter U *et al.* (2003). Evaluation of historical control data in carcinogenicity studies. *Hum Exp Toxicol*, 22: 541–549. doi:10.1191/0960327103ht394oa PMID:14655720

Haseman JK, Huff J, Boorman GA (1984). Use of historical control data in carcinogenicity studies in rodents. *Toxicol Pathol*, 12: 126–135. doi:10.1177/019262338401200203 PMID:11478313

Hill AB (1965). The environment and disease: Association or causation? *Proc R Soc Med*, 58: 295–300. PMID:14283879

Hoel DG, Kaplan NL, Anderson MW (1983). Implication of nonlinear kinetics on risk estimation in carcinogenesis. *Science*, 219: 1032–1037. doi:10.1126/science.6823565 PMID:6823565

Huff JE, Eustis SL, Haseman JK (1989). Occurrence and relevance of chemically induced benign neoplasms in long-term carcinogenicity studies. *Cancer Metastasis Rev*, 8: 1–22. doi:10.1007/BF00047055 PMID:2667783

IARC (1977). *IARC Monographs Programme on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*. Preamble (IARC Intern Tech Rep No. 77/002)

IARC (1978). *Chemicals with Sufficient Evidence of Carcinogenicity in Experimental Animals* – IARC Monographs *Volumes 1–17* (IARC Intern Tech Rep No. 78/003)

IARC (1979). *Criteria to Select Chemicals for* IARC Monographs (IARC Intern Tech Rep No. 79/003)

IARC (1982). Chemicals, industrial processes and industries associated with cancer in humans (IARC Monographs, Volumes 1 to 29). *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum Suppl*, 4: 1–292.

IARC (1983). *Approaches to Classifying Chemical Carcinogens According to Mechanism of Action* (IARC Intern Tech Rep No. 83/001)

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1988). *Report of an IARC Working Group to Review the Approaches and Processes Used to Evaluate the Carcinogenicity of Mixtures and Groups of Chemicals* (IARC Intern Tech Rep No. 88/002)

IARC (1991). *A Consensus Report of an IARC Monographs Working Group on the Use of Mechanisms of Carcinogenesis in Risk Identification* (IARC Intern Tech Rep No. 91/002)

IARC (2005). *Report of the Advisory Group to Recommend Updates to the Preamble to the* IARC Monographs (IARC Intern Rep No. 05/001)

IARC (2006). *Report of the Advisory Group to Review the Amended Preamble to the* IARC Monographs (IARC Intern Rep No. 06/001)

IARC (2004). Some drinking-water disinfectants and contaminants, including arsenic. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 84: 1–477. PMID:15645577

McGregor DB, Rice JM, Venitt S, editors (1999). The use of short- and medium-term tests for carcinogens and data on genetic effects in carcinogenic hazard evaluation. Consensus report. *IARC Sci Publ*, 146: 1–536.

Montesano R, Bartsch H, Vainio H *et al.,* editors (1986). Long-term and short-term assays for carcinogenesis—a critical appraisal. *IARC Sci Publ*, 83: 1–564.

OECD (2002). *Guidance Notes for Analysis and Evaluation of Chronic Toxicity and Carcinogenicity Studies* (Series on Testing and Assessment No. 35), Paris: OECD

Peto R, Pike MC, Day NE *et al.* (1980). Guidelines for simple, sensitive significance tests for carcinogenic effects in long-term animal experiments. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum Suppl*, 2: 311–426. PMID:6935185

Portier CJ & Bailer AJ (1989). Testing for increased carcinogenicity using a survival-adjusted quantal response test. *Fundam Appl Toxicol*, 12: 731–737. doi:10.1016/0272-0590(89)90004-3 PMID:2744275

Sherman CD, Portier CJ, Kopp-Schneider A (1994). Multistage models of carcinogenesis: an approximation for the size and number distribution of late-stage clones. *Risk Anal*, 14: 1039–1048. doi:10.1111/j.1539-6924.1994.tb00074.x PMID:7846311

Stewart BW, Kleihues P, editors (2003). *World Cancer Report,* Lyon: IARC

Tomatis L, Aitio A, Wilbourn J, Shuker L (1989). Human carcinogens so far identified. *Jpn J Cancer Res*, 80: 795–807. PMID:2513295

Toniolo P, Boffetta P, Shuker DEG *et al.,* editors (1997). Proceedings of the workshop on application of biomarkers to cancer epidemiology. Lyon, France, 20–23 February 1996. *IARC Sci Publ*, 142: 1–318.

Vainio H, Magee P, McGregor D, McMichael A, editors (1992). Mechanisms of carcinogenesis in risk identification. IARC Working Group Meeting. Lyon, 11–18 June 1991. *IARC Sci Publ*, 116: 1–608.

Vainio H, Wilbourn JD, Sasco AJ *et al.* (1995). [Identification of human carcinogenic risks in IARC monographs.] *Bull Cancer*, 82: 339–348. PMID:7626841

Vineis P, Malats N, Lang M *et al.,* editors (1999). Metabolic Polymorphisms and Susceptibility to Cancer. *IARC Sci Publ*, 148: 1–510. PMID:10493243

Wilbourn J, Haroun L, Heseltine E *et al.* (1986). Response of experimental animals to human carcinogens: an analysis based upon the IARC Monographs programme. *Carcinogenesis*, 7: 1853–1863. doi:10.1093/carcin/7.11.1853 PMID:3769134

GENERAL REMARKS

Part F of Volume 100 of the *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans* contains updated assessments of several chemical agents, complex mixtures, and related occupations that were classified as *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)* in Volumes 1–99.

Volume 100 – General information

About half of the agents classified in Group 1 were last reviewed more than 20 years ago, before mechanistic studies became prominent in evaluations of carcinogenicity. In addition, more recent epidemiological studies and animal cancer bioassays have demonstrated that many cancer hazards reported in earlier studies were later observed in other organs or through different exposure scenarios. Much can be learned from updating the assessments of agents that are known to cause cancer in humans. Accordingly, IARC has selected A Review of Human Carcinogens to be the topic for Volume 100 of the *IARC Monographs*. It is hoped that this volume, by compiling the knowledge accumulated through several decades of cancer research, will stimulate cancer prevention activities worldwide, and will be a valued resource for future research to identify other agents suspected of causing cancer in humans.

Volume 100 was developed by six separate Working Groups:

Pharmaceuticals
Biological agents
Arsenic, metals, fibres, and dusts
Radiation
Personal habits and indoor combustions
Chemical agents and related occupations

Because the scope of Volume 100 is so broad, its *Monographs* are focused on key information. Each *Monograph* presents a description of a carcinogenic agent and how people are exposed, critical overviews of the epidemiological studies and animal cancer bioassays, and a concise review of the toxicokinetic properties of the agent, plausible mechanisms of carcinogenesis, and potentially susceptible populations and life-stages. Details of the design and results of individual epidemiological studies and animal cancer bioassays are summarized in tables. Short tables that highlight key results appear in the printed version of Volume 100, and more extensive tables that include all studies appear on the website of the *IARC Monographs* programme (http://monographs.iarc.fr). For a few well-established associations (for example, tobacco smoke and human lung cancer), it was impractical to

include all studies, even in the website tables. In those instances, the rationale for inclusion or exclusion of sets of studies is given.

Each section of Volume 100 was reviewed by a subgroup of the Working Group with appropriate subject expertise; then all sections of each *Monograph* were discussed together in a plenary session of the full Working Group. As a result, the evaluation statements and other conclusions reflect the views of the Working Group as a whole.

Volume 100 compiles information on tumour sites and mechanisms of carcinogenesis. This information will be used in two scientific publications that may be considered as annexes to this volume. One publication, Tumour-Site Concordance between Humans and Experimental Animals, will analyse the correspondence of tumour sites among humans and different animal species. It will discuss the predictive value of different animal tumours for cancer in humans, and perhaps identify human tumour sites for which there are no good animal models. Another publication, Mechanisms Involved in Human Carcinogenesis, will describe mechanisms known to or likely to cause cancer in humans. Joint consideration of multiple agents that act through similar mechanisms should facilitate the development of a more comprehensive discussion of these mechanisms. Because susceptibility often has its basis in a mechanism, this could also facilitate a more confident and precise description of populations that may be susceptible to agents acting through each mechanism. This publication will also suggest biomarkers that could render future research more informative. In this way, IARC hopes that Volume 100 will serve to improve the design of future cancer studies.

Introduction to Volume 100F

This sixth and final part of Volume 100 of the *IARC Monographs* contains updated assessments of several chemical agents, complex mixtures, and related occupations that were classified as *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)* in Volumes 1–99. In the early 1970s, the *IARC Monographs* began as a programme to evaluate chemical substances; among the agents considered in the present volume, 4-aminobiphenyl, auramine production, and benzidine were first reviewed in Volume 1 (IARC, 1972), benzo[*a*]pyrene in Volume 3 (IARC, 1973), and 2-naphthylamine, bis(chloromethyl)ether, and chloromethyl methyl ether in Volume 4 (IARC, 1974). For most of these chemicals, the cancer hazard was recognized already when they were first reviewed, although the classification in Group 1 was formalized later, in Working-Group meetings for Supplements 1, 4, and 7 (IARC, 1979, 1982, 1987).

Some workplace conditions entail complex exposures to varying chemical mixtures. This makes it difficult to attribute an excess cancer risk to specific causal agents, particularly in the absence of long-term follow-up studies showing a reduction of risk following the removal of specific agents from the workplace. Accordingly, this Volume 100F also contains updated assessments of chemical-related occupations and industries that were classified in Volumes 1–99 as *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

The agents that are assessed in the present volume were last reviewed during *IARC Monograph* meetings dating from 1987 till 2008 (see Table).

It should be noted that, in the present volume, some of these agents are named slightly differently, compared with previous evaluations.

Agents reviewed in this volume

Agent	Volume Number	Year of meeting
4-Aminobiphenyl	Volume 99	2008
Benzidine and dyes metabolized to benzidine	Volume 99	2008
Methylenebis(chloroaniline) (MOCA)	Volume 99	2008
2-Naphthylamine	Volume 99	2008
ortho-Toluidine	Volume 99	2008
Auramine production	Volume 99	2008
Magenta production	Volume 99	2008
Benzo[*a*]pyrene	Volume 92	2005
Coal gasification, occupational exposures during	Volume 92	2005
Coal-tar distillation, occupational exposures during	Volume 92	2005
Coal-tar pitch (paving and roofing with), occupational exposures during	Volume 92	2005
Coke production, occupational exposures during	Volume 92	2005
Mineral oils (untreated and mildly treated)	Supplement 7	1987
Shale oils	Supplement 7	1987
Chimney sweep, occupational exposure as a	Volume 92	2005
Aluminium production	Volume 92	2005
Aflatoxins (naturally occurring mixtures of)	Volume 82	2002
Benzene	Supplement 7	1987
Bis(chloromethyl)ether and chloromethyl methyl ether (technical grade)	Supplement 7	1987
1,3-Butadiene	Volume 97	2007
2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin	Volume 69	1997
Ethylene oxide	Volume 97	2007
Formaldehyde	Volume 88	2006
Sulfur mustard	Supplement 7	1987
Vinyl chloride	Volume 97	2007
Isopropyl alcohol manufacture (strong-acid process)	Supplement 7	1987
Strong-inorganic-acid mists containing sulfuric acid (occupational exposure)	Volume 54	1991
Iron and steel founding	Supplement 7	1987
Painter (occupational exposure as a)	Volume 98	2007
Rubber-manufacturing industry	Supplement 7	1987

Specific remarks about some of the agents reviewed in this volume

Four aromatic amines (4-aminobiphenyl, benzidine, 2-naphthylamine, *ortho*-toluidine) and two related industrial processes (auramine production, magenta production) were re-affirmed as Group-1 carcinogens based on *sufficient evidence* that they cause cancer of the urinary bladder in humans. The Group-1 classification of dyes metabolised to benzidine was based on *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity for some of these dyes in experimental animals and strong mechanistic evidence indicating that the metabolism of these dyes leads to the release of free benzidine – a re-affirmed Group-1 carcinogen – and to the subsequent induction of chromosomal aberrations in all experimental animal species studied, and in humans exposed to these dyes. Likewise, the Group-1 classification of 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) was based on *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in experimental animals and strong mechanistic evidence, indicating that the toxicological profile of this genotoxic amine is similar to that of *ortho*-toluidine (a re-affirmed Group-1 carcinogen), that it forms DNA adducts in human urothelial cells *in vitro* and haemoglobin adducts in the blood of exposed workers, and that it causes cytogenetic alterations in urothelial cells and lymphocytes of exposed workers.

Exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) causes cancers of the skin and lung in humans. Although there are no epidemiological studies of benzo[*a*]pyrene as a single exposure, it is carcinogenic in numerous animal species. There is mechanistic evidence indicating that benzo[*a*]pyrene is metabolized to highly reactive diolepoxides that form covalent DNA adducts, which have been shown to induce mutations in the K-*RAS* oncogene and the *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene in human lung tumours, and in corresponding genes in lung tumours in mice. Exposures to benzo[*a*]pyrene and benzo[*a*]pyrene-containing complex mixtures also induce cytogenetic alterations, DNA breakage, oxidative DNA lesions, and specific mutations in oncogenes and tumour-suppressor genes, all of which can contribute to the carcinogenic effects of benzo[*a*]pyrene and benzo[*a*]pyrene-containing complex mixtures in exposed humans. This consistent and coherent mechanistic evidence from experimental and human studies provides biological plausibility to support the overall classification of benzo[*a*]pyrene as a Group-1 carcinogen.

Two PAH-containing mixtures (chimney soot, coal-tar pitch), and occupational exposures in four PAH-related industries (coal-tar distillation, coal gasification, coke production, aluminium production) were confirmed as Group-1 carcinogens.

Workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry have an increased risk for leukaemia, lymphoma, and cancers of the urinary bladder, lung, and stomach. Due to the diversity and complexity of the exposures during rubber-manufacturing, the Working Group – like the previous one three decades ago (*IARC Monograph* Volume 28, 1982) – could not identify specific causative agents. However, there continues to be strong evidence of genotoxic and cytogenetic effects in workers in this industry.

There is consistent evidence that untreated or mildly treated mineral oils cause cancer of the skin, specifically of the scrotum, in humans. The association is highly unlikely to be due to chance, bias, or confounding, given the large case series, supportive epidemiological evidence, the rarity of scrotal cancer, and the intensity of exposure during the period of interest. Despite the fact that a significant proportion of workers exposed occupationally to mineral oils and shale oils are women, epidemiological studies established a statistically significant risk only for skin cancer in the scrotum, because of the extreme rarity of this type of cancer at this site. This observation does not imply that the skin-cancer hazard is restricted to males.

Evidence from three cohort studies indicated that exposure of humans during the manufacture of isopropyl alcohol by the strong-acid process causes cancer of the paranasal sinuses, an extremely rare cancer. The risk for laryngeal cancer may also have been elevated in these workers. This evaluation re-affirms the conclusion of a previous Working Group (IARC, 1987). It was noted that since that time none of these cohorts nor any other isopropanol-manufacturing unit has been evaluated for cancer mortality or incidence without the inclusion in the study population of workers in other production units. An increased incidence of other cancers in the upper respiratory tract was observed in these studies, but it was not possible to attribute these cancers to exposures during isopropanol production. Therefore, the possible association of these tumours with this specific exposure could not be evaluated.

The Working Group reviewed more than 100 epidemiological studies of benzene and confirmed its carcinogenicity, with *sufficient evidence* for acute non-lymphocytic leukaemia and *limited evidence* for acute and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia, multiple myeloma, and non-Hodgkin lymphoma. The Working Group noted the extraordinary expansion in the epidemiological literature on benzene-related cancers since the previous evaluation, the diversity of industrial and environmental exposure scenarios where benzene has been studied, and the evolution in the histological classification of leukaemias and lymphoid neoplasms over the past decades, and suggested that a re-evaluation of the cancer hazards from exposure to benzene be conducted in due time.

Dioxin (2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin, TCDD) was previously classified in Group 1, based on *limited evidence* of carcinogenicity in humans, *sufficient evidence* in rodents, and strong evidence in humans and animals for a mechanism via initial binding to the aryl-hydrocarbon receptor (AhR), which leads to changes in gene expression, cell replication, and apoptosis. There is now *sufficient evidence* from epidemiological studies for all cancers combined, making TCDD the first agent classified initially in Group 1 based on *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in experimental animals and strong mechanistic data, to be later confirmed by increased cancer incidence in humans. This highlights the ability of mechanistic information to provide robust evidence of carcinogenicity. Like TCDD, 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran and 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 126) are complete carcinogens in experimental animals, and there is ample evidence that they act through the same AhR-mediated mechanism. The Working Group classified these two chemicals in Group 1. The Working Group discussed the possibility of evaluating an additional 26 polychlorinated dibenzodioxins, dibenzofurans and biphenyls for carcinogenicity, based upon data showing similarity to the mechanism outlined for TCDD. According to the *IARC Monographs* Preamble (Part B, Section 6d), an evaluation may be made for a broad group of agents, even including substances for which there is no direct information on cancer in humans or experimental animals, if it is warranted by the overall evidence. Recognizing the complexity of the mechanistic evaluation, the Working Group decided this time to make evaluations for two indicator chemicals, 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran and 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 126), for which there are recent positive NTP bioassays, supported by data on a wide range of mechanistic events. The Working Group suggested that a future generic evaluation be focused on the entire class of dioxin-like compounds, taking into account the available mechanistic data.

The Working Group unanimously reaffirmed the classification of formaldehyde in Group 1, based on *sufficient evidence* in humans of nasopharyngeal cancer. A possible association with leukaemia was considered strong "but not sufficient" by a previous Working Group, mainly because of the lack of a plausible mechanism. Since that time, the epidemiological evidence has become stronger: a recent

study found that embalming was significantly associated with an increased risk for myeloid leukaemia, with cumulative years of embalming and with increasing peak-exposure to formaldehyde. In addition, a recent study of a small group of workers exposed to formaldehyde showed numerical chromosomal aberrations in myeloid progenitor cells (chromosome-7 monosomy, chromosome-8 trisomy) as also observed in myeloid leukaemia, and haematological changes in peripheral blood that are indicative of effects on the bone marrow. A small majority of the Working Group concluded that, overall, there is *sufficient evidence* of a causal association between exposure to formaldehyde and an increased risk for leukaemia, particularly myeloid leukaemia.

Identification of tumour sites

One of the goals of the review of Group-1 carcinogens in Volume 100 of the *IARC Monographs* is the identification of tumour sites with *sufficient evidence* in humans. The tumour-site identification in this volume was – naturally – limited by the research that has been published to date, and it should be noted that many plausible tumour sites identified in rodents have not been considered in humans. For example, several aromatic amines induce mammary gland tumours in rats, and there is mechanistic evidence that supports a potential for aromatic amines to cause this cancer, but the epidemiological studies on cancer associated with exposure to these substances have not considered breast cancer, mainly because the industrial cohorts were generally small and did not include women. In addition, no case–control studies are available on breast cancer associated with exposure to aromatic amines. Similarly, mammary gland tumours are the only tumour induced by 1,3-butadiene in both rats and mice, but epidemiological studies – while demonstrating an increased risk for leukaemia – have just started to explore the possibility of this chemical being associated with breast cancer.

Changes in occupational exposures over time

Changes in occupational hygiene or industrial processes can alter the profile of workplace exposures over time. Moreover, regulations and working conditions may differ greatly from one country to another. For these reasons, it is useful to identify the specific agents responsible for excess cancer risks whenever possible (see *IARC Monographs* Preamble Part B, Section 6a). It is important to recognize that new studies of modern and improved workplaces would not reflect risks that might still exist in areas where adequate regulations or process improvements are not fully implemented. Consequently, previous evaluations of occupations that were classified as *carcinogenic to humans* stand as a historical record of hazards that are known to cause cancer. In future monographs, as historical exposures described as occupations are reduced and risk is abated, previous findings should be noted as indicative of potential carcinogenic risk in this occupation should historical exposure levels return or continue to exist elsewhere. Also, as industrial processes change, carcinogenicity profiles in the workplace will change and evaluations need to take these changing processes into account.

Incorporation of new mechanistic data in future evaluations

The ever-increasing understanding of the molecular mechanisms underpinning the classical concepts of initiation, promotion and progression in cancer provides a challenge for its integration into cancer-hazard identification. In most instances, genotoxic pathways have been considered central to the carcinogenic process and mechanistic studies characterizing these outcomes have provided important supporting information for the evaluation. The panel of genotoxic endpoints has been extended over the years, from classical mutagenicity in bacteria to the current demonstration of mutation induction in oncogenes and tumour-suppressor genes.

Mechanisms of non-genotoxic carcinogenesis are being identified for an increasing number of chemicals evaluated by the IARC *Monographs*. In the future, this area will undoubtedly expand into processes mediated by epigenetic events. Collectively, new types of information are being used to assess these mechanisms, such as epigenomics, proteomics, metabolomics and systems-biology approaches. These strategies have identified changes in specific genes, proteins, signalling pathways, networks of pathways, cell-cycle genes and transcription factors. Other studies have focused on changes in methylation, and on patterns of microRNA expression and effects of small interfering RNA (si-RNA). Proteomics studies have identified post-translational modifications, and metabolomic studies have revealed how endogenous metabolite patterns change after exposure. These studies are conducted in human and non-human cells, tissues from experimental animals, and in human tissues following occupational and/or environmental exposures. It is recommended that IARC convene an Advisory Group to develop guidelines for the evaluation and incorporation of this type of information to support a specific mechanism and/or to derive an evaluation of carcinogenicity for a specific exposure.

References

IARC (1972). Some inorganic substances, chlorinated hydrocarbons, aromatic amines, N-nitroso compounds and natural products. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 1: 1–184.

IARC (1973). Certain polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and heterocyclic compounds. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 3: 1–271.

IARC (1974). Some aromatic amines, hydrazine and related substances, N-nitroso compounds and miscellaneous alkylating agents. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 4: 1–286.

IARC (1979). Chemicals and industrial processes associated with cancer in humans. IARC Monographs, volumes 1 to 20. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum Suppl*, 1: 1–71. PMID:296141

IARC (1982). Chemicals, industrial processes and industries associated with cancer in humans (IARC Monographs, volumes 1 to 29). *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum Suppl*, 4: 1–292.

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

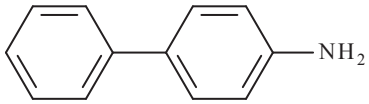
4-AMINOBIPHENYL

4-Aminobiphenyl was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1971, 1987, and 2008 (IARC, 1972, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 92-67-1
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
[1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-amine



$C_{12}H_{11}N$
Relative molecular mass: 169.22
Description: Colourless, crystalline solid that turns purple when exposed to air
Solubility: Slightly soluble in cold water; soluble in acetone, chloroform, ethanol, diethyl ether, and hot water

From O'Neil (2006), Lide (2008), and IARC (2010)

1.2 Uses

4-Aminobiphenyl has been used in the past as a rubber antioxidant, as a dye intermediate, and in the detection of sulfates. It is reportedly used as a model carcinogen in mutagenicity studies and in cancer research (NTP, 2005; O'Neil, 2006; HSDB, 2009).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

Historically, occupational exposure to 4-aminobiphenyl mainly occurred during its production and its use as a rubber antioxidant and dye intermediate. No exposure measurements are available for these occupational exposure situations (IARC, 2010).

Occupational exposure can also occur when workers are exposed to products contaminated with 4-aminobiphenyl, or in the case of exposure to benzidine and benzidine-based dyes, from which 4-aminobiphenyl can be metabolically released (IARC, 2010). In a study from India on workers exposed to benzidine or benzidine-based dyes and a non-exposed control group, urine samples were analysed for 4-aminobiphenyl and acetylated 4-aminobiphenyl (Ac4ABP). 4-Aminobiphenyl was found in 30 of 33 urine samples from exposed workers and in one sample from the 13 control workers. The workers exposed to benzidine had significantly higher median 4-aminobiphenyl concentrations (57 pmol/mL) than those exposed to benzidine-based dyes (29.3 pmol/mL). Ac4ABP was only detected (79.5 pmol/mL) in the urine sample that was provided by the person who had the highest 4-aminobiphenyl concentration (Beyerbach *et al.*, 2006).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

The main sources of exposure to 4-aminobiphenyl for the general population are cigarette smoking and second-hand tobacco smoke, as 4-aminobiphenyl is formed during tobacco combustion. The following amounts of 4-aminobiphenyl have been reported in unfiltered mainstream, filtered mainstream and side-stream cigarette smoke, respectively: 2.4 to 4.6 ng/cigarette; 0.2 to 23 ng/cigarette; and up to 140 ng/cigarette (Patrianakos & Hoffmann, 1979; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1997).

Other potential sources include hair dyes and food colourant. 4-Aminobiphenyl can occur as a contaminant in 2-aminobiphenyl, which is used in the manufacture of dyes. 4-Aminobiphenyl has been detected in aniline, in the drug and cosmetic colour additive D&C Yellow No. 1, in the food dye FD&C Yellow No. 6, and in hair dyes (Richfield-Fratz *et al.*, 1985; Chiang *et al.*, 1999; Turesky *et al.*, 2003; Akyüz, 2007; Bafana *et al.*, 2007). 4-Aminobiphenyl has also been found as a contaminant in diphenylamine, a fungicide that has been used on apples.

4-Aminobiphenyl has been detected in fume from cooking oils. In a study from Taiwan, China, concentrations of 4-aminobiphenyl were 35.7 μg/m^3 in fumes from cooking with sunflower oil, 26.4 μg/m^3 in vegetable oil fumes and 23.3 μg/m^3 in oil fumes from refined lard (Chiang *et al.*, 1999).

Living near benzidine-contaminated sites may result in exposure to 4-aminobiphenyl, as benzidine in the environment can be degraded to 4-aminobiphenyl by certain bacteria (Bafana *et al.*, 2007).

2. Cancer in Humans

2.1 Descriptive studies

Melick *et al.* (1955) reported a series of 19 cases of cancer of the urinary bladder in 171 male workers (11.1%) engaged in the production of 4-aminobiphenyl. The exposure took place in a chemical plant in the United States of America (USA) between 1935 and 1955. In a follow-up study it was reported that among 315 male workers exposed to 4-aminobiphenyl, 53 had developed bladder tumours (Melick *et al.*, 1971).

2.2 Cohort studies

Following the cessation of industrial production of 4-aminobiphenyl in 1955, a surveillance programme in exposed workers revealed 31 of 285 men with significantly abnormal epithelial cells in urinary sediments, of whom ten were diagnosed with histologically confirmed bladder carcinoma (Melamed *et al.*, 1960). Subsequently, 11 additional cases were found among 18 of the men reported in 1960 to have abnormal cells (Koss *et al.*, 1965). Expanded surveillance programmes identified 35 workers with cancer of the urinary bladder among 503 workers (Koss *et al.*, 1969) and 43 men with confirmed bladder carcinoma among 86 men with suspicious or positive histology (Melamed, 1972).

Cancer mortality was studied among 884 male workers at a chemical plant in West Virginia (USA) that produced a variety of chemicals. A ten-fold increase in mortality from bladder cancer was reported, with all nine cases having started work before 4-aminobiphenyl production ceased in the plant in 1952 (Zack & Gaffey, 1983). An analysis of mortality through 1987 showed 11 deaths from cancer of the urinary bladder among workers in jobs with possible exposure to 4-aminobiphenyl, compared to 0.54 expected (Collins *et al.*, 1993). Exposure to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin

(TCDD) was also considered, based on reports of chloracne related to an industrial accident with TCDD in 1949, but ten of the 11 workers who died of cancer of the urinary bladder did not have chloracne. Collins *et al.* (1999) conducted another cohort study in the same plant and evaluated the risk for cancer of the urinary bladder associated with exposure to 4-aminobiphenyl and another bladder carcinogen, 2-mercaptobenzothiazole (MBT). Eight workers in jobs with exposure to 4-aminobiphenyl and MBT died of cancer of the urinary bladder, 0.3 deaths were expected (SMR 27.1; 95%CI: 11.7–53.4), while five workers exposed to MBT in jobs associated with little or no exposure to 4-aminobiphenyl died of cancer of the urinary bladder, compared with 1.2 expected.

2.3 Synthesis

Case reports and cohort-surveillance studies indicate a high occurrence of cancer of the urinary bladder in workers occupationally exposed to 4-aminobiphenyl, supported by evaluations of mortality in a chemical plant in the USA. Bladder cancer is strongly associated with occupational exposure to 4-aminobiphenyl.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenicity of 4-aminobiphenyl in the mouse, rat, dog, and rabbit after oral administration or after subcutaneous or intraperitoneal injection have been reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1972, 1987, 2010). The results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1. There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since the most recent evaluation (IARC, 2010).

4-Aminobiphenyl was tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration in three studies in mice, six studies in dogs and one study in rabbits, by subcutaneous injection in one study in mice and one study in rats and by intraperitoneal injection in four studies in mice.

Oral administration of 4-aminobiphenyl caused increased incidences of angiosarcoma (all sites) in male and female mice, bladder carcinoma in male mice (Schieferstein *et al.*, 1985), hepatocellular carcinoma in female mice (Clayson *et al.*, 1967; Schieferstein *et al.*, 1985), and bladder carcinoma in male and female dogs (Walpole *et al.*, 1954; Deichmann *et al.*, 1958, 1965; Block *et al.*, 1978) and in rabbits (sex not specified) (Bonser, 1962). [The Working Group noted that there were limitations in the design and reporting of these studies.] The incidence of hepatocellular adenoma and/or carcinoma was increased in male mice after subcutaneous (Gorrod *et al.*, 1968) or intraperitoneal injection (Dooley *et al.*, 1992; Parsons *et al.*, 2005). [Most of these studies were designed to study tumour formation in the liver and the histopathology is limited to examination of the liver only.]

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility

Biotransformation pathways and genotoxic effects of aromatic amines are described in detail in IARC (2010); highlights are summarized below.

Exposures to aromatic amines, such as 2-naphthylamine, 4-aminobiphenyl and benzidine in the textile dye and rubber tyre industries have long been known to cause cancer of the urinary bladder in humans. These substances also induce neoplasms at multiple organ sites in laboratory animals. Tobacco smoke and hair dyes are major non-occupational sources of exposure to

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of 4-aminobiphenyl in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse C57 x IF F_1 (M, F) 70 wk Clayson *et al.* (1967)	Oral–Gavage A group of 21 M and 28 F mice were dosed with 0.2 ml of a 25% 4-amino-biphenyl solution in arachis oil, twice/wk for 50 wk, and kept for an additional 20 wk. A group of 19 M and 31 F served as untreated controls	Hepatoma, malignant: [hepatocellular carcinoma] M–0/19, 4/21; F–0/31, 13/28* Bladder carcinoma: M–0/19, 1/21; F–0/31, 0/28	No statistics *[$P < 0.0001$]	Also reported were four "probably malignant" hepatomas in female mice. Purity of 4-aminobiphenyl NR
Mouse BALB/cStCrlfC3Hf/Nctr (M, F) 96 wk Schieferstein *et al.* (1985)	Oral–Drinking-water Groups of 120 M and 120 F mice were given 4-aminobiphenyl as the hydrochloride salt (> 99.5% pure) at doses of 0, 7, 14, 28, 55, 110, and 220 ppm (M) and 0, 7, 19, 38, 75, 150, and 300 ppm (F). Interim sacrifices were at 13, 26, 39, 52, and 96 wk	Angiosarcoma (all sites): M–1/118, 1/117, 1/118, 2/119, 4/115, 5/119, 14/118* F–1/119, 4/120, 4/120, 2/120, 14/120, 26/118, 11/117* Bladder carcinoma: M–0/116, 1/117, 1/118, 0/118, 6/115, 15/118, 23/118* F–0/118, 0/118, 0/119, 1/118, 0/118, 5/117, 1/117 Hepatocellular carcinoma: M–2/118, 1/117, 0/118, 0/117, 0/114, 3/118, 2/117 F–0/117, 0/120, 2/120, 4/119, 10/119, 14/118, 7/117*	*$P < 5x10^{-5}$, positive trend	
Dog Beagle (M) 33 mo Walpole *et al.* (1954)	Oral Two, 7 mo-old male dogs were given 4-aminobiphenyl in a gelatin capsule once daily, 6 × /wk until termination of the study. The dose level was lowered during the course of the experiment and dosing was also interrupted temporarily for 6 mo. The experiment was terminated after 33 mo; total dose for the two dogs was 2.9 and 3.3 g/kg bw, respectively	Bladder carcinomas occurred in both dogs	NR	No concurrent controls. Historical data from this laboratory show that thirty Beagle dogs (age, 3–9 yrs) that died of various causes did not develop bladder tumours. Purity of 4-aminobiphenyl NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Dog Mongrel (F) Lifetime Deichmann *et al.* (1958)	Oral A group of four young adult female mongrel dogs were given 0.3 g of 4-aminobiphenyl admixed into the food on 5 d/wk for 1 yr. The dogs then received an oral dose (capsule) of 0.3 g of this compound 3 × /wk for the rest of the study. The total dose (range) at first appearance of tumours was 87.5–144.0 g per dog, corresponding to 8.2–14.1 g/kg bw	Bladder carcinomas occurred in all four dogs after 21–34 mo	NR	No concurrent controls. Experimental design poorly described. Bladder is only tissue examined.
Dog Beagle (F) Up to 37 mo Deichmann *et al.* (1965)	Oral A group of six 6–12 mo-old female dogs were given an oral dose (capsule) of 4-aminobiphenyl at 1.0 mg/kg bw, 5 × / wk for up to 37 mo. The total dose range was 5.35–7.34 g per dog.	Bladder carcinomas (transitional cell type) were observed in three dogs, bladder papillomas in the three other dogs.	NR	No concurrent controls. Bladder is only tissue examined. Purity of 4-aminobiphenyl NR
Dog Beagle (F) 42 mo Block *et al.* (1978)	Oral A group of 24 female dogs (age, 4 mo) were given 4-aminobiphenyl orally in a corn-oil suspension contained in a capsule on 5 d/wk for 36 mo.	Transitional cell urinary bladder carcinomas 20/24 Grade-2 and -3 tumours 2/24 Grade-1 tumours 2/24 no detectable tumours		Authors indicate that twenty matched littermates served as controls, but no other information was provided for the control animals. Purity of 4-aminobiphenyl NR
Rabbit Strain NR (sex NR) Lifetime Bonser (1962)	Oral A group of 7 rabbits were treated with 4-aminobiphenyl to the limit of tolerance, which was continued until the onset of the final illness. Three animals were sacrificed in the first 2 yr and two each at 3–4 and 5–6 yr after the start of treatment. A group of 12 rabbits served as controls, 5 of which were sacrificed in the first two yr, one at 3–4 yr, and three each at 5–6 and > 7 yr after the start of treatment.	Bladder carcinoma: 0/12, 3/7	NR [$P < 0.036$]	Experimental design very poorly described. It appears bladder is the only tissue examined. Sex NR. Purity of 4-aminobiphenyl NR Dose and dose regimen NR
Mouse Swiss (M, F) 52 wk Gorrod *et al.* (1968)	Subcutaneous injection A group of 52 newborn mice were injected s.c. with 200 µg of 4-amino-biphenyl on each of the first three d of life, separated at weaning into a group of 24 M and 27 F, and kept for up to 52 wk. Groups of 41 M and 41 F newborn mice served as vehicle controls.	Male Hepatomas: M–5/41, 19/20 F–2/41, 4/23	NR [$P < 0.0001$] [NR]	Purity of 4-aminobiphenyl NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat Albino (M, F) Lifetime (animals kept for up to 582 d) Walpole *et al.* (1952)	Subcutaneous injection Groups of 11 M and 12 F rats were each divided in two groups and given 4-aminobiphenyl in arachis oil 5 × /wk for a mean duration of 250–376 dosing d, to a total mean dose per animal of 3.6–5.8 g/kg bw. A control group of 12 M and 11 F rats received arachis oil only.	Intestinal tumours M–0/12, 3/6 (4.4 g/kg bw), 1/5 (5.8 g/kg bw) F–1/11, 1/6 (3.6 g/kg bw), 2/6 (4.2 g/kg bw)	[$P < 0.05$], [NR] [NR], [NR]	Experimental design, especially exposure durations, poorly described. Small numbers of animals make study results difficult to interpret.
Mouse B6C3F$_1$/nctr (M) 12 mo Dooley *et al.* (1992)	Intraperitoneal injection Newborn male mice were given 4-aminobiphenyl (> 98%). The amounts administered were 0, 0.625 and 1.25 µmol dissolved in 35 µl DMSO, injected in portions of 5, 10 and 20 µl on d 1, 8 and 15 after birth, respectively. Surviving pups were weaned on d 21 and designated for necropsy at 8 or 12 mo of age.	At 12 mo: Hepatocellular adenomas: 5/44, 19/19*, 15/15* Hepatocellular carcinomas: 0/44, 5/19*$^{\$}$, 5/15* At 8 mo: Hepatocellular adenomas: 1/44, 22/24*, 8/11* No carcinomas	*$P < 0.001$, Fisher exact test), $^{\$}$[$P < 0.005$]	Initial number of animals NR
Mouse B6C3F$_1$ (M) 12 mo Parsons *et al.* (2005)	Intraperitoneal injection Newborn male mice were given 0.3 µmol 4-aminobiphenyl dissolved in DMSO, by a series of injections: 1/7th of the dose on postnatal Day 1, 2/7th on Day 8, and 4/7th on Day 15. Control mice received DMSO only.	Hepatocellular adenoma: 4/18, 19/24 Hepatocellular carcinoma: 0/18, 2/24	[$P < 0.001$] [NR]	Liver is the only tissue examined. Initial number of animals NR
Mouse CD1 (M) 12 mo Von Tungeln *et al.* (1996)	Intraperitoneal injection Newborn male mice were given a total dose of 625 nmol 4-amino-biphenyl (> 99% pure) in 35 µl dimethyl sulfoxide, given in portions of 5, 10 and 20 µl on Days 1, 8, and 15 after birth, respectively. At weaning, the animals were divided over two groups, which were fed *ad libitum* until the age of 14 wk. Thereafter, one group received 90% of the calories of the *ad libitum* feeding regimen during one wk, followed by 75% of the calories during one wk, and then 60% of the calories in the diet until sacrifice at 12 mo.	*Ad-libitum* group: Hepatocellular carcinoma: 6/22 Hepatocellular adenoma: 12/22 Caloric restriction group: Liver tumours: 0/19	$P < 0.02$ $P < 0.001$ Between *ad libitum* and caloric restriction groups	No tumours in calorie-restricted group No untreated controls Initial number of animals NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse CYP1A2 –/– and CYP1A2+/+ (M, F) 16 mo Kimura *et al.* (1999)	Intraperitoneal injection Groups of male and female mice were injected a total dose 600 or 1200 nmol of 4-aminobiphenyl in DMSO. Control animals were injected with DMSO only.	Hepatocellular carcinoma: -/- M–0/12, 5/27, 8/42 +/+ M–0/12, 6/30, 4/26 -/- F– 0/25, 0/25, 0/27 +/+ F– 0/25, 1/23, 0/33 Hepatocellular adenoma: -/- M–2/12, 13/27**, 29/42* +/+ M–2/12, 21/30*, 18/26* -/- F– 2/25, 2/25, 3/27 +/+ F– 2/25, 4/23, 1/33	*$P < 0.01$ **$P < 0.05$	Liver was the only tissue examined. Initial number of animals NR Mice derived from a mixed background of 129/Sv and C57BL/6 strains

bw, body weight; d, day or days; DMSO, dimethyl sulfoxide; F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

arylamines, as is demonstrated by the detection of aminobiphenyl-haemoglobin adducts (Bryant *et al.*, 1988; Ward *et al.*, 1996; Beyerbach *et al.*, 2006), which can be 3- to 10-fold more abundant in tobacco smokers than in nonsmokers (Yu *et al.*, 2002). Other environmental sources of exposure are likely to exist as well, because biomarkers derived from aromatic amines, such as haemoglobin adducts or urinary metabolites have been identified also in non-smokers who are not occupationally exposed to these chemicals.

Multiple metabolic pathways are involved in the activation of aromatic amines to DNA-reactive intermediates. Metabolism is initiated in the liver with either *N*-oxidation (by cytochrome P-450-associated enzymes) or *N*-acetylation (by *N*-acetyltransferase 2, NAT2). *N*-oxidation to *N*-hydroxyarylamine is mainly mediated by CYP1A2, but also CYP1A1 and CYP4B1 iso-enzymes may play a role (Landi *et al.*, 1996; Ketelslegers *et al.*, 2009). NAT2-catalysed *N*-acetylation can provide a detoxification pathway for aromatic amines since it reduces the amount of parent compound that may undergo CYP-mediated *N*-hydroxylation. The *N*-hydroxy metabolite is highly electrophilic: *N*-hydroxyaminobiphenyl, the oxidation product of 4-aminobiphenyl (4-ABP) forms adducts with hepatic DNA at the C8 position of deoxyguanosine and deoxyadenosine in rats (Jones & Sabbioni, 2003). *N*-hydroxyarylamines may be transported in free form to the blood or be conjugated with glucuronide. The acid-labile glucuronidated intermediate is excreted via the kidney and hydrolysed in the bladder lumen where it eventually forms the *N*-hydroxy metabolite again. The acidic pH of urine enhances the hydrolysis reaction and thus represents an additional risk factor for aromatic amine-related bladder cancer. NAT1-mediated *O*-acetylation may represent the final activation step of *N*-hydroxyarylamines; it takes place in the bladder epithelium and forms *N*-acetoxyarylamine. Breakdown of this unstable aromatic acetoxy ester produces the highly reactive aryl nitrenium ion that may serve as electrophilic intermediate leading to DNA adducts and tumour initiation. The highly active NAT1*10 isoform was correlated with higher levels of arylamine-DNA adducts in the human bladder (Kadlubar & Badawi, 1995).

Other activation pathways of aromatic amines to DNA-reactive intermediates include the sulfotransferase-mediated activation of *N*-hydroxyarylamine to an *N*-sulfate ester (Chou *et al.*, 1995), the myeloperoxidase- (Lakshmi *et al.*, 2000) and lactoperoxidase-mediated pathways that catalyse activation in the mammary gland (Gorlewska-Roberts *et al.*, 2004), the peroxidative activation by prostaglandin H synthase (Flammang *et al.*, 1989) – likely predominant in extra-hepatic tissues with low levels of cytochrome P450 isoenzymes –, and non-enzymatic protonation of the *N*-hydroxylamine nitrogen (Beland *et al.*, 1983). Genotoxic aromatic amines may induce tumour formation at different sites depending on substrate specificity and different bio-activation pathways. Inter-individual variability in prostaglandin H synthases in the urinary bladder and in myeloperoxidases in the lung may account for differences in target-site susceptibility to aromatic amines in cigarette smokers (Flammang *et al.*, 1989).

The genotoxic effects of aromatic amines are well established on the basis of mutagenicity and clastogenicity observed in numerous *in vitro* and *in vivo* assays that show the capability of these compounds to form DNA adducts after metabolic activation to electrophilic intermediates. The predominant site for covalent binding of aromatic amines to DNA is the C8 position of guanine, but adducts at other sites, including C8 of adenine and N^2 of guanine, have also been identified (Beland *et al.*, 1983; Kaderlik *et al.*, 1993; Lin *et al.*, 1994; Rothman *et al.*, 1996a). As DNA adducts may lead to somatic point mutations, it is reasonable to assume that activated aromatic amines may lead to bladder-tumour development by inducing mutations in key genes

such as the *TP53* tumour suppressor gene (Sørlie *et al.*, 1998; Feng *et al.*, 2002) and the *H-RAS* gene (Boulalas *et al.*, 2009), both involved in bladder carcinogenesis.

Organ specificity and inter- and intra-species differences in cancer susceptibility to aromatic amines are likely related to polymorphisms in genes that regulate DNA-repair, since deficient DNA-repair capacity is associated with increased bladder cancer risk (Lin *et al.*, 2005), and to polymorphisms in genes that encode enzymes involved in activation or detoxification pathways. The *NAT2* slow-acetylator genotype accounts for a greater risk for cancer of the urinary bladder in individuals exposed to 2-naphthylamine or 4-aminobiphenyl (Yu *et al.*, 2002) and for a lower risk in workers exposed to benzidine (Carreón *et al.*, 2006). Conflicting findings between studies may be a consequence of the interdependence of pathways of arylamine metabolism and of the capability of *N*-acetyltransferases both to detoxify the parent compound and to activate metabolites at different rates in different tissues.

4.2 4-Aminobiphenyl

N-hydroxylation of 4-aminobiphenyl (4-ABP) in human and rat-liver microsomes is primarily catalysed by CYP1A2 (Kimura *et al.*, 1999), an enzyme with a large inter-individual variability (Butler *et al.*, 1989), and by extra-hepatic cytochrome P450s including CYP1A1, CYP1B1, and CYP2A13 (Shimada *et al.*, 1996; Nakajima *et al.*, 2006). In extra-hepatic tissues, the binding of 4-ABP to DNA may be catalysed by peroxidase enzymes, such as prostaglandin H synthase (Flammang *et al.*, 1989).

The major 4-ABP-DNA adduct identified in human bladder and lung is *N*-(deoxyguanosin-8-yl)-4-ABP (Lin *et al.*, 1994): other adducts include *N*-(deoxyadenosin-8-yl)-4-ABP and *N*-(deoxyguanosin-N^2-yl)-4-ABP (Beland *et al.*, 1983). *N*-(deoxyguanosin-8-yl)-4-ABP has also been detected in female breast tissue of both smokers and non-smokers (Lin *et al.*, 1994; Faraglia *et al.*, 2003) indicating that 4-ABP-reactive intermediates are distributed systemically and/or that multiple organs are capable of activating 4-ABP or its metabolites. Experiments in animals show that 4-ABP induces bladder tumours in mice, rabbits, and dogs, liver tumours, mammary gland tumours and angiosarcomas in mice, and intestinal tumours in rats. Increased levels of 4-ABP-haemoglobin adducts are associated with cigarette smoking (Bryant *et al.*, 1988), and occupational exposure to 4-ABP is associated with an increased risk for cancer of the urinary bladder (Beyerbach *et al.*, 2006).

To explore the role of various metabolic intermediates in the mutagenicity of aromatic amines, the DNA-damaging potential of 4-ABP was studied in different bacterial strains. In *S. typhimurium* in the presence of S-9-mediated metabolic activation, 4-ABP was found to induce mutations such as frameshifts and base substitutions in TA98 and TA100 strains, respectively (Chung *et al.*, 2000), and oxidant-induced mutations in TA102, suggesting an oxidative mechanism (Makena & Chung, 2007). 4-ABP-induced DNA damage was mainly due to activation by NAT1 (Oda, 2004) and was increased with higher *O*-acetyltransferase activity (Dang & McQueen, 1999), thus demonstrating the potentially important role of *N*-acetoxy-4-ABP in the mutagenicity of this aromatic amine. In *E. coli*, 4-ABP induced base-pair substitutions predominantly at G sites, including G→T, G→C transversions, and G→A transitions (Verghis *et al.*, 1997). In addition, G→C transversion mutations were triggered by incorporating an oligonucleotide containing the *N*-(deoxyadenosin-8-yl)-4-ABP adduct into the single-stranded DNA of the cloning vector, demonstrating the role of this adduct in 4-ABP-induced mutagenesis.

4-ABP induced mutations at the *HPRT* locus and chromosomal instability in human bladder epithelial cells. In 4-ABP-induced liver tumours in B6C3F1 and CD-1 mice, primarily C→A and A→T

mutations, respectively, were detected at codon 61 of the *H-Ras* gene. 4-ABP also increased the mutation frequency in the bladder, liver, and bone marrow of mice. In human bladder cells treated with *N*-hydroxy-4-ABP, preferential sites of adduct formation in *TP53* were at codons 175, 248, 280, and 285, which are mutational hotspots for cancer of the urinary bladder (Feng *et al.*, 2002).

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of 4-aminobiphenyl. 4-Aminobiphenyl causes cancer of the urinary bladder.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of 4-aminobiphenyl.

There is strong mechanistic evidence indicating that the carcinogenicity of 4-aminobiphenyl in humans operates by a genotoxic mechanism of action that involves metabolic activation, formation of DNA adducts, and induction of mutagenic and clastogenic effects. Metabolic activation to DNA-reactive intermediates occurs by multiple pathways including *N*-oxidation in the liver, *O*-acetylation in the bladder, and peroxidative activation in the mammary gland and other organs.

4-Aminobiphenyl is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Akyüz M (2007). Simultaneous determination of aliphatic and aromatic amines in indoor and outdoor air samples by gas chromatography-mass spectrometry. *Talanta*, 71: 486–492. doi:10.1016/j.talanta.2006.10.028 PMID:19071331

Bafana A, Devi SS, Krishnamurthi K, Chakrabarti T (2007). Kinetics of decolourisation and biotransformation of direct black 38 by C. hominis and P. stutzeri. *Appl Microbiol and Biotechnol*, 74: 1145–1152. doi:10.1007/s00253-006-0751-5 PMID:17318544

Beland FA, Beranek DT, Dooley KL *et al.* (1983). Arylamine-DNA adducts in vitro and in vivo: their role in bacterial mutagenesis and urinary bladder carcinogenesis. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 49: 125–134. doi:10.2307/3429589 PMID:6339219

Beyerbach A, Rothman N, Bhatnagar VK *et al.* (2006). Hemoglobin adducts in workers exposed to benzidine and azo dyes. *Carcinogenesis*, 27: 1600–1606. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgi362 PMID:16497705

Block NL, Sigel MM, Lynne CM *et al.* (1978). The initiation, progress, and diagnosis of dog bladder cancer induced by 4-aminobiphenyl. *Invest Urol*, 16: 50–54. PMID:689839

Bonser GM (1962) Precancerous changes in the urinary bladder. Perugia: 435–439

Boulalas I, Zaravinos A, Karyotis I *et al.* (2009). Activation of RAS family genes in urothelial carcinoma. *The Journal of Urology*, 181: 2312–2319. doi:10.1016/j.juro.2009.01.011 PMID:19303097

Bryant MS, Vineis P, Skipper PL, Tannenbaum SR (1988). Hemoglobin adducts of aromatic amines: associations with smoking status and type of tobacco. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 85: 9788–9791. doi:10.1073/pnas.85.24.9788 PMID:3200858

Butler MA, Iwasaki M, Guengerich FP, Kadlubar FF (1989). Human cytochrome P-450PA (P-450IA2), the phenacetin O-deethylase, is primarily responsible for the hepatic 3-demethylation of caffeine and N-oxidation of carcinogenic arylamines. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 86: 7696–7700. doi:10.1073/pnas.86.20.7696 PMID:2813353

Carreón T, Ruder AM, Schulte PA *et al.* (2006). NAT2 slow acetylation and bladder cancer in workers exposed to benzidine. *International Journal of Cancer*, 118: 161–168. PMID: 16003747 doi:10.1002/ijc.21308

Chiang T-A, Pei-Fen W, Ying LS *et al.* (1999). Mutagenicity and aromatic amine content of fumes from heated cooking oils produced in Taiwan. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, 37: 125–134. doi:10.1016/S0278-6915(98)00081-7 PMID:10227736

Chou HC, Lang NP, Kadlubar FF (1995). Metabolic activation of N-hydroxy arylamines and N-hydroxy heterocyclic amines by human sulfotransferase(s). *Cancer Res*, 55: 525–529. PMID:7834621

Chung KT, Chen SC, Wong TY *et al.* (2000). Mutagenicity studies of benzidine and its analogs: structure-activity relationships. *Toxicological Sciences*, 56: 351–356. doi:10.1093/toxsci/56.2.351 PMID:10910993

Clayson DB, Lawson TA, Pringle JA (1967). The carcinogenic action of 2-aminodiphenylene oxide and 4-aminodiphenyl on the bladder and liver of the C57 X IF mouse. *Br J Cancer*, 21: 755–762. doi:10.1038/bjc.1967.88 PMID:6074696

Collins JJ, Strauss ME, Levinskas GJ, Conner PR (1993). The mortality experience of workers exposed to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin in a trichlorophenol process accident. *Epidemiology*, 4: 7–13. PMID:8420584

Collins JJ, Strauss ME, Riordan SG (1999). Mortalities of workers at the Nitro plant with exposure to 2-mercaptobenzothialzole. *Occup Environ Med*, 56: 667–671. PMID:10658544

Dang LN & McQueen CA (1999). Mutagenicity of 4-aminobiphenyl and 4-acetylaminobiphenyl in Salmonella typhimurium strains expressing different levels of N-acetyltransferase. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*, 159: 77–82. doi:10.1006/taap.1999.8727 PMID:10495770

Deichmann WB, Radomski J, Glass E *et al.* (1965). Synergism among oral carcinogens. 3. simultaneous feeding of four bladder carcinogens to dogs. *Ind Med Surg*, 34: 640–649. PMID:14334179

Deichmann WB, Radomski JL, Anderson WA *et al.* (1958). The carcinogenic action of p-aminobiphenyl in the dog; final report. *Ind Med Surg*, 27: 25–26. PMID:13491120

Dooley KL, Von Tungeln LS, Bucci T *et al.* (1992). Comparative carcinogenicity of 4-aminobiphenyl and the food pyrolysates, Glu-P-1, IQ, PhIP, and MeIQx in the neonatal B6C3F1 male mouse. *Cancer Letters*, 62: 205–209. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(92)90097-F PMID:1596864

Faraglia B, Chen SY, Gammon MD *et al.* (2003). Evaluation of 4-aminobiphenyl-DNA adducts in human breast cancer: the influence of tobacco smoke. *Carcinogenesis*, 24: 719–725. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgg013 PMID:12727801

Feng Z, Hu W, Rom WN *et al.* (2002). 4-aminobiphenyl is a major etiological agent of human bladder cancer: evidence from its DNA binding spectrum in human p53 gene. *Carcinogenesis*, 23: 1721–1727. doi:10.1093/carcin/23.10.1721 PMID:12376482

Flammang TJ, Yamazoe Y, Benson RW *et al.* (1989). Arachidonic acid-dependent peroxidative activation of carcinogenic arylamines by extrahepatic human tissue microsomes. *Cancer Res*, 49: 1977–1982. PMID:2495173

Gorlewska-Roberts KM, Teitel CH, Lay JO Jr *et al.* (2004). Lactoperoxidase-catalysed activation of carcinogenic aromatic and heterocyclic amines. *Chemical Research in Toxicology*, 17: 1659–1666. doi:10.1021/tx049787n PMID:15606142

Gorrod JW, Carter RL, Roe FJ (1968). Induction of hepatomas by 4-aminobiphenyl and three of its hydroxylated derivatives administered to newborn mice. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 41: 403–410. PMID:4299538

Hoffmann D, Djordjevic MV, Hoffmann I (1997). The changing cigarette. *Preventive Medicine*, 26: 427–434. doi:10.1006/pmed.1997.0183 PMID:9245661

HSDB (2009) Hazardous Substances Data Bank: 4-Aminobiphenyl. National Library of Medicine. Last updated: 1/15/04 [http://toxnet.nlm.nih.gov/cgi-bin/sis/htmlgen?HSDB]

IARC (1972). Some Inorganic Substances, Chlorinated Hydrocarbons, Aromatic Amines, N-Nitroso Compounds, and Natural Products. *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, 1: 1–184.

IARC (1987). Overall Evaluations of Carcinogenicity. *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans. Supplement*, 7: 1–440.

IARC (2010). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–678. PMID:21528837.

Jones CR & Sabbioni G (2003). Identification of DNA adducts using HPLC/MS/MS following in vitro and in vivo experiments with arylamines and nitroarenes. *Chemical Research in Toxicology*, 16: 1251–1263. doi:10.1021/tx020064i PMID:14565767

Kaderlik KR, Talaska G, DeBord DG *et al.* (1993). 4,4'-Methylene-bis(2-chloroaniline)-DNA adduct analysis in human exfoliated urothelial cells by 32P-postlabeling. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 2: 63–69. PMID: 8420614.

Kadlubar FF & Badawi AF (1995). Genetic susceptibility and carcinogen-DNA adduct formation in human urinary bladder carcinogenesis. *Toxicology Letters*, 82–83: 627–632. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(95)03507-9 PMID:8597119

Ketelslegers HB, Godschalk RW, Eskens BJ *et al.* (2009). Potential role of cytochrome P450–1B1 in the metabolic activation of 4-aminobiphenyl in humans. *Molecular Carcinogenesis*, 4: 685–691. PMID: 19274671 doi:10.1002/mc.20530

Kimura S, Kawabe M, Ward JM *et al.* (1999). CYP1A2 is not the primary enzyme responsible for 4-aminobiphenyl-induced hepatocarcinogenesis in mice. *Carcinogenesis*, 20: 1825–1830. doi:10.1093/carcin/20.9.1825 PMID:10469630

Koss LG, Melamed MR, Kelly E (1969). Further cytologic and histologic studies of bladder lesions in workers exposed to para-aminodiphenyl: progress report. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 43: 233–243. PMID:5796385

Koss LG, Melamed MR, Ricci A *et al.* (1965). Carcinogenesis in the human urinary bladder: observations after exposure to para-aminodiphenyl. *N Engl J Med*, 272: 767–770. PMID:14263636

Lakshmi VM, Hsu FF, Davis BB, Zenser TV (2000). N-Acetylbenzidine-DNA adduct formation by phorbol 12-myristate-stimulated human polymorphonuclear neutrophils. *Chemical Research in Toxicology*, 13: 785–792. doi:10.1021/tx0000320 PMID:10956067

Landi MT, Zocchetti C, Bernucci I *et al.* (1996). Cytochrome P4501A2: enzyme induction and genetic control in determining 4-aminobiphenyl-hemoglobin adduct levels. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 5: 693–698. PMID: 8877060.

Lide DR, editor (2008) *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th Ed., Boca Raton, FL, CRC Press, p. 3–16.

Lin D, Lay JO Jr, Bryant MS *et al.* (1994). Analysis of 4-aminobiphenyl-DNA adducts in human urinary bladder and lung by alkaline hydrolysis and negative ion gas chromatography-mass spectrometry. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 102: Suppl 611–16. doi:10.2307/3432144 PMID:7889831

Lin J, Kadlubar FF, Spitz MR *et al.* (2005). A modified host cell reactivation assay to measure DNA repair capacity for removing 4-aminobiphenyl adducts: a pilot study of bladder cancer. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 14: 1832–1836. PMID: 16030125 doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-04-0902

Makena P & Chung KT (2007). Evidence that 4-aminobiphenyl, benzidine, and benzidine congeners produce genotoxicity through reactive oxygen species. *Environmental and Molecular Mutagenesis*, 48: 404–413. doi:10.1002/em.20288 PMID:17370336

Melamed MR (1972). Diagnostic cytology of urinary tract carcinoma. A review of experience with spontaneous and carcinogen induced tumors in man. *Eur J Cancer*, 8: 287–292. PMID:5074773

Melamed MR, Koss LG, Ricci A, Whitmore WF (1960). Cytohistological observations on developing carcinoma of the urinary bladder in man. *Cancer*, 13: 67–74.

Melick WF, Escue HM, Naryka JJ *et al.* (1955). The first reported cases of human bladder tumors due to a new carcinogen-xenylamine. *J Urol*, 74: 760–766. PMID:13278983

Melick WF, Naryka JJ, Kelly RE (1971). Bladder cancer due to exposure to para-aminobiphenyl: a 17-year followup. *J Urol*, 106: 220–226. PMID:5099312

Nakajima M, Itoh M, Sakai H *et al.* (2006). CYP2A13 expressed in human bladder metabolically activates 4-aminobiphenyl. *International Journal of Cancer*, 119: 2520–2526. doi:10.1002/ijc.22136 PMID:16988941

NTP (2005). NTP 11th Report on Carcinogens: Vinyl Chloride. *Rep Carcinog*, 111–A32.

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006) *The Merck Index*, Whitehouse Station, NJ, Merck & Co., Inc., p. 204.

Oda Y (2004). Analysis of the involvement of human N-acetyltransferase 1 in the genotoxic activation of bladder carcinogenic arylamines using a SOS/umu assay system. *Mutat Res*, 554: 399–406. PMID:15450435

Parsons BL, Beland FA, Von Tungeln LS *et al.* (2005). Levels of 4-aminobiphenyl-induced somatic H-ras mutation in mouse liver DNA correlate with potential for liver tumor development. *Molecular Carcinogenesis*, 42: 193–201. doi:10.1002/mc.20083 PMID:15761837

Patrianakos C & Hoffmann D (1979). Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXIV. On the analysis of aromatic amines in cigarette smoke. *J Anal Toxicol*, 3: 150–154.

Richfield-Fratz N, Bailey JE Jr, Bailey CJ (1985). Determination of unsulfonated aromatic amines in FD&C Yellow No. 6 by the diazotization and coupling procedure followed by reversed-phase high-performance liquid chromatography. *Journal of Chromatography*, 331: 109–123. doi:10.1016/0021-9673(85)80012-1

Rothman N, Bhatnagar VK, Hayes RB *et al.* (1996a). The impact of interindividual variation in NAT2 activity on benzidine urinary metabolites and urothelial DNA adducts in exposed workers. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 93: 5084–5089. doi:10.1073/pnas.93.10.5084 PMID:8643532

Schieferstein GJ, Littlefield NA, Gaylor DW *et al.* (1985). Carcinogenesis of 4-aminobiphenyl in BALB/cStCr-lfC3Hf/Nctr mice. *European Journal of Cancer & Clinical Oncology*, 21: 865–873. doi:10.1016/0277-5379(85)90227-5 PMID:2995043

Shimada T, Hayes CL, Yamazaki H *et al.* (1996). Activation of chemically diverse procarcinogens by human cytochrome P-450 1B1. *Cancer Res*, 56: 2979–2984. PMID:8674051

Sørlie T, Martel-Planche G, Hainaut P *et al.* (1998). Analysis of p53, p16MTS, p21WAF1 and H-ras in archived bladder tumours from workers exposed to aromatic amines. *Br J Cancer*, 77: 1573–1579. PMID:9635831

Turesky RJ, Freeman JP, Holland RD *et al.* (2003). Identification of aminobiphenyl derivatives in commercial hair dyes. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 16: 1162–1173. doi:10.1021/tx030029r PMID:12971805

Verghis SB, Essigmann JM, Kadlubar FF *et al.* (1997). Specificity of mutagenesis by 4-aminobiphenyl: mutations at G residues in bacteriophage M13 DNA and G–>C transversions at a unique dG(8-ABP) lesion in single-stranded DNA. *Carcinogenesis*, 18: 2403–2414. doi:10.1093/carcin/18.12.2403 PMID:9450488

Von Tungeln LS, Bucci TJ, Hart RW *et al.* (1996). Inhibitory effect of caloric restriction on tumorigenicity induced by 4-aminobiphenyl and 2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo-[4,5-b]pyridine (PhIP) in the CD1 newborn mouse bioassay. *Cancer Lett*, 104: 133–136. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(96)04232-2 PMID:8665480

Walpole AL, Williams MH, Roberts DC (1952). The carcinogenic action of 4-aminodiphenyl and 3:2′-dimethyl-4-amino-diphenyl. *Br J Ind Med*, 9: 255–263. PMID:12987579

Walpole AL, Williams MH, Roberts DC (1954). Tumours of the urinary bladder in dogs after ingestion of 4-aminodiphenyl. *Br J Ind Med*, 11: 105–109. PMID:13149742

Ward EM, Sabbioni G, DeBord DG *et al.* (1996). Monitoring of aromatic amine exposures in workers at a chemical plant with a known bladder cancer excess. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 88: 1046–1053. doi:10.1093/jnci/88.15.1046

Yu MC, Skipper PL, Tannenbaum SR *et al.* (2002). Arylamine exposures and bladder cancer risk. *Mutat Res*, 506–507: 21–28. PMID:12351141

Zack JA & Gaffey WR (1983). A mortality study of workers employed at the Monsanto Company plant in Nitro, West Virginia. *Environ Sci Res*, 26: 575–591.

BENZIDINE

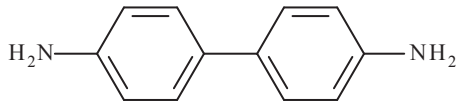
Benzidine was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1987 and 2008 (IARC, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agents

1.1.1 Benzidine

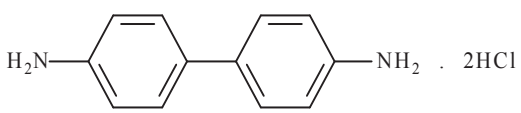
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 92-87-5
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
[1,1′-Biphenyl]-4,4′-diamine



$C_{12}H_{12}N_2$
Relative molecular mass: 184.24
Description: White to slightly reddish, crystalline powder; darkens on exposure to air and light (O'Neil, 2006).
Solubility: Slightly soluble in water, diethyl ether, and dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO); soluble in ethanol (Lide, 2008)

1.1.2 Benzidine dihydrochloride

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 531-85-1
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: [1,1′-Biphenyl]-4,4′-diamine, dihydrochloride



$C_{12}H_{10}N_2.2HCl$
Relative molecular mass: 257.18
Description: Crystalline solid (O'Neil, 2006)
Solubility: Soluble in water and alcohol (O'Neil, 2006)

1.2 Uses

Benzidine has been used since the 1850s as the reagent base for the production of a large number of dyes, particularly azo dyes for wool, cotton, and leather (IARC, 2010). In the past, benzidine also has been used in clinical laboratories for detection of blood, as a rubber compounding agent, in the manufacture of plastic films, for detection of hydrogen peroxide in milk, and for quantitative determination of nicotine. Most of these uses have been discontinued because of toxicological concerns. Some dyes used as stains for microscopy and similar laboratory applications may contain benzidine as an impurity (ATSDR, 2001; NTP, 2005).

Manufacture of benzidine is prohibited in several individual countries (e.g. Japan, Republic of Korea, Canada, and Switzerland) and in Europe through European Union (EU) legislation. It has not been manufactured on a large scale for commercial purposes in the United

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to benzidine in the European Union

Industry, occupational activity	
Manufacture of textiles	160
Education services	3700
Research and scientific institutes	1900
Medical, dental, other health & veterinary services	1300
TOTAL	6900

From: CAREX (1999)

States of America (USA) since 1976, although small quantities remain available for diagnostic testing. It is reportedly produced and/or supplied in research quantities in Germany, Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, India, the People's Republic of China (China), Switzerland, and the USA (IARC, 2010). Production and use of benzidine in dye production has been reported in some developing countries, as has the transfer of benzidine production from other European countries to the former Serbia and Montenegro and to the Republic of Korea (Carreón *et al.*, 2006a).

In 1994, the German Government prohibited the use of certain azo dyes in consumer goods that come in direct, prolonged contact with human skin (e.g. clothing, bedding, footwear, gloves, etc.). The dyes affected are those that, after reduction of one or more azo groups, may release one or more of 20 specific aromatic amines (including benzidine) in detectable concentrations (i.e. > 30 parts per million (ppm)). In 2002, a EU Directive (76/769/EEC) expanded coverage to articles that come in contact with the oral cavity and added two amines to the list (Ahlström *et al.*, 2005; ETAD, 2008). The US Food and Drug Administration limits benzidine content in food colourants to 1 part per billion (ppb). While exposure via ingestion is considered highly unlikely, other impurities in synthetic colouring agents may be metabolized to benzidine after ingestion (ATSDR, 2001).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

Estimates of numbers of workers potentially exposed to benzidine have been published by CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) in Europe. CAREX is an international information system that provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Based on data on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens collected from 1990 to 1993, it is estimated from the CAREX database that 6900 workers were exposed to benzidine in the European Union. Table 1.1 presents the results for benzidine by industry in the EU (CAREX, 1999).

NIOSH (1984) estimated from the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83) that 1554 workers (including 426 women) were potentially exposed to benzidine and 2987 workers (2464 women) to benzidine dihydrochloride.

Studies that reported airborne or urinary concentrations and results of dermal wipes of benzidine or benzidine derivatives in the benzidine-based dye industry have been reviewed (IARC, 2010).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

Because benzidine may be produced only for captive consumption (i.e. in-house by the producer only, in closed systems with stringent controls), its direct release into the environment is expected to be low.

Benzidine-based dyes can contain various amounts of benzidine as a contaminant. The general population can be exposed to benzidine when in contact with consumer goods containing benzidine or benzidine based-dyes such as leather products (Ahlström *et al.*, 2005), clothes and toys (Garrigós *et al.*, 2002). Some food colourants such as tartrazine and sunset yellow FCF have been

reported to contain trace amounts of benzidine (< 5 to 270 ng/g) (Lancaster & Lawrence, 1999).

2. Cancer in Humans

In a previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 2010) it was concluded that there is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of benzidine in the human bladder. Numerous case reports from different countries have been published (IARC, 1972, 1982, 1987, 2010). In one extreme instance, all five of a group of workers permanently employed in the manufacture of benzidine for 15 years or more developed bladder cancer (IARC, 1982). Vigliani & Barsotti (1962) reported on 20 workers with tumours of the urinary bladder between 1931 and 1948 among 83 Italian dyestuff workers involved in benzidine production and use. Case *et al.* (1954) found 10 bladder-cancer deaths among dyestuff workers exposed only to benzidine (standardized mortality ratio (SMR) 13.9 [95%CI: 6.7–25.5]). In benzidine-exposed workers in the chemical dye industry in China, the morbidity from bladder cancer increased with increasing duration of exposure (p for trend < 0.01) (Sun & Deng, 1980), while in a cohort of benzidine manufacturers in the USA, risks were significantly elevated for those with ≥2 years exposure to benzidine (SMR 13.0 [95%CI: 4.8–28.4]) (Meigs *et al.*, 1986). In a cohort of dyestuff workers in Torino, Italy, the SMR was 100.8 [95%CI: 60.8–167.2] during exposure and 14.8 [95%CI: 71–31.0] at 20 or more years after exposure ceased (Piolatto *et al.*, 1991). In a study of workers from a chemical manufacturing plant in Shanghai, China, an interaction was found between benzidine exposure and cigarette smoking in the development of bladder cancer (Wu, 1988). Relative to those who did not smoke and had no exposure to benzidine, the risks (RR) for bladder cancer were 6.2 ($P = 0.05$) for smokers who were not exposed to benzidine; 63.4 ($P < 0.05$) for non-smokers exposed to benzidine; and 152.3 ($P < 0.01$) for smokers exposed to benzidine. In another study of Chinese workers in benzidine production and use facilities, the odds ratios (OR) for bladder cancer were 1.0, 2.7 (1.1–6.3) and 4.4 (1.8–10.8) for low, medium and high cumulative exposure to benzidine, respectively, after adjustment for life-time cigarette smoking (Carreón *et al.*, 2006b). In a case–control study in Canada, excesses of renal cell cancer in relation to duration of exposure to benzidine ($P < 0.004$) were noted, but other consistently supporting data were not found (Hu *et al.*, 2002).

Overall, case reports and epidemiological investigations from several countries show strong and consistent associations between benzidine exposure and risk for bladder cancer.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenicity of benzidine in the mouse, rat, hamster, rabbit, dog, and frog by oral, subcutaneous injection, intraperitoneal injection, or inhalation routes of exposure have been reviewed by previous IARC Working Groups (IARC, 1972, 1982, 1987, 2010). There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since the most recent evaluation (IARC, 2010). Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1.

Benzidine and its dihydrochloride were adequately tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration (feed, drinking-water or gavage) in eight experiments in mice and one experiment in rats; by subcutaneous injection in one experiment in rats and one experiment in frogs; and in rats in one experiment by intraperitoneal injection.

Following oral administration to male and female mice, newborn and adult, of different strains, benzidine significantly increased the

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of benzidine in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M) 90 wk Vesselinovitch *et al.* (1975)	Feed Four groups of 50 M mice were fed 150 ppm benzidine as the dihydrochloride (certified ACS grade) in the diet for 45 wk. Groups of 50 mice were sacrificed at 45, 60, 75, and 90 wk of age. A group of 100 male mice that were sacrificed at 90 wk of age served as untreated controls	Hepatocellular carcinomas: 1/98, 2/50, 5/50$^{\$}$, 14/50*, 24/50* Hepatocellular adenomas: 1/98, 6/50$^{\$}$, 15/50*, 17/50*, 11/50*	*[$P < 0.0001$], $^{\$}$[$P < 0.05$]	
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M) 90 wk Vesselinovitch *et al.* (1975)	Feed Three groups of 50 M mice were fed 150 ppm benzidine as the dihydrochloride salt (certified ACS grade) in the diet for 39, 54, or 84 wk. All animals were sacrificed at 90 wk of age. A group of 100 M mice that were sacrificed at 90 wk of age served as untreated controls.	Hepatocellular tumours [benign and malignant]: 1/98, 35/50*, 25/50*, 44/50*	*[$P < 0.0001$]	
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M, F) 90 wk Vesselinovitch *et al.* (1979)	Feed Groups of 43–65 M and F offspring mice were fed and/or exposed to a diet containing 150 ppm benzidine as the dihydrochloride (1) through fed mothers from the 12th d of gestation (prenatal) to delivery; (2) through fed mothers with litters from delivery to weaning; (3) to offspring from weaning to 90 wk of age; (4) during the pre-natal and pre-weaning period; or (5) prenatally, during pre-weaning and in adulthood. Groups 98 M and 100 F mice served as untreated controls.	Hepatocellular tumours [benign and malignant]: Group 1–17/55* (M), 2/62 (F) Group 2–62/65*, 2/43 Group 3–25/44*, 48/50* Group 4–49/49*, 12/48* Group 5–50/50*, 47/50* Controls–1/98, 0/100	*[$P < 0.0001$]	Age NR Purity NR
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M, F) 90 wk Vesselinovitch (1983)	Feed Groups of pregnant F or weanling M + F B6C3F$_1$ mice were fed diets containing 150 ppm of benzidine as the dihydrochloride: group 1–prenatal exposure (12th d of gestation to delivery) group 2–pre-weaning exposure (delivery to weaning) group 3–from weaning to 90 wk Groups of 98 M + 96 F mice were sacrificed at 90 wk and served as controls.	Hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas: Group 1: 8/36* (M), 2/56 (F) Group 2: 35/52$^{\$}$, 9/43$^{\$}$ Group 3: 22/26$^{\$}$, 16/25$^{\$}$ Controls: 1/98, 0/96 Hepatocellular carcinomas: Group 1: 3/36* (M), 1/56 (F) Group 2: 26/52$^{\$}$, 5/43* Group 3: 17/26$^{\$}$, 16/25$^{\$}$ Controls: 0/98, 0/96	*[$P < 0.05$], $^{\$}$[$P < 0.0001$)	Liver was the only tissue examined. Purity NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse , F_1 (C57BL/6Jf C3Hf/Nctr females × BALB/cStCrLfC3Hf/Nctr males) and mono-hybrid (F_1 females and F_1 males) up to 80 wk Nelson *et al.* (1982)	Drinking-water Groups of M + F mice (F_1) and MC mice were given drinking-water containing 0, 30, 60, 120, 200, or 400 ppm of benzidine as the dihydrochloride. Groups of mice were sacrificed after 40, 60, or 80 wk of treatment.	Hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas: F_1 M, 40 wk–0/49, 0/98, 0/72, 0/51, 3/50, 1/28 F_1 F, 40 wk–0/48, 2/98, 1/72, 0/49, 5/50, 13/29 F_1 M, 60 wk–1/48, 0/73, 4/49, 9/48, 9/47, 12/23 F_1 F, 60 wk–1/48, 3/74, 4/52, 24/58, 54/61, 41/41 F_1 M, 80 wk–0/46, 5/44, 6/47, 13/45, 8/21, 16/20 F_1 F, 80 wk–0/47, 9/43, 23/43, 34/37, 9/9, 0/1 MC M, 40 wk–0/50, 1/101, 0/71, 1/48, 0/52, 1/27 MC F, 40 wk–0/48, 0/97, 0/72, 3/51, 6/50, 10/26 MC M, 60 wk–0/48, 3/69, 3/46, 8/50, 8/43, 7/26 MC F, 60 wk–1/48, 7/72, 12/54, 26/56, 47/60, 33/38 MC M, 80 wk–2/45, 2/41, 7/43, 14/44, 7/19, 11/17 MC F, 80 wk–0/48, 12/43, 20/42, 31/32, 7/8, 5/6	No statistics provided [significant for many groups]	Age NR Purity NR Initial number of animals unclear
Mouse, F_1 (C57BL/6Jf C3Hf/Nctr females × BALB/cStCrLfC3Hf/Nctr males) and mono-hybrid (F_1 females and F_1 males) 33 mo (Lifetime) Littlefield *et al.* (1983, 1984)	Drinking-water Groups of 72–120 M + F mice (F_1) and MC mice were given drinking-water containing 0, 30, 40, 60, 80, 120, or 160 ppm (M) and 0, 20, 30, 40, 60, 80, or 120 ppm (F) of benzidine as the dihydrochloride.	Hepatocellular carcinomas: F_1 M: 14/125, 24/119, 30/96, 23/71, 35/71, 51/71, 49/71 F_1 F: 3/124, 51/120, 52/95, 45/72, 55/71, 60/69, 64/72 MC M: 17/123, 20/118, 20/95, 23/72, 24/71, 37/71, 32/71 MC F: 10/125, 54/119, 43/95, 31/71, 37/72, 51/69, 56/72 The authors also noted that a dose effect was observed for Harderian gland adenomas in F_1 and MC males ($P = 0.02$) and females ($P = 0.02$) and for angiomas of the uterus in F_1 and MC females ($P = 0.07$).	Authors indicate that for all four strain/sex combinations, there was a significant dose-related trend for fatal liver tumours, incidental liver tumours, and the pooled estimate using Peto's test, however details on statistics were not provided.	Purity NR
Mouse, $B6C3F_1$ (M, F) 90 wk Vesselinovitch *et al.* (1975)	Gavage Groups of 75 M and 75 F mice were given 0.5 or 1.0 mg benzidine as the dihydrochloride salt twice weekly. All animals were sacrificed at 90 wk of age. Groups of 100 M and 100 F mice served as untreated controls, killed at 90 wk.	Hepatocellular tumours [benign and malignant]: M–1/98, 3/75, 12/75* F–0/100, 4/75$^{\$}$, 17/75*	No statistics provided *[$P < 0.0005$], $^{\$}$[$P < 0.05$]	Purity NR Vehicle NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, ICR (F) 63 wk Miyakawa & Yoshida (1980)	Feed Groups of F mice were implanted with a 45-mg glass bead in the urinary bladder and divided into three groups: 30 were fed basal diet; 60 were fed diet containing 0.2% benzidine; and 60 were fed diet containing a mixture of 0.2% benzidine and 2% DL-tryptophan. Treated groups received diets starting at six wk of age for 20 wk and were then fed the control diet for 40–43 wk.	Hepatomas [adenomas]: 0/30, 34/41*, 24/51 No bladder tumours were found in any of the animals.	*$P < 0.01$, compared with control and tryptophan treated groups	Purity NR
Mouse, Strain NR (M, F) Lifetime Bonser *et al.* (1956)	Subcutaneous Injection Groups of 30 M and 30 F mice received 0.1 ml of a freshly made 3% solution of benzidine (purity NR) in arachis oil by subcutaneous injection, twice/wk for 50 wk, and were then observed for life. Groups of 30 M and 30 F mice served as vehicle controls.	Hepatomas: M–0/30, 4/30; F–0/30, 3/30	No statistics provided	Age NR
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (F) 9 mo Griswold *et al.* (1968)	Gavage Four groups of 10–20 F rats were given benzidine at doses of 12, 25, 35 or 50 mg/rat in sesame oil by stomach tube, daily for 30 d, and sacrificed after a 9-mo observation period. A group of 140 F rats served as vehicle controls.	Mammary carcinomas: 3/132, 5/10*, 7/9*, -, 4/5*	No statistics provided *[$P < 0.0001$]	Small number of animals per group, high mortality in top 2 dose groups. Purity NR
Rat, Sherman (M, F) Lifetime Spitz *et al.* (1950)	Subcutaneous injection Groups of 45 to 155 M and F rats were injected with 15 mg/rat of "technical" benzidine, "pure" benzidine, or benzidine sulfate, dissolved in 1 mL of olive oil once/wk throughout life. A group of 50 rats served as vehicle controls.	Hepatomas: Technical–8/78 (M), 0/155 (F); Pure–5/45 (M), 1/107 (F); Sulfate–not tested (M), 1/153 (F) External auditory canal carcinomas (M+F): Technical –54/233*; Pure –32/152*; Sulfate –16/153* None of the above tumours were reported in the 50 control animals.	No statistics provided *[significant]	Survival at 300 d was 56% for controls and 15% to 3% for treated rats. Poor survival due to heat (no air conditioning in animal rooms). Sex of control animals NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, CD (F) 46 wk Morton *et al.* (1981)	Intraperitoneal injection Three groups of 30 F rats were given injections of 0, 10, or 30 µmol/kg bw benzidine in trioctanoin suspensions, twice/wk for 4 wk.	Mammary gland tumours (all): 3/30, 7/30, 12/29* Mammary gland adenocarcinomas: 1/30, 2/30, 7/29** Zymbal gland tumours (benign and malignant): 1/30, 1/30, 7/29** No tumours of the liver were found.	*$P < 0.01$ **$P < 0.05$	Purity NR
Frog, *Rana temporaria* 38 wk Khudoley (1977)	Subcutaneous injection A group of 37 frogs (1–1.5 yr old) received a subcutaneous injection, once/wk, of 0.2–0.5 mL of a 0.5% solution of benzidine in mineral oil, for up to 38 wk (total dose, 45–114 mg/animal). A group of 67 frogs given subcutaneous injections of 0.2–0.5 mL mineral oil once weekly for 42 wk served as vehicle controls.	Liver tumours: 0/67, 3/14* Tumours of the haematopoietic system: 0/67, 4/14*	*[$P < 0.01$]	Fourteen animals in the treated group were still alive when the first tumour appeared at 16 wk. The high mortality was the result of exceeding the maximum tolerated dose. Sex NR. Purity NR. Histopathology not further specified

bw, body weight; d, day or days; F, female; M, male; MC, monohybrid cross; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; d, day; wk, week or weeks

incidence of hepatocellular tumours (benign and/or malignant) in both sexes (Vesselinovitch *et al.*, 1975, 1979; Miyakawa & Yoshida, 1980; Vesselinovitch, 1983; Nelson *et al.*, 1982; Littlefield *et al.*, 1983, 1984). Oral administration of benzidine caused a markedly increased incidence of mammary carcinomas in female rats (Griswold *et al.*, 1968). Subcutaneous administration of benzidine or its sulfate to male and female rats produced a high incidence of external auditory canal carcinomas (Spitz *et al.*, 1950), while subcutaneous administration of benzidine to frogs caused an increase in tumours of the liver and haematopoietic system (Khudoley, 1977). The intraperitoneal administration of benzidine to female rats resulted in an increase in the incidence of mammary gland adenocarcinomas and combined benign and malignant Zymbal gland tumours (Morton *et al.*, 1981). Other studies were found to be inadequate for evaluation.

4. Other Relevant Data

A general section on "Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility" appears as Section 4.1 in the *Monograph* on 4-aminobiphenyl in this Volume.

Benzidine, *N*-acetylbenzidine, and *N,N′*-diacetylbenzidine have been detected in the urine of workers exposed to benzidine. The predominant DNA adduct identified in exfoliated bladder cells was *N′*-(deoxyguanosin-8-yl)-*N*-acetylbenzidine (Rothman *et al.*, 1996a). Thus, *N*-monoacetylation of benzidine does not interfere with the formation of a DNA-reactive intermediate, and may occur before the cytochrome P450-catalysed formation of *N′*-hydroxy-*N*-acetylbenzidine. In contrast, *N,N′*-diacetylation may be a detoxification pathway. *N*-Acetylbenzidine may be *N*-glucuronidated or *N*-hydroxylated in the liver. In the bladder, the *N′*-hydroxyl-*N*-acetylbenzidine or *N′*-acetoxy-*N*-acetylbenzidine formed by NAT-mediated *O*-acetylation may react with DNA to form covalent adducts. NAT1 is more efficient than NAT2 in catalysing the *N*-acetylation of benzidine or of *N*-acetylbenzidine (Zenser *et al.*, 1996). At low exposure levels, *N*-acetylation of benzidine is favoured over that of *N*-acetylbenzidine. Human neutrophils can also form *N′*-(deoxyguanosin-8-yl)-*N*-acetylbenzidine from *N*-acetylbenzidine by a reaction catalysed by myeloperoxidase (Lakshmi *et al.*, 2000). *N′*-hydroxy-*N*-acetylbenzidine may also be formed through peroxidative activation by prostaglandin H synthase (Zenser *et al.*, 1999a, b). Levels of benzidine-related DNA adducts in exfoliated urothelial cells among exposed workers were not affected by acetylator phenotype (Rothman *et al.*, 1996a), or *GSTM1* genotype (Rothman *et al.*, 1996b).

For several benzidine-based azo dyes, both metabolism and molecular changes identical to those of benzidine have been observed. Metabolic conversion of Direct Black 38, Direct Blue 6, and Direct Brown 95 to benzidine has been observed in the Rhesus monkey (Rinde & Troll, 1975). Azoreductase activity in intestinal bacteria and in the liver catalyses the formation of benzidine from benzidine-based dyes (Cerniglia *et al.*, 1982; Bos *et al.*, 1986).

Benzidine is a multiorgan carcinogen in experimental animals; it induces bladder tumours in dogs, liver tumours in mice and hamsters, and mammary gland tumours in rats. In the presence of a liver-derived metabolic activation system – which in some cases leads to reductive metabolism followed by oxidative metabolism – benzidine and benzidine-based dyes (e.g. Direct Black 38, CI Acid Red 114, CI Direct Blue 15, and CI Pigment Red) were mutagenic in several strains of *S. typhimurium*. Benzidine, *N*-acetylbenzidine, and *N,N′*-diacetylbenzidine have been measured in the urine of workers exposed to Direct Black 38, and benzidine- or 4-ABP-related haemoglobin adducts have been

measured in blood (Dewan *et al.*, 1988; Beyerbach *et al.*, 2006). Significant increases in the incidence of chromosomal aberrations in peripheral lymphocytes have been observed in workers exposed to benzidine or benzidine-based dyes (Mirkova & Lalchev, 1990). In workers exposed to benzidine, the accumulation of mutant p53 protein increased with increasing exposures (Xiang *et al.*, 2007). Similarly, benzidine induced DNA lesions in *TP53* in the bladder, liver, and lung of exposed rats (Wu & Heng, 2006), increased the frequency of micronucleated bone-marrow cells and induced unscheduled DNA synthesis in mice, and increased DNA strand-breaks in the liver of exposed rats.

Based on bio-monitoring studies in workers, animal carcinogenicity data and genotoxicity data, it is reasonable to use the same carcinogenic hazard classification for benzidine-based dyes that are metabolized to benzidine as for benzidine.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of benzidine. Benzidine causes cancer of the urinary bladder.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of benzidine.

There is strong mechanistic evidence indicating that the carcinogenicity of benzidine in humans operates by a genotoxic mechanism of action that involves metabolic activation, formation of DNA adducts, and induction of mutagenic and clastogenic effects. Metabolic activation to DNA-reactive intermediates occurs by multiple pathways including *N*-oxidation in the liver, *O*-acetylation in the bladder, and peroxidative activation in the mammary gland and other organs.

Benzidine is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Ahlström LH, Sparr Eskilsson C, Björklund E (2005). Determination of banned azo dyes in consumer goods. *Trends Analyt Chem*, 24: 49–56. doi:10.1016/j.trac.2004.09.004

ATSDR (2001). *Toxicological Profile for Benzidine*. Atlanta, GA: Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, 242 pp.

Beyerbach A, Rothman N, Bhatnagar VK *et al.* (2006). Hemoglobin adducts in workers exposed to benzidine and azo dyes. *Carcinogenesis*, 27: 1600–1606. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgi362 PMID:16497705

Bonser GM, Clayson DB, Jull JW (1956). The induction of tumours of the subcutaneous tissues, liver and intestine in the mouse by certain dye-stuffs and their intermediates. *Br J Cancer*, 10: 653–667. doi:10.1038/bjc.1956.79 PMID:13426377

Bos RP, van der Krieken W, Smeijsters L *et al.* (1986). Internal exposure of rats to benzidine derived from orally administered benzidine-based dyes after intestinal azo reduction. *Toxicology*, 40: 207–213. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(86)90080-6 PMID:3726894

CAREX (1999). Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf

Carreón T, LeMasters GK, Ruder AM, Schulte PA (2006a). The genetic and environmental factors involved in benzidine metabolism and bladder carcinogenesis in exposed workers. *Front Biosci*, 11: 2889–2902. doi:10.2741/2017 PMID:16720360

Carreón T, Ruder AM, Schulte PA *et al.* (2006b). NAT2 slow acetylation and bladder cancer in workers exposed to benzidine. *Int J Cancer*, 118: 161–168. doi:10.1002/ijc.21308

Case RA, Hosker ME, McDONALD DB, Pearson JT (1954). Tumours of the urinary bladder in workmen engaged in the manufacture and use of certain dyestuff intermediates in the British chemical industry. I. The role of aniline, benzidine, alpha-naphthylamine, and beta-naphthylamine. *Br J Ind Med*, 11: 75–104. PMID:13149741

Cerniglia CE, Freeman JP, Franklin W, Pack LD (1982). Metabolism of benzidine and benzidine-congener based dyes by human, monkey and rat intestinal bacteria. *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, 107: 1224–1229. doi:10.1016/S0006-291X(82)80128-9 PMID:6814437

Dewan A, Jani JP, Patel JS *et al.* (1988). Benzidine and its acetylated metabolites in the urine of workers exposed to Direct Black 38. *Arch Environ Health*, 43: 269–272. PMID:3415352

ETAD (2008). The restrictions on the marketing and use of azo colourants according to the European legislation

following the Directive 2002/61/EC (19th Amendment of Council Directive 76/769/EEC) (ETAD Information Notice No. 6)

Garrigós MC, Reche F, Marín ML, Jiménez A (2002). Determination of aromatic amines formed from azo colorants in toy products. *J Chromatogr A*, 976: 309–317. doi:10.1016/S0021-9673(02)01162-7 PMID:12462623

Griswold DP Jr, Casey AE, Weisburger EK, Weisburger JH (1968). The carcinogenicity of multiple intragastric doses of aromatic and heterocyclic nitro or amino derivatives in young female sprague-dawley rats. *Cancer Res*, 28: 924–933. PMID:5652305

Hu J, Mao Y, White K (2002). Renal cell carcinoma and occupational exposure to chemicals in Canada. *Occup Med (Lond)*, 52: 157–164. doi:10.1093/occmed/52.3.157 PMID:12063361

IARC (1972). Some inorganic substances, chlorinated hydrocarbons, aromatic amines, N-nitroso compounds and natural products. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 1: 1–184.

IARC (1982). Some industrial chemicals and dyestuffs. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 29: 1–398. PMID:6957379

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (2010). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–678. PMID:21528837.

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Khudoley VV (1977). Tumor induction by carcinogenic agents in anuran amphibian Rana temporaria. *Arch Geschwulstforsch*, 47: 385–399. PMID:303891

Lakshmi VM, Hsu FF, Davis BB, Zenser TV (2000). N-Acetylbenzidine-DNA adduct formation by phorbol 12-myristate-stimulated human polymorphonuclear neutrophils. *Chemical Research in Toxicology*, 13: 785–792. doi:10.1021/tx0000320 PMID:10956067

Lancaster FE & Lawrence JF (1999). Determination of benzidine in the food colours tartrazine and sunset yellow FCF, by reduction and derivatization followed by high-performance liquid chromatography. [abstract]*Food Addit Contam*, 16: 381–390. doi:10.1080/026520399283867 PMID:10755129

Lide DR, editor (2008). *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp. 3–36.

Littlefield NA, Nelson CJ, Frith CH (1983). Benzidine dihydrochloride: toxicological assessment in mice during chronic exposures. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 12: 671–685. doi:10.1080/15287398309530459 PMID:6366243

Littlefield NA, Nelson CJ, Gaylor DW (1984). Benzidine dihydrochloride: risk assessment. *Fundam Appl Toxicol*, 4: 69–80. doi:10.1016/0272-0590(84)90220-3 PMID:6363187

Meigs JW, Marrett LD, Ulrich FU, Flannery JT (1986). Bladder tumor incidence among workers exposed to benzidine: a thirty-year follow-up. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 76: 1–8. PMID:3455732

Mirkova ET & Lalchev SG (1990). The genetic toxicity of the human carcinogens benzidine and benzidine-based dyes: chromosomal analysis in exposed workers. *Prog Clin Biol Res*, 340C: 397–405. PMID:2381938

Miyakawa M & Yoshida O (1980). Protective effects of DL-tryptophan on benzidine-induced hepatic tumor in mice. *Gann*, 71: 265–268. PMID:7053208

Morton KC, Wang CY, Garner CD, Shirai T (1981). Carcinogenicity of benzidine, N,N'-diacetylbenzidine, and N-hydroxy-N,N'-diacetylbenzidine for female CD rats. *Carcinogenesis*, 2: 747–752. doi:10.1093/carcin/2.8.747 PMID:7285281

Nelson CJ, Baetcke KP, Frith CH *et al.* (1982). The influence of sex, dose, time, and cross on neoplasia in mice given benzidine dihydrochloride. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 64: 171–186. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(82)90214-9 PMID:7123548

NIOSH (1984). National Occupational Exposure Survey, 1981–1983. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes3/empl0003.html

NTP (2005). NTP 11th Report on Carcinogens. *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 1–A32. PMID:19826456

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006). *The Merck Index*, 14th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co. Inc., p. 179.

Piolatto G, Negri E, La Vecchia C *et al.* (1991). Bladder cancer mortality of workers exposed to aromatic amines: an updated analysis. *Br J Cancer*, 63: 457–459. doi:10.1038/bjc.1991.106 PMID:2003988

Rinde E & Troll W (1975). Metabolic reduction of benzidine azo dyes to benzidine in the rhesus monkey. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 55: 181–182. PMID:808635

Rothman N, Bhatnagar VK, Hayes RB *et al.* (1996a). The impact of interindividual variation in NAT2 activity on benzidine urinary metabolites and urothelial DNA adducts in exposed workers. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 93: 5084–5089. doi:10.1073/pnas.93.10.5084 PMID:8643532

Rothman N, Hayes RB, Zenser TV *et al.* (1996b). The glutathione S-transferase M1 (GSTM1) null genotype and benzidine-associated bladder cancer, urine mutagenicity, and exfoliated urothelial cell DNA adducts. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 5: 979–983. PMID: 8959320.

Spitz S, Maguigan WH, Dobriner K (1950). The carcinogenic action of benzidine. *Cancer*, 3: 789–804. doi:10.1002/1097-0142(1950)3:5<789::AID-CNCR2820030505>3.0.CO;2-U PMID:14772711

Sun LD & Deng XM (1980). An epidemiological survey of bladder carcinoma in chemical dye industry (author's transl) *Zhonghua Wai Ke Za Zhi*, 18: 491–493. PMID:7238196

Vesselinovitch SD (1983). Perinatal hepatocarcinogenesis. *Biol Res Pregnancy Perinatol*, 4: 22–25. PMID:6303459

Vesselinovitch SD, Rao KV, Mihailovich N (1979). Neoplastic response of mouse tissues during perinatal age periods and its significance in chemical carcinogenesis. *Natl Cancer Inst Monogr*, 51239–250. PMID:384263

Vesselinovitch SD, Rao KVN, Mihailovich N (1975). Factors modulating benzidine carcinogenicity bioassay. *Cancer Res*, 35: 2814–2819. PMID:1157051

Vigliani EC & Barsotti M (1962). Environmental tumors of the bladder in some Italian dye-stuff factories. *Acta Unio Int Contra Cancrum*, 18: 669–675. PMID:13997151

Wu Q & Heng ZC (2006). Study of rat's p53 gene damage and organ specificity induced by benzidine *Sichuan Da Xue Xue Bao Yi Xue Ban*, 37: 33–34, 39. PMID:16468636

Wu W (1988). Occupational cancer epidemiology in the People's Republic of China. *J Occup Med*, 30: 968–974. doi:10.1097/00043764-198812000-00017 PMID:3068337

Xiang CQ, Shen CL, Wu ZR *et al.* (2007). Detection of mutant p53 protein in workers occupationally exposed to benzidine. *Journal of Occupational Health*, 49: 279–284. doi:10.1539/joh.49.279 PMID:17690521

Zenser TV, Lakshmi VM, Hsu FF *et al.* (1999a). Metabolism of N-acetylbenzidine and initiation of bladder cancer. *Mutation Research*, 506–507: 29–40. PMID: 12351142.

Zenser TV, Lakshmi VM, Hsu FF, Davis BB (1999b). Peroxygenase metabolism of N-acetylbenzidine by prostaglandin H synthase. Formation of an N-hydroxylamine. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, 274: 14850–14856. doi:10.1074/jbc.274.21.14850 PMID:10329684

Zenser TV, Lakshmi VM, Rustan TD *et al.* (1996). Human N-acetylation of benzidine: role of NAT1 and NAT2. *Cancer Res*, 56: 3941–3947. PMID:8752161

DYES METABOLIZED TO BENZIDINE

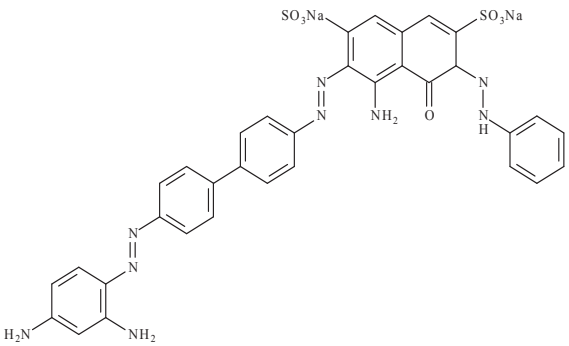
Dyes metabolized to benzidine (benzidine-based dyes) were considered by a previous IARC Working Group in 2008 (IARC, 2010). Three azo dyes metabolized to benzidine, Direct Black 38, Direct Blue 6, and Direct Brown 95 were considered by IARC Working Groups in 1982, 1987, and 2008 (IARC, 1982, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agents

1.1.1 Direct Black 38

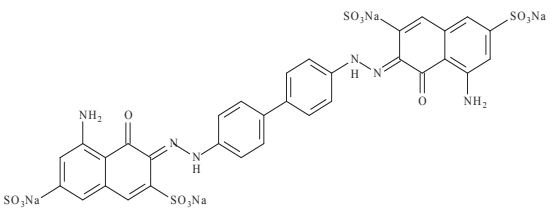
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 1937-37-7
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: 4-amino-3-[2-[4′-[2-(2,4-diaminophenyl)diazenyl][1,1′-biphenyl]-4-yl]diazenyl]-5-hydroxy-6-(2-phenyldiazenyl)-2,7-naphthalenedisulfonic acid, sodium salt (1:2)
Synonyms: C.I. 30235; C.I. Direct Black 38, disodium salt



$C_{34}H_{25}N_9Na_2O_7S_2$
Relative molecular mass: 781.72
Description: Black powder
Solubility: Soluble in water; moderately soluble in ethanol and ethylene glycol mono-ethyl ether; insoluble in other organic solvents (IARC, 2010)

1.1.2 Direct Blue 6

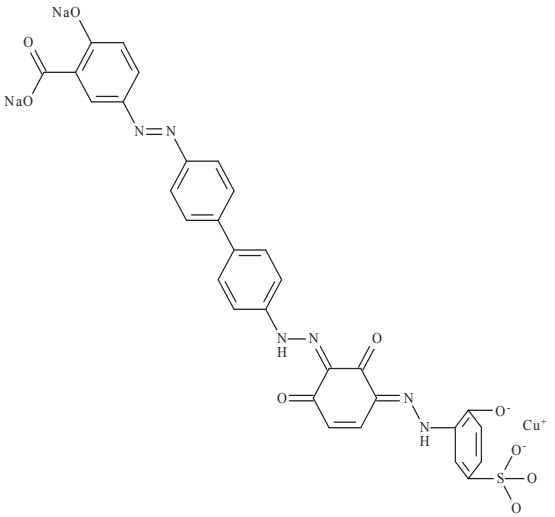
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 2602-46-2
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: 3,3′-[[1,1′-biphenyl]-4,4′-diylbis(2,1-diazenediyl)]bis[5-amino-4-hydroxy-2,7-naphthalenedisulfonic acid], sodium salt (1:4)
Synonyms: C.I. 22610; C.I. Direct Blue 6; C.I. Direct Blue 6, tetra-sodium salt



$C_{32}H_{20}N_6Na_4O_{14}S_4$
Relative molecular mass: 932.74
Description: Blue powder
Solubility: Soluble in water; moderately soluble in ethanol and ethylene glycol mono-ethyl ether; insoluble in other organic solvents (IARC, 2010)

1.1.3 Direct Brown 95

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 16071-86-6
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: [2-hydroxy-5-[2-[4′-[2-[2-(hydroxy-κO)-6-hydroxy-3-[2-[2-(hydroxy-κO)-5-sulfophenyl]diazenyl-κN1]phenyl]diazenyl][1,1′-biphenyl]-4-yl]diazenyl]benzoato(4-)]-cuprate(2-), sodium (1:2)
Synonyms: C.I. 30145; C.I. Direct Brown 95



$C_{31}H_{18}CuN_6Na_2O_9S$
Relative molecular mass: 760.10
Description: Reddish-brown powder
Solubility: Soluble in water; moderately soluble in ethanol; insoluble in acetone (IARC, 2010)

1.2 Uses

In general, benzidine-based dyes were used primarily to colour textiles, leather, and paper products and also in the petroleum, rubber, plastics, wood, soap, fur, and hair-dye industries. More than 300 benzidine-based dyes are listed in the Colour Index, including 18 that were commercially available in the United States of America (USA). Access to these dyes for home use is no longer permitted in the USA, but some – in particular direct browns, greens, and blacks – were available as consumer products in the 1970s (IARC, 2010). Direct Black 38, Direct Blue 6, and Direct Brown 95 were used on textiles (such as cotton, silk, wool, nylon, and acetate) and on leather. In addition, Direct Black 38 and Direct Blue 6 were used in aqueous printing inks, in hair dyes and as biological stains; Direct Black 38 and Direct Brown 95 were used in plastics; Direct Blue 6 and Direct Brown 95 were used in paper; and, Direct Black 38 was used in wood stains and wood flour (Society of Dyers and Colourists, 1971; NCI, 1978).

By the mid-1970s, most manufacturers in the USA started phasing out the use of benzidine-based dyes and replacing them with other types of dyes (NIOSH, 1980). In 1994, the German Government prohibited the use of certain azo dyes in consumer goods that come in direct prolonged contact with human skin (e.g. clothing, bedding, footwear, gloves, etc.). The dyes affected are those that, after reduction of one or more azo groups, may release one or more of 20 specific aromatic amines (including benzidine) in detectable concentrations (i.e. > 30 ppm). In 2002, the European Union published a Directive (76/769/EEC) that expanded the coverage to compounds that come in contact with the oral cavity, and added two amines to the list (Ahlström *et al.*, 2005; ETAD, 2008).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

Occupational exposure to benzidine-based dyes can occur during the production and use of these substances. The primary routes of potential exposure to benzidine-based dyes are inhalation and accidental ingestion; dermal absorption can also occur. The potential for exposure has declined since the late 1970s, as benzidine-based dyes were removed from both industrial and consumer markets and replaced with other types of dye. Since 1980, use of mixtures containing benzidine at concentrations of 0.1% or more is

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to benzidine-based dyes in the European Union

Industry, occupational activity	
Manufacture of textiles	650
Manufacture of leather and products of leather or of its substitutes	220
Manufacture of furniture and fixtures, except primarily of metal	380
Manufacture of plastic products not elsewhere classified	1470
Iron and steel basic industries	10
Manufacture of fabricated metal products, except machinery and equipment	20
Manufacture of machinery except electrical	640
Manufacture of instruments, and of photographic and optical goods	50
Other manufacturing industries	120
Research and scientific institutes	9280
Medical, dental, other health and veterinary services	1090
TOTAL	13920

From CAREX (1999)

permitted only in closed systems; all workers must observe special precautions to reduce exposure, and strict procedures must be followed to transport such materials (IARC, 1982).

Exposure studies in workers involved in manufacture and use of benzidine-based dyes generally were designed to measure benzidine rather than the benzidine-based dyes. Studies that reported airborne and urinary concentrations and results of dermal wipes of benzidine in the benzidine-based dye industry have been reviewed (IARC, 2010).

Estimates of numbers of workers potentially exposed to benzidine-based dyes have been published by CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) in Europe. CAREX is an international information system that provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Based on data on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens collected from 1990 to 1993, it is estimated that 13920 workers were exposed to benzidine-based dyes in the European Union (CAREX, 1999; Table 1.1).

From the US National Occupational Hazard Survey (1972–74) it was estimated that 79200 workers in 63 occupations (primarily the dye manufacturing, textile dyeing, printing, paper, and leather industries) were potentially exposed to benzidine-based dyes (NIOSH, 1980). A decade later, estimates from another US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83) indicated that about 33900 workers were potentially exposed to one or more of 13 benzidine-based dyes. Although no current estimate of occupational exposure to this type of dye is available, the number of potentially exposed workers is expected to be much lower than in the past (NTP, 2005).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

Benzidine-based dyes can contain various amounts of benzidine as a contaminant. The general population can be exposed to benzidine-based dyes when in contact with consumer goods containing such dyes, e.g. leather products (Ahlström *et al.*, 2005), clothes and toys (Garrigós *et al.*, 2002). Some food colourants such as tartrazine and sunset yellow FCF have been reported to contain trace amounts of benzidine (< 5 to 270 ng/g) (Lancaster & Lawrence, 1999).

Benzidine and benzidine-based dyes have been detected in waste effluents from plants manufacturing or using these dyes (IARC, 2010).

2. Cancer in Humans

Benzidine-based dyes (i.e. dyes metabolized to benzidine) were most recently reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 99 (IARC, 2010).

2.1 Cohort Studies

Three azo dyes metabolized to benzidine, Direct Black 38, Direct Blue 6 and Direct Brown 95, were evaluated in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1982, 1987, 2010). The most recent evaluation (IARC, 2010) stated that there was *inadequate evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of dyes metabolized to benzidine. Stern *et al.* (1987) studied 9365 production workers (7085 men, 2280 women) employed at two leather tanneries where detectable quantities of benzidine were identified in bulk dyes (probably derived from the dyes). Excesses of cancer of the urinary bladder were not observed. The same author (Stern, 2003) conducted a follow-up study with the same result (see Table 2.1, available online at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-03-Table2.1.pdf). Costantini *et al.* (1989) carried out a cohort-mortality study of 2926 male workers employed in tanneries between 1950 and 1981 in Italy. Known exposures in the plants included dyes metabolized to benzidine, dyes metabolized to 3,3′-dimethylbenzidine and dyes metabolized to 3,3′-dimethoxybenzidine. No significant excesses of cancer of the urinary bladder were found (5 deaths, SMR 1.5, 95%CI: 0.5–3.5). You *et al.* (1990) observed only one case of cancer of the urinary bladder in 1210 workers (1060 men, 150 women) from 17 knitting factories, 10 stocking factories, nine silk printing and dyeing factories and seven printing and dyeing factories in China. Fifteen types of benzidine-derived dye had been used in these 43 factories, Direct Black 38 being the most common. Montanaro *et al.* (1997) reported on mortality in a cohort of 1224 workers employed at a chrome tannery in Italy between 1955 and 1988 who were exposed to azo dyes metabolized to benzidine and other chemicals in the tanning process. An excess risk for cancer of the urinary bladder was observed (10 deaths, SMR 2.4, 95%CI: 1.2–4.5).

2.2 Case–control studies

Yoshida *et al.* (1971) reported an excess risk for cancer of the urinary bladder (OR, 6.8, $P = 0.002$) in male workers in the silk-dyeing industry in Japan, in a case–control study of 200 bladder-cancer cases and 148 controls. At least seven of the 17 patients with bladder cancer worked as kimono painters, reportedly using benzidine-based dyes. Myslak *et al.* (1991) found an excess risk for cancer of the urinary bladder among painters in Germany (OR, 2.9, 95%CI: 1.3–6.6). Benzidine-based dyes were manufactured in that country before 1950 and painters were reported to prepare the paints themselves. These studies do not provide data specifically on dyes metabolized to benzidine.

2.3 Synthesis

There is a lack of clear and consistent evidence from epidemiological studies that dyes metabolized to benzidine cause cancer in humans.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenicity of dyes metabolized to benzidine in mice and rats exposed by the oral route or through bladder implantation have been reviewed (IARC, 1987, 2010). There

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of dyes metabolized to benzidine in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Direct Black 38				
Mouse, ICR (M, F) 60 wk Asada *et al.* (1981)	Drinking-water Groups of 60 mice were given drinking-water containing 3 g/L Direct Black 38. Surviving animals were sacrificed 60 wk after the start of the study. A group of 20 mice served as untreated controls.	Hepatocellular carcinoma: 0/20, 46/59 Mammary gland cancers: 0/20, 20/59	[$P < 0.0001$] [$P < 0.005$]	Gender distribution NR Purity NR
Rat, F344 (M, F) 13 wk NTP (1978), Robens *et al.* (1980)	Feed Groups of 10 male and 10 female rats were fed 0, 190, 375, 750, 1500, or 3000 ppm Direct Black 38 (87% pure, containing ~7% water, ~8% NaCl, no benzidine detected) in the diet for 13 wk and then sacrificed.	Hepatocellular carcinoma or neoplastic nodules: M–0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 9/9*(hepatocellular carcinoma, 4/9**), 0/9; F–0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 5/10** (only neoplastic nodules), 0/8	*$P < 0.001$ Fisher exact test **$P = 0.01–0.05$ Fisher exact test	Study is of short duration with small number of animals. High mortality in highest dose groups
Direct Blue 6				
Rat, F344 (M, F) 13 wk NTP (1978), Robens *et al.* (1980)	Feed Groups of 10 male and 10 female rats were fed 0, 190, 375, 750, 1500, or 3000 ppm Direct Blue 6 (60% pure, containing ~9% water, ~21% NaCl, no benzidine detected) in the diet for 13 wk and then sacrificed.	Hepatocellular carcinoma or neoplastic nodules: M–0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 8/10*(hepatocellular carcinoma, 2/10), 1/9 F–0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 7/9**(hepatocellular carcinoma, 4/9***)	*$P < 0.001$ Fisher exact test **$P = 0.001–0.009$ Fisher exact test ***$P = 0.01–0.05$	Study is of short duration with small number of animals. High mortality in highest dose groups
Mouse, dd (F) 40 wk Niitsu (1973)	Bladder implantation Two groups of 50 female mice received either a paraffin wax pellet (20 mg) containing 10% Direct Blue BB or a wax pellet alone implanted in the bladder, and were kept for up to 40 wk.	Bladder carcinomas: 1/36 (2.7%), 3/21(14.2%)	[NS, Fisher exact test]	Study duration was short. "Direct Blue BB" is a synonym for Direct Black 38. Purity unspecified. Age not specified (weight, 20 g).

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Direct Brown 95				
Rat, F344 (M, F) 13 wk NTP (1978), Robens *et al.* (1980)	Feed Groups of 10 male and 10 female rats were fed 0, 190, 375, 750, 1500, or 3000 ppm Direct Brown 95 (72% pure, containing ~5% water, ~15% NaCl, no benzidine detected) in the diet for 13 wk, and then sacrificed.	Hepatocellular carcinoma or neoplastic nodules: M–0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 0/9, 0/9, 0/9; F–0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 5/8*(hepatocellular carcinoma, 1/8), 0/8	*P = 0.001–0.009 Fisher exact test	Study is of short duration with small number of animals. High mortality in highest dose groups.

F, female; M, male; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks

have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since those reviews. Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1.

Three dyes that would be metabolized to benzidine, Direct Black 38, Direct Blue 6 and Direct Brown 95, were tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration (feed or drinking-water) or bladder implantation. Direct Black 38 was adequately tested in one drinking-water study in mice and in one feeding study in mice and rats. Following its oral administration to mice in the drinking-water for 60 weeks, Direct Black 38 significantly increased the incidence of hepatocellular carcinomas and mammary gland cancers (Asada *et al.*, 1981). Oral administration of Direct Black 38 to male and female rats in the diet for only 13 weeks caused a significant increase of hepatocellular carcinomas in males and of liver neoplastic nodules in both sexes (NTP, 1978; Robens *et al.*, 1980). Direct Blue 6 was adequately tested in one feeding study in mice and rats and one bladder-implantation study in mice. Oral administration of Direct Blue 6 to male and female rats in the diet for only 13 weeks caused a significant increase in hepatocellular carcinomas in females and of hepatocellular carcinomas and liver neoplastic nodules combined in both sexes (NTP, 1978; Robens *et al.*, 1980). The bladder-implantation study in mice showed a slight increase in transitional cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder (Niitsu, 1973). Direct Brown 95 was adequately tested in a feeding study in mice and rats. Oral administration of Direct Brown 95 to male and female rats in the diet for only 13 weeks caused a significant increase in hepatocellular carcinomas and liver neoplastic nodules combined in females (NTP, 1978; Robens *et al.*, 1980).

4. Other Relevant Data

A general Section on "Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility" appears as Section 4.1 in the *Monograph* on 4-aminobiphenyl in this volume.

For details on benzidine and benzidine-based dyes, see Section 4 of the *Monograph* on Benzidine in this volume.

5. Evaluation

There is *inadequate evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of dyes metabolized to benzidine.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of Direct Black 38, Direct Blue 6, and Direct Brown 95.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of dyes metabolized to benzidine.

There is strong mechanistic evidence indicating that benzidine-based dyes are converted by azoreduction to benzidine in humans and in experimental animals and, consequently, produce DNA adducts and genotoxic effects similar to those of benzidine.

Dyes metabolized to benzidine are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

In making the overall evaluation, the Working Group considered the following:

- there is *sufficient evidence* in humans and in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of benzidine.
- the metabolism of benzidine-based dyes results in the release of free benzidine and the induction of chromosomal aberrations in humans, and in all experimental animal species studied.

References

Ahlström LH, Sparr Eskilsson C, Björklund E (2005). Determination of banned azo dyes in consumer goods. *Trends in Analytical Chemistry*, 24: 49–56. doi:10.1016/j.trac.2004.09.004

Asada I, Matsumoto Y, Tobe T *et al.* (1981). Induction of hepatoma in mice by direct deep Black-Extra (DDB-EX) and occurrence of serum AFP. *Nippon Geka Hokan*, 50: 45–55. PMID:6169317

CAREX (1999) Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf

Costantini AS, Paci E, Miligi L *et al.* (1989). Cancer mortality among workers in the Tuscan tanning industry. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 384–388. PMID:2818971

ETAD (2008). *The restrictions on the marketing and use of azo colourants according to the European legislation following the Directive 2002/61/EC* (19th Amendment of Council Directive 76/769/EEC) (ETAD Information Notice No. 6)

Garrigós MC, Reche F, Marín ML, Jiménez A (2002). Determination of aromatic amines formed from azo colorants in toy products. *Journal of Chromatography. A*, 976: 309–317. doi:10.1016/S0021-9673(02)01162-7 PMID:12462623

IARC (1982). Some industrial chemicals and dyestuffs. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 29: 1–398. PMID:6957379

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (2010). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–658. PMID:21528837

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Lancaster FE & Lawrence JF (1999). Determination of benzidine in the food colours tartrazine and sunset yellow FCF, by reduction and derivatization followed by high-performance liquid chromatography. [abstract] *Food Additives and Contaminants*, 16: 381–390. doi:10.1080/026520399283867 PMID:10755129

Montanaro F, Ceppi M, Demers PA *et al.* (1997). Mortality in a cohort of tannery workers. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 54: 588–591. doi:10.1136/oem.54.8.588 PMID:9326162

Myslak ZW, Bolt HM, Brockmann W (1991). Tumors of the urinary bladder in painters: a case-control study. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 19: 705–713. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700190604 PMID:1882850

NCI (1978). *Thirteen-Week Subchronic Toxicity Studies of Direct Blue 6, Direct Black 38 and Direct Brown 95 Dyes*. Technical Report Series No 108. DHEW (NIH) Publication No. 78–1358. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health.

Niitsu K (1973). Studies of the metabolism and carcinogenicity of azo dyes used for food colors and direct dyestuffs. Part II. Studies on the metabolism and carcinogenicity of direct dyestuffs blue BB and black EX. *Tokyo Jikeikai Ika Daigaku Zasshi*, 88: 467–471.

NIOSH (1980). *Special Occupational Hazard Review for Benzidine-Based Dyes*. NIOSH Criteria Documents. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 80–109. U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, Public Health Services, Center for Disease Control. 60 pp. [http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/80-109.html]

NTP (1978). 13-week subchronic toxicity studies of direct blue 6, direct black 38, and direct brown 95 dyes. *Natl Cancer Inst Carcinog Tech Rep Ser*, 108: 1–117. PMID:12799683

NTP (2005). NTP 11th Report on Carcinogens. *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 1–A32. PMID:19826456

Robens JF, Dill GS, Ward JM *et al.* (1980). Thirteen-week subchronic toxicity studies of Direct Blue 6, Direct Black 38, and Direct Brown 95 dyes. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*, 54: 431–442. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(80)90170-2 PMID:7394798

Society of Dyers and Colourists (1971). *Colour Index*, 3rd ed., Vol. 4, Bradford, UK: Lund Humphries, p. 4742

Stern FB (2003). Mortality among chrome leather tannery workers: an update. *Am J Ind Med*, 44: 197–206. PMID:12874853

Stern FB, Beaumont JJ, Halperin WE *et al.* (1987). Mortality of chrome leather tannery workers and chemical exposures in tanneries. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 13: 108–117. PMID:3602964

Yoshida O, Harada T, Miyagawa M *et al.* (1971). Bladder cancer in workers of the dyeing industry - epidemiological survey focusing on Kyoto Prefecture *Igaku no Ayumi*, 79: 421–422.

You XY, Chen JG, Hu YN (1990). Studies on the relation between bladder cancer and benzidine or its derived dyes in Shanghai. *Br J Ind Med*, 47: 544–552. PMID:2393635

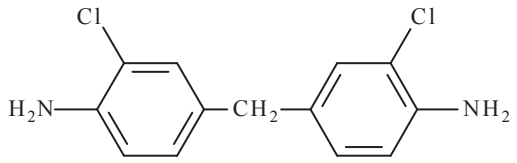
4,4′-METHYLENEBIS(2-CHLOROBENZENAMINE)

4,4′-Methylenebis(2-chlorobenzenamine) (MOCA) was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1973, 1992, and 2008 (IARC, 1974, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

From IARC (2010) unless indicated otherwise
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 101-14-4
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: 4,4′-Methylenebis(2-chlorobenzenamine)
Synonym: this compound is commonly known as methylenebis(*ortho*-chloroaniline), MOCA



$C_{13}H_{12}Cl_2N_2$
Relative molecular mass: 267.15
Description: Colourless to yellow or light-brown crystalline solid with a faint amine-like odour
Solubility: Slightly soluble in water; soluble in dilute acids, ether, alcohol (O'Neil, 2006)

1.2 Uses

MOCA is used primarily as a curing agent for polyurethane pre-polymers in the manufacture of castable urethane rubber products (e.g. shock-absorption pads and conveyor belting). In the laboratory, MOCA is used as a model compound for studying carcinogens (NTP, 2005; O'Neil, 2006; IARC, 2010).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

Occupational exposure to MOCA can occur during its production and use in the polyurethane industry. Workers can be exposed to MOCA when it is processed in the form of a liquid emulsion, as solid pellets with dust, or as solid pellets without dust. In most cases, dermal absorption after contact with contaminated surfaces is the most important occupational exposure route, with inhalation and ingestion representing minor exposure pathways (IARC, 1993).

CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational

exposure to known and suspected carcinogens, based on data collected in the European Union (EU) from 1990 to 1993. The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 presents the results for MOCA by industry in the EU (CAREX, 1999).

An estimated 10000 workers were exposed to MOCA in industrialized countries in 1972 (Rappaport & Morales, 1979; Will *et al.*, 1981). In 1979, an estimated 1400 workers in the United States of America (USA) were directly exposed and 7400 indirectly exposed by working in polyurethane-manufacturing processes involving MOCA (Ward *et al.*, 1987). More recently, the Health and Safety Executive estimated that in 2005–06 approximately 300 workers in the United Kingdom were directly exposed to MOCA during polyurethane-elastomer production and over 1000 workers were indirectly exposed (e.g. office staff) (HSE, 2007; Cocker *et al.*, 2009).

(a) Exposure measurements

MOCA levels in air, blood and urine and in surface-wipe samples have been reported for workers employed in the production and use of this chemical in several countries. Different analytical methods have been applied, which complicates comparison of reported MOCA levels (IARC, 2010). Surface wipes have been used mainly to give an indication of potential for dermal exposure to MOCA by anyone working in the area. As measurement of airborne MOCA alone is considered ineffective in the assessment of worker exposure (Robert *et al.*, 1999), post-shift measurement in urine is the most employed method to assess exposure. The concentration of MOCA in urine reflects recent exposure, since the biological half-life of this compound is approximately 23 hours (Osorio *et al.*, 1990). In some studies urinary concentrations of acetyl-MOCA have been determined in addition to those of MOCA, showing that *N*-acetyl-MOCA is a minor urinary metabolite compared with the elimination of the parent amine (Cocker *et al.*, 1988; Shih *et al.*, 2007).

An alternative to measuring MOCA in urine is to determine haemoglobin-MOCA adducts in blood. These adducts are stable for the lifespan of haemoglobin, which in humans is about 120 days (Vaughan & Kenyon, 1996).

(b) MOCA production

Air concentrations of MOCA have been reported from two production plants. In a study from the USA (Linch *et al.*, 1971), the airborne concentration of MOCA was below the detection limit. In a study from Taiwan, China (Chen *et al.*, 2005), the highest concentrations in air (0.41 mg/m^3) were recorded during the purification of MOCA.

Measurements of MOCA concentrations in the urine of production workers from France, Taiwan (China), and the USA were reviewed recently (IARC, 2010). In workers without gloves or protective clothing, concentrations ranged up to several thousand μg/L; the values were much lower when proper protection had been used.

(c) Polyurethane-production workers

Measurements of MOCA concentrations in the urine of polyurethane-production workers from Australia, Canada, France, Germany, Japan, the United Kingdom and the USA were reviewed recently (IARC, 2010). The use of protective equipment and the application of safety procedures reduced the values from several hundred μg/L to as low as 1–10 μg/L.

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

The general population can be exposed to MOCA in areas that have been contaminated with MOCA (Keeslar, 1986) or through consumption of certain types of plant (e.g. root crops) grown in contaminated soil (ATSDR, 1994). Immediate family members of workers exposed to MOCA

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to MOCA in the European Union

Industry, occupational activity	
Manufacture of plastic products not elsewhere classified	1390
Manufacture of rubber products	1360
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	100
Manufacture of miscellaneous products from petroleum and coal	10
Research and scientific institutes	430
TOTAL	3300

From: CAREX (1999)

were reported to have concentrations of up to 15 µg/L in their urine (Keeslar, 1986).

In 1979, extensive environmental contamination with MOCA was discovered on several hundred hectares of land surrounding a MOCA plant in Adrian, MI, USA. Concentrations of up to several mg/kg were found in gardens and community-recreation areas. MOCA was also found in the urine of young children living in the contaminated area (Keeslar, 1986). Of 12 selected children, aged 2 to 16 years, six were found to have detectable concentrations of MOCA in their urine, ranging from 0.3–1.0 ppb (µg/L). These six children were all under the age of six years. Contact with contaminated soil during playing and going barefoot were considered the most likely routes of exposure. The general adult population living in the contaminated area had no detectable MOCA concentrations in urine (IARC, 2010).

2. Cancer in Humans

Bladder-cytology surveys have identified bladder-cancer cases in workers exposed to MOCA in Michigan, USA (Ward *et al.*, 1988, 1990), New Jersey, USA (Mason & Vogler, 1990; Mason *et al.*, 1992), and Taiwan (China) (Chen *et al.*, 2005), but expected numbers were not calculated, so risks for bladder cancer cannot be evaluated. Dost *et al.* (2009) reported on a cohort of 308 male MOCA-production workers in the United Kingdom and found one bladder-cancer death in the period 1979–2007, with 0.18 deaths expected (SMR 5.6; 95%CI: 0.14–31.2), based on the United Kingdom mortality rates.

No adequate epidemiological studies were available to the Working Group to evaluate an association between MOCA and bladder-cancer risk.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenicity of MOCA in mice, rats, and dogs after oral administration, subcutaneous injection or dermal application have been reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1974, 1987, 1993, 2010). Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1. There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since the most recent evaluation (IARC, 2010).

MOCA was tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration (in the feed or in a gelatin capsule) in one experiment in mice, five experiments in rats and one experiment in dogs; by subcutaneous injection in one experiment in rats; and as an initiator or as a promoter in three experiments in mice, following dermal application.

Following its oral administration (feed) to female mice and male rats, MOCA increased the incidence of hepatomas (Russfield *et al.*, 1975). Oral administration (feed) to male and female

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, HaM/ICR (M, F) ~24 mo Russfield *et al.* (1975)	Feed Groups of mice were fed diets containing 0, 1000, or 2000 ppm MOCA as the hydrochloride salt for 18 mo. 25/group/sex	Haemangiomas or haemangiosarcomas (combined) M–0/18, 3/13, 8/20 F–1/20, 0/21, 6/14 Hepatomas: M–3/18, 3/13, 4/20 F–0/20, 9/21*, 7/14*	*$P < 0.01$, Fisher exact test	Purity, 97% Authors stated that the incidence of vascular tumours in the high-dose groups was comparable with that in historical controls of the same strain. [The Working Group noted that these vascular tumours were probably not treatment-related]
Rat, Wistar (M, F) Lifetime Grundmann & Steinhoff (1970)	Feed Groups of rats were fed 0 or 1000 ppm MOCA in a protein-deficient diet for 500 d (total dose 27 g/kg bw). 25/group/sex	Hepatomas: M–0/25, 22/25* F–0/25, 18/25* Lung tumours: M–0/25, 8/25** F–0/25, 5/25***	*[$P < 0.001$ Fisher exact test] **[$P = 0.002$] ***[$P = 0.025$]	Purity NR Mean survival times of treated males and females were 565 d and 535 d, respectively, and mean survival of male and female controls was 730 d. Lung tumours were mainly carcinomas.
Rat, Charles River CD1 (M) ~24 mo Russfield *et al.* (1975)	Feed Groups of rats were fed diets containing 0, 500, or 1000 ppm MOCA as the hydrochloride salt for 18 mo 25/group	Hepatomas: 0/22, 1/22, 4/19	[$P < 0.05$, Cochran-Armitage trend test]	Purity, 97%
Rat, Charles River CD (M, F) 2 yr Stula *et al.* (1975)	Feed Groups of rats were fed 0 or 1000 ppm MOCA in a standard diet for up to two yr. 50/group/sex	Lung adenocarcinomas: M–0/44, 21/44* F–0/44, 27/44* Lung adenomatosis: M–1/44, 14/44* F–1/44, 11/44* Hepatocellular carcinomas: M–0/44, 3/44 F–0/44, 3/44 Hepatocellular adenomas: M–0/44, 3/44 F–0/44, 2/44 Pleural mesotheliomas: M–0/44, 4/44 F–0/44, 2/44	*$P < 0.05$, χ^2-test	Purity NR Lung adenomatosis considered as pre-neoplastic or early neoplastic lesion

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Charles River CD (M, F) 16 mo Stula *et al.* (1975)	Feed Groups of rats were fed 0 or 1000 ppm MOCA in a low-protein diet for up to 16 mo. 25/group/sex	Lung adenocarcinomas: M–0/21, 5/21* F–0/21, 6/21* Lung adenomatosis: M–1/21, 8/21* F–1/21, 14/21* Hepatocellular carcinomas: M–0/21, 11/21* F–0/21, 1/21 Hepatocellular adenomas: M–0/21, 5/21* F–0/21, 2/21 Mammary gland adenocarcinomas: F–0/21, 6/21*	*$P < 0.05$, χ^2-test	Purity NR Lung adenomatosis considered as pre-neoplastic or early neoplastic lesion
Rat, Charles River CD (M) 24 mo Kommineni *et al.* (1979)	Feed Groups of rats were fed a 'protein-adequate' diet (Group A) containing 0, 250, 500, or 1000 ppm MOCA or a 'protein-deficient' diet (Group B) containing 0, 125, 250, and 500 ppm MOCA for 18 mo, then kept on these same diets without MOCA. 50, 75 or 100/group	Lung adenocarcinomas: A–0/100, 14/100*, 20/75*, 31/50* B–0/100, 3/100, 7/75**, 8/50* All lung tumours: A–1/100, 23/100*, 28/75*, 35/50* B–0/100, 6/100**, 11/75*, 13/50* Mammary gland adenocarcinomas: A–1/100, 5/100, 8/75**, 14/50* B–0/100, 1/100, 3/75, 3/50*** Zymbal gland carcinomas: A–1/100, 8/100***, 5/75, 11/50* B–0/100, 0/100, 4/75***, 6/50* Hepatocellular carcinomas: A–0/100, 3/100, 3/75, 18/50* B–0/100, 0/100, 0/75, 9/50* Haemangiosarcomas: A–2/100, 4/100, 3/75, 0/50 B–1/100, 2/100, 4/75, 4/50***	* $P < 0.001$ (two-tailed test) **$P < 0.01$ (two-tailed test) ***$P < 0.05$ (two-tailed test)	Industrial grade, purity NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Dog, Beagle (F) 9 yr Stula *et al.* (1978)	Oral administration A group of one-yr-old dogs was given 100 mg MOCA in gelatin capsules 3 × /wk for 6 wk and then 5 × /wk for up to 9 yr. A group of dogs served as untreated controls. 6/group	Urinary bladder carcinomas: 0/6, 4/5	[$P < 0.05$]	~90% pure One treated dog died prematurely of infection. A transitional-cell carcinoma/adenocarcinoma of the urethra developed in the one treated dog that did not develop a bladder carcinoma
Rat, Wistar (M, F) Lifetime Steinhoff & Grundmann (1971)	Subcutaneous injection Groups of rats were given subcutaneous injections of MOCA (suspension in saline) at doses of 500 or 1000 mg/kg bw, either once a wk or at longer time intervals during 620 d (total dose, 25 g/kg bw). A group of rats served as untreated controls. 17 or 25 (controls)/group/sex	Hepatocellular carcinomas: 0/50, 9/34* Lung cancers: 1/50, 7/34**	*[$P \leq 0.0042$, Fisher exact test] **[$P \leq 0.016$, Fisher exact test]	94% pure Age NR Study inadequately described in a short communication. Lung cancers in treated rats were six adenocarcinomas and one carcinoma.

bw, body weight; d, day or days; F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

rats increased the incidence of hepatomas and lung tumours (Grundmann & Steinhoff, 1970). Oral administration (feed) to rats of both sexes caused an increased incidence of lung and mammary gland adenocarcinoma, and hepatocellular carcinoma in two studies (Stula *et al.*, 1975, Kommineni *et al.*, 1979). MOCA also caused haemangiosarcomas and Zymbal gland carcinomas in male rats in one of these studies (Kommineni *et al.*, 1979). Oral administration of MOCA in a gelatin capsule caused carcinomas of the urinary bladder in female dogs (Stula *et al.*, 1978). Subcutaneous injection of MOCA produced an increased incidence in hepatocellular carcinoma and lung cancer in rats (Steinhoff & Grundmann, 1971). After dermal application, MOCA was neither an initiator nor a promoter in the two experiments in mice (Nesnow *et al.*, 1985; Rozinova *et al.*, 1998).

4. Other Relevant Data

A general Section on "Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility" appears as Section 4.1 in the *Monograph* on 4-aminobiphenyl in this volume.

Studies on the metabolism, genotoxicity, and animal carcinogenicity of MOCA indicate that this substance acts similarly to other aromatic amines that are known to cause cancer of the urinary bladder in humans.

CYP2A6 or CYP3A4 catalyse *N*-oxidation of MOCA (Butler *et al.*, 1989; Yun *et al.*, 1992) to *N*-hydroxy-MOCA, which can bind to DNA or haemoglobin, or can be further activated to an *N*-sulfate ester by liver sulfotransferases (Chou *et al.*, 1995). Also prostaglandin H synthase (Wiese *et al.*, 2001) and myeloperoxidase (Culp *et al.*, 1997) may catalyse the binding of MOCA to DNA. In exfoliated urothelial cells from MOCA-exposed workers, the predominant DNA adduct was *N*-(deoxyadenosin-8-yl)-4-amino-3-chlorobenzyl alcohol (Kaderlik *et al.*, 1993). The same adduct was found in the liver, lung and kidney of rats exposed to MOCA (Silk *et al.*, 1989). In rat liver the adduct *N*-(deoxyadenosin-8-yl)-4-amino-3-chlorotoluene was also detected. MOCA-DNA adducts were found in the liver and bladder of exposed dogs. Metabolites in urine and blood and haemoglobin adducts have been detected in workers in the polyurethane elastomer industry (Vaughan & Kenyon, 1996). In contrast to the situation with benzidine, very low levels of *N*-acetylated metabolites were observed in urine. Because human liver can also catalyse the *N*-acetylation of MOCA, these low urinary levels may reflect an efficient de-acetylation pathway (Lakshmi *et al.*, 1995).

MOCA is a multiorgan carcinogen in experimental animals: it induces bladder tumours in dogs, liver tumours in rats and mice, and haemangiosarcomas, lung, and mammary gland tumours in rats. Particularly compelling data on the genotoxicity of MOCA include the higher micronucleus frequencies measured in exfoliated bladder epithelial cells and in peripheral lymphocytes of exposed workers (Murray & Edwards, 1999). MOCA and *N*-hydroxy-MOCA are mutagenic in *S. typhimurium* (Bridges *et al.*, 1981; Kuslikis *et al.*, 1991). In addition, MOCA induced mutations at the *HPRT* locus in human lymphoblastoid cells, it stimulated prophage induction in *E. coli*, and caused aneuploidy in *S. cerevisiae*, unscheduled DNA synthesis in cultured mouse hepatocytes, transformation in several mammalian cell cultures, and sister chromatid exchange in lymphocytes of rats treated *in vivo*, and in cultured Chinese hamster ovary cells.

5. Evaluation

There is *inadequate evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chlorobenzenamine).

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chlorobenzenamine).

There is strong mechanistic evidence indicating that the carcinogenicity of 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chlorobenzenamine) involves a genotoxic mechanism of action that includes metabolic activation, formation of DNA adducts, and induction of mutagenic and clastogenic effects in humans. Metabolic activation to DNA-reactive intermediates occurs by multiple pathways including *N*-oxidation in the liver, *O*-acetylation in the bladder, and peroxidative activation in the mammary gland and other organs.

4,4′-Methylenebis(2-chlorobenzenamine) is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

In making the overall evaluation, the Working Group considered that:

The genotoxicity of 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chlorobenzenamine) is well documented and its toxicological profile is similar to that of *ortho*-toluidine, thus indicating a common mode of action. 4,4′-Methylenebis(2-chlorobenzenamine) has been shown to interact with DNA to form adducts in urothelial cells, and with haemoglobin to form adducts in the blood of workers exposed to this compound. It has also been shown to cause the formation of sister chromatid exchange and micronuclei in urothelial cells and lymphocytes of exposed workers.

References

ATSDR (1994). *Toxicological Profile For 4,4'-Methylenebis(2-Chloroaniline) MBOCA*. 120 pp. [http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/toxprofiles/tp45.html]

Bridges BA, MacGregor D, Zeiger E *et al.* (1981). Summary report on the performance of the bacterial mutation assays. *Prog Mutat Res*, 1: 49–67.

Butler MA, Guengerich FP, Kadlubar FF (1989). Metabolic oxidation of the carcinogens 4-aminobiphenyl and 4,4′-methylene-bis(2-chloroaniline) by human hepatic microsomes and by purified rat hepatic cytochrome P-450 monooxygenases. *Cancer Res*, 49: 25–31. PMID:2908851

CAREX (1999). Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf.

Chen HI, Liou SH, Loh CH *et al.* (2005). Bladder cancer screening and monitoring of 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) exposure among workers in Taiwan. *Urology*, 66: 305–310. doi:10.1016/j.urology.2005.02.031 PMID:16098360

Chou HC, Lang NP, Kadlubar FF (1995). Metabolic activation of N-hydroxy arylamines and N-hydroxy heterocyclic amines by human sulfotransferase(s). *Cancer Res*, 55: 525–529. PMID:7834621

Cocker J, Boobis AR, Davies DS (1988). Determination of the N-acetyl metabolites of 4,4′-methylene dianiline and 4,4′-methylene-bis(2-chloroaniline) in urine. *Biomed Environ Mass Spectrom*, 17: 161–167. doi:10.1002/bms.1200170303 PMID:3214672

Cocker J, Cain JR, Baldwin P *et al.* (2009). A survey of occupational exposure to 4,4′-methylene-bis (2-chloroaniline) (MbOCA) in the UK. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 53: 499–507. doi:10.1093/annhyg/mep026 PMID:19447850

Culp SJ, Roberts DW, Talaska G *et al.* (1997). Immunochemical, 32P-postlabeling, and GC/MS detection of 4-aminobiphenyl-DNA adducts in human peripheral lung in relation to metabolic activation pathways involving pulmonary N-oxidation, conjugation, and peroxidation. *Mutat Res*, 378: 97–112. PMID:9288889

Dost A, Straughan JK, Sorahan T (2009). Cancer incidence and exposure to 4,4′-methylene-bis-ortho-chloroaniline (MbOCA). *Occup Med (Lond)*, 59: 402–405. doi:10.1093/occmed/kqp093 PMID:19564173

Grundmann E & Steinhoff DZ (1970). [Liver and lung tumors following 3,3′-dichloro-4,4′-diaminodiphenylmethane in rats] *Z Krebsforsch*, 74: 28–39. doi:10.1007/BF00524677 PMID:4326955

HSE (2007). *A survey of occupational exposure to MbOCA in the polyurethane elastomer industry in Great Britain 2005–2006*, pp. 1–91.

IARC (1974). Some aromatic amines, hydrazine and related substances, N-nitroso compounds and miscellaneous alkylating agents. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 4: 1–286.

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1993). Occupational exposures of hairdressers and barbers and personal use of hair colourants; some hair

dyes, cosmetic colourants, industrial dyestuffs and aromatic amines. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 57: 1–427.

IARC (2010). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–678. PMID:21528837.

Kaderlik KR, Talaska G, DeBord DG *et al.* (1993). 4,4'-Methylene-bis(2-chloroaniline)-DNA adduct analysis in human exfoliated urothelial cells by 32P-postlabeling. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 2: 63–69. PMID: 8420614.

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Keeslar FL (1986). *The removal and control of methylene-bis orthochloroaniline in residential and industrial areas of Adrian, Michigan*. In: *Proceedings of the 1986 Conference on Hazardous Material Spills, Preparedness Prevention Control and Cleanup of Releases, St. Louis, MO, 5–8 May 1986*. Rockville, MD: Government Institute Inc., pp. 93–97.

Kommineni C, Groth DH, Frockt IJ *et al.* (1979). Determination of the tumorigenic potential of methylene-bis-orthochloroaniline. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol*, 2: 149–171. PMID:512554

Kuslikis BI, Trosko JE, Braselton WE Jr (1991). Mutagenicity and effect on gap-junctional intercellular communication of 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) and its oxidized metabolites. *Mutagenesis*, 6: 19–24. doi:10.1093/mutage/6.1.19 PMID:2038268

Lakshmi VM, Bell DA, Watson MA *et al.* (1995). N-acetylbenzidine and N,N'-diacetylbenzidine formation by rat and human liver slices exposed to benzidine. *Carcinogenesis*, 16: 1565–1571. doi:10.1093/carcin/16.7.1565 PMID:7614690

Linch AL, O'Connor GB, Barnes JR *et al.* (1971). Methylene-bis-ortho-chloroaniline (MOCA): evaluation of hazards and exposure control. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 32: 802–819. doi:10.1080/0002889718506543 PMID:5149396

Mason TJ & Vogler WJ (1990). Bladder cancer screening at the Dupont Chambers Works: a new initiative. *J Occup Med*, 32: 874–877. doi:10.1097/00043764-199009000-00023 PMID:2074511

Mason TJ, Walsh WP, Lee K, Vogler W (1992). New opportunities for screening and early detection of bladder cancer. *J Cell Biochem Suppl*, 16I: S16I13–22. doi:10.1002/jcb.240501304 PMID:1305676

Murray EB & Edwards JW (1999). Micronuclei in peripheral lymphocytes and exfoliated urothelial cells of workers exposed to 4,4′-methylenebis-(2-chloroaniline) (MOCA). *Mutat Res*, 446: 175–180. PMID:10635339

Nesnow S, Triplett LL, Slaga TJ (1985). Studies on the tumor initiating, tumor promoting, and tumor co-initiating properties of respiratory carcinogens. *Carcinog Compr Surv*, 8: 257–277. PMID:3986826

NTP (2005). 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) *Report on Carcinogens*, 11th ed. Research Triangle Park, NC

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006). *The Merck Index*, 14th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co. Inc., p. 1045.

Osorio AM, Clapp D, Ward E *et al.* (1990). Biological monitoring of a worker acutely exposed to MBOCA. *Am J Ind Med*, 18: 577–589. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700180508 PMID:2244630

Rappaport SM & Morales R (1979). Air-sampling and analytical method for 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline). *Anal Chem*, 51: 19–23. doi:10.1021/ac50037a012 PMID:420394

Robert A, Ducos P, Francin JM (1999). Biological monitoring of workers exposed to 4,4′-methylene-bis-(2-orthochloroaniline) (MOCA). II. Comparative interest of "free" and "total" MOCA in the urine of exposed workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 72: 229–237. doi:10.1007/s004200050366 PMID:10491777

Rozinova E, Khalil M, Bonin AM (1998). MOCA and some proposed substitutes (Cyanacure, Conacure, Polacure 740M and Ethacure 300) as two-stage skin carcinogens in HRA/Skh hairless mice. *Mutat Res*, 398: 111–121. doi:10.1016/S0027-5107(97)00247-9 PMID:9626971

Russfield AB, Homburger F, Boger E *et al.* (1975). The carcinogenic effect of 4,4′-methylene-bis-(2-chloroaniline) in mice and rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 31: 47–54. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(75)90050-2 PMID:1129788

Shih W-C, Chen M-F, Huang C-C *et al.* (2007). Simultaneous analysis of urinary 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) and N-acetyl 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) using solid-phase extraction and liquid chromatography/tandem mass spectrometry. *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom*, 21: 4073–4078. doi:10.1002/rcm.3314 PMID:18008389

Silk NA, Lay JO Jr, Martin CN (1989). Covalent binding of 4,4′-methylenebis-(2-chloroaniline) to rat liver DNA in vivo and of its N-hydroxylated derivative to DNA in vitro. *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 38: 279–287. doi:10.1016/0006-2952(89)90038-5 PMID:2914011

Steinhoff D & Grundmann E (1971). [Cancerogenic effect of 3,3′-dichlor-4,4′-diaminodiphenylmethane in rats] *Naturwissenschaften*, 58: 578 doi:10.1007/BF00598744 PMID:5139300

Stula EF, Barnes JR, Sherman H *et al.* (1978). Urinary bladder tumors in dogs from 4,4′-methylene-bis (2-chloroaniline) (MOCA). *J Environ Pathol Toxicol*, 1: 31–50. PMID:722185

Stula EF, Sherman H, Zapp JA Jr, Clayton JW Jr (1975). Experimental neoplasia in rats from oral administration of 3,3′-dichlorobenzidine, 4,4′-methylene-bis-bis(2-chloroaniline), and 4,4′-methylene-bis(2-methylaniline). *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 31: 159–176. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(75)90064-2 PMID:1129785

Vaughan GT & Kenyon RS (1996). Monitoring for occupational exposure to 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) by gas chromatographic-mass spectrometric analysis of haemoglobin adducts, blood, plasma and urine. *J Chromatogr B Biomed Appl*, 678: 197–204. doi:10.1016/0378-4347(95)00509-9 PMID:8738022

Ward E, Halperin W, Thun M *et al.* (1988). Bladder tumors in two young males occupationally exposed to MBOCA. *Am J Ind Med*, 14: 267–272. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700140304 PMID:3189344

Ward E, Halperin W, Thun M *et al.* (1990). Screening workers exposed to 4,4′-methylenebis(2-chloroaniline) for bladder cancer by cystoscopy. *J Occup Med*, 32: 865–868. doi:10.1097/00043764-199009000-00020 PMID:2074509

Ward E, Smith AB, Halperin W (1987). 4,4′-Methylenebis (2-chloroaniline): an unregulated carcinogen. *Am J Ind Med*, 12: 537–549. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700120508 PMID:3318415

Wiese FW, Thompson PA, Kadlubar FF (2001). Carcinogen substrate specificity of human COX-1 and COX-2. *Carcinogenesis*, 22: 5–10. doi:10.1093/carcin/22.1.5 PMID:11159734

Will W, Gossler K, Raithel HJ, Schaller KH (1981). Quantitative determination of 4,4'-methylenebis(chlor oaniline) (MOCA) in the urine by high-pressure liquid chromatography (Ger.). *Arbeitsmedizin, Sozialmedizin, Präventivmedizin*, 16: 201–203.

Yun CH, Shimada T, Guengerich FP (1992). Contributions of human liver cytochrome P450 enzymes to the N-oxidation of 4,4′-methylene-bis(2-chloroaniline). *Carcinogenesis*, 13: 217–222. doi:10.1093/carcin/13.2.217 PMID:1740010

2-NAPHTHYLAMINE

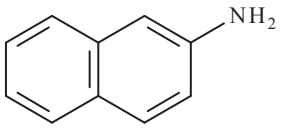
2-Naphthylamine was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1973, 1987, and 2008 (IARC, 1974, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

From IARC (2010)

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 91-59-8
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
2-Naphthalenamine
Synonym: this compound is also known as β-naphthylamine



$C_{10}H_9N$
Relative molecular mass: 143.18
Description: White to reddish crystals (O'Neil, 2006)
Solubility: Soluble in water, diethyl ether, and ethanol (O'Neil, 2006; Lide, 2008)

1.2 Uses

2-Naphthylamine formerly was used commercially as an intermediate in the manufacture of dyes, as an antioxidant in the rubber industry, and to produce 2-chloronaphthalene (IARC, 2010). Because of its carcinogenicity, the manufacture and use of 2-naphthylamine have been prohibited in the European Union (EU) since 1998, in Italy since 1960, in the United Kingdom since 1952, and in Switzerland since 1938. Production and use of dyestuffs containing 2-naphthylamine have been banned in Japan since 1972 (Olfert *et al.*, 2006). In the United States of America (USA), 2-naphthylamine is a carcinogen regulated by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA). As such, exposure must be strictly controlled through mandatory use of engineering controls, safe work practices, and personal protective equipment (OSHA, 2011).

Small quantities of 2-naphthylamine are used in laboratory research (IARC, 2010). The substance has been found as a contaminant in other chemicals and industries (Olfert *et al.*, 2006). Phenyl-β-naphthylamine (PBNA) has been used as a substitute; however, it partially metabolizes in the body to 2-naphthylamine (Olfert *et al.*, 2006).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

In the past, occupational exposure to 2-naphthylamine mainly occurred during its production and when it was used in the manufacture of azo dyes. Exposure may still occur in laboratories where it is used as a model compound in cancer research, when workers are exposed to pyrolysis fumes containing 2-naphthylamine (e.g. foundry fumes, second-hand tobacco smoke, heated cooking-oils), to 2-nitronaphthalene (e.g. foundry workers), a nitro-PAH that can be metabolized to 2-naphthylamine, or to products containing 2-naphthylamine as a contaminant, such as certain rubber chemicals (IARC, 2010). Countries in which exposure was reported include: Italy, Japan, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom, and the USA (IARC, 2010).

CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens, based on data collected in the European Union (EU) from 1990 to 1993. The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 presents the results for 2-naphthylamine by industry in the EU (CAREX, 1999).

From the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83) it was estimated that 275 workers, including 265 women, were potentially exposed to 2-naphthylamine (NIOSH, 1990). Exposure data were reported for a 2-naphthylamine/benzidine dye factory in Moscow (Bulbulyan *et al.*, 1995). 2-Naphthylamine concentrations in indoor air samples taken in the factory during the period 1939–1948 ranged from < 1 µg/L to > 3 µg/L. Factory-wall wipes sampled in 1948 contained 60.0–115 mg/m^2 wall surface. Dermal wipes sampled in 1940 and 1947 from workers after a shower at work contained between 0.018 and 37.5 mg 2-naphthylamine (data on the surface area sampled were not available).

In a German study of workers primarily exposed to aniline and 4-chloroaniline, urinary 2-naphthylamine concentrations were 0–9.8 µg/L (mean, 3.9 ± 2.2) in 22 smokers and 0–11.6 µg/L (mean, 2.1 ± 2.8) in 21 non-smokers, both significantly higher than the concentrations measured in non-smoking, non-exposed workers (0.0–1.6 µg/L; mean, 0.5 ± 0.7) (Riffelmann *et al.*, 1995).

In a study of two Danish iron foundries, airborne PAH concentrations were measured in relation to 2-naphthylamine (as a possible marker of 2-nitronaphthalene) in the urine of PAH-exposed workers (Hansen *et al.*, 1994). The concentration of 2-naphthylamine in urine was significantly higher in PAH-exposed workers than in controls (matched for smoking habits). Hand moulders, finishing workers and truck drivers tended to have the highest levels. These results may be explained by the presence of 2-nitronaphthalene (which can metabolized to 2-naphthylamine), the presence of aromatic amines, e.g. in moulding sand, or the presence of nitrogen oxides, e.g. in diesel exhaust. It has been estimated that a maximum of 1% of total *N*-phenyl-2-naphthylamine uptake can be transformed into 2-naphthylamine (Weiss *et al.*, 2007).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

The general population can be exposed to 2-naphthylamine through tobacco smoke and other fumes containing 2-naphthylamine, or reportedly when in contact with dyes and hair dyes contaminated with 2-naphthylamine [The Working Group could not find evidence of current contamination of these consumer products]. Exposure to 2-nitronaphthalene, which is formed by incomplete combustion of organic material and generally found in the environment in a mixture with other nitro-PAH and non-nitro-PAH, can also become an indirect source of contact with 2-naphthylamine (IARC, 2010).

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to 2-naphthylamine in the European Union

Industry, occupational activity	
Education services	1260
Research and scientific institutes	450
Medical, dental, other health and veterinary services	340
TOTAL	2050

From CAREX (1999)

Mainstream cigarette smoke from eight different conventional market cigarettes in the USA contained 2-naphthylamine at concentrations of 1.47 to 14.06 ng/cigarette (Stabbert *et al.*, 2003). A review of similar studies in the IARC Monograph on tobacco indicated that amounts of 2-naphthylamine in mainstream cigarette smoke range from 1–22 ng/cigarette; those in sidestream cigarette smoke range from 113.5–171.6 ng/cigarette (IARC, 2004).

In a German study (Grimmer *et al.*, 2000), 2-naphthylamine was found in urine in comparable levels for non-smokers (n = 14; mean, 120.8 ng/24 hours), smokers (n = 12; mean, 84.5 ng/24 hours) and persons exposed to second-hand tobacco smoke (n = 22; mean, 94.9 ng/24 hours). In a study by Riedel *et al.* (2006), smokers (n = 10) excreted significantly higher amounts of 2-naphthylamine compared with non-smokers (n = 10) (20.8 *vs* 10.7 ng/24 hours).

2-Naphthylamine has been detected in fumes of heated cooking-oils (Chiang *et al.*, 1999) in a study in Taiwan (China) looking at three different commercial cooking oils. Concentrations of 2-naphthylamine in oil fumes were 31.5 μg/m^3 for sunflower oil, 31.9 μg/m^3 for vegetable oil, and 48.3 μg/m^3 for refined lard oil.

2. Cancer in Humans

Studies of cancer in humans exposed to 2-naphthylamine were most recently reviewed by a Working Group in 2008 (IARC, 2010): it was concluded that there was *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of 2-naphthylamine in the human urinary bladder. Numerous case series reported bladder cancer in workers exposed to 2-naphthylamine; in coal-tar dye workers exposed to 2-naphthylamine, and not to other aromatic amines, the cumulative incidence of bladder cancer was 25% (Goldwater *et al.*, 1965). Eleven cohort studies (four in the USA, two in the United Kingdom, two in Japan, and one each in Poland, the Russian Federation and Italy) are available concerning bladder-cancer risks in workers engaged in the manufacture and use of 2-naphthylamine (see Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-05-Table2.1.pdf). All these studies indicate markedly elevated bladder cancer risks associated with the manufacture and use of 2-naphthylamine. In most of the studies, it was not possible to quantify the relative contributions of exposures to benzidine and 2-naphthylamine to the overall excess risks. However, Case *et al.* (1954) had reported 26 bladder-cancer deaths, with 0.3 expected [SMR 86.7, 95%CI: 56.6–127.0], in British dyestuff-industry workers exposed to 2-naphthylamine. Also, in a study of bladder-cancer risks in the British rubber industry, Veys (2004) showed excesses of bladder cancer in workers employed between 1946 and 1949 when 2-naphthylamine-contaminated antioxidants were still used (58 cases, SIR 1.71; 95%CI: 1.3–2.21) and no excess in workers employed after this exposure was removed (39 cases, SIR 1.02 95%CI: 0.72–1.39).

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenicity of 2-naphthylamine in the mouse, rat, hamster, rabbit, dog, and monkey after oral administration, after subcutaneous or intraperitoneal injection, after intravesicular implantation, or after dermal application have been reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1974, 1987, 2010). There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since the most recent evaluation (IARC, 2010).

2-Naphthylamine was tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration (in the feed, by gavage or in a gelatin capsule) in five experiments in mice, three experiments in rats, ten experiments in dogs, and one experiment each in hamsters, rabbits and monkeys; by subcutaneous administration in five experiments in mice; by intraperitoneal injection in two experiments in mice and one in rats; and by one intravesicular implantation and one skin-painting study in mice and one bladder instillation study in dogs. Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1.

Oral administration of 2-naphthylamine to mice caused a significant increase in the incidence of cholangiomas, hepatomas and liver adenomas (Bonser *et al.*, 1952; Yoshida *et al.*, 1979) and induced 'malignant' hepatomas (Bonser *et al.*, 1952). 2-Naphthylamine caused a significant increase in urinary bladder tumours (including carcinomas) following its oral administration to rats (Hicks *et al.*, 1982; Hicks & Chowaniec, 1977), hamsters (Saffiotti *et al.*, 1967), dogs (Hueper *et al.*, 1938; Bonser *et al.*, 1956; Harrison *et al.*, 1969; Conzelman & Moulton, 1972; Romanenko & Martynenko, 1972; Rigotti *et al.*, 1977; Purchase *et al.*, 1981) and monkeys (Conzelman *et al.*, 1969). Intraperitoneal injection of 2-naphthylamine (Theiss *et al.*, 1981) or its administration by gavage (Stoner *et al.*, 1986) increased the multiplicity of benign lung tumours in strain A mice.

The results of the oral study in rabbits, the intraperitoneal injection study in rats, the subcutaneous injection study, the intravesicular implant study and the skin-painting study in mice, and the bladder-instillation study in dogs were found to be inadequate for the evaluation of the carcinogenicity of 2-naphthylamine.

4. Other Relevant Data

A general Section on "Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility" appears as Section 4.1 in the *Monograph* on 4-aminobiphenyl in this volume.

2-Naphthylamine is a constituent of tobacco smoke, and the amounts of 2-naphthylamine-haemoglobin adducts are higher in cigarette smokers than in non-smokers (Bryant *et al.*, 1988). Similarly to other aromatic amines, 2-naphthylamine may undergo *N*-hydroxylation by CYP1A2 (Butler *et al.*, 1989) followed by conjugation of the hydroxyl group with sulfate or glucuronide, or conjugation of the amino group with acetate (*N*-acetylation), sulfate, or glucuronide. In addition, 2-naphthylamine may undergo *N*-oxidation and ring oxidation by peroxidative enzymes such as prostaglandin H synthase in the bladder (Wise *et al.*, 1984; Yamazoe *et al.*, 1985) to form an arene oxide. The *N*-hydroxylated intermediate may re-arrange to form 2-amino-1-naphthol and conjugates with sulfate or glucuronide, or form DNA adducts such as *N*-(deoxyguanosin-8-yl)-2-NA, 1-(deoxyguanosin-N^2-yl)-2-naphthylamine, and 1-(deoxyadenosin-N^6-yl)-2-naphthylamine (Beland *et al.*, 1983). These adducts are also formed by prostaglandin H synthase (Yamazoe *et al.*, 1985), or from the 2-imino-1-naphthoquinone intermediate (e.g. N^4-deoxyguanosin-N^2-yl)-2-amino-1,4-naphthoquinone-imine).

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of exposure to 2-naphthylamine in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, IF (M, F) up to 72 wk Bonser *et al.* (1952)	Gavage A group of 13 M and 12 F mice received 2-naphthylamine suspended in arachis oil, twice weekly at a dose of 400 mg/kg bw per wk. A group of 6 M and 5 F served as arachis-oil controls.	Liver cholangiomas: M–0/6 (controls), 5/13 F–0/5 (controls), 5/12 M+F–0/11 (controls), 10/25	NR, [NS] [$P < 0.02$]	Age NR Small number of animals studied, especially controls
Mouse, CBA (M, F) up to 89 wk Bonser *et al.* (1952)	Gavage A group of 9 M and 14 F mice received 2-naphthylamine suspended in arachis oil twice/wk at a dose of 240 mg/kg bw per wk. A group of 7 M and 7 F served as arachis-oil controls	Hepatomas: M–0/7 (controls), 6/9 (67%) F–0/7 (controls), 7/14 (50%)	NR [$P < 0.05$] [$P < 0.05$]	Age NR Small number of animals studied, especially controls. Authors reported the incidence of hepatomas in the control breeding mice of the laboratory to be 8%
Mouse, CBA (M, F) up to 89 wk Bonser *et al.* (1952)	Feed Groups of 14–15 M and 12–15 F mice were given four different synthetic diets containing 2-naphthylamine at a dose of 160 mg/kg bw per wk	Hepatomas: M–24/57 F–25/54 Hepatomas (malignant): M+F–16/111	-	Age NR No controls
Mouse, BALB/c (F) 55 wk Yoshida *et al.* (1979)	Feed Groups of 20 F mice were fed a diet containing 0 or 2000 ppm 2-naphthylamine for 40 wk	Liver tumours: Adenoma–0/17, 10/16 Hepatoma–0/17, 3/16 Urinary bladder-epithelium hyperplasia: 0/17, 6/16	NR [$P < 0.0001$] [NS] [$P < 0.01$]	Purity NR
Mouse, A/J (M, F) 24 wk Stoner *et al.* (1986)	Gavage A group of 16 M and 16 F mice received 2-naphthylamine in tricaprylin by gavage 3 × /wk for 8 wk, resulting in a total dose per animal of 600 mg/kg bw. A group of 16 M and 16 F mice served as tricaprylin controls.	Lung tumours: M–3/15 (controls), 8/14 F–2/14 (controls), 4/13 Lung tumour multiplicity: M–0.93 ± 1.00 *vs* 0.27 ± 0.59 (controls)	[NS] [NS] $P < 0.05$	
Rat, Albino (strain NR) (M, F) over 90 wk Bonser *et al.* (1952)	Feed Three groups of 18, 15 and 17 M and F rats were fed low-, mid- and high-protein diets containing 2-naphthylamine at a dose of 310 mg/kg bw per wk for life. Three groups of 15, 17 M and 17 F rats served as controls.	Urinary bladder papillomas: 0/49 (controls), 4/50	NR, [NS]	Age NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Wistar (F) up to 104 wk Hicks & Chowaniec (1977)	Gavage A group of 25 F rats were given 2-naphthylamine in arachis oil by gavage, at a dose of 300 mg/kg bw per wk for one yr, and were then left untreated until symptoms of bladder disease were seen. A group of 50 F served as untreated controls.	Urinary bladder tumours: 0/50, 5/17	NR, [$P < 0.001$]	Purity NR Bladder tumours not further specified
Rat, Wistar (F) 100 wk Hicks *et al.* (1982)	Gavage A group of 20 F rats received 2-naphthylamine suspended in arachis oil by gavage at a dose of 300 mg/kg bw per wk for 57 wk. A group of 20 F served as vehicle controls.	Urinary bladder: Carcinomas–0/20, 4/18 Urothelial hyperplasias–0/20, 8/18	NR [$P < 0.05$] [$P < 0.001$]	Purity NR
Hamster, Random-bred Syrian golden (M, F) Lifetime Saffiotti *et al.* (1967)	Feed Groups of 30 M and 30 F hamsters were fed diets containing 0, 0.1 or 1.0% (w/w) 2-naphthylamine.	Urinary bladder carcinomas: M–0/30, 0/30, 10/23* F–0/30, 0/30, 8/16*	NR *[$P < 0.0001$]	Purity NR Hepatoma was found in one high-dose male and one high-dose female.
Dog, Mongrel (F) 89 wk Hueper *et al.* (1938)	Oral and subcutaneous injection A group of 16 F mongrel dogs received subcutaneous injections of 4 mg/d (for dogs ≤ 12 kg) or 5 mg/d (for dogs > 12 kg) 2-naphthylamine, daily for 14 wk followed by doubling of the dose for 12 wk and a tripling for the subsequent 63 wk. During the last 54 wk of the study, dogs started to receive a daily oral dose of 2-naphthylamine by capsule that started at 100 mg/dog and increased to 300 mg/dog by the end of the treatment. A group of four F dogs served as controls.	Urinary bladder tumours (papillomas and carcinomas combined): 0/4, 13/16	NR, [$P < 0.01$]	Purity NR Bladder-tumour incidence based partly on autopsy and partly on cystoscopy and biopsy. Dosing poorly described.
Dog, Mongrel (F) up to 3 yr Bonser *et al.* (1956)	Oral A group of 4 F dogs were given 2-naphthylamine by mouth in a capsule at a dose of 200 mg/d, on six d/wk during 6 mo and then 600 mg/d for up to 2 yr.	Urinary bladder carcinomas: 2/4	-	Age NR, purity NR One dog died after 14.5 mo of treatment. No controls
Dog, Mongrel (F) 79 mo Harrison *et al.* (1969)	Oral A group of 4 F dogs were fed 2-naphthylamine at a dose of 400 mg/d for 2 yr	Urinary bladder carcinomas: 4/4	-	Age NR, purity NR No controls Experimental details poorly described

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Dog, Beagle (M, F) up to 30 mo Conzelman & Moulton (1972)	Oral Groups of 2–7 M and 2–5 F 8–10-mo-old dogs were given 2-naphthylamine by mouth in a capsule at doses of 0, 6.25, 12.5, 25, or 50 mg/kg bw per d on 6 d/wk for 2–26 mo. Total dose/dog ranged from 12 g to 204 g	Urinary bladder carcinomas: M–0/2, 4/6, 2/5, 6/7, 1/2 F–0/2, 0/3, 2/5, 2/3, 3/3 M+F–0/4 (controls), 20/34* (treated)	NR *[$P < 0.05$]	Purity NR
Dog, Breed NR (F) 55 mo Romanenko & Martynenko (1972)	Oral A group of eight F dogs were given 2-naphthylamine at a dose of 5–30 mg/kg bw, 4–6 d/wk, for 7.5 mo and then 30 mg/kg bw, 4–6 d/wk, for 8.5 mo	Urinary bladder carcinomas: 7/8	-	Age NR, purity NR No controls. Route of administration poorly described.
Dog, Breed NR (F) 26 mo Rigotti *et al.* (1977)	Oral A group of 20 F dogs were given 2-naphthylamine in a capsule, daily at a dose of 500–600 mg for 20–26 mo.	Urinary bladder carcinomas: 20/20	-	Age NR, purity NR No controls.
Dog, Beagle (M, F) up to 47 mo Purchase *et al.* (1981)	Oral 3 M and 2 F dogs (age, 9 mo) were given capsules containing 400 mg 2-naphthylamine 5 × /wk for 34 mo. A group of 4 M and 4 F control dogs received capsules with lactose.	Urinary bladder transitional-cell carcinomas: 0/8, 5/5	NR, [$P < 0.001$]	
Monkey, Rhesus *Macaca mulatta* (M, F) up to 60 mo Conzelman *et al.* (1969)	Gavage A group of 8 M and 19 female monkeys (weighing 2–3 kg) were given 2-naphthylamine in a capsule by gavage at a dose of 0 (control, three females) or 6.25–400 mg/kg bw per d, on 6 d/wk for 33–60 mo.	Urinary bladder carcinomas: 0/3 (controls), 9/24	NR	Age NR Some animals received a fixed dose during the entire experiment, others received different doses over the course of five yr. The majority of tumours occurred in animals given high doses.
Mouse, Inbred A/St mice (M, F) 24 wk Theiss *et al.* (1981)	Intraperitoneal injection A group of 10 M and 10 F mice were given 2-naphthylamine in tricaprylin by injection at doses of 0, 62.5, 125 or 250 mg/kg bw, 3 × /wk for 8 wk.	Lung adenomas/mouse: 0.19, 0.40, 0.50, 1.38*	*$P < 0.01$	Purity NR

bw, body weight; d, day or days; F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; vs, versus; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

2-Naphthylamine was mutagenic in *S. typhimurium* strains TA98 and TA100 in the presence of bovine bladder cells (Hix *et al.*, 1983). 2-Naphthylamine-induced DNA damage was triggered by an NAT1-overexpressing *S. typhimurium* strain, but not by an *O*-acetyltransferase-deficient strain, in the presence of human CYP1A2 (*umu* response) (Oda, 2004). In another *umu* gene-expression assay, DNA damage in *S. typhimurium* strain NM2009 exposed to 2-naphthylamine was induced by the CYP4B1 isoenzyme from rat-bladder epithelium (Imaoka *et al.*, 1997). 2-Naphthylamine was mutagenic in Chinese hamster ovary cells in the presence or absence of an exogenous activating system (Gupta & Singh, 1982).

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of 2-naphthylamine. 2-Naphthylamine causes cancer of the urinary bladder.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of 2-naphthylamine.

There is strong mechanistic evidence indicating that the carcinogenicity of 2-naphthylamine operates by a genotoxic mechanism of action that involves metabolic activation, formation of DNA adducts, and induction of mutagenic and clastogenic effects. Metabolic activation to DNA-reactive intermediates occurs by multiple pathways including *N*-oxidation in the liver, *O*-acetylation in the bladder, and peroxidative activation in the mammary gland and other organs.

2-Naphthylamine is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Beland FA, Beranek DT, Dooley KL *et al.* (1983). Arylamine-DNA adducts in vitro and in vivo: their role in bacterial mutagenesis and urinary bladder carcinogenesis. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 49: 125–134. doi:10.2307/3429589 PMID:6339219

Bonser GM, Clayson DB, Jull JW (1956). The induction of tumours of the subcutaneous tissues, liver and intestine in the mouse by certain dye-stuffs and their intermediates. *Br J Cancer*, 10: 653–667. doi:10.1038/bjc.1956.79 PMID:13426377

Bonser GM, Clayson DB, Jull JW, Pyrah LN (1952). The carcinogenic properties of 2-amino-1-naphthol hydrochloride and its parent amine 2-naphthylamine. *Br J Cancer*, 6: 412–424. PMID:13032313

Bryant MS, Vineis P, Skipper PL, Tannenbaum SR (1988). Hemoglobin adducts of aromatic amines: associations with smoking status and type of tobacco. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 85: 9788–9791. doi:10.1073/pnas.85.24.9788 PMID:3200858

Bulbulyan MA, Figgs LW, Zahm SH *et al.* (1995). Cancer incidence and mortality among beta-naphthylamine and benzidine dye workers in Moscow. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 24: 266–275. doi:10.1093/ije/24.2.266 PMID:7635585

Butler MA, Iwasaki M, Guengerich FP, Kadlubar FF (1989). Human cytochrome P-450PA (P-450IA2), the phenacetin O-deethylase, is primarily responsible for the hepatic 3-demethylation of caffeine and N-oxidation of carcinogenic arylamines. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 86: 7696–7700. doi:10.1073/pnas.86.20.7696 PMID:2813353

CAREX (1999). Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf.

Case RAM, Hosker ME, McDONALD DB, Pearson JT (1954). Tumours of the urinary bladder in workmen engaged in the manufacture and use of certain dyestuff intermediates in the British chemical industry. I. The role of aniline, benzidine, alpha-naphthylamine, and beta-naphthylamine. *Br J Ind Med*, 11: 75–104. PMID:13149741

Chiang T-A, Pei-Fen W, Ying LS *et al.* (1999). Mutagenicity and aromatic amine content of fumes from heated cooking oils produced in Taiwan. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, 37: 125–134. doi:10.1016/S0278-6915(98)00081-7 PMID:10227736

Conzelman GM Jr & Moulton JE (1972). Dose-response relationships of the bladder tumorigen 2-naphthylamine: a study in beagle dogs. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 49: 193–205. PMID:5037435

Conzelman GM Jr, Moulton JE, Flanders LE 3rd *et al.* (1969). Induction of transitional cell carcinomas of the urinary bladder in monkeys fed 2-naphthylamine. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 42: 825–836. PMID:4977557

Goldwater LJ, Rosso AJ, Kleinfeld M (1965). Bladder tumors in a coal tar dye plant. *Arch Environ Health*, 11: 814–817. PMID:5846076

Grimmer G, Dettbarn G, Seidel A, Jacob J (2000). Detection of carcinogenic aromatic amines in the urine of non-smokers. *The Science of the Total Environment*, 247: 81–90. doi:10.1016/S0048-9697(99)00471-4 PMID:10721145

Gupta RS & Singh B (1982). Mutagenic responses of five independent genetic loci in CHO cells to a variety of mutagens. Development and characteristics of a mutagen screening system based on selection for multiple drug-resistant markers. *Mutat Res*, 94: 449–466. PMID:7110183

Hansen AM, Omland O, Poulsen OM *et al.* (1994). Correlation between work process-related exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and urinary levels of α-naphthol, β-naphthylamine and 1-hydroxypyrene in iron foundry workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 65: 385–394. doi:10.1007/BF00383249 PMID:8034363

Harrison LH, Cox CE, Banks KW, Boyce WH (1969). Distant metastases from beta-naphthylamine induced vesical tumors in dogs. *J Urol*, 102: 586–589. PMID:5347766

Hicks RM & Chowaniec J (1977). The importance of synergy between weak carcinogens in the induction of bladder cancer in experimental animals and humans. *Cancer Res*, 37: 2943–2949. PMID:872124

Hicks RM, Wright R, Wakefield JS (1982). The induction of rat bladder cancer by 2-naphthylamine. *Br J Cancer*, 46: 646–661. PMID:7138770

Hix C, Oglesby L, MacNair P *et al.* (1983). Bovine bladder and liver cell and homogenate-mediated mutagenesis of Salmonella typhimurium with aromatic amines. *Carcinogenesis*, 4: 1401–1407. doi:10.1093/carcin/4.11.1401 PMID:6357520

Hueper WC, Wiley FH, Wolfe HD (1938). Experimental production of bladder tumors in dogs by administration of beta-nathylamine. *J Ind Hyg Toxicol*, 20: 46–84.

IARC (1974). Some aromatic amines, hydrazine and related substances, N-nitroso compounds and miscellaneous alkylating agents. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 4: 1–286.

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (2004). Tobacco smoke and involuntary smoking. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 83: 1–1438. PMID:15285078

IARC (2010). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–678. PMID:21528837.

Imaoka S, Yoneda Y, Matsuda T *et al.* (1997). Mutagenic activation of urinary bladder carcinogens by CYP4B1 and the presence of CYP4B1 in bladder mucosa. *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 54: 677–683. doi:10.1016/S0006-2952(97)00216-5 PMID:9310344

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occupa Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Lide DR, editor (2008). *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp. 3–384.

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83)*. Cincinnati, OH: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes1/50065sic.html

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006). *The Merck Index*, 14th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co. Inc., p. 1107.

Oda Y (2004). Analysis of the involvement of human N-acetyltransferase 1 in the genotoxic activation of bladder carcinogenic arylamines using a SOS/umu assay system. *Mutat Res*, 554: 399–406. PMID:15450435

Olfert SM, Felknor SA, Delclos GL (2006). An updated review of the literature: risk factors for bladder cancer with focus on occupational exposures. *South Med J*, 99: 1256–1263. PMID:17195421

OSHA2011). http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/npg/nengapdxb.html

Purchase IF, Kalinowski AE, Ishmael J *et al.* (1981). Lifetime carcinogenicity study of 1- and 2-naphthylamine in dogs. *Br J Cancer*, 44: 892–901. doi:10.1038/bjc.1981.289 PMID:7326199

Riedel K, Scherer G, Engl J *et al.* (2006). Determination of three carcinogenic aromatic amines in urine of smokers and nonsmokers. *J Anal Toxicol*, 30: 187–195. PMID:16803653

Riffelmann M, Müller G, Schmieding W *et al.* (1995). Biomonitoring of urinary aromatic amines and arylamine hemoglobin adducts in exposed workers and nonexposed control persons. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 68: 36–43. doi:10.1007/BF01831631 PMID:8847111

Rigotti E, Fontana D, Negri GL *et al.* (1977). [Results of hyperthermia on the bladder carcinomas of the dog (author's transl)] *J Urol Nephrol (Paris)*, 83: 175–184. PMID:853554

Romanenko AM & Martynenko AG (1972). [Morphology of bladder neoplasms induced by beta-naphthylamine in dogs] *Vopr Onkol*, 18: 70–75. PMID:4345575

Saffiotti U, Cefis F, Montesano R *et al.* (1967). *Induction of bladder cancer in hamsters fed aromatic amines*. In: *Bladder Cancer: a symposium*. Deichmann W, Lampe KF, editors. pp. 129–135.

Stabbert R, Schäfer K-H, Biefel C, Rustemeier K (2003). Analysis of aromatic amines in cigarette smoke. *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom*, 17: 2125–2132. doi:10.1002/rcm.1161 PMID:12955743

Stoner GD, Conran PB, Greisiger EA *et al.* (1986). Comparison of two routes of chemical administration on the lung adenoma response in strain A/J mice. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 82: 19–31. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(86)90433-3 PMID:3945940

Theiss JC, Shimkin MB, Weisburger EK (1981). Pulmonary adenoma response of strain A mice to sulfonic acid derivatives of 1- and 2-naphthylamines. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 67: 1299–1302. PMID:6947112

Veys CA (2004). Bladder tumours in rubber workers: a factory study 1946–1995. *Occupational Medicine (Oxford, England)*, 54: 322–329. doi:10.1093/occmed/kqh010 PMID:15289589

Weiss T, Brüning T, Bolt HM (2007). Dephenylation of the rubber chemical N-phenyl-2-naphthylamine to carcinogenic 2-naphthylamine: a classical problem revisited. *Critical Reviews in Toxicology*, 37: 553–566. doi:10.1080/10408440701419637 PMID:17674211

Wise RW, Zenser TV, Kadlubar FF, Davis BB (1984). Metabolic activation of carcinogenic aromatic amines by dog bladder and kidney prostaglandin H synthase. *Cancer Res*, 44: 1893–1897. PMID:6424934

Yamazoe Y, Miller DW, Weis CC *et al.* (1985). DNA adducts formed by ring-oxidation of the carcinogen 2-naphthylamine with prostaglandin H synthase in vitro and in the dog urothelium in vivo. *Carcinogenesis*, 6: 1379–1387. doi:10.1093/carcin/6.9.1379 PMID:3928186

Yoshida M, Numoto S, Otsuka H (1979). Histopathological changes induced in the urinary bladder and liver of female BALB/c mice treated simultaneously with 2-naph-thylamine and cyclophosphamide. *Gann*, 70: 645–652. PMID:520755

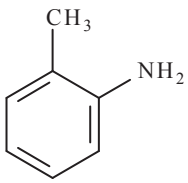
ortho-TOLUIDINE

ortho-Toluidine was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1977, 1981, 1987, 2000, and 2008 (IARC, 1978, 1982, 1987, 2000, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

From IARC (2010), unless indicated otherwise
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 95-53-4
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
2-Methylbenzenamine



C_7H_9N
Relative molecular mass: 107.15
Description: Light yellow liquid becoming reddish brown on exposure to air and light
Boiling-point: 200–202 °C (O'Neil, 2006)
Solubility: Slightly soluble in water; soluble in alcohol, ether, and dilute acids

1.2 Uses

ortho-Toluidine is used as an intermediate in the synthesis of the large-volume herbicides, metolachlor and acetochlor, in the manufacture of more than 90 dyes and pigments (e.g. acid-fast dyestuffs, azo pigment dyes, triarylmethane dyes, sulfur dyes, and indigo compounds), and as an intermediate for synthetic rubber and rubber-vulcanizing chemicals, pharmaceuticals, pesticides, and other chemicals. *ortho*-Toluidine is also used in the clinical laboratory as an ingredient in a reagent for glucose analysis, and for tissue staining (IARC, 2010; NTP, 2004).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

Occupational exposure to *ortho*-toluidine can occur by inhalation or skin contact during its production, or during the production of dyes, pigments and rubber chemicals manufactured from this chemical. Laboratory and medical personnel may be exposed when using *ortho*-toluidine for staining tissues (IARC, 2010).

From the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83) it was estimated that 30000 workers, including approximately 15500 women, were potentially exposed to *ortho*-toluidine (NIOSH, 1990). No estimates of the number of exposed workers in the European Union have been reported.

At a chemical plant in the former Soviet Union where *ortho*-toluidine was produced via reduction of *ortho*-nitrotoluene, workers were exposed to concentrations of *ortho*-toluidine in the air that generally exceeded the maximum permissible concentration [of 3 mg/m^3, IARC (1982)] by 2–7-fold. In a total of 215 air samples, the highest exposure levels were observed during distillation and extraction processes (25–28.6 mg/m^3). Dermal exposures also were documented (Khlebnikova *et al.*, 1970). Measurements in the 1940s in a US dye-production plant indicated that the concentration of *ortho*-toluidine was < 0.5 ppm [2 mg/m^3] in the workroom air and in the breathing zone of the workers, and < 0.3–1.7 mg/L in the urine of workers engaged in the production of thioindigo (Ott & Langner, 1983). Exposure to *ortho*-toluidine was also reported to occur in plants involved in dye-production in Italy (Rubino *et al.*, 1982), Germany (Stasik, 1988), and the USA (New Jersey) (Delzell *et al.*, 1989), but no data on exposure levels were provided.

Concentrations of *ortho*-toluidine in indoor air in plants producing rubber antioxidants or vulcanising rubber articles ranged up to several hundred µg/m^3 and *ortho*-toluidine concentrations in post-shift urine samples were around 100 µg/L (Ward *et al.*, 1991; Teass *et al.*, 1993; Ward *et al.*, 1996; Korinth *et al.*, 2006).

Medical and laboratory personnel also are potentially exposed to *ortho*-toluidine, although air concentrations are reportedly low (EPA, 1984; Kauppinen *et al.*, 2003).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

Significant non-occupational exposures to *ortho*-toluidine may result from the use of some hair dyes, the local anaesthetic prilocaine, or tobacco smoke. In a study from Turkey (Akyüz & Ata, 2008), *ortho*-toluidine was found in 34 of the 54 hair dyes tested, at levels up to 1547 µg/g. Prilocaine, a widely used anaesthetic, is metabolized to *ortho*-toluidine. In 25 patients who received local anaesthesia, the average amount of *ortho*-toluidine adducts to haemoglobin (Hb) increased 6–360-fold, from 0.54 ± 0.95 ng/g Hb before treatment to 22 ± 13.2 ng/g Hb at 24 hours after surgery (Gaber *et al.*, 2007). *ortho*-Toluidine has been measured in mainstream cigarette smoke at 9–144 ng per cigarette (Stabbert *et al.*, 2003), and concentrations in urine of smokers are higher than in non-smokers (Riffelmann *et al.*, 1995; Riedel *et al.*, 2006). *ortho*-Toluidine has also been detected in surface waters and industrial effluents (Shackelford & Keith, 1976; Neurath *et al.*, 1977; EPA, 1984; NTP, 2004), in vegetables such as kale, celery and carrots, in the volatile aroma of black tea (Vitzthum *et al.*, 1975; Neurath *et al.*, 1977), and in breast milk (DeBruin *et al.*, 1999), but levels are generally very low.

2. Cancer in Humans

Several cohort studies have been conducted among workers potentially exposed to *ortho*-toluidine (Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-06-Table2.1.pdf). Rubino *et al.* (1982) reported excess bladder-cancer risks in relation to *ortho*-toluidine exposure, however, other exposure to potential bladder carcinogens also occurred in this work environment. Ward *et al.* (1991) reported an excess in bladder cancer in 1749 US workers employed in the production of rubber additives from *ortho*-toluidine and aniline. Risks were greatest for workers with the strongest likelihood of exposure and for those with long-term exposure (> 10 years). Further cases of bladder cancer in this facility were reported by Markowitz & Levin (2004), but rates were not calculated. Exposure to low-level 4-aminobiphenyl was suspected, so a protein-adduct biomarker study was carried out (Ward *et al.*, 1996), which supported the conclusion that

ortho-toluidine was the most likely cause of the bladder-cancer excess, because 4-aminobiphenyl adducts to haemoglobin were unrelated to work in the facility. Using revised exposure categories, Carreón *et al.* (2010) conducted a re-analysis of the data and confirmed that workers in this plant have an increased risk for bladder cancer.

Sorahan *et al.* (2000) and Sorahan (2008) reported an excess in bladder-cancer risk in workers exposed to *ortho*-toluidine in the United Kingdom. Sorahan (2008) found increased risks with longer duration of employment in departments where *ortho*-toluidine was processed ($P < 0.05$), after adjusting for exposure to other bladder carcinogens in the factory.

Overall, the epidemiological studies show consistent associations between exposure to *ortho*-toluidine and bladder cancer. Although exposure to other bladder carcinogens occurred for several of the cohorts, the overall evidence is consistent with an association of exposure to *ortho*-toluidine and bladder cancer.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenicity of *ortho*-toluidine in the mouse, rat and hamster after oral administration or subcutaneous injection were reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 2000, 2010). There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since the most recent evaluation (IARC, 2010).

ortho-Toluidine was tested for carcinogenicity as its hydrochloride salt by oral administration in the feed in two experiments in mice and in three experiments in rats, and as the free base in one limited subcutaneous-injection experiment in hamsters. Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1.

Oral administration of *ortho*-toluidine to male and female mice caused an increased incidence of haemangiomas and haemangiosarcomas (combined) in both sexes in one study (Weisburger *et al.*, 1978). The same result was found in male rats in another study, but the separate incidence for haemangiosarcomas was also increased (NTP, 1979). The incidences of hepatocellular carcinomas and of hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas combined were increased in females in the latter study (NTP, 1979).

Oral administration of *ortho*-toluidine to male rats caused an increased incidence of subcutaneous fibromas and fibrosarcomas (combined) in one study (Weisburger *et al.*, 1978), and of skin and spleen fibromas, mammary gland fibroadenomas and peritoneal sarcomas in another (Hecht *et al.*, 1982). In a third study in male and female rats, *ortho*-toluidine increased the incidence of subcutaneous fibromas and of mesotheliomas of multiple organs or the *tunica vaginalis* in males, and of mammary gland fibroadenomas and urinary bladder transitional-cell carcinomas in females. An increased incidence of fibrosarcomas, angiosarcomas, osteosarcomas or sarcomas (not otherwise specified) (combined) of multiple organs (mainly subcutis and spleen or bone) was also observed in both sexes; and a significant increase in the incidence of fibrosarcomas and sarcomas of multiple organs in males, and of spleen angiosarcomas and osteosarcomas of multiple organs in females (NTP, 1979).

When administered as the free base by subcutaneous injection to male and female Syrian golden hamsters, *ortho*-toluidine produced no increase in tumour incidence compared with controls (Hecht *et al.*, 1983).

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals fed *ortho*-toluidine

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, Swiss CD-1 (M, F) 21 mo Weisburger *et al.* (1978)	Groups of 25 M and 25 F mice were fed a diet containing 0, 16000 or 32000 ppm *ortho*-toluidine hydrochloride. After 3 mo, due to toxicity, doses were lowered to 8000 or 16000 ppm for a further 15 mo. Treated animals were then kept without treatment for an additional 3 mo.	Haemangiomas and Haemangiosarcomas (combined): M–0/14 (concurrent control), 5/99 (pooled control), 5/14*, 9/11* F–0/15, 9/102, 5/18**, 9/21*	*$P < 0.025$ (vs all controls **$P < 0.05$ (vs all controls)	Purity, 97–99% Pooled controls: additional controls used for the other compounds tested in the study. Tumour incidence of concurrent and pooled controls were compared statistically (both separately and together) with those of treated groups. Separate incidence for haemangiomas and haemangiosarcomas NR.
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M, F) 103 wk NTP (1979)	Groups of 50 M and 50 F mice, were fed a diet containing 1000 or 3000-ppm *ortho*-toluidine hydrochloride for 103 wk. A group of 20 M and 20 F mice served as untreated controls.	*Males* Haemangiomas and Haemangiosarcomas (combined): 1/19, 2/50, 12/50* Haemangiosarcomas: 1/19, 1/50, 10/50* *Females* Hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas (combined): 0/20, 4/49, 13/50** Hepatocellular carcinomas: 0/20, 2/49, 7/50***	*$P < 0.005$ (trend test) **$P < 0.007$ (Fisher's exact test), $P < 0.001$ (trend test) ***$P = 0.015$ (trend test)	Purity > 99%
Rat, Sprague-Dawley CD (M) 24 mo Weisburger *et al.* (1978)	Groups of 25 M rats were fed a diet containing 0, 8000 or 16000-ppm *ortho*-toluidine hydrochloride. After 3 mo, due to toxicity, doses were lowered to 4000 or 8000 ppm for a further 15 mo. Treated animals were then kept without treatment for an additional 6 mo.	Subcutaneous fibromas and fibrosarcomas (combined): M–0/16 (concurrent control), 18/111 (pooled control), 18/23*, 21/24* Urinary bladder transitional-cell carcinomas: M–0/16, 5/111, 3/23, 4/24	*$P < 0.025$ (vs all controls)	Purity, 97–99% Pooled controls: additional controls used for the other compounds tested in the study. Tumour incidences of concurrent and pooled controls were compared statistically (both separately and together) with those of treated groups
Rat, Fischer F344 (M) 93 wk Hecht *et al.* (1982)	Groups of 30 M rats were fed a diet containing 0 or 4000 ppm *ortho*-toluidine hydrochloride for 72 wk. Total dose of *ortho*-toluidine hydrochloride ingested was 31.3 g/rat.	Skin fibromas: 1/27, 25/30* Spleen fibromas: 0/27, 10/30* Mammary gland fibroadenomas: 0/27, 11/30* Peritoneal sarcomas: 0/27, 9/30**	*$P < 0.001$ (Fisher's exact test) **$P < 0.01$ (Fisher's exact test)	Purity NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Fischer F344 (M, F) 104 wk NTP (1979)	Groups of 50 M and 50 F rats, were fed a diet containing 3000 or 6000-ppm *ortho*-toluidine hydrochloride for 101–104 wk. A group of 20 M and 20 F rats served as untreated controls.	*Males* Sarcomas NOS, fibrosarcomas, angiosarcomas or osteosarcomas (combined) of multiple organs (mainly subcutis and spleen or bone): 0/20, 15/50**, 37/49* Sarcomas NOS of multiple organs: 0/20, 3/50, 11/49*** Fibrosarcomas of multiple organs: 0/20, 8/50, 20/49* Subcutaneous integumentary fibromas: 0/20, 28/50*, 27/49* Mesotheliomas of multiple organs or *tunica vaginalis*: 0/20, 17/50*, 9/49*** *Females* Sarcomas NOS, fibrosarcomas, osteosarcomas or angiosarcomas (combined) of multiple organs (mainly subcutis and spleen or bone): 0/20, 3/50, 21/49* Osteosarcomas of multiple organs: 0/20, 0/50, 18/49**** Spleen angiosarcomas: 0/20, 7/49, 9/49*** Urinary bladder transitional-cell carcinomas: 0/20, 9/45***, 22/47* Mammary gland fibroadenomas: 6/20, 20/50, 35/49*****	*$P < 0.001$ **$P = 0.003$ ***$P < 0.05$ ****$P = 0.001$ *****$P = 0.002$	Purity > 99% Mortality of male and female rats was significantly increased by treatment ($P < 0.001$).

F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NOS, not otherwise specified; NR, not reported; vs, versus; wk, week or weeks

4. Other Relevant Data

A general Section on "Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility" appears as Section 4.1 in the *Monograph* on 4-aminobiphenyl in this volume.

ortho-Toluidine is a constituent of tobacco smoke and it is excreted in larger amounts in the urine of smokers than of non-smokers (Riedel *et al.*, 2006). *ortho*-Toluidine induced urinary bladder and mammary gland tumours in rats and liver tumours and haemangiosarcomas in mice. The risk for cancer of the urinary bladder was elevated in workers exposed to *ortho*-toluidine. This substance has been evaluated in a large number of genetic toxicology studies (IARC, 2010); however, there has been much inconsistency in the results reported.

The metabolism of *ortho*-toluidine has not yet been fully characterized, but the available data indicate a preferential ring-oxidation or *N*-acetylation rather than *N*-oxidation (Son *et al.*, 1980). Similarly, cancers of the urinary bladder associated with occupational exposure to *ortho*-toluidine may result from peroxidative activation of the chemical, catalysed by prostaglandin H synthase in the epithelium of the urinary bladder (Zenser *et al.*, 2002). *ortho*-Toluidine-haemoglobin adduct levels were increased in patients treated with the anaesthetic prilocaine (Gaber *et al.*, 2007) and in workers employed in the rubber chemicals manufacturing area of a chemical plant (Ward *et al.*, 1996). Metabolites are excreted primarily as sulfate or glucuronide conjugates, since *ortho*-toluidine is not a substrate for human NAT1-mediated acetylation (Zhang *et al.*, 2006).

ortho-Toluidine induces tumours in rodents and DNA lesions in multiple organs. Most studies reported that *ortho*-toluidine was not mutagenic in *S. typhimurium*, other studies showed positive responses in the same strains. The *N*-oxidized metabolite of *ortho*-toluidine, *N*-hydroxy-*ortho*-toluidine, was mutagenic in *S. typhimurium* strain TA100 (Gupta *et al.*, 1987). *ortho*-Toluidine induced intrachromosomal recombination in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* in an assay that is responsive to the induction of DNA deletions (Carls & Schiestl, 1994); this response was reduced in the presence of an antioxidant. Other reported effects of *ortho*-toluidine (Danford, 1991) include the induction of sister chromatid exchange, aneuploidy, unscheduled DNA synthesis, DNA strand breaks, and cell transformation *in vitro*, and the induction of micronuclei in peripheral blood of rats treated *in vivo* (Suzuki *et al.*, 2005). The formation of 8-oxo-7,8-dihydro-2'-deoxyguanosine in calf thymus DNA incubated *in vitro* with 4-amino-3-methylphenol, a metabolite of *ortho*-toluidine, suggests a potential role of reactive oxygen species in the DNA-damaging effects of this aromatic amine (Ohkuma *et al.*, 1999). *ortho*-Toluidine induced DNA lesions – measured by means of the comet assay – in multiple organs of exposed rats and mice (Sekihashi *et al.*, 2002): increased DNA migration was observed in the liver, bladder, lung, and brain of mice, and in the liver, bladder, and stomach of rats.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of *ortho*-toluidine. *ortho*-Toluidine causes cancer of the urinary bladder.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of *ortho*-toluidine.

There is moderate mechanistic evidence indicating that the carcinogenicity of *ortho*-toluidine involves metabolic activation, formation of DNA adducts, and induction of DNA-damaging effects.

ortho-Toluidine is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Akyüz M & Ata S (2008). Determination of aromatic amines in hair dye and henna samples by ion-pair extraction and gas chromatography-mass spectrometry. *Journal of Pharmaceutical and Biomedical Analysis*, 47: 68–80. doi:10.1016/j.jpba.2007.12.011 PMID:18280687

Carls N & Schiestl RH (1994). Evaluation of the yeast DEL assay with 10 compounds selected by the International Program on Chemical Safety for the evaluation of short-term tests for carcinogens. *Mutation Research*, 320: 293–303. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(94)90082-5 PMID:7508555

Carreón T, Hein MJ, Viet SM *et al.* (2010). Increased bladder cancer risk among workers exposed to o-toluidine and aniline: a reanalysis. *Occup Environ Med*, 67: 348–350. doi:10.1136/oem.2009.051136 PMID:19884651

Danford N (1991). The genetic toxicology of ortho-toluidine. *Mutat Res*, 258: 207–236. PMID:1719402

DeBruin LS, Pawliszyn JB, Josephy PD (1999). Detection of monocyclic aromatic amines, possible mammary carcinogens, in human milk. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 12: 78–82. doi:10.1021/tx980168m PMID:9894021

Delzell E, Macaluso M, Cole P (1989). A follow-up study of workers at a dye and resin manufacturing plant. *Journal of Occupational Medicine.*, 31: 273–278. doi:10.1097/00043764-198903000-00016 PMID:2918413

EPA (1984). *Chemical Hazard Information Profile (CHIP): ortho-Toluidine; ortho-Toluidine Hydrochloride*. Washington, DC: Office of Pesticide Programs and Toxic Substances.

Gaber K, Harréus UA, Matthias C *et al.* (2007). Hemoglobin adducts of the human bladder carcinogen o-toluidine after treatment with the local anesthetic prilocaine. *Toxicology*, 229: 157–164. doi:10.1016/j.tox.2006.10.012 PMID:17129655

Gupta RL, Gupta AK, Pathak DP, Juneja TR (1987). Mutagenic studies of ortho-toluidine and its potential metabolites. *Indian J Exp Biol*, 25: 618–622. PMID:3449450

Hecht SS, El-Bayoumy K, Rivenson A, Fiala E (1982). Comparative carcinogenicity of o-toluidine hydrochloride and o-nitrosotoluene in F-344 rats. *Cancer Letters*, 16: 103–108. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(82)90097-0 PMID:7116337

Hecht SS, El-Bayoumy K, Rivenson A, Fiala ES (1983). Bioassay for carcinogenicity of 3,2′-dimethyl-4-nitrosobiphenyl, O-nitrosotoluene, nitrosobenzene and the corresponding amines in Syrian golden hamsters. *Cancer Letters*, 20: 349–354. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(83)90034-4 PMID:6627231

IARC (1978). Some aromatic amines and related nitro compounds - hair dyes, colouring agents and miscellaneous industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 16: 1–400.

IARC (1982). Some aromatic amines, anthraquinones and nitroso compounds, and inorganic fluorides used in drinking-water and dental preparations. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 27: 1–341. PMID:6955259

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (2000). Some industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 77: 1–529. PMID:11236796

IARC (2010). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–678. PMID:21528837.

Kauppinen T, Pukkala E, Saalo A, Sasco AJ (2003). Exposure to chemical carcinogens and risk of cancer among Finnish laboratory workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 44: 343–350. doi:10.1002/ajim.10278 PMID:14502761

Khlebnikova MI, Gladkova EV, Kurenko LT *et al.* (1970). Problems of industrial hygiene and status of health of workers engaged in the production of O-toluidine *Gig Tr Prof Zabol*, 14: 7–10. PMID:5508062

Korinth G, Weiss T, Angerer J, Drexler H (2006). Dermal absorption of aromatic amines in workers with different skin lesions: a report on 4 cases. *Journal of Occupational Medicine and Toxicology (London, England)*, 1: 17–20. doi:10.1186/1745-6673-1-17 PMID:16854230

Markowitz SB & Levin K (2004). Continued epidemic of bladder cancer in workers exposed to ortho-toluidine in a chemical factory. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 46: 154–160. doi:10.1097/01.jom.0000111602.76443.15 PMID:14767218

Neurath GB, Dünger M, Pein FG *et al.* (1977). Primary and secondary amines in the human environment. *Fd Cosmet Toxicol*, 15: 275–282. doi:10.1016/S0015-6264(77)80197-1 PMID:590888

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83)*. Cincinnati, OH: National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health [http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes2/73470occ.html]

NTP (1979). Bioassay of o-toluidine hydrochloride for possible carcinogenicity. *Natl Cancer Inst Carcinog Tech Rep Ser*, 153: 1–147. PMID:12799709

NTP (2004). o-Toluidine and o-toluidine hydrochloride *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 258–259. PMID:21089974.

Ohkuma Y, Hiraku Y, Oikawa S *et al.* (1999). Distinct mechanisms of oxidative DNA damage by two metabolites of carcinogenic o-toluidine. *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics*, 372: 97–106. doi:10.1006/abbi.1999.1461 PMID:10562421

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006). *The Merck Index*, 14th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co. Inc., p. 1639.

Ott MG & Langner RR (1983). A mortality survey of men engaged in the manufacture of organic

dyes. *Journal of Occupational Medicine.*, 25: 763–768. doi:10.1097/00043764-198310000-00018 PMID:6631562

Riedel K, Scherer G, Engl J *et al.* (2006). Determination of three carcinogenic aromatic amines in urine of smokers and nonsmokers. *J Anal Toxicol*, 30: 187–195. PMID:16803653

Riffelmann M, Müller G, Schmieding W *et al.* (1995). Biomonitoring of urinary aromatic amines and arylamine hemoglobin adducts in exposed workers and nonexposed control persons. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 68: 36–43. doi:10.1007/BF01831631 PMID:8847111

Rubino GF, Scansetti G, Piolatto G, Pira E (1982). The carcinogenic effect of aromatic amines: an epidemiological study on the role of o-toluidine and 4,4′-methylene bis (2-methylaniline) in inducing bladder cancer in man. *Environmental Research*, 27: 241–254. doi:10.1016/0013-9351(82)90079-2 PMID:7084156

Sekihashi K, Yamamoto A, Matsumura Y *et al.* (2002). Comparative investigation of multiple organs of mice and rats in the comet assay. *Mutat Res*, 517: 53–75. PMID:12034309

Shackelford WM, Keith LH (1976). *Frequency of Organic Compounds Identified in Water.* Athens, GA: Environmental Research Laboratory (EPA-600/4–76–062), pp. 35, 226

Son OS, Everett DW, Fiala ES (1980). Metabolism of o-[methyl-14C]toluidine in the F344 rat. *Xenobiotica*, 10: 457–468. doi:10.3109/00498258009033781 PMID:7445517

Sorahan T (2008). Bladder cancer risks in workers manufacturing chemicals for the rubber industry. *Occup Med (Lond)*, 58: 496–501. doi:10.1093/occmed/kqn104 PMID:18725381

Sorahan T, Hamilton L, Jackson JR (2000). A further cohort study of workers employed at a factory manufacturing chemicals for the rubber industry, with special reference to the chemicals 2-mercaptobenzothiazole (MBT), aniline, phenyl-beta-naphthylamine and o-toluidine. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 57: 106–115. doi:10.1136/oem.57.2.106 PMID:10711278

Stabbert R, Schäfer K-H, Biefel C, Rustemeier K (2003). Analysis of aromatic amines in cigarette smoke. *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom*, 17: 2125–2132. doi:10.1002/rcm.1161 PMID:12955743

Stasik MJ (1988). Carcinomas of the urinary bladder in a 4-chloro-o-toluidine cohort. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 60: 21–24. doi:10.1007/BF00409374 PMID:3350600

Suzuki H, Ikeda N, Kobayashi K *et al.* (2005). Evaluation of liver and peripheral blood micronucleus assays with 9 chemicals using young rats. A study by the Collaborative Study Group for the Micronucleus Test (CSGMT)/Japanese Environmental Mutagen Society (JEMS)-Mammalian Mutagenicity Study Group (MMS). *Mutat Res*, 583: 133–145. PMID:15899588

Teass AW, DeBord DG, Brown KK *et al.* (1993). Biological monitoring for occupational exposures to o-toluidine and aniline. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 65: :S115–S118. doi:10.1007/BF00381320 PMID:8406905

Vitzthum OG, Werkhoff P, Hubert P (1975). New volatile constituents of black tea aroma. *J Agric Food Chem*, 23: 999–1003. doi:10.1021/jf60201a032

Ward E, Carpenter A, Markowitz S *et al.* (1991). Excess number of bladder cancers in workers exposed to ortho-toluidine and aniline. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 83: 501–506. doi:10.1093/jnci/83.7.501 PMID:2005633

Ward EM, Sabbioni G, DeBord DG *et al.* (1996). Monitoring of aromatic amine exposures in workers at a chemical plant with a known bladder cancer excess. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 88: 1046–1052. doi:10.1093/jnci/88.15.1046 PMID:8683635

Weisburger EK, Russfield AB, Homburger F *et al.* (1978). Testing of twenty-one environmental aromatic amines or derivatives for long-term toxicity or carcinogenicity. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol*, 2: 325–356. PMID:84039

Zenser TV, Lakshmi VM, Hsu FF, Davis BB (2002). Metabolism of N-acetylbenzidine and initiation of bladder cancer. *Mutat Res*, 506–507: 29–40. doi:10.1016/S0027-5107(02)00149-5 PMID:12351142

Zhang N, Liu L, Liu F *et al.* (2006). NMR-based model reveals the structural determinants of mammalian arylamine N-acetyltransferase substrate specificity. *Journal of Molecular Biology*, 363: 188–200. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2006.08.026 PMID:16959263

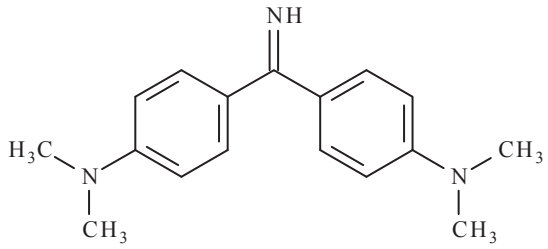
AURAMINE AND AURAMINE PRODUCTION

Auramine and auramine production were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1971, 1987, and 2008 (IARC, 1972, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 492-80-8
CAS Name: 4,4′-Carbonimidoylbis[*N*,*N*-dimethylbenzenamine]
Synonyms: C.I. 41000B; C.I. Solvent Yellow 34; 4,4′-dimethylaminobenzophenonimide; 4,4′-(imidocarbonyl)bis(*N*,*N*-dimethylaniline); glauramine; Solvent Yellow 34; yellow pyoctanine



$C_{17}H_{21}N_3$
Relative molecular mass: 267.37
Description: Yellow flakes or powder, decomposes at >70 °C.
Solubility: as base: insoluble in water, soluble in ethanol and diethyl ether; as the hydrochloride: soluble in water, ether, ethanol and chloroform.

1.2 Manufacture and use

Auramine is manufactured industrially from *N*,*N*-dimethylaniline and formaldehyde, which react to form Michler's base (tetramethyldiaminodiphenylmethane). This base is subsequently converted to auramine by heating with sulfur and ammonium chloride in the presence of ammonia. It was reported that a 98% pure auramine contains salts, water and Michler's ketone, an hydrolysis product (Kirsch *et al.*, 1978).

Production of auramine took place first in Europe (Switzerland, Germany, the United Kingdom, and France), and later also in the United States of America (USA). Production in these countries has generally been discontinued. Auramine manufacturing is currently mainly located in India and the People's Republic of China.

Auramine colourants are used for dyeing of leather, jute, tanned cotton, and paints, and as dye components in inking ribbons, ballpoint pastes, oils and waxes, and carbon paper. The most important applications are in paper dyeing and flexographic printing (IARC, 2010). More detailed information on the use of auramine dyes and auramine compounds is provided in the recent *Monograph* (IARC, 2010).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

The only well described groups of workers exposed during auramine production include those in the United Kingdom (Case & Pearson, 1954) and Germany (Kirsch *et al.*, 1978; Thiess *et al.*, 1982). Results from exposure measurements in the workplace or from biological samples of workers employed in the production of auramine are not available.

The manufacture of auramine involves potential exposure to its process chemicals (e.g. dimethyl-aniline, formaldehyde, sulfur, ammonium chloride, ammonia, Michler's base), as well as to other chemicals that may be used and produced at the same location (e.g. benzidine, 1-naphthylamine, 2-naphthylamine, magenta, aniline) (Case & Pearson, 1954).

2. Cancer in Humans

Auramine was last reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 99 (IARC, 2010). A 13-fold excess of bladder tumours was observed among men engaged in the manufacture of auramine ($P < 0.005$), compared with mortality rates for the male population in England and Wales (Case & Pearson, 1954; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-07-Table2.1.pdf). Although care had been taken to eliminate from the analysis those workers who were recorded as also having been in contact with 1- or 2-naphthylamine or benzidine, exposure to non-auramine bladder carcinogens could not be entirely excluded. A cohort-mortality study of auramine workers at the 'Badische Anilin und Soda-Fabrik' (BASF) in Germany (Kirsch *et al.*, 1978) identified two bladder cancer deaths, with < 0.4 expected. Case reports of bladder cancer among Swiss auramine-production workers have also been published (Von Müller, 1933).

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenicity of auramine in the mouse, rat, and rabbit after oral administration or subcutaneous injection were reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1972, 1987, 2010). There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals reported since the most recent evaluation (IARC, 2010).

Auramine was tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration in two experiments in mice, two in rats, one in rabbits, and one in dogs, and by subcutaneous administration in one experiment in rats. Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1.

Oral administration of auramine caused a significant increase in the incidence of hepatomas in male and female mice and in male rats (Bonser *et al.*, 1956; Williams & Bonser, 1962; Walpole, 1963), and of lymphomas in female mice (Bonser *et al.*, 1956). The subcutaneous-injection study in rats (in which local sarcomas were observed) and the oral studies in rabbits and dogs were found to be inadequate for the evaluation of the carcinogenic hazards of auramine.

For data on Michler's base and Michler's ketone, see IARC (2010).

4. Other Relevant Data

A general Section on "Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility" appears as Section 4.1 in the *Monograph* on 4-aminobiphenyl in this volume.

While no studies were found on the metabolism of auramine in laboratory animals or humans, the finding that auramine-induced intrachromosomal recombination in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* was reduced in the presence of a free-radical scavenger (*N*-acetylcysteine) suggests that auramine may induce genotoxic effects in yeast by generating

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of auramine in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, Strain NR (M, F) Lifetime Bonser *et al.* (1956)	Feed A group of 15 M and 15 F mice were fed a diet containing 0.1% auramine for 52 wk (total dose, 728 mg/mouse). A group of 30 M and 30 F mice received twice weekly a subcutaneous injection of arachis oil, and served as controls	Hepatomas: M–0/30, 4/15; F–0/30, 3/15 Lymphomas: M–1/30, 3/15; F–4/30, 8/15	[$P < 0.05$, both sexes] [$P < 0.01$, F]	Age NR, purity NR (commercial grade). Small number of animals per group. High mortality during study, especially in females. Inadequate controls.
Mouse, "Stock" albino and CBA (M, F) Lifetime Williams & Bonser (1962), Walpole (1963)	Feed A group of 15 M and 15 F "Stock" mice were fed a diet containing 0.1% auramine for 52 wk (total dose ~1820 mg/mouse). Sixteen M and F mice served as untreated controls. A group of 12 M and 15 F CBA mice were fed a diet containing 0.2% auramine for 52 wk (total dose ~3640 mg/mouse). Ninety M and F mice served as untreated controls	Hepatoma: "Stock" mice M–0/8, 4/7 F–0/8, 3/10 CBA mice M–4/35, 7/12 F–3/55, 11/15	 [$P < 0.05$] [NS] [$P < 0.005$] [$P < 0.0001$]	Purity NR (commercial grade) Animals at risk are the animals surviving ≥ 50 wk.
Rat, Wilmslow Wistar (M) Lifetime Williams & Bonser (1962), Walpole (1963)	Feed Groups of 12 M rats were given a basic diet for life or a diet containing 0.1% auramine for 87 wk (estimated total auramine intake, 10 g/rat)	Hepatoma: 0/12, 11/12	NR, [$P < 0.0001$]	Purity NR (commercial grade) Animals at risk are the animals surviving ≥ 90 wk.
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) 24 mo Kirsch *et al.* (1978)	Feed Groups of 20 M and F rats were given a diet containing auramine (technical grade) at 0, 50, 100 and 200 ppm	All sites (benign and malignant): M–6/20, 13/20, 8/20, 10/20 F–19/20, 18/20, 15/20, 19/20	NS	Purity, 87% (technical grade) Age NR

F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks

free radicals (Brennan & Schiestl, 1998). Commercial preparations of auramine were mutagenic in several strains of *S. typhimurium*, when tested with metabolic activation systems. Other *in vitro* effects of auramine include induction of deletions and aneuploidy in *Saccharomyces cereviasiae*, DNA strand breaks in rat hepatocytes, unscheduled DNA synthesis in rat and hamster hepatocytes, mutations in Chinese hamster ovary cells, and micronucleus formation and transformation of Syrian hamster embryo cells. DNA strand breaks were induced in liver, kidney, and urinary bladder cells of exposed rats (Parodi *et al.*, 1982; Martelli *et al.*, 1998) and in liver and bone-marrow cells of exposed mice (Parodi *et al.*, 1982; Sasaki *et al.*, 1997).

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of auramine production. Auramine production causes cancer of the urinary bladder.

There is *inadequate evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of auramine.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of auramine.

There are insufficient mechanistic data relevant to the carcinogenicity of auramine in humans. Auramine induces DNA strand-breaks in experimental animals.

Auramine production is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

Auramine is *possibly carcinogenic to humans (Group 2B).*

References

Bonser GM, Clayson DB, Jull JW (1956). The induction of tumours of the subcutaneous tissues, liver and intestine in the mouse by certain dye-stuffs and their intermediates. *Br J Cancer*, 10: 653–667. doi:10.1038/bjc.1956.79 PMID:13426377

Brennan RJ, & Schiestl RH (1998). Free radicals generated in yeast by the Salmonella test-negative carcinogens benzene, urethane, thiourea and auramine O. *Mutat Res*, 403: 65–73. PMID:9726007

Case RAM & Pearson JT (1954). Tumours of the urinary bladder in workmen engaged in the manufacture and use of certain dyestuff intermediates in the British chemical industry. Part II. Further consideration of the role of aniline and of the manufacture of auramine and magenta (fuchsine) as possible causative agents. *Br J Ind Med*, 11: 213–216. PMID:13182161

IARC (1972). Some inorganic substances, chlorinated hydrocarbons, aromatic amines, N-nitroso compounds and natural products. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 1: 1–184.

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (2010). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–678. PMID:21528837.

Kirsch P, Fleig I, Frentzel-Beyme R *et al.* (1978). [Auramine. Toxicology and occupational health] *Arbeitsmed Sozialmed Praventivmed*, 13: 1–28.

Martelli A, Campart GB, Canonero R *et al.* (1998). Evaluation of auramine genotoxicity in primary rat and human hepatocytes and in the intact rat. *Mutat Res*, 414: 37–47. PMID:9630500

Parodi S, Santi L, Russo P *et al.* (1982). DNA damage induced by auramine O in liver, kidney, and bone marrow of rats and mice, and in a human cell line (alkaline elution assay and SCE induction). *Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health*, 9: 941–952. doi:10.1080/15287398209530216 PMID:7120520

Sasaki YF, Izumiyama F, Nishidate E *et al.* (1997). Detection of rodent liver carcinogen genotoxicity by the alkaline single-cell gel electrophoresis (Comet) assay in multiple mouse organs (liver, lung, spleen, kidney, and bone marrow). *Mutat Res*, 391: 201–214. PMID:9268046

Thiess AM, Link R, Wellenreuther G (1982). *Mortality study of employees exposed to auramine. Proceedings of the ninth conference of occupational health in the chemical industry, Cairo, 1981.* pp. 197–208.

Von Müller A (1933). Bladder alterations due to amines. Experiences from the industrial district of Basel (Ger.). *Z Urol Chir (Gynaekol)*, 36: 202–219.

Walpole AL (1963). On substances inducing cancer of the bladder. *Acta Unio Int Contra Cancrum*, 19: 483 PMID:14050587

Williams MH & Bonser GM (1962). Induction of hepatomas in rats and mice following the administration of auramine. *Br J Cancer*, 16: 87–91. PMID:14040274

MAGENTA AND MAGENTA PRODUCTION

Magenta and magenta production were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1973, 1986, 1987, and 2008 (IARC, 1974, 1987a, b, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

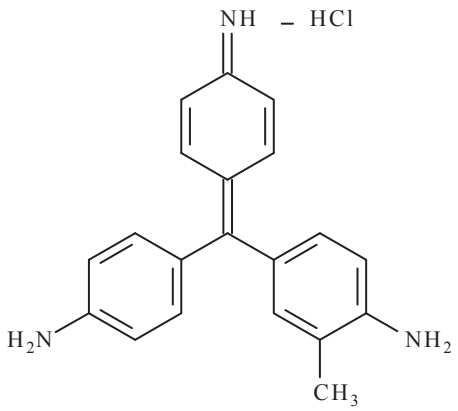
1. Exposure Data

Historically, the dye name Magenta has been used to refer to the mixture Basic Fuchsin, with its four major constituents Basic Red 9 (Magenta 0), Magenta I (Rosanilin), Magenta II, and Magenta III (New Fuchsin). Although samples of Basic Fuchsin can vary considerably in the proportions of these four constituents, today all except Magenta II are available commercially under their own name. Of these, Magenta I and Basic Red 9 are the most common (IARC, 2010).

1.1 Identification of the agents

1.1.1 Magenta I

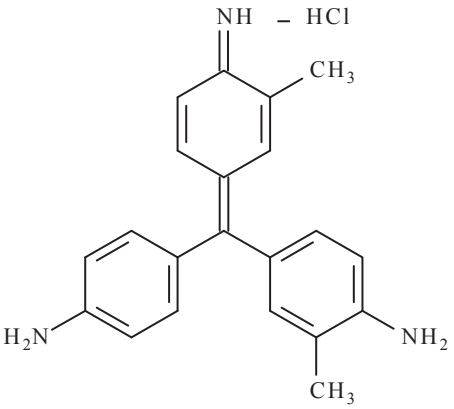
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 632-99-5
CAS Name: 4-[(4-Aminophenyl)(4-imino-2,5-cyclohexadien-1-ylidene)methyl]-2-methylbenzenamine, hydrochloride (1:1)



$C_{20}H_{19}N_3.HCl$
Relative molecular mass: 337.85
Description: Metallic green, lustrous crystals
Melting-point: Decomposes above 200 °C
Solubility: Slightly soluble in water (4 mg/mL); soluble in ethanol (30 mg/mL) and ethylene glycol methyl ether (30 mg/mL); insoluble in diethyl ether

1.1.2 Magenta II

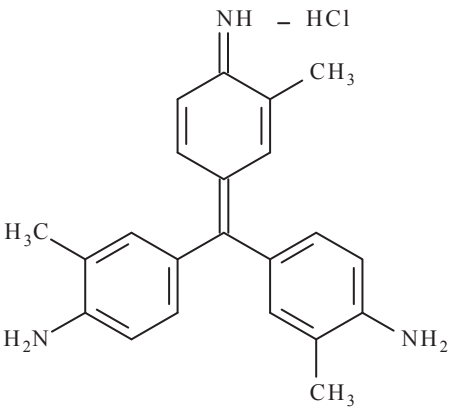
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 26261-57-4
CAS Name: 4-[(4-Aminophenyl)(4-imino-3-methyl-2,5-cyclohexadien-1-ylidene) methyl]-2-methylbenzenamine, hydrochloride (1:1)



$C_{21}H_2N_3.HCl$
Relative molecular mass: 351.87
No information regarding the chemical and physical properties of Magenta II was available to the Working Group.

1.1.3 Magenta III

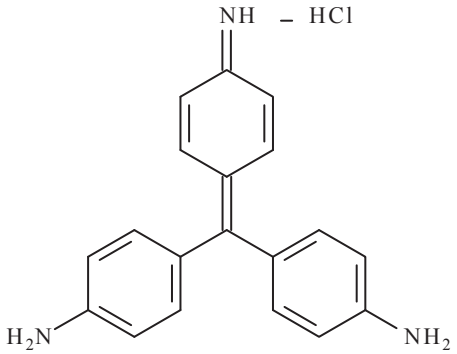
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: *3248-91-7*
CAS Name: 4,4′-[(4-imino-3-methyl-2,5-cyclohexadien-1-ylidene)methylene]bis[2-methylbenzenamine], hydrochloride (1:1)



$C_{22}H_{23}N_3.HCl$
Relative molecular mass: 365.90
Description: Green crystalline powder
Solubility: Soluble in water (20 mg/mL), ethanol (20 mg/mL), and ethylene glycol methyl ether (20 mg/mL)

1.1.4 Basic Red 9 (Magenta 0)

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 569-61-9
CAS Name: 4,4′-[(4-imino-2,5-cyclohexadien-1-ylidene)methylene] bis[benzenamine], hydrochloride (1:1)



$C_{19}H_{17}N_3.HCl$
Description: Pale violet powder
Melting-point: 269 °C (decomposes)
Solubility: Slightly soluble in water (3 mg/mL); soluble in ethanol (25 mg/mL) and ethylene glycol methyl ether (70 mg/mL)

From Green (1990), O'Neil (2006), and Lide (2008).

1.2 Manufacturing processes

Magenta was among the first synthetic dyes to be produced in the 1850s. It has been produced commercially in the United States of America (USA) since at least 1921 (IARC, 2010).

In the United Kingdom, the process for manufacturing Magenta has involved condensation of *ortho*-toluidine and formaldehyde in the presence of nitrotoluene, resulting mainly in the production of Magenta III. Magenta I is prepared by the reaction of a mixture of aniline, *ortho*- and

para-toluidine and their hydrochlorides with nitrobenzene or a mixture of nitrobenzene and *ortho*-nitrotoluene in the presence of ferrous chloride, ferrous oxide and zinc chloride. CI Basic Red 9 is prepared by the reaction of aniline with formaldehyde in the presence of hydrogen chloride, forming 4,4′-methylenedianiline, which is then heated with aniline and aniline hydrochloride in the presence of nitrobenzene and ferric chloride (IARC, 2010).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

The only well described groups of workers exposed during magenta production include those in a dyestuff-manufacturing plant in Ludwigshafen, Germany (Rehn, 1895), in the manufacture of magenta in the chemical industry in the United Kingdom (1910–52) (Case & Pearson, 1954) and the in manufacture of 'new fuchsin' in an Italian dyestuffs factory (Rubino *et al.*, 1982; Piolatto *et al.*, 1991). Reported exposures were based on duration of exposure, years since first exposure, age at first exposure, job category or years since last exposure. No environmental or biological measurements have been reported for these plants or any other plants historically or currently producing magenta.

Production of magenta may involve exposure to process chemicals (e.g. aniline, *ortho*- and *para*-toluidine, and – historically – arsenic acid). Exposure to other chemicals used and produced at the same location may also occur (e.g. benzidine, 1-naphthylamine, 2-naphthylamine, auramine, aniline) (Case & Pearson, 1954).

2. Cancer in Humans

Magenta production was last reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 99 (IARC, 2010). A 23-fold excess of bladder tumours was found in men engaged in the manufacture of magenta ($P < 0.005$), compared with mortality rates for the male population in England and Wales (Case & Pearson, 1954). Although care had been taken to eliminate from the analysis those workers who were recorded as also having been in contact with auramine, 1- or 2-naphthylamine or benzidine, exposure to non-magenta bladder carcinogens could not be entirely excluded. Rubino *et al.* (1982) reported two deaths from bladder cancer after exposure to magenta in the manufacture of 'new fuchsin' (Magenta III) (see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-08-Table2.1.pdf). Bladder cancer was associated with employment in industries with potential magenta exposure in Torino, Italy (Vineis & Magnani, 1985; see Table 2.2, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-08-Table2.2.pdf). These studies indicate that excess bladder cancer risks are caused by the production of magenta, but co-exposures preclude a conclusion for magenta itself.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenicity of magenta in the mouse, rat, and hamster after oral administration, and studies on the carcinogenicity of CI Basic Red 9 in these species after oral administration or subcutaneous injection, have been reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1974, 1987b, 1993, 2010). There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since the most recent evaluation (IARC, 2010).

3.1 Magenta

Magenta was tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration in one experiment in mice (Bonser *et al.*, 1956), one experiment in rats

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of oral administration of Magenta (CI Basic Red 9) in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
CI Basic Red 9				
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M, F) 103 wk NTP (1986)	Feed Groups of 50 M and 50 F mice were fed a diet containing 0, 500 or 1000 ppm CI Basic Red 9 for 103 wk.	Hepatocellular carcinomas:		Purity 93–99%
		M–10/50, 20/50, 27/50	$P < 0.001$ (trend)	
		F–3/49, 19/50, 37/49	$P < 0.001$ (trend)	
		Adrenal phaeochromocytomas (benign or malignant):		
		F–1/48, 8/47, 8/45	$P = 0.015$ (trend)	
Rat, F344/N (M, F) 103 wk NTP (1986)	Feed Groups of 50 M and 50 F rats were fed a diet containing 0, 1000 or 2000 ppm CI Basic Red 9 for 103 wk.	Hepatocellular carcinomas:		Purity 93–99%
		M–0/50, 2/50, 8/50	$P = 0.001$ (trend)	
		Thyroid-follicular cell carcinomas:		
		M–0/49, 5/46, 18/44	$P < 0.001$ (trend)	
		F–0/47, 2/48, 2/50	NS	
		Thyroid-follicular cell adenomas or carcinomas:		
		M–0/49, 5/46, 25/44	$P < 0.001$ (trend)	
		F–0/47, 2/48, 6/50	$P = 0.009$ (trend)	
		Zymbal gland carcinomas:		
		M–1/50, 1/50, 13/50	$P < 0.001$ (trend)	
		F–0/50, 2/50, 7/50	$P = 0.003$ (trend)	
		Subcutaneous-fibromas:		
		M–2/50, 20/50, 16/50	$P < 0.001$ (trend)	
		F–0/50, 15/50, 10/50	$P = 0.005$ (trend)	
		Skin-squamous cell carcinomas:		
		M–0/50, 1/50, 10/50	$P < 0.001$ (trend)	
		Skin-trichoepitheliomas:		
		M–0/50, 0/50, 7/50	$P = 0.001$ (trend)	
		Skin-sebaceous adenomas:		
		M–0/50, 0/50, 5/50	$P = 0.006$ (trend)	

F, female; M, male; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks

(Ketkar & Mohr, 1982) and one experiment in hamsters (Green *et al.*, 1979). These studies were found to be inadequate to evaluate the carcinogenicity of magenta in experimental animals.

3.2 CI Basic Red 9

CI Basic Red 9 was tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration in one study in mice, (NTP, 1986) in two studies in rats (Ketkar & Mohr, 1982; NTP, 1986) and one study in hamsters (Green *et al.*, 1979). It has also been tested by subcutaneous injection in one study in rats (Druckrey *et al.*, 1956). Only the study by NTP (1986) was adequate to evaluate the carcinogenicity of CI Basic Red 9 in experimental animals.

After oral administration in the diet, CI Basic Red 9 increased the incidence of hepatocellular carcinomas in male and female mice and in male rats. It increased the incidence of adrenal gland phaeochromocytomas (benign or malignant) in female mice, and of benign (trichoepitheliomas and sebaceous adenomas) and malignant (squamous cell carcinomas) skin tumours in male rats. In rats, it also increased the incidence of subcutaneous fibromas and Zymbal gland carcinomas in males and females, of thyroid follicular-cell carcinomas in males, and of thyroid follicular-cell adenomas and carcinomas combined in females (NTP, 1986; Table 3.1). In an early study, subcutaneous injection of Basic Red 9 (parafuchsin) in rats resulted in a high incidence of local sarcomas (Druckrey *et al.*, 1956). [The Working Group noted that this study lacks detail and has no concurrent controls.]

4. Other Relevant Data

A general Section on "Aromatic amines: metabolism, genotoxicity, and cancer susceptibility" appears as Section 4.1 in the *Monograph* on 4-aminobiphenyl in this volume.

No studies in laboratory animals or in humans were found on the metabolism of magenta. No adequate studies were available on the carcinogenicity of magenta in experimental animals. However, the related compound CI Basic Red 9, which is a component of commercial magenta, induced liver tumours in rats and mice. Excess risk for cancer of the urinary bladder was reported in workers involved in the manufacture of magenta. Magenta was mutagenic in *S. typhimurium* strains TA98, TA100, and TA1535 when tested in the presence of metabolic activation (Mortelmans *et al.*, 1986).

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of magenta production. Magenta production causes cancer of the urinary bladder.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of CI Basic Red 9.

There are insufficient mechanistic data relevant to the carcinogenicity of magenta in humans or experimental animals.

Magenta production is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

Magenta is *possibly carcinogenic to humans (Group 2B).*

References

Bonser GM, Clayson DB, Jull JW (1956). The induction of tumours of the subcutaneous tissues, liver and intestine in the mouse by certain dye-stuffs and their intermediates. *Br J Cancer*, 10: 653–667. doi:10.1038/bjc.1956.79 PMID:13426377

Case RAM & Pearson JT (1954). Tumours of the urinary bladder in workmen engaged in the manufacture and use of certain dyestuff intermediates in the British chemical industry. II. Further consideration of the role of aniline and of the manufacture of auramine and magenta (fuchsine) as possible causative agents. *Br J Ind Med*, 11: 213–216. PMID:13182161

Druckrey H, Nieper HA, Lo HW (1956). Carcinogene Wirkung von Parafuchsin in Injektionsversuch an Ratten. *Naturwissenschaften*, 43: 543–544. doi:10.1007/BF00629375

Green FJ (1990). *The Sigma-Aldrich Handbook of Stains, Dyes and Indicators*. Milwaukee, WI: Aldrich Chemical Co., pp. 126–129, 508.

Green U, Holste J, Spikermann AR (1979). A comparative study of the chronic effects of magenta, paramagenta, and phenyl-beta-naphthylamine in Syrian golden hamsters. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol*, 95: 51–55. doi:10.1007/BF00411109 PMID:500768

IARC (1974). Some aromatic amines, hydrazine and related substances, N-nitroso compounds and miscellaneous alkylating agents. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 4: 1–286.

IARC (1987a). Genetic and related effects: an updating of selected IARC Monographs from volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 6: 1–729. PMID:3504843

IARC (1987b). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1993). Occupational exposures of hairdressers and barbers and personal use of hair colourants; some hair dyes, cosmetic colourants, industrial dyestuffs and aromatic amines. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 57: 1–427.

IARC (2010). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–678. PMID:21528837.

Ketkar MB & Mohr U (1982). The chronic effects of magenta, paramagenta and phenyl-beta-naphthylamine in rats after intragastric administration. *Cancer Lett*, 16: 203–206. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(82)90062-3 PMID:6812944

Lide DR, editor (2008). *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 98th ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp. 3–322, 3–410.

Mortelmans K, Haworth S, Lawlor T *et al.* (1986). Salmonella mutagenicity tests: II. Results from the testing of 270 chemicals. *Environmental Mutagenesis*, 8: Suppl 71–119. doi:10.1002/em.2860080802 PMID:3516675

NTP (1986). NTP Toxicology and Carcinogenesis Studies of C.I. Basic Red 9 Monohydrochloride (Pararosaniline) (CAS No. 569–61–9) In F344/N Rats and B6C3F1 Mice (Feed Studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 285: 1–228. PMID:12748695

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006). *The Merck Index*, 14th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co. Inc., p. 980.

Piolatto G, Negri E, La Vecchia C, Pira E, Decarli A, Peto JBladder cancer mortality of workers exposed to aromatic amines: an updated analysis. *Br J Cancer*, (1991). 63: 457–9. doi:10.1038/bjc.1991.106 PMID:2003988

Rehn LBladder Tumour in fuchsin workers. *Arch Klin Chir*, (1895). 50: 588–600 (in German).

Rubino GF, Scansetti G, Piolatto G, Pira E (1982). The carcinogenic effect of aromatic amines: an epidemiological study on the role of o-toluidine and 4,4′-methylene bis (2-methylaniline) in inducing bladder cancer in man. *Environmental Research*, 27: 241–254. doi:10.1016/0013-9351(82)90079-2 PMID:7084156

Vineis P & Magnani C (1985). Occupation and bladder cancer in males: a case-control study. *International Journal of Cancer*, 35: 599–606. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910350506

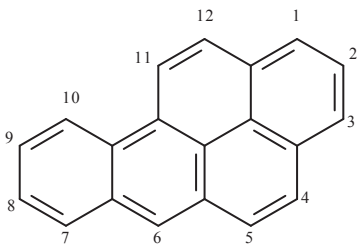
BENZO[*a*]PYRENE

Benzo[*a*]pyrene was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1972, 1983, and 2005 (IARC, 1973, 1983, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Chem. Abstr. Services Reg. No.: 50-32-8
Chem. Abstr. Name: Benzo[*a*]pyrene
IUPAC Systematic Name: Benzo[*a*]pyrene
Synonyms: B*a*P; benzo[*def*]chrysene; 3,4-benzopyrene*; 6,7-benzopyrene*; benz[*a*]pyrene; 3,4-benz[*a*]pyrene*; 3,4-benzpyrene*; 4,5-benzpyrene*
(*alternative numbering conventions)



$C_{20}H_{12}$
Relative molecular mass: 252.31
Description: Yellowish plates, needles from benzene/methanol; crystals may be monoclinic or orthorhombic
Boiling-point: 310–312 °C at 10 mm Hg
Melting-point: 179–179.3 °C; 178.1 °C
Spectroscopy data: Ultraviolet/visual, infrared, fluorescence, mass and nuclear magnetic-resonance spectral data have been reported
Water solubility: 0.00162 mg/L at 25 °C; 0.0038 mg/L at 25 °C
log K_{ow} (octanol–water): 6.35
Henry's Law Constant: 0.034 Pa m^3/mol at 20 °C
From IARC (2010)

1.2 Occurrence and exposure

Benzo[*a*]pyrene and other polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) are widespread environmental contaminants formed during incomplete combustion or pyrolysis of organic material. These substances are found in air, water, soils and sediments, generally at trace levels except near their sources. PAHs are present in some foods and in a few pharmaceutical products based on coal tar that are applied to the skin. Tobacco smoke contains high concentrations of PAHs (IARC, 2010).

1.2.1 Exposure of the general population

The general population can be exposed to benzo[*a*]pyrene through tobacco smoke, ambient air, water, soils, food and pharmaceutical products. Concentrations of benzo[*a*]pyrene in

sidestream cigarette smoke have been reported to range from 52 to 95 ng/cigarette — more than three times the concentration in mainstream smoke. Major sources of PAHs in ambient air (both outdoors and indoors) include residential and commercial heating with wood, coal or other biomasses (oil and gas heating produce much lower quantities of PAH), other indoor sources such as cooking and tobacco smoke, and outdoor sources like motor-vehicle exhaust (especially from diesel engines), industrial emissions and forest fires. Average concentrations of individual PAHs in the ambient air in urban areas typically range from 1 to 30 ng/m^3; however, concentrations up to several tens of nanograms per cubic metre have been reported in road tunnels, or in large cities that make extensive use of coal or other biomass as residential heating fuel. Estimates of PAH intake from food vary widely, ranging from a few nanograms to a few micrograms per person per day. Sources of PAHs in the diet include barbecued/grilled/broiled and smoke-cured meats; roasted, baked and fried foods (high-temperature processing); bread, cereals and grains (at least in part from gas/flame-drying of grains); and vegetables grown in contaminated soils, or in areas with surface contamination from atmospheric PAH fall-out (IARC, 2010).

1.2.2 Occupational exposure

Occupational exposure to PAHs occurs primarily through inhalation and via skin contact. Monitoring by means of ambient air-sampling or personal air-sampling at the workplace, to determine individual PAHs, sets of PAHs or surrogates (e.g. coal-tar pitch volatiles) has been used to characterize exposure via inhalation; more recently, biological monitoring methods have been applied to characterize the uptake of certain specific PAHs (e.g. benzo[*a*]pyrene) to be used as biomarkers of total exposure (IARC, 2010).

Industries where occupational exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene has been measured and reported include: coal liquefaction, coal gasification, coke production and coke ovens, coal-tar distillation, roofing and paving (involving coal-tar pitch), wood impregnation/preservation with creosote, aluminium production (including anode manufacture), carbon-electrode manufacture, chimney sweeping, and power plants. Highest levels of exposure to PAHs are observed in aluminium production (Söderberg process) with values up to 100 µg/m^3. Mid-range levels are observed in roofing and paving (e.g. 10–20 µg/m^3) and the lowest concentrations (i.e. at or below 1µg/m^3) are observed in coal liquefaction, coal-tar distillation, wood impregnation, chimney sweeping and power plants (IARC, 2010).

2. Cancer in Humans

No epidemiological data on benzo[*a*]pyrene alone were available to the Working Group.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Benzo[*a*]pyrene was considered by three previous Working Groups (IARC, 1973, 1983, 2010).

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 3 (IARC, 1973) it was concluded that benzo[*a*]pyrene produced tumours in all species tested (mouse, rat, hamster, guinea-pig, rabbit, duck, newt, monkey) for which data were reported following exposure by many different routes (oral, dermal, inhalation, intratracheal, intrabronchial, subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, intravenous). Benzo[*a*]pyrene had both a local and a systemic carcinogenic effect, was an initiator of skin carcinogenesis in mice, and was carcinogenic in single-dose studies and following prenatal and transplacental exposures.

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 32 (IARC, 1983) no evaluation was made of studies of carcinogenicity in experimental animals published since 1972, but it was concluded that there is *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of benzo[*a*]pyrene in experimental animals.

Carcinogenicity studies with administration of benzo[*a*]pyrene by multiple route of exposure, reported after the initial evaluations, were subsequently reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010) and are summarized below (Table 3.1). See Table 3.2 for an overview of malignant tumours induced in different animal species.

3.1 Skin application

In several studies in which benzo[*a*]pyrene was applied to the skin of different strains of mice, benign (squamous cell papillomas and keratoacanthomas) and malignant (mainly squamous-cell carcinomas) skin tumours were observed (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1973; Cavalieri *et al.*, 1977, 1988a; Levin *et al.*, 1977; Habs *et al.*, 1980, 1984; Warshawsky & Barkley, 1987; Albert *et al.*, 1991; Andrews *et al.*, 1991; Warshawsky *et al.*, 1993). No skin-tumour development was seen in $AhR^{-/-}$ mice that lacked the aryl hydrocarbon receptor, whereas the heterozygous and wild-type mice developed squamous-cell carcinomas of the skin (Shimizu *et al.*, 2000).

In a large number of initiation–promotion studies in mice, benzo[*a*]pyrene was active as an initiator (mainly of squamous-cell papillomas) when applied to the skin (IARC, 2010).

3.2 Subcutaneous injection

In subcutaneous injection studies of benzo[*a*]pyrene, malignant tumours (mainly fibrosarcomas) were observed at the injection site in mice (Kouri *et al.*, 1980; Rippe & Pott, 1989) and rats (Pott *et al.*, 1973a, b; Rippe & Pott, 1989). No fibrosarcomas were observed in $AhR^{-/-}$ mice that lacked the aryl hydrocarbon receptor, whereas the heterozygous and wild-type mice did develop these tumours (Shimizu *et al.*, 2000).

In another study, male and female newborn Swiss mice that were given benzo[*a*]pyrene subcutaneously showed a significant increase in lung-adenoma incidence and multiplicity (Balansky *et al.*, 2007).

A single study in 12 strains of hamsters resulted in sarcomas at the site of injection in both sexes of all 12 strains (Homburger *et al.*, 1972).

3.3 Oral administration

After administration of benzo[*a*]pyrene by gavage or in the diet to mice of different strains (Sparnins *et al.*, 1986; Estensen & Wattenberg, 1993; Weyand *et al.*, 1995; Kroese *et al.*, 1997; Culp *et al.*, 1998; Hakura *et al.*, 1998; Badary *et al.*, 1999; Wijnhoven *et al.*, 2000; Estensen *et al.*, 2004), increased tumour responses were observed in lymphoid and haematopoeitic tissues and in several organs, including the lung, forestomach, liver, oesophagus and tongue.

Oral administration of benzo[*a*]pyrene to $XPA^{-/-}$ mice resulted in a significantly higher increase of lymphomas than that observed in similarly treated $XPA^{+/-}$ and $XPA^{+/+}$ mice (de Vries *et al.*, 1997). Benzo[*a*]pyrene given by gavage to $XPA^{-/-}/p53^{+/-}$ double-transgenic mice induced tumours (mainly splenic lymphomas and forestomach tumours) much earlier and at higher incidences than in similarly treated single transgenic and wild-type counterparts. These cancer-prone $XPA^{-/-}$ or $XPA^{-/-}/p53^{+/-}$ mice also developed a high incidence of tumours (mainly of the forestomach) when fed benzo[*a*]pyrene in the diet (van Oostrom *et al.*, 1999; Hoogervorst *et al.*, 2003).

Oral administration of benzo[*a*]pyrene by gavage to rats resulted in an increased incidence of mammary gland adenocarcinomas (el-Bayoumy *et al.*, 1995).

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of benzo[*a*]pyrene in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Skin application				
Mouse, Swiss ICR/Ha (F) 52 wk Van Duuren *et al.* (1973)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle control), 5 µg/animal, 3 × /wk, 52 wk 50/group	Skin T: 0/50, 0/50, 23/50 (46%; 13 P; 10 C)	+	NR (acetone)
Mouse, Swiss (F) 38–65 wk Cavalieri *et al.* (1977)	0 and 0.396 µmol [0.1 mg] per animal, twice/wk, 30 wk 40/group	Skin T: 0% [0/29], 78.9% [30/38] (7 P, 7 K, 36 C, 1 malignant Schwannoma)	+	99% (acetone)
Mouse, C57BL/6J (F) 60 wk Levin *et al.* (1977)	Experiment 1 and 2: 0 (DMSO/acetone), 0.02 [5.28 µg], 0.1 [26.43 µg], 0.4 [105.75 µg] µmol/animal, once/2 wk, 60 wk (high dose given in two paintings, 30 min apart) Experiment 3: 0 (acetone/NH_4OH), 0.025 [6.6 µg], 0.05 [13.21 µg], 0.1 [26.43 µg] µmol/animal, once/2 wk, 60 wk 30/group	Skin T (mainly SCC): Experiment 1–0%, 0%, 38% (13 T), 100% (44 T) Experiment 2–0%, 4% (1 T), 50% (15 T), 100% (40 T) Experiment 3– 0%, 7% (2 T), 59% (20 T), 91% (24 T)	+	NR (DMSO/acetone (1:3) or acetone/NH_4OH (1 000:1)) Effective number of animals not clearly specified At most, seven animals/group died prematurely without a skin tumour.
Mouse, NMRI (F) 63–109 wk Habs *et al.* (1984)	0, 2, 4 µg/animal, twice/wk 20/group	Skin T: 0/20, 9/20 (45%; 2 P, 7 C), 17/20 (85%; 17 C)	+	> 96% (acetone)
Mouse C3H/HeJ (M) 99 wk Warshawsky & Barkley (1987)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle control) or 12.5 µg/animal, twice/wk 50/group	Skin T: 0/50, 0/50, 48/50 (96%; 47 C, 1 P)	+	99.5% (acetone)
Mouse, Swiss (F) 42 wk Cavalieri *et al.* (1988a)	0, 0.1 [26.4 µg], 0.4 [105.7 µg] µmol/animal, twice/wk, 20 wk 30/group	Skin T incidence: 0/30, 26/29 (90%; SGA, 3 P, 23 SCC), 26/30 (90%; 2 P, 26 SCC)	+	Purified [NR] (acetone)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Mouse, C3H/fCum (M) Experiment 1: 15 mo Experiment 2: 18 mo Experiment 3: 18 mo Kouri *et al.* (1980)	Experiment 1: 0 (trioctanoin control), 0 (DMSO control), 0.9 µmol [0.23 mg] in trioctanoin or DMSO, Experiment 2: 0 (trioctanoin control), 0 (DMSO control), 0.9 µmol [0.23 mg] in trioctanoin or in DMSO, Experiment 3: 0 (trioctanoin/DMSO, 100:1), 0.9 µmol [0.23 mg] in trioctanoin/DMSO (100:1), 1 × 20 or 40/group	FibroS at injection site: *Experiment 1*–0/16, 0/20, 15/18 (83%), 12/19 (63%) *Experiment 2*–0/20, 0/18, 14/18 (78%), 7/19 (37%) *Experiment 3*–0/20, 36/40 (90%)	+	Pure (trioctanoin, DMSO)
Mouse, NR (F) 78 wk Rippe & Pott (1989)	0, 10, 100 µg/animal, 1 × NR/group	S at injection site: 1/30 (3%), 13/30 (43%), 20/30 (67%)	+	NR (tricaprylin)
Mouse, Swiss (newborn) (M, F) 75–200 d Balansky *et al.* (2007)	0 and 1.0 mg/animal, 1 × 12–15 M/group, 12–15 F/group	Lung A: M – 0/15, 9/12; F – 0/15, 11/12	$P < 0.001$	Pure (olive oil)
Rat, Wistar (F) ~530 d Pott *et al.* (1973a)	0, 33, 100, 300, 900, 2 700 µg/animal, 1 × 50/group	T (mainly fibroS) at injection site [incidence derived from dose–response curves]: 2/50 (~4%), 4/50 (~8%), 7/50 (~14%), 23/50 (~46%), 35/50 (~70%), 38/50 (~76%)	+	NR (tricaprylin)
Rat, NR (F) 132 wk Rippe & Pott (1989)	0 and 1 mg, 1 × NR/group	S at injection site: 0/24 (0%), 20/24 (83%)	+	NR (tricaprylin)
Rat, NR (F) 132 wk Rippe & Pott (1989)	0 and 15 mg, 1 × NR/group	S at injection site: 1/24 (4%), 19/24 (79%)	+	NR (DMSO)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Hamster, Syrian, RB (randomly bred), BIO inbred strains designated as: 1.5, 4.22, 4.24, 7.88, 12.14, 15.16, 45.5, 54.7, 82.73, 86.93, 87.20 (M, F) 53 wk Homburger *et al.* (1972)	500 µg/animal, 1 × 25 M/group, 25 F/group	FibroS at injection site: RB–M, 4/25 (16%); F, 6/23 (26%) 1.5–M, 5/25 (20%); F, 4/23 (17%) 4.22–M, 3/25 (12%); F, 8/25 (32%) 4.24–M, not tested; F, 9/25 (36%) 7.88–M, 13/25 (52%); F, 5/23 (23%) 12.14–M, 3/25 (12%); F, 9/22 (41%) 15.16–M, 9/25 (36%); F, 16/25 (64%) 45.5–M, 12/25 (48%); F, 7/15 (47%) 54.7:–M, 5/25 (20%); F, 5/25 (20%) 82.73–M, 4/21 (19%); F, 4/24 (17%) 86.93–M, 9/25 (36%); F, 8/25 (32%) 87.20–M, 16/25 (64%); F, 11/25 (42%)	+	NR (tricaprylin) No subcutaneous T observed in historical controls
Oral administration				
Mouse, A/J (F) 260 d Weyand *et al.* (1995)	0, 16, 98 ppm (total dose; 0, 11, 67 mg) in the diet 30/group	Lung T: 4/21 (19%; 4 A; 0.19 ± 0.09 A/animal), 9/25 (36%*; 7 A, 2 AdC; 0.48 ± 0.14 T/animal), 14/27 (52%*; 14 A; 0.59 ± 0.12 A/animal) Forestomach T: (0%) 0/21, (5/25) (20%; 3 P, 2 C; 0.24 ± 0.11** T/animal), 27/27 (100%**; 13 P, 14 C; 4.22 ± 0.41**)	*$P < 0.05$ **$P < 0.001$	NR (gel diet)
Mouse B6C3F1 (F) 2 yr Culp *et al.* (1998)	0 (acetone control diet), 5 ppm, 25 ppm, 100 ppm in the diet 48/group	Liver (A): 2/48 (4%), 7/48 (15%), 5/47 (11%), 0/45 (0%) Lung (A and/or C): 5/48 (10%), 0/48 (0%), 4/45 (9%), 0/48 (0%) Forestomach (P and/or C): 1/48 (2%), 3/47 (6%), 36/46 (78%****), 46/47 (98%****) Oesophagus (P and/or C): 0/48 (0%), 0/48 (0%), 2/45 (4%), 27/46 (59%**) Tongue (P and/or C): 0/48 (0%), 0/48 (0%), 2/46 (4%), 23/48 (48%***) Larynx (P and/or C): 0/35 (0%), 0/35 (0%), 3/34 (9%), 5/38 (13%*)	*$P < 0.014$ **$P < 0.0014$ ***$P < 0.0003$ ****$P < 0.00001$	98.5% (acetone)
Mouse, Swiss albino, inbred (F) 27 wk Badary *et al.* (1999)	0 and 1 mg/animal by gavage, twice/wk, 4 wk 10/group	0, 10/10 (100%) (forestomach P; multiplicity, 7.11 ± 1.05)	+	Highest purity grade (corn oil) Drinking-water contained 0.005% ethanol

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Mouse, $CSB^{-/-}$ or wild-type ($CSP^{\pm}$ or $CSB^{+/+}$) (M, F) 52 wk Wijnhoven *et al.* (2000)	0 and 13 mg/kg bw by gavage, 3 × / wk, 13 wk 6–18 M/group, 6–13 F/group	Wild-type: 5/27 (14 M, 13 F; 19%; 4 bronchiolo-alveolar A, 2 lymphoma), 17/29* (18 M, 11 F; 59%; 6 bronchiolo-alveolar A, 10 forestomach P, 2 forestomach SCC, 2 histiocytic S, 2 hepatocellular A, 1 intestinal AdC, 1 skin P) $CSB^{-/-}$: 0/13 (6 M, 7 F), 7/12** (6 M, 6 F; 58%; 2 bronchiolo-alveolar A, 2 uterine S, 1 forestomach SCC, 1 intestinal AdC, 1 skin histiocytic S)	*$P = 0.0023$ **$P = 0.0017$	NR (soya oil)
Rat, Crl:CD(SD)BR (F) 49 wk el-Bayoumy *et al.* (1995)	0 and 50 µmol/animal, once/wk, 8 wk by gavage 30/group	Mammary T incidence: 11/30 [37%] [incidence not clearly specified] (8 desmoplastic A, 2 A, 1 AdC), 29/30 (96.7%; 8 fibroA**, 17 desmoplastic A*, 7 A, 22 AdC**) Numbers of mammary T: controls, 14 desmoplastic A, 2 A, 1 AdC; treated animals, 14 fibroA*, 35 desmoplastic A, 11 A, 56 AdC**	*$P < 0.05$ **$P < 0.01$	99% (trioctanoin)
Intraperitoneal injection				
Mouse, B6C3F1; C3A/JF1 (M, F) 90 wk or lifetime Vesselinovitch *et al.* (1975a, b)	0, 75, 150 µg in 10 µL/g bw, 1 × at 1, 15, 42 d of age 30–63/group, 96–100 controls/group	B6C3F1 mice (all ages combined): Liver T (A and hepatocellular C)– M, 1/98 (1%), 69/162 (43%), 81/165 (49%); F, 0/96 (0%), 7/147 (5%), 10/126 (8%) Lung T (A and AdC)– M, 7/98 (7%), 57/162 (35%), 73/165 (44%); F, 2/90 (2%), 53/147 (36%), 50/126 (40%) Forestomach T (P and SCC)– M, 0/98 (0%), 39/162 (24%), 64/165 (39%); F, 0/96 (0%), 22/147 (15%), 40/126 (32%) Lymphoreticular T (mainly reticulum-cell S)– M, 2/98 (2%), 104/314 (33%) (high- and low-dose groups combined); F, 2/96 (2%), 148/281 (53%) (high-and low-dose groups combined)	+	NR (trioctanoin)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Vesselinovitch *et al.* (1975a, b) Contd.		C3A/JF1 mice (all ages combined): Liver T (A and hepatocellular C)– M, 3/97 (3%), 30/148 (20%), 33/137 (24%); F, 0/100 (0%), 1.3% 2/126 (1.3%), 2/153 1.3%) Lung T (A and AdC)– M, 49/97 (49%), 1 438/148 (93%), 125/137 (91%); F, 26/100 (26%), 115/126 (91%), 141/153 (92%) Forestomach T (P and SCC)– M, 0/97 (0%), 18/148 (12%), 42/137 (31%); F, 0/100 (0%), 18/126 (14%), 31/153 (20%) Lymphoreticular T (mainly reticulum-cell S)– M, 0/97 (0%), 26/285 (9%); F, 2/100 (2%), 50/278 (18%) (high- and low-dose groups combined)	+	
Mouse, CD-1 (M, F) 1 yr Wislocki *et al.* (1986)	0 and 560 nmol [148 µg] (total dose; given as 1/7, 2/7, 4/7 on PND 0, 8, 15) 37 M/group, 27 F/group	Liver T: M, 2/28 (7%; 2 A), 18/37* (49%; 11 A, 7 C*); F, no liver T found Lung T: M, 1/28 (4%; 1 A), 13/37** (35%; 13 A); F, 0/31, 13/27** (48%) (13 A) Malignant lymphoma: M, 1/28 (4%), 2/37 (5%); F, 1/31 (3%), 4/27 (15%)	*$P < 0.005$ **$P < 0.05$	> 99% (DMSO)
Mouse, CD-1 (M, F) 52 wk Lavoie *et al.* (1987)	0 and 1.1 µmol [290 µg] (total dose; given as 1/6, 2/6, 4/6 on PND 1, 8, 15) 17 M/group, 14–18 F/group	Liver T: M, 1/17 (6%; 1 H), 13/17* (76%; 9 hepatic A, 4 H); F, 0/18, 0/14 Lung A: M, 0/17, 14/17* (82%); F, 0/18, 9/14** (64%)	*$P < 0.005$ **[$P < 0.0005$]	> 99% (DMSO)
Mouse, Swiss-Webster BLU: Ha(ICR) (M, F) 26 wk Busby *et al.* (1989)	0 and 59.5 µg (total dose; given as 8.5, 17, 34 µg on PND 1, 8, 15) NR/group	Lung T: M, 12/91 (13%; 12 A, 1 AdC; 0.15 ± 0.04 T/mouse), 13/28 (46%; 13 A; 0.71 ± 0.19 A/mouse); F, 7/101 (7%; 7 A; 0.08 ± 0.03 A/mouse), 18/27 (67%; 18 A, 1 AdC; 1.19 ± 0.21 T/mouse)	+	> 99% (DMSO) statistics NR
Mouse, NR, newborn (M, F) 30 wk Rippe & Pott (1989)	0, 10, 100 µg/animal, 1 × NR/group	Lung T: 13% [5/38] (0.13 T/animal), 16% [5/31] (0.23 T/animal), 64% [21/33] (2.52 T/animal)	+	NR (saline solution + 1% gelatine + 0.4% Tween 20) Type of lung tumour NR; statistics NR
Mouse, A/J (F) 260 d Weyand *et al.* (1995)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle control), 1.79 mg/animal, 1 × 29–30/group	Lung T: 7/30 (23%; 7 A; 0.27 ± 0.12 A/animal), 11/30 (37%; 11 A; 0.43 ± 0.11 A/animal), 29/29* (100%; 27 A, 2 AdC; 15.8 ± 1.28** T/animal); forestomach T: 0/30 (0%), 0/30 (0%), 24/29** (83%; 15 P, 9 C; 1.83 ± 0.25** T/animal)	*$P < 0.05$ **$P < 0.001$	NR (tricaprylin)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 infant (M, F) 26 wk, 39 wk, 52 wk Rodriguez *et al.* (1997)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle controls), 125, 250, 375 µg/7 g bw, 1 × > 30 M/group, > 30 F/group	Liver T (M): At wk 26: 0/41, 0/58, 0/29, 0/25, 3/34 (9%; multiplicity, 1.0); at wk 39: 0/34, 0/59, 6/26 (23%; multiplicity, 1.0), 13/34 (38%; multiplicity, 1.9), 15/23 (65%; multiplicity, 1.9); at wk 52: 4/64 (6%; multiplicity, 1.0), 3/63 (5%; multiplicity, 1.0), 13/29 (45%; multiplicity, 1.8), 14/27 (52%; multiplicity, 2.2), 19/24 (79%; multiplicity, 2.5) No liver T in F	+	NR (corn oil) No forestomach tumours
Mouse, CD-1 (M) 12 mo Von Tungeln *et al.* (1999)	0, 100, 400 nmol [26, 111 µg]/animal (total dose; given as 1/7, 2/7, 4/7 on PND 1, 8, 15) 24/group	Liver T: 3/20 (15%; 1 A, 2 C; 1.7 T/liver section), 5/21 (24%; 4 A, 1 C; 1.5 T/liver section), 9/20 (45%; 7 A*, 2 C; > 2.3 T/liver section) Lung T: 4/20 (20%; 4 A; 1.0 T/lung section), 1/21 (5%; 1 A; 1.0 T/lung section), 9/20 (45%; 7 A, 2 C; 1.9 T/lung section)	*P = 0.0234	> 99% (DMSO)
Rat, Wistar (F) ~112 wk Roller *et al.* (1992)	0 and 5 mg/animal, 1 × NR/group	Abdominal mesothelioma and S: 3/41 (7.3%), 33/37 (89.2%)	+	NR (3:1 mixture of tricaprylin/ beeswax) Limited reporting
Rat, Wistar (F) ~116 wk Roller *et al.* (1992)	5 mg/animal, 1 × NR/group	Abdominal mesothelioma and S: 19/38 (50%); historical controls, 11/369 (3%)	+	NR (saline solution) No control; limited reporting of tumour data
Inhalation				
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) Lifetime Thyssen *et al.* (1981)	0, 2.2, 9.5, 46.5 mg/m3, 4.5 h/d, 7 d/wk, 10 wk; thereafter 3 h/d, 7 d/wk (total average doses: 0, 29, 127, 383 mg/animal) 24/group (+ animals added during the study)	Respiratory tract T: (polyps, P, SCC)– 0/27, 0/27, 34.6% [9/26; 3 nasal, 8 laryngeal, 1 tracheal], 52% [13/25; 1 nasal, 13 laryngeal, 3 tracheal; no bronchogenic T] Upper digestive tract T: (polyps, P, SCC)– 0/27, 0/27, 26.9% [6/26; 6 pharyngeal, 1 forestomach], 56% [14/25; 14 pharyngeal, 2 oesophageal, 1 forestomach]	+	NR (0.1% saline solution); particle size, > 99% diameter 0.2–0.5 µm, > 80% diameter 0.2–0.3 µm Survival decreased for high dose-exposed animals (59 wk) *vs* other groups (96 wk).

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Intrapulmonary injection				
Rat, OM (F) 64 (high-dose group)–133 wk (untreated controls) Deutsch-Wenzel *et al.* (1983)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle control), 0.1, 0.3, 1.0 mg/animal, 1 × 35/group	Lung T: [0/35] (0%), [0/35] (0%), [10/35] (28.6%) (4 epidermoid C; 6 pleomorphic S), [23/35] (65.7%) (21 epidermoid C; 2 pleomorphic S), [33/35] (94.3%) (33 epidermoid C)	+	99.1% (1:1 mixture of beeswax and trioctanoin)
Rats, F344/NSlc (M) 104 wk Iwagawa *et al.* (1989)	0, 0.03, 0.1, 0.3, 1.0 mg/animal, 1 × NR/group	Lung T: 0/40, 1/29 (3%; 1 undifferentiated T), 7/30 (23%; 6 SCC, 1 undifferentiated T), 22/29 (76%; 20 SCC, 2 undifferentiated T), 9/13 (69%; 9 SCC)	+	NR (1:1 mixture of beeswax/tricaprylin)
Rat, Osborne-Mendel (F) 134 wk (low-dose group)–140 wk (vehicle controls) Wenzel-Hartung *et al.* (1990)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle control), 30, 100, 300 µg/animal, 1 × 35/group	Lung T: [0/35] (0%), [0/35] (0%), [3/35] (8.6%; 3 SCC), [11/35] (31.4%; 11 SCC), [27/35] (77.1%; 27 SCC).	+	99.6% (beeswax/trioctanoin mixture of varying composition) SCC predominantly keratinized
Rat, F344/DuCrj (M) 100 wk Horikawa *et al.* (1991)	0, 50, 100, 200 µg/animal, 1 × 9–10/group	Lung T: 0/19, 0/10, 3/10 (30%; 2 SCC, 1 AdSC), 4/9 (44.4%; 3 SCC, 1 undifferentiated T)	+	NR (1:1 mixture of beeswax/tricaprylin)
Intratracheal administration				
Rat, Wistar-WU/Kisslegg (F) 124–126 wk Pott *et al.* (1987)	0 and 1 mg/animal, once/wk, 20 wk NR/group	Lung T: 0/40, 7/36 (19%; 1 A, 5 SCC, 1 mixed AdC/SCC)	+	NR (0.9% saline solution)
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) Controls, 131 wk; treated animals, 112 wk Steinhoff *et al.* (1991)	0 and 0 (physiological saline), 7 mg/kg bw/instillation (physiological saline with Tween 60), once/2 wk, 44 wk 20 or 50/group	M: 0/50, 0/50, 19/20 (95%; 19 malignant lung T) F: 0/50, 0/50, 19/20 (95%; 18 malignant, 1 benign lung T)	+	NR (physiological saline solution with or without Tween 60) Limited histology

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) 78 wk Feron (1972)	0 (only for M), 1 mg/animal, once/wk, 36 wk 35/group	Respiratory tract T/adenomatoid lesions: M–6/27 (22%; 1 tracheal P, 5 pulmonary adenomatoid lesion), 19/29 (66%; 1 tracheal P, 17 SCC, 26 pulmonary adenomatoid lesion, 5 A, 1 AdC, 1 SCC) F–22/27 (81%; 1 laryngeal SCC, 16 tracheal SCC, 2 bronchial A, 1 AdC, 21 pulmonary adenomatoid lesion, 8 A, 1 AdC)	+	> 99% (0.9% saline solution) No female controls; Statistics NR
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) 78 wk Feron *et al.* (1973)	0, 0.0625, 0.125, 0.25, 0.5, 1.0 mg/animal, once/wk, 52 wk 30/group	Respiratory tract T: 0/29, 3/30 (10%; 3 tracheal P, 1 pulmonary A), 4/30 (13%; 1 tracheal P, 4 pulmonary A), 9/30 (30%; 5 tracheal P, 7 pulmonary A), 25/29 (86%; 2 tracheal polyp, 9 P, 5 SCC, 1 AdSC, 1 fibroS, 2 bronchial polyp, 1 P, 2 SCC, 1 AdSC), 26/28 (93%; 6 tracheal P, 11 SCC, 1 AdSC, 1 bronchial polyp, 2 P, 4 SCC, 2 AdSC, 4 AdC, 1 anaplastic C, 16 pulmonary A, 4 SCC, 3 AdSC, 1 AdC, 2 anaplastic C)	+	NR (0.9% saline solution)
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) M, 67–88 wk; F, 60–88 wk Henry *et al.* (1973)	0, 13.3–15.5 mg/animal, once/wk, 8 wk 50/group, 25 controls/group	Respiratory tract T: Controls– 1 tracheal polyp, 6 pulmonary bronchiolar adenomatoid lesions/47 animals Treated animals– 26/65 (40%; 1 nasal polyp; 6 laryngeal polyps, 1 P, 1 A, 1 AdC, 7 tracheal polyps, 1 AdC, 1 SCC, 1 fibroS, 2 bronchial AdC, 13 pulmonary bronchiolar adenomatoid lesion, 3 A, 5 AdC, 1 SCC, 2 anaplastic C, 1 mixed C, 1 myelogenous leukaemia, 1 neurofibroS) T at other sites: Controls– 1 renal A Treated animals– 3 blast-cell leukaemia, 2 adrenocortical A, 1 renal AdC, 1 oesophageal fibroS, 1 haemangioma	+	NR (0.5% gelatine in 0.9% saline solution) Tumour data for M and F combined; statistics NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) 60 wk Kobayashi (1975)	0 and 1 mg/animal, once/wk, 30 wk 20–32 M/group, 20–28 F/group	Respiratory tract T: M–0/20, 11/26 (42.3%; 1 laryngeal polyp, 1 tracheal polyp, 1 P, 1 bronchial SCC, 9 lung A, 7 AdC, 3 SCC, 1 anaplastic C, 2 AdSC) F–0/20, 14/26 (53.8%; 1 laryngeal P, 2 tracheal polyps, 1 bronchial SCC, 10 lung A, 3 AdC, 1 SCC)	+	NR (0.9% saline)
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) 78 wk Kruysse & Feron (1976)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle controls), 1 mg/animal, once/2 wk, 52 wk 17 or 40/group	Respiratory tract T: M–0/40, 0/40, 13/14 (93%; 2 laryngeal P, 1 SCC, 4 tracheal P, 3 SCC, 1 anaplastic C, 1 S, 1 bronchial SCC, 1 AdC, 5 pulmonary A, 1 AdC) F–0/40, 0/40, 7/12 (58%; 2 tracheal P, 3 SCC, 1 bronchial P, 5 pulmonary A)	+	> 99% (saline solution)
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) 100 wk Sellakumar *et al.* (1976)	0 (untreated), 3 mg/animal, once/wk, 10 wk 48/group	Respiratory tract T: 0/48, 7/48 (15%; 2 laryngeal P, 4 tracheal P, 1 lung A) T at other sites: 6/48 (13%; 3 forestomach P, 2 lymphoma, 1 anaplastic C), 26/48 (54%; 21 forestomach P, 1 skin melanoma, 1 liver haemangioma, 1 adrenocorticoA, 3 adrenocorticoC)	+	> 99% (0.9% saline solution)
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) Experiment 1: up to 89 wk for M and 70 wk for F Experiment 2: up to 83 wk for M and 68 wk for F Ketkar *et al.* (1977)	Experiment 1: 0, 4, 8, 16 mg in 0.9% saline solution/animal, 1 × 30/group	Respiratory tract T: Experiment 1– M 0/24, 3/30 (10%; 1 laryngeal P, 1 tracheal P, 1 lung S), 5/28 (18%; 1 laryngeal SCC, 1 tracheal P, 4 lung S), 4/27 (15%; 3 tracheal P, 1 lung A, 1 S) F 0/28, 3/29 (10%; 1 tracheal P, 2 lung A), 1/30 (3%; 1 lung A), 3/28 (13%; 1 laryngeal P, 2 lung A)	+	97% (0.9% saline solution or Tris buffer)
	Experiment 2: 0, 4, 8, 16 mg in Tris buffer/animal, 1 × 30/group	Experiment 2– M 0/27, 5/24 (21%; 1 tracheal P, 5 lung A), 13/25 (52%; 1 laryngeal P, 7 tracheal P, 4 lung A, 3 AdC), 8/27 (30%; 2 laryngeal P, 1 SCC, 3 tracheal P, 3 lung A) F 0/27, 3/27 (11%; 2 tracheal P, 1 lung AdC), 2/29 (7%; 2 tracheal P), 8/29 (28%; 1 laryngeal P, 4 tracheal P, 5 lung A)	+	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) 81 wk Feron & Kruysse (1978)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle controls), 0.35, 0.7 mg/animal, once/wk, 52 wk 15 or 30/group	Respiratory tract T: M–0/30 (untreated and vehicle controls combined), 4/29 (14%; 2 tracheal P, 1 bronchial P, 2 pulmonary A), 19/30 (63%; 1 laryngeal P, 5 tracheal P, 1 SCC, 1 anaplastic C, 1 S, 2 bronchial P, 1 AdC, 11 pulmonary A, 2 AdC, 1 SCC, 1 anaplastic C) F–0/28 (untreated and vehicle controls combined), 3/27 (11%; 1 laryngeal P, 1 bronchial P, 1 pulmonary A), 7/24 (29%; 1 tracheal P, 2 SCC, 1 bronchial AdC, 5 pulmonary A)	+	> 99% (0.9% saline solution) Statistics NR
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) Average survival up to 41 wk for M and 35 wk for F Ketkar *et al.* (1978)	0, 0.1, 0.33, 1.0 mg/animal, once/wk 30/group	Respiratory tract T: M–0/29, 5/26 (19%; 5 bronchiogenic A), 7/29 (24%; 5 tracheal P, 2 bronchiogenic A), 6/27 (22%; 5 tracheal P, 2 bronchiogenic A) F–0/30, 12/30 (40%; 1 tracheal P, 1 SCC, 10 bronchiogenic A), 10/28 (36%; 7 tracheal P, 5 bronchiogenic A, 1 SCC), 6/30 (20%; 3 tracheal P, 3 bronchiogenic A, 3 SCC)	+	97% (10% bovine serum albumin) Average survival time much lower in the high-dose group than in the other groups
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) Lifetime, up to 90 wk Stenbäck & Rowland (1978)	0, 3 mg large particles, 3 mg small particles/animal, once/wk, 18 wk 48 (M + F)/group	Respiratory tract T (M + F combined): 0/46, 31/47 (66%; 5 laryngeal P, 12 tracheal P, 20 SCC, 2 unspecified T, 2 bronchial P, 9 SCC, 3 A, 2 anaplastic C), 5/46 (11%; 1 laryngeal P, 1 SCC, 4 tracheal P)	+	99.4% (0.9% saline solution); particle size by weight: large-98% < 30 µm, 90% < 20 µm, 36% < 10 µm, 10% < 5 µm; small-98% < 10 µm, 79% < 5 µm, 5% < 1 µm
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) Average survival up to 88 wk Ketkar *et al.* (1979)	0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle controls), 0.125, 0.25, 0.5, 1.0 mg/animal, once/wk 30/group	Respiratory tract T: 0/29, 0/28, 9/29 (31%; 2 laryngeal polyps/P, 1 tracheal P, 1 SCC, 2 lung A, 2 SCC, 5 AdC), 24/29 (83%; 1 nasal SCC, 2 laryngeal polyps/P, 4 tracheal P, 9 SCC, 5 lung A, 5 SCC, 11 AdC), 19/29 (66%; 1 laryngeal P, 2 SCC, 5 tracheal P, 11 SCC, 7 lung SCC, 2 AdC), 9/29 (31%; 1 laryngeal P, 1 SCC, 1 tracheal P, 5 SCC, 1 lung A, 4 SCC)	$P < 0.001$, all treated groups	97% (Tris buffer + 0.9% saline solution); particle size: majority < 10 µm but particles up to 80 µm also present Average survival in two highest-dose groups much lower than that in the other groups due to many early deaths from pulmonary lesions other than tumours

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) 105 wk Feron *et al.* (1980)	0 (untreated), 0 (gelatine in 0.9% saline), 0.5, 1.0 mg fine particles, 0.5, 1.0 mg coarse particles, 1.0 mg wide-range particles/animal, once/wk, 52 wk 30–35/group	Respiratory tract T: M–0/29, 2/34 (6%; 2 laryngeal P), 7/34 (21%; 1 laryngeal P, 6 tracheal P, 1 lung A), 6/31 (19%; 2 laryngeal P, 1 tracheal P, 1 S,1 pulmonary A), 13/31 (42%; 2 laryngeal P, 3 tracheal P, 9 pulmonary A), 25/34 (74%; 2 laryngeal P, 9 tracheal P, 4 SCC, 2 S, 1 pulmonary A, 1 AdC), 23/34 (68%; 2 laryngeal P, 1 SCC, 6 tracheal P, 2 SCC, 1 bronchial P, 1 SCC, 13 pulmonary A, 2 AdC, 2 anaplastic C) F–0/28, 2/33 (6%; 1 tracheal P, 1 pulmonary A), 2/34 (6%; 1 bronchial P, 1 A), 5/32 (16%; 1 laryngeal P, 2 tracheal P, 3 pulmonary A), 9/32 (28%; 2 laryngeal P, 5 tracheal P, 6 pulmonary A), 19/32 (31%; 4 tracheal P, 1 SCC, 1 S, 1 bronchial P, 7 pulmonary A, 1 AdC), 11/34 (34%; 1 laryngeal P, 3 tracheal P, 2 bronchial P, 7 pulmonary A, 1 AdC)	+	NR; particles size by weight: fine, 77% < 5.2 µm, 60% < 3.9 µm; coarse, 77% < 42 µm, 3% < 16 µm; wide-range, 72% < 30 µm, 19% < 10 µm (gelatine in 0.9% saline solution) Statistics NR
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) 129 wk Godleski *et al.* (1984)	0 and 5 mg/animal, once/wk, 15 wk 80/group	Malignant T: 4/80 (5%; 1 multicentric undifferentiated lung C, 3 lymphoma), 25/80* (31%; 9 SCC, 2 undifferentiated C of the respiratory tract, 5 lymphoma, 1 SCC, 2 AdC of the gastrointestinal tract, 2 soft-tissue T, 1 hepatoma, 2 mouth SCC, 1 skin C)	*$P < 0.001$	> 99% (0.5% gelatine in 0.9% saline solution)
Intratracheal administration of combinations of benzo[*a*]pyrene and 'particles/fibres'				
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) Up to 130 wk Steinhoff *et al.* (1991)	0, (untreated), 0 (physiological saline), 10–40 mg/kg bw Bayferrox 130 (96.2% cubic α-Fe_2O_3), 10–40 mg/kg bw Bayferrox 920 (86.1% fibrous α-FeOOH), 7 mg/kg bw, 7 mg/kg bw + 10–40 mg/kg bw Bayferrox 130, 7 mg/kg bw + 10–40 mg/kg bw Bayferrox 920, ~once/2 wk, 44–~130 wk 20 or 50/group	Lung T: M–0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 19 malignant T in 20 animals, 21 malignant and 1 benign T in 20 animals, 17 malignant and 1 benign T in 20 animals F–0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 1 malignant and 1 benign T in 50 animals, 18 malignant and 1 benign T in 20 animals, 16 malignant T in 20 animals, 17 malignant and 2 benign T in 20 animals	+	NR (physiological saline solution with or without Tween 60); Bayferrox 130, Bayferrox 920 Limited histology

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) Lifetime (up to 140 wk) Saffiotti *et al.* (1972)	Experiment 1 0, 50 mg ferric oxide, 5 mg + 45 mg ferric oxide, 12.5 mg + 37.5 mg ferric oxide/ animal, 1 × Experiment 2 (2 groups/dose level) 5 mg + 5 mg ferric oxide, 10 mg + 10 mg ferric oxide, 15 mg + 15 mg ferric oxide, once/wk, 15 wk 23–110 M/group, 18–107 F/group	Experiment 1: Respiratory tract T– M 0/45, 0/101, 3/92 (3%; 1 tracheal polyp, 1 P, 1 bronchial A), 3/27 (11%; 1 bronchial A, 1 bronchogenic SCC, 1 anaplastic C) F 0/44, 0/89, 4/97 (4%; 1 tracheal polyp, 1 P, 1 bronchiolar A, 1 AdC), 6/33 (18%; 1 bronchial P, 1 A, 2 bronchogenic SCC, 1 anaplastic C, 2 bronchiolar A) Forestomach P– M 5/45 (11%; 6 T), 5/101 (5%; 5 T), 15/92 (16%; 35 T), 8/27 (30%; 16 T) F 2/44 (5%; 2 T), 2/89 (2%; 3 T), 5/97 (5%; 5 T), 4/33 (12%; 6 T)	+	NR (0.9% saline solution); ferric oxide
		Experiment 2: Respiratory tract T (M + F combined)– 7/50 (14%; 2 tracheal P, 1 SCC, 1 bronchial P, 1 A, 2 SCC, 1 anaplastic C, 1 pulmonary SCC), 8/58 (14%; 2 tracheal polyps, 1 bronchial polyp, 2 SCC, 2 AdC, 2 pulmonary A, 2 AdC), 17/61 (28%; 2 tracheal polyps, 2 P, 5 SCC, 5 bronchial SCC, 1 pulmonary A, 1 SCC, 1 AdC, 1 anaplastic C), 25/60 (42%; 4 tracheal polyps, 3 P, 3 SCC, 4 anaplastic C, 1 bronchial P, 1 SCC, 2 anaplastic C, 4 AdC, 1 A, 2 pulmonary SCC, 2 anaplastic C, 6 A), 25/39 (64%; 1 tracheal P, 10 SCC, 1 anaplastic C, 3 bronchial P, 7 SCC, 11 anaplastic C, 2 AdC, 2 pulmonary SCC, 2 A), 35/55 (64%; 2 laryngeal SCC, 11 tracheal P, 1 polyp, 12 SCC, 1 carcinoS, 2 fibroS, 16 bronchial SCC, 10 anaplastic C, 6 AdC, 3 A, 2 pulmonary A) Forestomach T– M 8/22 (36%; 13 P, 1 SCC), 6/28 (21%; 9 P), 11/34 (32%; 28 P, 1 SCC), 11/30 (37%; 18 P), 5/22 (23%; 10 P), 1/28 (4%; 1 P) F 9/28 (32%; 14 P), 6/30 (20%; 9 P), 5/27 (19%; 20 P), 8/30 (27%; 10 P, 1 SCC), 5/17 (29%; 11 P), 3/27 (11%; 3 P)	+	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Hamster, Syrian golden (F) Presumably lifetime Pott *et al.* (1973b)	340 µg in tricaprylin, 340 µg in Tween 60/saline solution, 340 µg in Tween 60/saline solution + 850 µg atmospheric dust/animal, 45 × within a period of 6.5 mo (total dose, ~15 mg; dust, 38 mg) 48/group	Respiratory tract T (benign and malignant T of the larynx, trachea or bronchi): 2/48 (4%), 14/48 (29%), 16/48 (33%)	+	NR (tricaprylin, Tween 60/saline solution); atmospheric dust from Bochum, Germany (particle size < 5 µm)
Hamster, Syrian (M, F) 100 wk Sellakumar *et al.* (1973)	0 (untreated), 3 mg + 3 mg ferric oxide, 3 mg + 6 mg ferric oxide, 3 mg + 9 mg ferric oxide, once/2 wk, 20 wk 36/group, 193 controls/group	Respiratory tract T (M + F combined): 0/193, 26/67 (39%; 3 laryngeal polyp, 3 P, 3 SCC, 7 tracheal polyp, 6 P, 2 SCC, 2 bronchial polyp, 5 SCC, 9 AdC, 1 anaplasic C, 7 lung A, 1 AdC), 28/64 (44%; 1 laryngeal polyp, 3 P, 6 SCC, 3 tracheal polyp, 9 P, 3 SCC, 3 bronchial polyp, 1 P, 4 SCC, 3 AdC, 1 anaplastic C, 7 lung A, 4 AdC), 26/66 (39%; 3 laryngeal polyp, 6 SCC, 6 tracheal polyp, 11 P, 1 SCC, 1 bronchial polyp, 1 P, 4 SCC, 4 AdC, 2 anaplastic C, 6 lung A, 6 AdC) Forestomach T: M–0/193 (M + F), 17/32 (53%; 37 P), 10/31 (32%; 16 P, 1 SCC), 6/35 (17%; 15 P) F–0/193 (M + F), 10/35 (29%; 30 P), 12/33 (36%; 25 P), 15/31 (48%; 33 P)	+	NR (0.9% saline solution); ferric oxide
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) Lifetime (up to 120 wk) Stenbäck *et al.* (1975)	0 (untreated), 2 mg + 1 mg magnesium oxide/animal, once/wk, 20 wk, 3 mg + 3 mg ferric oxide/animal, once/wk, 15 wk 48 or 90/group	Respiratory tract tumours (M + F combined): 0/89, 32/45 [71%] (11 laryngeal P, 3 SCC, 1 tracheal polyp, 20 P, 5 SCC, 1 AdC, 1 bronchial P, 3 A, 8 AdC, 9 SCC, 1 AdSC), 31/44 (70%; 10 laryngeal P, 4 SCC, 8 tracheal P, 12 SCC, 2 anaplastic C, 2 bronchial P, 4 A, 2 AdC, 17 SCC, 3 anaplastic C)	+	NR (0.2% saline solution); ferric oxide, magnesium oxide

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) Lifetime (up to 100 wk) Stenbäck & Rowland (1979)	0 (untreated), 0 (saline), 0 (gelatine in saline), 3 mg silicon dioxide in saline, 1.5 mg manganese dioxide in saline, 3 mg in saline, 3 mg in gelatine/saline, 3 mg + 3 mg silicon dioxide in saline, 1.5 mg + 1.5 mg manganese dioxide in saline/animal, once/wk, 20 wk 50/group	All T (M + F combined): 2/100 (2%; 2 lymphoma), 1/48 (2%; 2 forestomach P), 2/45 (4%; 2 lymphoma), 0/48 (0%), 2/48 (4%; 1 forestomach P, 1 lymphoma), 18/46 (39%; 1 laryngeal P, 1 SCC, 4 tracheal P, 15 forestomach P), 11/47 (23%; 2 tracheal P, 1 SCC, 3 bronchial SCC, 1 splenic haemangioma, 1 adrenal cortical A, 1 lymphoma, 2 forestomach SCC), 25/48 (52%; 1 laryngeal SCC, 8 tracheal P, 2 SCC, 3 bronchial SCC, 6 lung A, 3 AdC, 10 forestomach P, 1 thyroid A, 1 uterine fibroma, 1 A, 1 lymphoma), 20/48 (42%; 1 laryngeal P, 3 tracheal P, 1 SCC, 1 bronchial SCC, 24 forestomach P, 1 ovarian fibroma, 1 thyroid A, 2 forestomach SCC, 1 squamous-cell fibroma)	+	> 99% (saline, 0.5% gelatine in saline); manganese dioxide, silicon dioxide
Hamster, Syrian golden (M, F) 82 wk Reynders *et al.* (1985)	0 and 8 mg + 6 mg ferric oxide/animal, once/wk, 6 wk 35/group	Respiratory tract T: M–0/32, 12/24 (50%; 15 T: 3 laryngeal P, 1 tracheal P, 1 SCC, 2 bronchial polyp, 2 SCC, 1AdC, 3 pulmonary SCC, 1 AdSC, 1 AdC) F–0/35, 9/26 (35%; 12 T: 1 laryngeal P, 5 tracheal P, 2 bronchial polyp, 2 pulmonary SCC, 1 AdSC, 1 AdC)	+	NR (0.9% saline solution); ferric oxide
Buccal pouch				
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) Up to 40–44 wk with interim kills after 5, 20, and 24–32 wk Solt *et al.* (1987)	Painting of both buccal pouch with 0, 20 mM solution/animal, twice/wk, 20 wk 28/group, 20 controls/group	Forestomach P: 0/6, 8/10* (after 40–44 wk) Buccal pouch SCC: 0/6, 1/10 (after 40–44 wk)	*[$P < 0.01$]	NR (paraffin oil)
Intramammary or intramamillary administration				
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (F) 20 wk Cavalieri *et al.* (1988a)	0 and 0 (untreated contralateral mammary gland), 4 [1 mg], 16 µmol [4.2 mg] (5th right mammary gland), 1 × 20/group	Mammary gland T: [0/20] (0%), [0/20] (0%), [10/20] (50%; 6 AdC, 4 fibroS), [16/20] (80%; 8 AdC, 2 fibroA, 10 fibroS)	+	> 99% (no vehicle)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (F) 45 wk Cavalieri *et al.* (1988a, b)	0 and 4 µmol [1 mg]/mammary gland (2nd, 3rd, 4th and 5th mammary gland on both sides injected), 1 × 20/group	Epithelial mammary T: [3/20] (15%; 3 fibroA), [14/20] (70%; 13 AdC, 3 fibroA); multiplicity: controls, 3/3 [1]; treated rats: AdC, 18/13 [1.4]; fibroA, 4/3 [1.3] Mesenchymal (mammary) T: [0/20] (0%), [11/20] (55%; 11 fibroS; multiplicity, 20/11 [1.8]) Skin T: [0/20] (0%), [9/20] (45%; 9 SCC; multiplicity, 11/9 [1.2])	+	> 99% (trioctanoin)
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (F) 24 wk Cavalieri *et al.* (1991)	0, 0.25 [66 µg], 1 µmol [264 µg]/mammary gland (the 2nd, 3rd, 4th and 5th on both sides), 1 × 20/group	Epithelial mammary gland T: 1/18 (6%; 1 fibroA), 1/20 (5%; 1 AdC), 0/20 (0%) Mesenchymal (mammary) T: 0/18 (0%), 6/20 (30%; 6 fibroS; multiplicity, 7/6), 8/20 (40%; 8 fibroS; multiplicity, 10/8) Skin T: 0/18 (0%), 0/20 (0%), 1/20 (5%; 1 SCC)	+	> 99% (trioctanoin) Statistics NR
Intracolonic instillation				
Mouse, Swiss albino (M, F) 120 wk Toth (1980)	0, 200, 2000 µg/g bw (total doses); control and high-dose group, 10 × / wk instillations of 0 and 200 µg, respectively; low-dose group, 1 instillation 50/group/sex	Malignant lymphoma: M–0/50, 6/50* (12%; 1 histiocytic, 4 lymphocytic, 1 mixed), 7/50** (14%; 2 histiocytic, 3 lymphocytic, 2 mixed) F–11/49 (22%; 5 histiocytic, 6 lymphocytic), 21/50*** (42%; 5 histiocytic, 16 lymphocytic), 18/49 (36%; 6 histiocytic, 8 lymphocytic, 4 mixed) Oesophagus T: M–no tumour F–0/49, 0/50, 5/49 (10%) Forestomach T: M–0/50, 2/50 (4%; 2 P), 10/50**** (20%; 9 P, 1 SCC) F–1/49 (2%; 1 SCC), 5/10 (20%; 3 P, 2 SCC), 11/49**** (22%; 9 P, 2 SCC)	*$P < 0.04$ **$P < 0.02$ ***$P < 0.053$ ****$P < 0.006$ *****$P < 0.0001$	98% (olive oil) Anal and skin tumours probably due to release of benzo[*a*]pyrene through the anal orifice

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Result or significance	Purity (vehicle) Comments
Toth (1980) Contd.		Anal T : M–0/50, 0/50, 7/50** (14%; 4 P, 3 SCC) F–0/49, 1/50 (2%; 1 P), 6/49* (12%; 1 P, 4 SCC, 1 K) Skin T : M–1/50 (2%; 1 K), 0/50, 13/50***** (26%; 5 P, 7 SCC, 1 K) F–0/49, 2/50 (4%; 2 SCC), 11/49**** (22%; 4 P, 5 SCC, 2 K)		
Mouse, C57Bl/6 (F) 18 mo Anderson *et al.* (1983)	0 (untreated, olive oil or β-naphthoflavone in olive oil), 1 mg/animal (in olive oil), once/wk, 14 wk 45–60/group	Forestomach P: 7/34 (21%; multiplicity, 1.1 ± 0.4), 17/18* (94%; multiplicity, 3.2 ± 2.3*) Peritoneal S: 0/40, 5/32* Lymphoma: 1/40 (2.5%), 9/32* (28%)	*$P < 0.05$	99% (olive oil, enzyme inducer β-naphthoflavone) No colon tumours found
Intravaginal application				
Mouse, C57B1 (F) 5 mo Näslund *et al.* (1987)	Cotton swab soaked in acetone (controls) or 1% solution of benzo[*a*]pyrene in acetone, twice/wk 10 or 76/group	0/10, 17/76 (22%; invasive cervical C)	+	NR (acetone)
Intrafetal injection				
Mouse, Swiss (M, F) 12 wk Rossi *et al.* (1983)	0, 0.4, 4.0, 9.9, 19.8 nmol [0, 0.1, 1, 2.6, 5.2 µg]/animal, 1 × 43–56/group	Lung A (M + F combined): 0/37, 1/39 (3%), 10/42 (25%), 10/38 (26%), 12/31 (39%)	+	> 99% (trioctanoin-acetone mixture (1:1))

A, adenoma; AdC, adenocarcinoma; AdSC, adenosquamous carcinoma; bw, body weight; C, carcinoma; d, day or days; DMSO, dimethyl sulfoxide; F, female; H, hepatoma; K, keratocanthoma; M, male; min, minute or minutes; mo, month or months; NH_4OH, ammonium hydroxide; NR, not reported; P, papilloma; PND, postnatal day; S, sarcoma; SCC, squamous-cell carcinoma; SGA, sebaceous gland adenoma; T, tumour; *vs*, versus; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

Table 3.2 Summary of reports of malignant tumours clearly induced in experimental animals by benzo[*a*]pyrene

Organ site/ species	Lung	Trachea	Larynx	Forestomach	Liver	Lymphoid tissue (lymphoma)	Sarcoma (injection site)	Skin	Mammary gland
Mouse	x			x	x	x	x	x	
Rat	x						x		x
Hamster	x	x	x	x			x		

3.4 Intraperitoneal injection

In a series of studies in newborn and adult mice, intraperitoneal injection of benzo[*a*]pyrene increased the incidence of liver (adenomas and carcinomas) and lung (adenomas and adenocarcinomas) tumours and, occasionally, forestomach (squamous cell papillomas and carcinomas) and lymphoreticular tumours (Vesselinovitch *et al.*, 1975a, b; Wislocki *et al.*, 1986; Lavoie *et al.*, 1987; Busby *et al.*, 1989; Rippe & Pott, 1989; Mass *et al.*, 1993; Nesnow *et al.*, 1995; Ross *et al.*, 1995; Weyand *et al.*, 1995; Rodriguez *et al.*, 1997; Von Tungeln *et al.*, 1999).

In one study in rats with a single intraperitoneal injection of benzo[*a*]pyrene, a high incidence of abdominal mesotheliomas and sarcomas was observed (Roller *et al.*, 1992).

3.5 Inhalation

In a lifetime inhalation study (Thyssen *et al.*, 1981) in male hamsters, benzo[*a*]pyrene induced dose-related increases in the incidence of papillomas and squamous-cell carcinomas in both the upper respiratory tract (nose, larynx and trachea) and the upper digestive tract (pharynx, oesophagus and forestomach).

3.6 Intrapulmonary injection

Dose-related increases in the incidence of malignant lung tumours (mainly epidermoid and squamous-cell carcinomas and a few pleomorphic sarcomas) were found after injection of benzo[*a*]pyrene into the lung of rats (Deutsch-Wenzel *et al.*, 1983; Iwagawa *et al.*, 1989; Wenzel-Hartung *et al.*, 1990; Horikawa *et al.*, 1991).

3.7 Intratracheal administration

Intratracheal administration of benzo[*a*]pyrene alone or mixed with particulates and suspended in saline with or without suspendents resulted in benign and malignant respiratory tumours in mice (Heinrich *et al.*, 1986a), rats (Pott *et al.*, 1987; Steinhoff *et al.*, 1991) and in numerous studies in hamsters (IARC, 2010). This treatment also induced forestomach tumours in hamsters (Saffiotti *et al.*, 1972; Sellakumar *et al.*, 1973; Smith *et al.*, 1975a, b, Stenbäck & Rowland, 1979). Larger benzo[*a*]pyrene particles were generally more effective than smaller ones.

Mice that lack the nucleotide excision-repair gene *XPA* (*XPA*$^{-/-}$ mice) showed a stronger lung-tumour response after intratracheal instillation of benzo[*a*]pyrene than did their similarly treated *XPA*$^{+/+}$ and *XPA*$^{+/-}$ counterparts (Ide *et al.*, 2000).

3.8 Buccal pouch application

Repeated application of benzo[*a*]pyrene to the buccal pouch mucosa of male hamsters resulted in a high incidence of forestomach papillomas (Solt *et al.*, 1987).

3.9 Subcutaneous tracheal grafts transplantation

In one study conducted in rats transplanted with subcutaneous rat tracheal grafts exposed to beeswax pellets containing various amounts of benzo[*a*]pyrene, a high incidence of squamous-cell carcinomas was reported (Nettesheim *et al.*, 1977).

3.10 Intramammilary administration

In three studies in rats, benign and malignant mammary gland tumours developed after intrammilary injection of benzo[*a*]pyrene (Cavalieri *et al.*, 1988a, b, 1991).

3.11 Intracolonic instillation

In three experiments in mice, intracolonic instillation of benzo[*a*]pyrene induced lymphomas and a variety of benign and malignant tumours in various organs including the forestomach (Toth, 1980; Anderson *et al.*, 1983).

3.12 Intravaginal application

Intravaginal application of benzo[*a*]pyrene in mice produced invasive cervical carcinoma; no such tumours were seen in controls (Näslund *et al.*, 1987).

3.13 Intrafetal injection

In one study in male and female Swiss mice, intrafetal injection of benzo[*a*]pyrene produced lung adenomas (Rossi *et al.*, 1983).

4. Other Relevant Data

Benzo[*a*]pyrene is a carcinogen that induces tumours in many animal species. Some of the examples relevant for this review are: lung tumours in mice, rats, and hamsters; skin tumours in mice; liver tumours in mice; forestomach tumours in mice and hamsters; and mammary gland tumours in rats (Osborne & Crosby, 1987; IARC, 2010). In humans, occupational exposures to benzo[*a*]pyrene-containing mixtures have been associated with a series of cancers: coke production: lung; coal gasification: lung, bladder; paving and roofing: lung; coal tar distillation: skin; soots: lung, oesophagus, haematolymphatic system, skin; aluminum smelting: lung, bladder; tobacco smoking: lung, lip, oral cavity, pharynx, oesophagus, larynx, bladder (IARC, 1984, 1985, 1986, 2010).

Studies on the mechanisms of action of benzo[*a*]pyrene have been reviewed (Xue & Warshawsky, 2005; IARC, 2010).

4.1 Metabolism

Benzo[*a*]pyrene is metabolized by both phase-I and phase-II enzymes to form a series of arene oxides, dihydrodiols, phenols, and quinones and their polar conjugates with glutathione, sulfate, and glucuronide (Osborne & Crosby, 1987). Benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol is a key metabolite that is formed by the action of epoxide hydrolase on benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-epoxide. This dihydrodiol can be further metabolized by cytochrome P450s (CYPs) to a series of benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxides, which form one class of ultimate carcinogenic metabolites of benzo[*a*]pyrene.

Both CYPs and peroxidases (e.g. prostaglandin-H synthase) can oxidize benzo[*a*]pyrene. The major cytochrome P450s involved in the formation of diols and diolepoxides are CYP1A1, CYP1A2 and CYP1B1 (Eling *et al.*, 1986; Shimada, 2006). Cytochrome P450s are inducible by benzo[*a*]pyrene and other PAHs through binding to the aryl hydrocarbon-receptor (AhR) nuclear complex, leading to changes in gene transcription of CYPs and phase-II enzymes. Mice lacking the AhR receptor are refractory to benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced tumorigenesis (Shimizu *et al.*, 2000). Both CYPs and peroxidases can form radical cations by one-electron oxidation. These cations comprise another class of ultimate carcinogenic metabolites (Cavalieri & Rogan, 1995). Some polymorphisms in human CYPs and phase-II enzymes (glutathione *S*-transferases, uridine 5′-diphosphate glucuronosyltransferases and sulfotransferases modulate susceptibility to cancer (Shimada, 2006). In another metabolic pathway, benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-dihydrodiol is oxidized to benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-quinone by enzymes of the aldo-keto reductase (AKR1) family. Among these, gene polymorphisms that influence susceptibility have been identified. NAD(P)H: quinone oxidoreductase-1 (NQO1) catalyses the reduction of benzo[*a*]pyrene quinones to hydroquinones, which may be re-oxidized and generate reactive oxygen species. Polymorphisms in this gene have also been described (Penning & Drury, 2007; IARC, 2010).

The current understanding of mechanisms underlying benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced carcinogenesis in experimental animals is almost solely based on two complementary pathways: those of the diolepoxides and the radical cations. Each provides a different explanation for the effects observed in experimental animals in specific tissues.

4.2 Diolepoxide mechanism

The diolepoxide mechanism for benzo[*a*]pyrene features a sequence of metabolic transformations: benzo[*a*]pyrene → benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-oxide (by CYP1A1 and CYP1B1) → benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol (by epoxide hydrolase) → benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxides (by CYP1A1 and CYP1B1) (Xue & Warshawsky, 2005). Each class of metabolic intermediate has been shown to be genotoxic and carcinogenic (Osborne & Crosby, 1987). The stereochemistry of the metabolic transformation of benzo[*a*]pyrene to diols and diolepoxides is an important component of this mechanism of action. Due to the creation of chiral carbons during the metabolic conversions, many of the metabolic intermediates of benzo[*a*]pyrene have multiple streochemical forms (enantiomeric and diastereomeric). As the metabolism proceeds the complexity of the stereo-chemical forms increases, eventually leading to four benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxides [(+)- and (-)-*anti*, (+)- and (-)-*syn*]. Diolepoxides react with DNA, mainly with the purines, deoxyguanosine and deoxyadenosine, and each diolepoxide can form both *cis* and *trans* adducts thus giving a total of 16 possible benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide DNA adducts. However, in most cases far fewer DNA adducts are actually observed. The most ubiquitous benzo[*a*]pyrene adduct detected in isolated mammalian DNA after metabolic conversion in metabolically competent mammalian cells in culture, or in mammals, is the N^2-deoxyguanosine adduct, (+)-N^2-10*S*-(7*R*,8*S*,9*R*-trihydroxy-7,8,9,10-tetrahydrobenzo[*a*]pyrene)-yl)-2'-deoxyguanosine (BPDE-deoxyguanosine), derived from 7*R*,8*S*-dihydroxy-9*R*,10*R*-epoxy-7,8,9,10-tetrahydrobenzo[*a*]pyrene (*anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide, or BPDE). This adduct was first fully identified after isolation from benzo[*a*]pyrene-treated human and bovine bronchial explants (Jeffrey *et al.*, 1977). This diolepoxide is considered to be an ultimate, DNA-reactive,

metabolite of benzo[*a*]pyrene (Osborne & Crosby, 1987). The *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide can form both stable and unstable (so-called 'depurinating') adducts with DNA, mediated by electrophilic carbonium ions (Chakravarti *et al.*, 2008). *In vivo*, *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide produces stable adducts that were formed primarily with guanines in many species and organs (IARC, 2010).

Mice treated with benzo[*a*]pyrene had *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide-N^2-deoxyguanosine adducts in their lung tissue, while the lung tumours induced by benzo[*a*]pyrene had G→T and G→A mutations in the K_i-*Ras* gene at codon 12 (Mass *et al.*, 1993). In mice treated with benzo[*a*]pyrene the major stable DNA adduct in the epidermis was the *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-deoxyguanosine adduct (Melendez-Colon *et al.*, 1999). Skin tumours from benzo[*a*]pyrene-treated mice or in preneoplastic skin from benzo[*a*]pyrene-treated mice had G→T mutations in codon 13 and A→T mutations in codon 61 of the Ha-*Ras* gene (Chakravarti *et al.*, 2008).

Benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced skin tumours harboured G→T transversion mutations in the *Tp53* tumour-suppressor gene (Ruggeri *et al.*, 1993). The *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts occurred at guanine positions in codons 157, 248, and 273 of the *TP53* gene in *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide-treated human HeLa cells. The same positions are the major mutational hotspots found in human lung cancers (Denissenko *et al.*, 1996).

4.3 Radical-cation mechanism

The radical-cation mechanism for benzo[*a*]pyrene has been studied exclusively in connection with mouse-skin tumorigenesis (Cavalieri & Rogan, 1995). One-electron oxidation of benzo[*a*]pyrene by CYPs or peroxidases creates a radical cation localized on carbon 6, as a consequence of the ionization potential and geometric configuration. In mouse skin, this radical cation gives rise to the formation of covalent adducts with guanine (at the C8 carbon and N7 nitrogen) and adenine (at the N7 nitrogen). These adducts are unstable and are thought to generate apurinic sites in mouse skin. However, only low levels of apurinic sites were measured in the epidermis of mice treated with benzo[*a*]pyrene (Melendez-Colon *et al.*, 1999) and no studies to date have shown an increase in the number of apurinic sites in lung tissues treated with benzo[*a*]pyrene. In two *in vivo* studies, rats treated intraperitoneally with benzo[*a*]pyrene were shown to excrete 7-(benzo[*a*]pyrene-6-yl)-*N7*-guanine in faeces and urine, while the same adduct was detected in lung tissue of mice treated intraperitoneally with benzo[*a*]pyrene (Rogan *et al.*, 1990; Banasiewicz *et al.*, 2004). Skin papillomas obtained from mice treated topically with benzo[*a*]pyrene showed mutations (at guanine and/or adenine) at codons 12, 13 and 61 in the Ha-*Ras* oncogene (Wei *et al.*, 1999). Similar studies in preneoplastic skin from benzo[*a*]pyrene-treated mice showed Ha-*Ras* mutations at codons 13 and 61 (Chakravarti *et al.*, 2008). The *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide can also form depurinating DNA adducts at guanine and adenine (at the N7 nitrogen). The distribution and chemical nature of the depurinating adducts (from both radical-cation and diolepoxide intermediates) in mouse skin and the distribution and chemical nature of the specific benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced mutations in mouse-skin papillomas have been reported (Chakravarti *et al.*, 2008).

4.4 Other activation mechanisms of benzo[*a*]pyrene

4.4.1 Meso-region mechanism

The mechanism of meso-region biomethylation and benzylic oxidation features biomethylation of benzo[*a*]pyrene to 6-methylbenzo[*a*]

pyrene, with *S*-adenosylmethione as the carbon donor (Flesher *et al.*, 1982). This process has been shown to occur *in vitro*, and *in vivo* in rat liver (Stansbury *et al.*, 1994). 6-Methylbenzo[*a*]pyrene is further metabolized by CYPs to 6-hydroxymethylbenzo[*a*]pyrene (Flesher *et al.*, 1997) and then conjugated to sulfate by 3′-phosphoadenosine-5′-phosphosulfate sulfotransferase to 6-[(sulfooxy)methyl]-benzo[*a*]pyrene. This reactive sulfate ester forms DNA adducts *in vivo* (Stansbury *et al.*, 1994). These benzo[*a*]pyrene-DNA adducts have only been measured in rat liver (Surh *et al.*, 1989), which is not a target for benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced carcinogenesis. There is no evidence to date that this mechanism operates in lung.

4.4.2 Mechanism via formation of ortho-quinone/ reactive oxygen species

This mechanism features enzymatic oxidation of benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol to the *ortho*-quinone, benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-quinone, by aldo-keto reductases (Mangal *et al.*, 2009). Benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-quinone can react with DNA to yield both stable and depurinating DNA adducts *in vitro* (McCoull *et al.*, 1999; Balu *et al.*, 2006) and can also undergo repetitive redox cycling which generates reactive oxygen species that damage DNA (Penning *et al.*, 1999). In human A549 lung-tumour cells benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-quinone increased the formation of 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine and DNA strand-breaks (Park *et al.*, 2008; Mangal *et al.*, 2009). In a yeast reporter-assay, benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-quinone (in the presence of redox cycling) induced 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine formation and G→T transversions in the *Tp53* tumour-suppressor gene. The mutational spectra induced in the yeast reporter-assay closely matched those seen in DNA from human lung tumours (Shen *et al.*, 2006). Benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-quinone inhibited the activity of protein kinase C in MCF-7 cell lysates suggesting an ability to alter cell signalling (Yu *et al.*, 2002). Rats treated with benzo[*a*]pyrene showed increased urinary concentrations of 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine, but lower levels in liver and lung tissues. This suggested that reactive oxygen species are generated during the CYP-dependent metabolism of benzo[*a*]pyrene, but induction of DNA-repair mechanisms may reduce these levels in target tissues (Briedé *et al.*, 2004). To date this mechanism has been studied only in in-vitro systems.

It is noted that formation of reactive oxygen species is not limited to the redox cycling of the *ortho*-quinone of benzo[*a*]pyrene (benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-quinone). There are several other sources of benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced reactive oxygen species. *In vivo*, both mice and rats metabolize benzo[*a*]pyrene to benzo[*a*]pyrene-1,6-quinone, benzo[*a*]pyrene-3,6-quinone and benzo[*a*]pyrene-6,12-quinone and these quinones enter into redox cycling and induce mutations (Osborne & Crosby, 1987; Joseph & Jaiswal, 1998). Many of the reactive intermediates of benzo[*a*]pyrene (oxides, diol-epoxides, radical cations) and quinone-generated reactive oxygen species can disrupt the balance of cellular oxidants and anti-oxidants by reducing the anti-oxidant levels thus leading to an imbalance and an excess of reactive oxygen species.

4.4.3 Aryl hydrocarbon-receptor mechanism

The AhR regulates the transcription of a series of genes including *Cyp1A1*, *Cyp1A2*, *Nqo1*, *Aldh3a1* (encoding aldehyde dehydrogenase 3A1), *UGT1a6* (uridine 5′-diphosphate-glucuronosyl transferase), and *Gsta1* (glutathione *S*-transferase A1). All these genes are activated by AhR-ligands, including benzo[*a*]pyrene, via the AhR-mediated aromatic hydrocarbon response element. The AhR plays a role in the response to oxidative stress in cell-cycle regulation and apoptosis. In addition, the CYP1A1/1A2-mediated metabolism generates oxidative stress (Nebert *et al.*, 2000). Mitochondrial hydrogen-peroxide production was induced by an AhR-ligand in

wild-type mice but not in *AhR*$^{-/-}$ knockout mice (Senft *et al.*, 2002). These mice were shown to be refractory to benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced carcinogenicity (Shimizu *et al.*, 2000). Benzo[*a*]pyrene induced oxidative stress in mouse lung (Rajendran *et al.*, 2008).

4.4.4 Immunosuppression mechanism

Benzo[*a*]pyrene induces immunosupression in adult mice by altering the cell-mediated responses (Wojdani & Alfred, 1984). Immune development in offspring is also altered following *in utero* exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene (Urso & Gengozian, 1984). It is postulated that PAHs, including benzo[*a*]pyrene, act principally through their AhR-mediated CYP-derived metabolites (diolepoxides, quinones) to activate oxidative and electrophilic signalling pathways in lymphoid and nonlymphoid cells, including myeloid cells, epithelial cells, and other cell types. Furthermore, there is evidence that PAHs suppress immunity by p53-dependent pathways, by modulating signalling pathways in lymphocytes via non-genotoxic mechanisms, and by oxidative stress (Burchiel & Luster, 2001).

4.4.5 Epigenetic mechanisms

Benzo[*a*]pyrene and/or its metabolites have been shown to increase cell proliferation in several human cell lines, including terminally differentiated human bronchial squamous epithelial cells and in lung-cancer cells where increased expression of the *Cdc25B* gene (cell-division cycle 25B) was observed, along with reduced phosphorylation of Cdk1 (cyclin-dependent kinase 1) (Oguri *et al.*, 2003). Treatment with benzo[*a*]pyrene increased the number of human embryo lung-fibroblasts in the G1–S transition via the activation of c-Jun, through the p53-dependent PI-3K/Akt/ERK (phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase/protein kinase β/extracellular signal-regulated kinase) pathway (Jiao *et al.*, 2008).

Benzo[*a*]pyrene and/or its metabolites also affect apoptosis. Benzo[*a*]pyrene induced apoptosis in human MRC-5 lung fibroblasts via the JNK1/FasL (c-Jun N-terminal kinase 1/Fas Ligand) and JNK1/p53 signalling pathways (Chen *et al.*, 2005). Apoptosis induced by *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide in H460 human lung-cancer cells was associated with induction of Bak (BCL2-antagonist/killer) and with activation of caspase, but it was independent of Bcl-2 (Xiao *et al.*, 2007).

Altered DNA methylation has been reported to be associated with exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene and/or its metabolites. After treatment of immortalized bronchial epithelial cells with *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide, the concentration of cytosine-DNA methyltransferase-1 was increased and was associated with hypermethylation of the promoters of 5–10 genes, including members of the cadherin gene-family (Damiani *et al.*, 2008).

4.5 Human exposure to PAH-rich mixtures

4.5.1 Biomarkers of exposure and effect

Molecular-epidemiological studies of cancer associated with occupational and environmental exposures to PAH have provided biomarkers that may be used to estimate internal exposure as well as to inform about molecular mechanisms that may be relevant to cancer causation, particularly in defining the early events in the carcinogenesis process. Biomarkers can be detected in the target organ, in surrogate tissues, or in tumours. These can be categorized into *biomarkers of exposure*, which are generally specific to the PAH of concern (e.g. DNA or protein adducts), *biomarkers of effect* (e.g. genotoxic and cytogenetic effects, 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine, sister chromatid exchange (SCE), micronuclei, chromosomal aberrations, mutations in oncogenes, tumour-suppressor genes, or indicator genes),

and *biomarkers of susceptibility* (DNA-repair enzymes, e.g. XPA, XPC – *xeroderma pigmentosum* complementation groups A and C), bioactivation enzymes (e.g. CYPs), detoxification enzymes (e.g. GSTs), and mutagenic metabolites in urine (Kalina *et al.*, 1998; Pilger *et al.*, 2000; Simioli *et al.*, 2004; Raimondi *et al.*, 2005; Vineis & Husgafvel-Pursiainen, 2005; Matullo *et al.*, 2006; Farmer & Singh, 2008; Gyorffy *et al.*, 2008). Although biomarkers of effect and susceptibility are generally not unique to any specific PAH exposure, several these biomarkers may provide insight into the mechanism of carcinogenesis induced in humans by PAHs or PAH-rich exposures.

4.5.2 Exposure to benzo[a]pyrene and relationship with specific biomarkers

Biomarkers of exposure to complex mixtures that contain benzo[*a*]pyrene have been studied in populations exposed in industrial settings: coke production, coal-tar distillation, the aluminium industry, roofing and paving with coal-tar pitch, coal gasification, chimney sweeping, and iron and steel founding. Most if not all of these biomarkers are genotoxic markers. Populations of patients who undergo coal-tar therapy and groups exposed to combustion emissions, and tobacco smokers have also been evaluated. Studies on biomarkers of exposure are dominated by those focusing on the *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adduct, the most commonly studied PAH-DNA adduct because of the availability of specific analytical methods and standards (Gyorffy *et al.*, 2008). In one study the depurinating adducts resulting from radical-cation formation, *viz.* 7-(benzo[*a*]pyrene-6-yl) guanine and 7-(benzo[*a*]pyrene-6-yl)adenine were found in the urine of women exposed to coal smoke (Casale *et al.*, 2001). Concomitantly, several biomarkers of effect have also been evaluated in these studies: chromosomal aberrations, sister chromatid exchange (Kalina *et al.*, 1998), DNA damage (measured by the comet assay) and 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine formation (Marczynski *et al.*, 2002). It is important to note that these genotoxic effects observed in humans in relation to exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene-containing mixtures have also been observed in experimental studies where benzo[*a*]pyrene or *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide has been shown to induce sister chromatid exchange (Pal *et al.*, 1980; Brauze *et al.*, 1997), chromosomal aberrations, micronuclei (Kliesch *et al.*, 1982), DNA damage (Nesnow *et al.*, 2002), and 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine (Thaiparambil *et al.*, 2007). Tobacco smoke, dietary habits and indoor ambient air are also important sources of exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene, which has been implicated as one of the components of tobacco smoke related to the induction of lung cancer in smokers (Watanabe *et al.*, 2009). In a large study of 585 smokers and nonsmokers, smoking and diet were highly correlated with *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adduct levels (Pavanello *et al.*, 2006). Several studies have demonstrated moderately increased levels of 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine from lungs, sperm, and leukocytes of smokers. Increased urinary excretion of 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine has also been reported (Hecht, 1999). In rats exposed to benzo[*a*]pyrene via oral, intratracheal and dermal routes, *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts were formed in white blood cells independently of the exposure route and their numbers correlated with those found in lung DNA, suggesting that *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA-adduct levels in white blood cells may be used as a surrogate for pulmonary *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts (Godschalk *et al.*, 2000).

4.5.3 Relationship of biomarkers to human cancer

Mutations in *TP53* are common in lung cancers from smokers and less common in nonsmokers. These mutations are G→T transversions with hotspots in codons 157, 248 and 273 (Hainaut & Pfeifer, 2001; Pfeifer *et al.*, 2002) and they are associated with *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts. The active metabolite *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide causes a unique spectrum of *TP53* mutations distinct from those found in cancers that are not associated with smoking (Campling & el-Deiry, 2003). Similar G→T mutations have been reported in lung tumours from nonsmoking Chinese women whose tumours were associated with exposure to PAHs from smoke generated by burning smoky coal in unventilated homes. The mutations were clustered at the CpG rich codons 153–158 of the *TP53* gene, and at codons 249 and 273. The mutation spectrum was fully consistent with exposure to PAHs (DeMarini *et al.*, 2001).

4.6 Synthesis

Benzo[*a*]pyrene is metabolically activated to a series of reactive intermediates by CYP450 and related enzymes under control of the aryl-hydrocarbon receptor. There is strong evidence that the benzo[*a*]pyrene diolepoxide mechanism operates in mouse-lung tumorigenesis, while there is also strong evidence that both the radical-cation and the diolepoxide mechanisms are involved in mouse-skin carcinogenesis. The meso-region mechanism has been studied only in rat liver, while the mechanism that involves the formation of *ortho*-quinone/reactive oxygen species has only been studied *in vitro*, although reactive oxygen species can be formed *in vivo* by other benzo[*a*]pyrene-mediated mechanisms. All these pathways reflect genotoxic mechanisms, as they involve alterations to DNA. Benzo[*a*]pyrene is pleotropic and has the ability to affect many cell- and organ-based systems. Therefore, there are probably many modes of carcinogenic action operating to different extents *in vivo*. These include mechanisms that involve AhR, oxidative stress, immunotoxicity and epigenetic events.

Based on the best available, consistent and strong experimental and human mechanistic evidence it is concluded that benzo[*a*]pyrene contributes to the genotoxic and carcinogenic effects resulting from occupational exposure to complex PAH mixtures that contain benzo[*a*]pyrene. The most commonly encountered – and most widely studied – mechanistically relevant DNA lesion is the *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adduct. The formation of this adduct is consistent with *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide-associated genotoxic effects in surrogate tissues and with the mutation pattern in the *TP53* gene in lung tumours from humans exposed to PAH mixtures that contain benzo[*a*]pyrene. The fact that those PAH mixtures and benzo[*a*]pyrene itself induce genotoxic effects like sister chromatid exchange, chromosomal aberrations, micronuclei, DNA damage (comet assay) and 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine, supports the notion that benzo[*a*]pyrene contributes to human cancer.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of benzo[*a*]pyrene in experimental animals.

[No epidemiological data on benzo[*a*]pyrene alone were available to the Working Group.]

The genotoxic mechanism of action of benzo[*a*]pyrene involves metabolism to highly reactive species that form covalent adducts to DNA. These anti-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts induce mutations in the K-*RAS* oncogene and the *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene in human lung tumours, and

in corresponding genes in mouse-lung tumours. Exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene and benzo[*a*]pyrene-containing complex mixtures also induce other genotoxic effects, including sister chromatid exchange, micronuclei, DNA damage and 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine, all of which can contribute to the carcinogenic effects of benzo[*a*]pyrene and benzo[*a*]pyrene-containing complex mixtures in exposed humans.

Benzo[*a*]pyrene is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

In making the overall evaluation, the Working Group took the following into consideration:

The strong and extensive experimental evidence for the carcinogenicity of benzo[*a*]pyrene in many animal species, supported by the consistent and coherent mechanistic evidence from experimental and human studies provide biological plausibility to support the overall classification of benzo[*a*]pyrene as a human carcinogen (Group 1).

References

Albert RE, Miller ML, Cody T *et al.* (1991). Benzo[a]pyrene-induced skin damage and tumor promotion in the mouse. *Carcinogenesis*, 12: 1273–1280. doi:10.1093/carcin/12.7.1273 PMID:2070493

Anderson LM, Priest LJ, Deschner EE, Budinger JM (1983). Carcinogenic effects of intracolonic benzo[a]pyrene in β-naphthoflavone-induced mice. *Cancer Letters*, 20: 117–123. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(83)90039-3 PMID:6321017

Andrews J, Halliday GM, Muller HK (1991). A role for prostaglandins in the suppression of cutaneous cellular immunity and tumour development in benzo[a]pyrene- but not dimethylbenz(a)anthracene-treated mice. *Clin Exp Immunol*, 85: 9–13. PMID:1906386

Badary OA, Al-Shabanah OA, Nagi MN *et al.* (1999). Inhibition of benzo[a]pyrene-induced forestomach carcinogenesis in mice by thymoquinone. *European Journal of Cancer Prevention*, 8: 435–440. doi:10.1097/00008469-199910000-00009 PMID:10548399

Balansky R, Ganchev G, Iltcheva M *et al.* (2007). Potent carcinogenicity of cigarette smoke in mice exposed early in life. *Carcinogenesis*, 28: 2236–2243. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgm122 PMID:17522065

Balu N, Padgett WT, Nelson GB *et al.* (2006). Benzo[a]pyrene-7,8-quinone-3′-mononucleotide adduct standards for 32P postlabeling analyses: detection of benzo[a]pyrene-7,8-quinone-calf thymus DNA adducts. *Anal Biochem*, 355: 213–223. doi:10.1016/j.ab.2006.05.023 PMID:16797471

Banasiewicz M, Nelson G, Swank A *et al.* (2004). Identification and quantitation of benzo[a]pyrene-derived DNA adducts formed at low adduction level in mice lung tissue. *Anal Biochem*, 334: 390–400. doi:10.1016/j.ab.2004.08.006 PMID:15494147

Brauze D, Wielgosz SM, Pawlak AL, Baer-Dubowska W (1997). Effect of the route of benzo[a]pyrene administration on sister chromatid exchange and DNA binding in bone marrow of mice differing with respect to cytochrome P450 1A1 induction. *Toxicol Lett*, 91: 211–217. doi:10.1016/S0378-4274(97)00024-6 PMID:9217241

Briedé JJ, Godschalk RW, Emans MT *et al.* (2004). In vitro and in vivo studies on oxygen free radical and DNA adduct formation in rat lung and liver during benzo[a]pyrene metabolism. *Free Radic Res*, 38: 995–1002. doi:10.1080/10715760400000976 PMID:15621718

Burchiel SW & Luster MI (2001). Signalling by environmental polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in human lymphocytes. *Clin Immunol*, 98: 2–10. doi:10.1006/clim.2000.4934 PMID:11141320

Busby WF Jr, Stevens EK, Martin CN *et al.* (1989). Comparative lung tumorigenicity of parent and mononitro-polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons in the BLU:Ha newborn mouse assay. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*, 99: 555–563. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(89)90162-2 PMID:2749740

Campling BG & el-Deiry WS (2003). Clinical implications of p53 mutations in lung cancer. *Methods Mol Med*, 75: 53–77. PMID:12407735

Casale GP, Singhal M, Bhattacharya S *et al.* (2001). Detection and quantification of depurinated benzo[a]pyrene-adducted DNA bases in the urine of cigarette smokers and women exposed to household coal smoke. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 14: 192–201. doi:10.1021/tx000012y PMID:11258968

Cavalieri E, Mailander P, Pelfrene A (1977). Carcinogenic activity of anthanthrene on mouse skin. *Zeitschrift fur Krebsforschung*, 89: 113–118. PMID:143140 doi:10.1007/BF00308512

Cavalieri E, Rogan E, Cremonesi P *et al.* (1988a). Tumorigenicity of 6-halogenated derivatives of benzo[a]pyrene in mouse skin and rat mammary gland. *Journal of Cancer Research and Clinical Oncology*, 114: 10–15. doi:10.1007/BF00390479 PMID:3350835

Cavalieri E, Rogan E, Sinha D (1988b). Carcinogenicity of aromatic hydrocarbons directly applied to rat mammary gland. *J. Cancer clin. Oncol*, 114: 3–9. PMID:3350839.

Cavalieri EL, Higginbotham S, RamaKrishna NVS *et al.* (1991). Comparative dose–response

tumorigenicity studies of dibenzo[a,l]pyrene versus 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene, benzo[a]pyrene and two dibenzo[a,l]pyrene dihydrols in mouse skin and rat mammary gland. *Carcinogenesis*, 12: 1939–1944. doi:10.1093/carcin/12.10.1939 PMID:1934274

Cavalieri EL & Rogan EG (1995). Central role of radical cations in metabolic activation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Xenobiotica*, 25: 677–688. doi:10.3109/00498259509061885 PMID:7483666

Chakravarti D, Venugopal D, Mailander PC *et al.* (2008). The role of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-DNA adducts in inducing mutations in mouse skin. *Mutat Res*, 649: 161–178. PMID:17931959

Chen JH, Chou FP, Lin HH, Wang CJ (2005). Gaseous nitrogen oxide repressed benzo[a]pyrene-induced human lung fibroblast cell apoptosis via inhibiting JNK1 signals. *Arch Toxicol*, 79: 694–704. doi:10.1007/s00204-005-0001-0 PMID:16041517

Culp SJ, Gaylor DW, Sheldon WG *et al.* (1998). A comparison of the tumors induced by coal tar and benzo[a]pyrene in a 2-year bioassay. *Carcinogenesis*, 19: 117–124. doi:10.1093/carcin/19.1.117 PMID:9472702

Damiani LA, Yingling CM, Leng S *et al.* (2008). Carcinogen-induced gene promoter hypermethylation is mediated by DNMT1 and causal for transformation of immortalized bronchial epithelial cells. *Cancer Res*, 68: 9005–9014. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-1276 PMID:18974146

de Vries A, van Oostrom CTM, Dortant PM *et al.* (1997). Spontaneous liver tumors and benzo[a]pyrene-induced lymphomas in XPA-deficient mice. *Molecular Carcinogenesis*, 19: 46–53. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1098-2744(199705)19:1<46::AID-MC7>3.0.CO;2-L PMID:9180928

DeMarini DM, Landi S, Tian D *et al.* (2001). Lung tumor KRAS and TP53 mutations in nonsmokers reflect exposure to PAH-rich coal combustion emissions. *Cancer Res*, 61: 6679–6681. PMID:11559534

Denissenko MF, Pao A, Tang M, Pfeifer GP (1996). Preferential formation of benzo[a]pyrene adducts at lung cancer mutational hotspots in P53. *Science*, 274: 430–432. doi:10.1126/science.274.5286.430 PMID:8832894

Deutsch-Wenzel RP, Brune H, Grimmer G *et al.* (1983). Experimental studies in rat lungs on the carcinogenicity and dose-response relationships of eight frequently occurring environmental polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 71: 539–544. PMID:6577228

el-Bayoumy K, Chae Y-H, Upadhyaya P *et al.* (1995). Comparative tumorigenicity of benzo[a]pyrene, 1-nitropyrene and 2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-b]pyridine administered by gavage to female CD rats. *Carcinogenesis*, 16: 431–434. doi:10.1093/carcin/16.2.431 PMID:7859378

Eling T, Curtis J, Battista J, Marnett LJ (1986). Oxidation of (+)-7,8-dihydroxy-7,8-dihydrobenzo[a]pyrene by mouse keratinocytes: evidence for peroxyl radical- and monoxygenase-dependent metabolism. *Carcinogenesis*, 7: 1957–1963. doi:10.1093/carcin/7.12.1957 PMID:2430728

Estensen RD, Jordan MM, Wiedmann TS *et al.* (2004). Effect of chemopreventive agents on separate stages of progression of benzo[alpha]pyrene induced lung tumors in A/J mice. *Carcinogenesis*, 25: 197–201. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgg196 PMID:14578161

Estensen RD & Wattenberg LW (1993). Studies of chemopreventive effects of myo-inositol on benzo[a]pyrene-induced neoplasia of the lung and forestomach of female A/J mice. *Carcinogenesis*, 14: 1975–1977. doi:10.1093/carcin/14.9.1975 PMID:8403228

Farmer PB & Singh R (2008). Use of DNA adducts to identify human health risk from exposure to hazardous environmental pollutants: the increasing role of mass spectrometry in assessing biologically effective doses of genotoxic carcinogens. *Mutat Res*, 659: 68–76. doi:10.1016/j.mrrev.2008.03.006 PMID:18468947

Feron VJ (1972). Respiratory tract tumors in hamsters after intratracheal instillations of benzo(a)pyrene alone and with furfural. *Cancer Res*, 32: 28–36. PMID:5007686

Feron VJ, de Jong D, Emmelot P (1973). Letter: Dose-response correlation for the induction of respiratory-tract tumours in Syrian golden hamsters by intratracheal instillations of benzo(a)pyrene. *Eur J Cancer*, 9: 387–390. doi:10.1016/0014-2964(73)90057-1 PMID:4746737

Feron VJ & Kruysse A (1978). Effects of exposure to furfural vapour in hamsters simultaneously treated with benzo[alpha] pyrene or diethylnitrosamine. *Toxicology*, 11: 127–144. doi:10.1016/S0300-483X(78)90889-2 PMID:715798

Feron VJ, van den Heuvel PD, Koëter HB, Beems RB (1980). Significance of particle size of benzo(a)pyrene for the induction of respiratory tract tumours in hamsters. *Int J Cancer*, 25: 301–307. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910250220 PMID:7390654

Flesher JW, Horn J, Lehner AF (1997). 6-sulfooxymethylbenzo[a]pyrene is an ultimate electrophilic and carcinogenic form of the intermediary metabolite 6-hydroxymethylbenzo[a]pyrene. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*, 234: 554–558. doi:10.1006/bbrc.1997.6679 PMID:9175750

Flesher JW, Stansbury KH, Sydnor KL (1982). S-Adenosyl-L-methionine is a carbon donor in the conversion of benzo[alpha]pyrene to 6-hydroxymethylbenzo[alpha]pyrene by rat liver S-9. *Cancer Lett*, 16: 91–94. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(82)90095-7 PMID:6288234

Godleski JJ, Melnicoff MJ, Sadri S, Garbeil P (1984). Effects of inhaled ammonium sulfate on benzo[a]pyrene carcinogenesis. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 14: 225–238. doi:10.1080/15287398409530575 PMID:6502734

Godschalk RW, Moonen EJ, Schilderman PA *et al.* (2000). Exposure-route-dependent DNA adduct formation by

polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 87–92. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.1.87 PMID:10607738

Gyorffy E, Anna L, Kovács K *et al.* (2008). Correlation between biomarkers of human exposure to genotoxins with focus on carcinogen-DNA adducts. *Mutagenesis*, 23: 1–18. doi:10.1093/mutage/gem043 PMID:17989146

Habs M, Jahn SAA, Schmähl D (1984). Carcinogenic activity of condensate from coloquint seeds (Citrullus colocynthis) after chronic epicutaneous administration to mice. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol*, 108: 154–156. doi:10.1007/BF00390988 PMID:6746706

Habs M, Schmähl D, Misfeld J (1980). Local carcinogenicity os some environmentally relevant polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons after lifelong topical application to mouse skin. *Arch Geschwulstforsch*, 50: 266–274. PMID:7436704

Hainaut P & Pfeifer GP (2001). Patterns of p53 G–>T transversions in lung cancers reflect the primary mutagenic signature of DNA-damage by tobacco smoke. *Carcinogenesis*, 22: 367–374. doi:10.1093/carcin/22.3.367 PMID:11238174

Hakura A, Tsutsui Y, Sonoda J *et al.* (1998). Comparison between in vivo mutagenicity and carcinogenicity in multiple organs by benzo[a]pyrene in the lacZ transgenic mouse (Muta Mouse). *Mutat Res*, 398: 123–130. PMID:9626972

Hecht SS (1999). Tobacco smoke carcinogens and lung cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 91: 1194–1210. doi:10.1093/jnci/91.14.1194 PMID:10413421

Heinrich U, Pott F, Mohr U *et al.* (1986a). Lung tumours in rats and mice after inhalation of PAH-rich emissions. *Exp Pathol*, 29: 29–34. PMID:3699126

Henry MC, Port CD, Bates RR, Kaufman DG (1973). Respiratory tract tumors in hamsters induced by benzo(a)pyrene. *Cancer Res*, 33: 1585–1592. PMID:4721222

Homburger F, Hsueh S-S, Kerr CS, Russfield AB (1972). Inherited susceptibility of inbred strains of Syrian hamsters to induction of subcutaneous sarcomas and mammary and gastrointestinal carcinomas by subcutaneous and gastric administration of polynuclear hydrocarbons. *Cancer Res*, 32: 360–366. PMID:5058191

Hoogervorst EM, de Vries A, Beems RB *et al.* (2003). Combined oral benzo[a]pyrene and inhalatory ozone exposure have no effect on lung tumor development in DNA repair-deficient Xpa mice. *Carcinogenesis*, 24: 613–619. doi:10.1093/carcin/24.3.613 PMID:12663525

Horikawa K, Sera N, Otofuji T *et al.* (1991). Pulmonary carcinogenicity of 3,9- and 3,7-dinitrofluoranthene, 3-nitrofluoranthene and benzo[a]pyrene in F344 rats. *Carcinogenesis*, 12: 1003–1007. doi:10.1093/carcin/12.6.1003 PMID:2044179

IARC (1973). Certain polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and heterocyclic compounds. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 3: 1–271.

IARC (1983). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 1, chemical, environmental and experimental data. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 32: 1–453. PMID:6586639

IARC (1984). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 3, industrial exposures in aluminium production, coal gasification, coke production, and iron and steel founding. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 34: 1–219.

IARC (1985). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 4, bitumens, coal-tars and derived products, shale-oils and soots. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 35: 1–247. PMID:2991123

IARC (1986). Tobacco smoking. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 38: 1–421.

IARC (2010). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

Ide F, Iida N, Nakatsuru Y *et al.* (2000). Mice deficient in the nucleotide excision repair gene XPA have elevated sensitivity to benzo[a]pyrene induction of lung tumors. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 1263–1265. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.6.1263 PMID:10837020

Iwagawa M, Maeda T, Izumi K *et al.* (1989). Comparative dose-response study on the pulmonary carcinogenicity of 1,6-dinitropyrene and benzo[a]pyrene in F344 rats. *Carcinogenesis*, 10: 1285–1290. doi:10.1093/carcin/10.7.1285 PMID:2736719

Jeffrey AM, Weinstein IB, Jennette KW *et al.* (1977). Structures of benzo(a)pyrene–nucleic acid adducts formed in human and bovine bronchial explants. *Nature*, 269: 348–350. doi:10.1038/269348a0 PMID:904688

Jiao S, Liu B, Gao A *et al.* (2008). Benzo(a)pyrene-caused increased G1-S transition requires the activation of c-Jun through p53-dependent PI-3K/Akt/ERK pathway in human embryo lung fibroblasts. *Toxicol Lett*, 178: 167–175. doi:10.1016/j.toxlet.2008.03.012 PMID:18448277

Joseph P & Jaiswal AK (1998). NAD(P)H:quinone oxidoreductase 1 reduces the mutagenicity of DNA caused by NADPH:P450 reductase-activated metabolites of benzo(a)pyrene quinones. *Br J Cancer*, 77: 709–719. PMID:9514048

Kalina I, Brezáni P, Gajdosová D *et al.* (1998). Cytogenetic monitoring in coke oven workers. *Mutat Res*, 417: 9–17. PMID:9729241

Ketkar M, Green U, Schneider P, Mohr U (1979). Investigations on the carcinogenic burden by air pollution in man. Intratracheal instillation studies with benzo[a]pyrene in a mixture of Tris buffer and saline in Syrian golden hamsters. *Cancer Lett*, 6: 279–284. doi:10.1016/S0304-3835(79)80046-4 PMID:436122

Ketkar M, Reznik G, Misfeld J, Mohr U (1977). Investigations on the carcinogenic burden by air pollution in man. The effect of a single dose of benzo(a)

pyrene in Syrian golden hamsters. *Cancer Lett*, 3: 231–235. doi:10.1016/S0304-3835(77)95980-8

Ketkar M, Reznik G, Schneider P, Mohr U (1978). Investigations on the carcinogenic burden by air pollution in man. Intratracheal instillation studies with benzo(a)pyrene in bovine serum albumin in Syrian hamsters. *Cancer Lett*, 4: 235–239. doi:10.1016/S0304-3835(78)94787-0 PMID:647664

Kliesch U, Roupova I, Adler ID (1982). Induction of chromosome damage in mouse bone marrow by benzo[a] pyrene. *Mutat Res*, 102: 265–273. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(82)90136-7 PMID:7144782

Kobayashi N (1975). Production of respiratory tract tumors in hamsters by benzo(a)pyrene. *Gann*, 66: 311–315. PMID:1181231

Kouri RE, Wood AW, Levin W *et al.* (1980). Carcinogenicity of benzo[a]pyrene and thirteen of its derivatives in C3H/fCum mice. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 64: 617–623. PMID:6766516

Kroese ED, Dortant PM, van Steeg H *et al.* (1997). Use of E μ-PIM-1 transgenic mice short-term in vivo carcinogenicity testing: lymphoma induction by benzo[a] pyrene, but not by TPA. *Carcinogenesis*, 18: 975–980. doi:10.1093/carcin/18.5.975 PMID:9163683

Kruysse A & Feron VJ (1976). Repeated exposure to cyclopentenone vapour: long-term study in Syrian golden hamsters *Zentralbl Bakteriol*, [Orig.B]163: 5–6448–457. . PMID:1020535.

Lavoie EJ, Braley J, Rice JE, Rivenson A (1987). Tumorigenic activity of non-alternant polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons in newborn mice. *Cancer Letters*, 34: 15–20. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(87)90068-1 PMID:3802065

Levin W, Wood AW, Wislocki PG *et al.* (1977). Carcinogenicity of benzo ring derivatives of benzo[a] pyrene on mouse skin. *Cancer Research*, 37: 3357–3361. PMID:884679.

Mangal D, Vudathala D, Park JH *et al.* (2009). Analysis of 7,8-dihydro-8-oxo-2′-deoxyguanosine in cellular DNA during oxidative stress. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 22: 788–797. doi:10.1021/tx800343c PMID:19309085

Marczynski B, Rihs HP, Rossbach B *et al.* (2002). Analysis of 8-oxo-7,8-dihydro-2′-deoxyguanosine and DNA strand breaks in white blood cells of occupationally exposed workers: comparison with ambient monitoring, urinary metabolites and enzyme polymorphisms. *Carcinogenesis*, 23: 273–281. doi:10.1093/carcin/23.2.273 PMID:11872632

Mass MJ, Jeffers AJ, Ross JA *et al.* (1993). Ki-ras oncogene mutations in tumors and DNA adducts formed by benz[j]aceanthrylene and benzo[a]pyrene in the lungs of strain A/J mice. *Molecular Carcinogenesis*, 8: 186–192. doi:10.1002/mc.2940080309 PMID:8216737

Matullo G, Dunning AM, Guarrera S *et al.* (2006). DNA repair polymorphisms and cancer risk in non-smokers in a cohort study. *Carcinogenesis*, 27: 997–1007. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgi280 PMID:16308313

McCoull KD, Rindgen D, Blair IA, Penning TM (1999). Synthesis and characterization of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon o-quinone depurinating N7-guanine adducts. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 12: 237–246. doi:10.1021/tx980182z PMID:10077486

Melendez-Colon VJ, Luch A, Seidel A, Baird WM (1999). Cancer initiation by polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons results from formation of stable DNA adducts rather than apurinic sites. *Carcinogenesis*, 20: 1885–1891. doi:10.1093/carcin/20.10.1885 PMID:10506100

Näslund I, Rubio CA, Auer GU (1987). Nuclear DNA changes during pathogenesis of squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix in 3,4-benzopyrene-treated mice. *Analytical and Quantitative Cytology*, 9: 411–418. PMID: 3675800.

Nebert DW, Roe AL, Dieter MZ *et al.* (2000). Role of the aromatic hydrocarbon receptor and [Ah] gene battery in the oxidative stress response, cell cycle control, and apoptosis. *Biochem Pharmacol*, 59: 65–85. doi:10.1016/S0006-2952(99)00310-X PMID:10605936

Nesnow S, Davis C, Nelson GB *et al.* (2002). Comparison of the genotoxic activities of the K-region dihydrodiol of benzo[a]pyrene with benzo[a]pyrene in mammalian cells: morphological cell transformation; DNA damage; and stable covalent DNA adducts. *Mutat Res*, 521: 91–102. PMID:12438007

Nesnow S, Ross JA, Stoner GD, Mass MJ (1995). Mechanistic linkage between DNA adducts, mutations in oncogenes and tumorigenesis of carcinogenic environmental polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in strain A/J mice. *Toxicology*, 105: 403–413. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(95)03238-B PMID:8571376

Nettesheim P, Griesemer RA, Martin DH, Caton JE Jr (1977). Induction of preneoplastic and neoplastic lesions in grafted rat tracheas continuously exposed to benzo[a]pyrene. *Cancer Research*, 37: 1271–1278. PMID: 856459.

Oguri T, Singh SV, Nemoto K, Lazo JS (2003). The carcinogen (7R,8S)-dihydroxy-(9S,10R)-epoxy-7,8,9,10-tetrahydrobenzo[a]pyrene induces Cdc25B expression in human bronchial and lung cancer cells. *Cancer Res*, 63: 771–775. PMID:12591724

Osborne MR, Crosby NT (1987). *Benzopyrenes*. Cambridge Monographs on Cancer Research. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press

Pal K, Grover PL, Sims P (1980). The induction of sister-chromatid exchanges in Chinese hamster ovary cells by some epoxides and phenolic derivatives of benzo[a] pyrene. *Mutat Res*, 78: 193–199. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(80)90098-1 PMID:7393246

Park JH, Mangal D, Tacka KA *et al.* (2008). Evidence for the aldo-keto reductase pathway of polycyclic aromatic trans-dihydrodiol activation in human lung A549 cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*, 105: 6846–6851. doi:10.1073/pnas.0802776105 PMID:18474869

Pavanello S, Pulliero A, Saia BO, Clonfero E (2006). Determinants of anti-benzo[a]pyrene diol epoxide-DNA adduct formation in lymphomonocytes of the general population. *Mutat Res*, 611: 54–63. PMID:16978913

Penning TM, Burczynski ME, Hung CF *et al.* (1999). Dihydrodiol dehydrogenases and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon activation: generation of reactive and redox active o-quinones. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 12: 1–18. doi:10.1021/tx980143n PMID:9894013

Penning TM & Drury JE (2007). Human aldo-keto reductases: Function, gene regulation, and single nucleotide polymorphisms. *Arch Biochem Biophys*, 464: 241–250. doi:10.1016/j.abb.2007.04.024 PMID:17537398

Pfeifer GP, Denissenko MF, Olivier M *et al.* (2002). Tobacco smoke carcinogens, DNA damage and p53 mutations in smoking-associated cancers. *Oncogene*, 21: 7435–7451. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1205803 PMID:12379884

Pilger A, Germadnik D, Schaffer A *et al.* (2000). 8-Hydroxydeoxyguanosine in leukocyte DNA and urine of quartz-exposed workers and patients with silicosis. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 73: 305–310. doi:10.1007/s004200000117 PMID:10963413

Pott F, Brockhaus A, Huth F (1973a[Tests on the production of tumours in animal experiments with polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons.] [in German]). *Zbl. Bakt. Hyg. Abt. Orig. B*, 157: 34–43.

Pott F, Tomingas R, Reiffer FJ (1973b). Experimental studies on the carcinogenicity and the retention of benzo[a]pyrene in application region after intratracheal and subcutaneous injection. *Zbl. Bakt. Hyg. I.Abt. Orig. B*, 158: 97–108.

Pott F, Ziem U, Reiffer F-J *et al.* (1987). Carcinogenicity studies on fibres, metal compounds, and some other dusts in rats. *Exp Pathol*, 32: 129–152. PMID:3436395

Raimondi S, Boffetta P, Anttila S *et al.* (2005). Metabolic gene polymorphisms and lung cancer risk in non-smokers. An update of the GSEC study. *Mutat Res*, 592: 45–57. PMID:16009381

Rajendran P, Ekambaram G, Sakthisekaran D (2008). Cytoprotective effect of mangiferin on benzo(a) pyrene-induced lung carcinogenesis in swiss albino mice. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol*, 103: 137–142. doi:10.1111/j.1742-7843.2008.00254.x PMID:18816296

Reynders JB, Immel HR, Scherrenberg PM *et al.* (1985). Respiratory tract tumors in hamsters after severe focal injury to the trachea and intratracheal instillation of benzo[a]pyrene. *Cancer Lett*, 29: 93–99. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(85)90128-4 PMID:4063958

Rippe RM, Pott D (1989). *Kanzerogenitätsuntersuchungen von Nitro-PAH (Nitroarenen) im Hinblick auf ihre Bedeutung für die krebserzeugende Wirkung von Dieselmotorabgas*. In: *Gesellschaft zur Förderung der Lufthygiene und Silikoseforschung*. Düsseldorf: Stefan W. Albers, pp. 65–89.

Rodriguez LV, Dunsford HA, Steinberg M *et al.* (1997). Carcinogenicity of benzo[a]pyrene and manufactured gas plant residues in infant mice. *Carcinogenesis*, 18: 127–135. doi:10.1093/carcin/18.1.127 PMID:9054599

Rogan EG, RamaKrishna NVS, Higginbotham S *et al.* (1990). Identification and quantitation of 7-(benzo[a] pyren-6-yl)guanine in the urine and feces of rats treated with benzo[a]pyrene. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 3: 441–444. doi:10.1021/tx00017a009 PMID:2133095

Roller M, Kamino K, Rosenbruch M (1992). *Carcinogenicity testing of bladder carcinogens and other organic compounds by the intraperitoneal and intravesicular route*. In: *Environmental Hygiene III*. Seemayer NH, Hadnagy W, editors. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, pp. 95–98.

Ross JA, Nelson GB, Wilson KH *et al.* (1995). Adenomas induced by polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in strain A/J mouse lung correlate with time-integrated DNA adduct levels. *Cancer Res*, 55: 1039–1044. PMID:7866986

Rossi L, Barbieri O, Sanguineti M *et al.* (1983). Carcinogenic activity of benzo[a]pyrene and some of its synthetic derivatives by direct injection into the mouse fetus. *Carcinogenesis*, 4: 153–156. doi:10.1093/carcin/4.2.153 PMID:6297822

Ruggeri B, DiRado M, Zhang SY *et al.* (1993). Benzo[a] pyrene-induced murine skin tumors exhibit frequent and characteristic G to T mutations in the p53 gene. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*, 90: 1013–1017. doi:10.1073/pnas.90.3.1013 PMID:8430068

Saffiotti U, Montesano R, Sellakumar AR *et al.* (1972). Respiratory tract carcinogenesis in hamsters induced by different numbers of administrations of benzo[a] pyrene and ferric oxide. *Cancer Res*, 32: 1073–1081. PMID:4336025

Sellakumar A, Stenbäck F, Rowland J (1976). Effects of different dusts on respiratory carcinogenesis in hamsters induced by benzo (a) pyrene and diethylnitrosamine. *Eur J Cancer*, 12: 313–319. doi:10.1016/0014-2964(76)90112-2 PMID:954792

Sellakumar AR, Montesano R, Saffiotti U, Kaufman DG (1973). Hamster respiratory carcinogenesis induced by benzo[a]pyrene and different dose levels of ferric oxide. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 50: 507–510. PMID:4702121

Senft AP, Dalton TP, Nebert DW *et al.* (2002). Mitochondrial reactive oxygen production is dependent on the aromatic hydrocarbon receptor. *Free Radic Biol Med*, 33: 1268–1278. doi:10.1016/S0891-5849(02)01014-6 PMID:12398935

Shen YM, Troxel AB, Vedantam S *et al.* (2006). Comparison of p53 mutations induced by PAH o-quinones with those caused by anti-benzo[a]pyrene diol epoxide in vitro: role of reactive oxygen and biological selection. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 19: 1441–1450. doi:10.1021/tx0601206 PMID:17112231

Shimada T (2006). Xenobiotic-metabolizing enzymes involved in activation and detoxification of carcinogenic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Drug Metab*

Pharmacokinet, 21: 257–276. doi:10.2133/dmpk.21.257 PMID:16946553

Shimizu Y, Nakatsuru Y, Ichinose M *et al.* (2000). Benzo[a] pyrene carcinogenicity is lost in mice lacking the aryl hydrocarbon receptor. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 97: 779–782. doi:10.1073/pnas.97.2.779 PMID:10639156

Simioli P, Lupi S, Gregorio P *et al.* (2004). Non-smoking coke oven workers show an occupational PAH exposure-related increase in urinary mutagens. *Mutat Res*, 562: 103–110. PMID:15279833

Smith DM, Rogers AE, Herndon BJ, Newberne PM (1975a). Vitamin A (retinyl acetate) and benzo[a]pyrene-induced carcinogenesis in hamsters fed a commercial diet. *Cancer Res.*, 35: 11–16. PMID:162856

Smith DM, Rogers AE, Newberne PM (1975b). Vitamin A and benzo[a]pyrene carcinogenesis in the respiratory tract of hamsters fed a semisynthetic diet. *Cancer Res*, 35: 1485–1488. PMID:1131819

Solt DB, Polverini PJ, Calderon L (1987). Carcinogenic response of hamster buccal pouch epithelium to 4 polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Journal of Oral Pathology*, 16: 294–302. doi:10.1111/j.1600-0714.1987.tb00697.x PMID:2445943

Sparnins VL, Mott AW, Barany G, Wattenberg LW (1986). Effects of allyl methyl trisulfide on glutathione S-transferase activity and BP-induced neoplasia in the mouse. *Nutrition and Cancer*, 8: 211–215. doi:10.1080/01635588609513895 PMID:3737423

Stansbury KH, Flesher JW, Gupta RC (1994). Mechanism of aralkyl-DNA adduct formation from benzo[a]pyrene in vivo. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 7: 254–259. doi:10.1021/tx00038a019 PMID:8199315

Steinhoff D, Mohr U, Hahnemann S (1991). Carcinogenesis studies with iron oxides. *Exp Pathol*, 43: 189–194. PMID:1797572

Stenbäck F & Rowland J (1978). Role of particle size in the formation of respiratory tract tumors induced by benzo(a)pyrene. *Eur J Cancer*, 14: 321–326. doi:10.1016/0014-2964(78)90200-1 PMID:656185

Stenbäck F & Rowland J (1979). Experimental respiratory carcinogenesis in hamsters: environmental, physicochemical and biological aspects. *Oncology*, 36: 63–71. doi:10.1159/000225320 PMID:223099

Stenbäck F, Sellakumar A, Shubik P (1975). Magnesium oxide as carrier dust in benzo(a)pyrene-induced lung carcino-genesis in Syrian hamsters. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 54: 861–867. PMID:1127716

Surh YJ, Liem A, Miller EC, Miller JA (1989). Metabolic activation of the carcinogen 6-hydroxymethylbenzo[a] pyrene: formation of an electrophilic sulfuric acid ester and benzylic DNA adducts in rat liver in vivo and in reactions in vitro. *Carcinogenesis*, 10: 1519–1528. doi:10.1093/carcin/10.8.1519 PMID:2752526

Thaiparambil JT, Vadhanam MV, Srinivasan C *et al.* (2007). Time-dependent formation of 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine in the lungs of mice exposed to cigarette smoke. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 20: 1737–1740. doi:10.1021/tx700289g PMID:18031018

Thyssen J, Althoff J, Kimmerle G, Mohr U (1981). Inhalation studies with benzo[a]pyrene in Syrian golden hamsters. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 66: 575–577. PMID:6937711

Toth B (1980). Tumorigenesis by benzo[a]pyrene administered intracolonically. *Oncology*, 37: 77–82. doi:10.1159/000225408 PMID:7360483

Urso P & Gengozian N (1984). Subnormal expression of cell-mediated and humoral immune responses in progeny disposed toward a high incidence of tumors after in utero exposure to benzo[a]pyrene. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 14: 569–584. doi:10.1080/15287398409530606 PMID:6239929

Van Duuren BL, Katz C, Goldschmidt BM (1973). Cocarcinogenic agents in tobacco carcinogenesis. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 51: 703–705. PMID:4765384

van Oostrom CT, Boeve M, van Den Berg J *et al.* (1999). Effect of heterozygous loss of p53 on benzo[a]pyrene-induced mutations and tumors in DNA repair-deficient XPA mice. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 34: 124–130. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1098-2280(1999)34:2/3<124::AID-EM11>3.0.CO;2-F PMID:10529736

Vesselinovitch SD, Kyriazis AP, Mihailovich N, Rao KVN (1975a). Factors influencing augmentation and/or acceleration of lymphoreticular tumors in mice by benzo[a]pyrene treatment. *Cancer Res*, 35: 1963–1969. PMID:1097103

Vesselinovitch SD, Kyriazis AP, Mihailovich N, Rao KVN (1975b). Conditions modifying development of tumors in mice at various sites by benzo[a]pyrene. *Cancer Res*, 35: 2948–2953. PMID:1182688

Vineis P & Husgafvel-Pursiainen K (2005). Air pollution and cancer: biomarker studies in human populations. *Carcinogenesis*, 26: 1846–1855. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgi216 PMID:16123121

Von Tungeln LS, Xia Q, Herreno-Saenz D *et al.* (1999). Tumorigenicity of nitropolycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in the neonatal B6C3F1 mouse bioassay and characterization of ras mutations in liver tumors from treated mice. *Cancer Letters*, 146: 1–7. doi:10.1016/S0304-3835(99)00206-2 PMID:10656603

Warshawsky D & Barkley W (1987). Comparative carcinogenic potencies of 7H-dibenzo[c,g]carbazole, dibenz[a,j]acridine and benzo[a]pyrene in mouse skin. *Cancer Letters*, 37: 337–344. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(87)90119-4 PMID:3677065

Warshawsky D, Barkley W, Bingham E (1993). Factors affecting carcinogenic potential of mixtures. *Fundamental and Applied Toxicology*, 20: 376–382. doi:10.1006/faat.1993.1048 PMID:8504912

Watanabe KH, Djordjevic MV, Stellman SD *et al.* (2009). Incremental lifetime cancer risks computed for benzo[a] pyrene and two tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in mainstream cigarette smoke compared with lung

cancer risks derived from epidemiologic data. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 55: 123–133. PMID:19540296

Wei SJ, Chang RL, Merkler KA *et al.* (1999). Dose-dependent mutation profile in the c-Ha-ras proto-oncogene of skin tumors in mice initiated with benzo[a] pyrene. *Carcinogenesis*, 20: 1689–1696. doi:10.1093/carcin/20.9.1689 PMID:10469612

Wenzel-Hartung R, Brune H, Grimmer G *et al.* (1990). Evaluation of the carcinogenic potency of 4 environmental polycyclic aromatic compounds following intrapulmonary application in rats. *Exp Pathol*, 40: 221–227. PMID:1711479

Weyand EH, Chen Y-C, Wu Y *et al.* (1995). Differences in the tumorigenic activity of a pure hydrocarbon and a complex mixture following ingestion: benzo[a]pyrene vs manufactured gas plant residue. *Chemical Research in Toxicology*, 8: 949–954. doi:10.1021/tx00049a008 PMID:8555410

Wijnhoven SWP, Kool HJM, van Oostrom CTM *et al.* (2000). The relationship between benzo[a]pyrene-induced mutagenesis and carcinogenesis in repair-deficient Cockayne syndrome group B mice. *Cancer Res*, 60: 5681–5687. PMID:11059760

Wislocki PG, Bagan ES, Lu AY *et al.* (1986). Tumorigenicity of nitrated derivatives of pyrene, benz[a]anthracene, chrysene and benzo[a]pyrene in the newborn mouse assay. *Carcinogenesis*, 7: 1317–1322. doi:10.1093/carcin/7.8.1317 PMID:3731386

Wojdani A & Alfred LJ (1984). Alterations in cell-mediated immune functions induced in mouse splenic lymphocytes by polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Cancer Res*, 44: 942–945. PMID:6420057

Xiao H, Rawal M, Hahm ER, Singh SV (2007). Benzo[a] pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide causes caspase-mediated apoptosis in H460 human lung cancer cell line. *Cell Cycle*, 6: 2826–2834. PMID:17986867

Xue W & Warshawsky D (2005). Metabolic activation of polycyclic and heterocyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and DNA damage: a review. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 206: 73–93. doi:10.1016/j.taap.2004.11.006 PMID:15963346

Yu D, Kazanietz MG, Harvey RG, Penning TM (2002). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon o-quinones inhibit the activity of the catalytic fragment of protein kinase C. *Biochemistry*, 41: 11888–11894. doi:10.1021/bi020270p PMID:12269833

COAL GASIFICATION

Coal gasification was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1983, 1987, and 2005 (IARC, 1984, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

During coal gasification, coal is reacted with oxygen, steam and carbon dioxide to form a gas containing hydrogen and carbon monoxide. During this process, which is essentially incomplete combustion, the heat evolved is consumed and the sulfur and nitrogen in the coal are converted to hydrogen sulfide (rather than sulfur dioxide) and ammonia (rather than nitrogen oxides), respectively. These reduced forms of sulfur and nitrogen are easily isolated, captured and used, making gasification a clean-coal technology with a better environmental performance than coal combustion (Shadle *et al.*, 2002).

Depending on the type of gasifier (e.g. air-blown, enriched oxygen-blown) and the operating conditions, gasification can be used to produce a fuel gas that is suitable for several applications (e.g. low heating-value fuel gas for use as industrial fuel and for power production; medium heating-value fuel gas for use as a synthesis gas in the production of chemicals such as ammonia and methanol, and for transportation fuel; or high heating-value gas) (Shadle *et al.*, 2002).

Gasification takes place in fixed-bed, fluidized-bed, moving-bed, and entrained-flow gasifiers. The earliest gasification processes were developed by use of a counter-current, fixed-bed gasifier, in which coal was fed onto the top of the bed and travelled downwards against the flow of gases. Atmospheric fixed-bed gasifiers of various designs are still occasionally found in small-scale industries. On a large scale, several Lurgi fixed-bed pressurized gasification plants are currently operating commercially, e.g. in the Republic of South Africa and in the USA (Shadle *et al.*, 2002; Crelling *et al.*, 2005). Fluidized-bed gasification, invented in 1922 by Winkler at BASF in Germany, has the advantage of a fairly simple reactor design. In this process, the air and steam flow required for gasification is sufficient to fluidize the bed of coal, char and ash. Fluidization occurs when the gas-flow velocity lifts the particles and causes the gas–solid mixture to flow like a fluid (Shadle *et al.*, 2002; Crelling *et al.*, 2005). Entrained-flow gasification takes place in a flame-like reaction zone, usually at a very high temperature, to produce a liquid slag. For economical operations, a high-standard heat-recovery system is mandatory, but the gas product typically has a very low methane content and is free of tars, oils and phenols, which thereby considerably simplifies gas and water treatment. Entrained-flow gasifiers of the Koppers-Totzek design are operated at atmospheric pressure. They are used industrially in many countries to produce hydrogen or

synthesis gas (Shadle *et al.*, 2002; Crelling *et al.*, 2005).

The moving-bed gasifiers produce tars, oils, phenols and heavy hydrocarbons, and the concentrations in the gas product are controlled by quenching and water scrubbing. Fluidized-bed gasifiers produce significantly smaller amounts of these compounds because of higher operating temperatures. Entrained-flow gasifiers that operate at even higher temperatures (in excess of 1650 °C) can achieve carbon conversions of more than 99.5%, while generating essentially no organic compounds heavier than methane (Shadle *et al.*, 2002).

In addition to PAHs, workers in coal gasification may be exposed to many compounds, including asbestos, silica, amines, arsenic, cadmium, lead, nickel, vanadium, hydrocarbons, sulfur dioxide, sulfuric acid and aldehydes (IARC, 1984).

2. Cancer in Humans

2.1 Cohort studies of coal-gasification workers

Occupational exposure during coal gasification was evaluated in *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010). There was *sufficient evidence* in epidemiological studies for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposure during coal gasification. The main body of evidence came from two cohort studies of coal-gasification workers in the United Kingdom (Doll *et al.*, 1972) and Germany (Berger & Manz, 1992), and a case–control study nested within a cohort of French gas- and electricity-production workers (Martin *et al.*, 2000; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-10-Table2.1.pdf). In all studies an excess of lung cancer in association with coal gasification was found, which was not likely to be explained by confounding from tobacco smoking. There was evidence supporting a lung-cancer excess in a historical record-linkage study from the United Kingdom (Kennaway & Kennaway, 1947), in two smaller cohorts (Kawai *et al.*, 1967; Hansen *et al.*, 1986), and a large but inadequately reported Chinese study (Wu, 1988).

In addition to lung cancer, the study from the United Kingdom (Doll *et al.*, 1972) showed an excess of bladder cancer, and the German study (Berger & Manz, 1992) showed an excess of cancers of the stomach and colon-rectum.

No epidemiological studies of coal-gasification workers have been published since the previous evaluation (IARC, 2010).

2.2 Synthesis

In three large studies, a consistent excess of lung cancer was found in association with occupational exposure during coal gasification. This excess was not likely to be explained by tobacco smoking.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Coal-tars from gas works were previously evaluated in *IARC Monograph* Volume 34 (IARC, 1984). As early as 1923 and in subsequent decades, crude coal-tars from gas-works were tested for carcinogenicity by skin application in six studies in mice and two studies in rabbits. These tars induced a high number of skin papillomas and carcinomas in all studies in mice (Deelman, 1923; Kennaway, 1925; Hieger, 1929; Woglom & Herly, 1929; Berenblum & Schoental, 1947; Grigorev, 1960) and in both studies in rabbits (Berenblum & Schoental, 1947; Grigorev, 1960). No new studies have been published since the previous evaluation.

Manufactured gas plant residues (MGP) were previously evaluated in *IARC Monograph*

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in mice exposed to manufactured gas plant residues

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M, F) 185 d Weyand *et al.* (1994)	Groups of 10 male and 10 female mice were fed a gel diet containing 0 (control) or 0.50% MGP.	Fore-stomach carcinomas (M): 0/10, 1/10 Alveolar epithelium hyperplasia (M): 0/10, 1/10	NS	
Mouse, A/J (F) 260 d Weyand *et al.* (1995)	Groups of 30 mice were fed a gel diet containing 0 (control), 0.1, or 0.25% MGP.	Lung adenoma: 4/19, 19/27*, 29/29* Lung adenoma multiplicity: 0.59, 1.19**, 12.17** tumours/mouse	*$P < 0.05$ **$P < 0.001$	Authors could not explain the decrease in body weight gain that led to increased mortality in basal gel diet controls. No fore-stomach tumours were observed.
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (F) 104 wk Culp *et al.* (1998)	Groups of 48 mice were fed a diet containing 0 (control), 0.01, 0.03, 0.1, 0.3, 0.6 or 1.0% of CT-1. Additional groups of 48 mice were fed a diet containing 0.03, 0.1 or 0.3% of CT-2.	Hepatocellular adenomas or carcinomas (mainly adenomas)**: 0/47, 4/48, 2/46, 3/48, 14/45*, 1/42, 5/43, 7/47, 4/47, 10/45* Alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas or carcinomas (mainly adenomas)**: 2/47, 3/48, 4/48, 4/48, 27/47*, 25/47*, 21/45*, 4/48, 10/48*, 23/47* Fore-stomach papillomas or carcinomas**: 0/47, 2/47, 6/45, 3/47, 14/46*, 15/45*, 6/41, 3/47, 2/47, 13/44* Fore-stomach carcinomas**: 0/47, 0/47, 0/45, 2/47, 7/46*, 10/45*, 4/41, 0/47, 1/47, 6/44* Small intestine adenocarcinomas***: 0/47, 0/46, 0/45, 0/47, 0/42, 22/36*, 36/41*, 0/47, 0/47, 1/37 Haemangiosarcomas**: 1/48, 0/48, 1/48, 1/48, 11/48*, 17/48*, 1/45, 1/48, 4/48, 17/48* Histiocytic sarcomas**: 1/48, 0/48, 0/48, 1/48, 7/48, 5/48, 0/45, 3/48, 2/48, 11/48* Sarcomas**: 1/48, 4/48, 3/48, 2/48, 7/48, 1/48, 2/45, 0/48, 4/48, 5/48	*$P < 0.05$ **P–value for dose-related trend significant (0.003-< 0.00001) for CT-1 and CT-2 ***P–value for dose related trend < 0.00001 for CT-1	CT-1 was a composite from seven MGP waste sites. CT-2 was a composite from two of the seven waste sites plus a third site that had a very high benzo[*a*]pyrene content. Haemangiosarcomas included those of the skin, mesentery, mesenteric lymph nodes, heart, spleen, urinary bladder, liver, uterus, thoracic cavity, ovary and skeletal muscle. Sarcomas included those of the mesentery, fore-stomach, skin and kidney.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M) 52 wk Rodriguez *et al.* (1997)	Groups of more than 30 mice were administered a single intraperitoneal injection of 1.995, 3.99, 7.98 mg MGP-7 or 7.98 mg MGP-4 in corn oil. A group of approximately 60 mice served as corn-oil controls.	Liver tumours (mainly adenomas): 4/34, 8/32*, 17/29*, 12/28*, 3/63	*[$P < 0.01$]	MGP-4 from a single MGP site. MGP-7 was a composite of seven MGP sites including site MGP-4. No fore-stomach tumours and few pulmonary adenomas were observed.

CT-1, coal tar mixture 1; d, day or days; F, female; M, male; MGP, manufactured gas plant residues; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks

Volume 92 (IARC, 2010). MGP were tested in one feeding study in female B6C3F$_1$ mice, one feeding study in female A/J mice, one feeding study in B6C3F$_1$ mice of both sexes, and in one study in male B6C3F$_1$ mice that received the agent by intraperitoneal injection (Table 3.1). In the first feeding study, an increased incidence of hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas combined, alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas and carcinomas combined, forestomach papillomas and carcinomas, small intestine adenocarcinomas, as well as haemangiosarcomas, histiocytic sarcomas, and sarcomas were observed in female B6C3F$_1$ mice (Culp *et al.*, 1998). In the second study, female A/J mice developed lung adenomas at an increased incidence and multiplicity (Weyand *et al.*, 1995). The third study, in male and female B6C3F$_1$ mice, did not show an increase in tumour incidence (Weyand *et al.*, 1994). In male mice, intraperitoneal injection of MGP produced a significant increase in liver tumours, mostly adenomas (Rodriguez *et al.*, 1997). No new studies have been published since the previous evaluation.

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazards from occupational exposures during coal gasification

4.1.1 Experimental systems

As reported in *IARC Monograph* Volume 34 (IARC, 1984), coal-gasification samples from the process stream and waste by-products were found to be mutagenic in various strains of *Salmonella typhimurium* in the presence of an exogenous metabolic activation system. The mutagenicity was found primarily in the fractions containing polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and their alkylated derivatives. The basic and neutral fractions of tar condensed from a product-gas stream induced both 6-thioguanine-resistant and 8-azaadenine-resistant mutations in DNA repair-deficient Chinese hamster ovary cells in the presence of exogenous metabolic activation. However, neither the micronucleus frequency nor the number of chromosomal aberrations were significantly increased by this treatment.

Male B6C3F1 mice were fed a diet containing coal tar from a gas plant residue. A complex pattern of aromatic adducts was observed in liver, lung, and fore-stomach DNA of these animals, which increased with dose and duration of treatment. In lung DNA one adduct was tentatively identified as *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-deoxyguanosine. This adduct was also identified in fore-stomach DNA from female B6C3F1 mice fed coal tar-containing diets (Culp & Beland, 1994). The identity of this adduct was confirmed upon analysis of lung DNA of female B6C3F1 mice fed a diet containing coal tar from manufactured gas plant residue. However, based on the levels of this specific adduct it was suggested that benzo[*a*]pyrene (B[*a*]P) contributes only a small fraction to the DNA adducts formed in lung tissue of mice that were given coal tar (Beland *et al.*, 2005). Male B6C3F1 mice were fed diets containing 0.1–1% (w/w) coal tar for 15 days. Adduct formation in the lung, but not in the fore-stomach, was dose-related. The B[*a*]P content in the coal tar could not account by itself for the aromatic DNA-adduct levels measured (Weyand *et al.*, 1991). Strain A/J mice formed aromatic DNA adducts in the lungs after ingestion of coal tar from manufactured gas plant residue via the diet. Three major DNA adducts were identified as being derived from benzo[*b*]fluoranthene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, and benzo[*c*]fluorene (Koganti *et al.*, 2000; Koganti *et al.*, 2001). In another study, female ICR mice received topical application of manufactured gas plant residue. In the complex pattern of lung DNA adducts, one was identified as being derived from 7H-benzo[*c*]fluorene.

However, detailed quantitative results after chromatographic separation of the residue into seven fractions suggested that components other than 7H-benzo[*c*]fluorene played an important role in adduct formation in lung DNA (Cizmas *et al.*, 2004). A retrospective comparison of tumour induction and DNA-adduct formation by B[*a*]P and coal tars in several experimental protocols indicated that tumour outcomes were not predicted by the formation of total DNA adducts or by the DNA adducts formed by B[*a*]P. These data suggest that B[*a*]P content by itself is not predictive of tumour outcome (Goldstein *et al.*, 1998).

In *IARC Monograph* Volumes 32 and 92 (IARC, 1983, 2010), benzo[*b*]fluoranthene was evaluated and found to be both genotoxic and carcinogenic in experimental studies. 7H-benzo[*c*]fluorene was carcinogenic to mice (IARC, 2010), but gave inconclusive results as a bacterial mutagen in *Salmonella typhimurium* strains TA98 and TA100 in the presence of an Aroclor-1254-induced rat-liver S9 (IARC, 1983). While a 7H-benzo[*c*]fluorene-DNA adduct was observed in mice that received topical applications of manufactured gas plant residue (Cizmas *et al.*, 2004), the structure of this adduct is unknown, although a diol epoxide structure has been proposed (Wang *et al.*, 2002).

Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in the ambient air in gas works have been analysed (IARC, 1984) and several of these have been shown to be mutagenic (i.e. benz[*a*]anthracene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, benzo[*ghi*]perylene) and carcinogenic (i.e. benz[*a*]anthracene, benzo[*a*]pyrene) in experimental studies (IARC, 1983, 2010; Platt & Grupe, 2005; Platt *et al.*, 2008a, b). These polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons may contribute to the genotoxic and tumorigenic activities of tars from coal gasification.

Naphthalene has been reported to be a constituent of tar from coal gasification (IARC, 1984). Naphthalene is genotoxic and induces tumours in experimental animals (IARC, 1982; Brusick *et al.*, 2008).

4.1.2 Humans

There are no studies that describe specific effects in workers exposed to emissions associated with coal gasification.

4.2 Synthesis

There is strong evidence from experimental studies for a genotoxic mode of action for coal-gasification samples. Although there are no human studies, it is highly likely that genotoxicity is the mechanism relevant to the carcinogenic hazards from exposures to emissions of coal gasification.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of coal gasification. Coal gasification causes cancer of the lung.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of coal-tars from gas-works and manufactured gas plant residues.

There is strong evidence for a genotoxic mechanism for coal gasification samples based on experimental studies. Although there are no human studies, it is highly likely that genotoxicity is the mechanism for the carcinogenic effects of coal-gasification emissions, predominantly due to the presence of mutagenic PAHs.

Coal gasification is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Beland FA, Churchwell MI, Von Tungeln LS *et al.* (2005). High-performance liquid chromatography electrospray ionization tandem mass spectrometry for the detection

and quantitation of benzo[*a*]pyrene-DNA adducts. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 18: 1306–1315. PMID:16097804

Berenblum I & Schoental R (1947). Carcinogenic constituents of coal-tar.Carcinogenic constituents of coal-tar. *Br J Cancer*, 1: 157–165. doi:10.1038/bjc.1947.18 PMID:20266453

Berger J & Manz A (1992). Cancer of the stomach and the colon-rectum among workers in a coke gas plant. *Am J Ind Med*, 22: 825–834. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700220605 PMID:1463028

Brusick D, Small MS, Cavalieri EL *et al.* (2008). Possible genotoxic modes of action for naphthalene. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 51: SupplS43–S50. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2007.12.002 PMID:18194829

Cizmas L, Zhou GD, Safe SH *et al.* (2004). Comparative in vitro and in vivo genotoxicities of 7H-benzo[*c*]fluorene, manufactured gas plant residue (MGP), and MGP fractions. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 43: 159–168. doi:10.1002/em.20011 PMID:15065203

Crelling JC, Hagemann HW, Sauter DH *et al.* (2005) *Coal*. In: *Ullmann's Encyclopedia of Industrial Chemistry*, 5th ed., Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA [online version]

Culp SJ & Beland FA (1994). Comparison of DNA adduct formation in mice fed coal tar or benzo[*a*]pyrene. *Carcinogenesis*, 15: 247–252. doi:10.1093/carcin/15.2.247 PMID:8313515

Culp SJ, Gaylor DW, Sheldon WG *et al.* (1998). A comparison of the tumors induced by coal tar and benzo[*a*]pyrene in a 2-year bioassay. *Carcinogenesis*, 19: 117–124. doi:10.1093/carcin/19.1.117 PMID:9472702

Deelman H-T (1923). Some remarks on experimental tar (Fr.). Bull. Assoc. fr. *Etude Cancer*, 12: 24–30.

Doll R, Vessey MP, Beasley RWR *et al.* (1972). Mortality of gasworkers - final report of a prospective study. *Br J Ind Med*, 29: 394–406. PMID:15625750

Goldstein LS, Weyand EH, Safe S *et al.* (1998). Tumors and DNA adducts in mice exposed to benzo[*a*]pyrene and coal tars: implications for risk assessment. *Environ Health Perspect*, 106: Suppl 61325–1330. PMID:9860888

Grigorev ZE (1960). On the carcinogenic properties of the Pechora coal tar. *Prob. Oncol.*, 6: 883–886.

Hansen KS, Viskum S, Pedersen MS (1986). Mortality among gas workers *Ugeskr Laeger*, 148: 610–612. PMID:3961944

Hieger I (1929). The influence of dilution on the carcinogenic effect of tar. *J Pathol Bacteriol*, 32: 419–423. doi:10.1002/path.1700320308

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1982). Some industrial chemicals and dyestuffs. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 29: 1–398. PMID:6957379

IARC (1983). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 1, chemical, environmental and experimental data. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 32: 1–453. PMID:6586639

IARC (1984). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 3, industrial exposures in aluminium production, coal gasification, coke production, and iron and steel founding. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 34: 1–219.

IARC (2010). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

Kawai M, Amamoto H, Harada K (1967). Epidemiologic study of occupational lung cancer. *Arch Environ Health*, 14: 859–864. PMID:6027173

Kennaway EL (1925). Experiments on cancer producing substances. *BMJ*, 2: 1–4. doi:10.1136/bmj.2.3366.1 PMID:20772103

Kennaway EL & Kennaway NM (1947). A further study of the incidence of cancer of the lung and larynx. *British Journal of Cancer*, 1: 260–298.

Koganti A, Singh R, Ma BL, Weyand EH (2001). Comparative analysis of PAH:DNA adducts formed in lung of mice exposed to neat coal tar and soils contaminated with coal tar. *Environ Sci Technol*, 35: 2704–2709. doi:10.1021/es001532i PMID:11452595

Koganti A, Singh R, Rozett K *et al.* (2000). 7H-benzo[*c*]fluorene: a major DNA adduct-forming component of coal tar. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 1601–1609. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.8.1601 PMID:10910965

Martin JC, Imbernon E, Goldberg M *et al.* (2000). Occupational risk factors for lung cancer in the French electricity and gas industry: a case-control survey nested in a cohort of active employees. *Am J Epidemiol*, 151: 902–912. PMID:10791563

Platt KL, Aderhold S, Kulpe K, Fickler M (2008a). Unexpected DNA damage caused by polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons under standard laboratory conditions. *Mutat Res*, 650: 96–103. PMID:18160334

Platt KL & Grupe S (2005). Microsomal biotransformation of benzo[*ghi*]perylene, a mutagenic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon without a "classic" bay region. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 18: 700–710. doi:10.1021/tx049698a PMID:15833030

Platt KL, Grupe S, Fickler M (2008b). The 3,4-oxide is responsible for the DNA binding of benzo[*ghi*]perylene, a polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon without a "classic" bay-region. *Chem Biol Interact*, 176: 179–187. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2008.07.010 PMID:18755170

Rodriguez LV, Dunsford HA, Steinberg M *et al.* (1997). Carcinogenicity of benzo[*a*]pyrene and manufactured gas plant residues in infant mice. *Carcinogenesis*, 18: 127–135. doi:10.1093/carcin/18.1.127 PMID:9054599

Shadle LJ, Berry DA, Syamlal M (2002) *Coal conversion processes, gasification*. In: *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of*

Chemical Technology, 5th ed., New York: John Wiley & Sons [online edition]

Wang JQ, Weyand EH, Harvey RG (2002). Synthesis of suspected carcinogenic metabolites of 7H-benzo[*c*] fluorene, a coal tar component implicated in causation of lung tumors. *J Org Chem*, 67: 6216–6219. doi:10.1021/jo011149b PMID:12182663

Weyand EH, Chen Y-C, Wu Y *et al.* (1995). Differences in the tumorigenic activity of a pure hydrocarbon and a complex mixture following ingestion: benzo[*a*]pyrene vs manufactured gas plant residue. *Chemical Research in Toxicology*, 8: 949–954. doi:10.1021/tx00049a008 PMID:8555410

Weyand EH, Wu Y, Patel S *et al.* (1991). Urinary excretion and DNA binding of coal tar components in B6C3F1 mice following ingestion. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 4: 466–473. doi:10.1021/tx00022a011 PMID:1912335

Weyand EH, Wu Y, Patel S, Goldstein L (1994). Biochemical effects of manufactured gas plant residue following ingestion by B6C3F1 mice. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 42: 89–107. . doi:10.1080/15287399409531865 PMID:8169998

Woglom WH & Herly L (1929). The carcinogenic activity of tar in various dilutions. *J Cancer Res*, 13: 367–372.

Wu W (1988). Occupational cancer epidemiology in the People's Republic of China. *J Occup Med*, 30: 968–974. doi:10.1097/00043764-198812000-00017 PMID:3068337

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES DURING COAL-TAR DISTILLATION

Occupational exposures during coal-tar distillation were considered by a previous Working Group in 2005 (IARC, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Manufacturing process

Coal tar is obtained by cooling the gas that is formed during the destructive distillation of coal to approximately ambient temperature. It is a black, viscous liquid composed primarily of a complex mixture of condensed-ring aromatic hydrocarbons. It may contain phenolic compounds, aromatic nitrogen bases and their alkyl derivatives, and paraffinic and olefinic hydrocarbons. Coal-tar pitch is the residue from the distillation of coal tar (Betts, 1997).

The largest source of tar and pitch is the pyrolysis or carbonization of coal. Until the end of the Second World War, coal tar was the main source of benzene, toluene, xylenes, phenol, cresols and cresylic acids, pyridine and methylpyridines, naphthalene, anthracene, creosote, tar paints, road tars and pitch binders (Betts, 1997). However, by the 1990s, over 90% of the world production of these aromatic chemicals was derived from the petrochemical industry, and coal tar became chiefly a source of anti-corrosion coatings, wood preservatives, feed-stocks for the manufacture of carbon black and binders for electrodes (Betts, 1997).

Coal-tar distillation products comprise essentially the distillate (primarily a complex mixture of mono- and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons) and the residue from the distillation (pitch) (Betts, 1997).

The part of coke-oven tar that is normally distillable at atmospheric pressure boils at up to ~400 °C and contains principally aromatic hydrocarbons. These include (in order of the distillation fraction): benzene, toluene and the xylene isomers, tri- and tetra-methylbenzenes, indene, hydrindene (indane), and coumarone; polar compounds, including tar acids (phenol and cresols) and tar bases (pyridine, picolines (methylpyridines) and lutidines (dimethylpyridines)); naphthalene, contaminated with small but significant amounts of thionaphthene, indene and other compounds; methylnaphthalene isomers; biphenyl, acenaphthene and fluorene; anthracene and phenanthrene; pyrene and fluoranthene (Betts, 1997).

Much less is known about the composition of pitch, the residue from coal-tar distillation. Studies of coke-oven pitch indicate that it contains: four-membered aromatic hydrocarbon

Table 1.1 Concentrations of PAHs in the air and urine of workers in coal-tar distillation

Reference Country Year of study	Job/task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	PAH	Air (µg/m³)		Urinary 1-hydroxypyrene (µmol/mol creatinine)	
						Mean	Range	Mean	Range
van de Ven & Nossent (1984) the Netherlands NR	Coal-tar distillation Operators, cleaners, maintenance	NR	49	NR	Sum of 11 PAHs	31	< 1–277		
Jongeneelen *et al.* (1986) the Netherlands NR	Coal-tar distillation		*Air; urine*		Sum of 11 PAHs; pyrene 1-Hydroxypyrene				
	Operator pitch unit	1	8; 2	0		26; 8.5	< 2–280;	3.7	NR
	Operator batch distillery	1	6; 2	1		14; 5.1	< 2–96	11.8	NR
	Operator pump station	1	5; 4	0		4.7; 1.4		4.0	NR
	Cleaner	1	4; 4	1		16; 5.2		4.6	NR
Price *et al.* (2000) United Kingdom 1998	Tar distillation								
	Low-temperature	8	8	1	Total 19 PAHs	12.17	3.99–38.59		
					HSE 11[a]	0.008	< 0.004–0.008		
					Benzo[*a*]pyrene	ND	ND		
					Pyrene	0.037	0.013–0.068		
					1-Hydroxypyrene			0.36	0.21–1.05
	High-temperature	12	12	4	Total 19 PAHs	279.04	51.9–1130.5		
					HSE 11[a]	0.95	0.15–4.87		
					Benzo[*a*]pyrene	0.283	0.019–0.642		
					Pyrene	1.24	0.14–6.73		
					1-Hydroxypyrene			2.60	0.78–5.69
Preuss *et al.* (2003) Germany 1999–2001	Tar distillation	18	NR	NR		*Median*	*90%*	*Median*	*90%*
					Sum of 16 PAHs	63.62	455.17	0.78	2.28
					1-Hydroxypyrene			3.65	12.36
					Sum of hydroxy-phenanthrene				

[a] Benz[*a*]anthracene, chrysene, benzo[*b*]fluoranthene, benzo[*j*]fluoranthene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, benzo[*ghi*]perylene, indeno[1,2,3-*cd*]pyrene, dibenzo[*a,h*]anthracene, anthanthrene, cyclopenta[*cd*]pyrene

ND, not detected; NR, not reported; PAHs, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons

Conversions used for 1-hydroxypyrene: 1 µmol/mol creatinine = 1.93 µg/g creatinine = 0.013 µmol/L = 2.84 µg/L = 2.84 ng/mL

ring systems (e.g. chrysene, fluoranthene, pyrene, triphenylene, naphthacene and benzanthracene); five-membered ring systems (picene, benzo[*a*]pyrene and benzo[*e*]pyrene, benzofluoranthenes and perylene); six-membered ring systems (dibenzopyrenes, dibenzofluoranthenes and benzoperylenes); and seven-ring systems (coronene). Other aromatic chemicals present in pitch include methyl- and polymethyl-derivatives, mono- and polyhydroxy-derivatives, and heterocyclic compounds (Betts, 1997).

For a more detailed description of the coal-tar distillation process, see the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 2010).

1.2 Occupational exposure

Concentrations of PAHs in the ambient air and in urine of workers in coal-tar distillation have been measured in several studies. The results are summarized in Table 1.1. The levels of PAH exposures overall were similar in installations that used the high-temperature process and much lower in the low-temperature distillation facility. A study from Germany (Preuss *et al.*, 2003) showed high air concentrations of total PAHs as well as urinary 1-hydroxypyrene levels.

2. Cancer in Humans

A previous Working Group (IARC, 2010) concluded that there was *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposures during coal-tar distillation. Two large surveillance programmes provided evidence of an increased risk for skin cancer among coal-tar distillers. Notifications of skin cancer in England during 1911–38 were analysed in relation to occupation and more than 700 skin cancers attributed to exposure to coal tar among coal-tar distillers had been recorded; crude mortality rates of scrotal cancer were very high among coal-tar distillers (Henry, 1946). Occupational health surveillance in a German coal-tar distillation plant identified 606 individuals with skin lesions during 1946–96, a third of whom had also malignant skin tumours (squamous-cell and basal-cell carcinoma); 20 cases of scrotal cancer (squamous-cell) were observed (Letzel & Drexler, 1998). No indication of an increased risk for skin cancer was found in more recent cohort-mortality studies, but mortality studies are not sufficiently sensitive to identify potential risks for skin cancer. The findings for other cancer sites were inconsistent. A modest, non-significant increase in mortality was reported for lung cancer in one British and one Dutch study (Maclaren & Hurley, 1987; Swaen & Slangen, 1997), and a significant excess in the incidence of buccal cavity and pharyngeal cancers was reported in a French study (Moulin *et al.*, 1988).

Since the previous evaluation (IARC, 2010) there have been no further relevant studies of cancer risk associated with occupational exposures during coal-tar distillation.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Three high-temperature tars – one undiluted and two as benzene extracts – produced skin tumours, including carcinomas, when applied to the skin of mice. Each one of five blast-furnace tars and two extracts of blast-furnace tars produced skin tumours, including carcinomas, after topical application to mice (IARC, 1985). Likewise, each one of five pharmaceutical coal-tar preparations caused skin tumours, including carcinomas, when applied to the skin of mice (IARC, 1985).

Two unspecified coal tars caused skin tumours, including carcinomas, after application to the skin of mice. Lung tumours but not skin tumours were produced in rats after application of coal tar to the skin. In one study, an

unspecified coal tar produced tumours when applied to the ears of rabbits (IARC, 1985).

No data were available to the Working Group on the carcinogenicity of distillation fractions of low-temperature tars or of products derived from these tars (IARC, 1985).

In addition, several individual polynuclear aromatic compounds for which there is *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in experimental animals have been measured at high concentrations in air samples taken from certain areas in coal-tar distillation plants (IARC, 2010).

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Mechanistic considerations relevant to the carcinogenic hazards of exposures during coal-tar distillation

4.1.1 Experimental systems

In previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1985, 1987, 2010) coal-tar pitch and roofing-tar emissions were found to be mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* (in the presence of an exogenous metabolic activation system) and in two mammalian cell systems (in the presence and absence of an exogenous metabolic activation system). Coal-tar pitch and roofing-tar emissions induced sister chromatid exchange in Chinese hamster ovary cells and enhanced viral transformation in Syrian hamster embryo cells (both in the absence and presence of an exogenous metabolic activation system). Samples of therapeutic coal-tars, extracts of coal-tar shampoos, an industrial coal-tar-pitch and vapours escaping from a coal-tar sample at 37 °C were all mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* in the presence of an exogenous metabolic activation system.

Coal tar applied topically to the skin of male Parkes mice produced a complex pattern of DNA adducts in skin and lung tissues when analysed by means of ^{32}P-postlabelling (Schoket *et al.*, 1988), with one adduct spot tentatively identified as benzo[*ghi*]perylene (Hughes *et al.*, 1993).

Benzo[*ghi*]perylene was shown to be photomutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* strains. It induced DNA strand-breaks (comet assay) in V79 Chinese hamster lung fibroblasts with photo-activation (Yan *et al.*, 2004; Platt & Grupe, 2005; Platt *et al.*, 2008a; IARC, 2010). The major metabolic intermediate of benzo[*ghi*]perylene is the K-region oxide, 3,4-epoxy-3,4-dihydrobenzo[*ghi*]perylene (Platt *et al.*, 2008b).

Male B6C3F1 mice fed a diet containing coal tar from manufactured gas plant residue produced a complex pattern of aromatic adducts in DNA of the liver, lung, and fore-stomach, which increased with dose and time of treatment; one of the adducts was identified as the *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-deoxyguanosine-adduct (Culp & Beland, 1994; Culp *et al.*, 2000). In a similarly designed feeding study, a complex pattern of aromatic DNA adducts was produced in the lung, fore-stomach, and spleen tissues of mice; it was demonstrated that the benzo[*a*]pyrene content alone in the coal tar could not account for the aromatic DNA-adduct levels (Weyand *et al.*, 1991). In the lung of female A/J mice fed a diet containing coal tar from manufactured gas plant residue, three major aromatic DNA adducts were identified as being derived from benzo[*b*]fluoranthene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, and *7H*-benzo[*c*]fluorene (Weyand & Wu, 1995; Koganti *et al.*, 2000). The *7H*-benzo[*c*]fluorene-DNA adduct was also observed in mice who received topical application of manufactured gas plant residue (Cizmas *et al.*, 2004); the structure of this adduct is unknown, although a diol epoxide structure has been proposed (Wang *et al.*, 2002).

In the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 2010) benzo[*b*]fluoranthene was found to be both genotoxic and carcinogenic in experimental studies. *7H*-benzo[*c*]fluorene gave inconclusive results when tested for mutagenicity in *Salmonella*

typhimurium strains TA98 and TA100 in the presence of rat liver S9 (IARC, 1983), but it was found to be carcinogenic to mice (IARC, 2010).

Coal tar applied topically to *lambda-lacZ* transgenic mice (MutaMouse®) strongly increased the mutation frequency in epidermal cells. Isolated epidermal cells from C3H/Tif/hr hairless mice that had been given coal tar had higher levels of DNA strand-breaks (as analysed in the comet assay) (Thein *et al.*, 2000). In female B6C3F1 mice fed diets containing coal tar, cell proliferation was increased in the small intestine. *K-ras*, *H-ras*, and *p53* mutations were observed in the coal tar-induced tumours, the most abundant being *K-ras* mutations in fore-stomach and lung tumours (Culp *et al.*, 2000).

Chemical analyses of high-temperature coal tars have identified a series of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons that are both genotoxic and carcinogenic in experimental studies. Among these compounds are benz[*a*]anthracene, benzo[*b*]fluoranthene, benzo[*k*]fluoranthene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, dibenz[*a,h*]anthracene, chrysene, and indeno[1,2,3-*cd*]pyrene (IARC, 1983, 1985, 2010). These polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons may contribute in part to the genotoxic and tumorigenic activities of coal tars.

Both naphthalene and benzene are constituents of coal tars produced by various processes (IARC, 1985). Both chemicals are genotoxic and induce tumours in experimental animals (IARC, 1982, 2002). Benzene is considered to be carcinogenic to humans (IARC, 2002).

4.1.2 Humans

In previous *Monographs* (IARC, 1985, 2010) short-term assays were reviewed to assess the genotoxic effects of coal-tar exposure in humans. Patients treated with coal-tar ointments produced urine that was mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* strains TA98 and YG1024 in the presence of an Aroclor–1254-induced rat-liver metabolic activation system. In the *S. typhimurium* strain YG1024, *GSTM1*-null patients had higher levels of mutagens in their urine than *GSTM1*-positive patients.

DNA-adduct measurements that involved coal-tar workers or patients undergoing coal-tar therapy have focused solely on detection of benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts. In the skin and white blood cells (monocytes, lymphocytes, and granulocytes) of a group of eczema patients topically treated with coal-tar ointments the presence of aromatic DNA adducts was demonstrated by means of ^{32}P-postlabelling analysis. One of the adducts co-migrated with the benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adduct (Godschalk *et al.*, 1998). Analysis of the same adduct by use of an HPLC/ fluorescence method in a group of 26 psoriasis patients showed that the percentage of subjects with adducts did not exceed the 95 percentile control-subject value (Pavanello *et al.*, 1999). The white blood cells of 23 psoriasis patients undergoing clinical coal-tar therapy were examined for the presence of benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts with an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). These adducts were detected and the adduct levels decreased with time after treatment, but no relationship could be ascertained between the level of exposure and the number of adducts and no difference in DNA-adduct formation was found between smoking and non-smoking patients (Paleologo *et al.*, 1992). PAH diolepoxide-DNA adducts and *GSTM1* genotype were determined in white blood cells of 57 psoriasis patients and 53 controls by use of ELISA and polymerase chain reaction (PCR), respectively. These DNA adducts were slightly elevated in patients compared with controls. There was no relationship between the presence of the *GSTM1* gene and the number of adducts (Santella *et al.*, 1995). Skin-biopsy samples from 12 psoriasis patients receiving coal-tar ointments contained aromatic DNA adducts, measured by ^{32}P-postlabelling analysis (Schoket *et al.*, 1990). In another ^{32}P-postlabelling study no significant

effects were reported of a similar treatment of psoriasis patients on the levels of benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts in peripheral blood lymphocytes (Pavanello & Levis, 1994). In a study of 111 Korean painters using coal-tar-based paint, the levels of aromatic DNA adducts measured by ^{32}P-postlabelling analysis were slightly higher compared with 17 on-site control workers (Lee *et al.*, 2003).

In lymphocytes of 49 coal-tar workers a significant increase of chromosomal aberrations, sister chromatid exchange, and satellite associations was observed, compared with values in non-exposed controls (Yadav & Seth, 1998).

Increased levels of p53 peotein were found in skin biopsies of atopic eczema patients treated topically with coal-tar; a correlation was observed between p53 and aromatic DNA-adduct levels measured in the same tissue by ^{32}P-postlabelling analysis (Godschalk *et al.*, 2001).

4.2 Synthesis

In experimental systems, coal tars were mutagenic in bacteria and mammalian cells, and induced sister chromatid exchange and morphological cell transformation in cultured mammalian cells. Coal tar was also mutagenic *in vivo*, in transgenic mice. Mouse-lung tumours induced by coal-tar treatment had mutations in the K-*ras* proto-oncogene.

Epidemiological studies in humans and studies in experimental animals were consistent with respect to coal-tar exposures being carcinogenic to the lung. Coal tars produced lung and skin tumours in mice and rats after exposure by inhalation, lung tumours in rats after dermal treatment, and skin tumours in mice after dermal treatment. Coal tar was a mouse skin-tumour initiator (see Section 3).

Indications on the role of PAH in the mechanism of action of exposure to coal tar are based on the detection of DNA adducts of several PAHs, e.g. benzo[*ghi*]perylene, benzo[*b*]fluoranthene, *7H*-benzo[*c*]fluorene and benzo[*a*]pyrene in *in vitro* studies, with DNA adducts of benzo[*b*]fluoranthene, benzo[*c*]fluorene and benzo[*a*]pyrene being detected in lung tissues of exposed animals. The benzo[*a*]pyrene DNA adduct was identified as an *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-deoxyguanosine-adduct.

In studies in humans, the urine from patients undergoing coal-tar treatments was mutagenic in bacteria. Peripheral blood lymphocytes of workers occupationally exposed to coal tars had increased chromosomal damage. Measurements of PAH-DNA adducts in human studies are based exclusively on detection of benzo[*a*]pyrene-DNA adducts, in particular *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-deoxyguanosine.

In conclusion, studies in experimental systems and in surrogate tissues of humans provide strong evidence for a genotoxic/mutagenic mechanism underlying the effects of occupational exposures during coal-tar distillation.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposures during coal-tar distillation. Occupational exposures during coal-tar distillation cause cancer of the skin (including, but not limited to, cancer of the scrotum).

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of coal tars.

Studies in experimental systems and in tissues of humans provide strong evidence for a genotoxic mechanism underlying the effects of occupational exposures during coal-tar distillation in humans. The detection of *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide-DNA adducts in the peripheral blood lymphocytes of exposed humans suggests the participation of benzo[*a*]pyrene in the genotoxic mechanism of this exposure in humans.

Occupational exposures during coal-tar distillation are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Betts WD (1997). *Tar and pitch*. In: *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, 5th ed., New York: John Wiley & Sons [online edition]

Cizmas L, Zhou GD, Safe SH *et al.* (2004). Comparative in vitro and in vivo genotoxicities of 7H-benzo[c]fluorene, manufactured gas plant residue (MGP), and MGP fractions. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 43: 159–168. doi:10.1002/em.20011 PMID:15065203

Culp SJ & Beland FA (1994). Comparison of DNA adduct formation in mice fed coal-tar or benzo[a]pyrene. *Carcinogenesis*, 15: 247–252. doi:10.1093/carcin/15.2.247 PMID:8313515

Culp SJ, Warbritton AR, Smith BA *et al.* (2000). DNA adduct measurements, cell proliferation and tumor mutation induction in relation to tumor formation in B6C3F1 mice fed coal-tar or benzo[a]pyrene. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 1433–1440. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.7.1433 PMID:10874023

Godschalk RW, Ostertag JU, Moonen EJ *et al.* (1998). Aromatic DNA adducts in human white blood cells and skin after dermal application of coal-tar. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 7: 767–773.

Godschalk RW, Ostertag JU, Zandsteeg AM *et al.* (2001). Impact of GSTM1 on aromatic-DNA adducts and p53 accumulation in human skin and lymphocytes. *Pharmacogenetics*, 11: 537–543. doi:10.1097/00008571-200108000-00008 PMID:11505223

Henry SA (1946). *Cancer of the Scrotum in Relation to Occupation*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Hughes NC, Pfau W, Hewer A *et al.* (1993). Covalent binding of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon components of coal-tar to DNA in mouse skin. *Carcinogenesis*, 14: 135–144. doi:10.1093/carcin/14.1.135 PMID:8425262

IARC (1982). Some industrial chemicals and dyestuffs. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 29: 1–398. PMID:6957379

IARC (1983). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 1, chemical, environmental and experimental data. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 32: 1–453. PMID:6586639

IARC (1985). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 4, bitumens, coal-tars and derived products, shale-oils and soots. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 35: 1–247. PMID:2991123

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (2002). Some traditional herbal medicines, some mycotoxins, naphthalene and styrene. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 82: 1–556. PMID:12687954

IARC (2010). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

Jongeneelen FJ, Bos RP, Anzion RBM *et al.* (1986). Biological monitoring of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Metabolites in urine. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 12: 137–143. PMID:3726495

Koganti A, Singh R, Rozett K *et al.* (2000). 7H-benzo[c]fluorene: a major DNA adduct-forming component of coal-tar. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 1601–1609. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.8.1601 PMID:10910965

Lee KH, Ichiba M, Zhang J *et al.* (2003). Multiple biomarkers study in painters in a shipyard in Korea. *Mutat Res*, 540: 89–98. PMID:12972061

Letzel S & Drexler H (1998). Occupationally related tumors in tar refinery workers. *J Am Acad Dermatol*, 39: 712–720. doi:10.1016/S0190-9622(98)70043-X PMID:9810887

Maclaren WM & Hurley JF (1987). Mortality of tar distillation workers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 13: 404–411. PMID:3433042

Moulin JJ, Mur JM, Wild P *et al.* (1988). Epidemiologic study of the mortality among the employees of a coal tar distillery *Rev Epidemiol Sante Publique*, 36: 99–107. PMID:3413326

Paleologo M, van Schooten FJ, Pavanello S *et al.* (1992). Detection of benzo[a]pyrene-diol-epoxide-DNA adducts in white blood cells of psoriatic patients treated with coal-tar. *Mutat Res*, 281: 11–16. doi:10.1016/0165-7992(92)90030-L PMID:1371585

Pavanello S, Favretto D, Brugnone F *et al.* (1999). HPLC/fluorescence determination of anti-BPDE-DNA adducts in mononuclear white blood cells from PAH-exposed humans. *Carcinogenesis*, 20: 431–435. doi:10.1093/carcin/20.3.431 PMID:10190558

Pavanello S & Levis AG (1994). Human peripheral blood lymphocytes as a cell model to evaluate the genotoxic effect of coal-tar treatment. *Environ Health Perspect*, 102: Suppl 995–99. PMID:7698093

Platt KL, Aderhold S, Kulpe K, Fickler M (2008a). Unexpected DNA damage caused by polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons under standard laboratory conditions. *Mutat Res*, 650: 96–103. PMID:18160334

Platt KL & Grupe S (2005). Microsomal biotransformation of benzo[ghi]perylene, a mutagenic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon without a "classic" bay region. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 18: 700–710. doi:10.1021/tx049698a PMID:15833030

Platt KL, Grupe S, Fickler M (2008b). The 3,4-oxide is responsible for the DNA binding of benzo[ghi]perylene, a polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon without a "classic" bay-region. *Chem Biol Interact*, 176: 179–187. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2008.07.010 PMID:18755170

Preuss R, Rossbach B, Müller J *et al.* (2003). . [Eine deutschlandweite Studie zur inneren und äusseren Exposition gegenüber polycyclischen aromatischen

Kohlenwasserstoffen (PAK) am Arbeitsplatz.] *Gefahrst Reinhalt L*, 63: 7–14.

Price I, Scobbie E, Cocker J (2000). *Survey of occupational Exposure to Polycyclic Aromatic hydrocarbons*. No. JS200329. Environmental Measurement Group, Health and Safety Laboratory. London: Health and Safety Executive

Santella RM, Perera FP, Young TL *et al.* (1995). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-DNA and protein adducts in coal-tar treated patients and controls and their relationship to glutathione S-transferase genotype. *Mutat Res*, 334: 117–124. PMID:7885362

Schoket B, Hewer A, Grover PL, Phillips DH (1988). Covalent binding of components of coal-tar, creosote and bitumen to the DNA of the skin and lungs of mice following topical application. *Carcinogenesis*, 9: 1253–1258. doi:10.1093/carcin/9.7.1253 PMID:3383342

Schoket B, Horkay I, Kósa A *et al.* (1990). Formation of DNA adducts in the skin of psoriasis patients, in human skin in organ culture, and in mouse skin and lung following topical application of coal-tar and juniper tar. *J Invest Dermatol*, 94: 241–246. doi:10.1111/1523-1747.ep12874576 PMID:2299199

Swaen GMH & Slangen JMM (1997). Mortality in a group of tar distillery workers and roofers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 70: 133–137. doi:10.1007/s004200050197 PMID:9253642

Thein N, Møller P, Amtoft H *et al.* (2000). A strong genotoxic effect in mouse skin of a single painting of coal tar in hairless mice and in MutaMouse. *Mutat Res*, 468: 117–124. PMID:10882890

van de Ven, C, Nossent, C (1984). [*Who deals with pitch... Occupational hygiene study in a coal-tar processing plant.*] 195. Gezondheidsleer, V146 Luchthygiene en – verontreiniging. Health education, air quality and air pollution.

Wang JQ, Weyand EH, Harvey RG (2002). Synthesis of suspected carcinogenic metabolites of 7H-benzo[c] fluorene, a coal-tar component implicated in causation of lung tumors. *J Org Chem*, 67: 6216–6219. doi:10.1021/jo011149b PMID:12182663

Weyand EH & Wu Y (1995). Covalent binding of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon components of manufactured gas plant residue to mouse lung and forestomach DNA. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 8: 955–962. doi:10.1021/tx00049a009 PMID:8555411

Weyand EH, Wu Y, Patel S *et al.* (1991). Urinary excretion and DNA binding of coal-tar components in B6C3F1 mice following ingestion. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 4: 466–473. doi:10.1021/tx00022a011 PMID:1912335

Yadav JS & Seth N (1998). Effect of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons on somatic chromosomes of coal-tar workers. *Cytobios*, 93: 165–173. PMID:9779589

Yan J, Wang L, Fu PP, Yu H (2004). Photomutagenicity of 16 polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons from the US EPA priority pollutant list. *Mutat Res*, 557: 99–108. PMID:14706522

COAL-TAR PITCH

Coal-tar pitch and associated exposures were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1984, 1987, and 2005 (IARC, 1985, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Studies of coke-oven pitch indicate that coal-tar pitch contains: four-membered aromatic hydrocarbon ring systems (e.g. chrysene, fluoranthene, pyrene, triphenylene, naphthacene and benzanthracene); five-membered ring systems (picene, benzo[*a*]pyrene (B[*a*]P) and benzo[*e*] pyrene, benzofluoranthenes and perylene); six-membered ring systems (dibenzopyrenes, dibenzofluoranthenes and benzoperylenes); and seven-ring systems (coronene). Other aromatic chemicals in coal-tar pitch include methylated and polymethylated derivatives, mono- and polyhydroxylated derivatives, and heterocyclic compounds (Betts, 1997).

For a more detailed description of the coal-tar distillation process, including coal-tar pitch, the reader is referred to *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010), and to the *Monograph* on Occupational Exposures during Coal-tar Distillation in this volume.

1.2 Human exposure

1.2.1 Occupational exposure

Coal-tar pitch is used in electrode manufacture, roofing and paving.

Studies examining exposures during roofing and paving published since the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 2010) are summarized below.

(a) Roofing

The exposures associated with roofing are the result of two operations. First, the old roof is removed by cutting, prying and scraping the existing material from the roof, and discarding it. A new roof is then installed by melting solid blocks of coal-tar pitch, pumping or carrying buckets of the molten material to the roof, where layers of roofing felt and liquid coal-tar pitch are spread upon the surface to produce a cover (NIOSH, 2000; IPCS, 2004). Roofers are primarily exposed to PAHs. Other exposures include silica, diesel exhaust, asbestos and organic solvents. Recent studies on airborne concentrations of PAHs measured in roofing are summarized in Table 1.1.

Studies in the USA showed that long after cessation of applying coal-tar pitch on roofs,

Table 1.1 Concentrations of PAHs in the ambient air of workers in roofing with coal-tar pitch

Reference Country Year of study	Job/task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	PAH	Dermal Exposure (ng/cm²)		Urinary 1-OH-pyrene (µmol/mol creatinine)
						Mean	Range	
McClean *et al.* (2007) USA 1998	Tear-off of coal-tar roofs	26						
	Roof workers	21	71	NR	Polycyclic aromatic compound	898	48–30014	
			71		Pyrene	11.0	< 2.4–221	
			71		B[*a*]P	3.3	< 0.5–59	
	Tear-off	NR	41	NR	Polycyclic aromatic compound	886	49–33538	
			41		Pyrene	11.5	< 2.4–168	
			41		B[*a*]P	4.6	< 0.5–84	
	Put-down	NR	56	NR	PAC	344	48–21437	
			55		Pyrene	3.8	< 2.4–150	
			54		B[*a*]P	1.0	< 0.5–59	
	Kettlemen	5	19	NR	Polycyclic aromatic compound	299	40–4558	
			19		Pyrene	4.5	< 2.4–34	
			18		B[*a*]P	0.9	< 0.5–20	
Toraason *et al.* (2001) USA 1998	Tear-off of coal-tar roofs							Mean (SD)
	coal-tar tear-off exposure		16		start wk			0.74 (0.86)
			15		end wk			3.55 (2.17)
	asphalt-fume only exposure		6		start wk			0.26 (0.13)
			5		end wk			0.58 (0.29)
	controls		3		start wk			0.08 (0.12)
			3		end wk			0.12 (0.12)

B[*a*]P, benzo[*a*]pyrene; NR, not reported; SD, standard deviation; wk, week or weeks

workers can still be exposed to coal tar during tear-off of existing roofs (Toraason *et al.*, 2001; McClean *et al.*, 2007). Working with coal-tar pitch was associated with a sixfold increase in PAH exposure, an eightfold increase in pyrene exposure and a 35-fold increase in benzo[*a*] pyrene exposure. Urinary 1-OH-pyrene concentrations in workers and controls showed a fivefold difference at post-shift and a 7.2-fold difference several hours later, which shows the importance of dermal exposure resulting in a prolonged uptake after the end-of-shift.

(b) Paving

Roadway paving can be conducted by several methods, including hot-mix laying and chip sealing. In hot-mix laying, the mixture of a binder (coal tar, bitumen or a blended product containing both) and aggregate (stone chips) is spread on the roadway by a paving machine, followed by a roller. In the chip-sealing process (also known as surface dressing), the liquid binder (coal tar, bitumen, or a mixture of the two) is sprayed directly onto the road surface, then the aggregate stone is spread on top and rolled (Darby *et al.*, 1986).

Detailed information on cessation of coal-tar use in the European paving industry has been collected in the course of an IARC study on cancer mortality among asphalt workers. Table 1.2 presents the last reported year-of-use of coal tar in paving by any company that participated in the cohort study. The data originated from a company questionnaire and its ensuing evaluation by country-specific experts (Burstyn *et al.*, 2003). A gradient in cessation of use can be seen, with Scandinavian countries ending use earlier than central and southern European countries, such as the Netherlands, France and Germany. However, even within countries, large differences in the use of coal tar have occurred between companies, depending on the supplier of the asphalt mixes and the presence of coke ovens in the neighbourhood. Even after cessation of the use of coal tar, workers in road paving have continued to be exposed to this substance due to the use of recycled coal-tar asphalt in some countries.

Table 1.2 Cessation of use of coal tar in asphalt paving (surface dressing)

Country	Last year of use
Finland	1965
Denmark	1974
Sweden	1974
Norway	1984
the Netherlands	1990
France	1992
Germany	1995

From Burstyn *et al.* (2003)

2. Cancer in Humans

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010) it was concluded that there is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposures during paving and roofing with coal-tar pitch. This was based on studies of pavers and roofers who presumably had been exposed to coal-tar pitch (and often also to bitumen), which suggested increased cancer risks in these occupations. An excess risk for lung cancer was reported in studies of members of a roofer's union in the USA, in analyses of registry-based data on pavers in the United Kingdom and roofers in the USA, and in follow-up studies of cancer incidence among pavers in Finland and the Netherlands (Kennaway & Kennaway, 1947, 1951; Hammond *et al.*, 1976; Milham, 1982; Pukkala, 1995; Swaen & Slangen, 1997; Stern *et al.*, 2000). An increased mortality from urinary bladder, laryngeal or skin (non-melanoma) cancer was observed in one or more of these cohorts, but this finding was not widely supported by other studies. In three case–control studies conducted in the USA, a tobacco-smoking-adjusted increase in the risk for lung

cancer was reported among roofers (Schoenberg *et al.*, 1987; Zahm *et al.*, 1989; Morabia *et al.*, 1992) however, none of these increases was statistically significant. A meta-analysis of the case–control studies reported a statistically significant meta-relative risk (Partanen & Boffetta, 1994).

Since the previous evaluation (IARC, 2010) a few additional studies have been published with information on paving with coal-tar pitch and associated cancers.

2.1 Cohort Studies

Roofing and flooring, and paving of roads involve the use of bitumen and coal-tar pitch. Although coal-tar pitch has been phased out in most countries, some studies published since the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 2010) have included workers in road-paving exposed to both petroleum-based bitumen and coal-tar pitch.

In studies in France, Norway, and Sweden a higher lung cancer mortality or incidence was found among workers first employed while the asphalt mixes still contained some coal tar (before 1970 in France and before 1965 in Norway and Sweden). None of the elevated rates were statistically significant (Bergdahl & Järvholm, 2003; Randem *et al.*, 2003; Stücker *et al.*, 2003). In the French study a higher but statistically non-significant mortality from stomach cancer was found in workers hired before 1970 (Stücker *et al.*, 2003; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-12-Table2.1.pdf).

In a study in Finland raod-paving workers were ranked by coal-tar exposure (see Table 2.1 on-line). Relative to those not exposed to coal tar, the risk for lung cancer was 1.49 for workers exposed to very low level of coal tar (assessed semiquantitatively on the basis of score–years) and 10.7 for those who exposed to intermediate levels of coal tar (p for trend = 0.05) (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2003).

Bladder-cancer incidence by estimated average and cumulative benzo[*a*]pyrene exposure levels was evaluated in paving cohorts from Denmark, Finland, Israel, and Norway (see Table 2.1 on-line). An internal comparison showed indications of a trend with average exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene (*P* for trend not significant) (Burstyn *et al.*, 2007). The overall incidence of bladder cancer in European asphalt workers was similar to that expected (SMR 1.05; Boffetta *et al.*, 2003).

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Six coal-tar pitches and three extracts of coal-tar pitches all produced skin tumours, including carcinomas, when applied to the skin of mice. An extract of roofing-tar pitch had both initiating and promoting activity in separate experiments (IARC, 1985).

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Mechanistic considerations relevant to the cancer hazards from exposure during roofing and paving with coal-tar pitch

4.1.1 Experimental systems

In previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1985, 1987) short-term tests to assess the genotoxicity of coal-tar pitch were reviewed. Coal-tar pitch and roofing-tar emissions were mutagenic in bacteria in the presence of an exogenous metabolic activation system, and in mammalian cells with and without metabolic activation. These agents also induced sister chromatid exchange in Chinese hamster ovary cells and enhanced viral transformation in Syrian hamster embryo cells,

both in the absence and presence of an exogenous metabolic activation system.

Chemical analyses of high-temperature coal-tar pitches identified several polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons that are genotoxic and carcinogenic in experimental studies (IARC, 1985). These include benz[*a*]anthracene, benzo[*b*]fluoranthene, benzo[*k*]fluoranthene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, dibenz[*a,h*]anthracene, chrysene, and indeno[1,2,3-*cd*]pyrene (IARC, 1983, 2010). These polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons may contribute to the genotoxic and tumorigenic activities of coal-tar pitches.

4.1.2 Humans

DNA strand-breaks (measured by single-cell gel electrophoresis; comet assay) and the 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine/deoxyguanosine (8-oxo-dG/dG) ratio (measured by means of HPLC with electrochemical detection) were determined in peripheral blood leukocytes of roofers exposed to dust from coal-tar pitch (coal tar) during removal of existing roofs before applying hot asphalt. When the workers were stratified by 1-hydroxypyrene excretion in the urine, the amount of DNA strand-breaks in their leukocytes increased, and the 8-oxo-dG/dG ratio decreased in a dose-dependent manner (Toraason *et al.*, 2001).

4.2 Synthesis

There is strong evidence from experimental data that coal-tar pitch has a genotoxic mechanism of action. There is moderate evidence in humans for a genotoxic mechanism underlying the effects of exposures during roofing and paving with coal-tar pitch, based on one study.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of coal-tar pitch as encountered in paving and roofing. Coal-tar pitch as encountered in paving and roofing causes cancer of the lung.

Also, a positive association has been observed between exposure to coal-tar pitch as encountered in paving and roofing, and cancer of the bladder.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of coal-tar pitch.

There is strong evidence from experimental data that coal-tar pitch has a genotoxic mechanism of action. There is moderate evidence in humans for a genotoxic mechanism underlying the effects of exposures during roofing and paving with coal-tar pitch, based on one study.

Coal-tar pitch is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Bergdahl IA & Järvholm B (2003). Cancer morbidity in Swedish asphalt workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 43: 104–108. doi:10.1002/ajim.10157 PMID:12494427

Betts WD (1997) *Tar and pitch*. In: *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, 5th ed. New York: John Wiley & Sons

Boffetta P, Burstyn I, Partanen T *et al.* (2003). Cancer mortality among European asphalt workers: an international epidemiological study. I. Results of the analysis based on job titles. *Am J Ind Med*, 43: 18–27. doi:10.1002/ajim.10181 PMID:12494418

Burstyn I, Boffetta P, Kauppinen T *et al.* (2003). Estimating exposures in the asphalt industry for an international epidemiological cohort study of cancer risk. *Am J Ind Med*, 43: 3–17. doi:10.1002/ajim.10183 PMID:12494417

Burstyn I, Kromhout H, Johansen C *et al.* (2007). Bladder cancer incidence and exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons among asphalt pavers. *Occup Environ Med*, 64: 520–526. doi:10.1136/oem.2006.029801 PMID:17332134

Darby FW, Willis AF, Winchester RV (1986). Occupational health hazards from road construction and sealing

work. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 30: 445–454. doi:10.1093/annhyg/30.4.445 PMID:3813349

Hammond EC, Selikoff IJ, Lawther PL, Seidman H (1976). Inhalation of benzpyrene and cancer in man. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*, 271: 1 Neoplasia in116–124. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.1976.tb23100.x PMID:1069493

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1983). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 1, chemical, environmental and experimental data. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 32: 1–453. PMID:6586639

IARC (1985). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 4, bitumens, coal-tars and derived products, shale-oils and soots. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 35: 1–247. PMID:2991123

IARC (2010). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

IPCS (2004). *Asphalt (Bitumen).* (Concise International Chemical Assessment Document 59), Geneva: International Programme on Chemical Safety, WHO

Kauppinen T, Heikkilä P, Partanen T *et al.* (2003). Mortality and cancer incidence of workers in Finnish road paving companies. *Am J Ind Med*, 43: 49–57. doi:10.1002/ajim.10161 PMID:12494421

Kennaway EL & Kennaway NM (1947). A further study of the incidence of cancer of the lung and larynx. *British Journal of Cancer*, 1: 260–298.

Kennaway EL & Kennaway NM (1951). Studies of the incidence of cancer of the lung and larynx. *British Journal of Cancer*, V: 153–158.

McClean MD, Rinehart RD, Sapkota A *et al.* (2007). Dermal exposure and urinary 1-hydroxypyrene among asphalt roofing workers. *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 4: Suppl 1118–126. doi:10.1080/15459620701334756 PMID:17503278

Milham S (1982) *Occupational Mortality in Washington State 1950–1979,* Prepared under Contract No. 210–80–0088, Cincinnati, OH, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Heath.

Morabia A, Markowitz S, Garibaldi K, Wynder EL (1992). Lung cancer and occupation: results of a multicentre case-control study. *Br J Ind Med*, 49: 721–727. PMID:1419861

NIOSH (2000) National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. *Health Effects of Occupational Exposure to Asphalt*. Hazard Review

Partanen T & Boffetta P (1994). Cancer risk in asphalt workers and roofers: review and meta-analysis of epidemiologic studies. *Am J Ind Med*, 26: 721–740. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700260602 PMID:7892824

Pukkala (1995). *Cancer Risk by Social Class and Occupation*, Vol. 7, *Contributions to Epidemiology and Biostatistics*, Basel, Karger.

Randem BG, Langård S, Dale I *et al.* (2003). Cancer incidence among male Norwegian asphalt workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 43: 88–95. doi:10.1002/ajim.10169 PMID:12494425

Schoenberg JB, Stemhagen A, Mason TJ *et al.* (1987). Occupation and lung cancer risk among New Jersey white males. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 79: 13–21. PMID:3474440

Stern FB, Ruder AM, Chen G (2000). Proportionate mortality among unionized roofers and waterproofers. *Am J Ind Med*, 37: 478–492. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(200005)37:5<478::AID-AJIM4>3.0.CO;2-8 PMID:10723042

Stücker I, Meguellati D, Boffetta P *et al.* (2003). Cohort mortality study among French asphalt workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 43: 58–68. doi:10.1002/ajim.10140 PMID:12494422

Swaen GM & Slangen JM (1997). Mortality in a group of tar distillery workers and roofers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 70: 133–137. doi:10.1007/s004200050197 PMID:9253642

Toraason M, Hayden C, Marlow D *et al.* (2001). DNA strand breaks, oxidative damage, and 1-OH pyrene in roofers with coal-tar pitch dust and/or asphalt fume exposure. [Erratum in: Int Arch Occup Environ Health 2002]*Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 74: 396–404. doi:10.1007/s004200100238 PMID:11563602

Zahm SH, Brownson RC, Chang JC, Davis JR (1989). Study of lung cancer histologic types, occupation, and smoking in Missouri. *Am J Ind Med*, 15: 565–578. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700150509 PMID:2741962

COKE PRODUCTION

Coke production and associated exposures were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1983, 1987, and 2005 (IARC, 1984, 1987, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Production process

Coke was first produced commercially in England in the early eighteenth century. By the early to mid-1800s, coke was being widely produced in Europe and the United States of America as the major fuel for blast furnaces.

Coal carbonization is a process that yields metallurgical coke for use in iron-making blast furnaces and other metal-smelting processes. Carbonization entails heating the coal to temperatures as high as 1300 °C in the absence of oxygen to distill out tars and light oils. A gaseous by-product, referred to as coke-oven gas, together with ammonia, water and sulfur compounds are also removed thermally from the coal. The coke that remains after this distillation largely consists of carbon in various crystallographic forms, but also contains the thermally modified remains of various minerals that were in the original coal. These mineral residues, commonly referred to as coke ash are not combustible and are left after the coke is burned. Coke also contains part of the sulfur from the coal. Coke is principally used as a fuel, as a reducing agent and support for other raw materials in iron-making blast furnaces. A much smaller amount of coke is used similarly in cupola furnaces in the foundry industry. The carbonization by-products are usually refined within the coke plant to commodity chemicals such as elemental sulfur, ammonium sulfate, benzene, toluene, xylene and naphthalene. Subsequent processing of these chemicals produces a large number of other chemicals and materials. Coke-oven gas is a valuable heating fuel that is used mainly within steel plants, for example, to fire blast-furnace stoves, to soak furnaces for semi-finished steel, to anneal furnaces and lime kilns as well as to heat the coke ovens themselves (Kaegi *et al.*, 1993).

Coke is mostly produced from slot-type by-product coke ovens. Above the ovens is a roof system from which coal is discharged into each oven. Modern technology includes telescopic charging chutes to minimize dust emissions during charging. Many facilities also include automatic removal and replacement of the charging-hole lid. Volatile gases generated from the coal during carbonization flow to the top of the oven, into the free space and out through standpipes connected to large collecting mains that transport the gases to the by-product plant in which they are processed into various materials. Water is sprayed into the mains to cool the

Table 1.1 Concentrations of PAHs in the air and in urine of workers in coke ovens

Reference Country Year of study	Job/task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	PAH	Air levels (μg/m³)		Urinary levels (μmol/mol creatinine)	
						Mean	Range	Mean	Range
Yrjänheikki *et al.* (1995) Finland 1987–90	Coke oven 4 working areas 10 working areas	160	510 dust; 90 gas	NR	 Fluorene Phenanthrene Benzo[*a*]pyrene	 0.58–24.64 0.16–18.76 0.05–10.30			
Liu *et al.* (2006) China NR	Coke oven	47	47	12	**1-Hydroxypyrene** All Non-smokers Smokers			**Median** 5.7 3.0 6.8	 1.4–12 0.6–6.9 2.6–14.5 (s)
Yang et al. (2007) China NR	Coke oven	101	101	77	Total PAH			**Mean**	
	Top	4 (20)				22.83	SD, 0.86	8.49	3.90
	Side	4 (27)				8.70	SD, 2.22	5.2 [a]	NR
	Bottom	4 (25)				6.04	SD, 1.85	1.79	3.71
	Adjunct workplaces	8 (29)				5.60	SD, 0.87	1.51	3.60
Marczynski *et al.* (2009) Germany 1999–2003	Coke oven	37	37	27	Sum of 16 PAHs 1-Hydroxypyrene Sum of hydroxy-phenanthrene Benzo[*a*]pyrene	22.5 1.0	15.9–91.0 0.4–2.5	 2.0 3.5	 1.1–3.6 2.1–7.5
Rossella *et al.* (2009) Poland NR	Coke oven/ maintenance	50/5	54	54	1-Hydroxypyrene			15.4 [b]	1.1–147.1

NR, not reported; PAH, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons; SD, standard deviation

[a] Read from figure

[b] Median

Conversions used for 1-hydroxypyrene: 1 μmol/mol creatinine = 1.93 μg/g creatinine = 0.013 μmol/L = 2.84 μg/L = 2.84 ng/mL.

gases and to condense out some of the tar. At the end of the coking cycle – which ranges from about 15 to 30 hours –, the coke is pushed into a hot car (quench car). The hot car may or may not have a moveable roof or partial roof to minimize gaseous and particulate emissions. The hot coke is then quenched before being dropped onto a conveyor system for transportation to a blast furnace, storage pile or out of the plant (Kaegi *et al.*, 1993; Crelling *et al.*, 2005). For a more detailed description of the coke production process and coke ovens, the reader is referred to the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC (2010).

In 1990, total worldwide coke production was about 378 million tonnes, a production volume that had remained essentially unchanged since 1970. The former USSR was the largest coke producer (80 million tonnes), followed by the People's Republic of China (73 million tonnes), Japan (53 million tonnes) and the United States of America (USA) (27 million tonnes). Since 1970, production in the former USSR has remained in the 75–85 million tonne range, but massive shifts in production have occurred in the USA, Japan and China. Between 1970 and 1990, production in the USA decreased by more than 50% while Japanese production increased by 50%. During the same period, China increased coke production more than threefold (Kaegi *et al.*, 1993). By 1999, worldwide coke production had declined to about 326 million tonnes, of which 121 million tonnes were produced in China (Terjung, 2000).

1.2 Human exposure

Coke-oven workers are primarily exposed to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs). Concentrations of PAHs in the ambient air and in urine of workers in coke ovens are summarized in Table 1.1. In addition to PAHs, coke-oven workers may be exposed to a large number of compounds, including asbestos, silica, amines, arsenic, cadmium, lead, nickel, vanadium, hydrocarbons, sulfur dioxide, sulfuric acid and aldehydes (IARC, 1984).

More than 30 studies on occupational exposure of coke-oven workers have been reported since 1983, of which six included profiles of three PAHs or more; seven others reported levels of pyrene, benzo[*a*]pyrene or both; the other studies reported composite measures (benzene-soluble fraction, cyclohexane-soluble material) or provided data on biological measurements only. A variety of sites across the coke plants were sampled, and the overall pattern (regardless of the exposure measured) was that topside workers (including lidmen, tar chasers and Larry-car operators) had the highest exposures, followed by workers by the side of the ovens (such as coke-side machine operators, bench-men, door repairers, wharf-men, quenchers, pushers and temperature controllers). Workers in other areas of the plant such as maintenance, office and control workers had the lowest exposures (Table 1.1). Modernization of coke plants, including improved control measures, can substantially reduce exposures (Quinlan *et al.*, 1995c).

2. Cancer in Humans

Occupational exposures during coke production were evaluated most recently in *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010). There was *sufficient evidence* in epidemiological studies for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposures during coke production, although the evidence was not uniform. A marked excess of lung cancer and a clear trend of increasing risk for this cancer with increasing duration of exposure was found in a large cohort study from the USA and Canada (Costantino *et al.*, 1995; see Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-13-Table2.1.pdf). In an even larger study from China there was also a marked lung-cancer excess (Wu, 1988). In cohort studies

from France (Chau *et al.*, 1993), Italy (Franco *et al.*, 1993), Japan (Sakabe *et al.*, 1975), and the Netherlands (Swaen *et al.*, 1991) increased risks for lung cancer were found consistently, although not all results were statistically significant. No excess of lung cancer was observed in three cohort studies of coke-plant workers in the United Kingdom (Buck & Reid, 1956; Davies, 1977; Hurley *et al.*, 1983), but an excess had been found in an earlier record-linkage study in the United Kingdom (Kennaway & Kennaway, 1947). A smoking-adjusted excess risk for lung cancer and a positive association with duration of exposure to coke-oven emissions was found in a population-based case–control study of Chinese women (Wu-Williams *et al.*, 1993; see Table 2.2 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-13-Table2.2.pdf). No further epidemiological studies of coke-oven workers have been published since the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 2010).

Overall, an increased risk for lung cancer was found in three large studies, two of which showed evidence of a dose–response; one study was adjusted for smoking. A lung-cancer excess is supported by several but not all other available studies. Thus, there is evidence from epidemiological studies that lung cancer is causally associated with occupational exposures during coke production. The evidence is inadequate to allow and evaluation for cancer of the bladder and skin.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Samples of tar from coke ovens were previously evaluated in *IARC Monograph* Volume 34 (IARC, 1984). No new studies have been published since then.

3.1 Skin application

Two samples were collected from a modern coke oven: a topside air-particulate sample and a coke-oven main sample. The coke-oven topside sample was found to contain 478 mg/kg benzo[*a*]pyrene (Nesnow *et al.*, 1982, 1983).

The coke-oven main sample was applied topically to groups of 40 male and 40 female SENCAR mice at doses of 0 (control), 0.1, 0.5, 1.0, 2.0 or 4.0 mg (in acetone) per mouse on a weekly basis, except for the highest dose, which was applied twice weekly at 2.0 mg per application, for 50–52 weeks. The incidence of skin carcinomas ranged from 5–98% in groups of treated mice. No carcinomas were observed in the control groups (Nesnow *et al.*, 1983).

The tumour-promoting activity of the coke-oven main sample was tested by repeated weekly dermal applications of 0 (control), 0.1, 0.5, 1.0, 2.0 and 4.0 mg (in acetone) for 34 weeks to groups of 40 male and 40 female SENCAR mice pre-treated (one week earlier) with a dermal dose of 50.5 µg benzo[*a*]pyrene. Skin papilloma incidence was reported to increase from 3–100% over the dose range of the coke-oven main sample tested. No papillomas were observed in the control groups (Nesnow *et al.*, 1983).

The tumour-initiating activity of both samples mentioned above was studied with groups of 40 male and 40 female SENCAR mice that were skin-painted once with 0 (control), 0.1, 0.5, 1.0, 2.0 or 10 mg of each sample dissolved in acetone. The 10-mg dose was administered in split doses of 2.0 mg each for 5 days. Beginning one week later, 2 µg of 12-*O*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate were administered topically, twice weekly. The incidence of skin papillomas and carcinomas was reported after six months and one year, respectively. Both the topside and main samples produced dose-related increases in both papillomas and carcinomas. For the topside sample, the papilloma incidence ranged from 10–100% and the carcinoma incidence was 0–20%, while

for the coke-oven main sample, the incidence of papillomas ranged from 31–100% and of carcinomas from 10–65%. In the control groups, the incidences of papillomas and carcinomas ranged from 5–8% and 0–5%, respectively (Nesnow *et al.*, 1982, 1983).

3.2 Inhalation

3.2.1 Mouse

The carcinogenicity of coke-oven tar (from a USA by-product coke oven) was investigated in C3H mice. In the untreated control group, all 30 mice survived for the duration of the experiment (71 weeks) and did not develop any squamous-cell tumours of the lung. A second group of 33 mice was exposed to a coal-tar aerosol at 300 mg/m^3 for two hours daily, three times weekly, during weeks 35–71 of the experiment. Five squamous-cell tumours of the lung, one of which was malignant, occurred in this group (Horton *et al.*, 1963).

In another experiment, the tar (Tar 1) from the same source as that in the study by Horton *et al.* (1963) and another tar (Tar 2) were separated into phenolic (P-Tar) and non-phenolic (N-Tar) fractions. Both tars were derived from USA by-product coke ovens. Aerosols were produced from these fractions and animals were exposed to the aerosols, separate or in combination, at 120–200 mg/m^3, three times per week for 55 weeks. Six groups of 50 male C3H/HeJ mice were treated with air only (control) or with aerosols of Tar 1, N-Tar 1, N-Tar 1 + P-Tar 1, N-Tar 1 + P-Tar 2 or N-Tar 2 + P-Tar 1. The experiment was terminated at 55 weeks. Lung tumours were recorded in animals that survived beyond 46 weeks. Lung-adenoma incidence was 0/32 (control), 12/13, 16/20, 14/19, 14/25 and 14/23, respectively. Lung-adenocarcinoma incidence was 0/32 (control), 3/13, 0/20, 1/19, 1/25, 0/23, respectively (Tye & Stemmer, 1967).

Groups of 75 CAF_1-JAX and 75 ICR-CF1 female mice were exposed for 90 days to concentrations of coal-tar aerosol of 0.2, 2.0 and 10 mg/m^3 (99% of the droplets were ≤ 5 μm in size), and were observed for a further 21 weeks. The aerosol consisted of a composite mixture of benzene/toluene/xylene fractions of coal tars collected from the effluents of several different coke ovens in the USA. Unexposed controls of each strain of mice were included in the study. Lung-tumour data were not available. The incidence of skin tumours [not further specified] was 1/61, 14/75 and 44/55, respectively, in the exposed ICR-CF1 mice, and 3/225 in the controls. In the exposed groups of CAF_1-JAX mice, the skin-tumour incidences were 0/75, 3/65 and 18/43, respectively, with 0/225 in the controls (MacEwen *et al.*, 1976). [The Working Group noted the lack of solvent controls.]

A group of 75 female ICR-CF1 mice and a group of 50 female CAF_1-JAX mice were exposed to the coal-tar aerosol described above at a concentration of 10 mg/m^3 for six hours per day, five days per week, for 18 months; unexposed controls of both strains were available. Alveologenic carcinomas were observed in 26/61 exposed ICR-CF1 mice, 27/50 exposed CAF_1-JAX mice, 3/68 ICR-CF1 controls and 8/48 CAF_1-JAX controls. The exposed and control groups did not differ in the incidence of other types of tumours, including skin tumours (MacEwen *et al.*, 1976). [The Working Group noted the lack of solvent controls.]

3.2.2 Rat

A group of 40 male and a group of 40 female CFE strain Sprague-Dawley weanling rats were exposed to the aerosol described above at a concentration of 10 mg/m^3 for six hours per day, five days per week, for 18 months; 40 male and 40 female unexposed controls were available. Among treated rats, 38/38 males and 31/38 females developed squamous-cell carcinomas of the lung. In the control groups, no such tumours were observed in 36 males and 37 females (MacEwen *et al.*, 1976). [The Working Group noted the lack of solvent controls.]

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazard from occupational exposures during coke production

4.1.1 Experimental systems

Experimental studies of the effects of exposure to coke-oven emissions have been evaluated in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1984, 1987, 2010). Emissions from coke ovens were mutagenic to *Salmonella typhimurium* TA98 and TA100, both with and without exogenous metabolic activation, and in several mammalian cell systems: L5178Y mouse lymphoma $Tk^{+/-}$ cells with and without metabolic activation, Chinese hamster ovary cells (6-thioguanine resistance), and BALB/c 3T3 cells (ouabain resistance). Coke-oven emissions induced DNA strand-breakage in Syrian hamster embryo cells, and sister chromatid exchange in Chinese hamster ovary cells with and without exogenous metabolic activation. These emissions also caused morphological transformation in BALB/c 3T3 cells without activation.

PAHs are a component of coke-oven mixtures and many carcinogenic PAHs are genotoxic in *in-vitro* and *in-vivo* bioassay systems. Examples are benz[*a*]anthracene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, benzo[*c*]phenanthrene, benzo[*b*]fluoranthene, and benzo[*j*]fluoranthene (IARC, 1984). Many of the genotoxic effects induced by coke-oven emissions in experimental systems have also been found after exposure to individual carcinogenic PAHs (IARC, 1983; Osborne & Crosby, 1987; Harvey, 1991). The extent to which PAHs contribute to the genotoxic activity of coke-oven emissions is not known, but the available evidence strongly suggests that they do make a contribution. Some insight into the role of PAHs in genotoxicity and cancer associated with coke production can be obtained from DNA-adduct studies in experimental animals exposed to coke-oven emissions. In rats exposed to such emissions by inhalation one major adduct was detected by the [^{32}P]-postlabelling procedure. This adduct had the same chromatographic mobility as the major *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-(BPDE)-N^2-deoxyguanosine adduct resulting from incubation of *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide with calf thymus DNA. This adduct was observed in DNA from lung, heart, and liver of the exposed rats. However, the autoradiograms also showed evidence of a complex mixture of unidentified aromatic adducts (Binková *et al.*, 1994). Mice topically exposed to coke-oven emissions showed some evidence of the formation of a BPDE-DNA adduct (Lewtas *et al.*, 1993). Although the studies in exposed rats and mice provided some evidence with respect to an *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide adduct, many other DNA adducts remained unidentified and their contribution to the total DNA-adduct profile cannot be ascertained. In addition, these DNA-adduct studies are dependent on the availability of fully characterized PAH-DNA adduct standards and in many [^{32}P]-postlabelling experiments only the *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adduct was used as a reference. This adduct has been correlated with specific mutations in the oncogene, K_i-*Ras*, found in lung tumours induced by benzo[*a*]pyrene in mice (Ross & Nesnow, 1999). Moreover, K_i-*RAS* mutations are common in human lung tumours (Vineis & Caporaso, 1995).

4.1.2 Humans

As was previously reported (IARC, 1987), peripheral blood lymphocytes of coke-oven workers had increased frequencies of sister chromatid exchange (SCE) compared with age-matched controls. Also, in one study the urine of coke-oven workers was mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* in the presence of an exogenous

metabolic system. Numerous subsequent studies largely confirmed these results.

In an Italian study, no differences in frequencies of chromosome aberrations and micronuclei were found in cultured lymphocytes of 92 coke-oven workers in a steel-production plant and a group of 19 controls from a non-oven plant in the same area (Forni *et al.*, 1996). In Germany, a group of 29 coke-oven workers and a control group were studied for frequencies of DNA single-strand breaks, DNA–protein crosslinks (measured with an alkaline filter-elution assay), SCE, and DNA adducts in lymphocytes. DNA strand-breaks in lymphocytes of coke-oven workers were significantly higher than in controls (Popp *et al.*, 1997). Eleven of 31 male non-smoking coke-oven workers in Poland produced urine that was mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* strain YG1024 in the presence of an exogenous source of metabolic activation, compared with urine samples of 31 male non-smoking controls (Simioli *et al.*, 2004). 8-Oxodeoxyguanosine levels in white blood cells and the amount of DNA damage (measured with the comet assay) in lymphocytes were higher in 20 German coke-oven workers than in 55 controls (Marczynski *et al.*, 2002). Urinary 8-oxodeoxyguanosine concentrations were higher in 55 Taiwan, Chinaese topside coke-oven workers than in 162 side-oven workers (Wu *et al.*, 2003). In another study from Taiwan, China, elevated levels of 8-oxodeoxyguanosine in urine, micronuclei in lymphocytes, and glutathione *S*-transferase in serum were found in 47 workers exposed to coke-oven emissions, compared with the levels in 31 controls (Liu *et al.*, 2006). In a study of 49 Polish coke-oven workers the micronucleus frequency in peripheral blood lymphocytes was related to specific *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA-adduct formation in the same subject (Pavanello *et al.*, 2008a). Chinese coke-oven workers (n = 141) had higher frequencies of micronuclei, nucleoplasmic bridges, and nuclear buds compared with the values in 66 controls; the number of nucleoplasmic bridges and nuclear buds correlated with 1-hydroxypyrene concentrations in urine (Duan *et al.*, 2009).

A significant correlation was found between the concentrations of 1-hydroxypyrene and 8-oxodeoxyguanosine in urine from a group of 91 coke-oven workers in Taiwan, China, compared with 49 controls (Hu *et al.*, 2004), while a Japanese/Chinese study of 119 coke oven workers and 37 controls could not find a correlation between 8-oxodeoxyguanosine levels in leukocytes and 1-hydroxypyrene concentrations in urine (Zhang *et al.*, 2003). In a group of 37 German coke-oven workers the level of 8-oxodeoxyguanosine and the number of DNA strand-breaks (measured with the comet assay) were higher than in 48 controls (Marczynski *et al.*, 2009).

The mutant frequency at the *HPRT* locus (6-thioguanine resistance) in lymphocytes from a population of 43 Italian coke-oven workers was increased compared with the frequency in 26 non-exposed controls, but the difference was not significant. The percentages of the different types of gene alteration were also similar in exposed and non-exposed subjects, based on an analysis of mutations in 161 *HPRT* clones derived from the two groups. Only the frequency of splice mutations in mutant clones derived from coke-oven workers was significantly higher than in controls (Zanesi *et al.*, 1998). No difference in the plasma concentrations of either p53 (mutated or wild-type) or p21(WAF1) protein was found between 66 coke-oven workers and 44 controls in the Czech Republic, but significantly higher amounts of these proteins were found in the subgroup exposed to carcinogenic PAHs at concentrations of < 1 μg/m^3 compared with the group exposed to carcinogenic PAHs > 1 μg/m^3. Overall, a negative correlation between the concentration of p53 protein in plasma and personal exposure to carcinogenic PAHs was found (Rössner *et al.*, 2003). In another study from the Czech Republic, cytogenetic markers (chromosomal aberrations, SCE,

cells with a high frequency of SCE, the heterogeneity index SCE, and polymorphism of the genes *GSTM1* and *NAT2*) were evaluated in the peripheral lymphocytes of 64 coke-oven workers and 34 control subjects from the same plant. All the cytogenetic markers were significantly increased in the exposed workers compared with the control group, also when smoking status was taken into account. No effects of the *GSTM1* and *NAT2* genotypes on the cytogenetic markers were noted (Kalina *et al.*, 1998).

The effect of polymorphisms in genes involved in DNA repair was evaluated by means of the comet assay in isolated peripheral blood lymphocytes from 94 coke-oven workers in North-eastern China and 64 controls. One of the *XRCC1* genotypes, Arg399Gln, was associated with an increased frequency of micronuclei in the coke-oven workers (Cheng *et al.*, 2009).

Coke-oven workers have been extensively studied for the presence of biomarkers of exposure, in some cases with mixed results due to methodological issues, small sample size, inter-individual variability, and confounding factors, such as smoking and diet. However, there are several key studies that show clear relationships between exposures to coke-oven emissions and certain biomarkers. The literature is dominated by studies that examined *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts as a biomarker of exposure. The amount of this adduct has been found to be increased in peripheral blood lymphocytes of male coke-oven workers compared with controls in several studies of different worker populations (Pavanello *et al.*, 1999a, 2004; Chen *et al.*, 2003). In some of these studies, analysis of genetic polymorphisms showed that the *GSTM1-null* detoxifying genotype and some low-activity nucleotide excision-repair (NER) genotypes were associated with higher *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA-adduct formation (Pavanello *et al.*, 1999b, 2004, 2005).

In 35 Dutch coke-oven workers a significant induction of aromatic DNA adducts in lymphocytes and of micronuclei in exfoliated urothelial cells was found compared with the levels in 37 controls (van Delft *et al.*, 2001). When 89 French coke-oven workers were compared with 18 power-plant workers with respect to *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA-adduct levels and genetic polymorphisms in the *CYP1A1*, *GSTM1* and *GSTT1* genes, higher numbers of DNA adducts were detected in individuals with the combined *CYP1A1(1/*2* or **2A/*2A)-GSTM1-null* genotype (Rojas *et al.*, 2000). In Polish coke-oven workers the influence was studied of four polymorphisms of nucleotide excision-repair genes and of *GSTM1* on *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA-adduct levels in lymphocytes and monocytes. The increase in DNA-adduct levels was significantly related to lack of GSTM1 activity and to the low nucleotide excision-repair capacity of the *XPC-PAT*$^{+/+}$ genotype (Pavanello *et al.*, 2005). In other studies by the same group, *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA-adduct levels were significantly increased in peripheral blood lymphocytes of coke-oven workers compared with controls, after adjustment for smoking status and diet (Pavanello *et al.*, 2004, 2008a). In one study from China, formation of the *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-albumin adduct was associated with exposure to coke-oven emissions, after adjustment for smoking status (Wang *et al.*, 2007).

Based on the available evidence from studies in experimental systems, coke-oven emissions are mutagenic in bacteria and in mammalian cells, induce DNA damage, SCE, and morphological cell transformation. DNA-adduct data from experimental studies suggest that coke-oven emissions produce a complex mixture of aromatic adducts, one being identified as *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-N^2-deoxyguanosine. Genotoxic effects of exposures to coke-oven emissions have been studied in

surrogate tissues from populations in industrial settings. Measured end-points include 8-oxodeoxyguanosine levels, DNA strand-breaks, SCE, micronuclei, chromosomal aberrations, and urinary mutagenicity. The increased 8-oxodeoxyguanosine levels reflect increased oxidative stress. This could be a result of redox cycling of PAH quinones and the damaging effects of reactive intermediates on cellular antioxidant levels (Joseph & Jaiswal, 1998; Klaunig & Kamendulis, 2004; Park *et al.*, 2009).

Chronic exposure to PAH in Polish non-smoking coke-oven workers induced both gene-specific (e.g. in the *TP53* gene) and global methylation changes in peripheral blood lymphocytes. These changes were correlated with BPDE-DNA adduct levels and micronuclei in the same subjects (Pavanello *et al.*, 2009).

4.2 Synthesis

Overall, these data strongly indicate a mutagenic/genotoxic mode of action for occupational exposures during coke production, based on experimental and human studies. The data also identify lung as a target, given the major route of human exposure, based on both experimental and human studies. There is ample mechanistic support for the respiratory carcinogenic effects of occupational exposures during coke production in humans, in part through analysis of exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene. This is based on direct measurement of *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts in peripheral blood lymphocytes (surrogate tissue) and on the identification of genotoxic effects consistent with those induced by *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide or benzo[*a*]pyrene. It is also consistent with the known carcinogenic activity of this epoxide in lung tissues in experimental animals. Moreover, the influence of *GST* polymorphisms on levels of *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts is suggestive of the presence of reactive electrophilic intermediates, such as *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide. Since coke-oven emissions are complex mixtures, these exposures could have more than one underlying mechanism of action. The fact that chronic exposure to PAH in Polish non-smoking coke-oven workers induced both gene-specific (e.g. in the *TP53* gene) and global methylation changes in peripheral blood lymphocytes, suggests an epigenetic mechanism.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of coke production. Coke production causes cancer of the lung.

There is *sufficient* evidence in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of samples of tar taken from coke ovens.

There is strong evidence for a genotoxic mechanism underlying the effects of occupational exposures during coke production, based on both experimental and human studies.

The detection of anti-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide-DNA adducts in the peripheral blood lymphocytes in exposed populations suggests the participation of benzo[*a*]pyrene in the genotoxic mechanism for this exposure in humans.

Coke production is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Binková B, Dobiás L, Wolff T, Srám RJ (1994). 32P-postlabeling analysis of DNA adducts in tissues of rats exposed to coke-oven emissions. *Mutat Res*, 307: 355–363. PMID:7513816

Buck C & Reid DD (1956). Cancer in coking plant workers. *Br J Ind Med*, 13: 265–269. PMID:13364156

Chau N, Bertrand JP, Mur JM *et al.* (1993). Mortality in retired coke oven plant workers. *Br J Ind Med*, 50: 127–135. PMID:8435345

Chen ML, Lee BC, Lu PL *et al.* (2003). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-deoxyribonucleic acid (PAH-DNA)

adduct levels and exposure to coke oven emissions among workers in Taiwan. *Arch Environ Health*, 58: 298–305. doi:10.3200/AEOH.58.5.298-305 PMID:14738276

Cheng J, Leng S, Li H *et al.* (2009). Suboptimal DNA repair capacity predisposes coke-oven workers to accumulate more chromosomal damages in peripheral lymphocytes. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 18: 987–993. doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-08-0763

Costantino JP, Redmond CK, Bearden A (1995). Occupationally related cancer risk among coke oven workers: 30 years of follow-up. *J Occup Environ Med*, 37: 597–604. doi:10.1097/00043764-199505000-00009 PMID:7640988

Crelling JC, Hagemann HW, Sauter DH *et al.* (2005). *Coal*. In: *Ullmann's Encyclopedia of Industrial Chemistry*, 5th ed., Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA [online version]

Davies GM (1977). A mortality study of coke oven workers in two South Wales integrated steelworks. *Br J Ind Med*, 34: 291–297. PMID:588485

Duan H, Leng S, Pan Z *et al.* (2009). Biomarkers measured by cytokinesis-block micronucleus cytome assay for evaluating genetic damages induced by polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Mutat Res*, 677: 93–99. PMID:19540355

Forni A, Guanti G, Bukvic N *et al.* (1996). Cytogenetic studies in coke oven workers. *Toxicol Lett*, 88: 185–189. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(96)03736-8 PMID:8920735

Franco F, Chellini E, Seniori Costantini A *et al.* (1993). Mortality in the coke oven plant of Carrara, Italy. *Med Lav*, 84: 443–447. PMID:8177128

Harvey RG (1991). *Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons: chemistry and carcinogenicity*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge; New York.

Horton AW, Tye R, Stemmer KL (1963). Experimental carcinogenesis of the lung. Inhalation of gaseous formaldehyde or an aerosol of coal tar by C3H mice. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 30: 31–43. PMID:13964040

Hu CW, Wu MT, Chao MR *et al.* (2004). Comparison of analyses of urinary 8-hydroxy-2′-deoxyguanosine by isotope-dilution liquid chromatography with electrospray tandem mass spectrometry and by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom*, 18: 505–510. doi:10.1002/rcm.1367 PMID:14966860

Hurley JF, Archibald RM, Collings PL *et al.* (1983). The mortality of coke workers in Britain. *Am J Ind Med*, 4: 691–704. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700040603 PMID:6650509

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1983). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 1, chemical, environmental and experimental data. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 32: 1–453. PMID:6586639

IARC (1984). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 3, industrial exposures in aluminium production, coal gasification, coke production, and iron and steel founding. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 34: 1–219.

IARC (2010). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

Joseph P & Jaiswal AK (1998). NAD(P)H:quinone oxidoreductase 1 reduces the mutagenicity of DNA caused by NADPH:P450 reductase-activated metabolites of benzo(a)pyrene quinones. *Br J Cancer*, 77: 709–719. PMID:9514048

Kaegi D, Addes V, Valia H, Grant M (1993). *Coal conversion processes, carbonization*. In: *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, 5th ed., New York: John Wiley & Sons

Kalina I, Brezáni P, Gajdosová D *et al.* (1998). Cytogenetic monitoring in coke oven workers. *Mutat Res*, 417: 9–17. PMID:9729241

Kennaway EL & Kennaway NM (1947). A further study of the incidence of cancer of the lung and larynx. *British Journal of Cancer*, 1: 260–298.

Klaunig JE & Kamendulis LM (2004). The role of oxidative stress in carcinogenesis. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*, 44: 239–267. doi:10.1146/annurev.pharmtox.44.101802.121851 PMID:14744246

Lewtas J, Mumford J, Everson RB *et al.* (1993). Comparison of DNA adducts from exposure to complex mixtures in various human tissues and experimental systems. *Environ Health Perspect*, 99: 89–97. doi:10.2307/3431463 PMID:8319665

Liu A-L, Lu W-Q, Wang Z-Z *et al.* (2006). Elevated levels of urinary 8-hydroxy-2 -deoxyguanosine, lymphocytic micronuclei, and serum glutathione S-transferase in workers exposed to coke oven emissions. *Environ Health Perspect*, 114: 673–677. PMID:16675419

MacEwen JD, Hall A 3rd, Scheel LD (1976). *Experimental oncogenesis in rats and mice exposed to coal tar aerosols*. In: *Proceedings of the Seventh Annual Conference on Environmental Toxicology, 13–15 October 1976, Dayton, OH* (*AMRL Technical Report No. 76–125*), Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, OH: Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory.

Marczynski B, Pesch B, Wilhelm M *et al.* (2009). Occupational exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and DNA damage by industry: a nationwide study in Germany. *Arch Toxicol*, 83: 947–957. doi:10.1007/s00204-009-0444-9 PMID:19543712

Marczynski B, Rihs HP, Rossbach B *et al.* (2002). Analysis of 8-oxo-7,8-dihydro-2′-deoxyguanosine and DNA strand breaks in white blood cells of occupationally exposed workers: comparison with ambient

monitoring, urinary metabolites and enzyme polymorphisms. *Carcinogenesis*, 23: 273–281. doi:10.1093/carcin/23.2.273 PMID:11872632

Nesnow S, Triplett LL, Slaga TJ (1982). Comparative tumor-initiating activity of complex mixtures from environmental particulate emissions on SENCAR mouse skin. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 68: 829–834. PMID:6951092

Nesnow S, Triplett LL, Slaga TJ (1983). Mouse skin tumor initiation-promotion and complete carcinogenesis bioassays: mechanisms and biological activities of emission samples. *Environ Health Perspect*, 47: 255–268. doi:10.1289/ehp.8347255 PMID:6825618

Osborne MR, Crosby NT (1987). *Benzopyrenes*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, England.

Park JH, Mangal D, Frey AJ *et al.* (2009). Aryl hydrocarbon receptor facilitates DNA strand breaks and 8-oxo-2′-deoxyguanosine formation by the aldo-keto reductase product benzo[a]pyrene-7,8-dione. *J Biol Chem*, 284: 29725–29734. PMID:19726680

Pavanello S, Bollati V, Pesatori AC *et al.* (2009). Global and gene-specific promoter methylation changes are related to anti-B[a]PDE-DNA adduct levels and influence micronuclei levels in polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-exposed individuals. *International Journal of Cancer*, 125: 1692–1697.

Pavanello S, Favretto D, Brugnone F *et al.* (1999a). HPLC/fluorescence determination of anti-BPDE-DNA adducts in mononuclear white blood cells from PAH-exposed humans. *Carcinogenesis*, 20: 431–435. doi:10.1093/carcin/20.3.431 PMID:10190558

Pavanello S, Gabbani G, Mastrangelo G *et al.* (1999b). Influence of GSTM1 genotypes on anti-BPDE-DNA adduct levels in mononuclear white blood cells of humans exposed to PAH. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 72: 238–246. doi:10.1007/s004200050367 PMID:10491778

Pavanello S, Kapka L, Siwinska E *et al.* (2008a). Micronuclei related to anti-B[a]PDE-DNA adduct in peripheral blood lymphocytes of heavily polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-exposed nonsmoking coke-oven workers and controls. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 17: 2795–2799. doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-08-0346

Pavanello S, Pulliero A, Siwinska E *et al.* (2005). Reduced nucleotide excision repair and GSTM1-null genotypes influence anti-B[a]PDE-DNA adduct levels in mononuclear white blood cells of highly PAH-exposed coke oven workers. *Carcinogenesis*, 26: 169–175. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgh303 PMID:15471894

Pavanello S, Siwinska E, Mielzynska D, Clonfero E (2004). GSTM1 null genotype as a risk factor for anti-BPDE-DNA adduct formation in mononuclear white blood cells of coke-oven workers. *Mutat Res*, 558: 53–62. PMID:15036119

Popp W, Vahrenholz C, Schell C *et al.* (1997). DNA single strand breakage, DNA adducts, and sister chromatid exchange in lymphocytes and phenanthrene and pyrene metabolites in urine of coke oven workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 54: 176–183. doi:10.1136/oem.54.3.176 PMID:9155778

Quinlan R, Kowalczyk G, Gardiner K, Calvert I (1995c). Exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in coal liquefaction workers: impact of a workwear policy on excretion of urinary 1-hydroxypyrene. *Occup Environ Med*, 52: 600–605. doi:10.1136/oem.52.9.600 PMID:7550800

Rojas M, Cascorbi I, Alexandrov K *et al.* (2000). Modulation of benzo[a]pyrene diolepoxide-DNA adduct levels in human white blood cells by CYP1A1, GSTM1 and GSTT1 polymorphism. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 35–41. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.1.35 PMID:10607731

Ross JA & Nesnow S (1999). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons: correlations between DNA adducts and ras oncogene mutations. *Mutat Res*, 424: 155–166. PMID:10064858

Rossella F, Campo L, Pavanello S *et al.* (2009). Urinary polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and monohydroxy metabolites as biomarkers of exposure in coke oven workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 66: 509–516. doi:10.1136/oem.2008.042796 PMID:19221113

Rössner P Jr, Binková B, Srám RJ (2003). The influence of occupational exposure to PAHs on the blood plasma levels of p53 and p21WAF1 proteins. *Mutat Res*, 535: 87–94. PMID:12547286

Sakabe H, Tsuchiya K, Takekura N *et al.* (1975). Lung cancer among coke oven workers. *Industrial Health*, 13: 57–68. doi:10.2486/indhealth.13.57

Simioli P, Lupi S, Gregorio P *et al.* (2004). Non-smoking coke oven workers show an occupational PAH exposure-related increase in urinary mutagens. *Mutat Res*, 562: 103–110. PMID:15279833

Swaen GMH, Slangen JJM, Volovics A *et al.* (1991). Mortality of coke plant workers in The Netherlands. *Br J Ind Med*, 48: 130–135. PMID:1998607

Terjung J (2000). *World coal and coke market, presence and future*. 4th European Coke and Ironmaking Congress, Paris

Tye R & Stemmer KL (1967). Experimental carcinogenesis of the lung. II. Influence of phenols in the production of carcinoma. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 39: 175–186. PMID:18623937

van Delft JHM, Steenwinkel M-S, van Asten JG *et al.* (2001). Biological monitoring the exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons of coke oven workers in relation to smoking and genetic polymorphisms for GSTM1 and GSTT1. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 45: 395–408. doi:10.1016/S0003-4878(00)00065-X PMID:11418090

Vineis P & Caporaso N (1995). Tobacco and cancer: epidemiology and the laboratory. *Environ Health Perspect*, 103: 156–160. doi:10.2307/3432271 PMID:7737063

Wang H, Chen W, Zheng H *et al.* (2007). Association between plasma BPDE-Alb adduct concentrations and

DNA damage of peripheral blood lymphocytes among coke oven workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 64: 753–758. doi:10.1136/oem.2006.030445 PMID:17449561

Wu MT, Pan CH, Huang YL *et al.* (2003). Urinary excretion of 8-hydroxy-2-deoxyguanosine and 1-hydroxypyrene in coke-oven workers. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 42: 98–105. doi:10.1002/em.10176 PMID:12929122

Wu W (1988). Occupational cancer epidemiology in the People's Republic of China. *J Occup Med*, 30: 968–974. doi:10.1097/00043764-198812000-00017 PMID:3068337

Wu-Williams AH, Xu ZY, Blot WJ *et al.* (1993). Occupation and lung cancer risk among women in northern China. *Am J Ind Med*, 24: 67–79. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700240107 PMID:8352293

Yang X, Zheng J, Bai Y *et al.* (2007). Using lymphocyte and plasma Hsp70 as biomarkers for assessing coke oven exposure among steel workers. *Environ Health Perspect*, 115: 1573–1577. PMID:18007987

Yrjänheikki E, Pyy L, Hakala E *et al.* (1995). Exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in a new coking plant. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 56: 782–787.

Zanesi N, Mognato M, Pizzato M *et al.* (1998). Determination of HPRT mutant frequency and molecular analysis of T-lymphocyte mutants derived from coke-oven workers. *Mutat Res*, 412: 177–186. PMID:9539972

Zhang J, Ichiba M, Hanaoka T *et al.* (2003). Leukocyte 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine and aromatic DNA adduct in coke-oven workers with polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon exposure. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 76: 499–504. doi:10.1007/s00420-003-0449-2 PMID:12844269

MINERAL OILS, UNTREATED OR MILDLY TREATED

Mineral oils were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1983 and 1987 (IARC, 1984, 1987). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Mineral oils (also known as base oils, mineral base oils or lubricant base oils) are chemical substances prepared from naturally occurring crude petroleum oil. Crude oil is distilled first at atmospheric pressure and then under high vacuum to yield vacuum distillates and residual fractions that can be further refined to mineral oils. Mineral oils refined from petroleum crude oils are complex and variable mixtures of straight and branched-chain paraffinic, naphthenic (cycloparaffinic), and aromatic hydrocarbons having carbon numbers of 15 or more and boiling points in the range of 300–600°C (IARC, 1984).

Mineral oils are described by several dozen generic "petroleum stream" Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) numbers. Many mineral oils may have more than one CAS number because different refiners submitted slightly different descriptions for similar refining streams when CAS numbers were being assigned (both in the United States of America and Europe) (CONCAWE, 1997).

The hydrocarbon composition and physical characteristics of a mineral oil depend on both the composition of the original crude oil and the processes used during refining (e.g. solvent extraction, hydro-treatment) (CONCAWE, 1997). Production processes of mineral oils have changed substantially over time (IARC, 1987; Tolbert, 1997). In the past, many mineral oils were only mildly refined and contained significant levels of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs). Acid treatment was initially used to remove PAHs and other impurities and to improve the technical properties of the finished oils. In recent decades, acid treatment has largely been replaced by extensive refining with solvent extraction and/or hydro-treatment, which has further reduced the level of PAHs and other contaminants. Mineral oils have been produced by means of the severe hydro-treatment procedure since the 1960s (Kane *et al.*, 1984; Mackerer *et al.*, 2003). Regulatory pressures in the USA further encouraged the move to highly refined mineral oils in the mid-1980s (Woskie *et al.*, 2003).

There are several assays that can be used to determine if a mineral oil is highly or severely refined (Mackerer *et al.*, 2003). Two useful

short-term assays that are widely used by mineral-oil manufacturers are the modified Ames test (ASTM, 1996) and the IP346 assay (Institute for Petroleum, 1985, 1993; CONCAWE, 1994). The modified Ames test measures the amount of extractable mutagenic activity in a mineral-oil sample; mineral oils with a mutagenicity index ≤ 1.0 in this assay are considered highly or severely refined. The IP346 assay measures the amount of material extractable in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO): mineral oils with a DMSO-extractable content < 3% in the IP346 assay are considered highly or severely refined. Naphthenic mineral oils tend to have higher non-mutagenic DMSO extractables and some naphthenic oils can give a false-positive result in the IP346 assay. The modified Ames test can give conclusive results if the outcome of the IP346 assay is high.

1.2 Uses

A wide variety of mineral oil-containing products including lubricants as well as products intended for non-lubricant purposes are manufactured for different applications. Lubricant products include engine oils, transmission fluids, gear oils, hydraulic fluids, as well as metalworking fluids (also known as metal-removal fluids). Metalworking fluids may be different from other mineral oil-containing products due to the types of additives used, the additive treatment rates, and contaminants – including those of microbial origin – that are associated with use. "Non-lubricant" products include agricultural spray oils, printing inks, tyre oils, etc. Oil mists or aerosols can arise from the use of mineral oil both as lubricant and as non-lubricant. In practice, oil aerosols may be generated by several mechanisms such as aeration, contact with a fast-moving surface, or by heating. Important applications associated with potential generation of oil aerosols are metal-working, textile machinery, rock drills, aerosol lubrication, agriculture sprays, concrete mould release agents, corrosion preventatives, printing inks, rubber extenders, lubricant-blending in open processes, and applications in food and pharmaceutical preparations (CONCAWE, 1986; Urbanus *et al.*, 2003; ACGIH, 2007). The particle size of the mists, aerosols or fogs is likely to differ for each of these processes (IARC, 1984).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

There are several occupational environments in which an oil mist can be generated. In these situations the opportunities for dermal exposure or inhalation exposure, with concomitant ingestion, are substantial. Such occupations include metalworking, printing-press operating, and cotton- and jute-spinning (Tolbert, 1997). According to the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83), approximately 1 million workers (including approximately 390,000 women) in the USA were potentially exposed to mineral oil (NIOSH, 1990).

A small number of studies have evaluated respiratory morbidity from exposure to mineral-oil mist among newspaper pressmen, marine engineers, cable oilers, and tunnel blasters. Mineral-oil aerosol concentrations in these studies ranged from approximately 0.3 mg/m^3 (Bakke *et al.*, 2001) to about 3 mg/m^3 (Skyberg *et al.*, 1992; Svendsen & Hilt, 1997, 1999; Bukowski, 2003). Values of up to >20 mg/m^3 were recorded in earlier studies (Goldstein *et al.*, 1970).

Ambient mineral-oil mist concentrations were measured in the engine rooms of ships: the typical lubricating oil (b.p. 300–700°C) is a solvent-refined mineral oil containing paraffins, cycloparaffins, aromatic hydrocarbons, and additives. The air concentrations of oil mist in the engine rooms of different ships varied from not detectable to 0.53 mg/m^3 (mean 0.24 mg/m^3). The levels of hydrocarbons varied from 0.2 to

14.5 mg/m^3 (Svendsen & Børresen, 1999). [The level of refinement of these oils was not reported.]

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

The non-occupationally involved general population may be exposed to mineral oils through ingestion of contaminated foodstuffs. In a study conducted in Switzerland, Grob *et al.* (2001) analysed mineral oil in the fat or in a raw extract from animal feed or foodstuffs. The average concentration in the feed was 100 mg/kg, with a maximum of 1000 mg/kg, 25 mg/kg in animal body fat (maximum, 150 mg/kg) and 30 mg/kg in the fat phase of eggs (maximum, 80 mg/kg). Paraffin oil is used for feed production, which may account for part of the contamination problem (e.g. in eggs). [The level of refinement of these mineral oils was not reported.]

2. Cancer in Humans

2.1 Introduction

Mineral oils comprise a diverse set of agents used for a wide range of industrial operations. There is evidence that mineral oils vary in their potential to cause cancer with the degree of treatment or processing. Hydro-treatment and solvent extraction reduce the PAH content, and thus the carcinogenicity of the oils. Untreated and mildly treated oils have been classified as Group-1 carcinogens, with *sufficient evidence* from studies in humans that mineral oils (containing various additives and impurities) that have been used in occupations such as mule-spinning, metal machining and jute-processing are carcinogenic to humans.

A major challenge in making an overall assessment of the carcinogenicity of mineral oils is this diversity in processing, with incomplete information on the extent of processing in specific industrial applications. Mineral oils are typically used as part of a complex mixture for such applications as metalworking, lubrication, and cooling. The additional processing and combining with other agents makes attribution of risk specifically to mineral oils difficult (Woskie *et al.*, 2003).

2.2 Cancer of the skin/scrotum

The evidence from a series of case reports and case series for skin cancer, particularly of the scrotum, over the period from the early 1900s through the 1960s, was reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 34 (IARC, 1984). Five large case series of mule-spinners had been reported, each with over 100 scrotal cancers (Green, 1910; Southam & Wilson, 1922; Henry & Irvine, 1936; Henry, 1947), with sizable numbers of cases in other exposed populations. Despite the inherent limitations in case series as a source of information, the numbers of cases observed, the rarity of scrotal cancer, and the intensity of the direct exposure of the skin in these jobs during that time period render these case series highly informative. Scrotal cancer is virtually pathognomonic for occupational exposure, in part as a result of these historical case series.

Over the intervening period since the 1960s nothing has challenged the assessment of *sufficient evidence* of human carcinogenicity based on the historical evidence pertaining to skin cancer. In a cohort of 792 Swedish metalworkers exposed to oil mist there were four cases of scrotal cancer, all among 242 men employed as turners, versus 0 expected overall (Järvholm *et al.*, 1981). The same group (Järvholm *et al.*, 1985) reported on a cohort of 682 bearing-ring industry workers and found working as a lathe operator to be associated with scrotal cancer (four observed, 0.3 expected, $P < 0.001$). Zhao *et al.* (2005) studied a cohort of 5049 male aerospace workers in the USA and found a significantly increased risk for skin melanoma (see Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/

vol100F/100F-14-Table2.1.pdf). Case series indicative of an increased risk for scrotal cancer continue to be published based on historical exposures. Pressmen working in a wax-manufacturing department in an oil refinery in the USA had a marked excess of scrotal cancer based on 11 cases in men working >10 years during the period 1937–56, which corresponds to a crude rate of 806 per 100,000 relative to a general population rate estimated at 0.15 per 100,000 (Hendricks *et al.*, 1959). Tool setters and tool fitters in the West Midlands area of England showed notably elevated risk for scrotal cancer over the period 1936–1976 (Waldron *et al.*, 1984).

Several epidemiological studies were able to detect the expected increased risk for skin cancer in general, or scrotal cancer in particular, but since these cancers are rarely fatal, studies based on cancer mortality were of limited use to address the question. Roush *et al.* (1982) studied squamous-cell carcinoma of the scrotum in a case–control study in Connecticut, USA, among men diagnosed between 1935 and 1973 (see Table 2.2 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.2.pdf). Occupations associated with exposure to cutting oils, including tool or machine setters, screw-machine operators, machinists, and machine operators, were examined and showed an odds ratio of 10.5 (95%CI: 4.0–36.9).

2.3 Other cancers

The more rigorous epidemiological studies pertain to the occupations in which mineral oils are used in various formulations and in different degrees, including metal workers, machinists, jute workers, and others. Given the time period and setting, the mineral oils studied were likely to be highly treated. At the time of the previous *IARC Monograph* there were several studies of workers in these industries, mostly based solely on job title and industry of employment and limited in detail regarding exposure (IARC, 1984). Exposure to mineral oil was inferred based solely on job title or self-reported exposure. Whereas dermal exposure is the primary route of exposure for skin/scrotal cancer, for other sites and under improved hygienic conditions, aerosols are of equal or greater concern.

Focusing on studies that made attempts to address exposure to mineral oil directly, there has been sporadic and inconsistent support for an association with bladder cancer (Ugnat *et al.*, 2004; Friesen *et al.*, 2009; see Table 2.3 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.3.pdf and Table 2.4 at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.4.pdf), stomach cancer (Zhao *et al.*, 2005; see Table 2.5 at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.5.pdf and Table 2.6 at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.6.pdf), rectal cancer (Gerhardsson de Verdier *et al.*, 1992; Eisen *et al.*, 2001; see Table 2.7 at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.7.pdf and Table 2.8 at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.8.pdf), pancreatic cancer (Yassi *et al.*, 2003), sinonasal cancers (Roush *et al.*, 1980), laryngeal cancer (Ahrens *et al.*, 1991; Eisen *et al.*, 1992), and lung cancer (Rønneberg *et al.*, 1988; Acquavella *et al.*, 1993; see Table 2.9, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.9.pdf and Table 2.10 at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-14-Table2.10.pdf). Individual studies have suggested that mineral oil may be related to a range of other cancers, including those of the larynx and pancreas, based on studies of metal-workers and related manufacturing occupations. For each of these, however, there are studies of equal or higher quality that do not show associations, and in many cases there are inconsistent results within the same study across exposure indices. There have been varyious interpretations of the strength of the

evidence linking exposure to metalworking fluids to a range of cancer sites (Tolbert, 1997; Calvert *et al.*, 1998; Mirer, 2003; Savitz, 2003). The diversity in exposures to other agents, including synthetic oils and contaminants, and the presence of accompanying unrelated occupational exposures make the relevance of many studies tenuous in the assessment of the carcinogenic hazards of exposures to mineral oils.

Lung cancer is the most extensively investigated cancer in these occupations. While there are several studies supporting an association with exposed workers in certain occupations (Coggon *et al.*, 1984; Rønneberg *et al.*, 1988; Acquavella *et al.*, 1993; Droste *et al.*, 1999; Zhao *et al.*, 2005), the exposures are not generally to mineral oils alone, given the use of other compounds in the metal-working trade (see Table 2.9, online), the most detailed study did not show an association (Schroeder *et al.*, 1997; Eisen *et al.*, 2001), and smoking was not controlled for in some of the studies that did show an association (Coggon *et al.*, 1984; Zhao *et al.*, 2005; see Table 2.10 online).

The case–control studies have typically been better able to address confounding, whereas the cohort studies have tended to examine exposure in more detail. However, even in the most sophisticated studies, it was not possible to isolate highly-treated from untreated or mildly-treated oils, nor are mineral oils used in isolation from other agents. As noted in several reviews (Tolbert, 1997; Woskie *et al.*, 2003), in metal-working there is concomitant exposure to a range of chemicals including biocides, metal dusts, and by-products of oil heating. Even in the study of the Michigan automobile-manufacturing workers – the most detailed study of metal-workers – the authors identified categories of exposure to straight-chain and soluble lubricating fluids, but were not able to separate or characterize mineral-oil exposures in particular (Eisen *et al.*, 1992).

2.4 Synthesis

There is consistent evidence that untreated or mildly-treated mineral oils cause cancer of the skin, specifically of the scrotum, in humans. The association is highly unlikely to be due to chance, bias, or confounding, given the large case series, supportive epidemiological studies, the rarity of scrotal cancer, and the intensity of exposure during the period of interest.

There were insufficient data regarding cancer at other sites to draw conclusions on the carcinogenicity in humans for untreated, mildly-treated, or highly-treated mineral oils. Recent studies did address highly-treated mineral oils, but were limited in their assessment of this agent, instead addressing all aspects of the work environment. Exposure to mineral oils in metal-working and other industries has not been easy to assess, and other agents of concern are known to be present in such work environments. Given these limitations in assessing exposure to mineral oils, and the lack of consistency in study findings by cancer site, the evidence for carcinogenicity of highly-treated mineral oils remains insufficient to draw conclusions.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Petroleum-derived base oils and formulated products have been tested for their potential carcinogenicity in mice and other experimental animals, by skin application, in feeding studies, by inhalation exposure, and by subcutaneous and intra-peritoneal injection. In *IARC Monograph* Volume 33 (IARC, 1984), the Working Group divided petroleum materials into eight classes plus two subclasses (6.2, 7.2) based on the extent of refinement. Class 8 covers petroleum-derived materials not otherwise classified, and this category is not considered in this *Monograph*. This categorization scheme is still useful and applied here despite the fact that the terminology used

to describe the material tested in recent studies may not be easily conducive to allocate it to a given class. Table 3.1 presents the most representative animal cancer bioassays with mineral oils evaluated in *IARC Monograph* Volume 33 (IARC, 1984), as well as studies published since that time.

3.1 Earlier studies

Vacuum-distillate fractions [class 1], either naphthenic or paraffinic in nature, produced a significant skin-tumour response. De-waxing of these distillates did not appreciably alter their activity (Halder *et al.*, 1984; IARC, 1984; Kane *et al.*, 1984). Early studies demonstrated that both light and heavy fractions of paraffinic oils induced benign and malignant skin tumours (Twort & Ing, 1928). De-waxed paraffinic distillates induced both benign and malignant skin tumours in mouse skin (Gradiski *et al.*, 1983). Jute-batching oil induced benign and malignant skin tumours and promoted tumours in mice pre-treated with 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthacene (Roe *et al.*, 1967).

Acid-treated oils [class 2] of either naphthenic or paraffinic origin, induced benign and malignant skin-tumour responses (Twort & Lyth, 1939; Bingham *et al.*, 1965; Bingham & Horton, 1966), unless severe acid treatment had been applied (Twort & Lyth, 1939).

Solvent-refined oils (raffinates) [class 3], either naphthenic or paraffinic in nature, generally did not produce skin tumours (Gradiski *et al.*, 1983). However, in one study skin application of solvent-extracted paraffinic oil induced one malignant tumour, which suggests possible skin tumour-inducing activity (Doak *et al.*, 1983).

Hydro-treated oils [class 4], principally paraffinic in nature, induced a moderate incidence of skin tumours when treatment of the distillates was mild (Halder *et al.*, 1984; Kane *et al.*, 1984), while no tumour was induced by severely hydro-treated oils. The combination of mild hydro-treatment and solvent extraction appears to reduce or eliminate skin tumorigenicity.

White oils and petrolatums [class 5], which are produced from oils that have undergone the most severe acid and/or hydro-treatment, showed no activity in the skin-tumour bioassay (Doak *et al.*, 1983). Single subcutaneous injection of three different grades of medicinal petrolatum into mice induced no treatment-related tumours during the following 18 months (Oser *et al.*, 1965). Similarly, a lifetime study in rats involving subcutaneous injection of liquid paraffin and yellow petrolatum did not show local tumours, except a single osteosarcoma near the site of yellow petrolatum injection (Schmähl & Reiter, 1953). Intra-peritoneal injection of two highly refined food-grade mineral oils into certain strains of mice induced plasma-cell neoplasms and reticulum-cell sarcomas (Potter & Boyce, 1962; Bober *et al.*, 1976). Mice receiving repeated intra-peritoneal injections of liquid paraffin developed peritoneal reticulum-cell sarcomas, plasma-cell leukaemia, myeloid leukaemia and lymphocytic leukaemia (Rask-Nielsen & Ebbesen, 1965). In two feeding studies in which three different samples of medicinal-grade petrolatum and liquid paraffin were fed to rats for two years at either 2% or 5% of the diet, no significant increase in tumour incidence was observed (Schmähl & Reiter, 1953; Oser *et al.*, 1965). Although the experimental design was considered inadequate and the exposure period was short, inhalation of light white naphthenic aerosol (100 mg/m^3) by mice, rats, hamsters, and rabbits from 6–13 months did not produce a significant increase in tumours in any of the species tested (Wagner *et al.*, 1964).

Solvent extracts [class 6.1], which are by-products of solvent refining and sometimes called aromatic oils, induced a significant increase in incidence of skin tumours (Gradiski *et al.*, 1983). The same response was produced with highly concentrated aromatic extracts of medicinal-grade petrolatums (Kane *et al.*, 1984).

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of mineral oils in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Oil Type Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Rats, Fisher (M, F) 104 wk Shoda *et al.* (1997)	Oral administration of 0, 2.5 or 5% liquid paraffin (class 1) in the diet. Controls received basal diet 50 animals/sex/group	All neoplastic lesions were similar to those that occur spontaneously; no significant difference was detected.	NS	Granulomatous inflammation was observed on the mesenteric lymph nodes, but this was not associated with any neoplastic lesion.
Chester-Beatty stock mice (M) 84 wk Roe *et al.* (1967)	Skin application 14 applications of 0.25 ml of JBO (class 1) during 9½ wk Untreated, JBO, DMBA, JBO + DMBA 24 animals/group	Mice with malignant tumours Untreated 0/24, JBO 6/24*, DMBA 2/24, JBO + DMBA 11/24**	* $P = 0.01$ ** $P = 0.004$	DMBA Benzo[*a*]pyrene content of JOB < 1 mg/kg.
Mice, C3H, C57BL, and Rockland Farm (M, F) 310 d Gilman & Vesselinovitch (1955)[1]	Skin application of soluble cutting oil (class 7.1) 3×/wk Different mouse strains were untreated or treated with 1 of 2 undiluted or diluted oils containing additives. 20–40 animals/group	Oil, strain:% mice with skin tumours,% carcinomas Controls: 0,0 1 Undiluted, C3H: 61,22 1 Diluted, C3H: 19,3 2 Undiluted, C3H: 58,19 2 Undiluted, C57BL: 27,3 2 Undiluted, RF: 33,7	NR	Sulfurized mineral-oil base from straight-run distillate in 40% water emulsion. Usually further diluted with eight parts of water before use.
Mice, CFLP (F) 104 wk Grimmer *et al.* (1982b) [1]	Skin application of used gasoline-engine oil (class 7.2), twice/wk of 0.1 ml of 3:1 mixture of acetone/ cyclohexane containing doses of 0, 0.625, 1.875, 5.625 mg of engine oil artificially aged 65 animals/group	Papillomas/carcinomas,% tumour-bearing mice 0/1, 1.5 3/0, 4.6 8/9, 26.6 14/29, 69.4	Dose-related increase $P < 0.01$	No comparison with unused oil, but the strong dose-response and the large number of animals per group are noted
Mice, Swiss Albino (F) 1 d initiation, 30 wk promotion study Agarwal *et al.* (1985)	Topical application of JBO (class 1) and six of its reconstituted fractions. Mice were initiated with single application of 100 µl of vehicle, JBO, or one of six reconstituted fractions. This was followed by 5 µg TPA 3×/wk for 30 wk 10 animals/group	Treatment: papilloma + keratoacanthoma/mice Untreated: 0/10 Vehicle control: 0/9 JBO: *4/7 (57%) 6 Fractions: 4/9 (44%), 0/3, 0/5, 1/9 (11%), 2/6 (33%), 3/8 (37%) DMBA (positive control): 7/7 (100%)	*[$P = 0.01$]	Tumours were considered benign. JBO obtained from Indian refinery. Chemical analysis not given, but physicchemical characteristics were provided. Fourteen original fractions combined to six, which were tested in a tumour initiation–promotion assay. Cause of death of missing animals not indicated.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Oil Type Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mice, Swiss Albino (F) 40 wk, plus 14 wk tumour promotion. Agarwal *et al.* (1988)	Topical application of 50 µl JBO-P (Class 1), one of four JBO-P fractions or vehicle 3×/wk for 40 wk. JBO-P fractions were designed to limit PAH type content. Controls and three groups treated with fractions were further treated 3×/wk for 14 wk with 5 µg TPA; 20 animals/group	Oil: tumour incidence (+TPA) Untreated: 0/20 (0/12) Vehicle: 0/20 (0/14) JBO-P: 12/20 JBO-P reconstituted: 10/20 JBO-P PAH free: 2/20 (0/7) JBO-P 2–3-ring PAH: 0/20 (0/9) JBO-*P* > 3-ring PAH: 0/20 (7/7)	[NS]	All tumours were considered benign and identifiable as squamous-cell papillomas and keratoacanthomas. Source of JBO same as in Agarwal *et al.* (1985).
Mice, Swiss EOPS (F) 18 mo Gradiski *et al.* (1983) [1]	Topical application of 0.05 ml, 3×/wk for 1 mo and 0.05 ml, twice/wk for 11 mo of paraffinic distillates (class 1), Mineral ("White oil" (F) and 5 (A-E) solvent extractions (class 6) of Middle East crude oil containing different levels of PAHs and benzo[*a*]pyrene Oil,% PAH/B[*a*]P ppb A, 43.5 /1100; B, 9.15/270 C, 3.08/33; D, 2.06/1; E, 0.80/0.2; F, 0.26/NP Groups A-F, 30 animals/group; 60 controls	Tumours classified as benign, malignant, or benign & malignant for oils A-F Controls: 0, 0, 0; A: 10, *5, 10; B: 8, 2, 3; C: 1, 0, 0; D: 0, 0, 0 E: 0, 0, 0; F: 0, 0, 0 Aromatic extract (class 6.1) produced 15 malignant tumours in 30 mice	*[$P = 0.0032$]	Malignant tumours were squamous cell carcinomas, sarcomas, and mixed tumours. Oil refinement considered same as commercially used in mineral-oil production. Dermal application of oils had marked irritating effect. Benign tumours were acanthosic, papillomatous, hyperkeratotic.
Mice, SPF, CFLP (F) 104 wk Grimmer *et al.* (1982a)[1]	Topical application of 0.1 ml, twice/wk of used engine oil (class 7.2) 1) Untreated 2) Solvent, 3) Used oil, 0.6, 1.8, 5.6 mg 4) PAH free, 0.5, 1.7, 5.1 mg 5) PAH (2, 3) 0.04, 0.1, 0.4 mg 6) PAH (> 3 ring) 6, 20, 60 ug 7) Recons oil, 0.6, 1.8, 5.6 mg 8) B[*a*]P 3, 7, 15 ug Mice/group at start (NR), total 1300 animals	Papilloma/Carcinoma 1) 0/0 2) 0/1 3) 3/0, 8/9, 14/29 4) 0/1, 0/2, 1/0 5) 2/2, 1/1, 4/2 6) 0/0, 7/2, 20/13 7) 1/2, 4/2, 16/19 8) 6/20, 6/44, 6/54	Tumour induction time using log-rank test and Wilcoxon test show significant effect of used oil, >3-ring PAH, reconstituted oil, and B[*a*]P. *P*-value not provided.	Oil aged in gasoline-driven car. Oil dissolved in cyclohexane and PAH extracted with nitro-methane. Tumours occurred only at site of treatment and were described as papillomas and carcinomas. Authors concluded that >3-ring PAH content accounted for 70% carcinogenicity and B[*a*]P content accounted for 18%. Tumour incidence may be misleading as the number of mice/group was unknown.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Oil Type Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mice, Swiss (F, M) Lifespan Lijinsky *et al.* (1966)[1]	Skin application of 60 µl petrolatum or 20 µl fractionated solutions in iso-octane Amber Petrolatum (National Formulary grade) (class 5) twice/wk fractionated into aliphatic and aromatic fractions. Controls received 20 µl iso-octane 30 treated animals/group; 50 controls	Material: Total tumours/carcinomas (F, M) Isooctane: 0/0, 2/1 Petrolatum: 2/0, 3/0 Filtrate: /0, 0/0 Adsorbate: 26/9[a], 3/0 Nitromethane: 10/1, 31/9[b] Cyclohexane: 8/5[c], 4/1	[a][P < 0.0001; carcinomas (F)] [b][P < 0.0001; carcinomas (M)] [c][P < 0.0059; carcinomas (M)]	Skin tumours were papillomas, kerato-acanthomas and malignant squamous-cell carcinomas. Internal tumours within limits of controls.
Mice, C3H (M) 24 mo. McKee *et al.* (1989)	Skin application of 37.5 µl of naphthenic crude oil (class1), light and heavy vacuum distillates of the crude, and hydro-treated (mild or severe) (class 4) products, twice/wk for 24 mo. White mineral oil (- control) B[*a*]P (+ control) 1. unrefined light 2. hydro-treated light mild 3. hydro-treated light severe 4. unrefined heavy 5. hydro-treated heavy mild 6. hydro-treated heavy severe 7. unrefined heavy (viscous) 8. hydro-treated heavy mild 9. hydro-treated heavy severe 40 animals/group	Number of mice with carcinoma/papilloma White mineral oil: 0/0 B[*a*]P: 21/1* 1. 20/0* 2. 0/0 3. 0/0 4. 21/3* 5. 0/0 6. 0/0 7. 1/1 8. 0/0 9. 0/0	*[$P < 0.0001$]	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Oil Type Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mice, Swiss (F) 15 wk Mehrotra *et al.* (1987)	Topical application of JBO-C (class 1) 3×/wk for 15 wk Tumour promotion assay groups: 1. Untreated 2. Acetone, 0.1 ml 3. JBO-C, 50 µl 4. TPA, 15 nmole in 0.1 ml acetone 5. Urethane, 1mg/g bw in 50 µl saline 6. Urethane+JBO-C 7. Urethane+TPA 8. 3MC, 4 µg/g 9. 3MC once+JBO-C 10. 3MC once+TPA 15 animals/group	Mice in groups 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 7 did not develop tumours. Group 6 had 3 squamous cell papillomas and 1 keratoacanthoma. Group 7 had 3 squamous-cell papillomas and 2 keratoacanthomas. Group 9 had 2 squamous-cell papillomas, 1 keratoacanthoma, and 1 malignant fibrosarcoma. Group 10 had 1 fibroma and 2 keratoacanthomas.	Probability of tumour development was determined as $P = r/n$ (r = mice with tumours, n = total of mice). Statistical methods described, but no P-value provided. Results of statistical analysis not presented.	TPA or 3MC were administered once subcutaneously as initiators. Groups 2, 3, 4 promotion; 5, 6 initiation; 4, 5, 9, 10 initiation+promotion. Although not stated that results were statistically significant, authors concluded that JBO-C acted as tumour promoter following initiation by 3MC or urethane.
Mice, Swiss (F) Study 1, 20 wk; study 2, 14 wk Mehrotra *et al.* (1988)	Topical application JBO-P (class 1) 3×/wk for 20 wk (Exp. 1) or 14 wk (Exp. 2) Experiment 1 a. 50 µl acetone b. 5 µl B[*a*]P in 50 µl acetone c. 30 µl neat JBO-P Experiment 2 a. 1mg/g urethane in 50 µl saline, single s.c. b. ureth.+30 µl paraffin c. ureth.+30 µl crot oil d. ureth.+30 µl JBO-P e. 30 µl neat JBO 10 animals/group	Experiment 1 a. 0/10 b. 3 /9 (33%) c. 8/9 (89%) Experiment 2 a. 0/10 b. 0/10 c. 6/10 (60%) d. 5/9 (56%) e. 2 /10 (20%)	NR	Most tumours are benign squamous-cell papillomas and keratoacanthomas. One JBO-P and 2 B[*a*]P exposed mice developed malignant squamous-cell carcinomas. Results indicate that JBO-P is tumorigenic and acts as a tumour promoter. The short duration of the exposure was noted.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Oil Type Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mice, C3H, (M) 2 yr Nessel *et al.* (1998)	Topical application of mineral oil (MO), heavy (class 5) clarified oil (HCO), straight-run kerosene (SRK), straight-run gas oil (SRGO), light cycle oil (LCO) 50 µl of MO or HCO at 100% 2x/wk 50 µl of SRK, SRGO, LCO at 100% 2x/wk, at 50% 4x/wk, or at 28.5% 7x/wk 50 animals/group	MO and SRK 0 HCO, 42 carcinomas, 3 keratoacanthomas, 37 papillomas SRG, 8 carcinomas, 4 fibrocarcinomas SRGO, 2 carcinomas, 3 papillomas LCO, 12 carcinomas, 5 fribrosarcomas, 14 papillomas	sHCO, SRK, and LCO, $P < 0.01$ SRGO, $P < 0.05$	Large, well-designed study addressing the role of dermal irritation in carcinogenesis. Diluted oils produced reduced irritation and fewer tumours with significant tumour formation in 100% or 50% solutions only. Results support conclusion that non-irritating oils with low PACs are not tumorigenic
Mice, CD-1 (M) 54 wk Nessel *et al.* (1999)	Topical application of C10-C14 normal paraffins (NP) (class 1); steam-cracked gas oil (SCGO); light refined paraffinic (LRPO), or jet fuel (JF) Tumour promotion initiated with 25 µg DMBA and promoted with 25 µl TPA (+ control) or 75 µl of NP at 100% twice/wk, at 50% 4×/wk, or at 28.5% 7×/wk, or 75 µl SCGO, LRPO, or JF at 100% twice/wk or at 28.5% 7×/wk 30 animals/group	Control 0/30 DMBA + TPA 29/30 (97%) ** DMBA 1/30 NP 15/30 (50%) **, 1/30 (3%), 3/30 (10%) SCGO 17/30 (56%) **, 9/30 (30%) ** LRPO 7/30 (23%) *, 0/30 JF 11/30 (37%) **, 0/30	*$P < 0.05$ vs control ** $P < 0.01$ vs control	Large, well-designed tumour-promotion study. Undiluted (100%) solutions more irritating and tumorigenic than diluted solutions (28.5%). Most tumours were papillomas and to a lesser extent squamous-cell carcinomas
Mice, DBA/2, CBA (F) 24 mo Rask-Nielsen & Ebbesen (1965)[1]	Intra-peritoneal injections of high-visocosity oil (Primol D & Bayol F) (class 5) Three injections of 0.5 ml Primol D to mice at 10, 15, and 21 wk 36 DBA/2 and 12 CBA	DBA/2 mice: 15 (42%) had peritoneal-cell sarcomas, 3 had plasma-cell leukaemia, 3 myeloid leukaemia, 2 lymphocytic leukaemia. CBA mice: 1 had reticulum-cell sarcoma, and 1 had lymphocytic leukaemia	NR	No mention of controls IC and C3H mice injected with Bayol F developed oil-granulomas but not plasma-cell tumours (Hermann, 1966)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Route Oil Type Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mice, BALB/c (F) 14 mo Potter & Boyce (1962)[1]	Intraperitoneal injections of two refined mineral oils US Pharmacopeia (Bayol F and Primol D) (class 5) Mice received Bavol F as single injection of 0.4 or 0.5 ml, or three injections of 0.5 ml at intervals of two months. 40 or 32 animals/group One group of >56 mice received injections of Primol D	Bavol F: 8, 2, 22 plasma-cell neoplasms in each of the three groups receiving injections. Primol D: plasma-cell neoplasms in 13/56 (23%) mice Corn-oil control: no neoplasms	NR	Tumour morphology same as those induced by mixture of Freund's adjuvant and *Staphylococcus* (Potter & Robertson, 1960) Tumours appeared to arise from mesenteric oil-granulomas (Potter & MacCardle, 1964)
Mice, BALB/c (F) 7 or 12 mo Bober *et al.* (1976)[1]	Intra-peritoneal injections of mineral oil Primol D (class 5) Mice received three 0.5 ml injections of oil or saline. Two wk after oil injection mice were immunized with plaque-forming units of bacteriophage T2	Plasma-cell tumours from Primol D alone: Experiment 1, 0/21 Experiment 2, 7/27 (26%)		Injections of bacterial endotoxins enhanced the incidence of tumours in BALB/c mice injected with Primol D. Effect of oil alone was inadequately described. Experiments 1 and 2 differed on source of mice and study duration; 7 and 12 mo, respectively.

bw, body weight; d, day or days; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene; F, female; JBO, jute-batching oil (mineral oil obtained from the distillation of crude petroleum); M, male; MC, methylcholanthrene; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; TPA, 12-*O*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate; vs, versus; wk, week or weeks

High-boiling fractions from catalytically cracked oils [class 6.2] – also classified as aromatic oils – induced increasing numbers of skin tumours in mice with increasing boiling-ranges above 370°C. Further fractionation established that the activity is maximal for oils boiling at 500–520°C and is concentrated in the aromatic fraction of the oils. High-boiling, catalytically cracked oils also produced skin tumours in rabbits and monkeys (Smith *et al.*, 1951). Additional studies confirmed the increased tumorigenic activity of oils with boiling ranges 370–500°C. Promoting activity was also detected for some oil fractions in mice and rabbits (Shubik & Saffiotti, 1955; Saffiotti & Shubik, 1963).

Unused gasoline-engine oil [class 7.1] applied in several studies to mouse skin did not give a tumorigenic response with the exception of one single tumour (Saffiotti & Shubik, 1963; Kane *et al.*, 1984). Mice exposed via inhalation to unused diesel-engine oil for 11 months exhibited no increase in tumour incidence (Lushbaugh *et al.*, 1950). In contrast, unused cutting oils (also class 7.1), which are often formulated products consisting of blends of base oils and chemical additives, produced skin tumours (Gilman & Vesselinovitch, 1955; Jepsen *et al.*, 1977).

Used gasoline-engine oil [class 7.2] had stronger tumorigenic activity than unused oil; solvent extraction of polyaromatic hydrocarbons almost eliminated the tumorigenic activity (Grimmer *et al.*, 1982a). Similarly, used cutting oil [also class 7.2] tended to be more active than a comparable, unused oil (Gilman & Vesselinovitch, 1955; Jepsen *et al.*, 1977).

3.2 Studies published since the previous evaluation

Studies conducted since *IARC Monograph* Volume 33 (IARC, 1984) show a marked improvement in experimental design and reporting, and confirmed previous findings. Exposure to batching oil [class 1] induced benign and malignant skin tumours and promoted tumour formation in mice pre-treated with urethane (Mehrotra *et al.*, 1987; 1988). Subsequent studies with the same oil reported only benign tumours in mice treated with jute-batching oil, which occurred with and without pre-treatment with 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthacene (Agarwal *et al.*, 1985). Additionally, in mice treated dermally with fractions of the same jute-batching oil for 40 weeks, the PAH-containing fractions induced tumours only when treatment was followed by 12-*O*-tretradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate (Agarwal *et al.*, 1988). Unrefined naphthenic crude oil applied to the skin of mice induced papillomas and carcinomas (McKee *et al.*, 1989). Dietary exposure to liquid paraffin did not induce an increased tumour incidence (Shoda *et al.*, 1997).

Both mild and severe hydro-treatments of naphthenic oils [class 4] eliminate the tumorigenicity, which is associated with a decrease in PAH content (McKee *et al.*, 1989). Despite the association, PAH content alone was not considered predictive of carcinogenicity.

Most tumours observed after exposure to white oils and petrolatums [class 5] produced from oils that have undergone the most severe acid and/or hydrogen treatment, were papillomas and to a lesser extent squamous cell carcinomas (Nessel *et al.*, 1998, 1999).

4. Other relevant data

4.1 Humans

A group of 31 male glassmakers (smokers and non-smokers) and a group of suitably matched controls exposed to aerosols of mineral oils were examined for chromosomal abnormalities in peripheral blood lymphocytes. Chromosomal damage, including chromatid breaks, chromosome breaks, and chromosome exchanges

(di-centrics and reciprocal translocations) were increased in the exposed workers compared with controls (Srám *et al.*, 1985).

Workers from a cold-rolling steel plant (smokers and non-smokers) exposed to mineral oils were examined for mutagenic activity in the urine by means of *Salmonella typhimurium* strain TA98 in the presence of an exogenous source of metabolic activation. There was a significant difference in urinary mutagenicity between the exposed workers and the controls. While among non-smokers the mutagenic activity was not increased in exposed compared with unexposed workers, the overall results suggested a synergistic effect of smoking and exposure to mineral oils (Pasquini *et al.*, 1985).

Overall, there is weak evidence on the mechanism underlying the effects of exposures to mineral oils in humans. This evidence is based on genotoxic (mutagenic) activity of mineral oils in bacteria and a single cytogenetic study of glassworkers exposed to aerosols of mineral oils.

4.2 Experimental systems

Samples of vacuum distillates (class 1), solvent-refined oils (class 3), hydro-treated oils (class 4), used hardening oil (class 7.2) and used crankcase oils (class 7.2) were mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* in the presence and absence (class 7.2 only) of an exogenous source of metabolic activation. Samples of a white oil (class 5), a refined steel-hardening oil (class 7.1) and of unused crankcase oils (class 7.1) were not mutagenic in *S. typhimurium* strain TA98 in the presence or absence of exogenous metabolic activation (IARC, 1984, 1987).

Naphthenic distillates (raw or acid-treated) were tested for mutagenicity in the *S. typhimurium* assay in the presence and absence of an exogenous source of metabolic activation. With metabolic activation, both untreated and acid-treated naphthenic distillates were mutagenic. The naphthenic distillates contained approximately 12% (w/w) polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (Granella & Clonfero, 1991). A series of 15 high-viscosity mineral oils obtained from naphthenic distillates, including used, recycled and pooled oils, were examined for mutagenic activity in the *S. typhimurium* assay with strains TA98 and TA100 in the presence and absence of an exogenous source of metabolic activation. Four of the samples (three acid-treated naphthenic oils and one recycled fraction of a used oil) showed significant mutagenic activity in the presence metabolic activation (Granella *et al.*, 1995).

An extensive evaluation of the mutagenic activities of 13 mineral oils obtained from various processes was conducted with a modified *S. typhimurium* assay. The modification consisted of extracting the mineral-oil samples with dimethyl sulfoxide and increasing the concentrations of both $NADP^+$ and the liver post-mitochondrial fraction (S9). The mutagenic activities of the mineral-oil samples were significantly correlated with the amount of 3–7-ring polycyclic aromatic compounds for a subgroup of oil samples (Blackburn *et al.*, 1984; Roy *et al.*, 1988).

Six mineral-oil samples were evaluated in a *S. typhimurium* assay activated with washed liver microsomes from Aroclor-1254-induced rats. Five of the six samples were mutagenic. The results showed an empirical correlation between increasing mutagenicity index, carcinogenicity and the polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon content of the oils (Brooks *et al.*, 1995).

Three mineral-oil samples (N11, N1, and R1) and several fractions of the N1 oil – obtained from silica-gel column chromatography and high-performance liquid chromatography – were evaluated by means of ^{32}P-postlabelling for their ability to form DNA adducts after a single dermal application on the skin of TO mice. Both the R1 and N1 oils had formed unidentified DNA adducts at 24 hours. The 2–3-ring fraction produced more adducts than the 4–6-ring fraction of N1. The adduct levels first increased

and then decreased with time after treatment (Ingram *et al.*, 2000).

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of untreated or mildly treated mineral oils. Untreated or mildly treated mineral oils cause cancer of the skin (observed in the scrotum).

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of untreated vacuum distillates, acid-treated oils, and aromatic oils, including extracts from solvent treatment of distillates and the high-boiling fraction of catalytically cracked oils [classes 1, 2 and 6].

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of mildly hydrotreated oils [class 4].

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of used gasoline-engine oil [class 7.2].

There is weak evidence on the mechanism underlying the effects in humans of exposures to mineral oils. This evidence is based on genotoxic (mutagenic) activity of mineral oils in bacteria and a single cytogenetic study of glassworkers exposed to aerosols of mineral oils.

Untreated and mildly treated mineral oils are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

ACGIH (2007). Documentation of the TLVs and BEIs with Other Worldwide Occupational Exposure Values - 2007, CD-ROM, Oil Mist, Mineral (2001), Cincinnati, OH.

Acquavella J, Leet T, Johnson G (1993). Occupational experience and mortality among a cohort of metal components manufacturing workers. *Epidemiology (Cambridge, Mass.)*, 4: 428–434. doi:10.1097/00001648-199309000-00008 PMID:11560339

Agarwal R, Kumar S, Shukla Y *et al.* (1985). Quantification of tumour initiating effect of jute batching oil and its distillates over mouse skin. *Cancer Lett*, 28: 281–290. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(85)90036-9 PMID:4052997

Agarwal R, Shukla Y, Kumar S, Mehrotra NK (1988). Evaluation of carcinogenic effect of jute batching oil (JBO-P) fractions following topical application to mouse skin. *Arch Toxicol*, 62: 406–410. doi:10.1007/BF00288342 PMID:3250371

Ahrens W, Jöckel KH, Patzak W, Elsner G (1991). Alcohol, smoking, and occupational factors in cancer of the larynx: a case-control study. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 20: 477–493. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700200404 PMID:1785612

ASTM (1996). *Determining Carcinogenic Potential of Virgin Base Oils in Metalworking Fluids* (E 1687-95) West Conshohocken, PA

Bakke B, Ulvestad B, Stewart P *et al.* (2001). Effects of blasting fumes on exposure and short-term lung function changes in tunnel construction workers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 27: 250–257. doi:10.5271/sjweh.612 PMID:11560339

Bingham E & Horton AW (1966). Environmental carcinogenesis: Experimental observations related to occupational cancer. *Advances in Biology of Skin*, 7: 183–193.

Bingham E, Horton AW, Tye R (1965). The carcinogenic potency of certain oils. *Arch Environ Health*, 10: 449–451. PMID:14247342

Blackburn GR, Deitch RA, Schreiner CA *et al.* (1984). Estimation of the dermal carcinogenic activity of petroleum fractions using a modified Ames assay. *Cell Biol Toxicol*, 1: 67–80. doi:10.1007/BF00125566 PMID:6401126

Bober LA, Kranepool MJ, Bojko C *et al.* (1976). Endotoxin enhancement of plasma cell tumor development in mice given injections of mineral oil. *Cancer Res*, 36: 1947–1949. PMID:773532

Brooks TM, Priston RA, Wright AS, Watson WP (1995). Evaluation of modified bacterial mutagenicity assays for the genotoxicity testing of mineral oils. *Mutagenesis*, 10: 409–415. doi:10.1093/mutage/10.5.409 PMID:8544754

Bukowski JA (2003). Review of respiratory morbidity from occupational exposure to oil mists. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 18: 828–837. PMID:14555435

Calvert GM, Ward E, Schnorr TM, Fine LJ (1998). Cancer risks among workers exposed to metalworking fluids: a systematic review. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 33: 282–292. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199803)33:3<282::AID-AJIM10>3.0.CO;2-W PMID:9481427

Coggon D, Pannett B, Acheson ED (1984). Use of job-exposure matrix in an occupational analysis of lung and bladder cancers on the basis of death certificates. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 72: 61–65. PMID:6363790

CONCAWE (1986). Health Aspects of Worker Exposure to Oil Mists. Report No. 86/69.

CONCAWE (1994). The Use of the Dimethyl Sulphoxide (DMSO) Extract by the IP346 Method as an Indicator

of the Carcinogenicity of Lubricant Base Oils and Distillate Aromatic Extracts. Report Number 94/51.

CONCAWE (1997). Lubricating Oil Basestocks Product Dossier. Report No. 97/108.

Doak SM, Brown VK, Hunt PF *et al.* (1983). The carcinogenic potential of twelve refined mineral oils following long-term topical application. *Br J Cancer*, 48: 429–436. PMID:6615701

Droste JH, Weyler JJ, Van Meerbeeck JP *et al.* (1999). Occupational risk factors of lung cancer: a hospital based case-control study. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 56: 322–327. doi:10.1136/oem.56.5.322 PMID:10472306

Eisen EA, Bardin J, Gore R *et al.* (2001). Exposure-response models based on extended follow-up of a cohort mortality study in the automobile industry. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 27: 240–249. PMID:11560338

Eisen EA, Tolbert PE, Monson RR, Smith TJ (1992). Mortality studies of machining fluid exposure in the automobile industry I: A standardized mortality ratio analysis. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 22: 809–824. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700220604 PMID:1463027

Friesen MC, Costello S, Eisen EA (2009). Quantitative exposure to metalworking fluids and bladder cancer incidence in a cohort of autoworkers. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 169: 1471–1478. doi:10.1093/aje/kwp073 PMID:19414495

Gerhardsson de Verdier M, Plato N, Steineck G, Peters JM (1992). Occupational exposures and cancer of the colon and rectum. *Am J Ind Med*, 22: 291–303. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700220303 PMID:1519614

Gilman JPW & Vesselinovitch SD (1955). Cutting oils and squamous-cell carcinoma. II. An experimental study of the carcinogenicity of two types of cutting oils. *Br J Ind Med*, 12: 244–248. PMID:13240030

Goldstein DH, Benoit JN, Tyroler HA (1970). An epidemiologic study of an oil mist exposure. *Arch Environ Health*, 21: 600–603. PMID:5475423

Gradiski D, Vinot J, Zissu D *et al.* (1983). The carcinogenic effect of a series of petroleum-derived oils on the skin of mice. *Environ Res*, 32: 258–268. doi:10.1016/0013-9351(83)90110-X PMID:6315389

Granella M, Ballarin C, Nardini B *et al.* (1995). Mutagenicity and contents of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in new high-viscosity naphthenic oils and used and recycled mineral oils. *Mutat Res*, 343: 145–150. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(95)90080-2 PMID:7791808

Granella M & Clonfero E (1991). The mutagenic activity and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon content of mineral oils. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 63: 149–153. doi:10.1007/BF00379080 PMID:1889886

Green RM (1910). Cancer of the scrotum. *Boston Medical and Surgical Journal*, 163: 792–797.

Grimmer G, Dettbarn G, Brune H *et al.* (1982b). Quantification of the carcinogenic effect of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in used engine oil by topical application onto the skin of mice. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 50: 95–100. doi:10.1007/BF00432496 PMID:7085089

Grimmer G, Naujack K-W, Dettbarn G *et al.* (1982a). Studies on the carcinogenic action of used engine lubricating motor oil (Ger.). *Erdöl Kohle*, 35: 466–472.

Grob K, Vass M, Biedermann M, Neukom HP (2001). Contamination of animal feed and food from animal origin with mineral oil hydrocarbons. *Food Addit Contam*, 18: 1–10. doi:10.1080/02652030010003503 PMID:11212542

Halder CA, Warne TM, Little RQ, Garvin PJ (1984). Carcinogenicity of petroleum lubricating oil distillates: effects of solvent refining, hydroprocessing, and blending. *Am J Ind Med*, 5: 265–274. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700050403 PMID:6720690

Hendricks NV, Berry CM, Lione JG, Thorpe JJ (1959). Cancer of the scrotum in wax pressmen. I. Epidemiology. *AMA Arch Ind Health*, 19: 524–529. PMID:13636467

Henry SA (1947). Occupational cutaneous cancer attributable to certain chemicals in industry. *British Medical Bulletin*, 4: 389–401.

Henry SA & Irvine ED (1936). Cancer of the scrotum in the Blackburn registration district, 1837-1929. *The Journal of Hygiene*, 36: 310–340. doi:10.1017/S0022172400043667

Hermann G (1966). [Plasmocytic tumors and ascites induced by Bayol F in the BALB-c mouse] *Pathol Biol*, 14: 657–669. PMID:5328283

IARC (1984). Polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons, Part 2, carbon blacks, mineral oils (lubricant base oils and derived products) and some nitroarenes. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 33: 1–222. PMID:6590450

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

Ingram AJ, Phillips JC, Davies S (2000). DNA adducts produced by oils, oil fractions and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in relation to repair processes and skin carcinogenesis. *J Appl Toxicol*, 20: 165–174. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1099-1263(200005/06)20:3<165::AID-JAT625>3.0.CO;2-E PMID:10797468

Institute for Petroleum (1985). IP Standards for Petroleum and Its Products. Part I – Methods for Analysis and Testing. 2, 346.1.

Institute for Petroleum (1993). Determination of Polycyclic Aromatics in Unused Lubricating Base Oils and Asphaltene Free Petroleum Fractions – Dimethyl Sulfoxide Extraction Refractive Index Method. IP 346/92. In: Standard Methods for Analysis and Testing of Petroleum and Related Products, Vol. 2, Chichester, John Wiley & Sons.

Järvholm B, Fast K, Lavenius B, Tomsic P (1985). Exposure to cutting oils and its relation to skin tumors and

premalignant skin lesions on the hands and forearms. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 11: 365–369. PMID:4071002

Järvholm B, Lillienberg L, Sällsten G *et al.* (1981). Cancer morbidity among men exposed to oil mist in the metal industry. *J Occup Med*, 23: 333–337. PMID:7241245

Jepsen JR, Stoyanov S, Unger M *et al.* (1977). Cutting fluids and their effects on the skin of mice. *Acta pathol microbiol scand*, 85: 731–738.

Kane ML, Ladov EN, Holdsworth CE, Weaver NK (1984). Toxicological characteristics of refinery streams used to manufacture lubricating oils. *Am J Ind Med*, 5: 183–200. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700050304 PMID:6702826

Lijinsky W, Saffiotti U, Shubik P (1966). Skin tumorigenesis by an extract of amber petrolatum. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 8: 113–117. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(66)90107-4 PMID:5921887

Lushbaugh CC, Green JW Jr, Redemann CE (1950). Effects of prolonged inhalation of oil fogs on experimental animals. *A.M.A. Archives of Industrial Hygiene and Occupational Medicine*, 1: 237–247.

Mackerer CR, Griffis LC, Grabowski JS Jr, Reitman FA (2003). Petroleum mineral oil refining and evaluation of cancer hazard. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 18: 890–901. PMID:14555442

McKee RH, Daughtrey WC, Freeman JJ *et al.* (1989). The dermal carcinogenic potential of unrefined and hydrotreated lubricating oils. *J Appl Toxicol*, 9: 265–270. doi:10.1002/jat.2550090411 PMID:2778262

Mehrotra NK, Kumar S, Agarwal R, Antony M (1987). Jute batching oil: a tumor promoter on mouse skin. *Environ Res*, 42: 12–23. doi:10.1016/S0013-9351(87)80003-8 PMID:3803329

Mehrotra NK, Kumar S, Antony M (1988). Carcinogenic property of JBO(P) variety of jute batching oil. *Drug Chem Toxicol*, 11: 181–193. doi:10.3109/01480548808998221 PMID:3402349

Mirer F (2003). Updated epidemiology of workers exposed to metalworking fluids provides sufficient evidence for carcinogenicity. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 18: 902–912. PMID:14555443

Nessel CS, Freeman JJ, Forgash RC, McKee RH (1999). The role of dermal irritation in the skin tumor promoting activity of petroleum middle distillates. *Toxicol Sci*, 49: 48–55. doi:10.1093/toxsci/49.1.48 PMID:10367341

Nessel CS, Priston RA, McKee RH *et al.* (1998). A comprehensive evaluation of the mechanism of skin tumorigenesis by straight-run and cracked petroleum middle distillates. *Toxicol Sci*, 44: 22–31. doi:10.1093/toxsci/44.1.22 PMID:9720137

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981-83).* Cincinnati, OH: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes4/m0603sco.html

Oser BL, Oser M, Carson S, Sternberg SS (1965). Toxicologic studies of petrolatum in mice and rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 7: 382–401. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(65)90140-7 PMID:14288812

Pasquini R, Monarca S, Sforzolini GS *et al.* (1985). Mutagenicity studies and D-glucaric acid determination in urine of workers exposed to mineral oils. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 56: 275–284. doi:10.1007/BF00405269 PMID:3905625

Potter M & Boyce CR (1962). Induction of plasma-cell neoplasms in strain BALB/c mice with mineral oil and mineral oil adjuvants. *Nature*, 193: 1086–1087. doi:10.1038/1931086a0 PMID:14488296

Potter M & MacCardle RC (1964). HISTOLOGY OF DEVELOPING PLASMA CELL NEOPLASIA INDUCED BY MINERAL OIL IN BALB/C MICE. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 33: 497–515. PMID:14207859

Potter M & Robertson CL (1960). Development of plasma-cell neoplasms in BALB/c mice after intraperitoneal injection of paraffin-oil adjuvant, heart-killed Staphylococcus mixtures. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 25: 847–861. PMID:13737512

Rask-Nielsen R & Ebbesen P (1965). Reticular neoplasms induced in DBA-2 and CBA mice by intraperitoneal injections of mineral oil. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 35: 83–94. PMID:5318200

Roe FJC, Carter RL, Taylor W (1967). Cancer hazard from mineral oil used in the processing of jute. *Br J Cancer*, 21: 694–702. PMID:4294613

Rønneberg A, Andersen A, Skyberg K (1988). Mortality and incidence of cancer among oil exposed workers in a Norwegian cable manufacturing company. Part 2. Mortality and cancer incidence 1953–84. *Br J Ind Med*, 45: 595–601. PMID:3179234

Roush GC, Kelly JA, Meigs JW, Flannery JT (1982). Scrotal carcinoma in Connecticut metalworkers: sequel to a study of sinonasal cancer. *Am J Epidemiol*, 116: 76–85. PMID:7102658

Roush GC, Meigs JW, Kelly JA *et al.* (1980). Sinonasal cancer and occupation: a case-control study. *Am J Epidemiol*, 111: 183–193. PMID:7355881

Roy TA, Johnson SW, Blackburn GR, Mackerer CR (1988). Correlation of mutagenic and dermal carcinogenic activities of mineral oils with polycyclic aromatic compound content. *Fundam Appl Toxicol*, 10: 466–476. doi:10.1016/0272-0590(88)90293-X PMID:3286347

Saffiotti U & Shubik P (1963). Studies on promoting action in skin carcinogenesis. *National Cancer Institute Monograph*, 10: 489–507.

Savitz DA (2003). Epidemiologic evidence on the carcinogenicity of metalworking fluids. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 18: 913–920. PMID:14555444

Schmähl D & Reiter A (1953). Studies on carcinogenesis by liquid paraffin, yellow vaseline and wool fat. *Arzneimittelforschung*, 3: 403–406. PMID:13093484

Schroeder JC, Tolbert PE, Eisen EA *et al.* (1997). Mortality studies of machining fluid exposure in the automobile industry. IV: A case-control study of lung cancer. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 31: 525–533. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199705)31:5<525::AID-AJIM5>3.0.CO;2-S PMID:9099353

Shoda T, Toyoda K, Uneyama C *et al.* (1997). Lack of carcinogenicity of medium-viscosity liquid paraffin given in the diet to F344 rats. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 35: 1181–1190. doi:10.1016/S0278-6915(97)00105-1 PMID:9449224

Shubik P & Saffiotti U (1955). The carcinogenic and promoting action of low boiling catalytically cracked oils. *Acta Unio Int Contra Cancrum*, 11: 707–711. PMID:13326679

Skyberg K, Ronneberg A, Christensen CC *et al.* (1992). Lung function and radiographic signs of pulmonary fibrosis in oil exposed workers in a cable manufacturing company: a follow up study. *British Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 49: 309–315. PMID:1599868

Smith WE, Sunderland DA, Sugiura K (1951). Experimental analysis of the carcinogenic activity of certain petroleum products. *A M A Arch Ind Hyg Occup Med*, 4: 299–314. PMID:14867943

Southam AH & Wilson SR (1922). Cancer of the scrotum: the etiology, clinical features, and treatment of the disease. *British Medical Journal*, 2: 971–973. doi:10.1136/bmj.2.3229.971

Srám RJ, Holá N, Kotěsovec F, Nováková A (1985). Cytogenetic analysis of peripheral blood lymphocytes in glass workers occupationally exposed to mineral oils. *Mutat Res*, 144: 277–280. doi:10.1016/0165-7992(85)90064-8 PMID:4069144

Svendsen K & Børresen E (1999). Measurements of mineral oil mist, hydrocarbon vapor, and noise in engine rooms of ships. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 14: 186–191. doi:10.1080/104732299303151 PMID:10453633

Svendsen K & Hilt B (1997). Exposure to mineral oil mist and respiratory symptoms in marine engineers. *Am J Ind Med*, 32: 84–89. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199707)32:1<84::AID-AJIM10>3.0.CO;2-2 PMID:9131215

Svendsen K & Hilt B (1999). Lung function disturbances and chest X-ray abnormalities among marine engineers. *Am J Ind Med*, 35: 590–594. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199906)35:6<590::AID-AJIM6>3.0.CO;2-D PMID:10332512

Tolbert PE (1997). Oils and cancer. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 8: 386–405. doi:10.1023/A:1018409422050 PMID:9498901

Twort CC & Ing HR (1928). Mule-spinners' cancer and mineral oils. *Lancet*, 211: 752–754. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(00)96837-5

Twort JM & Lyth R (1939). The concentration of carcinogenic materials in mineral oils bydistillation processes. *The Journal of Hygiene*, 39: 161–169. doi:10.1017/S0022172400011785

Ugnat AM, Luo W, Semenciw R, Mao YCanadian Cancer Registries Epidemiology Research Group (2004). Occupational exposure to chemical and petrochemical industries and bladder cancer risk in four western Canadian provinces. *Chronic Dis Can*, 25: 7–15. PMID:15554606

Urbanus JH, Lobo RC, Riley AJ (2003). European hazard classification advice for crude oil-derived lubricant base oils compared with the proposed mineral oil mist TLV. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 18: 815–817. PMID:14555432

Wagner WD, Wright PG, Stokinger HE (1964). Inhalation toxicology of oil mists. I. Chronic effects of white mineral oil. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 25: 158–168. PMID:14125868

Waldron HA, Waterhouse JA, Tessema N (1984). Scrotal cancer in the West Midlands 1936–76. *Br J Ind Med*, 41: 437–444. PMID:6498107

Woskie SR, Virji MA, Hallock M *et al.* (2003). Summary of the findings from the exposure assessments for metalworking fluid mortality and morbidity studies. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 18: 855–864. PMID:14555438

Yassi A, Tate RB, Routledge M (2003). Cancer incidence and mortality in workers employed at a transformer manufacturing plant: update to a cohort study. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 44: 58–62. doi:10.1002/ajim.10237 PMID:12822136

Zhao Y, Krishnadasan A, Kennedy N *et al.* (2005). Estimated effects of solvents and mineral oils on cancer incidence and mortality in a cohort of aerospace workers. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 48: 249–258. doi:10.1002/ajim.20216 PMID:16167347

SHALE OILS

Shale oils were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1984 and 1987 (IARC, 1985, 1987). Since that time, new data have become available, which have been incorporated into this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 68308-34-9
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: Shale oils

Crude shale oil is the product of thermal processing of raw oil shale. Oil shale is sedimentary rock containing mainly mineral components and organic matter called kerogen, which has a low solubility in organic solvents. Oil shale has a low boiling-point and it produces liquid organic products (oils) on thermal decomposition. Crude shale oils differ principally from crude petroleum in that they contain higher concentrations of organic nitrogen compounds and arsenic. Materials encountered in oil-shale processing include raw oil shale, crude shale oil, spent shale, oil-shale ash, synthetic crude oil (or 'syncrude') and refined products. Operations include retorting, upgrading and refining (IARC, 1985).

Crude shale oils are viscous, waxy liquids made up of hydrocarbons (alkanes, alkenes and aromatic compounds) and polar components (organic nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur compounds). Crude shale oils are very complex mixtures, and only few of the compounds have been identified.

To recover the oil from the shale, its organic portion (kerogen) must be decomposed thermally. This thermal decomposition, known as retorting, converts the solid organic material of the shale into liquid and gaseous fractions and a solid carbonaceous residue. The liquid fraction, the so-called shale oil, consists of condensable hydrocarbons (C_{5+}) and small quantities of decomposition water. The gaseous product is a mixture of carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, hydrogen, nitrogen, hydrogen sulfide, methane, and other hydrocarbons (C_{4-}). The carbonaceous residue, a coke-like material, is obtained in a mixture with the inorganic minerals of the original oil shale (Weiss, 2005).

1.2 Uses

Oil shales occur in many parts of the world. The areas where they are found range in size from small occurrences of little or no economic value to thousands of square miles. Oil shales also differ in geologic age, from Cambrian (570–500 million years ago) to Tertiary (65–2 million years ago). Total world resources of extractable oil shale are conservatively estimated at 2.6 trillion barrels (AAPG, 2009).

Early applications of shale oils included use as a source of paraffin waxes and burning oils for lamps, as well as for medicinal purposes. Later on, shale oils were used to prepare gasoline, diesel oils and lubricants from its light, intermediate and heavy distillates, respectively. The fuel oils, representing the major part of liquid products from the internal combustion (gas-generator type) retorts, have been used in the manufacture of gas-turbine fuel oil, automobile gasoline, and additives for high-sulfur petroleum fuel oils. (Aarna, 1978; Öpik & Kaganovich, 1981). In the People's Republic of China, shale oil has been used to generate electric power and as a refinery feedstock (Dickson, 1981). Products included gasoline, kerosene, diesel fuel and coke (Qian, 1982; IARC, 1985).

Oil-shale industries are operating in Europe (Estonia), South America (Brazil) and Asia (China). The largest operations are in Estonia, where approximately 12 million tonnes of oil shale is mined annually (underground and open-pit mining). About 85% of this material is burned as fuel in electric power-plants in north-eastern Estonia; the remainder is retorted for shale oil and used to manufacture fuels and petrochemicals. In Brazil, oil shale is mined in open pits and is retorted for shale oil, liquefied petroleum gas, sulfur and fuel gas (AAPG, 2006).

1.3 Human exposure

According to the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83), approximately 350 workers (including approximately 150 women) were potentially exposed to shale oil (NIOSH, 1990).

Very few studies were identified that assessed occupational exposures to shale oil. Most studies of this industry assessed exposures to other contaminants: free crystalline silica in the form of quartz; asbestos (Kangur, 2007), diesel exhaust (Scheepers *et al.*, 2002; Muzyka *et al.*, 2003, 2004; Knudsen *et al.*, 2005), trace elements (arsenic, cadmium, lead, mercury, nickel), hydrogen sulphide, uranium and radon, carbon monoxide, phenol, polynuclear aromatic compounds, such as benzo(*a*)pyrene and 1-nitropyrene (Kuljukka *et al.*, 1996, 1998; Anderson *et al.*, 1997; Boffetta *et al.*, 1997; Kivistö *et al.*, 1997; Scheepers *et al.*, 2002, 2003), aromatic compounds, such as benzene and toluene (Anderson *et al.*, 1997; Kivistö *et al.*, 1997; Marcon *et al.*, 1999; Scheepers *et al.*, 2002; Sørensen *et al.*, 2004), sulfur dioxide, and dust in shale mines, retorts, tips and brick-works (Louw *et al.*, 1986).

2. Cancer in Humans

Most of the literature addressing the carcinogenicity of shale oils dates back to the early part of the 20th century, with compelling evidence from case series of skin cancer, particularly of the scrotum, in the United Kingdom. These case series are substantial in scale, including 65 cases of scrotal cancer that occurred in the period 1900–21 in the Scottish shale-oil industry (Scott, 1922a, b). Exposure of cotton-textile workers (mule spinners) exposed under non-hygienic conditions to lubricating oil that included shale oil during varying time periods, was strongly associated with cancer of the scrotum (Southam, 1928; Brockbank, 1941). Even in the absence of methodologically rigorous epidemiologic studies, this association has become accepted as causal.

As the oil-shale industry has risen and fallen over time in various parts of the world, a modest epidemiological literature has been developed. The size and prospects for the industry have fluctuated dramatically over time in relation to the price of oil, resulting in a haphazard approach to epidemiology that addresses the health of workers in the industry. Furthermore, varying technologies for releasing the oil from the shale have different implications for exposures of

the workforce. A morbidity survey of several hundred workers in the USA employed at an oil-shale demonstration facility suggested an increased risk for abnormal sputum cytology and no excess of skin cancer (Rom *et al.*, 1985).

The most extensive epidemiological study of cancer among oil-shale workers addressed causes of death among 6359 Scottish workers employed in the period 1950–62 and followed for vital status through 1982 (Miller *et al.*, 1986). The focus was on the subset of 3161 men who worked in mining, retorting, or refining, with maximum potential exposure to shale oil. A total of 1868 of these men died, 802 before the start of mortality follow-up and 1066 during the follow-up, i.e. between January 1968 to December 1982. Mortality of the workers from lung, stomach, colon, rectum, bladder, and kidney cancers was similar to or lower than that of an external population. Only skin cancer, with six observed deaths, was in excess, with an estimated relative risk of 4.9 (95%CI: 2.2–10.9). This elevation in skin-cancer mortality is consistent with the case series noted previously. A more detailed evaluation of the exposure conditions for 212 lung-cancer cases compared with 221 men with other diseases, mostly cardiovascular problems, revealed no associations with occupational exposures. In contrast to the skin-cancer mortality excess, a survey of 1664 living workers from the same cohort revealed no increase in self-reported skin tumours (Seaton *et al.*, 1986). No lung-cancer excess was reported among workers in the shale-oil industry employed at a facility in central Sweden between 1942 and 1966. Comparison of 51 lung-cancer deaths with 206 referent deaths did not indicate any association of shale-oil exposure with lung cancer (Seldén, 1987).

Overall, based on the case series, with some corroborating epidemiological studies, there is evidence that exposure to shale oil is causally associated with skin cancer, particularly of the scrotum. Data pertaining to other cancer sites, including lung, remain inadequate to draw a conclusion on any association due to the limited research done thus far, the limited quality of the exposure data, and the poor precision of the estimates in the completed studies.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

A large number and a wide variety of animal studies have been conducted to analyse shale-derived oil and its precursors, or the by-products of shale-oil processing. The resulting picture is quite complex, as experimental results are affected by several factors, including: (1) the nature of the material under study (raw shale, spent shale, crude, hydro-treated or refined shale oil, retort process-water, or oil-shale ash); (2) the mineral composition of the original shale and the type of retort process; and (3) the fractionation procedure used to separate and/or characterize the active constituents of the complex mixture.

Table 3.1 includes some of the studies considered as the most representative of the carcinogenicity of shale oils as well as studies published since the previous evaluation (IARC, 1985).

3.1 Raw and spent oil-shale

3.1.1 Skin application

Solvent extracts from both raw and spent oil-shale containing benzo[*a*]pyrene were applied to mouse skin and induced skin papillomas and carcinomas (Berenblum & Schoental, 1944; Hueper, 1953; Rowland *et al.*, 1980; IARC, 1985).

3.1.2 Intratracheal administration

Crude shale oil and its aromatic fractions were enclosed in bee's wax pellets – which allow slow release of the content – and implanted in the lungs of rats. The substances induced a

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies of shale-oils in experimental animals

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Shale oil Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Raw and spent oil shale				
Mouse, Swiss, (F) Lifetime Rowland *et al.* (1980)[a]	Dermal application of raw shale oil and TOSCO II retort 2.5 mg in 1/60 ml, twice/wk Raw shale oil contains 0.66 µg/ml B[*a*]P Spent shale oil contains 1.4 µg/ml B[*a*]P 50 or 100 animals/group	Control: 0/100; sham control: 0/50 Spent shale: 3/50 (6%) papillomas, *3/50 (6%) carcinomas; Raw shale oil: 0/50 Number of survivors not indicated	*[$P = 0.0356$ vs control]	Raw oil shale from Colony Oil shale development, Parachute Creek, Colorado
Rats, Wistar (F) 24 mo Dagle *et al.* (1990)	Intra-tracheal administration of 0.2 ml of beeswax pellet containing 0, 0.6, 6, 60 mg crude shale oil, three of its chemically derived fractions, or crude petroleum. Equal volumes of beeswax and tricaprylin were used in the vehicle-control pellets. 30 animals/group	Rats with lung epidermoid carcinomas at three doses Control, 0; Crude, 1, 3, 9; Neutral, 0, 1, 6; Basic, 2, 2, 8; PNA, 1, 9, 10 Number of survivors not indicated	$P < 0.05$	Crude shale oil from Anvil Points Mine, Colorado. Chemically derived fractions were: neutral, PNA, and basic. Number of effective rats not noted.
Rat, Fisher 344, sex (NR) 24 mo Holland *et al.* (1983)[a]	Inhalation of raw oil shale and spent oil shale, 0 or 90 mg/m^3 respirable fraction 5 h/d, 4 d/wk for 24 mo. Positive control, 10 mg/m^3 quartz 62 animals/group	Lung adenomas, SCC, or adenocarcinomas Control: 1/17 adenoma; sham control: 0/15; positive control: 4/57 (7%) adenomas, 13/57 (23%) carcinomas Raw: 1/50 (2%) adenoma; 11/50 (22%) carcinomas; spent: 3/57 (5%) adenomas, 10/57 (17%) carcinomas	[NS]	Shale from Anvil Points, Colorado No information on survival or latency period was provided.
Hamster, Syrian golden, sex (NR) 16 mo Holland *et al.* (1983)[a]	Inhalation of raw oil shale and spent oil shale 0 or 50 mg/m^3, 4 hr/d, 4 d/wk	No lung tumours in any of the groups. Number of survivors not indicated	–	Results are preliminary
Crude shale-oils from low-temperature retorting				
Mouse, strain A, C57BL, hairless, sex (NR) 20 mo Hueper (1953)[a]	Dermal application of two Green River crude shale oils, once/wk for one yr Unspecified amount in xylene (6 mo) then in ethyl ether (6 mo) 42 untreated strain A mice 1) NTU crude-shale oil 100 strain A, 25 C57BL 2) Fisher-assay crude-shale oil 50 strain A, 30 hairless	Skin tumours Untreated A, 0/42 1) A, 1/38 (3%) papilloma; C57BL, 4/19 (21%) squamous-cell carcinomas 2) A, 2/45 (4%) squamous-cell carcinomas; hairless, 1/10 (10%) squamous cell carcinoma	–	1) Nevada-Texas-Utah (NTU) retort processed at 538–816 °C 2) Fischer-assay retort processed at 371–538 °C No controls for C57BL and hairless mice

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Shale oil Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mouse, C3H/He (F, M) 700 d Wilson & Holland (1988)	Dermal application of 2.5–5 mg shale derived crude oils in 50 µl of 60% acetone and 40% cyclohexane (v/v), 3 × /wk for 700 d. In addition to solvent-exposed controls there were untreated controls and B[*a*]P positive controls. 20 animals/sex/group	% M, F with skin papillomas and/or carcinomas at 2.5, or 5 mg 1) 95/85, 95/95 2) 70/75, 90/85 3) 60/35, 60/75 No tumours in the solvent- or untreated-control groups	$P < 0.05$, Significant differences between male and female occurred only in time to tumour (not shown)	Oak Ridge oil-shale repository: 1) PCSO, Anvil Points,Colorado 2) OCSO, Piceance Creek Basin, Colorado 3) PCSO-UP, hydrated PCSO
Mouse, A/Jax (M) 23–25 wk Smith & Witschi (1983)[a]	Intratracheal administration of paraho crude shale-oil 0, 500, 1250, 2500 mg/kg in corn oil, 3 × / wk for 8 wk 30 animals/group	Lung tumours 0, 7/16 (44%)*, 6/12 (50%)*, 3/5 (60%)*	*$P < 0.05$, all three exposed compared with control	
Shale-oil distillates, blends and other commercial products				
Mouse, C3H/HeN (F, M) 105 wk Clark *et al.* (1988)	Dermal application of seven shale-oil derived distillates, 25 mg, 3 × /wk for 21 wk Mineral oil (USP) was used on controls. Benzo[*a*]pyrene was used as a positive control. 25 animals/sex/group	Tumours at injection site Oil,% surviving mice with carcinoma/fibrosarcoma Control 0/2; benzo[*a*]pyrene 96/4; Crude oil, 50/4*; Hydro-treated oil, 0/0; Naptha, 12/4*; JP-4, 24/21*; Jet-A, 4/8*; Diesel, 1/1; Residum, 6/0*	*$P < 0.05$ carcinoma and/or fibrosarcoma	Hydrotreated Syncrude was prepared from crude shale oil retorted from shale oil in a procedure designed to simulate commercial production
Mouse, CC57Bl (M, F) Lifetime Bogovski *et al.* (1990)	Dermal application of crude shale oil or industrial residue produced from a blend of shale oils In benzene, 0 or 18 mg, twice/wk for 6 mo (50 times); one group received benzene and another was untreated 29 M and 40 F/group	Skin carcinomas: 0/61 (benzene control); 2/60 (3%) (crude shale oil); 3/56 (5%) (industrial residue)	NS	

[a] Summarized in IARC (1985)

B[*a*]P, benzo[*a*]pyrene; d, day or days; F, female; h, hour or hours; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; SCC, squamous-cell carcinoma; vs, versus; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

dose-dependent increase in lung cancer (epidermoid carcinomas) (Dagle *et al.*, 1990).

3.1.3 Inhalation

An aerosol generated from a Write Dust Feed packed with a raw-shale sample from Anvil Points, Colorado, and one spent-shale sample from a direct-heated retort induced lung adenomas and carcinomas in rats during 24 months of exposure, but not in hamsters during 16 months of exposure (Holland *et al.*, 1983).

3.2 Crude shale oils from low-temperature retorting

3.2.1 Skin application

Crude shale oils from a variety of locations around the world and processed by heat transfer or retort combustion at temperatures below 1000 °C consistently induced squamous cell papillomas and carcinomas when repeatedly applied to the skin of mice (Hueper, 1953; IARC, 1985). Shale-derived crude oils and a hydrotreated product induced papillomas and carcinomas in mouse skin during nearly two years of treatment (Wilson & Holland, 1988).

The inner surface of rabbit ears painted with the heavy fraction of the generator (semi-coking) oil obtained from the Estonian oil-shale in gas generators at Kohtla-Järve induced squamous cell carcinomas in 8% of the rabbits. In one surviving rabbit, metastases of the carcinomas were found in the regional lymph nodes, the liver, and the lungs (Vahter, 1959; IARC, 1985)

3.2.2 Intratracheal administration

Intratracheal administration of a crude shale oil at three dose levels significantly increased the incidence of lung tumours in mice across all dose groups (Smith & Witschi, 1983; IARC, 1985).

3.3 Crude shale oils from high-temperature retorting

3.3.1 Skin application

Crude shale oils processed in chamber ovens above 900 °C induced squamous cell papillomas and carcinomas when applied to the skin of mice (Larionov, 1947; Bogovski, 1958, 1961; Turu, 1961; Bogovski & Vinkmann, 1979; IARC, 1985). Chamber-oven oil applied to the inner surface of rabbit ears resulted in multiple squamous-cell papillomas and keratoacanthomas and cornifying and non-cornifying squamous-cell carcinomas in 22% of the rabbits. In one rabbit, metastases in the lung and liver were found (Vahter, 1959; IARC, 1985).

3.4 Shale-oil fractions

Assessment of fractionations of shale oil were undertaken to determine the extent to which exposure to fractions containing known carcinogens such as benzo[*a*]pyrene correlates with carcinogenic activity.

3.4.1 Skin application

Chromatographic fractions of shale oil prepared by adsorption on aluminium oxide and elution with various solvents induced benign and malignant skin tumours in mice (Berenblum & Schoental, 1943; IARC, 1985). Chromatographic fractions of high-temperature (800–1000 °C, chamber-oven) shale oil were collected on silica-gel column and further fractionated into five fractions on aluminium oxide eluted with various solvents. Some of the fractions induced carcinomas and sarcomas with metastases in mice, and papillomas but not carcinomas in rabbits (Bogovski, 1961, 1962; IARC, 1985).

3.4.2 Subcutaneous and/or intramuscular administration

Intramuscular injection of various thermo-distillation products and multiple chromatography fractions of crude shale oil into the thigh of mice induced sarcomas at the site of injection (Hueper & Cahnmann, 1958; IARC, 1985). Chromatographic fractions of chamber-oven tar injected intramuscularly into the thigh of mice induced sarcomas at the injection site and lung tumours in some of the mice, which were also reported in historical controls (Bogovski, 1961, 1962; IARC, 1985).

3.5 Shale-oil distillates, blends and other commercial products

3.5.1 Skin application

Application to the skin of mice of individual distillates and blends of distillates from shale oil – including products such as 'green' oil, 'blue' oil, unfinished gas oil, machine lubricating oil, fuel oil, wood-impregnating oil, tar, bitumen, coke, and lacquer – induced papillomas, spindle-cell sarcoma, and squamous-cell carcinomas (Twort & Ing, 1928; Hueper, 1953; IARC, 1985). Heavy fractions of shale oils appeared to be more carcinogenic than light fractions. The latter induced only benign tumours while heavy fractions induced benign and malignant tumours with a shorter latency period (IARC, 1985).

Crude oil, naptha, and jet fuels derived form shale induced squamous-cell carcinomas and fibrosarcomas when applied to the skin of mice, whereas hydro-treated and diesel-distilled shale oil did not produce tumours (Clark *et al.*, 1988). Crude shale oil and industrial residue derived from a blend of shale oils induced two and three skin carcinomas (in 60 and 56 animals), respectively. No tumours were observed in controls (Bogovski *et al.*, 1990).

Tolichthtol, a product obtained from the acid residue of rectification of shale-oil aromatic fractions – containing up to 22% (w/w) sulfur compounds – did not induce tumours during 24 months after application to the skin (Vinkmann & Mirme, 1975)

3.5.2 Intratracheal administration

Shale-oil coke (a raw-shale distillation residue) did not produce tumours in Syrian golden hamsters after intra-tracheal instillation (Rowland *et al.*, 1980).

3.6 Synthesis

Inhalation of either raw oil shale or spent oil shale produced lung tumours in rats. Application of an extract of spent oil shale produced skin tumours in mice. Skin application of crude oils from both low- and high-temperature retorting induced skin tumours in mice and rabbits; the oils obtained from high-temperature retorting had higher carcinogenic activity. A low-temperature crude oil produced lung tumours in mice after intra-tracheal instillation. Various fractions of shale oils were carcinogenic when applied to the skin of mice and rabbits. Shale-oil distillates, residues, blends and commercial products of the oil-shale industry were tested in mice by dermal application, and produced skin tumours. Distillation fractions from less highly refined shale oils were more carcinogenic than the more highly refined products.

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Humans

Shale oil-plant workers in Estonia were examined for chromosomal damage and aneuploidy in peripheral blood cells by means of tandem-labelling fluorescence in situ hybridization. One

group of 12 workers was engaged in benzene production from shale oils and another group, of five workers, engaged in coke operations. The control group of eight was from a nearby village. No significant difference in the extent of DNA breakage was detected in nucleated cells in blood smears of exposed *vs* control subjects. In contrast, modest but significantly increased frequencies of breakage affecting both chromosomes 1 and 9 were observed in the cultured lymphocytes of the benzene-exposed workers compared with the unexposed controls (Marcon *et al.*, 1999). [The Working Group noted that workers were likely to be also exposed to other carcinogens such as benzene and coke-oven emissions.]

Peripheral blood lymphocytes from 49 smoking and non-smoking coke-oven workers from a shale-oil plant in Estonia and 10 controls from a nearby village were examined for the presence of aromatic DNA adducts by use of the [^{32}P]-postlabelling techniques. Mean DNA-adduct levels in the exposed group did not differ from those in the controls; however, smokers had significantly higher levels of DNA adducts compared with non-smokers (Kuljukka *et al.*, 1998).

4.2 Experimental systems

Low-temperature shale-derived crude oils and oil-shale retort waters showed mutagenic activity in bacteria, fungi, and mammalian cells in culture. These two agents also induced chromosomal effects in mammalian cells *in vitro* and *in vivo* (IARC, 1985, 1987). Data on the genotoxic activities of raw and spent shale and oil-shale ash, and oil-shale retort-process waters were inconclusive at the time.

Dichloromethane extracts of oil-shale ash were evaluated in a matagenicity assay with an arabinose-resistant *Salmonella typhimurium* strain. These extracts were highly mutagenic in the absence of an exogenous metabolic activation system. Similar results were obtained with oil-shale ash extracts prepared with ethyl acetate/methanol as the extraction solvent (Whong *et al.*, 1983).

Shale oil and acid-base-neutral solvent fractions were evaluated with the morphological cell-transformation assay in Syrian hamster embryo cells in the presence of an exogenous source of metabolic activation. The unfractionated crude oil, the basic fraction, and the PAH fraction produced a positive response in the assay (Frazier & Andrews, 1983).

Genotoxicity assays were conducted on industrial Kitiver shale oil and its two fractions, the low-temperature fraction (230–350 °C) and the rectification residue obtained in the laboratory, as well as the industrial rectification residue. Human lymphocytes exposed to the shale oil and each of the rectification samples had significantly increased frequencies of sister chromatid exchange compared with the controls, irrespective of the presence or absence of exogenous metabolic activation. Shale oil and the industrial rectification samples also significantly increased the frequency of chromosomal abnormalities compared with the controls, with and without metabolic activation (Bogovski *et al.*, 1990).

4.3 Synthesis

Shale oils are genotoxic in experimental systems. There are only few data to determine an underlying mechanism for the carcinogenicity of shale oils.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of shale oils. Shale oils cause cancer of the skin (observed in the scrotum).

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of shale oils.

Shale oils are genotoxic in experimental systems. There is weak evidence to determine a mechanism of action underlying the carcinogenic effects of shale oils, based on two studies with lymphocytes in exposed workers.

Shale oils are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

AAPG (2006). *Energy Minerals Division: Will Oil Shale Be a Major Player?* AAPG Explorer, May 2006 [http://www.aapg.org/explorer/divisions/2006/05emd.cfm]

AAPG (2009). *Energy Minerals Division: Technical Area: Oil Shale*. American Association of Petroleum Geologists [http://emd.aapg.org/technical_areas/oil_shale.cfm]

Aarna A (1978). *Chemical Engineering in the Estonian SSR*. Tallinn: Perioodika, pp.29–34

Anderson D, Hughes JA, Veidebaum T *et al.* (1997). Examination of ras (P21) proteins in plasma from workers exposed to benzene emissions from petrochemical plants and healthy controls. *Mutat Res*, 381: 149–155. doi:10.1016/S0027-5107(97)00162-0 PMID:9434871

Berenblum I & Schoental R (1943). Carcinogenic constituents of shale oil. *Br J Exp Pathol*, 24: 232–239.

Berenblum I & Schoental R (1944). The difference in carcinogenicity between shale oil and shale. *British Journal of Experimental Pathology*, 25: 95–96.

Boffetta P, Jourenkova N, Gustavsson P (1997). Cancer risk from occupational and environmental exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Cancer Causes Control*, 8: 444–472. doi:10.1023/A:1018465507029 PMID:9498904

Bogovski P, Veidebaum T, Tamme J, Poldvere E (1990). *Carcinogenicity and Mutagencicity of the shale-oil produced in the Estonian Kitiver retort*. In *Complex Mixtures and Cancer Risk*. Vainio H, Sorsa M, McMichael AJ, editors. Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer

Bogovski PA (1958). [*On the blastomogenic action of oil-shale generator tar.*] (Russ.). In: *Problems of Industrial Hygiene in the Shale-Oil Industry in the Estonian SSR*. Bogovski PA editor. Tallinn: Valgus, Vol. 3, pp. 172–185.

Bogovski PA (1961) [*Carcinogenic Action of Estonian Oil Shale Processing Products*] (Russ.), Tallinn: Academy of Science Estonian SSR, pp. 108–115, 138–148, 154–161, 189, 192–204.

Bogovski PA (1962). On the carcinogenic effect of some 3,4-benzopyrene-free and 3,4-benzopyrene-containing fractions of Estonian shale-oil. *Acta - Unio Internationalis Contra Cancrum*, 18: 37–39.

Bogovski PA & Vinkmann F (1979). Carcinogenicity of oil shale tars, some of their components, and commercial products. *Environ Health Perspect*, 30: 165–169. doi:10.1289/ehp.7930165 PMID:446447

Brockbank EM (1941). Mule-spinner's Cancer. *BMJ*, 1: 622–624. doi:10.1136/bmj.1.4190.622 PMID:20783633

Clark CR, Walter MK, Ferguson PW, Katchen M (1988). Comparative dermal carcinogenesis of shale and petroleum-derived distillates. *Toxicol Ind Health*, 4: 11–22. PMID:3388444

Dagle GE, Smith LG, McDonald KE *et al.* (1990). Pulmonary carcinogenesis in rats given implants of shale oil in beeswax pellets. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 29: 399–407. doi:10.1080/15287399009531400 PMID:2325153

Dickson PF (1981). *Oil shale*. In: *Kirk RE & Othmer DF, eds, Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, 3rd ed. Vol.16, New York: John Wiley & Sons, pp. 333–357.

Frazier ME & Andrews TK Jr (1983). Transformation of Syrian hamster embryo cells by synfuel mixtures. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 11: 591–606. doi:10.1080/15287398309530370 PMID:6312062

Holland LM, Gonzales M, Wilson JS, Tillery MI (1983). *Pulmonary effects of shale dusts in experimental animals*. In: *Health Issues Related to Metal and Nonmetallic Mining*. Wagner WL, Rom WN, Merchant JA, editors. London: Butterworth, pp. 485–496.

Hueper WC (1953). Experimental studies on cancerigenesis of synthetic liquid fuels and petroleum substitutes. *AMA Arch Ind Hyg Occup Med*, 8: 307–327. PMID:13091431

Hueper WC & Cahnmann HJ (1958). Carcinogenic bioassay of benzo (a) pyrene-free fractions of American shale oils. *AMA Arch Pathol*, 65: 608–614. PMID:13532114

IARC (1985). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 4, bitumens, coal-tars and derived products, shale-oils and soots. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 35: 1–247. PMID:2991123

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

Kangur M (2007). Occupational exposure to asbestos during renovation of oil-shale fuelled power plants in Estonia. *Int J Occup Saf Ergon*, 13: 341–346. PMID:17888242

Kivistö H, Pekari K, Peltonen K *et al.* (1997). Biological monitoring of exposure to benzene in the production of benzene and in a cokery. *Sci Total Environ*, 199: 49–63. doi:10.1016/S0048-9697(97)05481-8 PMID:9200847

Knudsen LE, Gaskell M, Martin EA *et al.* (2005). Genotoxic damage in mine workers exposed to diesel exhaust, and the effects of glutathione transferase genotypes. *Mutat Res*, 583: 120–132. PMID:15876548

Kuljukka T, Savela K, Vaaranrinta R *et al.* (1998). Low response in white blood cell DNA adducts among workers in a highly polluted cokery environment. *J Occup Environ Med*, 40: 529–537. doi:10.1097/00043764-199806000-00005 PMID:9636933

Kuljukka T, Vaaranrinta R, Veidebaum T *et al.* (1996). Exposure to PAH compounds among cokery workers in the oil shale industry. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 3539–541. doi:10.2307/3432819 PMID:8781379

Larionov LT (1947). *On the carcinogenic properties of Estonian shale tars.* In: *Materials on the Toxicology of Oil Shale Products. Proceedings of the Industrial Hygiene and Occupational Diseases Research Institute.* Lazarev NV editor. Leningrad, Vol. 11, Part I, pp. 111–118.

Louw SJ, Cowie HA, Seaton A (1986). Epidemiologic studies of Scottish oil shale workers: II. Lung function in shale workers' pneumoconiosis. *Am J Ind Med*, 9: 423–432. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700090504 PMID:3717167

Marcon F, Zijno A, Crebelli R *et al.* (1999). Chromosome damage and aneuploidy detected by interphase multicolour FISH in benzene-exposed shale oil workers. *Mutat Res*, 445: 155–166. PMID:10575426

Miller BG, Cowie HA, Middleton WG, Seaton A (1986). Epidemiologic studies of Scottish oil shale workers: III. Causes of death. *Am J Ind Med*, 9: 433–446. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700090505 PMID:3717168

Muzyka V, Bogovski S, Scheepers P *et al.* (2003). Effects of occupational exposure to diesel exhaust on porphyrin metabolism in lymphocytes of workers employed at black coal and oil-shale mines. *Am J Ind Med*, 44: 70–74. doi:10.1002/ajim.10239 PMID:12822138

Muzyka V, Scheepers PTJ, Bogovski S *et al.* (2004). Porphyrin metabolism in lymphocytes of miners exposed to diesel exhaust at oil shale mine. *Sci Total Environ*, 322: 41–50. doi:10.1016/S0048-9697(03)00404-2 PMID:15081736

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83).* Cincinnati, OH: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes4/x3554sco.html

Öpik I, Kaganovich I (1981). *Oil shale of the Baltic basin: Power engineering and thermal processing.* In: *Proceedings of the 6th IIASA resources Conference, World Oil-Shale Resources and Their Potential Development.* Golden CO editor. Laxenburg, Austria: International Institute For Applied Systems Analysis

Qian JL (1982). *Oil shale industry of China*. In: *Synfuels' 2nd World-Wide Symposium.* New York: McGraw-Hill, pp.1–12.

Rom WN, Krueger G, Zone J *et al.* (1985). Morbidity survey of U.S. oil shale workers employed during 1948–1969. *Arch Environ Health*, 40: 58–62. PMID:3994419

Rowland J, Shubik P, Wallcave L, Sellakumar A (1980). Carcinogenic bioassay of oil shale: long-term percutaneous application in mice and intratracheal instillation in hamsters. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 55: 522–534. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(80)90054-X PMID:7434364

Scheepers PTJ, Coggon D, Knudsen LE *et al.* (2002). BIOMarkers for occupational diesel exhaust exposure monitoring (BIOMODEM)–a study in underground mining. *Toxicol Lett*, 134: 305–317. doi:10.1016/S0378-4274(02)00195-9 PMID:12191893

Scheepers PTJ, Micka V, Muzyka V *et al.* (2003). Exposure to dust and particle-associated 1-nitropyrene of drivers of diesel-powered equipment in underground mining. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 47: 379–388. doi:10.1093/annhyg/meg036 PMID:12855488

Scott A (1922a). The occupation dermatoses of the paraffin workers of the Scottish shale oil industry. *British Medical Journal*, 2: 381–385.

Scott A (1922b). On the occupation cancer of the paraffin and oil workers of the Scottish shale oil industry. *BMJ*, 2: 1108–1109. doi:10.1136/bmj.2.4896.1108-a

Seaton A, Louw SJ, Cowie HA (1986). Epidemiologic studies of Scottish oil shale workers: I. Prevalence of skin disease and pneumoconiosis. *Am J Ind Med*, 9: 409–421. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700090503 PMID:2940860

Seldén A (1987). Shale oil workers: absence of lung cancer hazard replicated. *Am J Ind Med*, 11: 485–487. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700110411 PMID:3578301

Smith LH, Witschi HP (1983). *The Mouse Lung Tumor Assay: A Final Report* (*Oak Ridge natl Lab. 5961*). Oak Ridge, TN.

Sørensen M, Poole J, Autrup H *et al.* (2004). Benzene exposure assessed by metabolite excretion in Estonian oil shale mineworkers: influence of glutathione s-transferase polymorphisms. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 13: 1729–1735. PMID:15533900

Southam AH (1928). Occupational cancer of mule-spinners. *BMJ*, 2: 437–438. doi:10.1136/bmj.2.3531.437 PMID:20774126

Turu H (1961). On the blastomogenicity of tar obtained by processing of granular oil shale in a solid heat carrier installation. *Eesti NSV Tead. Akad. Toim.*, 10: 13–18.

Twort CC & Ing HR (1928). Studies on carcinogenic agents (Ger.). *Z Krebsforsch*, 27: 308–351. doi:10.1007/BF02314235

Vahter H (1959). [*Experimental Data on the Morphogenesis of Tumours Induced by Shale Oils*] (Russ.), Tartu State Publishing House 'Scientific Literature', No. 79, pp. 99–105.

Vinkmann FY, Mirme HY (1975). *Studies on the eventual cancerogenic activities of some commercial products of the Estonian oil-shale industry (Epo-glue and Tolichthon).* In: *Experimental and Clinical Oncology.* Loogna G editor. Tallinn: Estonian SSR, Valgus, Vol. 2, pp. 76–80.

Weiss HJ (2005). *Oil Shale*. In: *Ullmann's Encyclopedia of Industrial Chemistry*, 7th Ed. [online], Weinheim, Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA, Weinheim.

Wilson JS & Holland LM (1988). Periodic response difference in mouse epidermis chronically exposed to crude-oils or BaP: males vs. females. *Toxicology*, 50: 83–94. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(88)90123-0 PMID:3388432

Whong WZ, Stewart JD, Adamo DC, Ong T (1983). Mutagenic detection of complex environmental mixtures using the Salmonella/arabinose-resistant assay system. *Mutat Res*, 120: 13–19. doi:10.1016/0165-7992(83)90068-4 PMID:6339913

SOOT, AS FOUND IN OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE OF CHIMNEY SWEEPS

Soot was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1972, 1984, and 1987 (IARC, 1973, 1985, 1987). Chimney sweeping and other exposures to soot were evaluated in 2005 (IARC, 2010). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

For hundreds of years, chimneys have been swept with long steel brushes inserted manually into the chimney from the top and from the bottom. Chimney sweeps are exposed to soot, with concurrent exposure to sulfur dioxide and arsenic (Bagchi & Zimmerman, 1980).

Soot is black particulate matter that is formed as a by-product of combustion or pyrolysis of organic (carbon-containing) materials, such as coal, wood, fuel oil, waste oil, paper, plastics and household refuse. The chemical composition and properties of soots are highly variable and depend on the type of starting material and the conditions of combustion. Soots vary considerably with respect to their relative content of carbon, their particle type, size and shape, and the types of organic and inorganic compounds adsorbed onto the particles. In general, soots have a total carbon content of up to 60%, a high content of inorganic material, and a soluble organic fraction. The latter is extractable with organic solvents and consists largely of PAHs and their derivatives. Inorganic constituents may include oxides, salts, metals, sulfur and nitrogen compounds, water, and other adsorbed liquids and gases (IARC, 1985; Watson & Valberg, 2001).

Table 1.1 summarizes several recent studies that investigated exposure of chimney sweeps to PAHs. Knecht *et al.* (1989) assessed exposures in the breathing zone of chimney sweeps during so-called 'dirty' or 'black work' on 11 working days. Samples were taken per 'job category', based on the type of fuel fired: oil fuel, oil/solid or solid fuels. Twenty PAHs were quantified in a total of 115 samples. Higher concentrations were seen in soots that originated from burning of solid fuels. A bio-monitoring study carried out in Germany (n = 93) and Poland (n = 7) in 1995 reported 1-hydroxypyrene concentrations in the urine ranging from below the detection limit (0.1 µg/L) up to 12.8 µg/L (Letzel *et al.*, 1999). Urinary concentrations in the samples from Poland were on average five times higher, most probably due to the fact that coal and wood are used more often as fuels in Poland. The concentrations in urine samples from workers in Germany were relatively low. The use of personal protective devices among this group of 100 chimney sweeps was not mentioned. In an Italian study, Pavanello *et al.* (2000) analysed the urine of 27 chimney

Table 1.1 Concentrations of PAHs in the ambient air and in urine of chimney sweeps

Reference Country Year of study	Job/task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	PAH	Air levels (μg/m³)		Urinary levels (μmol/mol creatinine)	
						Mean	Range	Median	Range
Knecht *et al.* (1989) Germany NR	Chimney sweeps	NR							
	Oil fuel		37		Benzo[*a*]pyrene	0.36			
	Oil/solid fuel		34			0.83			
	Solid fuel		44			0.82			
Göen *et al.* (1995) Germany	Chimney sweeps	27						0.36	0.05–1.40
Letzel *et al.* (1999) Germany, Poland 1995	Chimney sweeps	100	100	42	1-Hydroxypyrene			[0.25]*	[0.04–4.5]*
	Apprentices, journeymen	79	79	NR				[0.28]*	
	District master	21	21	NR				[0.11]*	
	From Germany	93	93	38				[0.14–0.32]*	
	From Poland	7	7	4				[1.23]*	
	Smokers	42	42	42				[0.39]*	
	Non-smokers, ex-smokers	58	58	0				[0.19]*	
Pavanello *et al.* (2000) Italy NR	Chimney sweeps	27	27	0				Mean	
					1-Hydroxypyrene			0.56	0.04–2.34

* Originally reported in μg/L. Conversion factor: 1 μmol/mol creat. = 1.93 μg/g creat. = 0.013 μmol/L = 2.84 μg/L

NR, not reported

sweeps: the 1-hydroxypyrene concentrations were in the same wide range as those reported for the chimney sweeps in Germany and Poland (Letzel *et al.*, 1999).

Increased concentrations of polychlorinated dibenzo-*p*-dioxins and polychlorinated dibenzofurans were found in blood lipids of 227 chimney sweeps from Bavaria (Wrbitzky *et al.*, 2001).

2. Cancer in Humans

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010), epidemiological studies of cancer in humans were considered to provide *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposure as a chimney sweep. The evidence partly came from a large series of reports on cases of scrotal skin cancer in this occupational group. Soot was first noted as a cause of scrotal cancer in humans by Pott (1775). Many case reports of scrotal and other skin cancers among chimney sweeps appeared subsequently in several different countries (e.g. Earle, 1808; Butlin, 1892; Henry & Irvine, 1936; Henry, 1937, 1946, 1947). A total of 1487 cases of scrotal cancer were reported to the Registrar General for England and Wales from 1911–1935 (Henry, 1937). Of these, 6.9% had occurred in chimney sweeps; the estimated proportion of chimney sweeps in England and Wales in 1921 and 1931 was about 0.06% of all adult males, indicating a large excess of scrotal cancer among workers in this profession.

Evanoff *et al.* (1993) conducted large cohort study of Swedish chimney sweeps and found an excess of cancer of the lung, bladder, oesophagus and haematolymphatic organs; a study from Finland corroborated these findings (Pukkala, 1995). These studies did not include individual adjustments for tobacco smoking, but in the Swedish study an adjustment was made for smoking at the group level, whereas in the Finnish study adjustment was for social class. Both analyses indicated that confounding from tobacco smoking did not explain the findings regarding lung cancer. In two Danish cohort studies an excess of total cancer was found, but the studies were too small to evaluate individual cancer sites (Hansen *et al.*, 1982; Hansen, 1983; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-16-Table2.1.pdf).

Pukkala *et al.* (2009) reported on a record-linkage study from the Nordic countries encompassing 15 million people aged 30–64 identified from the censuses in 1960, 1970, 1980/81, and 1990, and followed for cancer in the national cancer registries until 2005. A total of 5498 male chimney sweeps from Denmark, Finland, Norway and Sweden were identified in the cohort. Statistically significant excesses of cancers of the lung, oesophagus, pharynx, bladder, and colon were found. There was no excess of non-melanoma skin cancer. There was not a large heterogeneity in risk between countries, and no adjustment for smoking was made.

The above-mentioned study by Pukkala *et al.* (2009) – which included information from the earlier study (Pukkala, 1995) – adds to the previous evidence of an excess of cancer of the lung, bladder and oesophagus among chimney sweeps. Despite the classical risk for scrotal cancer in chimney sweeps, studies of this occupational group under modern working conditions show no such excesses.

Overall, considering a consistently observed increased lung-cancer risk in several studies, and on the basis of a large cohort study that demonstrated an internal dose–response after group-level adjustment for smoking, there is evidence from human epidemiological studies that lung cancer is causally associated with occupational exposure during work as a chimney sweep. No internal dose–response was observed for bladder cancer in the large Swedish study, and the evidence for an excess bladder cancer among chimney sweeps must be considered as

limited. The incidence of oesophageal cancer is highly correlated with smoking and alcohol consumption, and in the absence of control for these two factors, the evidence of an association with occupational exposure as a chimney sweep is inadequate. From historical case reports there is sufficient evidence of an increased risk for (scrotal) skin cancer among chimney sweeps.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Coal soot was tested in two experiments in mice by whole-body exposure, but these studies were inadequate for evaluation. Coal-soot extracts applied to the skin of mice produced skin tumours in two studies (IARC, 1985).

In limited studies, subcutaneous implants of wood soot in female rats produced a few local sarcomas. Similar implants in the scrotal sac of rats did not produce tumours. One study of wood-soot extract applied to the skin of mice was uninformative (IARC, 1985).

One study of an extract of fuel-oil soot applied to the skin of mice was uninformative. Extracts of soot from the combustion of oil shale produced skin tumours in mice after dermal application and lung tumours in rats after intratracheal instillation (IARC, 1985).

Extracts of soot from the combustion of heating oil produced from shale oil produced skin tumours in mice in two skin-application experiments (IARC, 1985).

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazards from occupational exposure as a chimney sweep

4.1.1 Experimental systems

Experimental studies on soots have been evaluated in *IARC Monograph* Volume 35 and in Supplement 7 (IARC, 1985, 1987). In one study, extracts of soot samples from domestic sources were mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium*, both in the presence and absence of an exogenous metabolic system. Extracts of an experimentally-derived soot were mutagenic in forward-mutation assays in *S. typhimurium* and in cultured human lymphoblasts in the presence of metabolic activation (IARC, 1985). Extracts of particulate emissions from wood-combustion induced sister chromatid exchange in Chinese hamster ovary cells, transformation of Syrian hamster embryo cells, and mutation in *S. typhimurium*. An experimentally prepared, intact particulate soot and an extract of this material were both mutagenic in a human lymphoblastoid cell line (IARC, 1987).

Chemical analyses of chimney-soot extracts have identified several polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons that are genotoxic and carcinogenic in experimental studies. These include benz[*a*]anthracene, benzo[*c*]phenanthrene, benzo[*a*]pyrene, dibenz[*a,h*]anthracene, chrysene, and indeno[1,2,3-*cd*]pyrene (IARC, 1983, 1985, 2010). These polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons may contribute to the genotoxic and tumorigenic activities of soots.

4.1.2 Humans

The frequency of micronuclei in peripheral B- or T-lymphocytes was studied in 71 Swedish chimney sweeps. Genetic polymorphisms in enzymes involved in metabolic activation were

investigated to explain some of the variation in micronucleus formation. The sweeps did not have higher frequencies of micronuclei in either cell type when the results were adjusted for age and smoking, and there was no association between years of work and micronucleus formation (Carstensen *et al.*, 1993).

The same group of workers was studied for the presence of aromatic DNA adducts and micronuclei, and also genotyped for *CYP1A1* and *GST1*. While no specific DNA adducts were identified, the sweeps had higher total DNA-adduct levels in white blood cells, but the increase was not statistically significant. There were no systematic differences in DNA-adduct patterns between the sweeps and the controls. DNA adducts in sweeps were moderately but statistically significantly correlated with micronuclei in both T- and B-lymphocytes. The correlation between adduct-levels and micronuclei was most marked in T-lymphocytes of individuals lacking the *GST1* gene (Ichiba *et al.*, 1994).

Groups of 45 Swedish chimney sweeps and 49 controls were investigated for micronucleus formation in blood lymphocytes stimulated by phytohaemagglutinin or pokeweed mitogen, and by analysis of lymphocyte subgroups and neutrophilic leukocytes. There were higher frequencies of micronuclei among sweeps than in controls, with both methods of stimulation. The effect on micronucleus formation in lymphocytes was more significant in cells stimulated with pokeweed mitogen, suggesting that the T4 lymphocytes were preferentially damaged by the occupational exposure (Holmén *et al.*, 1994).

Analysis of *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts in a group of 19 chimney sweeps showed that four of them (21%) had adduct levels exceeding the 95 percentile control-subject value (Pavanello *et al.*, 1999a). These higher levels were associated with the lack of GSTM1 activity: three of the chimney sweeps had the *GSTM1* *0/*0 genotype (Pavanello *et al.*, 1999b).

4.2 Synthesis

Extracts of soots contain carcinogenic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and are genotoxic. Based on a small number of genotoxicity studies in exposed humans, there is moderate evidence of a genotoxic mode of action for the carcinogenic hazards associated with occupational exposures as a chimney sweep. The detection of *anti*-benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-diol-9,10-epoxide-DNA adducts in the peripheral blood lymphocytes of chimney sweeps suggests involvement of benzo[*a*]pyrene in the genotoxic effect of this exposure in humans.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of soot as found in occupational exposure of chimney sweeps. Soot, as found in occupational exposure of chimney sweeps, causes cancer of the skin (observed in the scrotum), and of the lung.

Also, a positive association has been observed between exposure to soot as found in occupational exposure of chimney sweeps and cancer of the bladder.

There is *inadequate* evidence in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of soot.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of soot extracts.

Extracts of soots contain carcinogenic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and are genotoxic. Based on a small number of genotoxicity studies in humans there is moderate evidence for a genotoxic mechanism for occupational exposures as a chimney sweep.

Soot as found in occupational exposure of chimney sweeps is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Bagchi NJ & Zimmerman RE (1980). An industrial hygiene evaluation of chimney sweeping. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 41: 297–299. PMID:7395748

Butlin HT (1892). Three Lectures on Cancer of the Scrotum in Chimney-Sweeps and Others: Delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons of England. *British Medical Journal*, 2: 66–71. doi:10.1136/bmj.2.1645.66

Carstensen U, Alexandrie AK, Högstedt B *et al.* (1993). B- and T-lymphocyte micronuclei in chimney sweeps with respect to genetic polymorphism for CYP1A1 and GST1 (class Mu). *Mutat Res*, 289: 187–195. PMID:7690887

Earle J (1808). *The Chirurgical Works of Percivall Pott, F.R.S.*, Vol. III. London: Wood & Innes, pp. 176–183

Evanoff BA, Gustavsson P, Hogstedt C (1993). Mortality and incidence of cancer in a cohort of Swedish chimney sweeps: an extended follow up study. *Br J Ind Med*, 50: 450–459. PMID:8507598

Göen T, Gündel J, Schaller K-H, Angerer J (1995). The elimination of 1-hydroxypyrene in the urine of the general population and workers with different occupational exposures to PAH. *Sci Total Environ*, 163: 195–201. doi:10.1016/0048-9697(95)04484-I PMID:7716499

Hansen ES (1983). Mortality from cancer and ischemic heart disease in Danish chimney sweeps: a five-year follow-up. *Am J Epidemiol*, 117: 160–164. PMID:6829545

Hansen ES, Olsen JH, Tilt B (1982). Cancer and non-cancer mortality of chimney sweeps in Copenhagen. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 11: 356–361. doi:10.1093/ije/11.4.356 PMID:7152788

Henry SA (1937). The study of fatal cases of cancer of the scrotum from 1911 to 1935 in relation to occupation, with special reference to chimney sweeping and cotton mule spinning. *The American Journal of Cancer*, 31: 28–57.

Henry SA (1946). *Cancer of the Scrotum in Relation to Occupation*. New York: Oxford University Press

Henry SA (1947). Occupational cutaneous cancer attributable to certain chemicals in industry. *British Medical Bulletin*, 4: 389–401.

Henry SA & Irvine ED (1936). Cancer of the scrotum in the Blackburn registration district, 1837–1929. *The Journal of Hygiene*, 36: 310–340. doi:10.1017/S0022172400043667

Holmén A, Karlsson A, Bratt I *et al.* (1994). Increased frequency of micronuclei in lymphocytes of Swedish chimney sweeps. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 66: 185–187. doi:10.1007/BF00380778 PMID:7814098

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1973). Certain polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and heterocyclic compounds. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 3: 1–271.

IARC (1983). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 1, chemical, environmental and experimental data. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 32: 1–453. PMID:6586639

IARC (1985). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 4, bitumens, coal-tars and derived products, shale-oils and soots. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 35: 1–247. PMID:2991123

IARC (2010). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

Ichiba M, Hagmar L, Rannug A *et al.* (1994). Aromatic DNA adducts, micronuclei and genetic polymorphism for CYP1A1 and GST1 in chimney sweeps. *Carcinogenesis*, 15: 1347–1352. doi:10.1093/carcin/15.7.1347 PMID:8033310

Knecht U, Bolm-Audorff U, Woitowitz H-J (1989). Atmospheric concentrations of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons during chimney sweeping. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 479–482. PMID:2765421

Letzel S, Schaller KH, Elliehausen H-J *et al.* (1999). Study on the internal exposure of chimney sweeps to hazardous substances. *Occup. Hyg*, 5: 59–71.

Pavanello S, Favretto D, Brugnone F *et al.* (1999a). HPLC/fluorescence determination of anti-BPDE-DNA adducts in mononuclear white blood cells from PAH-exposed humans. *Carcinogenesis*, 20: 431–435. doi:10.1093/carcin/20.3.431 PMID:10190558

Pavanello S, Gabbani G, Mastrangelo G *et al.* (1999b). Influence of GSTM1 genotypes on anti-BPDE-DNA adduct levels in mononuclear white blood cells of humans exposed to PAH. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 72: 238–246. doi:10.1007/s004200050367 PMID:10491778

Pavanello S, Genova A, Foà V, Clonfero E (2000). Assessment of occupational exposure to aromatic polycyclic hydrocarbons determining urinary levels of 1-pyrenol *Med Lav*, 91: 192–205. PMID:10965668

Pott P (1775). *Chirurgical Observations Relative to the Cataract, the Polypus of the Nose, the Cancer of the Scrotum, the Different Kinds of Ruptures, and the Mortification of the Toes and Feet*. London: Hawes, Clarke & Collins, pp. 7–13

Pukkala E (1995). *Cancer Risk by Social Class and Occupation*, Vol. 7, *Contributions to Epidemiology and Biostatistics*. Basel: Karger

Pukkala E, Martinsen JI, Lynge E *et al.* (2009). Occupation and cancer - follow-up of 15 million people in five Nordic countries. *Acta Oncologica (Stockholm, Sweden)*, 48: 646–790. doi:10.1080/02841860902913546 PMID:19925375

Watson AY & Valberg PA (2001). Carbon black and soot: two different substances. *AIHAJ*, 62: 218–228. doi:10.1080/15298660108984625 PMID:11331994

Wrbitzky R, Beyer B, Thoma H *et al.* (2001). Internal exposure to polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDDs/PCDFs) of Bavarian chimney sweeps. *Arch Environ Contam Toxicol*, 40: 136–140. doi:10.1007/s002440010156 PMID:11116349

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES DURING ALUMINIUM PRODUCTION

Aluminium production was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1983, 1987, and 2005 (IARC, 1984, 1987, 2010). Since 2005 new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

The aluminium-production industry as referred to in this *Monograph* involves processes such as the electrolytic reduction of alumina to aluminium, and the casting of aluminium into ingots. The mining of bauxite, production of alumina from bauxite, alloying and fabrication of sheet metal, wire, foil and other such products are not considered.

1.1 Natural occurrence

Aluminium, the third most abundant element in the earth's crust, occurs in nature in combination with silicon and oxygen (i.e. as aluminium silicate). When subject to tropical weathering, aluminium silicate may react to form aluminium hydroxide. Rock containing high concentrations of aluminium hydroxide is called bauxite. This rock is the usual starting material for the production of aluminium. Metallurgical-grade alumina (Al_2O_3) extracted from bauxite by the Bayer process is generally referred to as the ore (Sanders, 2002).

1.2 Manufacturing processes

The electrolytic process by which aluminium is produced was described in *IARC Monograph* Volume 34 (IARC, 1984). The process is briefly summarized here. Since 1886, nearly all aluminium has been produced by electrolysis of alumina dissolved in a molten cryolite (Na_3AlF_6)-based bath (also known as the Hall–Héroult process). Molten aluminium is deposited on the carbon cathode, which also serves as the melt container, and oxygen is simultaneously deposited on and consumes the carbon–carbon anode(s) of the electrolytic cell (Sanders, 2002).

A modern alumina-smelting cell consists of a rectangular steel shell lined with refractory insulation surrounding an inner lining of baked carbon. Electric current enters the cell through the anode (either pre-baked or continuously self-baking Søderberg anode) and leaves through steel (collector) bars connected to the carbon cathode at the bottom. Pre-baked anodes are produced by moulding petroleum coke and coal-tar pitch binder into blocks which are baked at 1000–1200 °C. Søderberg anodes are formed continuously from a paste of petroleum coke and coal-tar pitch. The paste is typically added

Table 1.1 Concentrations of PAHs in the ambient air and in the urine of workers in the aluminium industry[a]

Reference Country	Year of study	Job/task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	PAH	Air levels (µg/m³)		Urine levels (µmol/mol creatinine)	
							Mean	Range	Mean	Range or SD
Göen *et al.* (1995) Germany	since 1990	Aluminium smelter workers	25	25	NR	1-Hydroxypyrene			[4.2]	[0.05–65]
Schoket *et al.* (1999) Hungary	before 1991	Two aluminium plants	70	NR		1-Hydroxypyrene				
		Plant I	24						4.1	3.6 (SD)
		Plant II	45						22.2	14.2 (SD)
Carstensen *et al.* (1999a), Alexandrie *et al.* (2000) Sweden	1995	Pot-room workers				*Particulate phase*	mg/m³	mg/m³		
			97	97	31%	Total 22	13.2[c]	0.01–270		
			93	93		Benzo[*a*]pyrene	0.97[c]	0.02–23.5		
			94	94		Pyrene	1.11[c]	0.07–34.4		
						Gaseous phase	µg/m³	µg/m³		
			96	96		Total 7	16.3[c]	0.01–132		
			95	95		Pyrene	1.56[c]	0.01–9.5		
						1-Hydroxypyrene				
			94	94		pre-shift			3.4[c]	0.1–26.6
			96	96		post-shift			4.3[c]	0.1–17.7
Friesen *et al.* (2006) Canada	1975–2001	All jobs		CTPV, 2624; B[*a*]P, 1275			CPTV model, 1977–2000	B[*a*]P model, 1977–2000		
		Jobs in pot-room (anode operator/ assistant, controlman, studblast operator, equipment operator, pot operator, foreman)					50–2000	0.2–11		
		Other jobs in pot-rooms					50–700	0.2–11		
		Other jobs, not in pot-rooms					50–150	0.2–0.7		

[a] All studies are for the Søderberg process.

[b] Conversions used: 1-OHP: 1 µmol/mol creatinine = 1.93 µg/g creatinine = 0.013 µmol/l = 2.84 µg/l = 2.84 ng/mL

[c] Median

B[*a*]P, benzo[*a*]pyrene; NR, not reported; SD, standard deviation

to the top of the rectangular steel shell and bakes to form carbon as it passes through the casing, replacing the anode that is being consumed. Molten aluminium is generally removed from the cells daily by siphoning into a crucible (Sanders, 2002).

1.3 Human exposure

Workers in aluminium production are primarily exposed to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs). Occupational exposures in this industry and the related carbon electrode-manufacturing industry have been monitored most intensively with respect to PAHs. Biomonitoring studies have focused primarily on exposures in the aluminium industry itself (IARC, 1984, 2010; Table 1.1) and in anode-manufacturing for the aluminium industry (IARC, 1984, 2010; Table 1.2). Other potential exposures in these occupational settings include: sulfur dioxide and fluorides; aluminium fluoride; fibrous sodium aluminium tetrafluoride particles; fluorspar; alumina; carbon monoxide; carbon dioxide; various trace metals, such as vanadium, chromium and nickel; asbestos; extreme heat; and high static magnetic fields (Benke *et al.*, 1998; Dufresne *et al.*, 1996).

Exposures to PAHs, sulfur dioxide and fluorides have decreased over time (Benke *et al.*, 1998). At two plants that operated the vertical stud Søderberg pot-rooms in Norway, exposures have decreased fourfold on average between the late 1950s and the late 1980s (Romundstad *et al.*, 1999). The decrease in exposure can be attributed to the implementation of improved control technology, increased use of effective devices for personal protection, and the increasing predominance of pre-bake pot-rooms (Benke *et al.*, 1998), although this may only apply to the anode pre-baking plants. Concentrations of 1-hydroxypyrene in urine of workers in anode-manufacturing for the aluminium industry did not decrease considerably between the mid-1980s and mid-1990s (Table 1.2). In a review of 15 studies, it was concluded that the use of biological monitoring has not led to a reduction in exposure (Hopf *et al.*, 2009). The exposure models by Friesen *et al.* (2006) cover 25 years of extensive monitoring in a Canadian Söderborg smelter, and show a rapid decline in inhalation exposures before the early/mid-1980s, but a considerable levelling off more recently.

Dermal exposure to PAHs and the ensuing uptake through the skin may contribute to the internal exposure of workers to PAHs. Vanrooij *et al.* (1992) showed that dermal exposure does not necessarily correlate with exposure by inhalation of workers in the pot-rooms and the anode pre-bake plants. Levels of benzo[*a*]pyrene on the wrists of workers in the bake-oven area were twice as high as those of workers from the paste plant. The exposure of bake-oven workers to benzo[*a*]pyrene by inhalation, however, appeared to be four times lower than that of workers in the paste plant. Exposure to pyrene by both inhalation and dermal contact was higher in the paste plant. No information was available for temporal trends in dermal exposure in these workplaces.

2. Cancer in Humans

The cancer hazards associated with exposures in aluminium production were evaluated in *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010). There was *sufficient evidence* from epidemiological studies of a carcinogenic effect of occupational exposure in aluminium production, based on a relatively large number of studies that showed a consistent excess of cancer of the bladder and a somewhat less consistent excess of lung cancer. The following review is based on studies of aluminium-smelter workers included in *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010) and those published later.

Table 1.2 Concentrations of PAHs in the ambient air and in the urine of workers in anode-manufacturing for the aluminium industry

Reference Country Year of study	Job/task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	PAH	Air levels (µg/m³)		Urinary levels (µmol/mol creatinine)[a]	
						Mean	Range or SD	Mean	Range
Göen *et al.* (1995) Germany	Carbon-electrode production	23	23	NR	1-Hydroxypyrene			[5.8–12.7]	[1.1–65]
Bentsen-Farmen *et al.* (1999) Norway	Electrode paste-plant workers	17	17	NR	Sum of 17 PAHs 1-Hydroxypyrene pre-shift post-shift	38.0	41.6 (SD)	 3.93 10.20	 3.20 (SD) 6.58 (SD)
Friesen *et al.* (2006) Canada 1975–2001						CPTV model, 1977–2000	B[a]P model, 1977–2000		
	carbon plant jobs					50–300	0.2–5		

[a] Conversions used: 1-OHP: 1 µmol/mol creatinine = 1.93 µg/g creatinine = 0.013 µmol/l = 2.84 µg/l = 2.84 ng/mL

B[*a*]P, benzo[*a*]pyrene; CPTV, coal-tar pitch volatiles; SD, standard deviation

2.1 Cancer of the urinary bladder

A large cohort study from Québec, Canada (Gibbs *et al.*, 2007) showed an excess of bladder-cancer mortality with a statistically significant linear trend with cumulative exposure to benzo[*a*]pyrene B[*a*]P (see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-17-Table2.1.pdf). The excess risk was evident only in workers who had been first employed before 1950, and smaller risks were noted in those first employed later (Gibbs & Sevigny, 2007a, b). An increased risk for bladder cancer and a significant exposure-response trend was found in a cohort study from British Columbia, Canada (Spinelli *et al.*, 2006; Friesen *et al.*, 2007). Both Canadian studies derived smoking-adjusted risk estimates. A significant excess for bladder cancer with a positive exposure-response trend was also found in a study of a Norwegian aluminium smelter (Romundstad *et al.*, 2000). Supporting evidence of a bladder-cancer excess comes from cohort studies from France (Mur *et al.*, 1987; Moulin *et al.*, 2000) and the United States of America (USA) (Rockette & Arena, 1983). A recently reported cohort study from Australia showed no excess of bladder cancer, although the follow-up was relatively short (Friesen *et al.*, 2009; Sim *et al.*, 2009). No bladder-cancer excess was found in a Swedish study (Björ *et al.*, 2008).

2.2 Cancer of the lung

An excess of lung cancer in aluminium-production workers has been reported although the data were less consistent than for bladder cancer. The large Quebec cohort showed a smoking-adjusted excess of lung cancer with an exposure-response trend (Gibbs *et al.*, 2007; Gibbs & Sevigny, 2007b; Armstrong & Gibbs, 2009). An excess of lung cancer, but no clear trend, was noted in the Swedish cohort (Björ *et al.*, 2008). The cohort from British Columbia Canada showed no overall excess of lung cancer, but a trend with increasing cumulative exposure to B[*a*]P (Spinelli *et al.*, 2006; Friesen *et al.*, 2007). The Australian cohort showed no excess but a positive trend with exposure to dust, but not to B[*a*]P (Friesen *et al.*, 2009; Sim *et al.*, 2009). No excess of lung cancer was evident in the studies from France (Mur *et al.*, 1987; Moulin *et al.*, 2000), Norway (Romundstad *et al.*, 2000) or the USA (Rockette & Arena, 1983).

2.3 Synthesis

Overall, the cohort studies strongly support an association between work in aluminium smelters and bladder-cancer risk. Confounding or chance is not likely to explain the findings. There is an increased risk for cancer of the bladder from occupational exposure in aluminium smelters.

An increased risk for lung cancer has been found in several but not all epidemiological studies in the aluminium-production industry. Some studies also show a dose–response trend in terms of B[*a*]P–years. Confounding from smoking or chance is not likely to explain the findings. Based on these observations, there is evidence that risk for cancer of the lung is causally associated with work in aluminium smelters.

The exposure circumstances, especially levels of PAH in aluminium smelters, vary between industrial departments and also depend on the process used. However, data are not sufficient to disentangle the cancer risks associated with these different exposure situations.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Two samples of airborne particulate polynuclear organic matter were collected from two sites in an aluminium-production plant. Each sample was tested by topical application of 50 mg in toluene (1:1) twice weekly to the skin of twenty C3H mice. Samples containing 0.11% and

0.62% B[*a*]P induced 15/18 and 15/17 malignant skin tumours, respectively. The average time of appearance of the first tumours was 24 and 18 weeks, respectively. No tumours were observed in 37 toluene-treated controls (Bingham *et al.*, 1979; IARC, 1984) [Duration of the study and sex of the animals unspecified; the control animals were from a different study of the same laboratory, with the same protocol.]

In addition, several individual polynuclear aromatic compounds for which there is *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in experimental animals have been measured at high levels in air samples taken from certain areas in aluminium-production plants (IARC, 1984, 2010).

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazard from occupational exposures during aluminium production

4.1.1 Experimental systems

Air-emission samples from an aluminium-smelting facility were mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* strains TA98 and TA100. All samples were mutagenic in both strains in the presence of an exogenous metabolic activation system and some samples were mutagenic in strain TA98 in the absence of metabolic activation (Alfheim & Wikstrom, 1984). Air-particle samples collected on filters in the anode-paste plant and pot-room in a Søderberg aluminium-production facility were also mutagenic in strains TA100 and TA98, mainly after metabolic activation; some positive results were also obtained in TA98 without S9-mix (Krøkje *et al.*, 1985).

PAHs have been detected and their concentrations measured in the atmosphere of different locations in an aluminium-production plant (IARC, 1984). These PAHs may contribute, in part, to the genotoxic and tumorigenic activities of particulates collected from such plants.

Naphthalene, which is genotoxic and carcinogenic in experimental studies, has also been detected in the indoor atmosphere of an aluminium-production plant (IARC, 2002; Brusick *et al.*, 2008).

4.1.2 Humans

No increase in the frequency of sister chromatid exchange or chromosomal aberrations in peripheral blood lymphocytes was observed in workers in the aluminium industry. No effects on sperm morphology, sperm counts, or double Y-bodies were noted in aluminium-production workers compared with matched controls. There were mixed reports on the mutagenic activity in the urine of workers in the aluminium industry (IARC, 1987).

Human studies on the genotoxic effects of exposures during aluminium production have been reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010). In several studies, aromatic DNA adducts were analysed in peripheral blood lymphocytes of aluminium-production workers, with mixed results. In 172 Hungarian aluminium-plant workers, higher aromatic DNA-adduct levels were measured compared with those in controls (Schoket *et al.*, 1999). Earlier studies from Hungary had observed aromatic DNA adducts in the lymphocytes of aluminium-plant workers at different locations, at different times of the year, and in different job categories (Schoket *et al.*, 1993a, b, 1995). A significant linear correlation was observed between the total amount of aromatic DNA adducts in lymphocytes and the concentration of 1-hydroxypyrene in urine of Hungarian pot-room workers with the *GSTM1*-null genotype (Schoket *et al.*, 2001). Other populations of aluminium-plant workers have also been studied, with generally positive results with respect to detection of aromatic DNA adducts (Kriek *et al.*, 1993; Ovrebø *et al.*,

1995; van Schooten *et al.*, 1995). Ninety-eight Swedish pot-room workers were examined for the presence of aromatic DNA adducts and gene polymorphisms. No significant differences were observed in the levels of total or individual DNA adducts between pot-room workers and controls (Tuominen *et al.*, 2002). Only one sample from the lymphocytes of 30 aluminium-plant workers was found to contain B[*a*]P-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA adducts (Vahakangas *et al.*, 1985). In a group of 36 aluminium anode-plant workers, the percentage of subjects with DNA-adduct levels exceeding the 95 percentile control-subject value was small and not significant (Pavanello *et al.*, 1999). Antibodies against B[*a*]P-7,8-diol-9,10-oxide-DNA were detected in the serum of 13.3% of 105 aluminium-plant workers (Galati *et al.*, 2001).

The lymphocytes of 42 Italian aluminium-plant workers were examined for micronucleus formation and DNA-damage induction (single-cell gel electrophoresis assay). While none of the workers showed significant changes in the frequency of micronuclei, significant increases in DNA damage were noted, but only when the lymphocytes were cultured in the presence of cytosine arabinoside, a nucleoside analogue that blocks DNA synthesis (Crebelli *et al.*, 2002).

Ninety-eight Swedish pot-room workers and 55 controls were examined for the presence of polymorphisms in genes encoding biotransformation enzymes, of gene mutations, DNA strand-breaks, and micronuclei in mononuclear blood cells, and of 8-oxodeoxyguanosine in urine. No correlations were found between any of the genotoxicity biomarkers and any of the exposure measures, e.g. length of employment in the pot-room, 1-hydroxypyrene in urine, or PAH-DNA adducts in peripheral lymphocytes, even when different genotypes for biotransformation enzymes were considered (Carstensen *et al.*, 1999b).

4.2 Synthesis

Air-emission samples from aluminium smelters were mutagenic in bacteria. There were mixed reports on the mutagenicity of urine from exposed workers. DNA-adduct studies of blood samples from aluminium-smelter workers also gave mixed results.

Based on both experimental and human studies, there is weak-to-moderate evidence for a genotoxic mechanism underlying the effects of occupational exposures during aluminium production.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposures during aluminium production. Occupational exposures during aluminium production cause cancer of bladder, and of the lung.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of airborne particulate polynuclear organic matter from aluminium-production plants.

Air-emission samples from aluminium smelters were mutagenic in bacteria. There were mixed reports on the mutagenicity of urine from exposed workers. DNA-adduct studies of blood samples from aluminium-smelter workers also gave mixed results.

Based on both experimental and human studies, there is weak-to-moderate evidence for a genotoxic mechanism underlying the effects of occupational exposures during aluminium production.

Occupational exposures during aluminium production are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Alexandrie A-K, Warholm M, Carstensen U *et al.* (2000). CYP1A1 and GSTM1 polymorphisms affect urinary 1-hydroxypyrene levels after PAH exposure. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 669–676. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.4.669 PMID:10753202

Alfheim I & Wikstrom L (1984). Air pollution from aluminium smelting plants I. The emission of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and of mutagens from an aluminium smelting plant using the soumlderberg process *Toxicol Environ Chem*, 8: 55–72 doi:10.1080/02772248409357041

Armstrong BG & Gibbs G (2009). Exposure-response relationship between lung cancer and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs). *Occup Environ Med*, 66: 740–746. doi:10.1136/oem.2008.043711 PMID:19546103

Benke G, Abramson M, Sim M (1998). Exposures in the alumina and primary aluminium industry: an historical review. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 42: 173–189. doi:10.1016/S0003-4878(98)00020-9 PMID:9684558

Bentsen-Farmen RK, Botnen IV, Notø H *et al.* (1999). Detection of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon metabolites by high-pressure liquid chromatography after purification on immunoaffinity columns in urine from occupationally exposed workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 72: 161–168. doi:10.1007/s004200050355 PMID:10392563

Bingham E, Trosset RP, Warshawsky D (1979). Carcinogenic potential of petroleum hydrocarbons: a critical review of the literature. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol*, 3: 483–563. PMID:397958

Björ O, Damber L, Edström C, Nilsson T (2008). Long-term follow-up study of mortality and the incidence of cancer in a cohort of workers at a primary aluminum smelter in Sweden. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 34: 463–470. doi:10.5271/sjweh.1293 PMID:19137208

Brusick D, Small MS, Cavalieri EL *et al.* (2008). Possible genotoxic modes of action for naphthalene. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 51: SupplS43–S50. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2007.12.002 PMID:18194829

Carstensen U, Hou SM, Alexandrie AK *et al.* (1999b). Influence of genetic polymorphisms of biotransformation enzymes on gene mutations, strand breaks of deoxyribonucleic acid, and micronuclei in mononuclear blood cells and urinary 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine in potroom workers exposed to polyaromatic hydrocarbons. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 25: 351–360. doi:10.5271/sjweh.445 PMID:10505661

Carstensen U, Yang K, Levin J-O *et al.* (1999a). Genotoxic exposures of potroom workers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 25: 24–32. doi:10.5271/sjweh.379 PMID:10204667

Crebelli R, Carta P, Andreoli C *et al.* (2002). Biomonitoring of primary aluminium industry workers: detection of micronuclei and repairable DNA lesions by alkaline SCGE. *Mutat Res*, 516: 63–70. PMID:11943612

Dufresne A, Loosereewanich P, Armstrong B *et al.* (1996). Inorganic particles in the lungs of five aluminum smelter workers with pleuro-pulmonary cancer. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 57: 370–375. doi:10.1080/15428119691014918 PMID:8901239

Friesen MC, Benke G, Del Monaco A *et al.* (2009). Relationship between cardiopulmonary mortality and cancer risk and quantitative exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, fluorides, and dust in two prebake aluminum smelters. *Cancer Causes Control*, 20: 905–916. doi:10.1007/s10552-009-9329-8 PMID:19294522

Friesen MC, Demers PA, Spinelli JJ *et al.* (2007). Comparison of two indices of exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in a retrospective aluminium smelter cohort. *Occup Environ Med*, 64: 273–278. doi:10.1136/oem.2006.028928 PMID:17053015

Friesen MC, Demers PA, Spinelli JJ, Le ND (2006). From expert-based to quantitative retrospective exposure assessment at a Soderberg aluminum smelter. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 50: 359–370. doi:10.1093/annhyg/mel003 PMID:16488921

Galati R, Zijno A, Crebelli R *et al.* (2001). Detection of antibodies to the benzo(a)pyrene diol epoxide-DNA adducts in sera from individuals exposed to low doses of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res*, 20: 359–364. PMID:11718215

Gibbs GW, Armstrong B, Sevigny M (2007). Mortality and cancer experience of Quebec aluminum reduction plant workers. Part 2: mortality of three cohorts hired on or before january 1, 1951. *J Occup Environ Med*, 49: 1105–1123. doi:10.1097/JOM.0b013e318157d34a PMID:18000416

Gibbs GW & Sevigny M (2007a). Mortality and cancer experience of Quebec aluminum reduction plant workers, part 4: cancer incidence. *J Occup Environ Med*, 49: 1351–1366. doi:10.1097/JOM.0b013e318156ecbc PMID:18231082

Gibbs GW & Sevigny M (2007b). Mortality and cancer experience of Quebec aluminum reduction plant workers. Part 3: monitoring the mortality of workers first employed after January 1, 1950. *J Occup Environ Med*, 49: 1269–1287. doi:10.1097/JOM.0b013e3181593da8 PMID:17993932

Göen T, Gündel J, Schaller K-H, Angerer J (1995). The elimination of 1-hydroxypyrene in the urine of the general population and workers with different occupational exposures to PAH. *Sci Total Environ*, 163: 195–201. doi:10.1016/0048-9697(95)04484-I PMID:7716499

Hopf NB, Carreon T, Talaska G (2009). Biological markers of carcinogenic exposure in the aluminum smelter industry–a systematic review. *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 6: 562–581. doi:10.1080/15459620903094810 PMID:19629825

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1984). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 3, industrial exposures in aluminium production, coal gasification, coke production, and iron and steel founding. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 34: 1–219.

IARC (2002). Some traditional herbal medicines, some mycotoxins, naphthalene and styrene. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 82: 1–556. PMID:12687954

IARC (2010). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

Kriek E, Van Schooten FJ, Hillebrand MJ *et al.* (1993). DNA adducts as a measure of lung cancer risk in humans exposed to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Environ Health Perspect*, 99: 71–75. doi:10.1289/ehp.939971 PMID:8319662

Krøkje A, Tiltnes A, Mylius E, Gullvåg B (1985). Testing for mutagens in an aluminium plant. The results of Salmonella typhimurium tests on expectorates from exposed workers. *Mutat Res*, 156: 147–152. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(85)90057-6 PMID:3889632

Moulin JJ, Clavel T, Buclez B, Laffitte-Rigaud G (2000). A mortality study among workers in a French aluminium reduction plant. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 73: 323–330. doi:10.1007/s004200000124 PMID:10963416

Mur JM, Moulin JJ, Meyer-Bisch C *et al.* (1987). Mortality of aluminium reduction plant workers in France. *Int J Epidemiol*, 16: 257–264. doi:10.1093/ije/16.2.257 PMID:3610453

Ovrebø S, Haugen A, Hemminki K *et al.* (1995). Studies of biomarkers in aluminum workers occupationally exposed to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Cancer Detect Prev*, 19: 258–267. PMID:7750114

Pavanello S, Favretto D, Brugnone F *et al.* (1999). HPLC/fluorescence determination of anti-BPDE-DNA adducts in mononuclear white blood cells from PAH-exposed humans. *Carcinogenesis*, 20: 431–435. doi:10.1093/carcin/20.3.431 PMID:10190558

Rockette HE & Arena VC (1983). Mortality studies of aluminum reduction plant workers: potroom and carbon department. *J Occup Med*, 25: 549–557. PMID:6886861

Romundstad P, Andersen A, Haldorsen T (2000). Cancer incidence among workers in six Norwegian aluminum plants. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 26: 461–469. doi:10.5271/sjweh.569 PMID:11201392

Romundstad P, Haldorsen T, Rønneberg A (1999). Exposure to PAH and fluoride in aluminum reduction plants in Norway: historical estimation of exposure using process parameters and industrial hygiene measurements. *Am J Ind Med*, 35: 164–174. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199902)35:2<164::AID-AJIM8>3.0.CO;2-W PMID:9894540

Sanders RE Jr (2002). *Aluminum and aluminum alloys*. In: *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, 5th ed. New York: John Wiley & Sons [online edition]

Schoket B, Doty WA, Vincze I *et al.* (1993a). Increased sensitivity for determination of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-DNA adducts in human DNA samples by dissociation-enhanced lanthanide fluoroimmunoassay (DELFIA). *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 2: 349–353. PMID:8348058

Schoket B, Papp G, Lévay K *et al.* (2001). Impact of metabolic genotypes on levels of biomarkers of genotoxic exposure. *Mutat Res*, 482: 57–69. doi:10.1016/S0027-5107(01)00210-X PMID:11535249

Schoket B, Phillips DH, Poirier MC, Vincze I (1993b). DNA adducts in peripheral blood lymphocytes from aluminum production plant workers determined by 32P-postlabeling and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. *Environ Health Perspect*, 99: 307–309. doi:10.2307/3431507 PMID:8319650

Schoket B, Poirier MC, Mayer G *et al.* (1999). Biomonitoring of human genotoxicity induced by complex occupational exposures. *Mutat Res*, 445: 193–203. PMID:10575430

Schoket B, Poirier MC, Vincze I (1995). Biomonitoring of genotoxic exposure in aluminium plant workers by determination of DNA adducts in human peripheral blood lymphocytes. *Sci Total Environ*, 163: 153–163. doi:10.1016/0048-9697(95)04492-J PMID:7716493

Sim MR, Del Monaco A, Hoving JL *et al.* (2009). Mortality and cancer incidence in workers in two Australian prebake aluminium smelters. *Occup Environ Med*, 66: 464–470. doi:10.1136/oem.2008.040964 PMID:19218259

Spinelli JJ, Demers PA, Le ND *et al.* (2006). Cancer risk in aluminum reduction plant workers (Canada). *Cancer Causes Control*, 17: 939–948. doi:10.1007/s10552-006-0031-9 PMID:16841261

Tuominen R, Baranczewski P, Warholm M *et al.* (2002). Susceptibility factors and DNA adducts in peripheral blood mononuclear cells of aluminium smelter workers exposed to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Arch Toxicol*, 76: 178–186. doi:10.1007/s00204-002-0331-0 PMID:11967624

Vahakangas K, Haugen A, Harris CC (1985). An applied synchronous fluorescence spectrophotometric assay to study benzo[a]pyrene-diolepoxide-DNA adducts. *Carcinogenesis*, 6: 1109–1115. doi:10.1093/carcin/6.8.1109 PMID:3926334

van Schooten FJ, Jongeneelen FJ, Hillebrand MJX *et al.* (1995). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-DNA adducts in white blood cell DNA and 1-hydroxypyrene in the urine from aluminum workers: relation with job category and synergistic effect of smoking. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 4: 69–77. PMID:7894326

Vanrooij JGM, Bodelier-Bade MM, De Looff AJA *et al.* (1992). Dermal exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons among primary aluminium workers. *Med Lav*, 83: 519–529. PMID:1297067

AFLATOXINS

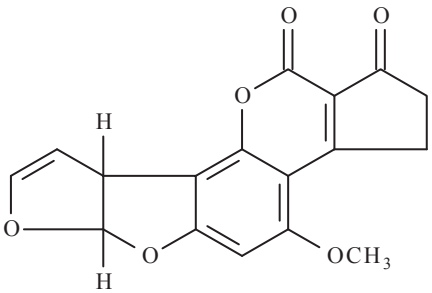
Aflatoxins were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1971, 1975, 1987, 1992 and 2002 (IARC, 1972, 1976, 1987, 1993 and 2002). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agents

1.1.1 Aflatoxin B1

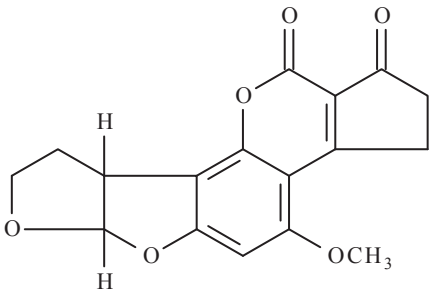
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 1162-65-8
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
(6a*R*,9a*S*)-2,3,6a,9a-Tetrahydro-4-methoxycyclopenta[*c*]furo-(3′,2′:4,5)furo[2,3-*h*][*l*]benzopyran-1,11-dione



$C_{17}H_{12}O_6$
Relative molecular mass: 312.3

1.1.2 Aflatoxin B2

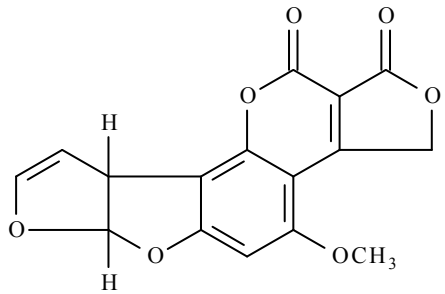
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 7220-81-7
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
(6a*R*,9a*S*)-2,3,6a,8,9,9a-Hexahydro-4-methoxycyclopenta[*c*]-furo[3′,2′:4,5]furo[2,3-*h*][*l*]benzopyran-1,11-dione



$C_{17}H_{14}O_6$
Relative molecular mass: 314.3

1.1.3 Aflatoxin G1

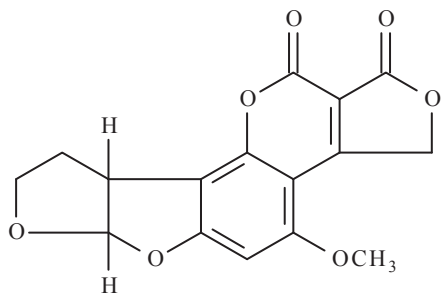
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 1165-39-5
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: (7a*R*,10a*S*)-3,4,7a,10a-Tetrahydro-5-methoxy-1*H*,12*H*-furo-[3′,2′:4,5]furo[2,3-*h*]pyrano[3,4-*c*][*l*]benzopyran-1,12-dione



$C_{17}H_{12}O_7$
Relative molecular mass: 328.3

1.1.4 Aflatoxin G2

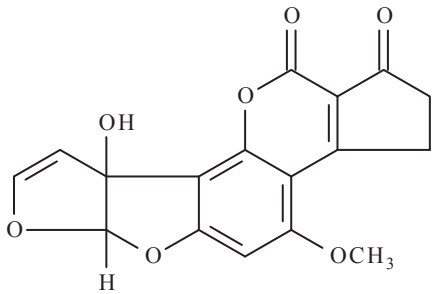
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 7241-98-7
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: (7a*R*,10a*S*)-3,4,7a,9,10,10a-Hexahydro-5-methoxy-1*H*,12*H*-furo[3′,2′:4,5]furo[2,3-*h*]pyrano[3,4-*c*][*l*]benzopyran-1,12-dione



$C_{17}H_{14}O_7$
Relative molecular mass: 330.3

1.1.5 Aflatoxin M1

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 6795-23-9
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: (6a*R*,9a*R*)-2,3,6a,9a-Tetrahydro-9a-hydroxy-4-methoxycyclopenta[*c*]furo[3′,2′:4,5]furo[2,3-*h*][*l*]benzopyran-1,11-dione



$C_{17}H_{12}O_7$
Relative molecular mass: 328.3

Description: Aflatoxins form colourless to pale-yellow crystals. Intensely fluorescent in ultraviolet light, emitting blue (aflatoxins B1 and B2) or green (aflatoxin G1) and green-blue (aflatoxin G2) fluorescence, from which the designations B and G were derived, or blue-violet fluorescence (aflatoxin M1).

Solubility: Very slightly soluble in water (10–30 µg/mL); insoluble in non-polar solvents; freely soluble in moderately polar organic solvents (e.g. chloroform and methanol) and especially in dimethyl sulfoxide (IARC, 2002).

1.2 Sources and uses

Aflatoxins are produced primarily by the common fungus *Aspergillus flavus* and the closely related species *A. parasiticus*. These are well defined species: *A. flavus* produces only B aflatoxins and sometimes the mycotoxin cyclopiazonic acid (CPA), while *A. parasiticus* produces both B and G aflatoxins, but not CPA. Aflatoxin M1 is a metabolite of aflatoxin B1 that can occur in milk and milk products from animals

consuming feed contaminated with B aflatoxins (IARC, 2002).

Aspergillus species capable of producing aflatoxins include *A. flavus*, *A. parasiticus*, *A. nomius*, *A. pseudotamarii*, *A. bombycis*, *A. ochraceoroseus*, and *A. australis* (IARC, 2002). *A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus* are responsible for the largest proportion of aflatoxins found in foodstuffs throughout the world. Of the other species, only *A. australis*, which appears to be widespread in the southern hemisphere and is common in Australian peanut soils, may also be an important source of aflatoxins in some countries (IARC, 2002).

Because of the importance of aflatoxins, *A. flavus* has become the most widely reported foodborne fungus – even with the proviso that *A. parasiticus* is sometimes not differentiated from *A. flavus* in general mycological studies. *A. flavus* is especially abundant in the tropics. Levels of *A. flavus* in warm temperate climates such as in the USA and Australia are generally much lower, while the occurrence of *A. flavus* is uncommon in cool temperate climates, except in foods and feeds imported from tropical countries (IARC, 2002).

The major hosts of *A. flavus* among food and feed commodities are maize, peanuts, and cottonseed [Note: the terms maize and peanuts will be used throughout this Volume for corn and groundnuts, respectively]. In addition, various spices sometimes contain aflatoxins, while tree nuts are contaminated less frequently. Small amounts of aflatoxins may be found in a wide range of other foods (IARC, 2002).

It seems probable that although *A. parasiticus* occurs in the same geographical range as *A. flavus*, it is less widely distributed. In particular, it has been found only rarely in south-eastern Asia. The food-related hosts of *A. parasiticus* are similar to those of *A. flavus*, except that *A. parasiticus* is very uncommon in maize (IARC, 2002).

With maize, peanuts, and cottonseed, invasion of plants and developing seed or nut by *Aspergillus spp.* may occur before harvest, resulting in potentially high levels of aflatoxins in these commodities and the continuing difficulty to eliminate aflatoxins from these products. With other crops, prevention of the formation of aflatoxins relies mainly on avoidance of contamination after harvest by use of rapid drying and good storage practice (IARC, 2002).

Apart from natural formation, aflatoxins are produced only in small quantities for research purposes, by fermentation of *A. flavus* or *A. parasiticus* on solid substrates or media in the laboratory. Aflatoxins are extracted by solvents and purified by chromatography (IARC, 1993).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Exposure of the general population

Dietary intake is the primary non-occupational source of human exposure to aflatoxins. Intakes in the range of nanograms to micrograms per day occur mainly through consumption of maize and peanuts, which are dietary staples in some tropical countries (IARC, 2002).

Aflatoxins have been found in a variety of agricultural commodities, but the most pronounced contamination has been encountered in maize, peanuts, cottonseed, and tree nuts. An extensive review of the amounts of aflatoxins in commodities in North America, South America, Europe, Asia and Africa was included in *IARC Monograph* Volume 56 (IARC, 1993). More recent data were compiled in *IARC Monograph* Volume 82 (IARC, 2002).

Surveys of selected foods for the presence of aflatoxins in many countries have continued to detect some level of contamination; the amounts are highly variable, ranging from < 0.1 µg/kg to hundreds of µg/kg depending on source, food type, climate, storage conditions, and other factors (IARC, 2002). The fraction of samples with detectable levels of aflatoxin B1 or total aflatoxins (B1, B2, G1 and G2) can range from a few percent (e.g. 6.9% of imported peanuts

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to aflatoxins in the European Union

Industry, occupational activity	
Education services	740
Research and scientific institutes	460
Food manufacturing	320
Water transport	200
Medical, dental, other health, veterinary services	100
Land transport	20
TOTAL	1840

From: CAREX (1999)

in Japan, 1999–2000; Okano *et al.*, 2003) to as much as 30% or more (e.g. maize in some parts of Latin America and Asia (IARC, 2002). Data on the occurrence of aflatoxin M1 in milk were summarized in the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1993).

From the point of view of dietary intake, aflatoxins in staple foods such as maize are almost all pervading. This contamination poses a far greater problem in the tropics than in temperate zones of the world. However, because of the movement of agricultural commodities around the globe, no region of the world is free from aflatoxins (IARC, 2002).

International exposure estimates on the intake of aflatoxins were summarized in *IARC Monograph* Volume 82 (IARC, 2002). These estimates include data from the 1995 compendium, Worldwide Regulations for Mycotoxins and the 1998 and 2001 reports of the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives (JECFA, 1998, 2001). The occurrence and assessment of aflatoxins in human biological fluids and tissues (e.g. cord blood, cord serum, and breast milk) were summarized in the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 2002).

Several recent studies have addressed the early detection, prevention and control of aflatoxins in the food and feed chain around the world (Williams *et al.*, 2004; Kabak *et al.*, 2006; Magan, 2006; Strosnider *et al.*, 2006; Bryden, 2007; Kendra & Dyer, 2007; Magan & Aldred, 2007; Wagacha & Muthomi, 2008). These publications described pre- and post- harvest strategies (such as field management, use of biological and chemical agents, improved drying and storage conditions, irradiation, moisture control, biocompetitiveness and biotechnology (e.g. transgenic expression of maize-specific genes)) and early detection methods (such as molecular imprinted polymers, lateral-flow devices, and molecular-based technology).

1.3.2 Occupational exposure

Occupational exposure to aflatoxins can occur during processing and handling of contaminated grains, particularly animal feed. Airborne concentrations at the workplace are typically in the ng/m^3-range, but higher concentrations (up to µg/m^3) have been reported.

Estimates of the number of workers potentially exposed to aflatoxins in Europe have been developed by CAREX, an international information system on occupational exposures to known and suspected carcinogens collected in the period 1990–1993. This CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 presents the results for aflatoxins in the European Union (CAREX, 1999).

Few studies have evaluated occupational exposures to aflatoxins (IARC, 2002).

Selim *et al.* (1998) collected dust samples from 28 farms in the United States during harvest and unloading, animal feeding, and bin cleaning. Aflatoxin concentrations ranged from 0.00004 to 4.8 μg/m^3. The lowest concentrations were detected during harvest and unloading, the highest during bin cleaning.

Brera *et al.* (2002) collected and analysed a total of 44 full-shift samples (26 personal samples, 18 ambient-air samples) to determine airborne concentrations of aflatoxins B1, B2, G1, and G2 in dust collected at three food-processing plants (cocoa, coffee, and spices) in Tuscany, Italy. Concentrations ranged from below the detection limit (< 0.002 ng/m^3), to 0.130 ng/m^3.

2. Cancer in Humans

2.1 Hepatocellular carcinoma

2.1.1 Previous evaluation

Aflatoxins were last evaluated in *IARC Monograph* Volume 82 (2002) and confirmed as a Group-1 agent. The weight of evidence for the classification of the aflatoxins as Group-1 carcinogens was driven by statistically significantly increased risks for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) in individuals exposed to aflatoxins, as measured by aflatoxin-specific biomarkers in cohort studies in Shanghai and Taiwan, China (Ross *et al.*, 1992; Qian *et al.*, 1994; Wang *et al.*, 1996). This effect was independent of exposure to hepatitis B virus (HBV); however, when HBV status was included in the analysis, a greater than multiplicative interaction between aflatoxin exposure and HBV infection was found.

2.1.2 Cohort studies

See Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-18-Table2.1.pdf

There has been no recent update of the cohort studied by Ross *et al.* (1992) and Qian *et al.* (1994). However, the cohort of Wang *et al.* (1996) has been extensively updated in three subsequent reports (Wu *et al.* 2007a, b, 2009). In these studies, the risk for HCC was significantly elevated for subjects with high concentrations of aflatoxin metabolites in the urine. Subjects who were seropositive for the hepatitis-B surface antigen (HBsAg) and had high aflatoxin exposure were at higher risk than those with high aflatoxin exposure only, or HBsAg-seropositivity only. There seemed to be no correlation with polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon(PAH)-albumin-adduct formation (Wu *et al.* 2007a). The risk was elevated in those with urinary concentrations of the biomarker 8-oxodeoxyguanosine (8-oxodG) above the median, who were also HBsAg-positive (Wu *et al.*, 2007b). In one small cohort the risk for HCC from aflatoxin exposure was also elevated (Ming *et al.* 2002).

2.1.3 Case-series and case–control studies

(a) Aflatoxin-specific TP53 mutations

In recent years, epidemiological and experimental studies have linked exposures to aflatoxin with the formation of a specific mutation in codon 249 in the *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene, which has provided an important biological target for risk assessment. The identification of a strong mechanistic link between exposure to aflatoxin and mutation in *TP53* has triggered analyses of this codon-249 mutation in tumour tissues and blood samples in populations at high risk for HCC. In case-series of HCC patients in China, the prevalence of this mutation ranged from 36–54% (Jackson *et al.*, 2001, 2003; Stern *et al.*, 2001; Ming *et al.*, 2002). In the one case–control study in China, Huang *et al.* (2003) found an adjusted odds ratio of 22.1 (95%CI: 3.2–91.7) for the presence of a codon-249 *TP53* mutation among HCC cases compared with controls. In contrast, case-series in Africa found a much

lower prevalence of this type of mutation in some populations, ranging from 1% in one study in Egypt to 35% in The Gambia, West Africa.

(b) Metabolic polymorphisms and HCC risk from aflatoxin

See Table 2.2 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-18-Table2.2.pdf.

The availability of aflatoxin-specific biomarkers has enhanced the possibility to monitor individual exposure to this agent. In three case–control studies (two nested within cohorts) an analysis of a variety of genetic polymorphisms as probable modifiers of risk from aflatoxin, has been undertaken in regions of high HCC incidence (Sun *et al.*, 2001; McGlynn *et al.*, 2003; Kirk *et al.*, 2005). These polymorphisms are predicated on the hypothesis that enhanced detoxication or activation pathways of aflatoxin exposure will be a surrogate biomarker of exposure. All studies were limited because of small numbers of subjects in high-risk strata, but two studies were consistent in finding an increased risk for HCC among those with the *GSTM1*-null genotype, and in one of these studies the risk was elevated among those with the highest consumption of peanuts (an index of consumption of aflatoxin-contaminated food).

(c) Aflatoxin biomarkers of exposure

See Table 2.3 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-18-Table2.3.pdf.

Biomarkers of exposure to aflatoxin have been evaluated for association with risk for HCC in two case–control studies. The risk was significantly higher in those who were HBAsG-positive (Omer *et al.*, 2001, 2004; Liu *et al.*, 2008), in those who carried the *GSTM1*-null genotype (Omer *et al.*, 2001), and in those with oxidative stress (Liu *et al.*, 2008). In one study, it was determined that the attributable risk for the effects of exposure to aflatoxin and HBsAg-positivity was of the order of 80% (Omer *et al.*, 2004).

2.2 Synthesis

Geographically distinct cohort studies in Shanghai and Taiwan, China have independently found statistically significant effects of exposure to aflatoxin on the development of HCC. These results, buttressed by the information from several case-series and case–control studies also confirm that in the presence of HBV exposure, as judged by HBsAg status, there is a greater than multiplicative interaction between aflatoxin and HBV, increasing the risk for HCC. Further evidence of the role of aflatoxins in the development of HCC was gained from studies that demonstrated the ability of aflatoxins to induce a specific mutation in codon 249 of the *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

3.1 Previous evaluations

Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals, with administration of aflatoxin mixtures and aflatoxin B1, B2, M1, G1, or G2 to rats, mice, hamsters, salmon, trout, ducks, tree shrews, woodchucks and monkeys by several routes of exposure have been previously reviewed (IARC, 1993, 2002).

See Table 3.1.

The two previous IARC evaluations concluded that there was *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity in experimental animals of naturally occurring mixtures of aflatoxins and of the individual aflatoxins B1, G1, and M1; there was *limited evidence* for aflatoxin B2, and *inadequate* evidence for aflatoxin G2. This *Monograph* reviews relevant carcinogenicity studies published since 2002.

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to aflatoxins

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, F344 (M) 59 wk Wogan *et al.* (1971)	0, 3, 750 µg (total dose) aflatoxin B2 5 d/wk, ip for 8 wk	Hepatocellular carcinomas: 0/10 and 3/9 at 57–59 wk	[NS]	Group size NR
Rat, F344 (M) 68 wk Wogan *et al.* (1971)	0, 700, 1400, 2000 µg (total dose) aflatoxin G1 by oral gavage 4 d/wk for 2.5 or 8 wk	Hepatocellular carcinomas: 0/10, 0/3, 3/5, 18/18 Kidney: adenocarcinomas: 4/26 dosed animals	[$P < 0.05$], two higher doses –	Group size NR
Rat, F344 (M) 100 wk Wogan & Paglialunga *et al.* (1974)	0 (control) or 25 µg aflatoxin M1 5 d/wk for 8 wk, oral gavage 12–29/group	Liver tumours: 0/12, 1/29	[NS]	Purity > 99%
Rat, F344 (M, F) 18 mo Frayssinet & Lafarge-Frayssinet (1990)	30% peanut-oil cake (control) or diet with 1000 ppb aflatoxin B1 and 170 ppb aflatoxin G1 19–20/group (M), 10–11/group (F)	Liver carcinomas (M): 0/20, 18/19 Liver carcinomas (F): 0/10, 5/11	[$P < 0.0001$] [$P < 0.05$]	
Rat, Wistar WAG (MF) 18 mo Frayssinet & Lafarge-Frayssinet (1990)	30% peanut oil cake (control) or diet with 1000 ppb aflatoxin B1 and 170 ppb aflatoxin G1 17–20/group (M), 10–11/group (F)	Liver carcinomas (M): 0/20, 17/17 Liver carcinomas (F): 0/10, 9/11	[$P < 0.0001$] [$P < 0.005$]	
Rat, F344 (M) 21 mo Hsieh *et al.* (1984)	0 (control), 5 or 50 µg/kg of diet aflatoxin M1 18–25/group	Benign and malignant liver tumours: 0/21, 0/25, 6/18*	*[$P < 0.01$]	* includes 2 hepatocellular carcinomas
Rat, MRC (M, F) 100–105 wk Butler *et al.* (1969)	0 (control), 20 or 60 µg aflatoxin G1/animal in the drinking-water, 5 d/wk/20 wk 11–15/group/sex	Benign and malignant liver tumours 0/15, 2/15, 9/11 (M) 0/15, 1/15, 12/15 (F)	[significant], high dose (M, F)	Liver tumours were mainly hepatocellular carcinomas
Rat, Wistar 64 wk Hao *et al.* (2009)	0 (control) or 100–200 µg aflatoxin B1/kg bw 1–3×/wk, ip 11–25/group	Hepatocellular carcinomas: control, 0/11; treated, 19/25	[$P < 0.0001$]	Sex NR
Trout (*S. gairdneri*) up to 16 mo Ayres *et al.* (1971)	0 (control), 4 ppb aflatoxin B1, 8 ppb aflatoxin B1, and 20 ppb aflatoxin G1 in diet 20–57/group	Liver hepatomas (12 mo): 0/20; 10/40; 40/57; 1/20 Liver hepatomas (16 mo): 0/40; 14/40; 32/40; 7/40	[$P < 0.05$], [$P < 0.0001$], [NS] [$P < 0.0001$],[$P < 0.0001$], [$P < 0.05$]	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Trout (fry) up to 12 mo Bailey *et al.* (1994a)	Positive controls received 4 µg/kg aflatoxin B1 in diet for 12 mo. Positive controls received 20 µg/kg aflatoxin B1 in diet for 2 wk. Positive controls received aflatoxin M1 (80 or 800 µg/kg) for 2 wk. Positive controls received 64 µg/kg aflatoxin B1 for 2 wk Control and treated groups received a maximum of 8 µg/kg aflatoxin M1 for 2 wk (n = 110, total)	Liver: 34% (39/116) tumours at 12 mo Liver: 37% (68/186) tumours at 9 mo Liver: 5.7% (11/193) and 50% tumours, respectively at 9 mo Liver: 29% (80/278) tumours at 12 mo Liver: no tumours (0/110) at 12 mo in both groups	[significant] [significant] [significant] [significant] –	Study was designed to look at treatment of food source to reduce effect of aflatoxin contamination of feed. Liver-tumour data shown here are only for the 'positive controls' given aflatoxins in the diet. Liver tumours were predominantly hepatocellular carcinomas and mixed carcinomas (> 70%).
Trout (*O. mykiss*, Shasta strain) (fry) 9 mo Bailey *et al.* (1994b)	0, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 ng aflatoxin B1 or aflatoxicol in diet for two wk 200 controls/group; 400 treated/group	Liver tumours: 0/192, 25/382, 98/387, 194/389, 287/389, 302/383 for aflatoxin B1. Aflatoxicol also caused liver tumours.	[significant]	Liver tumours were predominantly hepatocellular carcinomas and mixed carcinomas (> 80%).
Trout (*O. mykiss*, Shasta strain) (fry) 13 mo Bailey *et al.* (1994b)	0, 0.01, 0.025, 0.05, 0.1, 0.25, 0.5 µg/ml aflatoxin B1 or aflatoxicol solution exposure of embryo for 1 h and diet exposure at swimup for 13 mo 400 treated/group	Liver tumours: 1/349, 15/346, 59/348, 131/343, 191/343, 254/347, 252/313 for aflatoxin B1 Aflatoxicol also caused liver tumours	[significant]	Diet exposure unclear. Liver tumours were predominantly hepatocellular carcinomas and mixed carcinomas (> 70%).
Trout (fry) up to 12 mo Bailey *et al.* (1998)	4–64 µg/kg of aflatoxin B1, aflatoxicol, aflatoxin M1, aflatoxicol M1 in diet for 2 wk 120 treated/group	Liver tumour response: aflatoxin B1 (1.000); aflatoxicol (0.936); aflatoxin M1 (0.086); aflatoxicol M1 (0.041)		Tumour response is relative to aflatoxin B1, 1.000. Liver tumours were predominantly malignant (> 80%).
Trout (fry) 13 mo Tilton *et al.* (2005)	0 (control) or 0.5 µg/mL aflatoxin B1 in 0.01% ethanol for 30 min (exposure in tank), ≈400/group	Liver tumours: control 0/~400; treated, 20/~400 (30% hepatocellular carcinomas, 70% mixed carcinomas)	[significant]	Limited reporting of study

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Transgenic mouse TGF-β1 and wild type (C57Bl/6J x CBA) 12 mo Schnur *et al.* (1999)	Aflatoxin B1 (6 µg/kg bw) given as a single ip injection to wild type and transgenic mice 11 wild type, 12 transgenic (exposed) 9 wild type, 19 transgenic (controls)	Liver neoplasms: 0/9 wild type and 0/19 transgenic controls; 3/11 wild type and 3/12* exposed transgenic animals	*[$P < 0.05$]	Limited reporting of study. Transgenic mice overexpress TGF-β1. Liver tumours were mainly adenomas. Sex unspecified.
Transgenic mouse (+/–) FVB/N (wild type), p53 (+/–), HBVTg, and HBVTg-p53 (+/–) (M, F) 12–13 mo Cullen *et al.* (2009)	FVB/N; FVB/N + 1 mg/kg bw aflatoxin B1, single injection, ip; HBVTg, HBVTg + aflatoxin B1; p53 (+/–); p53 (+/–) + aflatoxin B1; HBVTg-p53 (+/–); HBVTg-p53 (+/–) + aflatoxin B1 15–30/group	Liver neoplasms (M): 0/19, 2/21, 0/32, 3/20, 1/30, 1/15, 0/29, 5/24* Liver neoplasms (F): 0/21, 0/20, 0/23, 0/19, 0/19, 0/17, 0/22, 2/29	*$P < 0.01$	Liver neoplasm only in groups exposed to aflatoxin B1. Aflatoxin B1 increased the incidence in HBVTg and p53 (+/–) mice.
Transgenic mouse with C3H/HeN background 11 mo Takahashi *et al.* (2002)	XPA+/–, +/–, –/– with 0.6 or 1.5 mg/kg bw aflatoxin B1 as single injection, ip 11–30/group	Liver carcinomas 0.6 mg/kg: 0%, 13%, 50%* 1.5 mg/kg: 6%, 6%, 38%*	*$P < 0.05$	Also significant for benign liver tumours and tumour multiplicity at 0.6 mg/kg. Also significant for liver tumour multiplicity at 1.5 mg/kg.
Transgenic mouse Hupki (human *TP53* knock-in) 18 mo Tong *et al.* (2006)	Wild type (129/Sv background); Hupki; Wild type + 6 µg aflatoxin B1, as single ip injection; Hupki + 6 µg aflatoxin B1, as single ip injection 21–46/group	Hepatocellular adenomas: 0/30, 0/46, 9/21, 6/34 Hepatocellular carcinomas: 0/30, 0/46, 4/21, 15/34	$P = 0.041$ in Hupki with aflatoxin B1 compared with wild type with aflatoxin B1 $P = 0.057$ in Hupki with aflatoxin B1 compared with wild type with aflatoxin B1	Sex NR
Mouse NIH 58–74 wk Huang *et al.* (2004)	Aflatoxin G1: 0 (control), 3 µg/kg bw or 30 µg/kg bw by gavage 3x/wk for 24 wk 10–14/group	Lung adenocarcinomas: 0% (0/11), 30% (3/10), and 43% (6/14)	High dose, $P = 0.02$	Sex NR
Tree shrew 160 wk Su, *et al.* (2004)	Dietary (milk) dose of 0 (control) or 200–400 µg aflatoxin B1/kg bw/d 20–29/group	Hepatocellular carcinomas: control, 0/20; aflatoxin B1-treated, 6/29	[$P < 0.05$]	Sex NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Tree shrew (M, F) 160 wk Li *et al.* (1999)	Control, HBV+, aflatoxin B1-treated, HBV+/aflatoxin B1-treated Aflatoxin B1 (150 µg/kg bw/d) in feed for 105 wk 4–11/sex/group	Hepatocellular carcinomas in 67% (14/21) of males and females (combined) that were injected with HBV and fed aflatoxin B1. Aflatoxin alone resulted in 30% (3/10) hepatocellular carcinomas (male and female combined). No tumours in the two other groups	$P < 0.01$ (HBV and aflatoxin B1 group compared with aflatoxin B1 group).	Age NR
Tree shrew 150 wk Duan *et al.* (2005)	Dietary (milk) dose of 0 (control) or 150 µg/kg bw/d, 5 x/wk for 105 wk 13–48/group	Hepatocellular carcinomas: control, 0/13; aflatoxin B1, 35/48	[$P < 0.0001$]	Age and sex NR
Tree shrew (M, F) 90 wk Li *et al.* (2008)	Dietary (milk) dose of 0 (control) or 400 µg/kg bw/d 12–15/group	Hepatocellular carcinomas: control, 0/12; aflatoxin B1, 11/15	[$P < 0.0001$]	Age NR
Woodchuck (M, F) 25 wk Bannasch *et al.* (1995)	Control, WHV+, aflatoxin B1 (20–40 µg/kg bw in diet) and WHV+/aflatoxin B1 treated 6/group	Liver tumours: 0/9, 5/9, 0/5, 2/5		Animals were 10 mo of age

bw, body weight; d, day or days; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; ip, intraperitoneal; min, minute or minutes; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; WHV, woodchuck hepatitis virus; wk, week or weeks; XPA, *Xeroderma pigmentosum* (a protein, involved in nucleotide excision-repair)

3.2 Aflatoxin B1

3.2.1 Transgenic mouse

An 11-month study was conducted with transgenic mice deficient in the XPA (*Xeroderma pigmentosum* A) protein. This protein recognizes various types of DNA damage, binds to the damaged DNA region and functions in the first step of the nucleotide excision-repair process. Treatment of these *XPA*$^{-/-}$ mice with a single dose of aflatoxin B1 given by intraperitoneal injection resulted in an increased incidence of liver carcinomas compared with the incidence in wild-type mice (Takahashi *et al.*, 2002). An 18-month study in Hupki (human *TP53* knock-in) transgenic mice that received a single dose of aflatoxin B1 by intraperitoneal injection, showed increased incidences of hepatocellular adenomas (P = 0.041) and carcinomas (P = 0.057) (Tong *et al.*, 2006). A 12–13 month study in FVB/N and *p53*$^{+/-}$ mice (with or without transgenic hepatitis-B virus expression) exposed to a single dose of aflatoxin B1 by intraperitoneal injection, showed liver tumours (hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas combined) in *p53*$^{+/-}$ HBV-transgenic male mice (Cullen *et al.*, 2009).

These three studies in mice confirm earlier findings of Schnur *et al.* (1999) of an increased incidence of liver tumours (mainly adenomas) in TGF-β1-transgenic mice given aflatoxin B1.

3.2.2 Rat

An intraperitoneal study in Wistar rats confirmed that aflatoxin B1 is a liver carcinogen in this species (Hao *et al.*, 2009).

3.2.3 Tree shrew

A carcinogenicity study to detect alterations in the *p53* and *p21* genes in hepatocellular carcinomas in tree shrews infected with HBV showed an increased incidence of hepatocellular carcinomas in animals that had received aflatoxin by the oral route (Su *et al.*, 2004). This finding was confirmed by Duan *et al.* (2005) and Li *et al.* (2008) in similar studies.

3.2.4 Trout

A study by Tilton *et al.* (2005) confirmed that aflatoxin B1 is a liver carcinogen in trout. In this study, trout embryos were exposed for 30 minutes to water containing 50 ppb aflatoxin F1, and kept for a further 13 months.

3.3 Aflatoxin G1

3.3.1 Mouse

A 58–74-week study in NIH mice given aflatoxin G1 by gavage resulted in an increased incidence in lung adenocarcinomas (Huang *et al.*, 2004).

3.4 Synthesis

Table 3.1 lists the more recent studies described above and also summarizes several of the previously evaluated studies.

Results of additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since the previous IARC evaluations are consistent with the conclusions of previous Working Groups. Studies performed with trouts (whole-body exposure), in transgenic mouse models (by intraperitoneal injection), in mice (by gavage), and in tree shrews (via the diet) strengthen the original conclusions of *sufficient evidence* for carcinogenicity in experimental animals of aflatoxin B1 and G1. Aflatoxin B1 increases the incidence of liver cancer in rats, tree shrews, trouts, and transgenic mice. Aflatoxin G1 increases the incidence of liver cancer in rats.

4. Other Relevant Data

Experimental studies on aflatoxins have been reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1993, 2002). There is an extensive body of information related to the mechanism of aflatoxin-induced carcinogenicity, encompassing data on toxicokinetics, metabolism, genotoxicity, molecular biology, interactive effects with HBV, and human susceptibility factors. Aflatoxins are naturally occurring mycotoxins that are well documented hepatocarcinogens in humans (IARC, 1993, 2002; Gomaa *et al.*, 2008). At least 13 different types of aflatoxin are found naturally. Aflatoxin B1 is considered the most potent of the aflatoxins and is produced by *Aspergillus flavus* and *Aspergillus parasiticus*. Aflatoxin B1 is genotoxic in prokaryotic and eukaryotic systems *in vitro*, including cultured human cells, and *in vivo* in humans and in a variety of animal species. Exposure to aflatoxin B1 induces adducts to DNA and albumin, gene mutations and chromosomal alterations including micronuclei and sister chromatid exchange, and mitotic recombination. Exposure to aflatoxin B1 is mechanistically associated with a specific AGG→AGT transversion mutation in codon 249 of the *TP53* gene in human hepatocellular carcinoma, providing mechanistic support for a causal link between exposure and disease (Gomaa *et al.*, 2008).

The key steps in the mechanism of carcinogenicity of aflatoxins involve metabolism to the reactive *exo*-epoxide, binding of the *exo*-epoxide to DNA resulting in formation of DNA adducts, and miscoding in replicating DNA, which leads to development of mutations with eventual progression to tumours. Biological interactions with HBV also play a role in the hepatic carcinogenicity of aflatoxins in humans (IARC, 2002).

4.1 Toxicokinetics

Rigorous quantitative comparisons of dietary intakes and the amount of aflatoxin metabolites in body fluids following absorption and distribution are lacking. As noted in previous *Monographs* (IARC, 1993, 2002), aflatoxin M1 concentrations in human urine and human breast milk have been correlated with dietary aflatoxin intake (Gan *et al.*, 1988; JECFA, 2001). Using aflatoxin-specific monoclonal antibody-based immunoaffinity chromatography, Wild *et al.* (1992) measured aflatoxin concentrations in cooked foods in a village in The Gambia. Estimated intakes of aflatoxins were less than those derived from the levels of aflatoxin–serum adducts and the concentrations in urine of the same individuals (Wild *et al.*, 1992). In humans, as in other species, the DNA binding and carcinogenicity of aflatoxin B1 result from its conversion to the 8,9-epoxide by cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzymes (Essigmann *et al.*, 1982; Guengerich, *et al.*, 1998). There is interindividual variation in the rate of activation of aflatoxins, including differences between children and adults. These differences may be relevant to the pharmacokinetics of aflatoxins, which in humans have still not been fully elucidated (Ramsdell & Eaton, 1990; Wild *et al.*, 1990).

Factors that explain differences in the response to aflatoxin between human individuals and animal species and strains include the proportion of aflatoxin metabolized to the 8,9-*exo*-epoxide (mainly by CYP enzymes) relative to other, much less toxic metabolites, and the prevalence of pathways that lead to the formation of non-toxic conjugates with reduced mutagenicity and cytotoxicity (Guengerich *et al.*, 1998).

After dermal application, aflatoxin B1 is absorbed via the skin in rats (Wei *et al.*, 1970). Aflatoxins are absorbed from the gut of sheep (Wilson *et al.*, 1985) and rats (Kumagai, 1989) and distributed via the blood, not by the lymphatic

system. In rats, absorption after intratracheal instillation is more rapid than after an oral dose, but the body distribution and excretion patterns are not different for these two routes of administration (Coulombe & Sharma, 1985). When a tracheally administered dose was first adsorbed onto dust, the binding of aflatoxin B1 to lung and tracheal DNA was increased and retention in the trachea was prolonged, compared with administration of microcrystalline aflatoxin B1 alone (Coulombe *et al.*, 1991). Aflatoxin is also rapidly absorbed after inhalation by the rat, resulting in the formation of hepatic DNA adducts (Zarba *et al.*, 1992). Aflatoxin B1 as weIl as aflatoxin M_1 are concentrated in the liver of rats 30 minutes after an intraperitoneal or oral dose of 7 mg/kg bw ^{14}C-aflatoxin B1; at 24 hours, both aflatoxins were detected only as traces (Wogan, 1969). In-vitro studies with bovine melanin have shown that unmetabolized aflatoxin B1 binds reversibly to this pigment (Larsson *et al.*, 1988).

More aflatoxin-B1 metabolites are usually excreted in rat faeces than in urine after intraperitoneal injection of [^{14}C]-ring-labelled aflatoxin B1 (Wogan, 1969). Intraperitoneal co-injection of [^{3}H]-glutathione and aflatoxin B1 (AFB1) in rats showed that the excretion of [^{3}H]-GSH–AFB1conjugates proceeds almost exclusively through the bile: 14% of the radioactivity was excreted as the conjugate by this route, and only traces were found in urine (Emerole, 1981). Degradation of aflatoxin B1–glutathione conjugate by enzymes of the mercapturic-acid pathway has been described in rat-kidney preparations *in vitro* (Moss *et al.*, 1985). The extent of urinary excretion of aflatoxin B1–mercapturate, together with the sulfate and glucuronide conjugates, correlates with species-sensitivity to aflatoxin B1 (Raj & Lotlikar, 1984).

In a more recent study, aflatoxin B1 (AFB1) was administered to rats by gavage for nine consecutive days at eight dose levels ranging from 50 pg/kg bw to 55 µg/kg bw (Scholl *et al.*, 2006). The dose–response relationship was linear-quadratic, with an upward curvature at higher doses. The adduct yield [(pg Lys-AFB1/mg albumin)/(µg AFB1/kg body wt)] increased sixfold, nonlinearly with the dose between the 0.05- and 55-µg AFB_1/kg bw groups, and showed the onset of saturation in the highest dose group, where the adduct yield was approximately 2%.

A recent study by Jubert *et al.* (2009) investigated aflatoxin-B1 pharmacokinetics in human volunteers by use of microdosing techniques and Accelerator Mass Spectrometry (AMS). The kinetics of low-dose aflatoxin B1 were investigated in three volunteers who received an oral dose of 30 ng [^{14}C]-labelled aflatoxin. AMS was used to measure the levels of aflatoxin equivalents in plasma and urine. Pharmacokinetic modelling of absorption and disposition showed that excretion was rapid, with 95% of the total urinary aflatoxin-B1 equivalents produced within the first 24 hours. Absorption of aflatoxin-B1 equivalents into the systemic circulation was also rapid, with peak concentrations being reached within approximately 1 hour. Changes in plasma concentrations of aflatoxin-B1 equivalents following intervention in each subject mirrored those seen in urine. The authors did not discriminate between free aflatoxin B1 and its various metabolites or conjugates. Based on total [^{14}C] equivalents, aflatoxin B1 was rapidly absorbed into plasma in all volunteers, with first-order kinetics.

4.2 Metabolism

The metabolism of aflatoxin B1 in humans and laboratory animals has been well characterized (Essigmann *et al.*, 1982; Eaton & Gallagher, 1994; McLean & Dutton, 1995; Gallagher *et al.*, 1996; Code *et al.*, 1997; Guengerich *et al.*, 1998; Ueng *et al.*, 1998; IARC, 2002). CYP1A2, 2B6, 3A4, 3A5, 3A7 and GSTM1 are enzymes that mediate aflatoxin metabolism in humans. The overall contribution of these enzymes to aflatoxin-B1 metabolism *in vivo* will depend not

only on their affinity but also on their expression level in human liver, where CYP3A4 is predominant. This enzyme mediates the formation of the *exo*-epoxide and aflatoxin Q_1, while CYP1A2 can generate some *exo*-epoxide but also a high proportion of *endo*-epoxide and aflatoxin M_1. *In vitro* evidence that both these enzymes are responsible for aflatoxin metabolism in humans has been substantiated by biomarker studies. Aflatoxins M_1 and Q_1, produced by CYP1A2 and 3A4, respectively, are present in the urine of individuals exposed to aflatoxin (Ross *et al.*, 1992; Qian *et al.*, 1994). In humans, as in other species, the DNA-binding and carcinogenicity of aflatoxin B1 result from its conversion to the aflatoxin B1 8,9-*exo*-epoxide by CYP3A4 (Essigmann *et al.*, 1982). This epoxide is highly reactive and is the main mediator of cellular injury (McLean & Dutton, 1995).

CYP3A5, in contrast to CYP3A4, metabolizes aflatoxin B1 mainly to the *exo*-8,9-epoxide but is about 100-fold less efficient in catalysing 3-hydroxylation of aflatoxin B1 to yield the aflatoxin Q_1 metabolite (Wang *et al.*, 1998). Hepatic CYP3A5 expression differs markedly between individuals. Factors that explain the variation in response to aflatoxin among human individuals, animal species and strains include the proportion of aflatoxin metabolized to the 8,9-*exo* and *endo*-epoxide relative to other, much less toxic metabolites and the prevalence of pathways forming non-toxic conjugates with reduced mutagenicity and cytotoxicity (Eaton & Gallagher, 1994; McLean & Dutton, 1995; Guengerich *et al.*, 1998).

The expression of enzymes involved in aflatoxin metabolism can be modulated with chemopreventive agents, resulting in inhibition of DNA-adduct formation and hepatocarcinogenesis, as has been demonstrated in rats. Oltipraz is a chemopreventive agent that increases glutathione conjugation and inhibits the activity of some cytochrome P450 enzymes (e.g. CYP1A2). Results from clinical trials with oltipraz in the People's Republic of China are consistent with experimental data in showing that, following dietary exposure to aflatoxins, modulation of the metabolism of aflatoxins can lead to reduced levels of DNA adducts (IARC, 2002; Kensler *et al.*, 2005).

There are marked interspecies differences in sensitivity to aflatoxin-induced carcinogenesis (Gorelick, 1990; Eaton & Gallagher, 1994; Eaton & Groopman, 1994). For example, the adult mouse is almost completely refractory to tumour formation except under conditions of partial hepatectomy, or as a result of liver injury through expression of transgenically induced hepatitis-B virus antigens. In contrast, the rat is extremely sensitive. A considerable part of this interspecies variation is understood in terms of differences in activation and detoxification activities of aflatoxin-metabolizing enzymes in the pathways described above (IARC, 2002). Microsomal preparations from mice show a higher specific activity for aflatoxin-B1 8,9-epoxide production than those from the rat (Ramsdell & Eaton, 1990). However, in the mouse, the resistance to aflatoxin carcinogenesis is largely, if not exclusively, explained by the constitutive hepatic expression of an α-class GST, mGSTA3–3, a detoxifying enzyme with a high affinity for aflatoxin B1 8,9-epoxide (Buetler & Eaton, 1992; Hayes *et al.*, 1992). In contrast, rats do not constitutively express a GST isoform with high epoxide-conjugating activity, but they do express an inducible α-class GST (rGSTA5–5) with high activity. The induction of this enzyme plays a major role in the resistance of rats to aflatoxin-B_1-induced hepatocarcinogenicity following treatment with enzyme inducers including oltipraz, ethoxyquin and butylated hydroxyanisole (Kensler *et al.*, 1986, 1987; Hayes *et al.*, 1991, 1994; Pulford & Hayes, 1996).

Current knowledge of the molecular mechanisms of aflatoxin-induced carcinogenesis contributes to the understanding of the nature of the biological interaction between hepatitis B virus (HBV) and aflatoxins in determining the

risk for hepatocellular carcinoma (IARC, 2002). In Asia and Africa, where the majority of cases are found, aflatoxins and hepatitis viruses (HBV and HCV) are important factors giving rise to extraordinarily high incidence rates (24.2–35.5/100000) of hepatocellular carcinoma. In these areas, HBV-induced chronic active hepatitis and cirrhosis constitute major risk factors for liver cancer.

Infection with HBV may increase aflatoxin metabolism. In HBV-infected children in The Gambia there was a higher level of aflatoxin–albumin adducts than in non-infected children, an observation consistent with altered aflatoxin metabolism (Allen *et al.*, 1992; Turner *et al.*, 2000). However, similar studies in adults did not show such differences (Groopman *et al.*, 1992; Wild *et al.*, 2000). Glutathione *S*-transferase activity is reduced in human liver in the presence of HBV infection (Zhou *et al.*, 1997). In HBV-transgenic mice, liver injury is associated with increased expression of cytochrome P450 enzymes (Kirby *et al.*, 1994).

4.3 Aflatoxin–albumin adducts

4.3.1 Aflatoxin–albumin adducts as biomarkers of exposure in children

Gong *et al.* (2003) conducted a cross-sectional study in Benin and Togo to investigate aflatoxin exposure in children around the time of weaning and correlated these data with food consumption, socioeconomic status, agro-ecological zone of residence, and anthropometric measures. Blood samples from 479 children (age, 9 months to 5 years) from 16 villages in four agro-ecological zones were assayed for aflatoxin–albumin adducts as a measure of recent (2–3 months) past exposure. Aflatoxin–albumin adducts were detected in 475/479 (99%) children (geometric mean 32.8 pg/mg, 95%CI: 25.3–42.5). Adduct levels varied markedly across agro-ecological zones, with mean values being approximately four times higher in the central than in the northern region. The aflatoxin–albumin adduct level increased with age up to three years, and was significantly (P = 0.0001) related to weaning status of the 1–3-year age group: weaned children had approximately twofold higher mean aflatoxin–albumin adduct levels (38 pg aflatoxin–lysine equivalents per mg of albumin [pg/mg]) than those receiving a mixture of breast milk and solid foods, after adjustment for age, sex, agro-ecological zone, and socioeconomic status. A higher intake of maize, but not peanuts, in the preceding week was correlated with higher aflatoxin–albumin adduct levels in the children. The prevalence of stunted growth (height for age Z-score, HAZ) and being underweight (weight for age Z-score, WAZ) were 33% and 29%, respectively, by World Health Organization criteria. Children in these two categories had 30–40% higher mean aflatoxin–albumin levels than the remainder of the children, and strong dose–response relationships were observed between aflatoxin–albumin levels and the extent of stunting and being underweight. Polychronaki *et al.* (2008) investigated aflatoxin exposure in Egyptian children (n = 50; age, 1–2.5 years) by assessing urinary aflatoxin metabolites (AFM1, AFB1, AFB2, AFG1, AFG2). Samples from Guinean children (n = 50; age, 2–4 years) were analysed in parallel, providing a comparison with a region of established, frequent exposure to aflatoxin. Overall, aflatoxins were less frequently present in Egyptian (38%) than in Guinean urine samples (86%) (P < 0.001). For AFM1, the geometric mean level in Guinea (16.3 pg/ml; 95%CI: 10.1–26.6 pg/ml) was six times higher (P < 0.001) than in Egypt (2.7 pg/ml; 95%CI: 2.5–2.8 pg/ml).

4.3.2 Aflatoxin–albumin adducts as biomarkers of exposure in intervention trials

The aflatoxin-biomarker studies in populations at high risk for HCC have stimulated the development of interventions to reduce exposure to aflatoxins. In the study by Turner *et al.* (2005), aflatoxin biomarkers were used to assess whether post-harvest measures to restrict aflatoxin contamination of peanut crops could reduce exposure in the lower Kindia region of Guinea. Farms from 20 villages were included, ten of which implemented a package of post-harvest measures to restrict aflatoxin contamination of the peanut crops; ten controls followed usual post-harvest practices. The concentrations of aflatoxin–albumin adducts from 600 people were measured immediately after harvest, and three and five months later, to monitor the effectiveness of the intervention. In control villages the mean aflatoxin–albumin concentration increased from 5.5 pg/mg (95%CI: 4.7–6.1) immediately after harvest to 18.7 pg/mg (17.0–20.6) five months later. By contrast, the mean aflatoxin–albumin concentration in intervention villages after five months of peanuts storage was similar to that immediately post-harvest (7.2 pg/mg [6.2–8.4] *vs* 8.0 pg/mg [7.0–9.2]). At five months, the mean adduct concentration in intervention villages was less than 50% of the values in control villages (8.0 *vs* 18.7 pg/mg; $P < 0.0001$). About a third of the people had non-detectable aflatoxin–albumin concentrations at harvest. At five months, five persons (2%) in the control villages had non-detectable adduct concentrations, compared with 47 (20%) of the subjects in the intervention group ($P < 0.0001$).

4.4 Aflatoxin–DNA adducts

Formation of DNA adducts through reaction with metabolically activated aflatoxin is well characterized. The primary site of adduct formation in DNA is the *N7* position of the guanine base (Guengerich *et al.*, 1998). Aflatoxin B1 is activated to its 8,9-*exo*-epoxide, which reacts with DNA to form the 8,9-dihydro-8-(*N7*-guanosinyl)-9-hydroxy aflatoxin B1 (AFB1–*N7*-Guo) adduct. This adduct represents more than 98% of the total adducts formed by the 8,9-*exo*-epoxide (Guengerich *et al.*, 1998).

The positively charged imidazole ring of the guanosine adduct promotes depurination and consequently, apurinic site formation. As a result, the purine-adduct aflatoxin-*N7*-guanine can be measured in the urine (see below). Under slightly alkaline conditions, the imidazole ring of AFB1–*N7*-Guo is opened and forms the more stable – not depurinating – ring-open aflatoxin B1–formamidopyrimidine adduct (Groopman *et al.*, 1981).

DNA and protein adducts of aflatoxin have been detected in many studies in human liver and in body fluids. Some studies related the level of adducts to polymorphisms in metabolizing enzymes, to investigate interindividual susceptibility to aflatoxin (IARC, 1993, 2002).

4.4.1 Aflatoxin–DNA adducts as biomarkers in intervention trials

Egner *et al.* (2001) reported on a clinical trial with chlorophyllin in Qidong County, People's Republic China. Chlorophyllin is a mixture of semisynthetic, water-soluble derivatives of chlorophyll that has been shown in animal models to be an effective inhibitor of aflatoxin-induced hepatocarcinogenesis by blocking the bioavailability of the carcinogen. A total of 180 adults from Qidong were randomly assigned to ingest 100 mg of chlorophyllin or a placebo three times a day for four months. The primary endpoint was modulation of levels of aflatoxin-N7-guanine adducts in urine samples collected three months into the intervention. Chlorophyllin consumption at each meal led to an overall 55% reduction ($P = 0.036$) in median urinary levels of this

aflatoxin biomarker compared with concentrations in the urine of those taking the placebo.

Kensler *et al.* (2005) described a randomized, placebo-controlled chemoprevention trial aimed at testing whether drinking hot-water infusions of three-day-old broccoli sprouts, containing defined concentrations of glucosinolates, could alter the disposition of aflatoxin. Two hundred healthy adults drank infusions containing either 400 µmol or < 3 µmol glucoraphanin (control value) nightly for two weeks. An inverse association was observed for excretion of dithiocarbamates and aflatoxin-DNA adducts ($P = 0.002$; $R = 0.31$) in individuals who consumed broccoli-sprout glucosinolates.

4.5 Mutagenicity

Aflatoxin B1 induces mutations in *Salmonella typhimurium* strains TA98 and TA100, and causes unscheduled DNA synthesis, chromosomal aberrations, sister chromatid exchange, micronucleus formation and cell transformation in various *in vivo* and *in vitro* mammalian systems. For its mutagenicity, aflatoxin B1 is strongly dependent on metabolic activation with a rat-liver S9 fraction: the mutagenicity in *Salmonella* tester strains TA98 and TA100 without S9 was approximately 1000 times lower than in the presence of S9 (IARC, 1993, 2002).

Aflatoxin B1 can induce mitotic recombination in addition to point mutations (IARC, 2002). This has been demonstrated in both yeast and mammalian cells. In human lymphoblastoid cells, aflatoxin B1 treatment resulted in mitotic recombination and loss of heterozygosity. A reversion assay demonstrated aflatoxin B1-induced intrachromosomal recombination in a mutant cell-line derived from V79 cells that harbour an inactivating tandem-duplication in the *Hprt* gene. Aflatoxin B1 also induced recombination in minisatellite sequences in yeast expressing recombinant human CYP1A2. Liver tumours in HBV-transgenic mice – accumulating hepatitis-B surface antigen in the endoplasmic reticulum of the hepatocytes – treated with aflatoxin B1 transplacentally contained rearrangements in minisatellite sequences after transplacental exposure to aflatoxin B1; no such alterations were seen in non-treated animals (Kaplanski *et al.*, 1997). These findings suggest that aflatoxin can induce genetic instability in addition to point mutations. Mitotic recombination and genetic instability may therefore be two mechanisms by which aflatoxin may contribute to genetic alterations, such as loss of heterozygosity, in hepatocollular carcinoma.

Efforts to correlate biomarkers of aflatoxin exposure (i.e. adduct levels) with mutation indiction have given mixed results. In human subjects from Qidong County, People's Republic of China, aflatoxin exposure was determined as high or low by measuring aflatoxin–albumin adduct levels in serum in comparison with the *HPRT* mutant frequency in lymphocytes. A higher *HPRT* mutant frequency was observed in subjects with high compared with low aflatoxin exposure (Wang *et al.*, 1999). In a study in The Gambia, chromosomal aberrations, micronuclei and sister chromatid exchange were studied in 35 adults, 32 of whom had measurable concentrations of aflatoxin–albumin adducts. There was no correlation within this group between the cytogenetic alterations and aflatoxin–albumin adducts in peripheral blood at the individual level. In a further study, blood samples of 29 individuals of the same group were tested for DNA damage in the single-cell gel electrophoresis (comet) assay, but no correlation was observed with aflatoxin–albumin adducts or *GSTM1* genotype (Anderson *et al.*, 1999).

4.6 Molecular lesions

It has been suggested that exposure to aflatoxin B1 can lead to hepatocellular carcinoma through induction of a specific mutation in codon 249 of the *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene (Gomaa

et al., 2008). Indeed, molecular analyses of human hepatocellular carcinomas have revealed a high prevalence of an AGG→AGT (Arg → Ser) transversion at codon 249 of the *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene (249ser mutation) in tumours from areas of the world where aflatoxin exposure was reported to be high (Montesano *et al.*, 1997). A large number of studies have been published on aflatoxin exposure and *TP53* mutations; two meta-analyses examined the relationship between aflatoxin exposure, HBV infection and *TP53* mutations in 20 (Lasky & Magder, 1997) and in 48 published studies (Stern *et al.*, 2001).

In geographical correlation studies, exposure to aflatoxin was associated with a specific G→T transversion in codon 249 of the *TP53* gene in human hepatocellular carcinoma. This alteration is consistent with the formation of the major aflatoxin B1–*N7*-guanine adduct and the observation that G→T mutations are predominant in cell culture and animal model systems. The high prevalence of the codon-249 mutation in human hepatocellular carcinoma, however, is only partly explained in experimental studies by sequence-specific binding and mutation induced by aflatoxin B1, or by an altered function of the p53 protein in studies of hepatocyte growth and transformation.

Preneoplastic lesions have been examined to define the time point in the natural history of hepatocellular carcinoma when the *TP53* mutation occurs. Hulla *et al.* (1993) examined six hyperplastic nodules from rat liver that had developed three weeks after intraperitoneal injection with aflatoxin B1 followed by partial hepatectomy. No mutations at the codon-249 equivalent were found. In other studies mice received intraperitoneal injections of aflatoxin B1 and were examined for tumours six to 14 months later (Tam *et al.*, 1999). Of the 71 lung tumours examined, 79% showed positive nuclear p53-staining. Analysis of microdissected tumour samples revealed mutations in different codons in exons 5, 6 and 7. Direct sequencing showed 26 mutations, which included nine G:C to A:T transitions, 11 A:T to G:C transitions and five transversions (two G:C to T:A, two T:A to A:T and one A:T to C:G). The high mutation frequency and heterogeneous staining pattern suggested that *TP53* mutations occur relatively late in aflatoxin-B1-induced mouse lung tumorigenesis.

Investigations have been conducted to establish which DNA adduct is the most likely precursor of the mutations induced by aflatoxin B1. In several experimental systems these mutations are certainly consistent with the main carcinogen-binding occurring at guanine in DNA, leading to G→T transversions (IARC, 1993, 2002). When a pS189 shuttle vector was modified by aflatoxin B1 and then replicated in human Ad293 cells, predominantly G→T transversions were detected (Trottier *et al.*, 1992). However, other types of mutation have also been observed with aflatoxin B1. For example, Levy *et al.* (1992) transfected an aflatoxin-B_1-modified shuttle vector into DNA repair-deficient (XP) or -proficient human (GM0637) fibroblasts, and examined mutations in the *SUP-F* marker gene. Higher mutation frequencies were observed in the DNA repair-deficient cells and the location of mutations was significantly affected by repair proficiency. The majority of mutations were at GC base pairs: 50–70% were G →T transversions, but G→C transversions and G→A transitions were also frequent. A polymerase stop-assay was used to examine the of aflatoxin-B_1-binding site within the shuttle vector: no strong correlation was found between initial binding sites and subsequent hotspots for mutation. This suggests that processing of adducts, e.g. during DNA replication and repair, can influence not only the overall mutation frequency but also the distribution of mutations within a gene.

A host-mediated assay was used to determine the pattern of mutagenesis induced by aflatoxin B1 in the *lacI* gene of *E. coli* bacteria recovered from rat liver. Most of the 281 forward mutations analysed were base substitutions at GC base

pairs; over half were GC→TA transversions, with other mutations evenly divided between GC→AT transitions and GC→CG transversions (Prieto-Alamo *et al.*, 1996).

In a human lymphoblastoid cell line (h1A2v2) expressing the human recombinant CYP1A1 enzyme, aflatoxin B1 (4 ng/mL; 25 hours) produced a hotspot GC→TA transversion mutation at base pair 209 in exon 3 of the *HPRT* gene in 10–17% of all mutants. This hotspot occurred at a GGGGGG sequence (target base underlined) (Cariello *et al.*, 1994).

Bailey *et al.* (1996) studied the induction of mutations resulting from two of the principal forms of DNA damage induced by aflatoxin B1, namely the AFB1–*N7*-Guo adduct and the ensuing apurinic sites, by site-directed mutagenesis. Single-stranded M13 bacteriophage DNA containing a unique AFB1–*N7*-Guo adduct or an apurinic site was used to transform *E. coli*. The predominant mutations with AFB1–*N7*-Guo were G→T transversions targeted to the site of the original adduct (approximately 74%), with lower frequencies of G→A transitions (13–18%) and G→C transversions (1–3%). Using *E. coli* strains differing in biochemical activity of the UmuDC- and MucAB proteins – involved in processing of apurinic sites by insertion of dAMP – the authors showed that the mutations observed with AFB1–*N7*-Guo were not predominantly a simple result of depurination of the initial adduct. A significant number of base substitutions were located at the base 5′ to the site of the original adduct, representing around 13% of the total mutations. This induction of mutation at the base adjacent to the original site of damage was not observed with apurinic sites as the mutagenic lesion. It was suggested that this reflects interference with DNA replication following the intercalation of aflatoxin-B1–8,9-epoxide (Gopalakrishnan *et al.*, 1990).

4.7 Synthesis

Several key steps in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma induced by exposure to aflatoxin are well accepted (Wild & Montesano, 2009), and provide strong evidence that the mechanism of action of this agent involves metabolic activation to a genotoxic metabolite, formation of DNA adducts, and modification of the *TP53* gene. The concurrent presence of hepatitis B virus increases the incidence of hepatic tumours in humans. Aflatoxin B1 is the most common and potent of the aflatoxins. It is metabolized predominantly in the liver to an AFB1–8,9-*exo*-epoxide, which forms a promutagenic AFB1-*N7*-guanine DNA adduct that results in G→T transversion mutations. In human hepatocellular cancers in areas where aflatoxin exposure is high, up to 50% of tumours have been shown to harbour a specific AGG→AGT point mutation in codon 249 of the *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene (codon 249Ser mutation) (Hussain *et al.*, 2007; Wild & Montesano, 2009).

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of aflatoxins. Aflatoxins cause cancer of the liver (hepatocellular carcinoma).

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of naturally occurring mixtures of aflatoxins, and of aflatoxin B1, G1 and M1.

There is *limited evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of aflatoxin B2.

There is *inadequate evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of aflatoxin G2.

There is strong evidence that the carcinogenicity of aflatoxins operates by a genotoxic mechanism of action that involves metabolic activation to a genotoxic epoxide metabolite, formation of DNA adducts, and modification of the TP53 gene. In human hepatocellular

carcinoma from areas where exposure to aflatoxins is high, up to 50% of tumours have been shown to harbour a specific point mutation in the *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene.

Aflatoxins are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Allen SJ, Wild CP, Wheeler JG *et al.* (1992). Aflatoxin exposure, malaria and hepatitis B infection in rural Gambian children. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg*, 86: 426–430. doi:10.1016/0035-9203(92)90253-9 PMID:1440826

Anderson D, Yu T-W, Hambly RJ *et al.* (1999). Aflatoxin exposure and DNA damage in the comet assay in individuals from the Gambia, West Africa. *Teratog Carcinog Mutagen*, 19: 147–155. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1520-6866(1999)19:2<147::AID-TCM7>3.0.CO;2-Z PMID:10332811

Ayres J.L., Lee D.J., Wales J.H., Sinnhuber RO. (1971). Afatoxin structure and hepatocarcinogenicity in rainbow trout (Salmo gairdneri). J natl Cancer lnst., 46:561–564.

Bailey EA, Iyer RS, Stone MP *et al.* (1996). Mutational properties of the primary aflatoxin B1-DNA adduct. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*, 93: 1535–1539. doi:10.1073/pnas.93.4.1535 PMID:8643667

Bailey GS, Dashwood R, Loveland PM *et al.* (1998). Molecular dosimetry in fish: quantitative target organ DNA adduction and hepatocarcinogenicity for four aflatoxins by two exposure routes in rainbow trout. *Mutat Res*, 399: 233–244. PMID:9672662

Bailey GS, Loveland PM, Pereira C *et al.* (1994b). Quantitative carcinogenesis and dosimetry in rainbow trout for aflatoxin B1 and aflatoxicol, two aflatoxins that form the same DNA adduct. *Mutat Res*, 313: 25–38. PMID:7519308

Bailey GS, Price RL, Park DL, Hendricks JD (1994a). Effect of ammoniation of aflatoxin B1-contaminated cottonseed feedstock on the aflatoxin M1 content of cows' milk and hepatocarcinogenicity in the trout bioassay. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 32: 707–715. doi:10.1016/S0278-6915(09)80003-3 PMID:8070735

Bannasch P, Khoshkhou NI, Hacker HJ *et al.* (1995). Synergistic hepatocarcinogenic effect of hepadnaviral infection and dietary aflatoxin B1 in woodchucks. *Cancer Res*, 55: 3318–3330. PMID:7614467

Brera C, Caputi R, Miraglia M *et al.* (2002). Exposure assessment to mycotoxins in workplaces: aflatoxins and ochratoxin A occurrence in airborne dusts and human sera. *Microchemical Journal*, 73: 167–173. doi:10.1016/S0026-265X(02)00061-9

Bryden WL (2007). Mycotoxins in the food chain: human health implications. *Asia Pac J Clin Nutr*, 16: Suppl 195–101. PMID:17392084

Buetler TM & Eaton DL (1992). Complementary DNA cloning, messenger RNA expression, and induction of alpha-class glutathione S-transferases in mouse tissues. *Cancer Res*, 52: 314–318. PMID:1728405

Butler WH, Greenblatt M, Lijinsky W (1969). Carcinogenesis in rats by aflatoxins Bi, Gi, and B2. *Cancer Res*, 29: 2202211

CAREX (1999). Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf.

Cariello NF, Cui L, Skopek TR (1994). In vitro mutational spectrum of aflatoxin B1 in the human hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyltransferase gene. *Cancer Res*, 54: 4436–4441. PMID:8044792

Code EL, Crespi CL, Penman BW *et al.* (1997). Human cytochrome P4502B6: interindividual hepatic expression, substrate specificity, and role in procarcinogen activation. *Drug Metab Dispos*, 25: 985–993. PMID:9280407

Coulombe RA, Huie JM, Ball RW *et al.* (1991). Pharmacokinetics of intratracheally administered aflatoxin B1. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 109: 196–206. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(91)90168-E PMID:1906203

Coulombe RA Jr & Sharma RP (1985). Clearance and excretion of intratracheally and orally administered aflatoxin B1 in the rat. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 23: 827–830. doi:10.1016/0278-6915(85)90283-2 PMID:3930357

Cullen JM, Brown DL, Kissling GE *et al.* (2009). Aflatoxin B1 and/or hepatitis B virus induced tumor spectrum in a genetically engineered hepatitis B virus expression and Trp53 haploinsufficient mouse model system for hepatocarcinogenesis. *Toxicologic Pathology*, 37: 333–342. doi:10.1177/0192623309333137 PMID:19258306

Duan XX, Ou JS, Li Y *et al.* (2005). Dynamic expression of apoptosis-related genes during development of laboratory hepatocellular carcinoma and its relation to apoptosis. *World J Gastroenterol*, 11: 4740–4744. PMID:16094721

Eaton DL & Gallagher EP (1994). Mechanisms of aflatoxin carcinogenesis. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*, 34: 135–172. doi:10.1146/annurev.pa.34.040194.001031 PMID:8042848

Eaton DL, Groopman JD, editors (1994). *The Toxicology of Aflatoxins: Human Health, Veterinary, and Agricultural Significance*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.

Egner PA, Wang JB, Zhu YR *et al.* (2001). Chlorophyllin intervention reduces aflatoxin-DNA adducts in individuals at high risk for liver cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*, 98: 14601–14606. PMID:11724948

Emerole GO (1981). Excretion of aflatoxin Bi as a glutathione conjugate. *Eur. J Drug Metab., Pharmacokin.*, 6: 265–268.

Essigmann JM, Croy RG, Bennett RA, Wogan GN (1982). Metabolic activation of aflatoxin B1: patterns of DNA adduct formation, removal, and excretion in relation to carcinogenesis. *Drug Metab Rev*, 13: 581–602. doi:10.3109/03602538209011088 PMID:6813091

Frayssinet C & Lafarge-Frayssinet C (1990). Effect of ammoniation on the carcinogenicity of aflatoxin-contaminated groundnut oil cakes: long-term feeding study in the rat. *Food Addit Contam*, 7: 63–68. PMID:2307268

Gallagher EP, Kunze KL, Stapleton PL, Eaton DL (1996). The kinetics of aflatoxin B1 oxidation by human cDNA-expressed and human liver microsomal cytochromes P450 1A2 and 3A4. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 141: 595–606. doi:10.1006/taap.1996.0326 PMID:8975785

Gan LS, Skipper PL, Peng XC *et al.* (1988). Serum albumin adducts in the molecular epidemiology of aflatoxin carcinogenesis: correlation with aflatoxin B1 intake and urinary excretion of aflatoxin M1. *Carcinogenesis*, 9: 1323–1325. doi:10.1093/carcin/9.7.1323 PMID:3133131

Gomaa AI, Khan SA, Toledano MB *et al.* (2008). Hepatocellular carcinoma: epidemiology, risk factors and pathogenesis. *World J Gastroenterol*, 14: 4300–4308. doi:10.3748/wjg.14.4300 PMID:18666317

Gong YY, Egal S, Hounsa A *et al.* (2003). Determinants of aflatoxin exposure in young children from Benin and Togo, West Africa: the critical role of weaning. *Int J Epidemiol*, 32: 556–562. PMID:12913029

Gopalakrishnan S, Harris TM, Stone MP (1990). Intercalation of aflatoxin B1 in two oligodeoxynucleotide adducts: comparative 1H NMR analysis of d(ATCAFBGAT).d(ATCGAT) and d(ATAFBGCAT)2. *Biochemistry*, 29: 10438–10448. doi:10.1021/bi00498a002 PMID:2125491

Gorelick NJ (1990). Risk assessment for aflatoxin: I. Metabolism of aflatoxin B1 by different species. *Risk Anal*, 10: 539–559. doi:10.1111/j.1539-6924.1990.tb00538.x PMID:2287782

Groopman JD, Croy RG, Wogan GN (1981). In vitro reactions of aflatoxin B1-adducted DNA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*, 78: 5445–5449. doi:10.1073/pnas.78.9.5445 PMID:6795633

Groopman JD, Hall AJ, Whittle H *et al.* (1992). Molecular dosimetry of aflatoxin-N7-guanine in human urine obtained in The Gambia, West Africa. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 1: 221–227. PMID:1339082

Guengerich FP, Johnson WW, Shimada T *et al.* (1998). Activation and detoxication of aflatoxin B1. *Mutat Res*, 402: 121–128. doi:10.1016/S0027-5107(97)00289-3 PMID:9675258

Hao YR, Yang F, Cao J *et al.* (2009). Ginkgo biloba extracts (EGb761) inhibits aflatoxin B1-induced hepatocarcinogenesis in Wistar rats *Zhong Yao Cai*, 32: 92–96. PMID:19445131

Hayes JD, Judah DJ, McLellan LI *et al.* (1991). Ethoxyquin-induced resistance to aflatoxin B1 in the rat is associated with the expression of a novel alpha-class glutathione S-transferase subunit, Yc2, which possesses high catalytic activity for aflatoxin B1–8,9-epoxide. *Biochem J*, 279: 385–398. PMID:1953636

Hayes JD, Judah DJ, Neal GE, Nguyen T (1992). Molecular cloning and heterologous expression of a cDNA encoding a mouse glutathione S-transferase Yc subunit possessing high catalytic activity for aflatoxin B1–8,9-epoxide. *Biochem J*, 285: 173–180. PMID:1637297

Hayes JD, Nguyen T, Judah DJ *et al.* (1994). Cloning of cDNAs from fetal rat liver encoding glutathione S-transferase Yc polypeptides. The Yc2 subunit is expressed in adult rat liver resistant to the hepatocarcinogen aflatoxin B1. *J Biol Chem*, 269: 20707–20717. PMID:8051171

Hsieh DPH, Cullen JM, Ruebner BH (1984). Comparative hepatocarcinogenicity of aflatoxins B1 and M1 in the rat. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 22: 1027–1028. doi:10.1016/0278-6915(84)90160-1 PMID:6439612

Huang XH, Sun LH, Lu DD *et al.* (2003). Codon 249 mutation in exon 7 of p53 gene in plasma DNA: maybe a new early diagnostic marker of hepatocellular carcinoma in Qidong risk area, China. *World J Gastroenterol*, 9: 692–695. PMID:12679912

Huang XH, Zhang XH, Li YH *et al.* (2004). Experimental lung carcinogenic in vivo study of aflatoxin G1 in NIH mice *Zhonghua Bing Li Xue Za Zhi*, 33: 260–263. PMID:15256122

Hulla JE, Chen ZY, Eaton DL (1993). Aflatoxin B1-induced rat hepatic hyperplastic nodules do not exhibit a site-specific mutation within the p53 gene. *Cancer Res*, 53: 9–11. PMID:8380129

Hussain SP, Schwank J, Staib F *et al.* (2007). TP53 mutations and hepatocellular carcinoma: insights into the etiology and pathogenesis of liver cancer. *Oncogene*, 26: 2166–2176. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1210279 PMID:17401425

IARC (1972). Some inorganic substances, chlorinated hydrocarbons, aromatic amines, N-nitroso compounds and natural products. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 1: 1–184.

IARC (1976). Some naturally occurring substances. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 10: 1–342. PMID:992652

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1993). Some naturally occurring substances: food items and constituents, heterocyclic aromatic amines and mycotoxins. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 56: 1–599.

IARC (2002). Some traditional herbal medicines, some mycotoxins, naphthalene and styrene. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 82: 1–556. PMID:12687954

Jackson PE, Kuang S-Y , Wang J-B *et al.* (2003). Specific p53 mutations detected in plasma and tumors of

hepatocellular carcinoma patients by electrospray ionization mass spectrometry. *Cancer Res*, 61: 33–35. PMID:11196182

Jackson PE, Qian GS, Friesen MD *et al.* (2001). Prospective detection of codon p53 mutations in plasma of hepatocellular carcinoma patients. *Carcinogenesis.* , 241657166–3.

JECFA (1998) *Safety Evaluation of Certain Food Additives and Contaminants (WHO Food Additives Series No. 40), 49th Meeting of the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives (JECFA)*, Geneva: International Programme on Chemical Safety, World Health Organization

JECFA (2001) *Safety Evaluation of Certain Mycotoxins in Food (WHO Food Additives Series No. 47), 56th Meeting of the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives (JECFA)*, Geneva: International Programme on Chemical Safety, World Health Organization

Jubert C, Mata J, Bench G *et al.* (2009). Effects of chlorophyll and chlorophyllin on low-dose aflatoxin B(1) pharmacokinetics in human volunteers. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)*, 2: 1015–1022. doi:10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-09-0099 PMID:19952359

Kabak B, Dobson ADW, Var I (2006). Strategies to prevent mycotoxin contamination of food and animal feed: a review. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr*, 46: 593–619. PMID:17092826

Kaplanski C, Chisari FV, Wild CP (1997). Minisatellite rearrangements are increased in liver tumours induced by transplacental aflatoxin B1 treatment of hepatitis B virus transgenic mice, but not in spontaneously arising tumours. *Carcinogenesis*, 18: 633–639. doi:10.1093/carcin/18.4.633 PMID:9111192

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup. and Environ. Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Kendra DF & Dyer RB (2007). Opportunities for biotechnology and policy regarding mycotoxin issues in international trade. *International Journal of Food Microbiology*, 119: 147–151. doi:10.1016/j.ijfoodmicro.2007.07.036 PMID:17727996

Kensler TW, Chen JG, Egner PA *et al.* (2005). Effects of glucosinolate-rich broccoli sprouts on urinary levels of aflatoxin-DNA adducts and phenanthrene tetraols in a randomized clinical trial in He Zuo township, Qidong, People's Republic of China. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 14: 2605–2613. doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-05-0368 PMID:16284385

Kensler TW, Egner PA, Davidson NE *et al.* (1986). Modulation of aflatoxin metabolism, aflatoxin-N7-guanine formation, and hepatic tumorigenesis in rats fed ethoxyquin: role of induction of glutathione S-transferases. *Cancer Res*, 46: 3924–3931. PMID:2873884

Kensler TW, Egner PA, Dolan PM *et al.* (1987). Mechanism of protection against aflatoxin tumorigenicity in rats fed 5-(2-pyrazinyl)-4-methyl-1,2-dithiol-3-thione (oltipraz) and related 1,2-dithiol-3-thiones and 1,2-dithiol-3-ones. *Cancer Res*, 47: 4271–4277. PMID:2886217

Kirby GM, Chemin I, Montesano R *et al.* (1994). Induction of specific cytochrome P450s involved in aflatoxin B1 metabolism in hepatitis B virus transgenic mice. *Mol Carcinog*, 11: 74–80. doi:10.1002/mc.2940110204 PMID:7916995

Kirk GD, Turner PC, Gong Y *et al.* (2005). Hepatocellular cancinoma and polymorphisms in carcinogen-metabolizing and DNA repair enzymes in a population with aflatoxin exposure and hepatitis B virus endemicity. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 14: 373–379. PMID:15734960

Kumagai S (1989). Intestinal absorption and excretion of aflatoxin in rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 97: 88–97. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(89)90057-4 PMID:2492684

Larsson P, Larsson BS, Tjälve H (1988). Binding of aflatoxin B1 to melanin. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 26: 579–586. doi:10.1016/0278-6915(88)90228-1 PMID:3141255

Lasky T & Magder L (1997). Hepatocellular carcinoma p53 G > T transversions at codon 249: the fingerprint of aflatoxin exposure? *Environ Health Perspect*, 105: 392–397. doi:10.2307/3433335 PMID:9189703

Levy DD, Groopman JD, Lim SE *et al.* (1992). Sequence specificity of aflatoxin B1-induced mutations in a plasmid replicated in xeroderma pigmentosum and DNA repair proficient human cells. *Cancer Res*, 52: 5668–5673. PMID:1394191

Li Y, Qin X, Cui J *et al.* (2008). Proteome analysis of aflatoxin B1-induced hepatocarcinogenesis in tree shrew (Tupaia belangeri chinensis) and functional identification of candidate protein peroxiredoxin II. *Proteomics*, 8: 1490–1501. doi:10.1002/pmic.200700229 PMID:18318006

Li Y, Su JJ, Qin LL *et al.* (1999). Synergistic effect of hepatitis B virus and aflatoxin B1 in hepatocarcinogenesis in tree shrews. *Ann Acad Med Singapore*, 28: 67–71. PMID:10374028

Liu ZM, Li LQ, Peng MH *et al.* (2008). Hepatitis B virus infection contributes to oxidative stress in a population exposed to aflatoxin B1 and high-risk for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Lett*, 263: 212–222. PMID:18280645

Magan N (2006). Mycotoxin contamination of food in Europe: early detection and prevention strategies. *Mycopathologia*, 162: 245–253. doi:10.1007/s11046-006-0057-2 PMID:16944291

Magan N & Aldred D (2007). Post-harvest control strategies: minimizing mycotoxins in the food chain. *International Journal of Food Microbiology*, 119: 131–139. doi:10.1016/j.ijfoodmicro.2007.07.034 PMID:17764773

McGlynn KA, Hunter K, LeVoyer T *et al.* (2003). Susceptibility to aflatoxin B1-related primary hepato-

cellular carcinoma in mice and humans. *Cancer Res*, 63: 4594–4601. PMID:12907637

McLean M & Dutton MF (1995). Cellular interactions and metabolism of aflatoxin: an update. *Pharmacol Ther*, 65: 163–192. doi:10.1016/0163-7258(94)00054-7 PMID:7540767

Ming L, Thorgeirsson SS, Gail MH *et al.* (2002). Dominant role of hepatitis B virus and cofactor role of aflatoxin in hepatocarcinogenesis in Qidong, China. *Hepatology*, 36: 1214–1220. PMID:12395332

Montesano R, Hainaut P, Wild CP (1997). Hepatocellular carcinoma: from gene to public health. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 89: 1844–1851. doi:10.1093/jnci/89.24.1844 PMID:9414172

Moss EJ, Neal GE, Judah DJ (1985). The mercapturic acid pathway metabolites of a glutathione conjugate of aflatoxin B1. *Chem Biol Interact*, 55: 139–155. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(85)80124-1 PMID:3933841

Okano K, Tomita T, Chonan M (2003). Aflatoxins inspection in groundnuts imported into Japan in 1994–2000. *Mycotoxins*, 53: 25–29.

Omer RE, Kuijsten A, Kadaru AM *et al.* (2004). Population-attributable risk of dietary aflatoxins and hepatitis B virus infection with respect to hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nutr Cancer*, 48: 15–21. doi:10.1207/s15327914nc4801_3 PMID:15203373

Omer RE, Verhoef L, Van't Veer P *et al.* (2001). Peanut butter intake, GSTM1 genotype and hepatocellular carcinoma: a case-control study in Sudan. *Cancer Causes Control*, 12: 23–32. PMID:11227922

Polychronaki N, Wild CP, Mykkänen H *et al.* (2008). Urinary biomarkers of aflatoxin exposure in young children from Egypt and Guinea. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 46: 519–526. PMID:17920747

Prieto-Alamo M-J, Jurado J, Abril N *et al.* (1996). Mutational specificity of aflatoxin B1. Comparison of in vivo host-mediated assay with in vitro S9 metabolic activation. *Carcinogenesis*, 17: 1997–2002. doi:10.1093/carcin/17.9.1997 PMID:8824526

Pulford DJ & Hayes JD (1996). Characterization of the rat glutathione S-transferase Yc2 subunit gene, GSTA5: identification of a putative antioxidant-responsive element in the 5′-flanking region of rat GSTA5 that may mediate chemoprotection against aflatoxin B1. *Biochem J*, 318: 75–84. PMID:8761455

Qian GS, Ross RK, Yu MC *et al.* (1994). A follow-up study of urinary markers of aflatoxin exposure and liver cancer risk in Shanghai, People's Republic of China. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 3: 3–10. PMID:8118382

Raj HG & Lotlikar PD (1984). Urinary excretion of thiol conjugates of aflatoxin B1 in rats and hamsters. *Cancer Lett*, 22: 125–133. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(84)90109-5 PMID:6423269

Ramsdell HS & Eaton DL (1990). Species susceptibility to aflatoxin B1 carcinogenesis: comparative kinetics of microsomal biotransformation. *Cancer Res*, 50: 615–620. PMID:2105159

Ross RK, Yuan J-M, Yu MC *et al.* (1992). Urinary aflatoxin biomarkers and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Lancet*, 339: 943–946. doi:10.1016/0140-6736(92)91528-G PMID:1348796

Schnur J, Nagy P, Sebestyén A *et al.* (1999). Chemical hepatocarcinogenesis in transgenic mice overexpressing mature TGF beta-1 in liver. *Eur J Cancer*, 35: 1842–1845. doi:10.1016/S0959-8049(99)00224-5 PMID:10674001

Scholl PF, McCoy L, Kensler TW, Groopman JD (2006). Quantitative analysis and chronic dosimetry of the aflatoxin B1 plasma albumin adduct Lys-AFB1 in rats by isotope dilution mass spectrometry. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 19: 44–49.

Selim MI, Juchems AM, Popendorf W (1998). Assessing airborne aflatoxin B1 during on-farm grain handling activities. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 59: 252–256. doi:10.1080/15428119891010514 PMID:9586200

Stern MC, Umbach DM, Yu MC *et al.* (2001). Hepatitis B, aflatoxin B(1), and p53 codon 249 mutation in hepatocellular carcinomas from Guangxi, People's Republic of China, and a meta-analysis of existing studies. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 10: 617–625. PMID:11401911

Strosnider H, Azziz-Baumgartner E, Banziger M *et al.* (2006). Workgroup report: public health strategies for reducing aflatoxin exposure in developing countries. *Environ Health Perspect*, 114: 1898–1903. PMID:17185282

Su JJ, Ban KC, Li Y *et al.* (2004). Alteration of p53 and p21 during hepatocarcinogenesis in tree shrews. *World J Gastroenterol*, 10: 3559–3563. PMID:15534906

Sun CA, Wang LY, Chen CJ *et al.* (2001). Genetic polymorphisms of glutathione S-transferases M1 and T1 associated with susceptibility to aflatoxin-related hepatocarcinogenesis among chronic hepatitis B carriers: a nested case-control study in Taiwan. *Carcinogenesis*, 22: 1289–1294. PMID:11470760

Takahashi Y, Nakatsuru Y, Zhang S *et al.* (2002). Enhanced spontaneous and aflatoxin-induced liver tumorigenesis in xeroderma pigmentosum group A gene-deficient mice. *Carcinogenesis*, 23: 627–633. doi:10.1093/carcin/23.4.627 PMID:11960916

Tam AS, Foley JF, Devereux TR *et al.* (1999). High frequency and heterogeneous distribution of p53 mutations in aflatoxin B1-induced mouse lung tumors. *Cancer Res*, 59: 3634–3640. PMID:10446974

Tilton SC, Gerwick LG, Hendricks JD *et al.* (2005). Use of a rainbow trout oligonucleotide microarray to determine transcriptional patterns in aflatoxin B1-induced hepatocellular carcinoma compared to adjacent liver. *Toxicological Sciences*, 88: 319–330. doi:10.1093/toxsci/kfi309 PMID:16141433

Tong W-M, Lee M-K, Galendo D *et al.* (2006). Aflatoxin-B exposure does not lead to p53 mutations but results in

enhanced liver cancer of Hupki (human p53 knock-in) mice. *International Journal of Cancer*, 119: 745–749. doi:10.1002/ijc.21890 PMID:16557586

Trottier Y, Waithe WI, Anderson A (1992). Kinds of mutations induced by aflatoxin B1 in a shuttle vector replicating in human cells transiently expressing cytochrome P4501A2 cDNA. *Mol Carcinog*, 6: 140–147. doi:10.1002/mc.2940060209 PMID:1326989

Turner PC, Mendy M, Whittle H *et al.* (2000). Hepatitis B infection and aflatoxin biomarker levels in Gambian children. *Trop Med Int Health*, 5: 837–841. doi:10.1046/j.1365-3156.2000.00664.x PMID:11169271

Turner PC, Sylla A, Gong YY *et al.* (2005). Reduction in exposure to carcinogenic aflatoxins by postharvest intervention measures in west Africa: a community-based intervention study. *Lancet*, 365: 1950–1956. PMID:15936422

Ueng Y-F, Shimada T, Yamazaki H, Peterguengerich F (1998). Aflatoxin B1 oxidation by human cytochrome P450s. *J Toxicol Sci*, 23: Suppl 2132–135. doi:10.2131/jts.23.SupplementII_132 PMID:9760449

Wagacha JM & Muthomi JW (2008). Mycotoxin problem in Africa: current status, implications to food safety and health and possible management strategies. *International Journal of Food Microbiology*, 124: 1–12. doi:10.1016/j.ijfoodmicro.2008.01.008 PMID:18258326

Wang H, Dick R, Yin H *et al.* (1998). Structure-function relationships of human liver cytochromes P450 3A: aflatoxin B1 metabolism as a probe. *Biochemistry*, 37: 12536–12545. doi:10.1021/bi980895g PMID:9730826

Wang LY, Hatch M, Chen CJ *et al.* (1996). Aflatoxin exposure and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in Taiwan. *International Journal of Cancer*, 67: 620–625. PMID:8782648

Wang SS, O'Neill JP, Qian G-S *et al.* (1999). Elevated HPRT mutation frequencies in aflatoxin-exposed residents of daxin, Qidong county, People's Republic of China. *Carcinogenesis*, 20: 2181–2184. doi:10.1093/carcin/20.11.2181 PMID:10545423

Wei RD, Liu GX, Lee SS (1970). Uptake of aflatoxin B1 by the skin of rats. *Experientia*, 26: 82–83. doi:10.1007/BF01900406 PMID:5413964

Wild CP, Hudson GJ, Sabbioni G *et al.* (1992). Dietary intake of aflatoxins and the level of albumin-bound aflatoxin in peripheral blood in The Gambia, West Africa. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 1: 229–234. PMID:1339083

Wild CP, Jiang YZ, Allen SJ *et al.* (1990). Aflatoxin-albumin adducts in human sera from different regions of the world. *Carcinogenesis*, 11: 2271–2274. doi:10.1093/carcin/11.12.2271 PMID:2265478

Wild CP & Montesano R (2009). A model of interaction: aflatoxins and hepatitis viruses in liver cancer aetiology and prevention. *Cancer Lett*, 286: 22–28. doi:10.1016/j.canlet.2009.02.053 PMID:19345001

Wild CP, Yin F, Turner PC *et al.* (2000). Environmental and genetic determinants of aflatoxin-albumin adducts in the Gambia. *Int J Cancer*, 86: 1–7. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0215(20000401)86:1<1::AID-IJC1>3.0.CO;2-I PMID:10728587

Williams JH, Phillips TD, Jolly PE *et al.* (2004). Human aflatoxicosis in developing countries: a review of toxicology, exposure, potential health consequences, and interventions. *Am J Clin Nutr*, 80: 1106–1122. PMID:15531656

Wilson R, Ziprin R, Ragsdale S, Busbee D (1985). Uptake and vascular transport of ingested aflatoxin. *Toxicol Lett*, 29: 169–176. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(85)90038-4 PMID:3937298

Wogan GN (1969). *Metabolism and biochemIcal effects of aflatoxins*. In: *Aflatoxin. Scientific Background, Control and Implications*. Goldblatt LA, editor. New York: Academic Press, pp. 151–186

Wogan GN, Edwards GS, Newberne PM (1971). Structure-activity relationships in toxicity and carcinogenicity of aflatoxins and analogs. *Cancer Res*, 31: 1936–1942. PMID:4330435

Wogan GN, Paglialunga S, Newberne PM (1974). Carcinogenic effects of low dietary levels of aflatoxin B1 in rats. *Food Cosmet Toxicol*, 12: 681–685. doi:10.1016/0015-6264(74)90239-9 PMID:4375655

Wu HC, Wang Q, Wang LW *et al.* (2007a). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon- and aflatoxin-albumin adducts, hepatitis B virus infection and hepatocellular carcinoma in Taiwan. *Cancer Lett*, 252: 104–114. PMID:17250958

Wu HC, Wang Q, Wang LW *et al.* (2007b). Urinary 8-oxodeoxyguanosine, aflatoxin B1 exposure and hepatitis B virus infection and hepatocellular carcinoma in Taiwan. *Carcinogenesis*, 28: 995–999. PMID:17127712

Wu HC, Wang Q, Yang HI *et al.* (2009). Aflatoxin B1 exposure, hepatitis B virus infection, and hepatocellular carcinoma in Taiwan. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 18: 846–853. PMID:19273485

Zarba A, Hmieleski R, Hemenway DR *et al.* (1992). Aflatoxin B1–DNA adduct formation in rat liver following exposure by aerosol inhalation. *Carcinogenesis*, 13: 1031–1033. doi:10.1093/carcin/13.6.1031 PMID:1600607

Zhou T, Evans AA, London WT *et al.* (1997). Glutathione S-transferase expression in hepatitis B virus-associated human hepatocellular carcinogenesis. *Cancer Res*, 57: 2749–2753. PMID:9205086

BENZENE

Benzene was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1981 and 1987 (IARC, 1982, 1987). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 71–43–2
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: Benzene
IUPAC Systematic Name: Benzene

C6H6
Relative molecular mass: 78.1
From O'Neil (2006) and Lide (2008), unless otherwise stated
Description: Clear, colourless, volatile, highly flammable liquid
Solubility: Slightly soluble in water; miscible with acetone, chloroform, diethyl ether and ethanol; soluble in carbon tetrachloride
Octanol/water partition coefficient: log K_{ow}, 2.13 (Hansch *et al.*, 1995)
Conversion factor: ppm = 0.313 × mg/m^3

1.2 Uses

Historically, benzene has been used as a component of inks in the printing industry, as a solvent for organic materials, as starting material and intermediate in the chemical and drug industries (e.g. to manufacture rubbers, lubricants, dyes, detergents, pesticides), and as an additive to unleaded gasoline (NTP, 2005; ATSDR, 2007; Williams *et al.*, 2008).

The primary use of benzene today is in the manufacture of organic chemicals. In Europe, benzene is mainly used to make styrene, phenol, cyclohexane, aniline, maleic anhydride, alkylbenzenes and chlorobenzenes. It is an intermediate in the production of anthraquinone, hydroquinone, benzene hexachloride, benzene sulfonic acid and other products used in drugs, dyes, insecticides and plastics (Burridge, 2007). In the United States of America, the primary use of benzene is in the production of ethylbenzene, accounting for 52% of the total benzene demand in 2008. Most ethylbenzene is consumed in the manufacture of styrene, which is used in turn in polystyrene and various styrene copolymers, latexes and resins. The second-largest use of benzene in the United States of America (accounting for 22% of demand) is in the manufacture of cumene (isopropylbenzene), nearly

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to benzene in the European Union (top 10 industries)

Industry, occupational activity	
Personal and household services	942500
Wholesale and retail trade and restaurants and hotels	248300
Land transport	42800
Manufacture of plastic products	17000
Iron and steel basic industries	14900
Manufacture of other chemical products	12700
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	12500
Manufacture of machinery, except electrical	9600
Construction	8300
Education services	7400
TOTAL	1367800

all of which is consumed in phenol production. Benzene is also used to make chemical intermediates: cyclohexane, used in making certain nylon monomers (15%); nitrobenzene, an intermediate for aniline and other products (7%); alkylbenzene, used in detergents (2%); chlorobenzenes, used in engineering polymers (1%); and miscellaneous other uses (1%) (Kirschner, 2009). Benzene occurs naturally in petroleum products (e.g. crude oil and gasoline) and is also added to unleaded gasoline for its octane-enhancing and anti-knock properties. Typically, the concentration of benzene in these fuels is 1–2% by volume (ATSDR, 2007).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

Occupational exposure to benzene occurs via inhalation or dermal absorption of solvents in the rubber, paint (including paint applications) and parts-manufacturing industries. It also occurs during crude-oil refining and chemical manufacturing, a large component of which entails exposure to gasoline. Workers involved in the transport of crude oil and gasoline and in the dispensing of gasoline at service stations, as well as street workers, taxi drivers and others employed at workplaces with exposure to exhaust gases from motor vehicles also experience exposure to benzene (Nordlinder & Ramnäs, 1987).

CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens, based on data collected in the European Union (EU) from 1990 to 1993. The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 presents the results for benzene in the EU by industry for the top-10 industries (CAREX, 1999). Exposure to benzene is defined as inhalation or dermal exposure at work to benzene likely to exceed significantly non-occupational exposure due to inhaling urban air or filling in gasoline stations (long-term exposure usually below 0.01 ppm)].

From the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–1983), it was estimated that approximately 272300 workers (including 143000 women) were potentially exposed to benzene in the United States of America. Industries where potential exposure occurred included agricultural services, oil and gas extraction, construction (includes general building and special trades

contractors), food products, tobacco manufacturing, textile mills, lumber and wood, printing and publishing, chemical and allied products, petroleum and coal products, rubber manufacturing, leather manufacturing, transportation, and health services (NIOSH, 1990).

van Wijngaarden & Stewart (2003) conducted a critical review of the literature on occupational exposures to benzene in the 1980s in the USA and Canada. The data indicated that workers in most industries experienced exposure levels below the regulatory limit (1 ppm) of the US Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), with a weighted arithmetic mean of 0.33 ppm across all industries. It was noted that little information was available on exposure levels and their determinants for many industries with potential exposure.

Williams *et al.* (2008) summarized the values of the benzene content of selected petroleum-derived products based on published literature between 1956 and 2003. A total of 22 studies were identified, which contained 46 individual data sets and evaluated potential occupational exposure to benzene in the USA during the handling or use of these petroleum-derived products. All mean (or median) airborne concentrations were less than 1 ppm, and most were < 0.1 ppm. Table 1.2 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table1.2.pdf) summarizes airborne benzene concentrations from studies and governmental reports published between 1981 and 2006.

Capleton & Levy (2005) tabulated typical benzene-exposure levels in different occupational groups in various areas in Europe and North America (Table 1.3). The values are similar to those reported by van Wijngaarden & Stewart (2003) and Williams *et al.* (2008) for exposures of 1 hour or more.

Williams *et al.* (2005) reviewed available industrial-hygiene data describing exposure during the marine transport of benzene-containing products. Although there were differences in sampling strategies and in benzene content of the liquids being transported, typical benzene concentrations in air (personal time-weighted average) were in the range of 0.2–2.0 ppm during closed loading and 2–10 ppm during open loading-operations.

Liang *et al.* (2005) reviewed and tabulated benzene exposures by industry in the People's Republic of China, using data published between 1960 and 2003. The five industries with the highest reported exposures were those producing leather products, electronic devices, machinery, shoes, and office supplies and sports equipment. Median ambient concentrations in these industries were, respectively: 124.8 mg/m^3, 98.7 mg/m^3, 75.4 mg/m^3, 50.4 mg/m^3, and 50.3 mg/m^3. [The Working Group noted that all data were collected with sampling methods of very short duration (1–20-minute time-weighted averages). In addition, a considerable part of the surveys were follow-up studies of benzene poisonings. Therefore, these data cannot be considered as representative and cannot be compared with the information reported from the USA.] Levels of short-term exposure to benzene varied considerably between industries (Table 1.4) and showed generally a downward trend over time (Fig. 1.1).

Urinary *trans,trans*-muconic acid (*t,t*-MA) and *S*-phenylmercapturic acid (*S*-PMA) are sensitive markers for recent exposure to benzene at low levels (Qu *et al.*, 2005).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

The major sources of benzene in the atmosphere are anthropogenic and include fixed industrial sources, fuel evaporation from gasoline filling-stations and automobile exhaust. Benzene has been measured in outdoor air at various locations in the USA at concentrations ranging from 0.02 ppb (0.06 µg/m^3) in a rural area, to 112 ppb (356 µg/m^3) in an urban area. Exposure to benzene is highest in areas of heavy motor-vehicle traffic and around gasoline filling-stations. Based on

Table 1.3 Typical benzene exposure levels in different occupational groups/areas in Europe and North America[a]

Occupational group/area	Year	Long-term exposure levels (mg/m^3)					Short-term exposure levels (mg/m^3)					Reference
		N	AM	GM	Min	Max	N	AM	GM	Min	Max	
Upstream petrochemical industry												Verma *et al.* (2000)
Conventional oil/gas	1985–96	198	0.206	0.036	0.003	7.78	23	0.662	0.021	< 0.004	7.954	
Conventional gas	1985–96	608[b]	0.089	0.024	0.006	6.868	40	2.328	0.144	< 0.02	35.2	
Heavy oil processing	1985–96	236	0.112	0.051	< 0.003	1.60	24	0.056	0.027	< 0.017	0.731	
Pipeline	1985–96	8	0.392	0.350	0.160	1.540	-	-	-	-	-	
Downstream petrochemical industry												CONCAWE (2000, 2002), Merlo *et al.* (2001)
Refinery												
On-site operators	1993–98	97	0.22	-	0.008	7.88	-	-	-	-	-	
	1999–2001	-	-	-	-	-	6	1.0	0.9	0.8[c]	1.4[c]	
Off-site operators	1993–98	321	0.32	-	0.008	23.3	49	2.19	-	0.08	11.8	
	1999–2001	-	-	-	-	-	7	0.7	0.7	0.6[c]	0.8[c]	
Maintenance workers	1993–98	373	0.41	-	0.008	18.1	7	2.62	-	0.23	8.6	
Laboratory technicians	1993–98	628	0.30	-	0.0015	5.0	5	1.93	-	0.28	4.6	
Marine and rail car loading												
Deck crew, open loading	1993–98	41	0.56	-	0.08	5.4	4	0.23	-	0.23	0.3	
Deck crew, closed loading	1993–98	2	0.56	-	0.51	0.6	-	-	-	-	-	
Marine loading	1993–98	32	0.51	-	0.023	3.7	2	0.7	-	0.23	1.2	
Jetty staff	1993–98	46	0.37	-	0.023	1.7	24	0.79	-	0.23	5.8	
Rail car terminal operators (toploading with VR)	1999–2001	21	0.5	0.4	0.2[c]	0.7[c]	3	0.5	-	0.5	0.5	
Road tanker distribution												
Terminal supervisors	1993–98	151	0.36	-	0.001	3.1	8	2.20	-	0.23	11.2	
Drivers, bottom loading & VR	1999–2001	33	0.6	0.4	0.2[c]	1.2[c]	15	1.8	1.4	0.5[c]	3.8[c]	
Drivers, delivery	1999–2001	-	-	-	-	-	7	0.7	0.4	0.2[c]	1.6[c]	

Table 1.3 (continued)

Occupational group/area	Year	Long-term exposure levels (mg/m³)					Short-term exposure levels (mg/m³)					Reference
		N	AM	GM	Min	Max	N	AM	GM	Min	Max	
Service station												CONCAWE (2000, 2002), Merlo *et al.* (2001) Contd.
Attendants	1999–2000	78	0.102	-	0.0115	0.478	-	-	-	-	-	
Cashiers	1993–98	268	0.05	-	0.001	1.92	-	-	-	-	-	
Miscellaneous workers	1999–2001	6	0.2	0.1	0.1[c]	0.2[c]	-	-	-	-	-	
Gasoline pump maintenance	1993–98	2	0.55	-	0.16	0.93	6	3.8	-	0.19	11.8[d]	
Coke oven industry												Hotz *et al.* (1997)
Coke plant	1994–95	19	0.13[e]	-	ND[f]	1.76[f]	-	-	-	-	-	
Coke plant	1994–95	17	1.79[e]	-	0.52[f]	23.82[f]	-	-	-	-	-	
By-product plant	1994–95	21	1.17[e]	-	0.20[f]	5.30[f]	-	-	-	-	-	
Motor mechanics	1994–98	243	0.362	-	< 0.005	13.0	8	10.15[g]	-	1.2	46	CONCAWE (1986), Nordlinder & Ramnäs (1987), Popp *et al.* (1994), Hotz *et al.* (1997), Javelaud *et al.* (1998)
	1981	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.52	-	0.33	1.50	
Aviation												CONCAWE (2000), Egeghy *et al.* (2003)
Civilian airport operators	1993–98	10	0.10	-	0.008	0.60	-	-	-	-	-	
Military fuel maintenance workers	2003	114	0.252[e]	-	0.006	6.63	-	-	-	-	-	
Military fuel handling, distribution, recovery & testing workers	2003	38	0.007[e]	-	0.001	1.85	-	-	-	-	-	
Firefighters	1991–2002	43	-	-	< 0.37[h]	6.14[h]	22[i]	-	-	< LOD	68.25	Jankovic *et al.* (1991), Bolstad-Johnson *et al.* (2000), Caux *et al.* (2002)
							96[j]	1.24	-	0.228	6.468	

Table 1.3 (continued)

Occupational group/area	Year	Long-term exposure levels (mg/m³)					Short-term exposure levels (mg/m³)					Reference
		N	AM	GM	Min	Max	N	AM	GM	Min	Max	
Urban workers												Fustinoni *et al.* (1995), Carrer *et al.* (2000), Crebelli *et al.* (2001), Merlo *et al.* (2001)
Traffic police/wardens	1994–2000	236	0.020	-	0.009	0.316	-	-	-	-	-	
Bus drivers	1998–2000	152	0.0238	-	0.003	0.092	-	-	-	-	-	
Office workers	1994–2000	289	0.016	-	0.002	0.115	-	-	-	-	-	

[a] When selecting typical benzene exposure values, preference has been given to studies published within the previous 10 years and for which greater than 10 subjects were sampled. Where appropriate, data sets have been combined to give an overall mean exposure.
[b] Data for which an arithmetic mean was available
[c] 10th and 90th percentile values.
[d] The mean was strongly influenced by one high exposure level of 46 mg/m3, if this is excluded the mean exposure is 5.03 mg/m3 (range:1.2–14.0 mg/m3).
[e] Median value.
[f] 5th and 95th percentile values.
[g] Small spillage associated with the highest result.
[h] Exposure estimated from biological monitoring.
[I] Exposure during the knockdown phase of fire fighting.
[j] Exposure during the overhaul phase of fire fighting.
AM, arithmetic mean; GM, geometric mean; Max, maximum; Min, minimum; N, number of samples; VR, vapour recovery
From Capleton & Levy (2005)

Table 1.4 Comparison of the average benzene concentrations (mg/m³) by industry

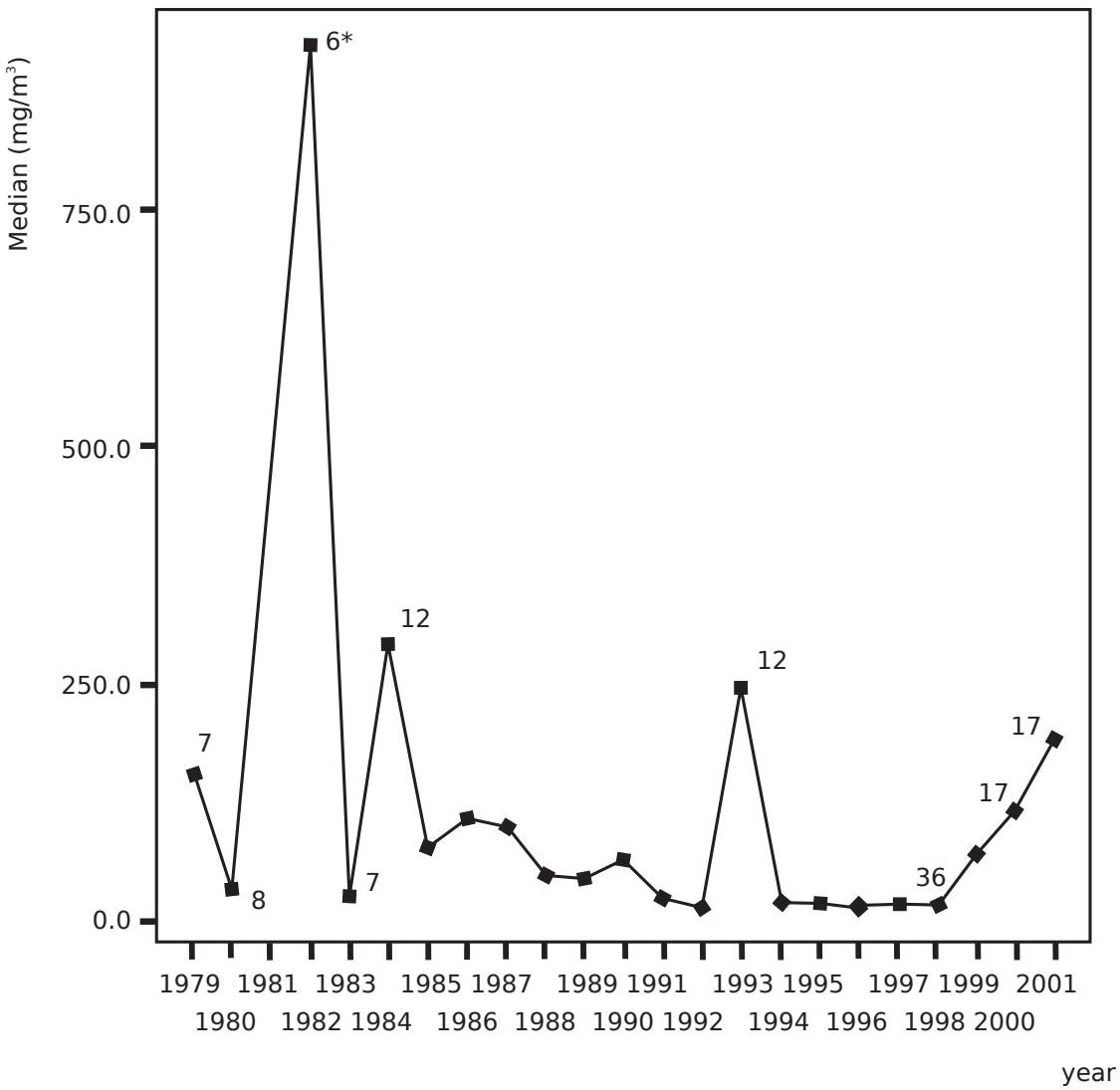
Type of industry	No. of sets	No of samples	Median	Average (range)
Leather products[a]	18	1487	124.8	124.1 (3.7–267.8)
Electronic devices manufacturing[a]	6	1930	98.7	120.2 (4.5–254.9)
Machinery manufacturing[a]	6	6815	75.4	75.6 (4.2–152.7)
Shoes manufacturing, leather[a]	70	12 197	50.4	149.9 (1.3–1488.6)
Office supplies and sports equipment[a]	6	106	50.3	79.4 (10.7–256.0)
Spray painting	29	1186	39.8	53.4 (0–226.8)
Furniture manufacturing	8	618	39.3	36.6 (2.0–72.0)
Misc. electronic parts manufacturing	7	197	33.6	50.5 (3.0–105.6)
Automobile manufacturing	6	3478	32.8	56.8 (0–196.1)
Organic chemical industry	19	650	23.8	39.3 (12.8–130.5)
Rubber products manufacturing	15	182	22.9	114.6 (0.1–633.6)
Other industries	10	6799	18.5	23.8 (2.2–85.5)
Paint manufacturing	37	525	13.2	23.9 (1.0–127.5)
Chemical industry	18	859	7.6	19.3 (0–123.9)
Printing industry	8	6416	6.5	7.2 (0–23.6)
Metal-based products processing	10	77	1.4	7.5 (0–38.0)
Toy manufacturing	2	2531	132.9	132.9 (1.5–264.3)
Coal products manufacturing	3	23	96.0	79.8 (12.8–130.5)
Crude oil processing	3	992	62.6	54.4 (7.4–93.2)
Petroleum & geological prospecting	3	22	57.2	41.9 (5.8–62.6)
Other textile industries/printing & dyeing	1	178	26.2	26.2
Civil engineering & construction	3	137	20.3	122.2 (1.2–345.2)
Pottery & porcelain products manufacturing	3	26	20.2	22.4 (7.1–40.0)
Electronic circuit manufacturing	3	26	20.2	22.4 (7.1–40.0)
Plastic products manufacturing	2	1216	15.2	15.2 (2.3–28.2)
Other precision instruments manufacturing	2	44	14.3	14.3 (8.7–19.9)
Household metal hardware manufacturing	1	1139	2.3	2.3

[a] The top five industries with more than six measurement sets in an individual industry. Industries following the blank space (after Metal-based processing) are those for which fewer than six data sets were available.
From Liang *et al.* (2005)

an average benzene concentration of 12.5 ppb (40 μg/m³) in the air and an exposure of 1 hour per day, the daily intake of benzene from driving or riding in a motor vehicle is estimated to be 40 μg. Exposure is higher for people who spend significant time in motor vehicles in areas of congested traffic (NTP, 2005; ATSDR, 2007).

The primary sources of exposure to benzene for the general population are ambient air containing tobacco smoke, air contaminated with benzene (for example, in areas with heavy traffic, around gasoline filling-stations), drinking contaminated water, or eating contaminated food. The median level of benzene was 2.2 ppb (7 μg/m³) in 185 homes without smokers and 3.3 ppb (10.5 μg/m³) in 343 homes with one or more smokers. Amounts of benzene measured per cigarette ranged from 5.9 to 75 μg in mainstream smoke and from 345 to 653 μg in sidestream smoke. Benzene intake from ingestion of water and foods is very low, compared with intake from ambient air (ATSDR, 1997; NTP, 2005). Residential exposure to benzene can also occur from leaking underground gasoline-storage tanks. Benzene concentrations in homes from such exposures have been estimated to

Fig. 1.1 Overall trend in median benzene exposure in Chinese industry, 1979–2001. The star indicates the number of measurement sets in the database



From Liang *et al.* (2005)

Table 1.5 Benzene in breath, blood and urine samples in the general population without occupational or known exposure to benzene[a]

Country	Analyte	Median/Mean	Reference
People's Republic of China	Urine	120 ng/L	Kim *et al.* (2006a)
People's Republic of China	Urine	69 ng/L	Waidyanatha *et al.* (2001)
People's Republic of China and Malaysia	Urine	1.49 ng/L	Ong *et al.* (1995)
Estonia	Blood Breath Urine	12 nmol/L 7 nmol/L 0.1 nmol/L	Kivistö *et al.* (1997)
Italy	Blood	110 ng/L (NS) 219 ng/L (S)	Brugnone *et al.* (1998)
Italy	Urine	1155 ng/L	Gobba *et al.* (1997)
Mexico	Blood	0.63 µg/L (service attendants) 0.30 µg/L (street vendors) 0.17 µg/L (office workers)	Romieu *et al.* (1999)
Singapore	Blood Urine	1.27 nmol/L 1.29 nmol/L	Ong *et al.* (1996)
Thailand	Blood	65.6 ppt	Navasumrit *et al.* (2005)

[a] Including control workers
NS, non-smoker; S, smoker
From Johnson *et al.* (2007)

range from 0–42 ppm (1–136 mg/m^3) (Patel *et al.*, 2004).

Duarte-Davidson *et al.* (2001) assessed human exposure to benzene in the general population of the United Kingdom. It was estimated that infants (< 1 year old), the average child (11 years old), and non-occupationally exposed adults receive average daily doses of benzene in the range of 15–26 µg, 29–50 µg, and 75–522 µg, respectively. These values correspond to average airborne benzene concentrations in the range of 3.40–5.76 µg/m^3, 3.37–5.67 µg/m^3, and 3.7–41 µg/m^3 for these three groups, respectively.

Benzene concentrations in breath, blood and urine samples collected among the general populations (without occupational or known exposure to benzene) in Asia, Europe and North America are presented in Table 1.5 (Johnson *et al.*, 2007).

2. Cancer in Humans

In *IARC Monographs* Volume 29 (IARC, 1982) the Working Group concluded there was *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of benzene, noting that a series of cohort and case–control studies showed statistically significant associations between occupational exposure to benzene and benzene-containing solvents and leukaemia (predominantly myelogenous leukaemia). In *IARC Monographs* Supplement 7 (IARC, 1987) benzene was classified as a Group-1 carcinogen, citing additional evidence of an increased incidence of acute nonlymphocytic leukaemia (ANLL) in workers exposed to benzene in three cohort studies, including an update of a cohort cited in Volume 29 (IARC, 1982). Since 1987, there have been numerous reports from cohort studies in populations exposed to benzene, including updates of earlier reports, and new case–control studies of leukaemia or its subtypes, non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL), multiple myeloma, and to a

lesser extent other tumours in adults. There have also been several case–control studies of childhood leukaemia with data on benzene, solvents, gasoline, and other related exposures. In addition, several meta-analyses have been published of one or more tumour sites.

[The Working Group decided to restrict its review to those case–control studies of paediatric cancers that included estimates of environmental benzene exposure, rather than surrogate exposures such as proximity to petrol stations or traffic. Also, the Working Group weighed more heavily the findings from studies with estimates of occupational exposure to benzene rather than broader measures (e.g. to solvents) in case–control studies. It was also decided not to rely in general on case–control studies where exposure assessment was limited to asking study subjects directly if they had been exposed to particular chemicals. Furthermore, the Working Group did not consider cohort studies of workers in synthetic rubber-manufacturing due to the difficulty of separating out effects from benzene *vs* those of other chemicals that may cause haematological malignancies. The Working Group decided not to take into consideration a series of meta-analyses of studies of petroleum workers (Wong & Raabe, 1995, 1997, 2000a, b). There were methodological concerns about the expansion from paper to paper of additional studies, cohorts, and countries, and the overall approach may dilute out the risks associated with relatively highly exposed subgroups of these populations that in general were not identified. In addition, an increased risk of ANLL – or the alternative classification, Acute Myelogenous Leukaemia (AML), which is more restrictive but still constitutes most of ANLL – was not detected in the initial meta-analysis by Wong & Raabe (1995), this body of work was not considered relevant for assessing what additional cancers may be associated with exposure to benzene beyond ANLL/AML. Abd finally, the Working Group noted that some meta-analyses of the same tumour came to opposite conclusions, which could be due to different inclusion/exclusion criteria, focusing on different subgroups of the study populations, or to different approaches to selecting risk estimates for inclusion (e.g. Lamm *et al.*, 2005; Steinmaus *et al.*, 2008), thus complicating the overall assessment of the literature. The Working Group therefore decided not to rely in general on results of meta-analyses in its evaluations.]

2.1 Leukemias and lymphomas

2.1.1 Acute non-lymphocytic leukaemia/ acute myelogenous leukaemia

Since 1987, additional analyses of previously published cohort studies (e.g. results in Crump (1994) and Wong (1995), based on the cohort study described in Infante *et al.* (1977) and Rinsky *et al.* (1981, 1987), which reported an excess risk for combined (mostly acute) myelogenous and monocytic leukaemia) and new cohort studies with quantitative data on benzene exposure have shown evidence of a dose–response relationship between exposure to benzene and risk for ANLL/AML in various industries and in several countries (Hayes *et al.*, 1997; Rushton & Romaniuk, 1997; Divine *et al.*, 1999b; Guénel *et al.*, 2002; Collins *et al.*, 2003; Glass *et al.*, 2003; Bloemen *et al.*, 2004; Gun *et al.*, 2006; Kirkeleit *et al.*, 2008; see Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.1.pdf). It was also noted that the NCI-CAPM cohort study found evidence of an increased risk for the combined category of ANLL and myelodysplastic syndromes (Hayes *et al.*, 1997). Case–control studies do not add substantively to these conclusions (see Table 2.2 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.2.pdf). In one case–control study an increased risk for childhood ANLL was found for maternal self-reported occupational exposure to benzene (Shu *et al.*, 1988; see Table 2.1 online). One case–control

study of childhood cancer in Denmark did not find an association of estimates of environmental benzene exposure from air pollution with an increased risk for ANLL (Raaschou-Nielsen *et al.*, 2001).

2.1.2 Acute lymphocytic leukaemia

Acute Lymphocytic Leukaemia (ALL) is now considered one subtype of NHL in the WHO-classification of lymphomas. In multiple cohorts there was a non-significantly increased risk for ALL, but the numbers of cases were small (Rushton, 1993; Wong *et al.*, 1993; Satin *et al.*, 1996; Divine *et al.*, 1999b; Lewis *et al.*, 2003; Kirkeleit *et al.*, 2008; Yin *et al.*, 1996; Guénel *et al.*, 2002; Gun *et al.*, 2006; see Table 2.3 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.3.pdf). [The Working Group noted that the magnitude of the risk-estimate in the NCI-CAPM cohort (Yin *et al.*, 1996) was similar to the risk observed for ANLL in the same study, which was statistically significant. This approach has been suggested when attempting to interpret the association between occupational exposure to benzene and hematological subtypes that are less common than AML (Savitz & Andrews, 1997).]

In one case–control study in adults in Shanghai, a significant increased risk for ALL was found for the group with 15 or more years of self-reported occupational exposure to benzene (Adegoke *et al.*, 2003); another study in the USA had only three exposed cases (Blair *et al.*, 2001; Table 2.4 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.4.pdf). In a case–control study of childhood ALL no association was found with maternal self-reported occupational exposure to benzene, but a borderline significant association was noted with exposure to gasoline (Shu *et al.*, 1988; see Table 2.4 online). No association with self-reported maternal exposure to benzene was found in a large study of childhood ALL in the USA (Shu *et al.*, 1999; see Table 2.4 online). A case-control study of childhood cancer in Denmark did not find an association of estimated environmental exposure to benzene from air pollution with ALL (Raaschou-Nielsen *et al.*, 2001).

2.1.3 Chronic myelogenous leukaemia

Several studies in the petroleum industry and in other settings show non-significantly increased risks for CML, whereas other studies show no evidence of an association, including two that had quantitative estimates of exposure to benzene but no dose–response relationship (Rushton & Romaniuk, 1997; Guénel *et al.*, 2002; see Table 2.5 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.5.pdf). Case–control studies have shown inconsistent results, with both increased risks (exposure for > 15 years was associated with an OR of 5.0 (1.8–13.9; Adegoke *et al.*, 2003) and no increase in risk (Björk *et al.*, 2001) reported (see Table 2.6 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.6.pdf).

2.1.4 Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia

Chronic Lymphocytic Leukaemia (CLL) – also referred to as small lymphocytic lymphoma (SLL) – is now considered as a subtype of NHL in the WHO-classification of lymphomas. CLL can be an indolent disease of the elderly, which raises questions about cohorts that are not followed up until the study population is relatively old and about studies that use mortality instead of incident data. In addition, the diagnosis of CLL was less frequently made in the past, until complete blood counts were routinely obtained in recent decades.

Several cohort studies in the petroleum industry showed mixed results, with some non-significantly increased risks reported and other studies showing no association (see Table 2.7 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/

Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.7.pdf). In a nested case–control study in the Australian petroleum industry an increasing risk for CLL was detected with increasing exposure to benzene over a relatively small range of ppm–years, but the increase was not significant (Glass *et al.*, 2003). Similarly, in a nested case–control study within a cohort of French gas and electrical utility workers, a non-significant increase in risk with increasing years of benzene exposure was detected (Guénel *et al.*, 2002). Some evidence of risk with increasing benzene exposure was also found in a cohort study among petroleum workers in the United Kingdom, but the trends were not clear and interpretation is difficult as white- and blue-collar workers were mixed in the analysis and interactions may have been present (Rushton & Romaniuk, 1997). Updates of two cohort studies in the Southern US found an increased risk for CLL, which was significant in one cohort for workers hired before 1950, but not in the other (Huebner *et al.*, 2004).

A case–control study in Italy showed evidence of a dose–response relationship between the extent of benzene exposure with the number of years worked with benzene (Costantini *et al.*, 2008) and in a large multicentre international study in Europe a significant excess in risk for CLL was found with increasing exposure to benzene, but the dose–response was not significant (Cocco *et al.*, 2010; see Table 2.8 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.8.pdf). Blair *et al.* (2001) conducted a study in the Midwestern USA and found no association with benzene exposure although there were only three cases in the high-exposure category. In a study of women in Connecticut, a non-significantly increased risk for CLL was found with increasing exposure to benzene (Wang *et al.*, 2009; see Table 2.8 online).

2.1.5 Non-Hodgkin lymphoma

Non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL) is a heterogeneous group of histological subtypes, and the definition of both NHL and its subtypes has evolved over the last several decades with the application and discontinuation of several classification schemes, which complicates the assessment of exposure to benzene and risk for NHL. For example, CLL – now classified by the WHO as a subtype of NHL – has generally not been combined with other types of NHL in reports from cohort studies of benzene-exposed workers or in earlier case–control studies of NHL. Further, given the indolent nature of some NHL subtypes, cohorts with only mortality data may underestimate associations with NHL. In most cohort studies an increased risk for NHL was not detected, one particular exception being the NCI-CAPM cohort study in China (Hayes *et al.*, 1997; Table 2.9 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.9.pdf). An excess of NHL was not detected in the Pilofilm cohort (Rinsky *et al.*, 2002) or in the Australian Health Watch study in an analysis of NHL combined with multiple myeloma (two-thirds of which were NHL cases) (Glass *et al.*, 2003).

Of 14 independent case–control studies that were considered informative, five showed evidence of increased risk with benzene exposure, two (Fabbro-Peray *et al.*, 2001; Dryver *et al.*, 2004) for NHL as a whole (Table 2.10 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.10.pdf). Data on histological subtypes of NHL have generally not been reported in publications of occupational cohort studies of benzene-exposed workers, but they have been mentioned in some case–control studies. For various benzene-exposure metrics, slightly increased, but non-significant risks for NHL were found in a case–control study among women in Connecticut, as well as higher risks – also non-significant – for follicular lymphoma

and diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), two common NHL subtypes (Wang *et al.*, 2009). Cocco *et al.* (2010) conducted an analysis of a large multicentre case–control study of NHL in Europe and found no significant increase in risk for B-cell NHL or DLBCL, but an elevated risk, albeit not statistically significant, for follicular lymphoma associated with exposure to benzene (see Table 2.10 online), and a significant association between combined exposure to benzene/toluene/xylene and follicular lymphoma. Other case–control studies showed increased, non-significant risks for one or both of these histological subtypes, and in one study in Italy a significant association was found between medium/high exposure to benzene and the risk for diffuse lymphoma (Miligi *et al.*, 2006; OR = 2.4, 95%CI: 1.3–1.5).

2.1.6 Multiple myeloma

Most cohort studies showed no association with multiple myeloma (MM) (Table 2.11 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.11.pdf). However, there was a statistically significant excess of MM reported for the Pliofilm cohort (SMR 4.1; 95%CI: 1.1–10.5, based upon four deaths) (Rinsky *et al.*, 1987), which did not persist in the most recent update (Rinsky *et al.*, 2002; see Table 2.11 online). In a cohort study among chemical workers at the Monsanto chemical company suggestive evidence was found of a dose–response relationship (Collins *et al.*, 2003), while in a cohort study of Norwegian workers in the upstream petroleum industry (i.e. the phases of oil extraction and initial transportion, which entail extensive exposure to crude oil) a significant increased risk for MM was found (Kirkeleit *et al.*, 2008).

Case–control studies of MM with estimates of exposure to benzene largely show no association (Table 2.12 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.12.pdf). An exception was an early study in which a significant association was found between risk for MM and the proportion of cases and controls with "solvent/benzene" exposure (La Vecchia *et al.*, 1989). In another study, borderline significant effects were detected (Costantini *et al.*, 2008). In a large multicentre case–control study of NHL in Europe there was no association of benzene exposure with MM (Cocco *et al.*, 2010).

A meta-analysis by Infante (2006) analysed data from seven well defined "benzene cohorts" outside of petroleum refining and found a statistically significant increase in risk for MM (RR 2.1; 95%CI: 1.3–3.5).

2.1.7 Hodgkin disease

There are sparse data on Hodgkin disease in studies of benzene-exposed cohorts, with most studies having very small numbers of cases and showing no association (see Table 2.13 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.13.pdf). Overall, there is no evidence of an increased risk. The relatively few case–control studies in adults also show no association (see Table 2.14 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.14.pdf). In a case–control study of childhood cancer in Denmark, an increased risk for Hodgkin disease was detected in association with estimated environmental exposures to benzene (Raaschou-Nielsen *et al.* (2001) (see Table 2.14 online).

2.2 Cancer of the lung

Cohort studies with information on potential or estimated benzene exposure and lung cancer are shown in Table 2.15 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.15.pdf). Although most studies show no association, in two cohorts with quantitative exposure-assessment evidence of a dose–response relationship was found (Hayes *et al.*, 1996; Collins

et al., 2003) and in two others statistically significant increases in risk were observed (Lynge *et al.*, 1997; Sorahan *et al.*, 2005). A case–control study from Canada showed no association of exposure to benzene with lung cancer overall or with the major histological subtypes (Gérin *et al.*, 1998; see Table 2.16 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.16.pdf).

2.3 Cancer of the kidney

Cohort studies with results on kidney cancer are shown in Table 2.17 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.17.pdf). Results generally do not show any association. In a case–control study among males in Germany an association was found between exposure to benzene and an increased risk for kidney cancer (Pesch *et al.*, 2000), but in a study in Montreal, Canada, there was little evidence of an association (Gérin *et al.*, 1998) (see Table 2.18 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-19-Table2.18.pdf).

2.4 Other cancers

In the evaluation of the cohort studies that provided data on the cancer sites considered above, it was apparent that associations have occasionally been found with other cancer sites including malignant melanoma (Schnatter *et al.*, 1996; Consonni *et al.*, 1999; Lewis *et al.*, 2003), nose and stomach cancer (Fu *et al.*, 1996) and prostate cancer (Collingwood *et al.*, 1996), but overall there was no consistency across the cohorts.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies on the carcinogenesis of benzene in rats and mice after exposure by inhalation, intragastric gavage, skin application, and by intraperitoneal or subcutaneous injection have been reviewed in *IARC Monographs* Volume 29 and in Supplement 7 (IARC, 1982, 1987). In Supplement 7 it was concluded that there is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of benzene. Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies reported before and after 1987 are summarized in Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4.

Exposure to benzene by inhalation increased the incidence of Zymbal gland carcinomas, liver adenomas, and forestomach and oral cavity carcinomas in female rats (Maltoni *et al.*, 1982a, c, 1983, 1985, 1989). It also increased the incidence of lymphohaematopoietic (lymphoma, myelogenous) neoplasms in male and female mice (Snyder *et al.*, 1980; Cronkite *et al.*, 1984, 1989; Farris *et al.*, 1993), and Zymbal gland carcinomas, squamous cell carcinomas of the preputial gland, and lung adenomas in male mice (Snyder *et al.*, 1988; Farris *et al.*, 1993).

Oral administration of benzene increased the incidence of Zymbal gland carcinomas and oral-cavity papillomas and carcinomas in rats of both sexes, of carcinomas of the tongue, papillomas and carcinomas of the skin and of the lip and papillomas of the palate in male rats, of forestomach acanthomas in both sexes of the rat, and of forestomach carcinomas in female rats (Maltoni & Scarnato, 1979; Maltoni *et al.*,1982b, 1983, 1988, 1989; NTP, 1986; Maronpot, 1987; Huff *et al.*, 1989; Mehlman, 2002). Given by the oral route, benzene also increased the incidence of Zymbal gland carcinomas, forestomach papillomas, lymphomas, and lung adenomas and carcinomas in mice of both sexes, of liver carcinomas, adrenal gland pheochromocytomas, harderian gland adenomas and preputial gland squamous cell carcinomas in male mice,

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to benzene by inhalation

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, (M, F) 150 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1982a, c, 1983, 1985, 1989)	Three different treatment groups (n = 54–75) and 2 controls (breeder controls, n = 60; embryo controls, n = 149–158). Pregnant breeders (Group 1) and embryos exposed transplacentally (Group 2) were exposed 4 h/d, 5 d/wk for 7 wk at 200 ppm; then postpartum breeders and offspring were exposed 7 h/d, 5 d/wk for 12 wk during weaning at 200 ppm; after weaning, breeders and offspring were exposed 7 h/d, 5 d/wk for 85 wk at 300 ppm. Group 3 were embryos exposed 4 h/d, 5 d/wk for 7 wk at 200 ppm transplacentally then 7 h/d, 5 d/wk for 8 wk at 200 ppm. Therefore, the embryos were exposed transplacentally during pregnancy and the offspring were exposed by inhalation and possibly by ingestion via milk.	Zymbal's gland carcinomas Group 1 (breeders 104 wk): F–1/60 (controls), 3/54 Group 2 (embryos 104 wk): M–2/158 (controls), 6/75 F–0/149 (controls), 8/65 Group 3 (embryos 15 wk); M–2/158 (controls), 4/70 F–0/149 (controls), 1/59 Liver adenomas Group 1: F–0/60, 1/54 Group 2: M–1/158, 2/75 F–0/149, 5/65 Group 3: M–1/158, 2/70 F–0/149, 5/59 Oral cavity carcinomas Group 1: F–0/60, 2/54 Group 2: M–0/158, 1/75 F–0/149, 10/65 Group 3: M–0/158, 2/70 F–0/149, 6/59	[NS] [NS] [significant] [NS] [NS] [NS] [NS] [significant] [NS] [significant] [NS] [NS] [significant] [NS] [significant]	Breeders were 13 wk old at the start of exposure; embryos were 12 days old at the start of the exposures

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, (M, F) 150 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1982a, c, 1983, 1985, 1989) Contd.		Forestomach carcinomas (in situ) Group 1: F–0/60, 0/54 Group 2: M–0/158, 0/75 F–0/149, 3/65 Group 3: M–0/158, 0/70 F–0/149, 0/59	 [NS] [NS] [significant] [NS] [NS]	
Mouse, C57BL/6J (M) Lifetime Snyder *et al.* (1980)	0 (filtered air) or 300 ppm benzene, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 40/group	Total lymphohaematopoietic: 2/40, 8/40 - Lymphocytic lymphoma: 2/40, 6/40 - Plasmocytoma 0/40, 1/40 - Leukaemia 0/40, 1/40	$P < 0.005$, X^2-test $P < 0.001$, X^2-test NS NS	Purity unspecified Exposed mice had body weight gain depression relative to the controls throughout the study. Exposed mice had a median survival of 41 wk vs 75 wk for the controls.
Mouse, CD-1 Lifetime Goldstein *et al.* (1982)	0 or 300 ppm benzene 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 40/group	Myelogenous leukaemia: 0/40, 3/40	NS	Purity unspecified. Sex unspecified Although the incidence of 3/40 is not significantly higher than the 0% incidence observed in control animals ($P = 0.147$), these preliminary findings do give credence to the myeloleukaemogenic effect of benzene due to the lack of observation of spontaneous myeloproliferative disorders in the animal strain under study.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, C57Bl/6 BNL (F) Lifetime Cronkite *et al.* (1984)	0 or 300 ppm for 16 wk, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 88–90/group	Total lymphohaematopoietic malignancies: 0/88, 8/90	[$P < 0.01$]	Purity unspecified
		- Thymic lymphoma: 0/88, 6/90	[$P < 0.05$]	
		- Lymphoma (unspecified): 0/88, 2/90	[NS]	
Mouse, CD-1 (M) Lifetime Snyder *et al.* (1988)	0 (filtered air) or 1200 ppm benzene, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 10 wk 50 exposures total 80/group	Lung adenomas: 17/71, 33/71	$P < 0.001$	Purity unspecified
		Zymbal's gland carcinomas: 0/71, 4/71	$P < 0.05$	
Mouse, CD-1 (M) Lifetime Snyder *et al.* (1988)	0 (filtered air) or 300 ppm benzene, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 1 wk followed by 2 wk of non exposure for life 60/group	Lung adenomas: 3/46, 14/54	$P < 0.005$	Purity unspecified
		Leukaemia/lymphomas: 1/46, 7/54	NS	
		Zymbal's gland carcinomas: 0/46, 2/54	NS	
Mouse, C57Bl (M) Lifetime Snyder *et al.* (1988)	0 (filtered air) or 1200 ppm benzene, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 10 wk 80/group	Zymbal's gland carcinomas: 0/67, 4/68	NS	Purity unspecified
Mouse, C57Bl (M) Lifetime Snyder *et al.* (1988)	0 (filtered air) or 300 ppm benzene, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 1 wk followed by 2 wk of non exposure for life 60/group	Zymbal's gland carcinomas: 0/46, 19/54	$P < 0.001$	Purity unspecified

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, CBA/Ca BNL (M, F) Lifetime Cronkite *et al.* (1989)	0, 100 (M), 300 (M, F) ppm benzene for 16 wk 6 h/d, 5 d/wk. 60 – 85/group	100 ppm Myelogenous neoplasms: 0/70, 2/85 Other neoplasms, other than hepatoma and haematopoietic: 14/70, 38/85 300 ppm Myelogenous neoplasms: M–0/60, 11/57 F–1/60, 6/54 Other neoplasms, other than hepatoma and haematopoietic: M–13/60, 30/57 F–21/60, 43/54	 NS $P < 0.001$ $P < 0.001$ $P = 0.040$ $P < 0.001$ $P < 0.001$	Purity unspecified Medium lifespan in male (510 days) and female (580 days) mice exposed to 300 ppm was significantly reduced versus sham –exposed males (1 030 days) and females (1 100 days). Myelogenous neoplasms included acute myeloblastic and chronic granulocytic leukaemia. Other neoplasms included Zymbal's and Harderian gland tumours, squamous cell carcinoma, mammary gland adenocarcinoma, and papillary adenocarcinoma of the lung.
Mouse, CBA/Ca (M) 22 months Farris *et al.* (1993)	0, 300 ppm benzene 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 16 wk 125/group	Malignant lymphomas: 2/119, 14/118 Preputial gland (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/118, 71/118 Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas): 17/119, 42/119 Zymbal's gland (carcinomas): 1/125, 14/125 Forestomach (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/125, 9/125 Harderian gland: 6/125, 7/125	$P < 0.002$ $P < 0.01$ $P < 0.01$ See comments See comments See comments	100% pure Exposure to benzene caused a significant decrease ($P < 0.01$) in survival and was a significant cause ($P < 0.01$) of early mortality during the first 9 mo post exposure. Most (12) of the lymphomas were of the lymphoblastic or lymphocytic type; two (2) were of the mixed type. Zymbal's gland, forestomach and Harderian gland were examined microscopically only when gross lesions were evident.

d, day or days; h, hour or hours; F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; ppm, parts per million; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

Table 3.2 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to benzene by gavage

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, F344 (M) 103 wks NTP (1986), Maronpot (1987), Huff *et al.* (1989)	0, 50, 100, 200 mg/kg bw benzene in corn oil (M); 0, 25, 50, or 100 mg/kg bw in corn oil (F) 5 d/wk 60/group	***Zymbal's Gland:***		> 99.7% pure Groups of 10 rats/sex/group were removed at 51 wks for blood sampling and killed at 52 wks. Survival decreased with increasing dose in both sexes; survival of the high-dose females was significantly less than that of the controls; control females had a greater than average survival normally observed for female F344 rats. Final mean body weight of the high dose males was significantly less than that of the vehicle controls. Most of the dosed rats that died before 103 wks had neoplasms.
		Carcinoma: M–2/32, 6/46, 10/42, 17/42 F–0/45, 5/40, 5/44, 14/46	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.193$, $P = 0.017$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.022$, $P < 0.018$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Adenoma/Carcinoma: M–2/32, 7/46, 10/42, 18/42 F–0/45, 5/40, 6/44, 15/46	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.131$, $P = 0.017$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.022$, $P = 0.010$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Palate:		
		Papilloma: M–0/50, 4/50, 4/50, 9/50 F–1/50, 3/50, 5/50, 3/50	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.064$, $P = 0.057$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.103$, $P = 0.240$, $P = 0.053$, $P = 0.183$ (F)	
		Lip:		
		Papilloma: M–0/50, 2/50, 5/50, 5/50 F–0/50, 0/50, 2/50, 2/50	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.216$, $P = 0.015$, $P = 0.008$ (M)	
		Carcinoma: M–0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 3/50 F–0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50	$P = 0.002$, -,-, $P = 0.035$ (M)	
		Papilloma/Carcinoma: M–0/50, 2/50, 5/50, 8/50 F–0/50, 0/50, 2/50, 2/50	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.216$, $P = 0.015$, $P = 0.008$ (M)	
		Tongue:		
		Papilloma: M–1/50, 0/50, 2/50, 2/50 F–0/50, 1/50, 1/50, 0/50		
		Carcinoma: M–0/50, 3/50, 4/50, 4/50 F–0/50, 0/50, 4/50, 4/50	$P = 0.039$, $P = 0.133$, $P = 0.051$, $P = 0.028$ (M)	
		Papilloma/Carcinoma: M–1/50, 3/50, 6/50, 6/50 F–0/50, 1/50, 5/50, 4/50	$P = 0.013$, $P = 0.328$, $P = 0.044$, $P = 0.028$ (M)	

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, F344 (M) 103 wks NTP (1986), Maronpot (1987), Huff *et al.* (1989) Contd.		***Oral Cavity*** (overall rates): Papilloma: M–1/50, 6/50, 11/50, 13/50 F–1/50, 4/50, 8/50, 5/50	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.058$, $P = 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.017$, $P = 0.127$, $P = 0.006$, $P = 0.032$ (F)	
		Carcinoma: M–0/50, 3/50, 5/50, 7/50 F–0/50, 1/50, 4/50, 5/50	$P = 0.001$, $P = 0.133$, $P = 0.030$, $P = 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.003$, $P = 0.468$, $P = 0.047$, $P = 0.010$ (F)	
		Papilloma/Carcinoma: M–1/50, 9/50, 16/50, 19/50 F–1/50, 5/50, 12/50, 9/50	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.012$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.068$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.001$ (F)	
		Skin: Papilloma: M–0/50, 2/50, 1/50, 5/50	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.216$, $P = 0.451$, $P < 0.005$ (M)	
		Carcinoma: M–0/50, 5/50, 3/50, 8/50 =	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.032$, $P = 0.098$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Papilloma/Carcinoma: M–1/50, 7/50, 5/50, 12/50	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.031$, $P = 0.076$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Uterus: Endometrial stromal polyp: F–7/50, 7/50, 7/49, 14/50	$P = 0.001$, $P = 0.468$, $P = 0.420$, $P = 0.003$ (F)	
Rat, Wistar (M, F) Lifetime Maltoni *et al.* (1983, 1988, 1989), Mehlman (2002)	0, (control), 500 mg/kg bw benzene in olive oil once/d, 5 d/wk, 104 wk 40/group/sex	**Zymbal's gland:** Carcinoma: M–0/40, 7/40 F–0/40, 6/40	[$P < 0.01$]; [$P < 0.05$]	99.93% pure Mortality was higher in benzene-treated male and female rats. Benzene treated rats had lower body weights.
		Oral cavity: Carcinoma: M–1/40, 2/40 F–0/40, 4/40	[NS]	
		Nasal cavity: Carcinoma: M–0/40, 2/40 F–1/40, 1/40	[NS]	
		Malignant tumours: M–8/40, 19/40 F–10/40, 21/40	-	

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) Lifetime Maltoni *et al.* (1983, 1989), Maltoni & Scarnato (1979), Mehlman (2002)	Benzene in olive oil 0 (control), 50 or 250 mg/kg bw once/d, 4–5 d/wk for 52 wk 30 or 35/group	**Leukaemia:** M–0/28, 0/28, 4/33 F–1/30, 2/30, 1/32	[NS]	99.93% pure
		Zymbal's gland (carcinomas): M–0/28, 0/28, 0/33 F–0/30, 2/30, 8/32*	*[$P < 0.005$] (F)	
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) Lifetime Maltoni *et al.* (1989) Maltoni *et al.* (1983), Mehlman (2002), Maltoni *et al.* (1982b)	Benzene in olive oil 0 (control), 500 mg/kg bw once/d, 4–5 d/wk for 104 wk Controls, 50/group Treated, 40/group	**Leukaemia:** M–3/50, 1/40 F–1/50, 3/40	[NS]	99.93% pure
		Zymbal's gland: Carcinoma: M–1/50, 18/40 F–0/50, 16/40	[$P < 0.0001$] (M, F)	
		Nasal cavity: Carcinoma: M–0/50, 3/40 F–0/50, 1/40	[NS]	
		Oral cavity: Carcinoma: M–0/50, 21/40 F–0/50, 20/40	[$P < 0.0001$] (M, F)	
		Skin: Carcinoma: M–0/50, 9/40 F–1/50, 0/40	[$P < 0.001$] (M)	
		Liver: Hepatomas: M–3/50, 3/40 F–0/50, 1/40	[NS]	
		Angiosarcoma: M–0/50, 2/40 F–0/50, 3/40		
		Forestomach: Acanthoma/dysplasia: M–0/50, 10/40 F–0/50, 7/40	[$P < 0.005$] (M, F)	
		Carcinoma M–0/50, 1/40 F–0/50, 6/40	[$P < 0.01$] (F)	
		Total Malignant tumours: M–12/50, 68/40 F–11/50, 59/40	-	

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M, F) 103 wks NTP (1986), Maronpot (1987), Huff *et al.* (1989)	0, 25, 50, or 100 mg/kg bw benzene in corn oil (M, F) 5 d/wk 60/group	***Zymbal's Gland:*** Carcinoma: M–0/43, 1/34, 4/40, 21/39 F–0/43, 0/32, 1/37, 3/31	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.489$, $P = 0.012$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.007$,–, $P = 0.450$, $P = 0.045$ (F)	> 99.7% pure Groups of 10 mice/sex/group were removed at 51 wks for blood sampling and killed at 52 wks. Survival decreased with increasing dose in both sexes; survival of the high dose males and high dose females was significantly less than those of the controls ($P < 0.001$ and $P = 0.004$, respectively). Final mean body weights of the high dose males and females were less than that of the vehicle controls. Increased incidence of neoplasms were observed at multiple sites for male and female mice.
		Preputial Gland: Squamous cell carcinoma: 0/21, 3/28, 18/29, 28/35	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.225$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Carcinoma NOS: 0/21, 2/28, 1/29, 3/35	$P < 0.019$, $P = 0.359$, $P = 0.445$, $P = 0.043$ (M)	
		Carcinoma (all types): 0/21, 5/28, 19/29, 31/35	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.091$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Ovary Tubular adenoma: 0/47, 0/44, 3/49, 3/48	$P = 0.008$, -, $P = 0.090$, $P = 0.047$	
		Granulosa cell tumour or carcinoma: 1/47, 1/44, 6/49, 8/48	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.730$, $P < 0.040$, $P < 0.004$ (F)	
		Benign mixed cell tumour: 0/47, 1/44, 12/49, 7/48	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.471$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Mammary gland: Carcinoma: F–0/49, 2/45, 5/50, 10/49	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.202$, $P < 0.026$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Carcinosarcoma: F–0/49, 0/45, 1/50, 4/49	$P < 0.001$, –, $P < 0.495$, $P < 0.017$ (F)	
		Harderian gland: Adenoma: M–0/49, 9/46, 13/49, 11/48 F–5/48, 6/44, 10/50, 6/47	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.133$, $P = 0.369$, $P = 0.090$, $P = 0.204$ (F)	
		Carcinoma: M–1/49, 2/46, 0/49, 3/48 F–0/48, 0/44, 0/50, 4/47	$P < 0.001$, –, –, $P = 0.020$ (F	

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M, F) 103 wks NTP (1986), Maronpot (1987), Huff *et al.* (1989) Contd.		Adenoma/Carcinoma: M–1/49, 10/46, 13/49, 14/48 F–5/48, 6/44, 10/50, 10/47	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.002$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.009$, $P = 0.369$, $P = 0.090$, $P = 0.017$ (F)	
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar): Adenoma: M–6/49, 6/48, 8/50, 12/49 F–4/49, 2/42, 5/50, 9/49	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.499$, $P = 0.188$, $P = 0.005$ (M); $P = 0.003$, $P = 0.437$N, $P = 0.398$, $P = 0.011$ (F)	
		Carcinoma: M–5/49, 11/48, 12/50, 14/49 F–0/49, 3/42, 6/50, 6/49	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.052$, $P = 0.017$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.002$, $P = 0.084$, $P = 0.010$, $P = 0.004$ (F)	
		Adenoma/Carcinoma: M–10/49, 16/48, 19/50, 21/49 F–4/49, 5/42, 10/50, 13/49	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.069$, $P = 0.007$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = < 0.001$, $P = 0.0.366$, $P = 0.039$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Lymphohaematopoietic: Lymphoma: M–4/49, 9/48, 9/50, 15/49 F–15/49, 24/45, 24/50, 20/49	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.075$, $P < 0.030$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.031$, $P = 0.021$, $P = 0.025$, $P = 0.037$ (F)	
		Leukaemia: M–0/49, 1/48, 1/50, 0/49 F–0/49, 1/45, 2/50, 2/49	NR	
		Lymphoma/leukaemia: M–4/49, 10/48, 10/50, 15/49 F–15/49, 25/45, 26/50, 22/49	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.048$, $P < 0.018$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.014$, $P = 0.014$, $P = 0.012$, $P = 0.017$ (F)	
		Forestomach: Papilloma: M–2/45, 1/42, 2/44, 5/38 F–1/42, 3/40, 6/45, 5/42	$P = 0.003$, $P = 0.567$N, $P < 0.556$, $P < 0.014$ (M); $P = 0.022$, $P = 0.288$, $P = 0.038$, $P = 0.040$ (F)	
		Carcinoma: M–2/45, 1/42, 2/44, 5/38	NR	
		Papilloma/carcinoma: M–2/45, 2/42, 3/44, 5/38	$P = 0.004$, $P = 0.623$, $P = 0.335$, $P = 0.014$ (M)	

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M, F) 103 wks NTP (1986), Maronpot (1987), Huff *et al.* (1989) Contd.		***Liver:*** Adenoma: M–7/49, 11/48, 6/50, 3/47 F–1/49, 8/44, 5/50, 4/49	$P = 0.156$, $P = 0.008$, $P = 0.079$, $P = 0.077$ (F)	
		Carcinoma: M–9/49, 8/48, 17/50, 8/47 F–3/49, 4/44, 8/50, 4/49	$P = 0.072$, $P = 0.589$, $P = 0.028$, $P = 0.293$ (M)	
		Adenoma/Carcinoma: M–15/49, 17/48, 22/50, 11/47 F–4/49, 12/44, 13/50, 7/49	$P = 0.076$, $P = 0.256$, $P = 0.029$, $P = 0.225$ (M); $P = 0.103$, $P = 0.014$, $P = 0.008$, $P = 0.086$ (F)	
		Adrenal Gland: Pheochromocytoma: M–1/47, 1/48, 7/49, 1/46 F–6/49, 1/44, 1/50, 1/48	$P = 0.096$, $P = 0.725$, $P = 0.010$, $P = 0.632$ (M)	
Mouse, A/J (M, F) 24 wk Stoner *et al.* (1986)	0 (control), 24 g/kg bw in tricaprylin vehicle 3x/wk for 8 wk 16/group	**Lung** (adenomas): M–3/15, 8/16 F–2/14, 5/15	NR	Purity NR
		tumours/ mouse: M–0.27 ± 0.59, 0.63 ± 0.72 F–0.14 ± 0.36, 0.53 ± 0.92	$P < 0.05$ NS	
Mouse, Swiss (M, F) Lifetime Maltoni *et al.* (1988)	0 (control), 500 mg/kg bw benzene in olive oil once/d, 5d/wk 40/group	**Mammary gland** (carcinomas): M–1/40, 0/40 F–2/40, 19/40	[$P < 0.0001$] (F)	99.93% pure
		Lung (adenomas): M–3/40, 16/40 F–4/40, 15/40	[$P < 0.01$] (M, F)	
		Zymbal's gland (carcinomas): M–0/40, 4/40 F–0/40, 1/40	[NS]	
		Malignant tumours: M–9/40, 14/40 F–11/40, 28/40	-	

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, RF/J (M, F) Lifetime Maltoni *et al.* (1989), Mehlman (2002)	0 (control), 500 mg/kg bw benzene in olive oil once/d, 4–5 d/wk for 52 wk Male, 45/group Female, 40/group	**Mammary Gland** (carcinomas): M–0/45, 0/45 F–1/40, 9/40	[$P < 0.05$] (F)	99.93% pure
		Lung: All tumours: M–5/45, 23/45 F–3/40, 15/40	[$P < 0.005$] (M, F)	
		Adenocarcinomas: M–0/45, 0/45 F–0/40, 1/40	[NS]	
		Leukaemia: M–17/45, 26/45 F–14/40, 24/40	[NS]	
Mouse, C57Bl/6-Trp53 (F) 26 wk French & Saulnier (2000)	0 (control), 200 mg/kg bw benzene 5d/wk Controls – 20/group Dosed – 40/group	**Subcutis** (sarcomas): 0/20, 16/39	[$P < 0.001$]	> 99.9% pure vehicle unspecified
		Thymus (lymphomas): 0/20, 3/39	[NS]	
Mouse, haploinsufficient $p16^{Ink4a}/p19^{Arf}$ (M, F) 27 wk NTP (2007)	0 (control), 25, 50, 100, 200 mg/kg bw benzene in corn oil 5 d/wk 15/group	**Malignant lymphomas:** M–0/15, 0/15, 0/15, 0/15, 5/15	$P = 0.021$ (high dose) $P < 0.001$ (trend)	

d, day or days; F, female; i.p., intraperitoneal; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years; bw, body weight

Table 3.3 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to benzene by intraperitoneal injection

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, A/J (M, F) 24 wk Stoner *et al.* (1986)	0 (control), 480, 1 200, 2 400 mg/kg bw in tricaprylin vehicle 3x/wk for 8 wk 16/group	**Lung adenomas:** M–3/16, 5/15, 8/16, 10/16 F–4/16, 4/15, 4/16, 6/15	NR	Purity NR
		Tumours/ mouse: M–0.25 ± 0.58, 0.53 ± 0.92, 0.63 ± 0.72, 0.69 ± 0.60 F–0.31 ± 0.60, 0.44 ± 0.89, 0.25 ± 0.45, 0.47 ± 0.64	$P < 0.05$ (1 200 and 2 400 mg/kg) (M)	

F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; wk, week or weeks; bw, body weight

Table 3.4 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to benzene via skin application

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, hemizygous and homozygous Tg.AC (v-Ha-*ras*) (M, F) 20 wk Blanchard *et al.* (1998)	200 µl of acetone: vehicle control 200 µl benzene, neat 2–7x/wk 10 mice/treated group	Skin papillomas: Hemizygous Tg.AC M–6/65, 3/10 F–2/65, 4/10 Homozygous Tg.AC M–NR, 10/10 F–NR, 9/10	 [NS] [$P < 0.01$] - -	Purity NR
Mouse, hemizygous Tg.AC (v-Ha-*ras*) (M, F) 26 wk Holden *et al.* (1998)	G1: Untreated (shaved) G2: acetone 200 µl, 7d/wk, 20 wk G3: 100 µl benzene, 3x/wk, 20 wk G4: 150 µl benzene, 3x/wk, 20 wk 10 mice/group	Skin (papillomas): M–0/10, 0/10, 0/10, 3/10 F–0/10, 0/10, 1/10, 1/10	$P \leq 0.05$, G4 vs negative controls	Purity NR
Mouse, homozygous, FVB/N-Tg.AC (v-Ha-*ras*) (F) 32 wk French & Saulnier (2000)	0 µl/wk: 200 µl acetone 1/d 3x/wk for 20 wk (control) 450 µl/wk: 150 µl in 50 µl acetone 1/d, 3x/wk for 20 wk 800 µl/wk: 200µl neat, 2/d, 2/wk for 20 wk 20 mice/group	Granulocytic leukaemia: 0/19, 4/14*, 11/15*	*$P \leq 0.05$	> 99.9% pure

d, day or days; F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

and of benign and malignant ovarian tumours, mammary gland carcinomas and carcinosarcomas, and Harderian gland carcinomas in female mice (NTP, 1986; Stoner *et al.*, 1986; Maronpot, 1987; Maltoni *et al.*, 1988, 1989; Huff *et al.*, 1989; Mehlman, 2002).

Increased multiplicity of lung adenomas was observed in male mice after intraperitoneal injection of benzene (Stoner *et al.*, 1986).

Exposure of genetically altered, tumour-prone mice to benzene by oral administration, skin application, or inhalation resulted in increased incidences of skin tumours (Blanchard *et al.* 1998; Holden *et al.*, 1998; French & Saulnier, 2000) and lymphohaematopoietic malignancies (French & Saulnier, 2000; NTP, 2007; Kawasaki *et al.*, 2009).

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Genetic and related effects

Benzene induced chromosomal aberrations, micronuclei and sister chromatid exchange in bone-marrow cells of mice, chromosomal aberrations in bone-marrow cells of rats and Chinese hamsters and sperm-head anomalies in mice treated *in vivo*. It induced chromosomal aberrations and mutation in human cells *in vitro* but did not induce sister chromatid exchange in cultured human lymphocytes, except in one study in which high concentrations of an exogenous metabolic system were used. In some test systems, benzene induced cell transformation. It did not induce sister chromatid exchange in rodent cells *in vitro*, but it did induce aneuploidy and, in some studies, chromosomal aberrations in cultured Chinese hamster ovary cells. Benzene induced mutation and DNA damage in some studies in rodent cells *in vitro*. In *Drosophila*, benzene was reported to be weakly positive in assays for somatic mutation and for crossing-over in spermatogonia; in single studies, it did not induce sex-linked recessive lethal mutations or translocations. It induced aneuploidy, mutation and gene conversion in fungi. Benzene was not mutagenic to bacteria (IARC, 1982, 1987). Chromosomal aberrations in human peripheral lymphocytes have been associated with occupational exposure to benzene for decades (Forni, 1979; IARC, 1982; Eastmond, 1993; Zhang *et al.*, 2002; Holecková *et al.*, 2004).

4.2 Leukaemogenic potential of benzene

Benzene is carcinogenic to the bone marrow causing leukaemia and myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS) and probably also to the lymphatic system causing non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Its carcinogenic mechanism of action is likely to be different for these two target tissues and probably multifactorial in nature. The metabolism of benzene will be summarized below and a review is presented of the current state of knowledge on the mechanisms of leukaemia and lymphoma induction by benzene. With regard to leukaemia, probable mechanisms of leukaemogenesis in the myeloid series, mainly acute myeloid leukaemia (AML) and MDS are discussed. Then, potential mechanisms by which benzene could cause acute lymphocytic leukaemia (ALL) in both adults and children are reviewed. Finally, mechanisms for the benzene-induced development of non-Hodgkin lymphoma are summarized, including that of chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL), as it is now classified as a form of lymphoma.

4.2.1 Metabolism of benzene and its relevance to carcinogenicity

Benzene must be metabolized to become carcinogenic (Ross, 2000; Snyder, 2004). Its metabolism is summarized in Fig. 4.1. The initial metabolic step involves cytochrome P450 (CYP)-dependent oxidation to benzene oxide,

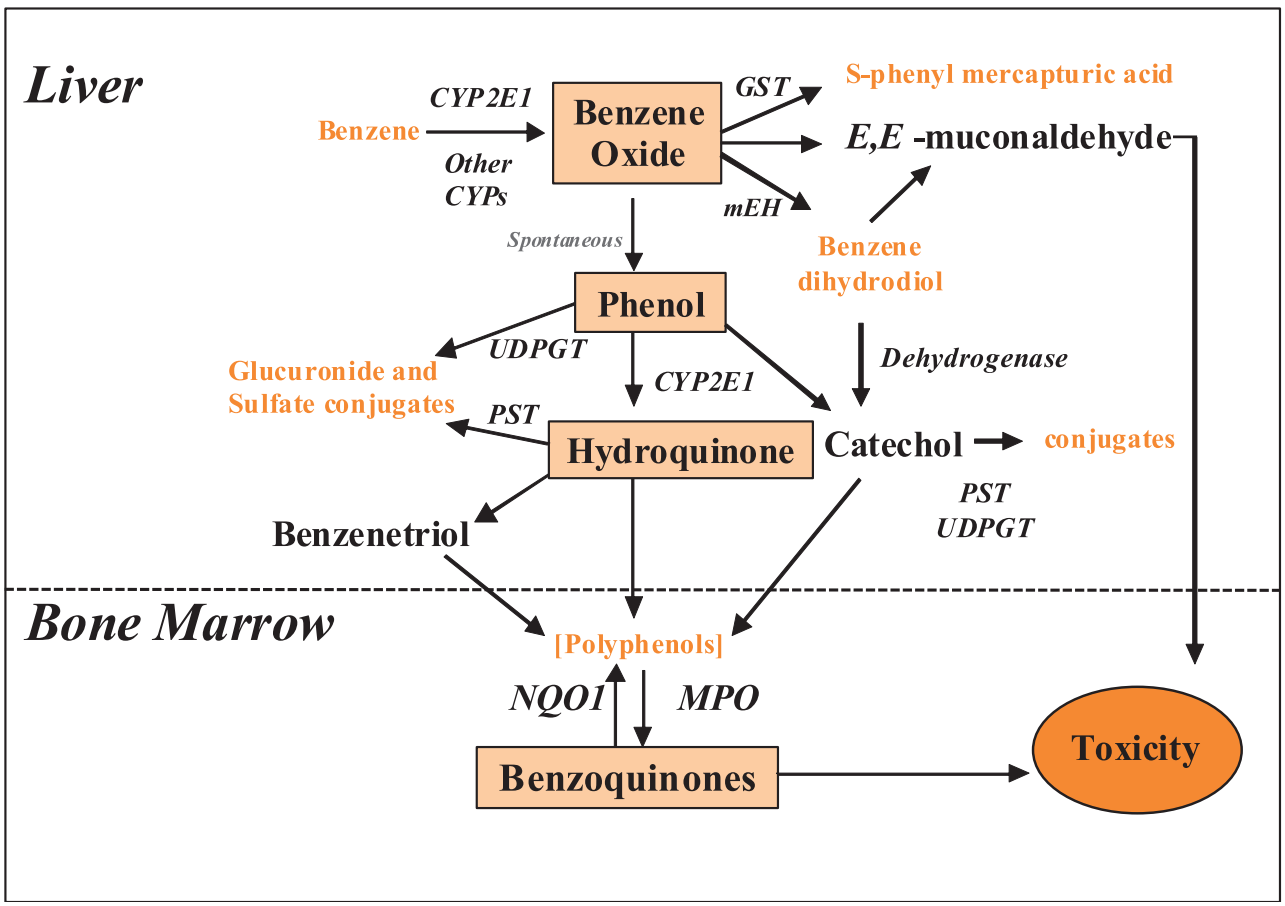
which exists in equilibrium with its tautomer oxepin. Most benzene oxide spontaneously rearranges to phenol, which is either excreted or further metabolized to hydroquinone and 1,4-benzoquinone. The remaining benzene oxide is either hydrolysed to produce benzene 1,2-dihydrodiol (catechol), which is further oxidized to 1,2-benzoquinone, or it reacts with glutathione to produce *S*-phenylmercapturic acid. Metabolism of oxepin is thought to open the aromatic ring, to yield the reactive muconaldehydes and *E,E*-muconic acid. Human exposure to benzene at concentrations in air between 0.1 and 10 ppm, results in urinary metabolite profiles with 70–85% phenol, 5–10% each of hydroquinone, *E,E*-muconic acid and catechol, and less than 1% of *S*-phenylmercapturic acid (Kim *et al.*, 2006b). Benzene oxide, the benzoquinones, muconaldehydes, and benzene dihydrodiol epoxides (formed from CYP-mediated oxidation of benzene dihydrodiol) are electrophiles that readily react with peptides, proteins and DNA (Bechtold *et al.*, 1992; McDonald *et al.*, 1993; Bodell *et al.*, 1996; Gaskell *et al.*, 2005; Henderson *et al.*, 2005; Waidyanatha & Rappaport, 2005) and can thereby interfere with cellular function (Smith, 1996). It remains unclear what role these different metabolites play in the carcinogenicity of benzene, but benzoquinone formation from hydroquinone via myeloperoxidase in the bone marrow has been suggested as being a key step (Smith, 1996). There is considerable evidence for an important role of this metabolic pathway that leads to benzoquinone formation, as the benzoquinone-detoxifying enzyme NAD(P)H:quinone oxidoreductase1 (NQO1) protects mice against benzene-induced myelodysplasia (Long *et al.*, 2002; Iskander & Jaiswal, 2005) and humans against the hematotoxicity of benzene (Rothman *et al.*, 1997). However, this does not rule out adverse effects from other metabolites.

Increased susceptibility to the toxic effects of benzene has been linked to genetic polymorphisms that increase the rate of metabolism of benzene to active intermediates, or decrease the rate of detoxification of these active intermediates (Rothman *et al.*, 1997; Xu *et al.*, 1998; Kim *et al.*, 2004).

Recently it has been shown that benzene is most likely metabolized initially to phenol and *E,E*-muconic acid via two enzymes rather than just one CYP enzyme, and that the putative, high-affinity enzyme is active primarily at benzene concentrations below 1 ppm (Rappaport *et al.*, 2009). CYP2E1 is the primary enzyme responsible for mammalian metabolism of benzene at higher levels of exposure (Valentine *et al.*, 1996; Nedelcheva *et al.*, 1999). CYP2F1 and CYP2A13 are reasonable candidate enzymes that are active at environmental levels of exposure below 1 ppm (Powley & Carlson, 2000; Sheets *et al.*, 2004; Rappaport *et al.*, 2009). These CYPs are highly expressed in the human lung. Despite much research, more work is needed to elucidate the different roles of multiple metabolites in the toxicity of benzene and the pathways that lead to their formation.

A role for the aryl-hydrocarbon receptor (AhR) is also emerging in the haematotoxicity of benzene. AhR is known mainly as the mediator for the toxicity of certain xenobiotics (Hirabayashi & Inoue, 2009). However, this transcription factor has many important biological functions and evidence is emerging that it has a significant role in the regulation of haematopoietic stem cells (Hirabayashi & Inoue, 2009; Singh *et al.*, 2009). It has been hypothesized that AhR expression is necessary for the proper maintenance of quiescence in these cells, and that AhR downregulation is essential for their "escape" from quiescence and subsequent proliferation (Singh *et al.*, 2009). It has been demonstrated that AhR-knockout (KO) ($AhR^{-/-}$) mice do not show any haematotoxicity after exposure to benzene (Yoon *et al.*, 2002). Follow-up studies have shown that mice that had been lethally irradiated and repopulated with marrow cells from AhR-KO mice did not display any sign of benzene-induced

Fig. 4.1 Simplified metabolic scheme for benzene showing major pathways and metabolizing enzymes leading to toxicity. CYP2E1, cytochrome P450 2E1; GST, glutathione-*S*-transferase; NQO1, NAD(P)H:quinone oxidoreductase 1; MPO, myeloperoxidase; UDPGT, Uridine diphosphate glucoronosyl transferase; PST, phenol sulphotransferase; mEH, microsomal epoxide hydrolase



haematotoxicity (Hirabayashi *et al.*, 2008). The most likely explanation for these findings is that the absence of AhR removes haematopoietic stem cells from their quiescent state and makes them susceptible to DNA damage from benzene exposure and subsequent cell death through apoptosis. Further research is needed to examine the effects of benzene and its metabolites on cycling and quiescent haematopoietic stem cells.

4.2.2 Mechanisms of myeloid leukaemia development

(a) General

AML and MDS are closely-related diseases of the bone marrow that arise de novo (without an obvious cause) in the general population or following therapy with alkylating agents, topoisomerase II inhibitors, or ionizing radiation (therapy-related AML and MDS, i.e. t-AML and t-MDS) (Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2006, 2008). Occupational exposure to benzene is widely thought to cause leukaemias that are similar to various forms of t-AML and t-MDS (Irons

& Stillman, 1996; Larson & Le Beau, 2005; Zhang *et al.*, 2007). AML and MDS both arise from genetically altered CD34+ stem cells or progenitor cells in the bone marrow (Morgan & Alvares, 2005; Passegué & Weisman, 2005) and are characterized by many different types of recurrent chromosome aberrations (Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2006; Mrózek & Bloomfield, 2008). These aberrations have been shown to often develop into the genetic mutations that produce leukaemia. Cytogenetic analysis of chromosome number and structure has therefore become important in diagnosis and treatment of MDS and AML (Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2006; Mrózek & Bloomfield, 2008). Recent research has shown that the chromosome aberrations and gene mutations detected in therapy-related and de novo MDS and AML are identical, although the frequencies with which they are observed in different subtypes may differ (Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2008). Hence, therapy-related and de novo MDS and AML are considered identical diseases (Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2008).

At least three cytogenetic categories of AML and MDS are commonly observed: those with unbalanced aberrations, with balanced rearrangements, and with normal karyotype:

Unbalanced chromosome aberrations comprise primarily the loss of various parts of the long arm or loss of the whole chromosome 5 or 7 (5q–/–5 or 7q–/–7) and gain of a whole chromosome 8 (+8) (Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2006, 2007, 2008). These cases often have a complex karyotype and carry point mutations of *TP53* or *AML1*. Unbalanced chromosome aberrations are common after therapy with alkylating agents.

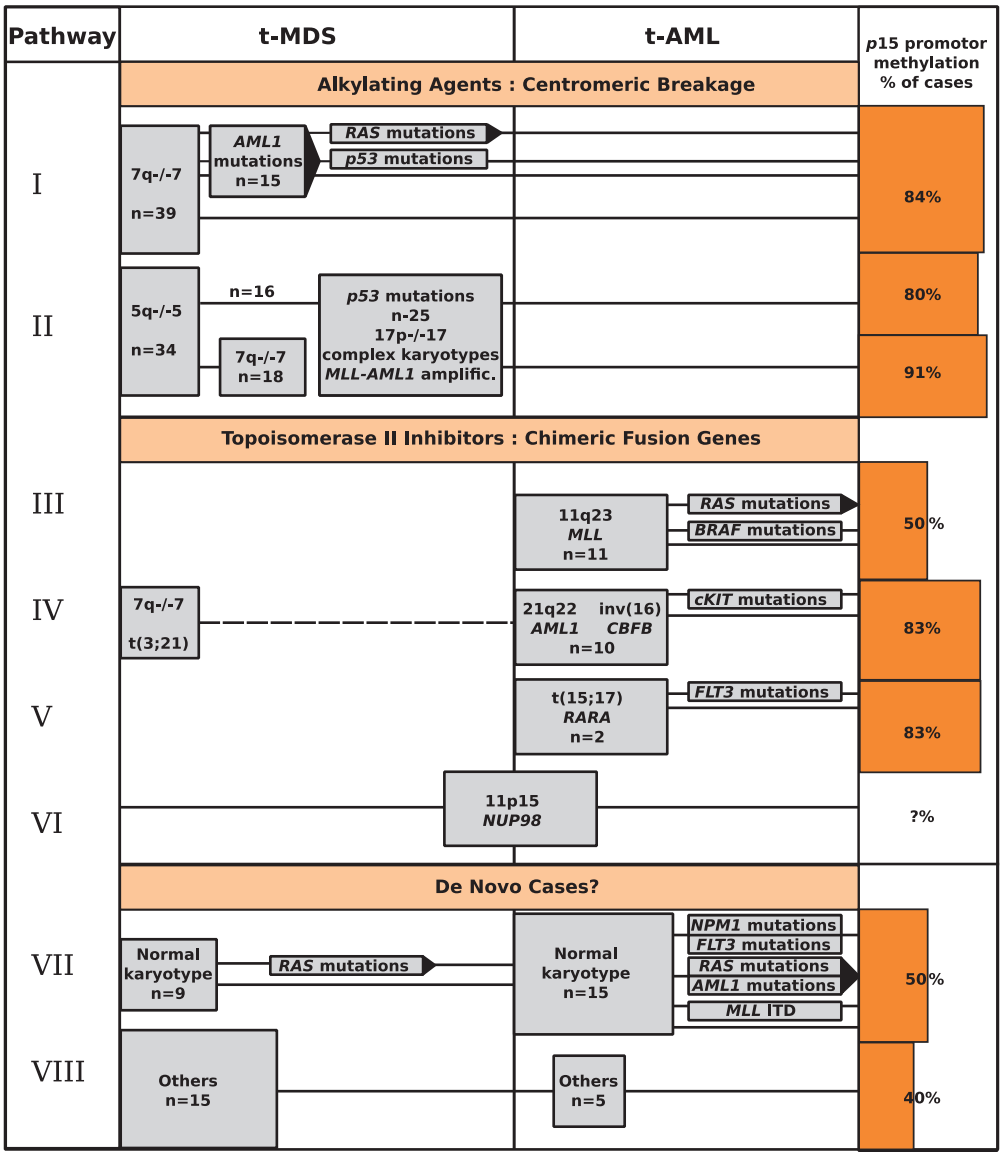
Balanced rearrangements are recurrent balanced translocations [e.g. t(11q23), t(8;21) and t(15;17)] or inversions [e.g. inv(16)], which arise, at least in the therapy-related subset of cases, as illegitimate gene recombinations related to functional inhibition of topoisomerase II (Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2006, 2008). Among the most important rearranged transcription-factor genes are the mixed-lineage leukaemia (*MLL*) at 11q23, the *AML1* at 21q22, the retinoic-acid receptor-α *RARA* at 17q21 and the core-binding factor subunit-β (*CBFB*) at 16q22 (Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2007).

Cases with a normal karyotype often harbour mutations of the *NPM1* gene (which encodes nucleophosmin), internal tandem duplications of the *FLT3* gene (which encodes fms-related tyrosine kinase), and/or point mutations or an altered methylation status of the *C/EBPα* gene (which encodes CCAAT/enhancer binding protein α) (Cuneo *et al.*, 2002; Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2006, 2007, 2008; Hackanson *et al.*, 2008).

Within these three cytogenetic categories there are at least eight different genetic pathways that lead to MDS and AML, as defined by the specific chromosome aberrations present in each (Pathways I –VIII in Fig. 4.2). As more becomes clear about the molecular cytogenetics of leukaemia, it seems likely that many other pathways to AML and MDS will be discovered. For example, recent unbiased high-resolution genomic screens have identified many genes not previously implicated in AML that may be relevant for pathogenesis, along with many known oncogenes and tumour-suppressor genes (Ley *et al.*, 2008; Mardis *et al.*, 2009; Walter *et al.*, 2009).

Another classical pathway to AML is through the transformation of a myeloproliferative disorder (MPD) (Abdulkarim *et al.*, 2009), although there is less evidence for this pathway as a relevant mechanism to benzene-induced AML. MPDs include Philadelphia chromosome (Ph)-positive chronic myelogenous leukaemia (CML) and the Ph-negative conditions *polycythemia vera*, essential trombocythemia and idiopathic myelofibrosis. It is well established that AML may occur as a late complication in all these disorders. Over the first ten years after diagnosis, the incidence of leukaemic transformation is reported to be higher in patients with idiopathic myelofibrosis (8–23%) compared with

Fig. 4.2 Genetic Pathways to Myelodysplastic Syndromes (MDS) and Acute Myeloid Leukaemia



From Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.* (2006)

patients with essential trombocythemia (0.5–1%) and *polycythemia vera* (1–4%) (Abdulkarim *et al.*, 2009). Thus, benzene may first produce an MPD, which later transforms into AML.

An important role for epigenetic changes is also emerging in association with the development of leukaemia. Functional loss of the CCAAT/enhancer binding protein α (*C/EBPα*) (also known as CEBPA), a central regulatory transcription factor in the haematopoietic system, can result in a differentiation block in granulopoiesis and thus contribute to leukaemic transformation (Fröhling & Döhner, 2004). Recent work has shown that epigenetic alterations of *C/EBPα* occur frequently in AML and that *C/EBPα* mRNA is a target for miRNA-124a (Hackanson *et al.*, 2008). This miRNA is frequently silenced by epigenetic mechanisms in leukaemia cell lines. *C/EBPα* is also capable of controlling *miRNA-223* expression, which is vital in granulocytic differentiation (Fazi *et al.*, 2005). Altered expression of several miRNAs is also observed in some forms of AML (Dixon-McIver *et al.*, 2008; Marcucci *et al.*, 2008).

(b) Mechanisms of benzene-induced myeloid leukaemia development

There is strong evidence that benzene can induce AML via pathways I, II and IV, considerable supporting evidence for pathway V, some evidence for pathway III, but little information regarding pathways VI–VIII (see Fig. 4.2). Exposure to benzene has been associated with higher levels of the chromosomal changes commonly observed in AML, including 5q–/–5 or 7q–/–7, +8, and t(8;21) in the blood cells of highly exposed workers (Smith *et al.*, 1998; Zhang *et al.*, 1999, 2002). The benzene metabolite hydroquinone produces these same changes in cultured human cells, including cultures of CD34+ progenitor cells (Smith *et al.*, 2000; Stillman *et al.*, 2000). This provides strong evidence for the induction by benzene of AML via pathways I, II and IV (see Fig. 4.2).

Pathways III, IV and V are related to the inhibition of the DNA-related enzyme topoisomerase II, which is essential for the maintenance of proper chromosome structure and segregation; it removes knots and tangles from the genetic material by passing an intact double helix through a transient double-stranded break that it creates in a separate segment of DNA (McClendon & Osheroff, 2007; Bandele & Osheroff, 2009). To maintain genomic integrity during its catalytic cycle, topoisomerase II forms covalent bonds between active-site tyrosyl residues and the 5′-DNA termini created by cleavage of the double helix (Bandele & Osheroff, 2009). Normally, these covalent topoisomerase II-cleaved DNA complexes (known as cleavable complexes) are fleeting intermediates and are tolerated by the cell. However, when the concentration or longevity of cleavage complexes increases significantly, DNA double-strand breaks occur (Lindsey *et al.*, 2004). If topoisomerase II–induced double-strand breaks are incorrectly repaired, two unrelated (nonhomologous) chromosomes are fused together to produce translocations or inversions (Deweese & Osheroff, 2009).

There are different types of topoisomerase-II inhibitors. Epidophyllotoxins, such as etoposide, cause chromosome damage and kill cells by increasing physiological levels of topoisomerase II-DNA cleavage complexes (Baker *et al.*, 2001; Felix, 2001; Deweese & Osheroff, 2009). These drugs are referred to as topoisomerase-II poisons to distinguish them from catalytic inhibitors of the enzyme because they convert this essential enzyme to a potent cellular toxin. Other drugs, such as merbarone, act as inhibitors of topo-II activity but, in contrast to etoposide they do not stabilize topoisomerase II-DNA cleavable complexes. Nevertheless, they are potent clastogens both in vitro and in vivo (Wang *et al.*, 2007).

Several studies have shown that benzene in vivo, and its reactive metabolites hydroquinone

and 1,4-benzoquinone in vitro, inhibit the functionality of topoisomerase II and enhance DNA cleavage (Chen & Eastmond, 1995; Frantz *et al.*, 1996; Hutt & Kalf, 1996; Eastmond *et al.*, 2001; Fung *et al.*, 2004; Lindsey *et al.*, 2004, 2005; Whysner *et al.*, 2004). Bioactivation of hydroquinone by myeloperoxydase to 1,4-benzoquinone enhances topoisomerase-II inhibition (Eastmond *et al.*, 2005). Indeed, 1,4-benzoquinone was shown to be a more potent topoisomerase-II inhibitor than hydroquinone in a cell-free assay system (Hutt & Kalf, 1996; Baker *et al.*, 2001). These findings demonstrate that benzene through its reactive quinone metabolites can inhibit topoisomerase II and probably cause leukaemias with chromosome translocations and inversions known to be generated by topoisomerase-II inhibitors, including AMLs harbouring t(21q22), t(15;17) and inv(16) in a manner consistent with pathways IV and V (Andersen *et al.*, 2002; Voltz *et al.* 2004; Mistry *et al.*, 2005; Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2007, 2008). The evidence for rearrangements of the mixed lineage leukaemia (*MLL*) gene through t(11q23) via pathway III in benzene-induced leukaemia is less convincing but may occur through an apoptotic pathway (Vaughan *et al.*, 2005).

AML can arise de novo via pathways VII and VIII without apparent chromosome abnormalities, but molecular analysis has revealed many genetic changes in these apparently normal leukemias, including mutations of *NPM1, AML1, FLT3, RAS* and *C/EBPα*. (Fig. 4.2; Cuneo *et al.*, 2002; Falini *et al.*, 2007; Mardis *et al.*, 2009). More work is needed to clarify the ability of benzene and its metabolites to produce mutations of the type found in these leukaemias, along with those found in Ph-negative MPDs such as Janus kinase 2 (*JAK2*), and somatic mutations in the ten-eleven translocation 2 (*TET2*) oncogene, which are found in about 15% of patients with various myeloid cancers (Delhommeau *et al.*, 2009). One potential mechanism for the induction of such mutations is through the generation of reactive oxygen species.

The ability of benzene and/or its metabolites to induce epigenetic changes related to the development of leukaemia, such as altered methylation status of *C/EBPα,* is unclear at this time. Bollati *et al.* (2007) reported that hypermethylation in *p15* (+0.35%; $P = 0.018$) and hypomethylation in the *MAGE-1* gene (encoding the human melanoma antigen) (–0.49%; $P = 0.049$) were associated with very low exposures to benzene (~22 ppb) in healthy subjects including gas-station attendants and traffic-police officers, although the corresponding effects on methylation were very low. Further study of the role epigenetics in the haematotoxicity and carcinogenicity of benzene is warranted, including studies of aberrant DNA methylation and altered microRNA expression.

While benzene and its metabolites are clearly capable of producing multiple forms of chromosomal mutation, including various translocations, deletions and aneuploidies, these are usually insufficient as a single event to explain the induction of leukaemia (Guo *et al.*, 2008; Lobato *et al.*, 2008). Other secondary events, such as specific gene mutations and/or other chromosome changes, are usually required (Guo *et al.*, 2008; Lobato *et al.*, 2008). Thus, benzene-induced leukaemia probably begins as a mutagenic event in the stem cell or progenitor cell and subsequent genomic instability allows for sufficient mutations to be acquired in a relatively short time. Studies have shown that the benzene metabolite hydroquinone is similar to ionizing radiation in that it induces genomic instability in the bone marrow of susceptible mice (Gowans *et al.*, 2005). Recent findings showing the importance of genes involved in DNA repair and maintenance – such as the *WRN* gene encoding the Werner syndrome protein – in determining genetic susceptibility to the toxicity of benzene also support this mechanism (Shen *et al.*, 2006; Lan *et al.*, 2009; Ren *et al.*, 2009).

Haematotoxic effects may also contribute to leukaemogenesis from benzene. Haematopoietic stem cells occupy an ordered environment in the bone marrow and interact with supportive stromal cells and mature lymphocytes. Haematotoxic damage to this ordered stem-cell microenvironment most likely allows for the clonal expansion of the leukaemic stem cells. This dual mode of action for benzene fits with the known ability of benzene metabolites to induce chromosomal mutations and genomic instability in blood stem cells and progenitor cells, and with the fact that haematotoxicity is associated with an increased risk for benzene-induced haematopoietic malignancies (Rothman *et al.*, 1997).

Thus, exposure to benzene can lead to multiple alterations that contribute to the leukaemogenic process. Benzene may act by causing chromosomal damage (aneuploidy, deletions and translocations) through inhibition of topoisomerase II, disruption of microtubules and other mechanisms; by generating oxygen radicals that lead to point mutations, strand breaks and oxidative stress; by causing immune system dysfunction that leads to decreased immunosurveillance (Cho, 2008; Li *et al.*, 2009); by altering stem-cell pool sizes through haematotoxic effects (Irons *et al.*, 1992); by inhibiting gap-junction intercellular communication (Rivedal & Witz, 2005); and by altering DNA methylation and perhaps specific microRNAs. This multimodal mechanism of action for benzene suggests that the effects of benzene on the leukaemogenic process are not singular and can occur throughout the process.

4.2.3 Potential mechanisms of benzene-induced acute lymphocytic leukaemia (ALL) development

Evidence of an association between exposure to benzene from air pollution and childhood leukaemia is growing. The most common form of childhood leukaemia is ALL, with AML being less common at around 15% of the incidence of ALL. The opposite is true for adults where the ratio is reversed, with AML being predominant. Reasons for this difference were suggested to be age-related defects in lymphopoiesis (Signer *et al.*, 2007). Studies with a murine model of chronic myeloid leukaemia – an adult-onset malignancy that arises from transformation of haematopoietic stem cells by the breakpoint cluster region-Ableson (*BCR-ABL*^{P210}) oncogene – demonstrated that young bone-marrow cells transformed with *BCR-ABL*^{P210} initiated both MPD and B-lymphoid leukaemia, whereas *BCR-ABL*^{P210}-transformed old bone-marrow cells recapitulated the human disease by inducing MPD with rare lymphoid involvement (Signer *et al.*, 2007). Thus, if benzene were to induce a leukaemia-related oncogenic mutation in young bone-marrow cells, it could produce either an MPD that transformed to AML, or a B-cell ALL, whereas exposure in an adult would have only a very limited chance of producing ALL.

The long-standing distinction between AML and ALL also has become somewhat blurred in recent years. Both forms of leukaemia arise in pluripotential stem cells or early progenitor cells in the bone marrow. Either disease can occur under conditions that formerly seemed restricted to AML. These include ALL occurring in the acute leukaemia seen in Down Syndrome (Kearney *et al.*, 2009); in secondary leukaemias related to chemotherapy (Lee *et al.*, 2009); and in the blast crisis of chronic myelogenous leukaemia (Calabretta & Perrotti, 2004). Similarly, the Philadelphia chromosome, long considered to be specific to chronic myelogenous leukaemia, is also the most common chromosome rearrangement in adult ALL (Ravandi & Kebriaei, 2009).

Since the genotoxic action of benzene metabolites on pluripotent precursor cells in the bone marrow appears promiscuous, producing multiple genetic abnormalities, it seems probable that exposure to benzene can initiate both AML and ALL by causing the chromosomal rearrangements

and mutations that are on the causal pathway to these malignancies. For childhood ALL and AML it has been shown that the disease is usually initiated *in utero*, since leukaemic translocations and other genetic changes have been detected in blood spots collected at birth (Wiemels *et al.*, 1999; Wiemels *et al.*, 2002; Greaves & Wiemels, 2003; McHale *et al.*, 2003). Thus, exposure of the mother, and perhaps even the father, to benzene could be just as important as exposure of the child in producing childhood AML and ALL, as has been suggested in several epidemiological studies (van Steensel-Moll *et al.*, 1985; McKinney *et al.*, 1991; Shu *et al.*, 1999; Scélo *et al.*, 2009). Supporting this hypothesis is an animal study demonstrating that *in utero* exposure to benzene increases the frequency of micronuclei and DNA recombination events in haematopoietic tissue of fetal and post-natal mice (Lau *et al.*, 2009). Another study showed that oxygen radicals play a key role in the development of *in utero*-initiated benzene toxicity through disruption of haematopoietic cell-signalling pathways (Badham & Winn, 2010). These studies support the idea that genotoxic and non-genotoxic events following exposure to benzene may be initiators of childhood leukaemia *in utero*.

4.2.4 Mechanisms of lymphoma development

(a) General

Lymphoma is a cancer of the immune system that includes over 40 malignant diseases originating from B- and T-lymphocytes and natural killer (NK) cells (Swerdlow *et al.*, 2008). It is therefore not surprising that functional disorders of immune-system cells are associated with a risk for malignant transformation. Immune deficiency is one of the strongest known risk factors for non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL) (Hartge & Smith, 2007). The risk for NHL increases with the degree of immune deficiency, and there is no evidence of a threshold (Grulich *et al.*, 2007). Thus, even modest immunosuppression, especially at the local level, may increase the risk for lymphoma.

It is well recognized that lymphomas, like other tumours, develop according to a multistep pathogenic process (Smith *et al.*, 2004). Clonal progression of an initiated cell to a clone of highly malignant cells is well documented. Natural selection of clones already present within oligoclonal expansions gives rise to true monoclonal lymphomas. Thus, it is possible to make generalizations about the type of molecular mechanism responsible for each of the stages involved in lymphomagenesis. For example, a cell may become initiated and genetically unstable through errors in recombination and DNA repair, which could be spontaneous or induced by an exogenous chemical agent. Other early molecular events often inhibit apoptosis and lead to the expansion of an intrinsically genetically unstable population of cells, which is at risk for additional genetic events and tumour progression. An example is the t(14;18) chromosome translocation associated with B-cell lymphoma 2 gene *BCL2* dysregulation, which inhibits apoptosis (Cimmino *et al.*, 2005; Thomadaki & Scorilas, 2006). Normally, one of the key protectors against the selection and progression of malignant clones of cells into full-blown lymphoma is local immunosurveillance in which activated T-cells kill the mutated clones. It is generally accepted that if this immunosurveillance is no longer intact, e.g. in immuno-suppressed individuals, then the malignant cells divide and grow rapidly, collecting more mutations to become aggressive, rapidly growing tumours.

(b) Mechanisms of benzene-induced lymphoma development

From the discussion above, there are at least two probable mechanisms by which exposure to benzene could enhance the incidence of lymphoma, i.e. by inducing chromosome rearrangements associated with NHL, and through

immunosuppression leading to decreased immunosurveillance.

Benzene is well known to produce multiple cytogenetic abnormalities in lymphocytes (Tough & Brown, 1965; Forni, 1971, 1979; Picciano, 1979; Smith & Zhang, 1998; Zhang *et al.*, 2002). Further, benzene induces specific chromosomal changes associated with NHL in human lymphocytes (Zhang *et al.*, 2007). Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) analysis showed increased levels of t(14;18) and del(6q) in benzene-exposed workers, but the higher levels of t(14;18) could not be confirmed in a follow-up study by use of real time-PCR (polymerase chain reaction) (McHale *et al.*, 2008). This may be because the PCR method only detected 50% of t(14;18) translocations or that the FISH method detects non-functional as well as functional translocations. Reduced immunosurveillance is another potential mechanism of NHL induction by benzene. The importance of T-cell immunosurveillance in preventing B-cell neoplasia is well established and is carried out by activated cytotoxic T lymphocytes. The toxic effects of benzene on T-cells is well documented and there appears to be a selective effect on $CD4^+$ T-lymphocytes resulting in a lowering of the $CD4^+/CD8^+$ ratio (Lan *et al.*, 2004). This immunosuppressive pattern is similar to the early onset of acquired immuno-deficiency syndrome (AIDS), and although it is not as severe it may be associated with an increased risk for NHL (Grulich *et al.*, 2007). Thus, benzene, like other leukaemogens including alkylating agents, topoisomerase inhibitors, and ionizing radiation, may cause NHL through a combination of immunosuppression and DNA double-strand break induction that leads to illegitimate recombination and chromosome rearrangements in lymphoid cells.

Thus, the biological plausibility of benzene as a cause of lymphoproliferative disorders has been strengthened in recent years. There are additional studies demonstrating that benzene produces lymphomas in laboratory animals, and a recent study showing that it does so simultaneously with AML in *Tp53*-deficient mice (Kawasaki *et al.*, 2009). Multiple studies show that it produces genotoxicity in the lymphocytes of exposed humans. Accordingly, there is considerable support for the notion that it is biologically plausible for benzene to cause human lymphatic tumours.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of benzene. Benzene causes acute myeloid leukaemia/acute non-lymphocytic leukaemia.

Also, a positive association has been observed between exposure to benzene and acute lymphocytic leukaemia, chronic lymphocytic leukaemia, multiple myeloma, and non-Hodgkin lymphoma.

There is *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of benzene in experimental animals.

There is strong evidence that benzene metabolites, acting alone or in concert, produce multiple genotoxic effects at the level of the pluripotent haematopoietic stem cell resulting in chromosomal changes in humans consistent with those seen in haematopoietic cancer. In multiple studies in different occupational populations in many countries over more than three decades a variety of genotoxic changes, including chromosomal abnormalities, have been found in the lymphocytes of workers exposed to benzene.

Benzene is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Abdulkarim K, Girodon F, Johansson P *et al.* (2009). AML transformation in 56 patients with Ph- MPD in two well defined populations. *Eur J Haematol*, 82: 106–111. doi:10.1111/j.1600-0609.2008.01163.x PMID:19134023

Adegoke OJ, Blair A, Shu XO *et al.* (2003). Occupational history and exposure and the risk of adult leukemia in

Shanghai. *Ann Epidemiol*, 13: 485–494. doi:10.1016/S1047-2797(03)00037-1 PMID:12932623

Andersen MK, Larson RA, Mauritzson N *et al.* (2002). Balanced chromosome abnormalities inv(16) and t(15;17) in therapy-related myelodysplastic syndromes and acute leukemia: report from an international workshop. *Genes Chromosomes Cancer*, 33: 395–400. doi:10.1002/gcc.10043 PMID:11921273

ATSDR (1997). *Toxicological Profile for Benzene*. Update (Final Report), (NTIS Accession No. PB98–101157). Atlanta, GA: Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, pp. 459

ATSDR (2007). *Toxicological Profile for Benzene*. Atlanta, GA: Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, pp. 438

Badham HJ & Winn LM (2010). In utero exposure to benzene disrupts fetal hematopoietic progenitor cell growth via reactive oxygen species. *Toxicol Sci*, 113: 207–215. doi:10.1093/toxsci/kfp242 PMID:19812361

Baker RK, Kurz EU, Pyatt DW *et al.* (2001). Benzene metabolites antagonize etoposide-stabilized cleavable complexes of DNA topoisomerase IIalpha. *Blood*, 98: 830–833. doi:10.1182/blood.V98.3.830 PMID:11468185

Bandele OJ & Osheroff N (2009). Cleavage of plasmid DNA by eukaryotic topoisomerase II. *Methods Mol Biol*, 582: 39–47. doi:10.1007/978-1-60761-340-4_4 PMID:19763940

Bechtold WE, Willis JK, Sun JD *et al.* (1992). Biological markers of exposure to benzene: S-phenylcysteine in albumin. *Carcinogenesis*, 13: 1217–1220. doi:10.1093/carcin/13.7.1217 PMID:1638689

Björk J, Albin M, Welinder H *et al.* (2001). Are occupational, hobby, or lifestyle exposures associated with Philadelphia chromosome positive chronic myeloid leukaemia? *Occup Environ Med*, 58: 722–727. doi:10.1136/oem.58.11.722 PMID:11600728

Blair A, Zheng T, Linos A *et al.* (2001). Occupation and leukemia: a population-based case-control study in Iowa and Minnesota. *Am J Ind Med*, 40: 3–14. doi:10.1002/ajim.1066 PMID:11439392

Blanchard KT, Ball DJ, Holden HE *et al.* (1998). Dermal carcinogenicity in transgenic mice: relative responsiveness of male and female hemizygous and homozygous Tg.AC mice to 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-acetate (TPA) and benzene. *Toxicol Pathol*, 26: 541–547. doi:10.1177/019262339802600410 PMID:9715513

Bloemen LJ, Youk A, Bradley TD *et al.* (2004). Lymphohaematopoietic cancer risk among chemical workers exposed to benzene. *Occup Environ Med*, 61: 270–274. doi:10.1136/oem.2003.007013 PMID:14985523

Bodell WJ, Pathak DN, Lévay G *et al.* (1996). Investigation of the DNA adducts formed in B6C3F1 mice treated with benzene: implications for molecular dosimetry. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 61189–1193. PMID:9118892

Bollati V, Baccarelli A, Hou L *et al.* (2007). Changes in DNA methylation patterns in subjects exposed to low-dose benzene. *Cancer Res*, 67: 876–880. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-2995 PMID:17283117

Bolstad-Johnson DM, Burgess JL, Crutchfield CD *et al.* (2000). Characterization of firefighter exposures during fire overhaul. *AIHAJ*, 61: 636–641. doi:10.1202/0002-8894(2000)061<0636:COFEDF>2.0.CO;2 PMID:11071414

Brugnone F, Perbellini L, Romeo L *et al.* (1998). Benzene in environmental air and human blood. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 71: 554–559. doi:10.1007/s004200050323 PMID:9860165

Burridge E (2007). Chemical Profile: Benzene. *ICIS Chemical Business (Europe/Middle East/Asia)*, **2**(57): 36

Calabretta B & Perrotti D (2004). The biology of CML blast crisis. *Blood*, 103: 4010–4022. doi:10.1182/blood-2003-12-4111 PMID:14982876

Capleton AC & Levy LS (2005). An overview of occupational benzene exposures and occupational exposure limits in Europe and North America. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 43–53. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.007 PMID:15935799

CAREX (1999). Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf

Carrer P, Maroni M, Alcini D *et al.* (2000). Assessment through environmental and biological measurements of total daily exposure to volatile organic compounds of office workers in Milan, Italy. *Indoor Air*, 10: 258–268. doi:10.1034/j.1600-0668.2000.010004258.x PMID:11089330

Caux C, O'Brien C, Viau C (2002). Determination of firefighter exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and benzene during fire fighting using measurement of biological indicators. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 17: 379–386. doi:10.1080/10473220252864987 PMID:12018402

Chen H & Eastmond DA (1995). Topoisomerase inhibition by phenolic metabolites: a potential mechanism for benzene's clastogenic effects. *Carcinogenesis*, 16: 2301–2307. doi:10.1093/carcin/16.10.2301 PMID:7586126

Cho JY (2008). Suppressive effect of hydroquinone, a benzene metabolite, on in vitro inflammatory responses mediated by macrophages, monocytes, and lymphocytes. *Mediators Inflamm*, 2008: 298010 doi:10.1155/2008/298010 PMID:19148301

Cimmino A, Calin GA, Fabbri M *et al.* (2005). miR-15 and miR-16 induce apoptosis by targeting BCL2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*, 102: 13944–13949. doi:10.1073/pnas.0506654102 PMID:16166262

Cocco P, t'Mannetje A, Fadda D *et al.* (2010). Occupational exposure to solvents and risk of lymphoma subtypes: results from the Epilymph case-control study. *Occup*

Environ Med, 67: 341–347. doi:10.1136/oem.2009.046839 PMID:20447988

Collingwood KW, Raabe GK, Wong O (1996). An updated cohort mortality study of workers at a northeastern United States petroleum refinery. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 68: 277–288. doi:10.1007/BF00409412 PMID:8832292

Collins JJ, Ireland B, Buckley CF, Shepperly D (2003). Lymphohaematopoeitic cancer mortality among workers with benzene exposure. *Occup Environ Med*, 60: 676–679. doi:10.1136/oem.60.9.676 PMID:12937190

CONCAWE (1986). Review of the European Oil Industry Benzene Exposure Data, Report 3/86. Den Haag, The Netherlands: CONCAWE

CONCAWE (2000). A Review of European Gasoline Exposure Data for the Period 1993–1998, Report 2/00. Brussels, Belgium: CONCAWE

CONCAWE (2002). A Survey of European Gasoline Exposures for the Period 1999–2001, Report 9/02. Brussels, Belgium: CONCAWE

Consonni D, Pesatori AC, Tironi A *et al.* (1999). Mortality study in an Italian oil refinery: extension of the follow-up. *Am J Ind Med*, 35: 287–294. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199903)35:3<287::AID-AJIM9>3.0.CO;2-F PMID:9987562

Costantini AS, Benvenuti A, Vineis P *et al.* (2008). Risk of leukemia and multiple myeloma associated with exposure to benzene and other organic solvents: evidence from the Italian Multicenter Case-control study. *Am J Ind Med*, 51: 803–811. doi:10.1002/ajim.20592 PMID:18651579

Crebelli R, Tomei F, Zijno A *et al.* (2001). Exposure to benzene in urban workers: environmental and biological monitoring of traffic police in Rome. *Occup Environ Med*, 58: 165–171. doi:10.1136/oem.58.3.165 PMID:11171929

Cronkite EP, Bullis JE, Inoue T, Drew RT (1984). Benzene inhalation produces leukemia in mice. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 75: 358–361. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(84)90219-9 PMID:6474468

Cronkite EP, Drew RT, Inoue T *et al.* (1989). Hematotoxicity and carcinogenicity of inhaled benzene. *Environ Health Perspect*, 82: 97–108.

Crump KS (1994). Risk of benzene-induced leukemia: a sensitivity analysis of the pliofilm cohort with additional follow-up and new exposure estimates. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 42: 219–242. doi:10.1080/15287399409531875 PMID:8207757

Cuneo A, Bigoni R, Cavazzini F *et al.* (2002). Incidence and significance of cryptic chromosome aberrations detected by fluorescence in situ hybridization in acute myeloid leukemia with normal karyotype. *Leukemia*, 16: 1745–1751. doi:10.1038/sj.leu.2402605 PMID:12200689

Delhommeau F, Dupont S, Della Valle V *et al.* (2009). Mutation in TET2 in myeloid cancers. *N Engl J Med*, 360: 2289–2301. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa0810069 PMID:19474426

Deweese JE & Osheroff N (2009). The DNA cleavage reaction of topoisomerase II: wolf in sheep's clothing. *Nucleic Acids Res*, 37: 738–748. doi:10.1093/nar/gkn937 PMID:19042970

Divine BJ, Hartman CM, Wendt JK (1999b). Update of the Texaco mortality study 1947–93: part II. Analysis of specific causes of death for white men employed in refining, research and petrochemicals. *Occup Environ Med*, 56: 174–180. doi:10.1136/oem.56.3.174 PMID:10448326

Dixon-McIver A, East P, Mein CA *et al.* (2008). Distinctive patterns of microRNA expression associated with karyotype in acute myeloid leukaemia. *PLoS ONE*, 3: e2141 doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0002141 PMID:18478077

Dryver E, Brandt L, Kauppinen T, Olsson H (2004). Occupational exposures and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in Southern Sweden. *Int J Occup Environ Health*, 10: 13–21. PMID:15070021

Duarte-Davidson R, Courage C, Rushton L, Levy L (2001). Benzene in the environment: an assessment of the potential risks to the health of the population. *Occup Environ Med*, 58: 2–13. doi:10.1136/oem.58.1.2 PMID:11119628

Eastmond DA (1993). Induction of micronuclei and aneuploidy by the quinone-forming agents benzene and o-phenylphenol. *Toxicol Lett*, 67: 105–118. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(93)90049-4 PMID:8451753

Eastmond DA, Mondrala ST, Hasegawa L (2005). Topoisomerase II inhibition by myeloperoxidase-activated hydroquinone: a potential mechanism underlying the genotoxic and carcinogenic effects of benzene. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 207–216. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.024 PMID:15935818

Eastmond DA, Schuler M, Frantz C *et al.* (2001). Characterization and mechanisms of chromosomal alterations induced by benzene in mice and humans. *Res Rep Health Eff Inst*, 103: 1–68, discussion 69–80. PMID:11504146

Egeghy PP, Hauf-Cabalo L, Gibson R, Rappaport SM (2003). Benzene and naphthalene in air and breath as indicators of exposure to jet fuel. *Occup Environ Med*, 60: 969–976. doi:10.1136/oem.60.12.969 PMID:14634191

Fabbro-Peray P, Daures JP, Rossi JF (2001). Environmental risk factors for non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: a population-based case-control study in Languedoc-Roussillon, France. *Cancer Causes Control*, 12: 201–212. doi:10.1023/A:1011274922701 PMID:11405325

Falini B, Nicoletti I, Martelli MF, Mecucci C (2007). Acute myeloid leukemia carrying cytoplasmic/mutated nucleophosmin (NPMc+ AML): biologic and clinical features. *Blood*, 109: 874–885. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-07-012252 PMID:17008539

Farris GM, Everitt JI, Irons RD, Popp JA (1993). Carcinogenicity of inhaled benzene in CBA mice.

Fundam Appl Toxicol, 20: 503–507. doi:10.1006/faat.1993.1061 PMID:8314465

Fazi F, Rosa A, Fatica A *et al.* (2005). A minicircuitry comprised of microRNA-223 and transcription factors NFI-A and C/EBPalpha regulates human granulopoiesis. *Cell*, 123: 819–831. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2005.09.023 PMID:16325577

Felix CA (2001). Leukemias related to treatment with DNA topoisomerase II inhibitors. *Med Pediatr Oncol*, 36: 525–535. doi:10.1002/mpo.1125 PMID:11340607

Forni A (1971). Chromosome studies in workers exposed to benzene or toluene or both. *Arch Environ Health*, 22: 373–378. PMID:5162138

Forni A (1979). Chromosome changes and benzene exposure. A review. *Rev Environ Health*, 3: 5–17. PMID:395589

Frantz CE, Chen H, Eastmond DA (1996). Inhibition of human topoisomerase II in vitro by bioactive benzene metabolites. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 61319–1323. PMID:9118913

French JE & Saulnier M (2000). Benzene leukemogenesis: an environmental carcinogen-induced tissue-specific model of neoplasia using genetically altered mouse models. *J Toxicol Environ Health A*, 61: 377–379. doi:10.1080/00984100050166389 PMID:11086942

Fröhling S & Döhner H (2004). Disruption of C/EBPalpha function in acute myeloid leukemia. *N Engl J Med*, 351: 2370–2372. doi:10.1056/NEJMp048241 PMID:15575052

Fu H, Demers PA, Costantini AS *et al.* (1996). Cancer mortality among shoe manufacturing workers: an analysis of two cohorts. *Occup Environ Med*, 53: 394–398. doi:10.1136/oem.53.6.394 PMID:8758034

Fung J, Hoffmann MJ, Kim DD, Snyder R (2004). Inhibition of topoisomerase II in 32D.3(G) cells by hydroquinone is associated with cell death. *J Appl Toxicol*, 24: 183–188. doi:10.1002/jat.960 PMID:15211611

Fustinoni S, Buratti M, Giampiccolo R, Colombi A (1995). Biological and environmental monitoring of exposure to airborne benzene and other aromatic hydrocarbons in Milan traffic wardens. *Toxicol Lett*, 77: 387–392. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(95)03322-X PMID:7618166

Gaskell M, McLuckie KI, Farmer PB (2005). Genotoxicity of the benzene metabolites para-benzoquinone and hydroquinone. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 267–270. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.034 PMID:15935826

Gérin M, Siemiatycki J, Désy M, Krewski D (1998). Associations between several sites of cancer and occupational exposure to benzene, toluene, xylene, and styrene: results of a case-control study in Montreal. *Am J Ind Med*, 34: 144–156. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199808)34:2<144::AID-AJIM7>3.0.CO;2-X PMID:9651624

Glass DC, Gray CN, Jolley DJ *et al.* (2003). Leukemia risk associated with low-level benzene exposure. *Epidemiology*, 14: 569–577. doi:10.1097/01.ede.0000082001.05563.e0 PMID:14501272

Gobba F, Rovesti S, Borella P *et al.* (1997). Inter-individual variability of benzene metabolism to *trans,trans*-muconic acid and its implications in the biological monitoring of occupational exposure. *Sci Total Environ*, 199: 41–48. doi:10.1016/S0048-9697(97)05480-6 PMID:9200846

Goldstein BD, Snyder CA, Laskin S *et al.* (1982). Myelogenous leukemia in rodents inhaling benzene. *Toxicol Lett*, 13: 169–173. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(82)90206-5 PMID:6959383

Gowans ID, Lorimore SA, McIlrath JM, Wright EG (2005). Genotype-dependent induction of transmissible chromosomal instability by gamma-radiation and the benzene metabolite hydroquinone. *Cancer Res*, 65: 3527–3530. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-4242 PMID:15867342

Greaves MF & Wiemels J (2003). Origins of chromosome translocations in childhood leukaemia. *Natl Rev*, 3: 639–649.

Grulich AE, Vajdic CM, Cozen W (2007). Altered immunity as a risk factor for non-Hodgkin lymphoma. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 16: 405–408. doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-06-1070 PMID:17337643

Guénel P, Imbernon E, Chevalier A *et al.* (2002). Leukemia in relation to occupational exposures to benzene and other agents: a case-control study nested in a cohort of gas and electric utility workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 42: 87–97. doi:10.1002/ajim.10090 PMID:12125084

Gun RT, Pratt N, Ryan P, Roder D (2006). Update of mortality and cancer incidence in the Australian petroleum industry cohort. *Occup Environ Med*, 63: 476–481. doi:10.1136/oem.2005.023796 PMID:16698808

Guo W, Lasky JL, Chang CJ *et al.* (2008). Multi-genetic events collaboratively contribute to Pten-null leukaemia stem-cell formation. *Nature*, 453: 529–533. doi:10.1038/nature06933 PMID:18463637

Hackanson B, Bennett KL, Brena RM *et al.* (2008). Epigenetic modification of CCAAT/enhancer binding protein alpha expression in acute myeloid leukemia. *Cancer Res*, 68: 3142–3151. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-0483 PMID:18451139

Hansch C, Leo A, Hoekman D (1995). *Exploring QSAR: Hydrophobic, Electronic, and Steric Constants*. Washington, DC: American Chemical Society, p. 18.

Hartge P & Smith MT (2007). Environmental and behavioral factors and the risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 16: 367–368. doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-07-0031 PMID:17344463

Hayes RB, Yin SN, Dosemeci M *et al.* (1996). Mortality among benzene-exposed workers in China. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 61349–1352. PMID:9118919

Hayes RB, Yin SN, Dosemeci M *et al.* Chinese Academy of Preventive Medicine–National Cancer Institute Benzene Study Group (1997). Benzene and the

dose-related incidence of hematologic neoplasms in China. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 89: 1065–1071. doi:10.1093/jnci/89.14.1065 PMID:9230889

Henderson AP, Bleasdale C, Delaney K *et al.* (2005). Evidence for the formation of Michael adducts from reactions of (E,E)-muconaldehyde with glutathione and other thiols. *Bioorg Chem*, 33: 363–373. doi:10.1016/j.bioorg.2005.05.004 PMID:16005934

Hirabayashi Y & Inoue T (2009). Aryl hydrocarbon receptor biology and xenobiotic responses in hematopoietic progenitor cells. *Biochem Pharmacol*, 77: 521–535. doi:10.1016/j.bcp.2008.09.030 PMID:18940184

Hirabayashi Y, Yoon BI, Li GX *et al.* (2008). Benzene-induced hematopoietic toxicity transmitted by AhR in wild-type mouse and nullified by repopulation with AhR-deficient bone marrow cells: time after benzene treatment and recovery. *Chemosphere*, 73: SupplS290–S294. doi:10.1016/j.chemosphere.2007.12.033 PMID:18514254

Holden HE, Stoll RE, Spalding JW, Tennant RW (1998). Hemizygous Tg.AC transgenic mouse as a potential alternative to the two-year mouse carcinogenicity bioassay: evaluation of husbandry and housing factors. *J Appl Toxicol*, 18: 19–24. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1099-1263(199801/02)18:1<19::AID-JAT464>3.0.CO;2-Q PMID:9526830

Holecková B, Piesová E, Sivikova K (2004). Dianovskỳ J. Chromosomal aberrations in humans induced by benzene. *Ann Agric Environ Med*, 11: 175–179. PMID:15627321

Hotz P, Carbonnelle P, Haufroid V *et al.* (1997). Biological monitoring of vehicle mechanics and other workers exposed to low concentrations of benzene. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 70: 29–40. doi:10.1007/s004200050183 PMID:9258705

Huebner WW, Wojcik NC, Rosamilia K *et al.* (2004). Mortality updates (1970–1997) of two refinery/petrochemical plant cohorts at Baton Rouge, Louisiana, and Baytown, Texas. *J Occup Environ Med*, 46: 1229–1245. PMID:15591975

Huff JE, Haseman JK, DeMarini DM *et al.* (1989). Multiple-site carcinogenicity of benzene in Fischer 344 rats and B6C3F1 mice. *Environ Health Perspect*, 82: 125–163. PMID:2676495

Hutt AM & Kalf GF (1996). Inhibition of human DNA topoisomerase II by hydroquinone and p-benzoquinone, reactive metabolites of benzene. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 61265–1269. PMID:9118903

IARC (1982). Some industrial chemicals and dyestuffs. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 29: 1–398. PMID:6957379

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

Infante PF (2006). Benzene exposure and multiple myeloma: a detailed meta-analysis of benzene cohort studies. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*, 1076: 90–109. doi:10.1196/annals.1371.081 PMID:17119195

Infante PF, Rinsky RA, Wagoner JK, Young RJ (1977). Leukaemia in benzene workers. *Lancet*, 2: 76–78. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(77)90074-5 PMID:69157

Irons RD & Stillman WS (1996). The process of leukemogenesis. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 61239–1246. PMID:9118899

Irons RD, Stillman WS, Colagiovanni DB, Henry VA (1992). Synergistic action of the benzene metabolite hydroquinone on myelopoietic stimulating activity of granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor in vitro. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*, 89: 3691–3695. doi:10.1073/pnas.89.9.3691 PMID:1570288

Iskander K & Jaiswal AK (2005). Quinone oxidoreductases in protection against myelogenous hyperplasia and benzene toxicity. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 147–157. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.019 PMID:15935811

Jankovic J, Jones W, Burkhart J, Noonan G (1991). Environmental study of firefighters. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 35: 581–602. doi:10.1093/annhyg/35.6.581 PMID:1768008

Javelaud B, Vian L, Molle R *et al.* (1998). Benzene exposure in car mechanics and road tanker drivers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 71: 277–283. doi:10.1007/s004200050281 PMID:9638485

Johnson ES, Langård S, Lin Y-S (2007). A critique of benzene exposure in the general population. *Sci Total Environ*, 374: 183–198. doi:10.1016/j.scitotenv.2006.11.045 PMID:17261327

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Kawasaki Y, Hirabayashi Y, Kaneko T *et al.* (2009). Benzene-induced hematopoietic neoplasms including myeloid leukemia in Trp53-deficient C57BL/6 and C3H/He mice. *Toxicol Sci*, 110: 293–306. doi:10.1093/toxsci/kfp107 PMID:19478238

Kearney L, Gonzalez De Castro D, Yeung J *et al.* (2009). Specific JAK2 mutation (JAK2R683) and multiple gene deletions in Down syndrome acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Blood*, 113: 646–648. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-08-170928 PMID:18927438

Kim S, Vermeulen R, Waidyanatha S *et al.* (2006a). Using urinary biomarkers to elucidate dose-related patterns of human benzene metabolism. *Carcinogenesis*, 27: 772–781. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgi297 PMID:16339183

Kim S, Vermeulen R, Waidyanatha S *et al.* (2006b). Modeling human metabolism of benzene following occupational and environmental exposures. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 15: 2246–2252. doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-06-0262 PMID:17119053

Kim SY, Choi JK, Cho YH *et al.* (2004). Chromosomal aberrations in workers exposed to low levels of

benzene: association with genetic polymorphisms. *Pharmacogenetics*, 14: 453–463. doi:10.1097/01.fpc.0000114751.08559.7b PMID:15226677

Kirkeleit J, Riise T, Bråtveit M, Moen BE (2008). Increased risk of acute myelogenous leukemia and multiple myeloma in a historical cohort of upstream petroleum workers exposed to crude oil. *Cancer Causes Control*, 19: 13–23. doi:10.1007/s10552-007-9065-x PMID:17906934

Kirschner M (2009). Chemical Profile: Benzene. *ICIS Chemical Business*, available at http://www.icis.com/Articles/2009/02/16/9192064/Chemical-profile-Benzene.html.

Kivistö H, Pekari K, Peltonen K *et al.* (1997). Biological monitoring of exposure to benzene in the production of benzene and in a cokery. *Sci Total Environ*, 199: 49–63. doi:10.1016/S0048-9697(97)05481-8 PMID:9200847

La Vecchia C, Negri E, D'Avanzo B, Franceschi S (1989). Occupation and lymphoid neoplasms. *Br J Cancer*, 60: 385–388. doi:10.1038/bjc.1989.290 PMID:2789947

Lamm SH, Engel A, Byrd DM (2005). Non-Hodgkin lymphoma and benzene exposure: a systematic literature review. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 231–237. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.027 PMID:15885679

Lan Q, Zhang L, Li G *et al.* (2004). Hematotoxicity in workers exposed to low levels of benzene. *Science*, 306: 1774–1776. doi:10.1126/science.1102443 PMID:15576619

Lan Q, Zhang L, Shen M *et al.* (2009). Large-scale evaluation of candidate genes identifies associations between DNA repair and genomic maintenance and development of benzene hematotoxicity. *Carcinogenesis*, 30: 50–58. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgn249 PMID:18978339

Larson RA & Le Beau MM (2005). Therapy-related myeloid leukaemia: a model for leukemogenesis in humans. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 187–195. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.023 PMID:15935816

Lau A, Belanger CL, Winn LM (2009). In utero and acute exposure to benzene: investigation of DNA double-strand breaks and DNA recombination in mice. *Mutat Res*, 676: 74–82. PMID:19486867

Lee SG, Choi JR, Kim JS *et al.* (2009). Therapy-related acute lymphoblastic leukemia with t(9;22)(q34;q11.2):a case study and review of the literature. *Cancer Genet Cytogenet*, 191: 51–54. doi:10.1016/j.cancergencyto.2009.02.002 PMID:19389510

Lewis RJ, Schnatter AR, Drummond I *et al.* (2003). Mortality and cancer morbidity in a cohort of Canadian petroleum workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 60: 918–928. doi:10.1136/oem.60.12.918 PMID:14634182

Ley TJ, Mardis ER, Ding L *et al.* (2008). DNA sequencing of a cytogenetically normal acute myeloid leukaemia genome. *Nature*, 456: 66–72. doi:10.1038/nature07485 PMID:18987736

Li B, Li YQ, Yang LJ *et al.* (2009). Decreased T-cell receptor excision DNA circles in peripheral blood mononuclear cells among benzene-exposed workers. *Int J Immunogenet*, 36: 107–111. doi:10.1111/j.1744-313X.2009.00832.x PMID:19228219

Liang Y-X, Wong O, Armstrong T *et al.* (2005). An overview of published benzene exposure data by industry in China, 1960–2003. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 55–64. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.009 PMID:15935800

Lide DR, editor (2008). *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp. 3–32.

Lindsey RH Jr, Bender RP, Osheroff N (2005). Effects of benzene metabolites on DNA cleavage mediated by human topoisomerase II alpha: 1,4-hydroquinone is a topoisomerase II poison. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 18: 761–770. doi:10.1021/tx049659z PMID:15833037

Lindsey RH Jr, Bromberg KD, Felix CA, Osheroff N (2004). 1,4-Benzoquinone is a topoisomerase II poison. *Biochemistry*, 43: 7563–7574. doi:10.1021/bi049756r PMID:15182198

Lobato MN, Metzler M, Drynan L *et al.* (2008). Modeling chromosomal translocations using conditional alleles to recapitulate initiating events in human leukemias. *J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr*, 39: 58–63. doi:10.1093/jncimonographs/lgn022 PMID:18648005

Long DJ 2nd, Gaikwad A, Multani A *et al.* (2002). Disruption of the NAD(P)H:quinone oxidoreductase 1 (NQO1) gene in mice causes myelogenous hyperplasia. *Cancer Res*, 62: 3030–3036. PMID:12036909

Lynge E, Andersen A, Nilsson R *et al.* (1997). Risk of cancer and exposure to gasoline vapors. *Am J Epidemiol*, 145: 449–458. PMID:9048519

Maltoni C, Ciliberti A, Cotti G *et al.* (1989). Benzene, an experimental multipotential carcinogen: results of the long-term bioassays performed at the Bologna Institute of Oncology. *Environ Health Perspect*, 82: 109–124. doi:10.1289/ehp.8982109 PMID:2792037

Maltoni C, Conti B, Cotti G (1983). Benzene: a multipotential carcinogen. Results of long-term bioassays performed at the Bologna Institute of Oncology. *Am J Ind Med*, 4: 589–630. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700040503 PMID:6353911

Maltoni C, Conti B, Cotti G, Belpoggi F (1985). Experimental studies on benzene carcinogenicity at the Bologna Institute of Oncology: current results and ongoing research. *Am J Ind Med*, 7: 415–446. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700070508 PMID:4003403

Maltoni C, Conti B, Perino G, Di Maio V (1988). Further evidence of benzene carcinogenicity. Results on Wistar rats and Swiss mice treated by ingestion. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*, 534: 1 Living in a C412–426. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.1988.tb30131.x PMID:3389671

Maltoni C, Conti B, Scarnato C (1982b). Squamous cell carcinomas of the oral cavity in Sprague-Dawley rats, following exposure to benzene by ingestion. First experimental demonstration. *Med Lav*, 73: 441–445. PMID:7177031

Maltoni C, Cotti G, Valgimigli L, Mandrioli A (1982a). Zymbal gland carcinomas in rats following exposure

to benzene by inhalation. *Am J Ind Med*, 3: 11–16. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700030104 PMID:7124739

Maltoni C, Cotti G, Valgimigli L, Mandrioli A (1982c). Hepatocarcinomas in Sprague-Dawley rats, following exposure to benzene by inhalation. First experimental demonstration. *Med Lav*, 73: 446–450. PMID:7177032

Maltoni C & Scarnato C (1979). First experimental demonstration of the carcinogenic effects of benzene; long-term bioassays on Sprague-Dawley rats by oral administration. *Med Lav*, 70: 352–357. PMID:554913

Marcucci G, Radmacher MD, Maharry K *et al.* (2008). MicroRNA expression in cytogenetically normal acute myeloid leukemia. *N Engl J Med*, 358: 1919–1928. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa074256 PMID:18450603

Mardis ER, Ding L, Dooling DJ *et al.* (2009). Recurring mutations found by sequencing an acute myeloid leukemia genome. *N Engl J Med*, 361: 1058–1066. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa0903840 PMID:19657110

Maronpot RR (1987). Ovarian toxicity and carcinogenicity in eight recent National Toxicology Program studies. *Environ Health Perspect*, 73: 125–130. doi:10.1289/ehp.8773125 PMID:3665857

McClendon AK & Osheroff N (2007). DNA topoisomerase II, genotoxicity, and cancer. *Mutat Res*, 623: 83–97. PMID:17681352

McDonald TA, Waidyanatha S, Rappaport SM (1993). Production of benzoquinone adducts with hemoglobin and bone-marrow proteins following administration of [13C6]benzene to rats. *Carcinogenesis*, 14: 1921–1925. doi:10.1093/carcin/14.9.1921 PMID:8403219

McHale CM, Lan Q, Corso C *et al.* (2008). Chromosome translocations in workers exposed to benzene. *J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr*, 39: 74–77. doi:10.1093/jncimonographs/lgn010 PMID:18648008

McHale CM, Wiemels JL, Zhang L *et al.* (2003). Prenatal origin of childhood acute myeloid leukemias harboring chromosomal rearrangements t(15;17) and inv(16). *Blood*, 101: 4640–4641. doi:10.1182/blood-2003-01-0313 PMID:12756163

McKinney PA, Alexander FE, Cartwright RA, Parker L (1991). Parental occupations of children with leukaemia in west Cumbria, north Humberside, and Gateshead. *BMJ*, 302: 681–687.

Mehlman MA (2002). Carcinogenic effects of benzene: Cesare Maltoni's contributions. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*, 982: 137–148. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2002.tb04929.x PMID:12562633

Merlo DF, Bertazzi PA, Bolognesi C *et al.* (2001). *Exposure to Low Levels of Benzene, Interindividual Biological Variability and Cancer Risk: A Multicentre European Study*. Milan, Italy: Istituto Nazionale per la Ricerca sul Cancro

Miligi L, Costantini AS, Benvenuti A *et al.* (2006). Occupational exposure to solvents and the risk of lymphomas. *Epidemiology*, 17: 552–561. doi:10.1097/01.ede.0000231279.30988.4d PMID:16878041

Mistry AR, Felix CA, Whitmarsh RJ *et al.* (2005). DNA topoisomerase II in therapy-related acute promyelocytic leukemia. *N Engl J Med*, 352: 1529–1538. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa042715 PMID:15829534

Morgan GJ & Alvares CL (2005). Benzene and the hemopoietic stem cell. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 217–222. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.025 PMID:15935819

Mrózek K & Bloomfield CD (2008). Clinical significance of the most common chromosome translocations in adult acute myeloid leukemia. *J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr*, 39: 52–57. doi:10.1093/jncimonographs/lgn003 PMID:18648004

Navasumrit P, Chanvaivit S, Intarasunanont P *et al.* (2005). Environmental and occupational exposure to benzene in Thailand. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 75–83. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.010 PMID:15935802

Nedelcheva V, Gut I, Soucek P *et al.* (1999). Metabolism of benzene in human liver microsomes: individual variations in relation to CYP2E1 expression. *Arch Toxicol*, 73: 33–40. doi:10.1007/s002040050583 PMID:10207612

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83)*. Cincinnati, OH: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health [http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes2/09070occ.html]

Nordlinder R & Ramnäs O (1987). Exposure to benzene at different work places in Sweden. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 31: 345–355. doi:10.1093/annhyg/31.3.345 PMID:3426034

NTP (1986). NTP toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of benzene (CAS NO. 71–43–2) in F344/N rats and B6C3F1 mice (Gavage studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 289: 1–277. PMID:12748714

NTP (2005). BenzeneNTP 11th Report on Carcinogens. *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 1–A32. PMID:19826456

NTP (2007). NTP report on the toxicology and carcinogenesis study of benzene (CAS No. 71–43–2) in genetically modified haploinsufficient p16 Ink4a/p19 Arf mice (gavage study). *Natl Toxicol Program Genet Modif Model Rep*, 8: 1–81. PMID:18784769

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006). *The Merck Index*, 14th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., p. 177.

Ong CN, Kok PW, Lee BL *et al.* (1995). Evaluation of biomarkers for occupational exposure to benzene. *Occup Environ Med*, 52: 528–533. doi:10.1136/oem.52.8.528 PMID:7663638

Ong CN, Kok PW, Ong HY *et al.* (1996). Biomarkers of exposure to low concentrations of benzene: a field assessment. *Occup Environ Med*, 53: 328–333. doi:10.1136/oem.53.5.328 PMID:8673180

Passegué E & Weisman IL (2005). Leukemic stem cells: where do they come from? *Stem Cell Rev*, 1: 181–188. doi:10.1385/SCR:1:3:181 PMID:17142854

Patel AS, Talbott EO, Zborowski JV *et al.* (2004). Risk of cancer as a result of community exposure to gasoline vapors. *Arch Environ Health*, 59: 497–503. doi:10.1080/00039890409605165 PMID:16425659

Pedersen-Bjergaard J, Andersen MK, Andersen MT, Christiansen DH (2008). Genetics of therapy-related myelodysplasia and acute myeloid leukemia. *Leukemia*, 22: 240–248. doi:10.1038/sj.leu.2405078 PMID:18200041

Pedersen-Bjergaard J, Andersen MT, Andersen MK (2007). Genetic pathways in the pathogenesis of therapy-related myelodysplasia and acute myeloid leukemia. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*, 392–397. PMID:18024656

Pedersen-Bjergaard J, Christiansen DH, Desta F, Andersen MK (2006). Alternative genetic pathways and cooperating genetic abnormalities in the pathogenesis of therapy-related myelodysplasia and acute myeloid leukemia. *Leukemia*, 20: 1943–1949. doi:10.1038/sj.leu.2404381 PMID:16990778

Pesch B, Haerting J, Ranft U *et al.* (2000). Occupational risk factors for renal cell carcinoma: agent-specific results from a case-control study in Germany. MURC Study Group. Multicenter urothelial and renal cancer study. *Int J Epidemiol*, 29: 1014–1024. doi:10.1093/ije/29.6.1014 PMID:11101542

Picciano D (1979). Cytogenetic study of workers exposed to benzene. *Environ Res*, 19: 33–38. doi:10.1016/0013-9351(79)90031-8 PMID:510268

Popp W, Rauscher D, Müller G *et al.* (1994). Concentrations of benzene in blood and *S*-phenylmercapturic and *t,t*-muconic acid in urine in car mechanics. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 66: 1–6. doi:10.1007/BF00386572 PMID:7523309

Powley MW & Carlson GP (2000). Cytochromes P450 involved with benzene metabolism in hepatic and pulmonary microsomes. *J Biochem Mol Toxicol*, 14: 303–309. doi:10.1002/1099-0461(2000)14:6<303::AID-JBT2>3.0.CO;2-8 PMID:11083083

Qu Q, Shore R, Li G *et al.* (2005). Biomarkers of benzene: urinary metabolites in relation to individual genotype and personal exposure. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 85–95. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.012 PMID:15935803

Raaschou-Nielsen O, Hertel O, Thomsen BL, Olsen JH (2001). Air pollution from traffic at the residence of children with cancer. *Am J Epidemiol*, 153: 433–443. doi:10.1093/aje/153.5.433 PMID:11226975

Rappaport SM, Kim S, Lan Q *et al.* (2009). Evidence that humans metabolize benzene via two pathways. *Environ Health Perspect*, 117: 946–952. PMID:19590688

Ravandi F & Kebriaei P (2009). Philadelphia chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia. [vi.]*Hematol Oncol Clin North Am*, 23: 1043–1063, vi. doi:10.1016/j.hoc.2009.07.007 PMID:19825452

Ren X, Lim S, Smith MT, Zhang L (2009). Werner syndrome protein, WRN, protects cells from DNA damage induced by the benzene metabolite hydroquinone. *Toxicol Sci*, 107: 367–375.

Rinsky RA, Hornung RW, Silver SR, Tseng CY (2002). Benzene exposure and hematopoietic mortality: A long-term epidemiologic risk assessment. *Am J Ind Med*, 42: 474–480. doi:10.1002/ajim.10138 PMID:12439870

Rinsky RA, Smith AB, Hornung R *et al.* (1987). Benzene and leukemia. An epidemiologic risk assessment. *N Engl J Med*, 316: 1044–1050. doi:10.1056/NEJM198704233161702 PMID:3561457

Rinsky RA, Young RJ, Smith AB (1981). Leukemia in benzene workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 2: 217–245. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700020305 PMID:7345926

Rivedal E & Witz G (2005). Metabolites of benzene are potent inhibitors of gap-junction intercellular communication. *Arch Toxicol*, 79: 303–311. doi:10.1007/s00204-004-0638-0 PMID:15690152

Romieu I, Ramirez M, Meneses F *et al.* (1999). Environmental exposure to volatile organic compounds among workers in Mexico City as assessed by personal monitors and blood concentrations. *Environ Health Perspect*, 107: 511–515. doi:10.1289/ehp.99107511 PMID:10378996

Ross D (2000). The role of metabolism and specific metabolites in benzene-induced toxicity: evidence and issues. *J Toxicol Environ Health A*, 61: 357–372. doi:10.1080/00984100050166361 PMID:11086940

Rothman N, Smith MT, Hayes RB *et al.* (1997). Benzene poisoning, a risk factor for hematological malignancy, is associated with the NQO1 609C–>T mutation and rapid fractional excretion of chlorzoxazone. *Cancer Res*, 57: 2839–2842. PMID:9230185

Rushton L (1993). A 39-year follow-up of the U.K. oil refinery and distribution center studies: results for kidney cancer and leukemia. *Environ Health Perspect*, 101: Suppl 677–84. doi:10.1289/ehp.93101s677 PMID:8020451

Rushton L & Romaniuk H (1997). A case-control study to investigate the risk of leukaemia associated with exposure to benzene in petroleum marketing and distribution workers in the United Kingdom. *Occup Environ Med*, 54: 152–166. doi:10.1136/oem.54.3.152 PMID:9155776

Satin KP, Wong O, Yuan LA *et al.* (1996). A 50-year mortality follow-up of a large cohort of oil refinery workers in Texas. *J Occup Environ Med*, 38: 492–506. doi:10.1097/00043764-199605000-00010 PMID:8733641

Savitz DA & Andrews KW (1997). Review of epidemiologic evidence on benzene and lymphatic and hematopoietic cancers. *Am J Ind Med*, 31: 287–295. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199703)31:3<287::AID-AJIM4>3.0.CO;2-V PMID:9055951

Scélo G, Metayer C, Zhang L *et al.* (2009). Household exposure to paint and petroleum solvents, chromosomal translocations, and the risk of childhood leukemia. *Environ Health Perspect*, 117: 133–139. PMID:19165400

Schnatter AR, Armstrong TW, Nicolich MJ *et al.* (1996). Lymphohaematopoietic malignancies and quantitative estimates of exposure to benzene in Canadian

petroleum distribution workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 53: 773–781. doi:10.1136/oem.53.11.773 PMID:9038803

Sheets PL, Yost GS, Carlson GP (2004). Benzene metabolism in human lung cell lines BEAS-2B and A549 and cells overexpressing CYP2F1. *J Biochem Mol Toxicol*, 18: 92–99. doi:10.1002/jbt.20010 PMID:15122651

Shen M, Lan Q, Zhang L *et al.* (2006). Polymorphisms in genes involved in DNA double-strand break repair pathway and susceptibility to benzene-induced hematotoxicity. *Carcinogenesis*, 27: 2083–2089. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgl061 PMID:16728435

Shu XO, Gao YT, Brinton LA *et al.* (1988). A population-based case-control study of childhood leukemia in Shanghai. *Cancer*, 62: 635–644. doi:10.1002/1097-0142(19880801)62:3<635::AID-CNCR2820620332>3.0.CO;2-3 PMID:3164642

Shu XO, Stewart P, Wen WQ *et al.* (1999). Parental occupational exposure to hydrocarbons and risk of acute lymphocytic leukemia in offspring. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 8: 783–791. PMID:10498397

Signer RA, Montecino-Rodriguez E, Witte ON *et al.* (2007). Age-related defects in B lymphopoiesis underlie the myeloid dominance of adult leukemia. *Blood*, 110: 1831–1839. doi:10.1182/blood-2007-01-069401 PMID:17554060

Singh KP, Casado FL, Opanashuk LA, Gasiewicz TA (2009). The aryl hydrocarbon receptor has a normal function in the regulation of hematopoietic and other stem/progenitor cell populations. *Biochem Pharmacol*, 77: 577–587. doi:10.1016/j.bcp.2008.10.001 PMID:18983985

Smith MT (1996). The mechanism of benzene-induced leukemia: a hypothesis and speculations on the causes of leukemia. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 61219–1225. PMID:9118896

Smith MT, Skibola CF, Allan JM, Morgan GJ (2004). Causal models of leukaemia and lymphoma. *IARC Sci Publ*, 157: 373–392. PMID:15055307

Smith MT & Zhang L (1998). Biomarkers of leukemia risk: benzene as a model. *Environ Health Perspect*, 106: Suppl 4937–946. PMID:9703476

Smith MT, Zhang L, Jeng M *et al.* (2000). Hydroquinone, a benzene metabolite, increases the level of aneusomy of chromosomes 7 and 8 in human CD34-positive blood progenitor cells. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 1485–1490. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.8.1485 PMID:10910948

Smith MT, Zhang L, Wang Y *et al.* (1998). Increased translocations and aneusomy in chromosomes 8 and 21 among workers exposed to benzene. *Cancer Res*, 58: 2176–2181. PMID:9605763

Snyder CA, Goldstein BD, Sellakumar AR *et al.* (1980). The inhalation toxicology of benzene: incidence of hematopoietic neoplasms and hematotoxicity in ARK/J and C57BL/6J mice. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 54: 323–331. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(80)90202-1 PMID:6893503

Snyder CA, Sellakumar AR, James DJ, Albert RE (1988). The carcinogenicity of discontinuous inhaled benzene exposures in CD-1 and C57Bl/6 mice. *Arch Toxicol*, 62: 331–335. doi:10.1007/BF00293618 PMID:3242441

Snyder R (2004). Xenobiotic metabolism and the mechanism(s) of benzene toxicity. *Drug Metab Rev*, 36: 531–547. doi:10.1081/DMR-200033445 PMID:15554234

Sorahan T, Kinlen LJ, Doll R (2005). Cancer risks in a historical UK cohort of benzene exposed workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 62: 231–236. doi:10.1136/oem.2004.015628 PMID:15778255

Steinmaus C, Smith AH, Jones RM, Smith MT (2008). Meta-analysis of benzene exposure and non-Hodgkin lymphoma: biases could mask an important association. *Occup Environ Med*, 65: 371–378. doi:10.1136/oem.2007.036913 PMID:18417556

Stillman WS, Varella-Garcia M, Irons RD (2000). The benzene metabolite, hydroquinone, selectively induces 5q31- and -7 in human CD34+CD19- bone marrow cells. *Exp Hematol*, 28: 169–176. doi:10.1016/S0301-472X(99)00144-7 PMID:10706073

Stoner GD, Conran PB, Greisiger EA *et al.* (1986). Comparison of two routes of chemical administration on the lung adenoma response in strain A/J mice. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 82: 19–31. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(86)90433-3 PMID:3945940

Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Lee Harris N (2008). *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, 4th edition. Lyon, France: IARC.

Thomadaki H & Scorilas A (2006). BCL2 family of apoptosis-related genes: functions and clinical implications in cancer. *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci*, 43: 1–67. doi:10.1080/10408360500295626 PMID:16531274

Tough IM & Brown WM (1965). Chromosome Aberrations and Exposure to Ambient Benzene. *Lancet*, 1: 684 doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(65)91835-0 PMID:14258551

Valentine JL, Lee SS, Seaton MJ *et al.* (1996). Reduction of benzene metabolism and toxicity in mice that lack CYP2E1 expression. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 141: 205–213. PMID:8917693

van Steensel-Moll HA, Valkenburg HA, van Zanen GE (1985). Childhood leukemia and parental occupation. A register-based case-control study. *Am J Epidemiol*, 121: 216–224. PMID:3860001

van Wijngaarden E & Stewart PA (2003). Critical literature review of determinants and levels of occupational benzene exposure for United States community-based case-control studies. *Appl Occup Environ Hyg*, 18: 678–693. doi:10.1080/10473220301376 PMID:12909536

Vaughan AT, Betti CJ, Villalobos MJ *et al.* (2005). Surviving apoptosis: a possible mechanism of benzene-induced leukemia. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 179–185. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.022 PMID:15935815

Verma DK, Johnson DM, McLean JD (2000). Benzene and total hydrocarbon exposures in the upstream petroleum oil and gas industry. *AIHAJ*, 61: 225–263.

Voltz R, Starck M, Zingler V *et al.* (2004). Mitoxantrone therapy in multiple sclerosis and acute leukaemia: a case report out of 644 treated patients. *Mult Scler*, 10: 472–474. doi:10.1191/1352458504ms1047cr PMID:15327049

Waidyanatha S, Rothman N, Fustinoni S *et al.* (2001). Urinary benzene as a biomarker of exposure among occupationally exposed and unexposed subjects. *Carcinogenesis*, 22: 279–286. doi:10.1093/carcin/22.2.279 PMID:11181449

Waidyanatha S & Rappaport SM (2005). Investigation of cysteinyl protein adducts of benzene diolepoxide. *Chem Biol Interact*, 153-154: 261–266. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2005.03.033 PMID:15935825

Walter MJ, Payton JE, Ries RE *et al.* (2009). Acquired copy number alterations in adult acute myeloid leukemia genomes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*, 106: 12950–12955. doi:10.1073/pnas.0903091106 PMID:19651600

Wang L, Roy SK, Eastmond DA (2007). Differential cell cycle-specificity for chromosomal damage induced by merbarone and etoposide in V79 cells. *Mutat Res*, 616: 70–82. PMID:17174356

Wang R, Zhang Y, Lan Q *et al.* (2009). Occupational exposure to solvents and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma in Connecticut women. *Am J Epidemiol*, 169: 176–185. doi:10.1093/aje/kwn300 PMID:19056833

Whysner J, Reddy MV, Ross PM *et al.* (2004). Genotoxicity of benzene and its metabolites. *Mutat Res*, 566: 99–130. doi:10.1016/S1383-5742(03)00053-X PMID:15164977

Wiemels JL, Cazzaniga G, Daniotti M *et al.* (1999). Prenatal origin of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in children. *Lancet*, 354: 1499–1503. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(99)09403-9 PMID:10551495

Wiemels JL, Xiao Z, Buffler PA *et al.* (2002). In utero origin of t(8;21) AML1-ETO translocations in childhood acute myeloid leukemia. *Blood*, 99: 3801–3805. doi:10.1182/blood.V99.10.3801 PMID:11986239

Williams PRD, Panko JM, Unice K *et al.* (2008). Occupational exposures associated with petroleum-derived products containing trace levels of benzene. *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 5: 565–574. doi:10.1080/15459620802282110 PMID:18615290

Williams PRD, Robinson K, Paustenbach DJ (2005). Benzene exposures associated with tasks performed on marine vessels (circa 1975 to 2000). *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 2: 586–599. doi:10.1080/15459620500339147 PMID:16234219

Wong O (1995). Risk of acute myeloid leukaemia and multiple myeloma in workers exposed to benzene. *Occup Environ Med*, 52: 380–384. doi:10.1136/oem.52.6.380 PMID:7627314

Wong O, Harris F, Smith TJ (1993). Health effects of gasoline exposure. II. Mortality patterns of distribution workers in the United States. *Environ Health Perspect*, 101: Suppl 663–76. doi:10.1289/ehp.93101s663 PMID:8020450

Wong O & Raabe GK (1995). Cell-type-specific leukemia analyses in a combined cohort of more than 208,000 petroleum workers in the United States and the United Kingdom, 1937–1989. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 21: 307–321. doi:10.1006/rtph.1995.1044 PMID:7644720

Wong O & Raabe GK (1997). Multiple myeloma and benzene exposure in a multinational cohort of more than 250,000 petroleum workers. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 26: 188–199. doi:10.1006/rtph.1997.1162 PMID:9356282

Wong O & Raabe GK (2000a). A critical review of cancer epidemiology in the petroleum industry, with a meta-analysis of a combined database of more than 350,000 workers. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 32: 78–98. doi:10.1006/rtph.2000.1410 PMID:11029272

Wong O & Raabe GK (2000b). Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and exposure to benzene in a multinational cohort of more than 308,000 petroleum workers, 1937 to 1996. *J Occup Environ Med*, 42: 554–568. doi:10.1097/00043764-200005000-00016 PMID:10824308

Xu X, Wiencke JK, Niu M *et al.* (1998). benzene exposure, GSTT homozygous deletion and SCE *Am J Ind Med*, 33: 157–163. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199802)33:2<157::AID-AJIM7>3.0.CO;2-V PMID:9438048

Yin SN, Hayes RB, Linet MS *et al.* (1996). A cohort study of cancer among benzene-exposed workers in China: overall results. *Am J Ind Med*, 29: 227–235. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199603)29:3<227::AID-AJIM2>3.0.CO;2-N PMID:8833775

Yoon BI, Hirabayashi Y, Kawasaki Y *et al.* (2002). Aryl hydrocarbon receptor mediates benzene-induced hematotoxicity. *Toxicol Sci*, 70: 150–156. doi:10.1093/toxsci/70.1.150 PMID:12388843

Zhang L, Eastmond DA, Smith MT (2002). The nature of chromosomal aberrations detected in humans exposed to benzene. *Crit Rev Toxicol*, 32: 1–42. doi:10.1080/20024091064165 PMID:11846214

Zhang L, Rothman N, Li G *et al.* (2007). Aberrations in chromosomes associated with lymphoma and therapy-related leukemia in benzene-exposed workers. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 48: 467–474. doi:10.1002/em.20306 PMID:17584886

Zhang L, Rothman N, Wang Y *et al.* (1999). Benzene increases aneuploidy in the lymphocytes of exposed workers: a comparison of data obtained by fluorescence in situ hybridization in interphase and metaphase cells. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 34: 260–268. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1098-2280(1999)34:4<260::AID-EM6>3.0.CO;2-P PMID:10618174

BIS(CHLOROMETHYL) ETHER AND CHLOROMETHYL METHYL ETHER

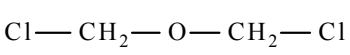
Bis(chloromethyl) ether (BCME) and chloromethyl methyl ether (CMME) were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1973 and 1987 (IARC, 1974, 1987a). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agents

1.1.1 Bis(chloromethyl) ether

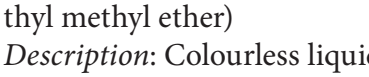
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 542-88-1
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
1,1′-Oxybis[1-chloromethane]
Formula: $C_2H_4Cl_2O$



Relative molecular mass: 115.0
Synonyms: BCME; Bis(chloromethyl) ether; chloromethyl ether (note: this name is sometimes used incorrectly for chloromethyl methyl ether)
Description: Colourless liquid, suffocating odour (O'Neil, 2006)
Boiling point: 106 °C (Lide, 2008)
Solubility: Miscible with ethanol and diethyl ether (Lide, 2008)

1.1.2 Chloromethyl methyl ether

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 107-30-2
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
Chloromethoxymethane
Formula: C_2H_5ClO



Relative molecular mass: 80.5
Synonyms: CMME; chloromethyl methyl ether; chloromethoxymethane; methyl chloromethyl ether; monochloromethyl ether; chlorodimethyl ether
Description: Colourless liquid (O'Neil, 2006)
Boiling point: 59.5 °C (Lide, 2008)
Solubility: Soluble in acetone, chloroform, diethyl ether, and ethanol (Lide, 2008)

1.2 Uses

BCME and CMME are used primarily as chemical intermediates and alkylating agents. BCME is used as a laboratory reagent in the manufacture of plastics, ion-exchange resins, and polymers (HSDB, 2003). Historical uses of

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to BCME and CMME in the European Union

Industry, occupational activity	
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	1000
Manufacture of fabricated metal products, except machinery and equipment	350
Wholesale and retail trade, and restaurants and hotels	600
Sanitary and similar services	300
TOTAL	2250

From CAREX (1999)

BCME include crosslinking of cellulose, preparation of styrene and other polymers, surface treatment of vulcanized rubber to increase adhesion, and manufacture of flame-retardant fabrics (ATSDR, 1989). CMME is used as an alkylating agent and industrial solvent to manufacture dodecylbenzyl chloride, water repellants, ion-exchange resins, and polymers, and as a chloromethylating reagent (HSDB, 2003).

Exposure to these chemicals is strictly regulated in the United States of America (USA) and worldwide. Small quantities of BCME and CMME are currently produced, to be used only in enclosed systems for the synthesis of other chemicals (Brüske-Hohlfeld, 2009).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

The primary route of occupational exposure to BCME or CMME is through inhalation of vapours; however, the potential for exposure nowadays is low because these chemicals are no longer produced or sold in large quantities and most industrial operations with these chemicals are conducted in closed containers. The most likely source of exposure to BCME is during the production or use of chemicals in which it may be present as a contaminant or be formed inadvertently (ATSDR, 1989).

CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens, based on data collected in the European Union (EU) from 1990 to 1993. The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 presents the numbers of workers exposed to BCME and CMME in the EU by industry (CAREX, 1999)

From the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83) it was estimated that 14 workers (all laboratory personnel, including five women) were potentially exposed to BCME. No estimate of potential CMME exposure was reported (NIOSH, 1984).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

The primary routes of potential human exposure to BCME and technical-grade CMME are inhalation and dermal contact. BCME is rapidly degraded in the environment and has not been detected in ambient air or water (ATSDR, 1989). According to the US Environmental Protection Agency's Toxics Release Inventory, almost all environmental releases of BCME and CMME have been into the air (US EPA, 2003).

2. Cancer in Humans

BCME and CMME were evaluated previously in *IARC Monograph* Volume 4 and in Supplement 7 (IARC, 1974, 1987a).

In a retrospective study of a small group of men exposed to BCME during the period 1956–1962, six cases of lung cancer were found among 18 workers in a testing laboratory. Five of these six men were moderate smokers, one was a non-smoker. Two further cases of lung cancer were seen in a group of 50 production workers. Five of these eight cases were oat-cell carcinomas. Duration of exposure had been six to nine years, while the period from first exposure to diagnosis was 8–16 years (Thiess *et al.*, 1973; IARC, 1974).

In a five-year observational study of 125 workers exposed to CMME, four cases of lung cancer were diagnosed, representing an eight-fold higher incidence than that in a control group (n = 2804) with similar smoking history. In a retrospective follow-up, a total of 14 cases were identified, all of whom had been working in the production of CMME. In the latter group, three men were non-smokers. Duration of exposure had been 3–14 years. Histological analysis revealed that 12 of the 14 cases were oat-cell carcinomas (Figueroa *et al.*, 1973; IARC, 1974). This cohort was further reported on (Weiss & Boucot, 1975; Weiss *et al.*, 1979; Weiss, 1982, Weiss & Nash, 1997) with confirmatory results (Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-20-Table2.1.pdf).

Several additional case-reports (Bettendorf, 1977; Reznik *et al.*, 1978; Roe, 1985; Nishimura *et al.*, 1990) and epidemiological studies from the USA (Collingwood *et al.*, 1987), the United Kingdom (McCallum *et al.*, 1983) and France (Gowers *et al.*, 1993) demonstrated that workers exposed to CMME and/or BCME have an increased risk for lung cancer. Among heavily exposed workers, the relative risks were ten-fold or more. An increase in risk was observed with duration of exposure and with cumulative exposure. Histological evaluation indicated that exposure resulted primarily in small-cell type lung cancer (Weiss & Boucot, 1975). The highest relative risks appeared to occur 15–19 years after first exposure (Weiss, 1982), and latency was shortened among workers with heavier exposure (Weiss & Figueroa, 1976; Pasternack & Shore, 1981).

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

3.1 BCME

Studies on the carcinogenesis of BCME in rats, mice and hamsters after inhalation, skin application, and subcutaneous or intra-peritoneal injection have been reviewed in previous IARC Monographs (IARC, 1974, 1987b). The results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4. There were no additional studies reported in the literature since *IARC Monographs* Supplement 7 (IARC, 1987b).

BCME was tested for carcinogenicity by inhalation exposure in five studies with rats, one study with mice and two studies with hamsters; by skin application in two studies with mice; by subcutaneous injection in one study with rats and three with mice; and by intra-peritoneal injection in one study with mice.

Exposure to BCME by inhalation caused an increased incidence of rare malignant tumours of the nose (esthesioneuroepitheliomas and squamous-cell carcinomas of the nasal mucosa) and squamous-cell carcinomas of the lung in male rats (Kuschner *et al.*, 1975; Leong *et al.*, 1981; Albert *et al.*, 1982; Sellakumar *et al.*, 1985) and of lung adenomas in male mice (Leong *et al.*, 1981). Skin application of BCME resulted in an increased incidence of skin papillomas in male and female mice (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1969; Zajdela *et al.*, 1980) and of squamous-cell carcinomas of the skin in female mice (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1969). Intra-peritoneal injection caused increased incidences of sarcomas at the site of injection in female mice (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1975). Subcutaneous injection of BCME caused strongly increased incidences of lung adenomas

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to bis(chloromethyl) ether by inhalation

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M) Lifetime Kuschner *et al.* (1975)	0.1 ppm, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, 70 rats/group. In addition, rats received 10, 20, 40, 60, 80 or 100 6-h exposures, with 50, 50, 20, 20, 50, 30/group, respectively 240 rats served as controls	**Nose** Esthesioneuroepitheliomas: 0/50, 1/50, 2/20, 2/20, 9/50, 3/30 Malignant olfactory tumours: 0/50, 0/50, 0/20, 0/20, 0/50, 1/30 Ganglioneuroepitheliomas: 0/50, 0/50, 0/20, 0/20, 1/50, 0/30 Squamous cell carcinomas: 0/50, 0/50, 0/20, 0/20, 1/50, 0/30 Poorly differentiated epithelial tumours: 0/50, 1/50, 1/20, 0/20, 1/50, 1/30 Nasal cavity adenocarcinomas: 1/50,10/50, 0/20, 0/20, 1/50, 1/30 **Lung** Squamous cell carcinomas: 0/50, 0/50, 0/20, 2/20, 3/50, 8/30 Adenocarcinomas: 0/50, 0/50, 1/20, 0/20, 0/50, 0/30	NR	Purity NR Tumour incidence NR for controls
Rat, SPF Sprague-Dawley (M) Lifetime Leong *et al.* (1981)	0, 1, 10, 100 ppb 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 6 mo 120/group	Esthesioneuroepitheliomas of the nose: 0/112, 0/113, 0/111, 96/111* Lung adenomas: 0/112, 0/113, 0/111, 4/111[$]	*$P < 0.05$ [$]$P = 0.059$	Purity NR Esthesioneuroepitheliomas were malignant tumours, several of which invaded the cribriform plate into the brain and metastasized to the regional lymph nodes and/or the lungs.
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M) Lifetime Albert *et al.* (1982)	Premixed HCHO, 14.7 ppm + HCL, 10.6 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 99/group Air-sham controls, 50/group	Papillomas of the nasal mucosa: 0/50, 3/99 Squamous cell carcinomas of the nasal mucosa: 0/50, 25/99	[NS] [$P < 0.0001$]	Purity NR Weight gains in the exposed group lower than in the controls. All exposed animals had died by 100 wk.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M) Lifetime Sellakumar *et al.* (1985)	HCL alone, 10.0 ppm; HCHO alone, 14.8 ppm; premixed HCHO, 15.2 ppm + HCL, 9.9 ppm; non premixed HCHO, 14.9 ppm + HCL, 9.7 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 100/group	**Nasal cancers** Squamous cell carcinomas: 0/99, 38/100, 45/100, 27/100 Adenocarcinomas: 0/99, 0/100, 1/100, 2/100 Mixed carcinomas: 0/99, 1/100, 0/100, 0/100 Fibrosarcomas: 0/99, 1/100, 1/100, 0/100 Esthesioneuroepitheliomas: 0/99, 0/100 1/100, 0/100	**Nasal cancers** Premixed vs HCHO: $P < 0.025$ Non-premixed vs HCHO: NS	Purity NR Both combined exposures and HCHO exposure alone had a marked decreasing effect on body weight after 16 wk. Mortality was higher in the premixed group after 32 wk of exposure. The concentrations of BCME in the premixed HCl-HCHO chamber varied between 0.1 and 0.4 ppb. It was noted that alkylating agents other than BCME could have been formed by the interaction of HCHO and HCl and that, since the average amount of BCME in the exposure chamber of the premixed HCl-HCHO was less than 1 ppb, BCME may not have been the only agent responsible for the induction of tumours.
Mouse, Strain A/Heston (M) 27 wk Leong *et al.* (1971)	0 and 1.0 ppm (0.005 mg/L) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk; total of 82 exposures. Controls exposed to filtered air 50/group	Lung adenomas: 20/49, 26/47 Lung adenoma multiplicity: 2.2, 5.2	NS NR	Industrial grade (purity NR) Exposures resulted in loss of body weight and higher mortality
Mouse, Ha/ICR (M) Lifetime Leong *et al.* (1981)	0, 1, 10, 100 ppb 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 6 mo 144–157/group	Lung adenomas: 6/157, 4/138, 2/143, 7/144 Lung adenocarcinomas: 4/157, 3/138, 1/143, 3/144 Lung adenomas in mice that survived beyond the initial 6 mo exposure period: 9/86, 5/45, 3/37, 8/27*	*$P < 0.05$	Purity NR There was an exposure concentration-related effect on cumulative mortality. Deaths began at approximately 1 mo of exposure, plateau-ing between 6 and 8 mo for exposed groups and 11 mo for the controls. Control and exposed mice developed an ascending urinary tract infection that was considered the direct cause of death.

d, day or days; h, hour or hours; HCl, hydrochloric acid; HCHO, formaldehyde vapours; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; vs, versus; wk, week or weeks

Table 3.2 Carcinogenicity studies in mice exposed to bis(chloromethyl) ether by intra-peritoneal injection

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, ICR/Ha Swiss (F) 424–456 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1975)	0 (control) or 0.02 mg BCME in 0.05 mL nujol (purified paraffin oil) once weekly injection 50/group	Sarcoma (at injection site): 0/30, 4/30	$P < 0.05$, χ^2 test	Purity NR

d, day or days; F, female, NR, not reported

Table 3.3 Carcinogenicity studies in mice exposed to bis(chloromethyl) ether by skin application

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, ICR/Ha Swiss (F) 540 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1969)	**BCME as an initiator**			> 99% pure When BCME was used as a promoter or carcinogen, the experiment was terminated at 325 d due to ulcers, cancers and poor condition of the animals.
	Single application of 1.0 mg BCME in 0.1 mL benzene followed 14 d later by 0.025 mg PE in 0.1 mL acetone 3 × /wk. Controls received 0.025 mg PE in 0.1 mL acetone 3 × /wk. 20/group	Skin papillomas: 2/20, 5/20 Skin squamous cell carcinomas: 0/20, 2/20	[NS] [NS]	
	BCME as a promoter			
	Single application of 0.15 mg B[a]P in 0.1 benzene followed 14 d later by 2.0 mg BCME in 0.1 mg benzene 3 × /wk for 325 d. Controls received a single application of 0.15 mg B[a]P in 0.1 mL benzene. 20/group	Skin papillomas: 0/20, 13/20 Skin squamous cell carcinomas: 0/20, 12/20	[$P < 0.0001$] [$P < 0.0001$]	
	BCME as a carcinogen			
	2 mg BCME in 0.1 mL benzene 3x weekly. Controls received 0.1 mL benzene 3 × /wk. 20/group	Skin papillomas: 0/20, 13/20 Skin squamous cell carcinomas: 0/20, 12/20	[$P < 0.0001$] [$P < 0.0001$]	
Mouse, XVIInc./Z (M) 590 d Zajdela *et al.* (1980)	Single application of 1.0 mg BCME in 80 µl benzene followed by 2.0 µg TPA in 80 µl acetone 3 × /wk for 42 wk. Controls received 2.0 µg TPA in 80 µl acetone 3 × /wk for 42 wk 28/group	Skin: Papillomas: 4/28, 12/28 Carcinomas: 0/28, 3/28 Tumour multiplicity: 1.0, 1.3.	 [significant] NS NR	98.9% pure

B[a]P, benzo[a]pyrene; d, day or days; F, female; M, male; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; PE, phorbol ester; TPA, 12-*O*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate, wk, week or weeks

Table 3.4 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to bis(chloromethyl) ether by subcutaneous injection

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (F) 515 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1969)	3 mg BCME in 0.1 mL nujol (purified paraffin oil) once/wk for 114 d, reduced to 1 mg BCME in 0.1 mL nujol weekly for unspecified time and later reduced to 1 mg BCME in 0.1 mL nujol 3 × /mo. Vehicle control: 0.1 mL nujol weekly for 300 d 20/group	Skin fibromas: 0/20, 2/20 Skin fibros arcomas: 0/20, 5/20	[NS] [$P < 0.05$]	> 99% pure BCME dosage was reduced because of corrosive effects at injection site. By 300 d the treatment was discontinued because the animals were in poor condition with substantial weight loss and ulceration around the injection site.
Mouse, Newborn ICR Swiss (M, F) 6 mo Gargus *et al.* (1969)	Single injection of 50 µl of 0.05% BCME solution in peanut oil when 24–72 h old (dose, 12.5 µl/kg bw BCME) Vehicle controls: 50 µl of peanut oil (25 mL/kg bw) 50/treated groups, 20–30/control groups	Lung adenomas: 2/30, 25/50 (M); 5/20, 20/50 (F) Lung adenomas/animal: 0.07, 0.82 (M); 0.25, 0.46 (F)	[$P < 0.05$] (M) NR	Industrial grade (purity unspecified) One papilloma and one fibrosarcoma developed at the site of injection in two BCME-treated mice; such tumours did not occur in control mice.
Mouse, ICR/Ha Swiss (F) 371 d (BCME)–458 d (controls) Van Duuren *et al.* (1975)	0 (control) or 0.3 mg in 0.05 mL nujol Single injection, once/wk 50/group	Skin sarcomas: 1/50, 21/50	$P < 0.01$	Purity unspecified Animals sacrificed because of poor survival (median survival was 260 d in treated mice vs 443 d for vehicle controls)
Mouse, XVIInc./Z (M, F) 549 d Zajdela *et al.* (1980)	Vehicle control: 20 µl nujol (purified paraffin oil), 32 injections over 42 wk 30/group (M) BCME 0.3 mg in 20 µl nujol 32 injections over 42 wks 30/group/sex	Skin fibrosarcomas: 0/30, 12/27 (M); 10/24 (F)	$P < 0.0001$ $P < 0.0001$ (vs male control group)	98.9% pure No female control group

bw, body weight; d, day or days; h, hour or hours; F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant, vs, versus; wk, week or weeks

Table 3.5 Carcinogenicity studies in mice exposed to chloromethyl methyl ether by skin application

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, ICR/Ha Swiss (F) 540 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1969)	**CMME as an initiator** 0.1 mg CMME in 0.1 mL benzene (low dose) or 1.0 mg CMME in 0.1 mL benzene (high dose) followed 14 d later by 0.025 mg PE in 0.1 mL acetone 3 × /wk Controls received 0.025 mg PE in 0.1 mL acetone 3 × /wk	Skin papillomas: 2/20 (control), 7/20 (low dose), 5/20 (high dose) Skin squamous cell carcinomas: 0/20, 4/20, 1/20	[$P = 0.06$, low dose] [$P = 0.053$, low dose]	> 99.5% pure Treatment with CMME was discontinued at 325 d but animals were maintained and observed for the entire duration of the experiment. CMME probable initiator of skin papillomas and carcinomas combined.
	CMME as a promoter Single application 0.15 mg B[a]P in 0.1 mL benzene followed 14 d later by 2 mg CMME in 0.1 mL of benzene 3 × /wk. Controls received a single application of 0.15 mg B[a]P in 0.1 mL benzene	Skin papillomas: 0/20, 1/20 Skin squamous cell carcinomas: 0/20, 0/20	[NS] [NS]	
	CMME as a carcinogen 2 mg CMME in 0.1 mL benzene 3x weekly. Controls received 0.1 mL benzene 3 × /wk	Skin papillomas: 0/20, 0/20 Skin squamous cell carcinomas: 0/20, 0/20	[NS] [NS]	

B[a]P, benzo(a)pyrene; d, day or days; F, female; PE, phorbol ester; wk, week or weeks

Table 3.6 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to chloromethyl methyl ether (CMME) by subcutaneous injection

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague Dawley (F) 515 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1969)	Vehicle control: nujol 0.1 mL/wk for 300 d Treated: 3 mg CMME in 0.1 mL Nujol/wk for 300 d 20/group	Skin fibrosarcomas: 0/20, 1/20 Skin fibromas: 0/20, 0/20	[NS] [NS]	Treatment discontinued at 300 d due to local reaction at injection site
Mouse, Newborn ICR Swiss (M, F) 6 mo Gargus *et al.* (1969)	Single injection when 24–72 h old Vehicle controls: 50 µl peanut oil (25 mL/kg bw) Treated: 50 µl of CMME solution (125 µl/kg bw CMME) in peanut oil 48–51/treated groups 20–30/control groups	Lung adenomas: 2/30, 9/51 (M); 5/20, 8/48 (F) Lung adenomas/animal: 0.07, 0.23 (M); 0.25, 0.18 (F)	[NS] NR	99.7% pure
Mouse, Newborn ICR/Ha Swiss (F) 685 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1972)	Vehicle controls: 0.05 mL nujol Treated: 300 µg CMME in 50 µl nujol once/wk for life 30/group	Skin sarcomas: 0/30, 10/30	[$P < 0.01$]	Technical grade (purity NR)

bw, body weight; d, day or days; F, female; h, hour or hours; M, male; mo, month or months; NS, not significant; NR, not reported; wk, week or weeks

in male mice (Gargus *et al.*, 1969), of sarcomas and fibrosarcomas at the site of injection in male and female mice, and of fibrosarcomas in female rats (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1969; Van Duuren *et al.*, 1975; Zajdela *et al.*, 1980).

3.2 CMME

Studies on the carcinogenesis of CMME administered to mice, rats and hamsters by inhalation, skin application and subcutaneous injection have been reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1974, 1987b). The results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Tables 3.5, 3.6. There were no additional studies reported in the literature since the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1987b).

CMME was tested for carcinogenicity by inhalation exposure in one study in rats, one in mice and one in hamsters; by skin application in one study in mice; and by subcutaneous injection in one study in rats and two in mice.

Technical grade CMME induced skin sarcomas in female mice following subcutaneous injection (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1972). In a skin-painting study in female mice, CMME was found to be a probable initiator of skin papillomas and carcinomas combined (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1969).

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Toxicokinetics and toxicity

BCME and CMME belong to the group of chloroalkyl ethers. In water and aqueous biological fluids these substances are rapidly hydrolysed to form hydrochloric acid, methanol and formaldehyde (Nichols & Merritt, 1973; NTP, 2005).

The toxic effects of BCME are restricted to the epithelial tissue where exposure occurs, and this is consistent with the short half-life of BCME in aqueous media (ATSDR, 1989).

4.2 Genetic and related effects

Studies on the genotoxicity and cytotoxicity of BCME and CMME are limited and yielded mixed results (IARC, 1987b). [These studies are generally poorly documented.]

Both BCME and CMME are powerful alkylating agents (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1968; Van Duuren & Van Duuren, 1988; Van Duuren, 1989) that are mutagenic in bacteria (Mukai & Hawryluk, 1973; Anderson & Styles, 1978; IARC, 1987b). [The Working Group noted that the test systems used may not be optimal for investigating effects of rapidly hydrolysing material. Specifically, since BCME and CMME are short-lived alkylating agents, tests that favour hydrolysis of the compound before it enters the cell may yield misleading results.]

In one study, reaction of BCME with DNA *in vitro* did not affect the melting temperature or the buoyant density of the DNA, nor did it yield isolatable products upon reaction with purines or DNA, as did other alkylating agents (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1972). In another study, BCME was shown to bind to calf-thymus DNA at guanine and adenine residues (Goldschmidt *et al.*, 1975).

In vitro, CMME enhanced virus-induced transformation of Syrian hamster embryo cells (Casto, 1983; IARC, 1987b) and elicited unscheduled DNA synthesis, reflecting its activity as a DNA-damaging agent, in cultured human lymphocytes (Perocco *et al.*, 1983).

BCME did not cause chromosomal aberrations in bone-marrow cells of rats exposed to vapours for six months (Leong *et al.*, 1981; IARC, 1987b) but it did induce unscheduled DNA synthesis (Agrelo & Severn, 1981; IARC, 1987b) and cell transformation (Kurian *et al.*, 1990) in cultured human fibroblasts.

A slight increase in the incidence of chromosomal aberrations was observed in blood

lymphocytes of workers exposed to BCME or CMME during the preparation of ion-exchange resins (Srám *et al.*, 1983; IARC, 1987b).

4.3 Mechanistic considerations

The limited experimental studies on BCME and CMME preclude a detailed understanding of a mechanism of action, but sufficient information is available to support a genotoxic mode of action. Bernucci *et al.* (1997) outlined some possible steps in the process by which BCME and CMME may contribute to carcinogenesis. Similar to other alkylating agents, the observed formation of DNA adducts and resultant mutations are likely key steps in their mechanism of carcinogenicity. However, very little is known regarding their covalent interaction with DNA.

The hydrolysis products of BCME are formaldehyde and hydrochloric acid (HCl). Since formaldehyde is carcinogenic in animals and humans (see the *Monograph* on Formaldehyde in this volume), at least some of the carcinogenic potential of BCME may be due to this degradation product. However, the difference in carcinogenic potency between the two compounds (BCME being much more potent than formaldehyde) would indicate that this cannot be the sole mechanism of carcinogenicity.

BCME, formaldehyde and HCl could interact synergistically within the cell. Exposure of rats to mixtures of formaldehyde and HCl by inhalation resulted in little change in the frequency of nasal tumours compared with exposure to formaldehyde alone. However, one animal developed an esthesioneuroepithelioma, a very rare tumour that is characteristic of BCME exposure (Albert *et al.*, 1982; Sellakumar *et al.*, 1985).

4.4 Synthesis

BCME is among the most potent animal and human carcinogens known. The fact that BCME and CMME are powerful alkylating agents provides moderate to strong evidence that they operate by a genotoxic mechanism of action. This mechanism is likely to be similar to that of other strong alkylating agents, involving modification of DNA and resultant mutations.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of bis(chloromethyl)ether and chloromethyl methyl ether (technical grade). Bis(chloromethyl)ether and chloromethyl methyl ether (technical grade) cause cancer of the lung.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of bis(chloromethyl)ether.

There is *limited evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of chloromethyl methyl ether.

There is moderate to strong evidence that bis(chloromethyl)ether and chloromethyl methyl ether, powerful alkylating agents, operate by a genotoxic mechanism. This mechanism is likely to be similar to that of other strong alkylating agents, involving modification of DNA and resultant mutations.

Bis(chloromethyl)ether and chloromethyl methyl ether (technical grade) are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Agrelo CE & Severn BJ (1981). A simplified method for measuring scheduled and unscheduled DNA synthesis in human fibroblasts. *Toxicology*, 21: 151–158. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(81)90125-6 PMID:7281203

Albert RE, Sellakumar AR, Laskin S *et al.* (1982). Gaseous formaldehyde and hydrogen chloride induction of

nasal cancer in the rat. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 68: 597–603. PMID:6951075

Anderson D & Styles JA (1978). The bacterial mutation test. Six tests for carcinogenicity. *Br J Cancer*, 37: 924–930. doi:10.1038/bjc.1978.134 PMID:354673

ATSDR (1989) *Toxicological Profile for bis(Chloromethyl) Ether (Final Report)*. NTIS Accession No. PB90–168691. Atlanta, GA: Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, pp. 76

Bernucci I, Turrini D, Landi MT (1997). [Bis-chloromethyl ether and carcinogenesis of alkylating agents] *Med Lav*, 88: 347–355. PMID:9489299

Bettendorf U (1977). Gewerblich induzierte lungenkarzinome nach inhalation alkylierender verbindungen (bischloromethylather). *Zentralbl Arbeitssch Prophyl*, 27: 140–143.

Brüske-Hohlfeld I (2009). Environmental and occupational risk factors for lung cancer. *Methods Mol Biol*, 472: 3–23. doi:10.1007/978-1-60327-492-0_1 PMID:19107427

CAREX (1999) *Carex: industry specific estimates* – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf. Accessed 12/12/2011

Casto BC (1983). Comparison of the sensitivity of rodent and human cells to chemical carcinogens using viral transformation, DNA damage, and cytotoxicity assays. *Basic Life Sci*, 24: 429–449. PMID:6305332

Collingwood KW, Pasternack BS, Shore RE (1987). An industry-wide study of respiratory cancer in chemical workers exposed to chloromethyl ethers. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 78: 1127–1136. PMID:3473253

Figueroa WG, Raszkowski R, Weiss W (1973). Lung cancer in chloromethyl methyl ether workers. *N Engl J Med*, 288: 1096–1097. doi:10.1056/NEJM197305242882104 PMID:4348988

Gargus JL, Reese WH Jr, Rutter HA (1969). Induction of lung aenomas in newborn mice by bis(chloromethyl) ether. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 15: 92–96. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(69)90136-7 PMID:5798736

Goldschmidt BM, van Duuren BL, Frenkel K (1975). The Reaction of 14C-labelled bis(Chloromethyl) Ether with DNA. *Proc Am Assoc Cancer Res*, 16: 66

Gowers DS, DeFonso LR, Schaffer P *et al.* (1993). Incidence of respiratory cancer among workers exposed to chloromethyl-ethers. *Am J Epidemiol*, 137: 31–42. PMID:8382005

HSDB (2003) *Hazardous Substances Data Bank*. Bethesda, MD: National Library of Medicine. [http://toxnet.nlm.nih.gov/cgi-bin/sis/htmlgen?HSDB]

IARC (1974). Some aromatic amines, hydrazine and related substances, N-nitroso compounds and miscellaneous alkylating agents. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 4: 1–286.

IARC (1987a). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1987b). Genetic and related effects: An updating of selected IARC monographs from Volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 6: 1–729. PMID:3504843

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Kurian P, Nesnow S, Milo GE (1990). Quantitative evaluation of the effects of human carcinogens and related chemicals on human foreskin fibroblasts. *Cell Biol Toxicol*, 6: 171–184. doi:10.1007/BF00249592 PMID:2361190

Kuschner M, Laskin S, Drew RT *et al.* (1975). Inhalation carcinogenicity of alpha halo ethers. III. Lifetime and limited period inhalation studies with bis(chloromethyl) ether at 0.1 ppm. *Arch Environ Health*, 30: 73–77. PMID:1115531

Leong BKJ, Kociba RJ, Jersey GC (1981). A lifetime study of rats and mice exposed to vapors of bis(chloromethyl) ether. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 58: 269–281. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(81)90432-4 PMID:7245201

Leong BKJ, Macfarland HN, Reese WH Jr (1971). Induction of lung adenomas by chronic inhalation of bis (chloromethyl) ether. *Arch Environ Health*, 22: 663–666. PMID:5574007

Lide DR, editor (2008) *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*. 89th ed., Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp. 3–50, 3–106.

McCallum RI, Woolley V, Petrie A (1983). Lung cancer associated with chloromethyl methyl ether manufacture: an investigation at two factories in the United Kingdom. *Br J Ind Med*, 40: 384–389. PMID:6226309

Mukai FH & Hawryluk I (1973). Mutagenicity of Some Halo-ethers and Halo-ketones. *Mutat Res*, 21: 228

NTP (2005). NTP 11th Report on Carcinogens. *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 1–A32. PMID:19826456

Nichols RW & Merritt RF (1973). Relative solvolytic reactivities of chloromethyl ether and BIs(chloromethyl) ether. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 50: 1373–1374. PMID:4712596

NIOSH (1984) *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83)*. Cincinnati, OH: US Department of Health and Human Services [http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes3/empl0003.html]

Nishimura K, Miyashita K, Yoshida Y *et al.* (1990). [An epidemiological study of lung cancer among workers exposed to bis(chloromethyl)ether] *Sangyo Igaku*, 32: 448–453. doi:10.1539/joh1959.32.448 PMID:1962826

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006) *The Merck Index*, 14th Ed., Whitehouse Station, NJ, Merck & Co., Inc., pp. 355, 520.

Pasternack BS, Shore RE (1981). *Lung cancer following exposure to chloromethyl ethers*. In: *Proceedings of the International Conference on Critical Current Issues*

in Environmental Health Hazards. Chwat M, Dror K, editors. Tel-Aviv, Israel, pp. 76–85.

Perocco P, Bolognesi S, Alberghini W (1983). Toxic Activity of 17 Industrial Compounds on Human Lymphocytes Cultured in vitro. *Toxicol Lett*, 16: 69–76. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(83)90012-7 PMID:6836616

Reznik G, Wagner HH, Atay Z (1978). Lung cancer following exposure to bis(chloromethyl)ether: a case report. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol*, 1: 105–111. PMID:722181

Roe FJ (1985). Chloromethylation: three lung cancer deaths in young men. *Lancet*, 2: 268 doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(85)90308-3 PMID:2862432

Sellakumar AR, Snyder CA, Solomon JJ, Albert RE (1985). Carcinogenicity of formaldehyde and hydrogen chloride in rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 81: 401–406. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(85)90411-9 PMID:4082190

Srám RJ, Samková I, Holá N (1983). High-dose ascorbic acid prophylaxis in workers occupationally exposed to halogenated ethers. *J Hyg Epidemiol Microbiol Immunol*, 27: 305–318. PMID:6227657

Thiess AM, Hey W, Zeller H (1973[Verdacht auf kanzerogene Wirkung auch beLn Menschen]). *Zur Toxicologie von Dichlordimethyltlther*, 23: 97–102.

US EPA; United States Environmental Protection Agency (2003) *Toxics Release Inventory Program (TRI)*

Van Duuren BL (1989). Comparison of potency of human carcinogens: vinyl chloride, chloromethylmethyl ether and bis(chloromethyl)ether. *Environ Res*, 49: 143–151. doi:10.1016/S0013-9351(89)80059-3 PMID:2526731

Van Duuren BL, Goldschmidt BM, Langseth L *et al.* (1968). Alpha-haloethers: a new type of alkylating carcinogen. *Arch Environ Health*, 16: 472–476. PMID:5652981

Van Duuren BL, Goldschmidt BM, Seidman I (1975). Carcinogenic activity of di- and trifunctional α-chloro ethers and of 1,4-dichlorobutene-2 in ICR/HA swiss mice. *Cancer Res*, 35: 2553–2557. PMID:1149050

Van Duuren BL, Katz C, Goldschmidt BM *et al.* (1972). Carcinogenicity of halo-ethers. II. Structure-activity relationships of analogs of bis(chloromethyl)ether. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 48: 1431–1439. PMID:5030957

Van Duuren BL, Sivak A, Goldschmidt BM *et al.* (1969). Carcinogenicity of halo-ethers. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 43: 481–486. PMID:5805453

Van Duuren BL, Van Duuren SB 1988. *Chemistry, reactivity and carcinogenicity of chloro ethers*. In: *Chemical carcinogens*. Politzer P, Martin FJ, editors. New York, NY: Elsevier, pp. 114–176.

Weiss W (1982). Epidemic curve of respiratory cancer due to chloromethyl ethers. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 69: 1265–1270. PMID:6958903

Weiss W & Boucot KR (1975). The respiratory effects of chloromethyl methyl ether. *JAMA*, 234: 1139–1142. doi:10.1001/jama.1975.03260240043024 PMID:171460

Weiss W & Figueroa WG (1976). The characteristics of lung cancer due to chloromethyl ethers. *J Occup Med*, 18: 623–627. PMID:966095

Weiss W, Moser RL, Auerbach O (1979). Lung cancer in chloromethyl ether workers. *Am Rev Respir Dis*, 120: 1031–1037. PMID:228573

Weiss W & Nash D (1997). An epidemic of lung cancer due to chloromethyl ethers. 30 years of observation. *J Occup Environ Med*, 39: 1003–1009. doi:10.1097/00043764-199710000-00012 PMID:9343765

Zajdela F, Croisy A, Barbin A *et al.* (1980). Carcinogenicity of chloroethylene oxide, an ultimate reactive metabolite of vinyl chloride, and bis(chloromethyl)ether after subcutaneous administration and in initiation-promotion experiments in mice. *Cancer Res*, 40: 352–356. PMID:7356519

1,3-BUTADIENE

1,3-Butadiene was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1991, 1998, and 2007 (IARC, 1992, 1999, 2008). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 106-99-0
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: 1,3-Butadiene
IUPAC Systematic Name: 1,3-Butadiene

C_4H_6
Relative molecular mass: 54.09
Description: Colourless gas
Solubility: Sparingly soluble in water (1 g/L at 20 °C); slightly soluble in ethanol and methanol; soluble in benzene, carbon tetrachloride, and diethyl ether
Conversion factor: $mg/m^3 = 2.21 \times ppm$
From O'Neil (2006) and Lide (2008)

1.2 Use

Butadiene is used primarily in the production of synthetic rubbers and polymers, which are used in a wide variety of industrial and consumer products (e.g. automobiles, construction materials, appliance parts, computers and telecommunication equipment, protective clothing, packaging and household articles). The advantages of butadiene-based polymers include improved functionality, performance and safety, and lower costs. Synthetic rubbers that are produced from butadiene include styrene-butadiene rubber, poly-butadiene rubber, styrene-butadiene latex, chloroprene rubber and nitrile rubber. Important plastics that contain butadiene as a monomeric component are shock-resistant polystyrene, a two-phase system that consists of polystyrene and poly-butadiene; polymers that consist of acrylonitrile, butadiene and styrene; and a co-polymer of methyl methacrylate, butadiene and styrene, which is used as a modifier for polyvinyl chloride. Butadiene is also used as an intermediate in the production of chloroprene, adiponitrile and other basic petrochemicals (White, 2007).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

The highest exposures to butadiene occur in occupational settings. The potential for exposure exists in several industrial activities, such as petroleum refining and related operations (production of C4 fractions containing butadiene, and production and distribution of gasoline), production of purified butadiene monomer,

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to 1,3-butadiene in the European Union (top 10 industries)

Industry, occupational activity	
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	8300
Manufacture of rubber products	7100
Manufacture of plastic products not elsewhere classified	7000
Petroleum refineries	2200
Construction	1600
Manufacture of other chemical products	1300
Education services	700
Manufacture of transport equipment	700
Wholesale and retail trade and restaurants and hotels	600
Manufacture of machinery except electrical	500
TOTAL	31600

From CAREX (1999)

production of various butadiene-based rubber and plastic polymers and other derivatives, and manufacture of rubber and plastic products, such as tyres, hoses and a variety of moulded objects (IARC, 1999).

Estimates of the number of workers potentially exposed to 1,3-butadiene have been developed by CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) in Europe. CAREX is an international information system that provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Based on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens collected from 1990 to 1993, the CAREX database estimates that 31 600 workers were exposed to 1,3-butadiene in the European Union (EU). Table 1.1 presents the number of exposed workers for 1,3-butadiene (top 10 industries) in the EU by industry (CAREX, 1999).

From the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–1983) it was estimated that approximately 52 000 workers (including approximately 1400 women) were potentially exposed to 1,3-butadiene (NIOSH, 1990).

No measurements of exposure in butadiene-monomer production before the 1970s are available, but exposure levels have decreased from up to 20 mg/m^3 to less than 2 mg/m^3 between the late 1970s and the early 2000s (IARC, 2008). In styrene-butadiene polymer production, the estimated median levels of exposure to butadiene in earlier decades varied in the range 8–20 mg/m^3, while current exposure measurements in modern facilities in North America and western Europe generally show values below 2 mg/m^3. Concentrations of butadiene-in-air reported from the People's Republic of China are somewhat higher (~4 mg/m^3) (IARC, 2008). Butadiene is not usually found in detectable concentrations in workplace air during the manufacture of finished rubber and plastic products (IARC, 1999). Regardless of the type of factory, production process, or country, some tasks are still characterized by very high exposures (~200 mg/m^3), which are typically short in duration (IARC, 2008). For a detailed description of studies on occupational exposure to butadiene and Tables with data summarizing the results, the reader is referred to *IARC Monographs* Volumes 71 and 97 (IARC, 1999, 2008).

The utility of haemoglobin adducts as biomarkers of human exposure to butadiene has been investigated in several molecular epidemiological studies that often included the measurement of urinary metabolites and personal-air

monitoring of butadiene, as well as genotoxicity end-points and metabolic phenotypes (IARC, 2008).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

Butadiene has been widely detected in ambient air but at much lower levels (μg/m^3) than reported in some occupational settings (mg/m^3). Elevated concentrations may occur in the vicinity of point sources, such as municipal structural fires, wood and brush fires; cigarette smoking; vehicle emissions and gasoline volatilization (IARC, 2008). Studies on non-occupational exposures to 1,3-butadiene have been reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1999, 2008).

In a study conducted between 1990 and 1994, concentrations of butadiene were determined in 1611 samples of outdoor air from 25 sites within 14 cities, towns or rural locations in Ontario, Canada. The mean concentration in all samples was 0.1 μg/m^3 (maximum, 1.7 μg/m^3) (Health Canada, 2000).

Dollard *et al.* (2007) measured butadiene concentrations at rural, urban background (UB), urban industry-influenced (UI) and 'busy-road-traffic' (BR) locations in the United Kingdom from 1993 to 2004. Mean rural levels dropped from 0.39 to 0.02 μg/m^3 between 1995 and 2004; mean UB levels decreased from 0.64 to 0.15 μg/m^3 in 1993–2004; mean UI levels came down from 0.85 to 0.35 μg/m^3 in 1995–2000; and mean BR levels went from 3.3 to 0.57 μg/m^3 in the period 1997–2004.

2. Cancer in Humans

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 97 (IARC, 2008) three cohort studies of workers in the butadiene-monomer industry were reviewed (Ward *et al.*, 1995; Divine & Hartman, 2001; Tsai *et al.*, 2001), along with two cohort studies of workers in the styrene–butadiene rubber (SBR) industry (McMichael *et al.*, 1974, 1976; Meinhardt *et al.*, 1982; Matanoski & Schwartz, 1987; Matanoski *et al.*, 1990, 1993; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-21-Table2.1.pdf). The excess of mortality from leukaemia in one of the butadiene-monomer industry cohorts, which did not increase with duration of exposure or with cumulative exposure, was more pronounced among workers who had been exposed during the Second World War, when exposures to butadiene had probably been higher (Divine & Hartman, 2001). These cohorts were subsequently combined, although data from one styrene-butadiene plant were excluded because the information was incomplete (Delzell *et al.*, 1996; Macaluso *et al.*, 2004; Graff *et al.*, 2005; Sathiakumar *et al.*, 2005; Delzell *et al.*, 2006; Cheng *et al.*, 2007). A series of overlapping analyses examined the mortality of approximately 17 000 male workers from eight SBR-manufacturing facilities in the USA and Canada (see Table 2.1 online). A limiting factor was that diagnosis and classification of lymphatic and haematopoietic malignancies are extremely complex, and that these underwent several changes over the course of time. Although mortality from leukaemia was only slightly elevated in the most recent updates (Sathiakumar *et al.*, 2005; Delzell *et al.*, 2006; Cheng *et al.*, 2007), large excesses of mortality from leukaemia were seen in workers in the most highly exposed areas of the plants and among hourly-paid workers, especially those who had been hired in the early years and had been employed for more than ten years. These excesses were attributable to both chronic lymphocytic and chronic myelogenous leukaemia, with significant exposure–response relationships between cumulative exposure to butadiene and mortality from both leukaemia types. The most recent analyses showed that the exposure–response for butadiene and leukaemia was independent of exposures to benzene,

styrene and dimethyl-dithiocarbamate (Delzell *et al.*, 2006; Cheng *et al.*, 2007).

The strongest evidence of an association between exposure to butadiene and non-Hodgkin lymphoma comes from studies in the butadiene-monomer industry (Ward *et al.*, 1995, 1996; Divine & Hartman, 2001). Although this association did not become stronger with duration of exposure, it was more pronounced among workers who had been exposed during the Second World War, when exposures had presumably been higher.

Whitworth *et al.* (2008) conducted an ecological study in South-eastern Texas that assessed whether census tracts with the highest ambient-air concentrations of benzene or 1,3-butadiene have a higher incidence of lymphohaematopoietic cancer in children. The analysis included 977 cases of childhood lymphohaematopoietic cancer diagnosed from 1995–2004. Estimates of airborne concentrations of benzene and 1,3-butadiene were obtained for 886 census tracts by use of the models proposed in 1999 by the US Environmental Protection Agency. Poisson-regression models were used to explore the associations between pollutant levels and census-tract cancer rates. Adjustments were made for age, sex, race/ethnicity, and socioeconomic status at the community level. Census tracts with the highest 1,3-butadiene concentrations had rate ratios of 1.4 (95%CI: 1.1–1.8), 1.7 (95%CI: 0.8–3.4), and 1.3 (95%CI: 1.0–1.8) for all leukaemia, acute myeloid leukaemia and acute lymphocytic leukaemia, respectively. A statistically significant dose–response trend was noted for all leukaemia. No association was found between 1,3-butadiene concentrations and lymphoma incidence. An excess of leukaemia was also found in association with environmental exposure to benzene, but analyses that examined both exposures simultaneously indicated that the effects were independent. [The Working Group noted that environmental levels of butadiene are considerably lower than in industrial settings but children may be a more sensitive group. However, potential confounding factors have not been fully addressed and the findings need to be confirmed in future studies.]

The mortality of women in the styrene-butadiene cohort has also been evaluated (Sathiakumar & Delzell, 2007, 2009; see Table 2.1 online). No increased risks were found for leukaemia or lymphoma. Statistically significant positive SMRs were seen for cancers of the lung and bladder. [Unlike in the male cohorts, the female cases were not confirmed pathologically, the exposure level was low, most women were short-term workers (median duration of employment was approximately 1.7 years; 70% had worked during less than four years), and only 30% of women were exposed to butadiene and styrene.]

In a further analysis of this SBR cohort, the lung-cancer risk among men and women was evaluated. Among men there was no indication of an increased risk for lung cancer and no evidence for an internal dose–response. Among women there was evidence of an increased risk for lung cancer, although there was no evidence for an internal dose–response in the exposed group (Sathiakumar & Delzell, 2009).

Overall, the epidemiological evidence from the styrene-butadiene and the butadiene-monomer industries clearly indicates an increased risk for haematolymphatic malignancies. Studies from the styrene-butadiene industry show an excess of leukaemia, and a dose–response relationship with cumulative exposure to butadiene, while studies from the monomer industry show an excess of haematolymphatic malignancies in general, attributable both to leukaemia and malignant lymphoma. The evidence for an association between exposure to butadiene and cancer of the haematolymphatic organs has gained some support by findings of an association between environmental levels of butadiene and risk for leukaemia in children.

The epidemiological evidence for an association with specific subtypes of haematolymphatic malignancies is weaker, mainly since numbers are lower, giving imprecise risk estimates. However, when malignant lymphomas and leukaemias are distinguished, the evidence is strongest for leukaemia.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

3.1 1,3-Butadiene

Studies on the carcinogenesis of 1,3-butadiene in rats and mice have been reviewed in previous IARC *Monographs* (IARC, 1999, 2008) and by Grosse *et al.* (2007). The results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1. There were no additional studies reported in the published literature since *IARC Monograph* Volume 97 (IARC, 2008).

1,3-Butadiene was tested for carcinogenicity by inhalation exposure in one study in rats and four studies in mice.

Inhalation of 1,3-butadiene induced tumours in rats at exposure concentrations ranging from 1000 to 8000 ppm [2200–17650 mg/m^3], and in multiple organs in mice at exposure concentrations ranging from 6.25 to 1250 ppm [13.8–2760 mg/m^3]. In rats, 1,3-butadiene caused a significantly increased incidence of carcinomas of the Zymbal gland, sarcomas of the uterus, adenomas and carcinomas (combined) of the mammary gland, and follicular cell adenomas of the thyroid gland in females. In males, it caused malignant gliomas and adenomas of the pancreas and testes in males (Owen *et al.*, 1987; Owen & Glaister, 1990; Melnick *et al.*, 1993; Melnick & Huff, 1993). In mice of both sexes, 1,3-butadiene caused a significantly increased incidence of Harderian gland adenomas and carcinomas, heart haemangiosarcomas, lymphoid tissue neoplasms (lymphoma, histiocytic sarcoma), lung adenomas and carcinomas, hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas, and fore-stomach papillomas and carcinomas. It caused mammary gland cancers, benign tumours and carcinomas of the ovary, and skin sarcomas in females. It also caused preputial gland carcinomas and kidney tubule adenomas in males (NTP, 1984, 1993; Huff *et al.*, 1985; Miller *et al.*, 1989; Melnick *et al.*, 1990a, b, 1993; Melnick & Huff, 1993; Hong *et al.*, 2000; Melnick & Sills, 2001; Kim *et al.*, 2005). No increased incidence of tumours was observed in one study in mice exposed once to 1,3-butadiene at concentrations up to 10 000 ppm [22000 mg/m^3] (Bucher *et al.*, 1993).

3.2 Diepoxybutane

Diepoxybutane, a metabolite of 1,3-butadiene, was tested for carcinogenicity by inhalation in one study in rats and one study in mice, by four skin-application studies in mice, by one subcutaneous injection study in rats and two such studies in mice, and by one gavage and one intraperitoneal injection study in mice (Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4).

Diepoxybutane increased the incidence of adenomas of the Harderian gland in female mice, and of squamous cell carcinoma of the nose in female rats after inhalation exposure (Henderson *et al.*, 1999, 2000). Subcutaneous injection resulted in an increased incidence of fibrosarcomas in female rats and female mice. The gavage study in mice did not produce any tumours (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1966). Intra-peritoneal injection led to an increased incidence of lung tumours in strain A/J mice (Shimkin *et al.*, 1966). Two skin-application studies in mice resulted in an increased incidence of dermoid carcinomas (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1963, 1965).

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to 1,3-butadiene and diepoxybutane by inhalation

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
1,3-Butadiene				
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) killed at 52 wk, remainder killed when survival was approximately 20% (105 wk for F, 111 wk for M) Owen & Glaister (1990), Melnick *et al.* (1993), Melnick & Huff (1993)	0, 1 000, 8 000 ppm, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 110/group	Pancreas (exocrine adenomas): 3/100, 1/100, 10/100 (M); 2/100, 0/100, 0/100 (F)	$P \leq 0.001$ (high-dose M) $P \leq 0.001$ (trend M)	99.2% pure 16 deaths occurred during the first yr. During the second yr mortality increased with increasing dosage. Increased mortality in females was due to mammary tumours and in males due to renal lesions. The incidence of uterine sarcomas and Zymbal-gland tumours were similar to the historical laboratory control. Zymbal-gland tumours were noted between 76 and 90 wk.
		Uterus (sarcomas): 1/100, 4/100, 5/100 (F)	$P \leq 0.005$ (trend F)	
		Zymbal gland (adenomas): 1/100, 1/100, 1/100(M); 0/100, 0/100, 0/100 (F) Zymbal gland (carcinomas): 0/100, 0/100, 1/100 (M); 0/100, 0/100, 4/100 (F)	Carcinoma: $P \leq 0.05$ (trend F)	
		Mammary gland (benign): 0/100, 2/100, 0/100 (M); 32/100, 64/100, 55/100 (F)	NS	
		Mammary gland (malignant): 1/100, 0/100, 0/100 (M); 18/100, 15/100, 26/100 (F)	NS	
		Mammary gland (total combined benign and malignant mammary tumours): 1/100, 2/100, 0/100 (M); 50/100, 79/100, 81/100 (F)	$P \leq 0.001$ (trend F)	
		Thyroid (follicular cell adenomas): 3/100, 5/100, 1/100 (M); 0/100, 2/100, 10/100 (F)	$P \leq 0.01$ (trend F)	
		Thyroid (carcinomas): 1/100, 0/100, 0/100 (M); 0/100, 2/100, 1/100 (F)	NS	
		Testis (leydig cell tumours): 0/100, 3/100, 8/100 (M)	$P \leq 0.001$ (trend M)	
		Brain (glial cell tumours (malignant)): 1/100, 4/100, 5/100 (M)	$P \leq 0.05$ (trend M)	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 60–61 wk NTP (1984), Huff *et al.* (1985), Miller *et al.* (1989), Melnick *et al.* (1993), Melnick & Huff (1993), Hong *et al.* (2000), Melnick & Sills (2001), Kim *et al.* (2005)	0, 625, 1 250 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk. 50/group	Lung: (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas): 2/50, 12/49, 11/49 (M); 3/49, 9/48, 20/49 (F)	$P < 0.001$ (trend), $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	> 99% pure The survival of both dose-groups of mice of each sex was significantly less than that of the corresponding controls. The study was planned for 103 wk, but was terminated after 60 wk for males and 61 wk for females, because of poor survival ($P < 0.01$) in all exposed groups due to malignant tumours in multiple organs. Malignant lymphomas and haemangiosarcomas were considered the major cause of early death in these studies.
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar carcinomas): 0/50, 2/49, 5/49 (M); 0/49, 6/48, 8/49 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.018$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas or carcinomas): 2/50, 14/49, 15/49 (M); 3/49, 12/48, 23/49 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Lymphoma (all lymphomas): 0/50, 23/50, 29/50 (M); 1/50, 10/49, 10/49 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P = 0.006$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.003$ (F)	
		Heart (haemangiosarcomas): 0/50, 16/49, 7/49 (M); 0/50, 11/48, 18/49 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Fore-stomach (all papillomas): 0/49, 5/40, 0/44; (M) 0/49, 4/42, 10/49 (F)	$P = 0.036$, $P < 0.001$, – (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Fore-stomach (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/49, 2/40, 1/44 (M); 0/49, 1/42, 1/49 (F)	NS	
		Fore-stomach (all papillomas or carcinomas): 0/49, 7/40, 1/44 (M); 0/49, 5/42, 10/49 (F)	$P = 0.006$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.248$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Liver (hepatocellular adenomas): 0/50, 1/47, 4/49 (F)	$P = 0.015$, $P = 0.278$, $P = 0.030$ (F)	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 60–61 wk NTP (1984), Huff *et al.* (1985), Miller *et al.* (1989), Melnick *et al.* (1993), Melnick & Huff (1993), Hong *et al.* (2000), Melnick & Sills (2001), Kim *et al.* (2005) Contd.		Liver (hepatocellular carcinomas): 0/50, 1/47, 1/49 (F)	NS	
		Liver (hepatocellular adenomas or carcinomas): 0/50, 2/47, 5/49 (F)	$P = 0.009$, $P = 0.048$, $P = 0.015$ (F)	
		Mammary gland (acinar cell carcinomas): 0/50, 2/49, 6/49 (F)	$P = 0.004$, $P = 0.048$, $P = 0.007$ (F)	
		Mammary gland (adenosquamous carcinomas): 0/50, 4/49, 0/49 (F)	$P = 0.575$, $P = 0.030$, – (F)	
		Ovary (benign granulosa cell tumours): 0/49, 6/45, 12/48 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Preputial gland (carcinomas): 0/50, 3/50, 2/50 (M)	NS	
		Brain (gliomas): 0/50, 2/50, 1/50 (M)	NS	
		Zymbal gland (carcinomas): 0/50, 0/50, 2/50 (M); 0/50, 0/49, 1/49 (F)	NS	
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 2 yr stop study Bucher *et al.* (1993)	0, 1 000, 5 000, 10 000 ppm for 2 h, then held for 2 yr 60/group	Malignant lymphomas: 7/59, 8/58, 8/58, 10/58 (M); 13/57, 19/56, 18/57, 13/58 (F)	NS	Purity NR
		Forestomach (squamous neoplasms): 0/59, 1/58, 1/58, 3/58 (M); 0/57, 1/56, 0/57, 0/58 (F)	NS	
		Mammary gland (acinar cell neoplasms): 0/59, 0/58, 0/58, 1/58 (M); 2/57, 1/56, 3/57, 4/58 (F)	NS	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 2 yr Miller *et al.* (1989), Melnick *et al.* (1990a, b, 1993), Melnick & Huff (1993), NTP (1993), Melnick & Sills (2001), Kim *et al.* (2005)	0, 6.25, 20, 62.5, 200, 625 ppm, 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 103 wk 70/group for dosages 0–200 ppm, 90/group for 625 ppm	Lymphoma (all lymphomas): 4/50, 2/50, 4/50, 6/50, 2/50, 51/73 (M); 6/50, 12/50, 11/50, 7/50, 9/50, 32/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$ (trend), $P = 0.302$N, $P = 0.528$, $P = 0.238$, $P = 0.627$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.068$, $P = 0.029$, $P = 0.055$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$(F)	> 99% pure Two-yr survival was decreased for M and F exposed to ≥ 20 ppm due to chemical-related tumours. No F exposed to 200 or 625 ppm or M exposed to 625 ppm survived till the end of the experiments.
		Lymphocytic lymphomas: 2/50, 0/50, 2/50, 4/50, 2/50, 49/73 (M); 1/50, 3/50, 6/50, 3/50, 8/50, 31/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.227$N, $P = 0.671$, $P = 0.253$, $P = 0.529$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.278$, $P = 0.026$, $P = 0.160$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Histiocytic sarcomas: 0/50, 0/50, 4/50, 5/50, 7/50, 4/73 (M); 3/50, 2/50, 7/50, 4/50, 7/50, 4/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, –, $P = 0.051$, $P = 0.021$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.043$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.518$N, $P = 0.077$, $P = 0.195$, $P = 0.002$, $P = 0.038$ (F)	
		Heart (haemangiosarcomas): 0/50, 0/49, 1/50, 5/48, 20/48, 4/73 (M); 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 1/49, 21/50, 23/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, –, $P = 0.451$, $P = 0.011$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, –, –, $P = 0.392$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas): 18/50, 20/50, 10/50, 25/49, 21/50, 3/73 (M); 4/50, 11/50, 12/50, 17/50, 14/50, 17/78 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.579$N, $P = 0.269$N, $P = 0.004$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.031$, $P = 0.003$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 2 yr Miller *et al.* (1989), Melnick *et al.* (1990a, b, 1993), Melnick & Huff (1993), NTP (1993), Melnick & Sills (2001), Kim *et al.* (2005) Contd.		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenocarcinomas or carcinomas): 5/50, 6/50, 11,50, 12/49, 22/50, 3/73 (M);0/50, 5/50, 11/50, 9/50, 19/50, 8/78 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.577$, $P = 0.017$, $P = 0.006$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M), $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.029$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Lung (combined alveolar/ bronchiolar adenomas, adenocarcinomas, or carcinomas): 21/50, 23/50, 19/50, 31/49, 35/50, 3/73 (M); 4/50, 15/50, 19/50, 24/50, 25/50, 22/78 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.552$N, $P = 0.276$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.004$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Fore-stomach (squamous cell papillomas): 1/50, 0/50, 0/50, 1/50, 7/50, 2/73 (M); 0/50, 0/50, 2/50, 1/50, 3/50, 16/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.481$N, $P = 0.545$N, $P = 0.679$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, –, $P = 0.149$, $P = 0.260$, $P = 0.004$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Fore-stomach (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 1/50, 2/73 (M); 0/50, 0/50, 1/50, 1/50, 1/50, 6/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, –, –, –, $P = 0.325$, $P = 0.018$ (M); $P < 0.001$, –, $P = 0.414$, $P = 0.277$, $P = 0.374$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Fore-stomach (squamous cell papillomas or squamous cell carcinomas): 1/50, 0/50, 0/50, 1/50, 8/50, 4/73 (M); 0/50, 0/50, 3/50, 2/50, 4/50, 22/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.481$N, $P = 0.545$N, $P = 0.679$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$,–, $P = 0.056$, $P = 0.044$, $P = 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Liver (hepatocellular adenomas): 13/50, 13/50, 19/50, 16/48, 24/48, 5/72 (M); 11/49, 10/49, 9/50, 14/50, 12/50, 1/80	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.480$, $P = 0.036$, $P = 0.056$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.590$, $P = 0.419$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 2 yr Miller *et al.* (1989), Melnick *et al.* (1990a, b, 1993), Melnick & Huff (1993), NTP (1993), Melnick & Sills (2001), Kim *et al.* (2005) Contd.		Liver (hepatocellular carcinomas): 11/50, 16/50, 16/50, 17/48, 26/48, 1/72 (M); 4/49, 6/49, 8/50, 9/50, 8/50, 1/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.289$, $P = 0.071$, $P = 0.020$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.009$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.330$, $P = 0.064$, $P = 0.003$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.150$ (F)	
		Liver (hepatocellular adenomas or carcinomas): 21/50, 23/50, 30/50, 25/48, 33/48, 5/72 (M); 15/49, 14/49, 15/50, 19/50, 16/50, 2/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.562$N, $P = 0.011$, $P = 0.022$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.555$, $P = 0.162$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Harderian gland (adenomas): 6/50, 7/50, 8/50, 19/50, 30/50, 6/73 (M); 8/50, 10/50, 6/50, 15/50, 20/50, 9/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.575$, $P = 0.218$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.304$, $P = 0.544$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Harderian gland (carcinomas): 0/50, 1/50, 1/50, 3/50, 2/50, 0/73 (M); 0/50, 1/50, 1/50, 0/50,1/50, 0/80 (F)	$P = 0.080$, $P = 0.522$, $P = 0.425$, $P = 0.067$, $P = 0.166$, – (M); logistic regression test $P = 0.873$N, $P = 0.493$, $P = 0.631$, –, $P = 0.085$, – (F)	
		Harderian gland (adenomas or carcinomas): 6/50, 7/50, 9/50, 20/50, 31/50, 6/73 (M); 8/50, 10/50, 7/50, 15/50, 20/50, 9/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.575$, $P = 0.141$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M); $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.304$, $P = 0.426$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Preputial gland (carcinomas): 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 5/50, 0/73 (M)	$P < 0.001$, –, –, –, $P < 0.001$, – (M)	
		Ovary (benign granulosa cell tumours): 1/49, 0/49, 1/48, 6/50, 6/50,6/79	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.517$N, $P = 0.680$, $P = 0.003$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Ovary (malignant granulosa cell tumours): 0/49, 0/49, 0/48, 3/50, 2/50, 0/79 (F)	$P < 0.001$, –, –, $P = 0.018$, $P = 0.003$, –, (F)	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 2 yr Miller *et al.* (1989), Melnick *et al.* (1990a, b, 1993), Melnick & Huff (1993), NTP (1993), Melnick & Sills (2001), Kim *et al.* (2005) Contd.		Ovary (benign or malignant granulosa cell tumours): 1/49, 0/49, 1/48, 9/50, 8/50, 6/79 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.517$N, $P = 0.680$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Mammary gland (adenoacanthomas): 0/50, 1/50, 2/50, 6/50, 4/50, 0/80 (F)	$P = 0.025$, $P = 0.489$, $P = 0.152$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.021$, $P =$ – (F)	
		Mammary gland (carcinomas): 0/50, 2/50, 2/50, 6/50, 11/50,12/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.221$, $P = 0.192$, $P = 0.008$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Mammary gland (malignant mixed tumours): 0/50,0/50, 0/50,0/50,0/50, 4/80 (F)	$P =$ < 0.001, –, –, –, –, $P = 0.003$ (F)	
		Mammary gland (adenoacanthomas, carcinomas, or malignant mixed tumours): 0/50, 2/50, 4/50, 12/50, 15/50, 16/80 (F)	Logistic regression test: $P = 0.026$, $P = 0.228$, $P = 0.056$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.004$, $P < 0.001$ (F)	
		Kidney (renal tubule adenomas): 0/50, 1/50, 0/50, 3/48, 1/49, 0/73 (M); 0/49, 0/49, 0/48, 0/50, 2/50, 0/80 (F)	Logistic regression test: $P = 0.630$, $P = 0.522$, –, $P = 0.053$, $P = 0.580$, – (M); $P = 0.816$, –, –, –, $P = 0.276$, – (F)	
		Small intestine (adenomas or carcinomas): 0/50, 1/50, 1/50, 1/50, 2/50, 0/73 (M); 0/50, 3/50, 0/50, 1/50, 0/50, 0/80 (F)	$P = 1.000$, $P = 0.101$, –, $P = 0.375$, –, – (F)	
		Skin, subcutaneous tissue (neurofibrosarcomas or sarcomas): 1/50, 2/50, 3/50, 5/50, 3/50, 3/80 (F)	$P < 0.001$, $P = 0.476$, $P = 0.238$, $P = 0.017$, $P = 0.002$, $P = 0.013$ (F)	
		Zymbal gland (adenomas): 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 1/80 (F)	NS	
		Zymbal gland: carcinoma: 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 1/80 (F)	NS	
		Zymbal gland (adenomas or carcinomas): 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 2/80	NS	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M) 2 yr stop study Melnick *et al.* (1993), Melnick & Huff (1993), NTP (1993), Melnick & Sills (2001), Kim *et al.* (2005)	0, 200 ppm for 40 wk, 625 ppm for 13 wk, 312 ppm for 52 wk, or 625 ppm for 26 wk 50/group	Lymphoma (all lymphomas): 4/50, 8/50, 22/50, 8/50, 33/50 (M)	–, $P = 0.023$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	> 99% pure Survival of all stop-exposure groups was markedly lower than that of controls due to development of malignant tumours, particularly malignant lymphoma and haemangiosarcoma of the heart. Neoplasms were induced usually after only 13 wk of exposure.
		Lymphocytic lymphomas: 2/50, 6/50, 17/50, 4/50, 30/50 (M)	–, $P = 0.033$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.034$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Histiocytic sarcomas: 0/50, 5/50, 2/50, 7/50, 2/50 (M)	–, $P = 0.006$, $P < 0.011$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.036$ (M)	
		Heart (haemangiosarcomas): 0/50, 15/50, 7/50, 33/50, 13/50 (M)	–, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas): 18/50, 24/50, 17/50, 26/50, 12/50 (M)	–, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, (M)	
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenocarcinomas or carcinomas): 5/50, 22/50, 18/50, 16/50, 11/50 (M)	–, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas, adenocarcinomas, or carcinomas): 21/50, 36/50, 28/50, 32/50, 17/50 (M)	–, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Liver (hepatocellular adenomas): 13/50, 27/49, 19/49, 19/50, 11/50 (M)	–, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Fore-stomach (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/50, 0/50, 4/50, 5/50, 6/50 (M)	–, –, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Harderian gland (adenomas): 6/50, 26/50, 20/50, 28/50, 13/50 (M)	–, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, (M)	
		Harderian gland (carcinomas): 0/50, 2/50, 4/50, 2/50, 0/50 (M)	–, $P = 0.182$, $P < 0.001$, $P = 0.028$, – (M)	
		Harderian gland (adenomas or carcinomas): 6/50, 27/50, 23/50, 30/50, 13/50 (M)	–, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Preputial gland (adenomas): 0/50, 0/50, 1/50, 0/50, 0/50 (M)	NS	
		Preputial gland (carcinomas): 0/50, 1/50, 4/50, 4/50, 3/50 (M)	–, $P = 0.247$, $P = 0.012$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M) 2 yr stop study Melnick *et al.* (1993), Melnick & Huff (1993), NTP (1993), Melnick & Sills (2001), Kim *et al.* (2005) Contd.		Preputial gland (adenomas or carcinomas): 0/50, 1/50, 5/50, 4/50, 3/50 (M)	–, $P = 0.247$, $P = 0.003$, $P < 0.001$, $P < 0.001$ (M)	
		Kidney: renal tubule adenoma: 0/50, 4/48, 1/50, 3/49, 1/50 (M)	–, $P = 0.016$, $P = 0.181$, $P = 0.007$, $P = 0.278$ (M)	
		Brain (malignant gliomas): 0/50, 0/50, 2/50, 0/50, 1/50 (M)	NS	
		Brain (neuroblastomas): 0/50, 0/50, 2/50, 0/50, 0/50 (M)	NS	
		Zymbal gland (adenomas): 1/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50, 0/50 (M)	NS	
		Zymbal gland (carcinomas): 0/50, 1/50, 2/50, 0/50, 2/50 (M)	NS	
		Zymbal gland (adenomas or carcinomas): 1/50, 1/50, 2/50, 0/50, 2/50	–. $P = 0.531$, $P = 0.178$, $P = 0.998$, $P = 0.009$ (M)	
Diepoxybutane				
Mouse, B6C3F1 (F) 18 mo Henderson *et al.* (1999, 2000)	0, 2.5, 5.0 ppm diepoxybutane 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 6 wk 50/group	Harderian gland (adenomas): 0/40, 2/42, 5/36	$P < 0.05$ (high-dose F)	Purity > 99%
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (F) 18 mo Henderson *et al.* (1999, 2000)	0, 2.5, 5.0 ppm diepoxybutane 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 6 wk 50/group	Nose (papillomas): 0/47, 0/48, 2/48 (F)	[NS]	Purity > 99%
		Nose (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/47, 11/48, 21/48 (F)	–, [$P < 0.001$], [$P < 0.001$]	
		Nose (adenocarcinomas): 0/47, 0/48, 2/48 (F)	[NS]	
		Nose (sarcomas): 0/47, 2/48, 2/48 (F)	[NS]	

d, day or days; F, female; h, hour or hours; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

Table 3.2 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to diepoxybutane by intra-peritoneal or subcutaneous injection

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
D,L-Diepoxybutane Rat, Eastern Sprague-Dawley (F) 550 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1966)	**Subcutaneous injection** Tricaprylin vehicle (0.1 ml) control, untreated control, or 1 mg D,L-diepoxybutane injected into the axillary region once/wk 50/group	Fibrosarcomas at injection site: 0/50, 0/50, 9/50	[$P < 0.01$]	
		Adenocarcinomas at injection site: 1/50, 0/50/, 1/50	[NS]	
		Fibroadenomas: 0/50, 1/50, 0/50	[NS]	
Diepoxybutane Mouse, A/J (M, F) 39 wk Shimkin *et al.* (1966)	**Intraperitoneal injection** Total dose: 0, 19.4, 78.1, 314, 1 255, 2 232 µmol/kg bw in water, 12 injections given over a 4-wk period 165 M and 195 F vehicle control at start; 30, 30, 45, 30, 30 (total M, F)/group at start	Lung tumours (M, F combined): 107/339 (32%), 6/28 (21%), 12/30 (40%), 17/31 (55%), 18/28 (64%), 21/27 (78%)	NR	
	Total dose: 0, 34.8, 139, 558, 2 232 µmol/kg bw in tricaprylin, 12 injections given over a 4-wk period 60 M and 60 F tricaprylin vehicle control at start; 30, 30, 30, 30 (total M, F)/group at start	Lung tumours (M, F combined): 37/108 (34%), 12/30 (33%), 13/30 (43%), 12/25 (48%), 12/24 (50%)	NR	

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
D,L-Diepoxybutane Mouse, ICR/Ha Swiss (F) 401 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1966)	**Subcutaneous injection** Tricaprylin vehicle (0.05 ml) control, untreated control, or subcutaneous injection of 1.1 mg D,L-diepoxy-butane into the axillary region once/wk 30/group	Fibrosarcomas at injection site 0/30, 0/30, 5/30 Adenocarcinomas at injection site: 0/30, 0/30, 0/30	[$P < 0.05$] [NS]	
D,L-Diepoxybutane Mouse, ICR/Ha Swiss (F) 589 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1966)	**Subcutaneous injection** Tricaprylin-vehicle (0.05 ml) control, untreated control, or subcutaneous injection of 0.1 mg D,L-diepoxy-butane into the axillary region once/wk 50/group	Fibrosarcomas at injection site: 0/50, 0/50, 5/50 Adenocarcinomas at injection site: 0/50, 0/50, 2/50	[NS] [NS]	

bw, body weight; d, day or days; F, female; M, male; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks

Table 3.3 Carcinogenicity study in rats exposed intragastrically to diepoxybutane

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
D,L-Diepoxybutane Rat, Eastern Sprague-Dawley (F) 363 d Van Duuren *et al.* (1966)	Tricaprylin vehicle (0.5 ml) 0 or 5 mg D,L-diepoxybutane once/wk 5/group	0/5, 0/5	[NS]	

d, day or days; F, female; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks

Table 3.4 Carcinogenicity studies in mice exposed to diepoxybutane by skin application

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
D,L-Diepoxybutane Mouse, Swiss-Millerton (M) 78 d (median survival, treated group) Van Duuren *et al.* (1963)	Acetone-vehicle control, untreated control, or 100 mg D,L-1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane in acetone per application on the back 3 × /wk 120 acetone-vehicle controls, 276 untreated controls, 30/group for treated	Skin papillomas: 8/120, 13/267, 1/30 Squamous dermoid carcinomas: 0/120, 1/267, 1/30	[NS] [NS]	
meso-Diepoxybutane Mouse, Swiss-Millerton (M) 154 d (median survival, treated group) Van Duuren *et al.* (1963)	Acetone-vehicle control, untreated Control, or 100 mg *meso*-diepoxybutane in acetone per application on the back 3 × /wk 120 acetone-vehicle controls, 276 untreated controls, 30/group for treated	Skin papillomas: 8/120, 13/267, 2/30 Squamous dermoid carcinomas: 0/120, 1/267, 4/30	[NS] [$P < 0.005$]	
D,L-Diepoxybutane Mouse, Swiss-Millerton (F) Lifetime Van Duuren *et al.* (1965)	Acetone-vehicle control, untreated control, 30 mg, or 100 mg D,L-diepoxybutane painted on the back 3 × /wk 120 acetone-vehicle controls, 60 untreated controls, 30/group for treated	Skin papillomas: 0/120, 0/60, 10/30, 1/30 Squamous dermoid carcinomas: 0/120, 0/60, 6/30, 0/30	[$P < 0.0001$, 30 mg-treated group] [$P < 0.0001$, 30 mg-treated group]	Median survival of 472, 441, 475 and 165 d, respectively
meso-Diepoxybutane Mouse, Swiss-Millerton (F) Lifetime Van Duuren *et al.* (1965)	Acetone-vehicle control, untreated control, 30 mg, or 100 mg *meso*-diepoxybutane painted on the back 3 × /wk 120 acetone-vehicle controls, 60 untreated controls, 30/group for treated	Skin papillomas: 0/120, 0/60, 1/30, 5/30 Squamous dermoid carcinomas: 0/120, 0/60, 0/30, 4/30	[$P < 0.0005$, 100 mg-treated group] [$P < 0.005$, 100 mg-treated group]	Median survival of 472, 441, 491 and 357 d, respectively

d, day or days; F, female; M, male; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks

4. Other Relevant Data

Experimental studies on butadiene have been evaluated in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1999, 2008). There is an extensive body of data on the mechanism of butadiene-induced carcinogenicity, encompassing toxicokinetics, metabolism, biomarkers, genotoxicity, and molecular biology. The carcinogenicity of butadiene is mediated by its metabolites. This view is based largely on the observations that butadiene-induced mutagenicity requires metabolic activation (Jackson *et al.*, 2000) and that the DNA-reactive epoxides formed during butadiene bio-transformation are direct-acting mutagens (IARC, 1999, 2008). Thus, butadiene metabolism, formation of reactive epoxides, interaction of these epoxides with DNA, and resultant mutagenicity are likely key steps in the mechanism of carcinogenicity for this agent.

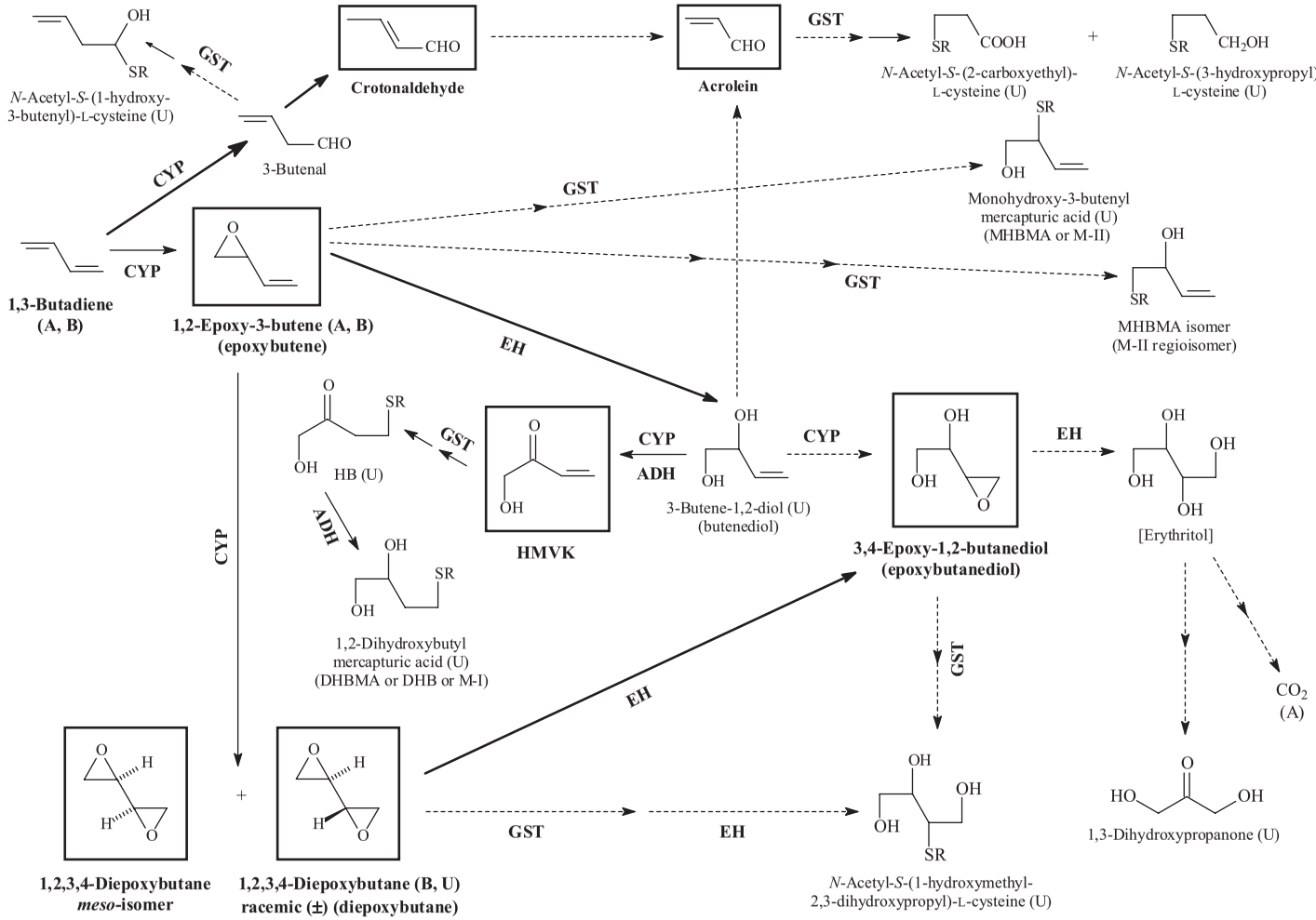
4.1 Metabolism of butadiene

The detailed pathways in the metabolism of butadiene have been described previously (Himmelstein *et al.*, 1997; IARC 1999, 2008) and are outlined in Fig. 4.1. Briefly, the first step in butadiene metabolism involves cytochrome P450 (CYP)-mediated oxidation to epoxybutene (Himmelstein *et al.*, 1997). At low concentrations of butadiene, metabolism via CYP2E1 predominates (IARC, 1999, 2008). Epoxybutene may be metabolized by conjugation with glutathione (GSH) mediated by glutathione *S*-transferase (GST), or by hydrolysis catalysed by epoxide hydrolase (EH) (Csanády *et al.*, 1992; Himmelstein *et al.*, 1997). Epoxybutene may also be oxidized to multiple diastereomers of diepoxybutane (Seaton *et al.*, 1995; Krause & Elfarra, 1997), while dihydroxybutene formed by hydrolysis of epoxybutene may be oxidized to epoxybutanediol. The latter epoxides are also detoxified by GST or EH (Boogaard *et al.*, 1996a, b). Partial hydrolysis of diepoxybutane also produces epoxybutanediol.

Each of the epoxide intermediates may contribute to the mutagenicity and carcinogenicity of butadiene. Factors that impact their relative contributions include concentration in tissues, reactivity with DNA, and repair of the ensuing DNA adducts. Variability in the expression of key enzymes involved in the biotransformation of butadiene may have an effect on metabolite concentrations in tissues, and on the subsequent mutagenic response (IARC, 2008). For example, genetically modified mice that are deficient in microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEH) activity are more susceptible than wild-type mice to the mutagenic effects of butadiene and diepoxybutane, presumably because tissue concentrations of the epoxides are higher in the mEH-deficient mice (Wickliffe *et al.*, 2003). The detection of metabolites derived from hydroxymethylvinylketone and crotonaldehyde in the urine of rats or mice treated with butenediol suggests that these compounds may also be formed during the metabolism of butadiene (Sprague & Elfarra, 2003, 2004). The potential contribution of these DNA-alkylating agents (hydroxymethylvinylketone and crotonaldehyde) to the mutagenicity and carcinogenicity of butadiene is not known.

The enzymes that catalyse epoxide formation and elimination are polymorphic in human populations and some may be induced by a variety of environmental and pharmaceutical agents. While some reports indicate that genetic polymorphisms in GST and mEH affect the in-vitro mutagenicity of butadiene-derived epoxides or the in-vivo mutagenicity of butadiene in occupationally exposed workers (Wiencke *et al.*, 1995; Abdel-Rahman *et al.*, 2003), the extent to which these enzyme polymorphisms influence the carcinogenicity of butadiene is not known. Rates of butadiene metabolism have been reported for human tissues cultured *in vitro*. However, the range of observed rates is limited by the extent of the inter-individual variability in CYP, EH

Fig. 4.1 Metabolic pathways of butadiene deduced from findings in mammalian in-vitro systems and in mammals *in vivo*



A, B, U, metabolites in exhaled air, blood, urine, respectively; ADH, alcohol dehydrogenase; CYP, cytochrome P450; DHB, 4-(*N*-acetyl-L-cystein-*S*-yl)-1,2-dihydroxybutane; EH, epoxide hydrolase; GST, glutathione-*S*-transferase; HB, 4-(*N*-acetyl-L-cystein-*S*-yl)-1-hydroxy-2-butanone; HMVK, hydroxymethylvinyl ketone
Solid frame, electrophilic metabolites that can form DNA or haemoglobin adducts; dashed lines, assumed pathways
From IARC (2008)

and GST activities of the tissues sampled, and by the fact that only small numbers of human liver and lung samples were analysed (Csanády, *et al.*, 1992; Seaton, *et al.*, 1995; Boogaard, *et al.* 1996 a, b; Bolt *et al.*, 2003; Thier *et al.*, 2003; Norppa, 2004; Schlade-Bartusiak *et al.*, 2004). Thus, the actual kinetic range of the metabolism of butadiene in the human population is unknown.

The metabolism of butadiene in mice and rats shows linear elimination kinetics at exposures of up to about 1000 ppm [2210 mg/m^3] (Kreiling *et al.*, 1986b). Responses that increase proportionally above the levels of metabolic saturation probably represent effects of the parent compound. In the range of linear kinetics, mice metabolize butadiene about twice as rapidly as do rats. Although epoxybutene is formed primarily through CYP-mediated oxidation of butadiene, the formation of this alkylating agent by a myeloperoxidase-catalysed reaction in bone-marrow cells (Maniglier-Poulet *et al.*, 1995) may be relevant to the induction of haematopoietic cancers in mice and humans.

Data on urinary metabolites indicate that the elimination of epoxybutene in mice occurs to a greater extent by conjugation with GSH than by hydrolysis (IARC, 1999, 2008). Although no studies have been reported that characterize the full profile of urinary metabolites of butadiene in humans, the high ratio of 1,2-dihydroxybutyl-mercapturic acid (DHBMA) *vs* monohydroxy-3-butenyl-mercapturic acid (MHBMA) in exposed workers indicates that epoxybutene is preferentially metabolized by hydrolysis in humans (IARC, 2008). In rats, metabolic elimination of epoxybutene formed from butadiene occurs to a similar extent by hydrolysis or GSH conjugation. In molecular epidemiological studies of occupational exposure to butadiene, the ratio of MHBMA to MHBMA + DHBMA was lower in workers who were homozygous for *GSTM1*-null and *GSTT1*-null (Albertini *et al.*, 2001, 2003).

The formation of epoxybutanediol or diepoxybutane requires a second oxidation of either butenediol or epoxybutene, respectively. At increasing exposure concentrations of butadiene, competition between butadiene and butenediol or epoxybutene for CYP may limit the extent to which the second oxidation reaction may occur. Consequently, concentration of epoxybutanediol in blood is greater in rats exposed to 200 ppm [442 mg/m3] butadiene than in those exposed to 1000 ppm [2210 mg/m^3] or higher (Filser *et al.*, 2007). Competitive inhibition by butadiene of the second oxidation (Filser *et al.*, 2001) may account for the greater *Hprt* mutation efficiency in rats exposed to 62.5 ppm [138 mg/m^3] or mice exposed to 3 ppm [6.63 mg/m^3] compared with exposure of either species to 625 or 1250 ppm [1381 or 2762.5 mg/m^3] (Meng *et al.*, 2007). Thus, high-dose studies of butadiene (> 625 ppm) in animals may not adequately reveal the full mutagenic or carcinogenic potential of this substance at lower levels of exposure.

4.2 Haemoglobin adducts

While haemoglobin adducts are not causally related to mutagenic events, they offer an effective measure of exposure to reactive intermediates of chemicals. Haemoglobin adducts accumulate over the life-span of the erythrocyte, which is approximately 120 days in humans. Three adducts have been identified following reaction of butadiene epoxides with haemoglobin: *N*-(2-hydroxy-3-butenyl)valine (MHbVal), *N*,*N*-(2,3-dihydroxy-1,4-butadiyl) valine (PyrVal) and *N*-(2,3,4-trihydroxybutyl)valine (THbVal). These adducts are considered to reflect blood concentrations of epoxybutene, diepoxybutane and epoxybutanediol, respectively. Each of these adducts has been measured in rats and mice exposed to butadiene at concentrations as low as 3 ppm [6.63 mg/m3]. At equivalent exposures to butadiene, the levels of MHbVal and PyrVal were higher in mice than in rats, while levels of the major adduct, THbVal, were similar in these species (Boysen *et al.*, 2004, 2007). The formation

of each of these adducts in mice and rats was more efficient at 3 ppm than at higher exposure concentrations of butadiene.

MHbVal and THbVal have also been measured in workers exposed to butadiene (mean 8-hour TWA exposures, 0.3–0.8 ppm [0.66–1.76 mg/m^3]), while PyrVal could not be detected in workers exposed to mean concentrations of 0.37 ppm [0.82 mg/m^3]. In all samples, the amount of the PyrVal adduct was below the limit of quantification for the assay (Albertini *et al.*, 2003, 2007).

Species-specific differences in the amount of these haemoglobin adducts reflect differences in exposure to butadiene, blood concentrations of the epoxide intermediates, reactivity of the epoxide with the *N*-terminal valine and other reactive sites in haemoglobin, and the half-life of the red blood cell. When the amounts of adducts are normalized per gram of haemoglobin per ppm of butadiene, the levels of MHbVal adducts in workers are slightly lower than those in rats exposed to 3 ppm [6.63 mg/m^3] butadiene, while the levels of THbVal adducts are higher in workers than in rats or mice exposed to 3 ppm butadiene. These data demonstrate the systemic availability of epoxybutene and epoxybutanediol in workers exposed to occupational levels of butadiene. In these workers, the THbVal-adduct levels are influenced by the combined polymorphisms for *CYP2E1*, *GSTM1* and *GSTT1* genes (Fustinoni *et al.*, 2002).

4.3 DNA adducts

The major DNA adducts formed in the liver, lung and kidney of rats and mice exposed to butadiene are at the N7 position of guanine. These adducts are: N7-(2-hydroxy-3-butenyl) guanine (G1); N7-(1-(hydroxymethyl)-2-propenyl)guanine (G2); N7-(1-(hydroxymethyl)-2,3-dihydroxypropyl)guanine (G3); N7-(2,3,4-trihydroxybut-1-yl)guanine (G4). The G4 adducts are much more abundant than the G1 and G2 adducts, which are derived from epoxybutene (Koc *et al.*, 1999). The G4 adducts reach a plateau in rats after exposure to about 62 ppm [137 mg/m^3] butadiene, while G1 and G2 adducts increase nearly linearly with exposures to butadiene of up to 625 ppm [1381 mg/m^3]. Powley *et al.* (2005) have proposed that the similarity in the shape of the dose–response curves for THbVal-adduct formation in haemoglobin, G4-adduct formation in DNA, and *Hprt* mutation induction in splenic T-cells from mice and rats exposed to butenediol, suggests that epoxybutanediol may play a role in the mutagenicity and carcinogenicity of butadiene.

N7-Guanine adducts can undergo spontaneous depurination, which leaves an apurinic site in the DNA. Epoxide metabolites of butadiene can also react at sites involved in base-pairing and form adducts at N3 of cytosine, N1 of adenine, N^6 of adenine, N1 of guanine and N^2 of guanine (Selzer & Elfarra, 1996a, b, 1997; Zhao *et al.*, 1998; Zhang & Elfarra, 2004). An increase in N1-trihydroxybutyladenine adducts was detected in lymphocytes of workers exposed to butadiene (Zhao *et al.*, 2000). Alkylation of N1-adenine by epoxybutene followed by hydrolytic deamination under formation of deoxyinosine is a highly mutagenic event (Rodriguez *et al.*, 2001): deoxy-inosine forms a base-pair with cytosine during DNA replication, which leads to the generation of A→G mutations.

Diepoxybutane is a bi-functional alkylating agent that can form DNA–DNA crosslinks. Diepoxybutane first alkylates the N7 position of guanine in DNA and forms N7-(2′-hydroxy-3′,4′-epoxybut-1′-yl)-guanine mono-adducts (Tretyakova *et al.*, 1997). The epoxide group of this adduct can then undergo hydrolysis to yield N7-(2′,3′,4′-trihydroxybut-1′-yl)-guanine, or, less frequently, react with another site in DNA, such as the N7 of another guanine or the N1 of an adenine. The latter reactions result in formation of 1,4-bis-(guan-7-yl)-2,3-butanediol and 1-(guan-7-yl)-4-(aden-1-yl)-2,3-butanediol

crosslinks (Goggin *et al.*, 2009). These two diepoxybutane-specific DNA–DNA crosslinks have been identified in mice and rats exposed to 625 ppm butadiene, with much higher amounts of both crosslinks occurring in mice compared with rats (Goggin *et al.*, 2009). Depurination of these inter-strand or intra-strand lesions can induce point mutations and large deletion mutations. When diepoxybutane alkylates DNA at the N^6-position of adenine, an exocyclic adenine adduct is formed preferentially to DNA–DNA crosslinked products (Antsypovich *et al.*, 2007). Diepoxybutane is considered to be the most potent genotoxic metabolite of butadiene due to its strong genotoxicity and mutagenicity attributed to its ability to form DNA–DNA crosslinks.

4.4 Mutagenicity of butadiene and butadiene metabolites

Butadiene and its epoxide metabolites are genotoxic at multiple tissue sites in mice and rats, and in a variety of other test systems. In-vitro studies demonstrate that diepoxybutane is more potent than epoxybutene or epoxybutanediol in inducing micronuclei and gene mutations in mammalian cells. To investigate the role of two 1,3-butadiene (BD) metabolites, viz. 1,2-epoxybutene (EB) and 1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane (DEB) in the mutagenicity of the parent compound, in-vivo and in-vitro mutational spectra of BD, EB and DEB were analysed in *lac-i*-transgenic mice and in cultured human and rodent cells. A mutation that was consistently found across all biological systems examined was the AT→TA transversion, which was increased in the spleen and bone marrow of BD-exposed B6C3F1 *lac-i*-transgenic mice, in Rat2 *lac-i* cells exposed to EB, in the lungs of EB-exposed B6C3F1 *lac-i*-transgenic mice and at the *HPRT* locus in human TK6 lymphoblasts exposed to either EB or DEB (Recio *et al.*, 2001).

The mutation frequencies and mutation spectra induced by 3,4-epoxy-1,2-butanediol (EBD) and 1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane (DEB) were investigated at the *Hprt* locus in Chinese hamster ovary-K1 cells (CHO-K1). EBD was mutagenic at levels that were approximately 100 times higher than mutagenic concentrations of DEB. Among 41 EBD-induced mutants, there were 16 exon deletions, 11 GC→AT transitions, and five AT→GC transitions. Among 39 DEB-induced mutants, 15 exon deletions, 11 GC→AT transitions and five AT→TA transversions were found. In this study, the most common base substitution induced by both substances was the GC→AT transition. The sites of the single base substitutions that were induced by EBD and DEB were guanine and adenine, which is consistent with the DNA-adduct profiles (Lee *et al.*, 2002).

Fernandes & Lloyd (2007) have shown that replication of DNAs containing specific butadiene-derived 2′-deoxyuridine adducts in mammalian COS-7 cells resulted in predominantly C→T transitions. They also showed that replicative DNA polymerases were blocked by these lesions *in vitro*.

The genotoxic effects of butadiene can be modulated by alterations in key determinants of its metabolism, which suggests that markers of individual susceptibility can be identified. For example, mice that lack a functional *mEH* gene were more susceptible than wild-type mice to the mutagenic effects of butadiene or diepoxybutane (Wickliffe *et al.*, 2003). Epoxide hydrolase (EH) activity varies considerably among humans. Butadiene-exposed workers with the genotype for low-activity EH were reported to be more susceptible to butadiene-induced genotoxicity (assessed by *HPRT* mutant-variant frequency in lymphocytes) than individuals with the more common *EH* genotype (Abdel-Rahman *et al.*, 2001, 2003). No significant effects were observed for induction of *HPRT* mutations or sister chromatid exchange (SCE) in individuals with *GSTM1* or *GSTT1* polymorphisms (Abdel-Rahman *et al.*,

2001). These differences in response are consistent with the known important role of EH in the detoxification of butadiene epoxides in tissues in which these intermediates are produced.

In contrast, several other molecular epidemiological studies report no effect of butadiene – at occupational exposure levels – on *HPRT* mutation frequency or chromosomal changes, and no significant associations with genotype (Zhang *et al.*, 2004; Albertini *et al.*, 2001, 2007; Lovreglio *et al.*, 2006; Wickliffe *et al.*, 2009). Discrepancies among these studies may be related to differences in levels of exposure to butadiene at the workplace, the influence of exposures to butadiene or other genotoxic agents from other sources (e.g. cigarette smoke, automobile exhaust), the group size and the level of enzyme activity associated with a particular genotype.

The induction of SCE in human lymphocytes exposed *in vitro* to diepoxybutane was significantly higher in cells from *GSTT1*-null individuals than from *GSTT1*-positive individuals (Wiencke *et al.*, 1995), which indicates that the GST pathway may be important in the detoxification of diepoxybutane released into the blood. Epoxybutene can induce SCE and chromosomal aberrations in human peripheral lymphocytes treated *in vitro*; the lack of induction of these effects in G0 lymphocytes appears to be due to effective excision repair of DNA lesions (Kligerman *et al.*, 1999). Other studies also demonstrate the importance of DNA repair in the genotoxicity of butadiene-derived epoxides. For example, mice deficient in nucleotide excision-repair are more susceptible than wild-type mice to the mutagenic effects of butadiene and diepoxybutane (Wickliffe *et al.*, 2007).

The mechanistic link between animal and human neoplasia induced by butadiene is supported by the identification in mice of genetic alterations in butadiene-induced tumours that are frequently involved in the development of a variety of human cancers as well. The K-*Ras*, H-*Ras*, *p53*, *p16*/*p15* and *β-catenin* mutations detected in tumours in mice probably occurred as a result of the DNA-reactive properties and the genotoxic effects of butadiene-derived epoxides. A consistent pattern of K-*Ras* mutations (G→C transversion at codon 13) was observed in butadiene-induced cardiac haemangiosarcomas, neoplasms of the lung and fore-stomach, and lymphomas (Hong *et al.*, 2000; Sills *et al.*, 2001; Ton *et al.*, 2007). Alterations in the *p53* gene in mouse-brain tumours were mostly G→A transition mutations (Kim *et al.*, 2005). Inactivation of the tumour-suppressor genes *p16* and *p15* may also be important in the development of butadiene-induced lymphomas (Zhuang *et al.*, 2000). Mammary gland adenocarcinomas induced by butadiene in mice frequently had mutations in the *p53*, H-*Ras* and *β-catenin* genes (Zhuang *et al.*, 2002). These observations point to a genotoxic mechanism that underlies the development of butadiene-induced cancers. Although genotoxicity data indicate that diepoxybutane is the most genotoxic of the butadiene epoxides, the relative contribution of these metabolic intermediates to the mutagenicity and carcinogenicity of butadiene is not known. A comparison of the weight of evidence on metabolism, haemoglobin-adduct formation and genetic changes in rodents and humans exposed to butadiene is summarized in Table 4.1.

4.5 Synthesis

The numerous studies that have been conducted on butadiene toxicokinetics, metabolism, and genotoxicity provide strong evidence that the carcinogenicity of butadiene involves a genotoxic mechanism of action mediated by reactive epoxide metabolites. The metabolic pathways for butadiene in experimental animals have also been demonstrated in humans. This mechanism of action is based on the observations that butadiene-induced mutagenicity requires metabolic activation, and that the DNA-reactive epoxides formed during butadiene biotransformation

Table 4.1 Comparison of the degree of evidence on metabolism, haemoglobin-adduct formation and genetic changes in rodents and humans exposed to butadiene

Parameter	Rats	Mice	Humans
In-vitro metabolism of butadiene to epoxybutene	Strong	Strong	Strong
In-vitro metabolism of epoxybutene to diepoxybutane	Strong	Strong	Strong
In-vivo measure of epoxybutene in blood	Strong	Strong	NR
In-vivo measure of diepoxybutane in blood	Strong	Strong	NR
N-(2,3,4-Trihydroxybutyl)valine-haemoglobin adducts	Strong	Strong	Strong
N-(2-Hydroxy-3-butenyl)valine-haemoglobin adducts	Strong	Strong	Strong
N,*N*-(2,3-Dihydroxy-1,4-butadiyl)valine-haemoglobin adduct	Strong	Strong	Weak[a]
Urinary excretion of butadiene-derived mercapturic acid metabolites	Strong	Strong	Strong
DNA adducts	Strong	Strong	Strong
Mutations in reporter genes in somatic cells	Strong	Strong	Inconsistent[b]
Chromosomal aberrations or micronuclei	No evidence	Strong	Weak[a]

NR, not reported
[a] Possibly due to a lack of adequate studies
[b] One positive and three negative studies
From IARC (2008)

are direct-acting mutagens (IARC, 1999, 2008). Thus, butadiene metabolism, formation of reactive epoxides, interaction of these epoxides with DNA, and resultant mutagenicity are key steps in the mechanism that underlies the carcinogenicity of this agent.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene. 1,3-Butadiene causes cancer of the haematolymphatic organs.

There is *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene in experimental animals.

There is *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of diepoxybutane in experimental animals.

There is strong evidence that the carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene in humans operates by a genotoxic mechanism that involves formation of reactive epoxides, interaction of these direct-acting mutagenic epoxides with DNA, and resultant mutagenicity. The metabolic pathways for 1,3-butadiene in experimental animals have also been demonstrated in humans.

1,3-Butadiene is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Abdel-Rahman SZ, Ammenheuser MM, Ward JB Jr (2001). Human sensitivity to 1,3-butadiene: role of microsomal epoxide hydrolase polymorphisms. *Carcinogenesis*, 22: 415–423. doi:10.1093/carcin/22.3.415 PMID:11238181

Abdel-Rahman SZ, El-Zein RA, Ammenheuser MM *et al.* (2003). Variability in human sensitivity to 1,3-butadiene: Influence of the allelic variants of the microsomal epoxide hydrolase gene. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 41: 140–146. doi:10.1002/em.10142 PMID:12605384

Albertini RJ, Sram RJ, Vacek PM *et al.* (2001). Biomarkers for assessing occupational exposures to 1,3-butadiene. *Chem Biol Interact*, 135-136: 429–453. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00181-8 PMID:11397405

Albertini RJ, Srám RJ, Vacek PM *et al.* (2003). Biomarkers in Czech workers exposed to 1,3-butadiene: a transitional epidemiologic study. *Res Rep Health Eff Inst*, 116: 1–141, discussion 143–162. PMID:12931846

Albertini RJ, Sram RJ, Vacek PM *et al.* (2007). Molecular epidemiological studies in 1,3-butadiene exposed

Czech workers: female-male comparisons. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 63–77. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2006.07.004 PMID:16949064

Antsypovich S, Quirk-Dorr D, Pitts C, Tretyakova N (2007). Site specific N6-(2-hydroxy-3,4-epoxybut-1-yl)adenine oligodeoxynucleotide adducts of 1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane: synthesis and stability at physiological pH. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 20: 641–649. doi:10.1021/tx060178k PMID:17355152

Bolt HM, Roos PH, Thier R (2003). The cytochrome P-450 isoenzyme CYP2E1 in the biological processing of industrial chemicals: consequences for occupational and environmental medicine. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 76: 174–185. PMID:12690492

Boogaard PJ, Sumner SCJ, Bond JA (1996a). Glutathione conjugation of 1,2:3,4- diepoxybutane in human liver and rat and mouse liver and lung in vitro. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 136: 307–316. doi:10.1006/taap.1996.0037 PMID:8619238

Boogaard PJ, Sumner SCJ, Turner MJ, Bond JA (1996b). Hepatic and pulmonary glutathione conjugation of 1,2:3,4-diepoxybutane in human, rat, and mouse in vitro. *Toxicology*, 113: 297–299. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(96)03460-9 PMID:8901912

Boysen G, Georgieva NI, Upton PB *et al.* (2004). Analysis of diepoxide-specific cyclic N-terminal globin adducts in mice and rats after inhalation exposure to 1,3-butadiene. *Cancer Res*, 64: 8517–8520. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-3184 PMID:15574756

Boysen G, Georgieva NI, Upton PB *et al.* (2007). N-terminal globin adducts as biomarkers for formation of butadiene derived epoxides. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 84–92. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2006.10.005 PMID:17084829

Bucher JR, Melnick RL, Hildebrandt PK (1993). Lack of carcinogenicity in mice exposed once to high concentrations of 1,3-butadiene. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 85: 1866–1867. doi:10.1093/jnci/85.22.1866 PMID:8230269

CAREX (1999). Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf.

Cheng H, Sathiakumar N, Graff J *et al.* (2007). 1,3-Butadiene and leukemia among synthetic rubber industry workers: exposure-response relationships. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 15–24. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2006.10.004 PMID:17123495

Csanády GA, Guengerich FP, Bond JA (1992). Comparison of the biotransformation of 1,3-butadiene and its metabolite, butadiene monoepoxide, by hepatic and pulmonary tissues from humans, rats and mice. *Carcinogenesis*, 13: 1143–1153. doi:10.1093/carcin/13.7.1143 PMID:1638680

Delzell E, Sathiakumar N, Graff J *et al.* (2006). *An Updated Study of Mortality among North American Synthetic Rubber Industry Workers*. Boston, MA: Health Effects Institute, pp. 1–72.

Delzell E, Sathiakumar N, Hovinga M *et al.* (1996). A follow-up study of synthetic rubber workers. *Toxicology*, 113: 182–189. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(96)03443-9 PMID:8901897

Divine BJ & Hartman CM (2001). A cohort mortality study among workers at a 1,3 butadiene facility. *Chem Biol Interact*, 135-136: 535–553. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00212-5 PMID:11397411

Dollard GJ, Dumitrean P, Telling S *et al.* (2007). Observed trends in ambient concentrations of C_2-C_8 hydrocarbons in the United Kingdom over the period from 1993 to 2004. *Atmos Environ*, 41: 2559–2569. doi:10.1016/j.atmosenv.2006.11.020

Fernandes PH & Lloyd RS (2007). Mutagenic bypass of the butadiene-derived 2′-deoxyuridine adducts by polymerases η and ζ. *Mutat Res*, 625: 40–49. doi:10.1016/j.mrfmmm.2007.05.003 PMID:17586533

Filser JG, Faller TH, Bhowmik S *et al.* (2001). First-pass metabolism of 1,3-butadiene in once-through perfused livers of rats and mice. *Chem Biol Interact*, 135-136: 249–265. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00194-6 PMID:11397395

Filser JG, Hutzler C, Meischner V *et al.* (2007). Metabolism of 1,3-butadiene to toxicologically relevant metabolites in single-exposed mice and rats. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 93–103. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2006.03.002 PMID:16616907

Fustinoni S, Soleo L, Warholm M *et al.* (2002). Influence of metabolic genotypes on biomarkers of exposure to 1,3-butadiene in humans. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 11: 1082–1090. PMID:12376511

Goggin M, Swenberg JA, Walker VE, Tretyakova N (2009). Molecular dosimetry of 1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane-induced DNA-DNA cross-links in B6C3F1 mice and F344 rats exposed to 1,3-butadiene by inhalation. *Cancer Res*, 69: 2479–2486. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-4152 PMID:19276346

Graff JJ, Sathiakumar N, Macaluso M *et al.* (2005). Chemical exposures in the synthetic rubber industry and lymphohematopoietic cancer mortality. *J Occup Environ Med*, 47: 916–932. doi:10.1097/01.jom.0000172866.16615.db PMID:16155477

Grosse Y, Baan R, Straif K *et al.*WHO International Agency for Research on Cancer Monograph Working Group (2007). Carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene, ethylene oxide, vinyl chloride, vinyl fluoride, and vinyl bromide. *Lancet Oncol*, 8: 679–680. doi:10.1016/S1470-2045(07)70235-8 PMID:17726789

Health Canada (2000). *Priority Substances List Assessment Report: 1,3-Butadiene*. 112 pp.

Henderson RF, Barr EB, Belinsky SA *et al.* (2000). 1,3-butadiene: cancer, mutations, and adducts. Part I: Carcinogenicity of 1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane. *Res Rep Health Eff Inst*, 92: 11–43, discussion 45–48. PMID:10925838

Henderson RF, Hahn FF, Barr EB *et al.* (1999). Carcinogenicity of inhaled butadiene diepoxide

in female B6C3F1 mice and Sprague-Dawley rats. *Toxicol Sci*, 52: 33–44. doi:10.1093/toxsci/52.1.33 PMID:10568696

Himmelstein MW, Acquavella JF, Recio L *et al.* (1997). Toxicology and epidemiology of 1,3-butadiene. *Crit Rev Toxicol*, 27: 1–108. doi:10.3109/10408449709037482 PMID:9115622

Hong HH, Devereux TR, Melnick RL *et al.* (2000). Mutations of ras protooncogenes and p53 tumor suppressor gene in cardiac hemangiosarcomas from B6C3F1 mice exposed to 1,3-butadiene for 2 years. *Toxicol Pathol*, 28: 529–534. doi:10.1177/019262330002800404 PMID:10930038

Huff JE, Melnick RL, Solleveld HA *et al.* (1985). Multiple organ carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene in B6C3F1 mice after 60 weeks of inhalation exposure. *Science*, 227: 548–549. doi:10.1126/science.3966163 PMID:3966163

IARC (1992). Occupational exposures to mists and vapours from strong inorganic acids and other industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 54: 1–310. PMID:1345371

IARC (1999). Re-evaluation of some organic chemicals, hydrazine and hydrogen peroxide. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 71: 1–315. PMID:10507919

IARC (2008). 1,3-Butadiene, ethylene oxide and vinyl halides (vinyl fluoride, vinyl chloride and vinyl bromide). *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 97: 1–510. PMID: 20232717.

Jackson TE, Lilly PD, Recio L *et al.* (2000). Inhibition of cytochrome P450 2E1 decreases, but does not eliminate, genotoxicity mediated by 1,3-butadiene. *Toxicol Sci*, 55: 266–273. doi:10.1093/toxsci/55.2.266 PMID:10828257

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Kim Y, Hong HH, Lachat Y *et al.* (2005). Genetic alterations in brain tumors following 1,3-butadiene exposure in B6C3F1 mice. *Toxicol Pathol*, 33: 307–312. doi:10.1080/01926230590922848 PMID:15814359

Kligerman AD, Doerr CL, Tennant AH (1999). Cell cycle specificity of cytogenetic damage induced by 3,4-epoxy-1- butene. *Mutat Res*, 444: 151–158. PMID:10477349

Koc H, Tretyakova NY, Walker VE *et al.* (1999). Molecular dosimetry of N-7 guanine adduct formation in mice and rats exposed to 1,3-butadiene. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 12: 566–574. doi:10.1021/tx980265f PMID:10409395

Krause RJ & Elfarra AA (1997). Oxidation of butadiene monoxide to meso- and (+/-)-diepoxybutane by cDNA-expressed human cytochrome P450s and by mouse, rat, and human liver microsomes: evidence for preferential hydration of meso-diepoxybutane in rat and human liver microsomes. *Arch Biochem Biophys*, 337: 176–184. doi:10.1006/abbi.1996.9781 PMID:9016811

Kreiling R, Laib RJ, Filser JG, Bolt HM (1986b). Species differences in butadiene metabolism between mice and rats evaluated by inhalation pharmacokinetics. *Arch Toxicol*, 58: 235–238. doi:10.1007/BF00297112 PMID:3718226

Lee DH, Kim TH, Lee SY *et al.* (2002). Mutations induced by 1,3-butadiene metabolites, butadiene diolepoxide, and 1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane at the Hprt locus in CHO-K1 cells. *Mol Cells*, 14: 411–419. PMID:12521305

Lide DR, editor (2008). *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th ed., Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp. 3–72.

Lovreglio P, Bukvic N, Fustinoni S *et al.* (2006). Lack of genotoxic effect in workers exposed to very low doses of 1,3-butadiene. *Arch Toxicol*, 80: 378–381. doi:10.1007/s00204-005-0046-0 PMID:16307232

Macaluso M, Larson R, Lynch J *et al.* (2004). Historical estimation of exposure to 1,3-butadiene, styrene, and dimethyldithiocarbamate among synthetic rubber workers. *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 1: 371–390. doi:10.1080/15459620490452004 PMID:15238328

Maniglier-Poulet C, Cheng X, Ruth JA, Ross D (1995). Metabolism of 1,3-butadiene to butadiene monoxide in mouse and human bone marrow cells. *Chem Biol Interact*, 97: 119–129. doi:10.1016/0009-2797(95)03612-P PMID:7606811

Matanoski G, Francis M, Correa-Villaseñor A *et al.* (1993). Cancer epidemiology among styrene-butadiene rubber workers. *IARC Sci Publ*, 127: 363–374. PMID:8070882

Matanoski GM, Santos-Burgoa C, Schwartz L (1990). Mortality of a cohort of workers in the styrene-butadiene polymer manufacturing industry (1943–1982). *Environ Health Perspect*, 86: 107–117. doi:10.1289/ehp.9086107 PMID:2401250

Matanoski GM & Schwartz L (1987). Mortality of workers in styrene-butadiene polymer production. *J Occup Med*, 29: 675–680. PMID:3655951

McMichael AJ, Spirtas R, Gamble JF, Tousey PM (1976). Mortality among rubber workers: Relationship to specific jobs. *J Occup Med*, 18: 178–185. doi:10.1097/00043764-197603000-00012 PMID:1255279

McMichael AJ, Spirtas R, Kupper LL (1974). An epidemiologic study of mortality within a cohort of rubber workers, 1964–72. *J Occup Med*, 16: 458–464. PMID:4842655

Meinhardt TJ, Lemen RA, Crandall MS, Young RJ (1982). Environmental epidemiologic investigation of the styrene-butadiene rubber industry. Mortality patterns with discussion of the hematopoietic and lymphatic malignancies. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 8: 250–259. doi:10.5271/sjweh.2469 PMID:7170621

Melnick RL, Huff J, Chou BJ, Miller RA (1990b). Carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene in C57BL/6 x C3H F1 mice at low exposure concentrations. *Cancer Res*, 50: 6592–6599. PMID:2208121

Melnick RL & Huff JE (1993). 1,3-Butadiene induces cancer in experimental animals at all concentrations

from 6.25 to 8000 parts per million. *IARC Sci Publ*, 127: 309–322. PMID:8070878

Melnick RL, Huff JE, Roycroft JH *et al.* (1990a). Inhalation toxicology and carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene in B6C3F1 mice following 65 weeks of exposure. *Environ Health Perspect*, 86: 27–36. doi:10.2307/3430929 PMID:2401263

Melnick RL, Shackelford CC, Huff J (1993). Carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene. *Environ Health Perspect*, 100: 227–236. doi:10.1289/ehp.93100227 PMID:8354171

Melnick RL & Sills RC (2001). Comparative carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene, isoprene, and chloroprene in rats and mice. *Chem Biol Interact*, 135-136: 27–42. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00213-7 PMID:11397379

Meng Q, Walker DM, McDonald JD *et al.* (2007). Age-, gender-, and species-dependent mutagenicity in T cells of mice and rats exposed by inhalation to 1,3-butadiene. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 121–131. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2006.07.005 PMID:16945358

Miller RA, Melnick RL, Boorman GA (1989). Neoplastic lesions induced by 1,3-butadiene in B6C3F1 mice. *Exp Pathol*, 37: 136–146. doi:10.1016/S0232-1513(89)80033-7 PMID:2637144

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83).* Cincinnati, OH: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes4/13410sco.html

Norppa H (2004). Cytogenetic biomarkers and genetic polymorphisms. *Toxicol Lett*, 149: 309–334. doi:10.1016/j.toxlet.2003.12.042 PMID:15093278

National Toxicology Program (1984). NTP toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of 1,3-Butadiene (CAS NO. 106-99-0) in B6C3F1 mice (inhalation studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 288: 1–111. PMID:12748715

National Toxicology Program (1993). NTP toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of 1,3-Butadiene (CAS NO. 106-99-0) in B6C3F1 mice (inhalation studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 434: 1–389. PMID:12616297

O'Neil MJ, editor (2006). *Merck Index*, 14th ed., Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., Inc., p. 248.

Owen PE & Glaister JR (1990). Inhalation toxicity and carcinogenicity of 1,3-butadiene in Sprague-Dawley rats. *Environ Health Perspect*, 86: 19–25. doi:10.1289/ehp.908619 PMID:2401255

Owen PE, Glaister JR, Gaunt IF, Pullinger DH (1987). Inhalation toxicity studies with 1,3-butadiene. 3. Two year toxicity/carcinogenicity study in rats. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 48: 407–413. doi:10.1080/15298668791384959 PMID:3591659

Powley MW, Li Y, Upton PB *et al.* (2005). Quantification of DNA and hemoglobin adducts of 3,4-epoxy-1,2-butanediol in rodents exposed to 3-butene-1,2-diol. *Carcinogenesis*, 26: 1573–1580. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgi119 PMID:15888494

Recio L, Steen AM, Pluta LJ *et al.* (2001). Mutational spectrum of 1,3-butadiene and metabolites 1,2-epoxybutene and 1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane to assess mutagenic mechanisms. *Chem Biol Interact*, 135-136: 325–341. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00220-4 PMID:11397399

Rodriguez DA, Kowalczyk A, Ward JB Jr *et al.* (2001). Point mutations induced by 1,2-epoxy-3-butene N1 deoxyinosine adducts. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 38: 292–296. doi:10.1002/em.10026 PMID:11774359

Sathiakumar N & Delzell E (2007). A follow-up study of women in the synthetic rubber industry: study methods. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 25–28. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2006.11.005 PMID:17229413

Sathiakumar N & Delzell E (2009). A follow-up study of mortality among women in the North American synthetic rubber industry. *J Occup Environ Med*, 51: 1314–1325. doi:10.1097/JOM.0b013e3181bd8972 PMID:19858743

Sathiakumar N, Graff J, Macaluso M *et al.* (2005). An updated study of mortality among North American synthetic rubber industry workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 62: 822–829. doi:10.1136/oem.2004.018176 PMID:16299089

Schlade-Bartusiak K, Rozik K, Laczmanska I *et al.* (2004). Influence of GSTT1, mEH, CYP2E1 and RAD51 polymorphisms on diepoxybutane-induced SCE frequency in cultured human lymphocytes. *Mutat Res*, 558: 121–130. PMID:15036125

Seaton MJ, Follansbee MH, Bond JA (1995). Oxidation of 1,2-epoxy-3-butene to 1,2:3,4-diepoxybutane by cDNA-expressed human cytochromes P450 2E1 and 3A4 and human, mouse and rat liver microsomes. *Carcinogenesis*, 16: 2287–2293. doi:10.1093/carcin/16.10.2287 PMID:7586124

Selzer RR & Elfarra AA (1996a). Characterization of N1- and N6-adenosine adducts and N1-inosine adducts formed by the reaction of butadiene monoxide with adenosine: evidence for the N1-adenosine adducts as major initial products. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 9: 875–881. doi:10.1021/tx960039a PMID:8828924

Selzer RR & Elfarra AA (1996b). Synthesis and biochemical characterization of N1-, N2-, and N7-guanosine adducts of butadiene monoxide. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 9: 126–132. doi:10.1021/tx950101o PMID:8924581

Selzer RR & Elfarra AA (1997). Chemical modification of deoxycytidine at different sites yields adducts of different stabilities: characterization of N3- and O2-deoxycytidine and N3-deoxyuridine adducts of butadiene monoxide. *Arch Biochem Biophys*, 343: 63–72. doi:10.1006/abbi.1997.0164 PMID:9210647

Shimkin MB, Weisburger JH, Weisburger E *et al.* (1966). Bioassay of 29 alkylating chemicals by the pulmonary-tumor response in strain A mice. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 36: 915–935.

Sills RC, Hong HL, Boorman GA *et al.* (2001). Point mutations of K-ras and H-ras genes in forestomach neoplasms from control B6C3F1 mice and following exposure to 1,3-butadiene, isoprene or chloroprene for up to 2-years. *Chem Biol Interact*, 135-136: 373–386. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00179-X PMID:11397402

Sprague CL & Elfarra AA (2003). Detection of carboxylic acids and inhibition of hippuric acid formation in rats treated with 3-butene-1,2-diol, a major metabolite of 1,3-butadiene. *Drug Metab Dispos*, 31: 986–992. doi:10.1124/dmd.31.8.986 PMID:12867486

Sprague CL & Elfarra AA (2004). Mercapturic acid urinary metabolites of 3-butene-1,2-diol as in vivo evidence for the formation of hydroxymethylvinyl ketone in mice and rats. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 17: 819–826. doi:10.1021/tx049949f PMID:15206903

Thier R, Brüning T, Roos PH *et al.* (2003). Markers of genetic susceptibility in human environmental hygiene and toxicology: the role of selected CYP, NAT and GST genes. *Int J Hyg Environ Health*, 206: 149–171. doi:10.1078/1438-4639-00209 PMID:12872524

Ton TV, Hong HH, Devereux TR *et al.* (2007). Evaluation of genetic alterations in cancer-related genes in lung and brain tumors from B6C3F1 mice exposed to 1,3-butadiene or chloroprene. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 112–120. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2006.04.015 PMID:16860786

Tretyakova NYu, Sangaiah R, Yen TY, Swenberg JA (1997). Synthesis, characterization, and in vitro quantitation of N-7-guanine adducts of diepoxybutane. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 10: 779–785. doi:10.1021/tx970004q PMID:9250412

Tsai SP, Wendt JK, Ransdell JD (2001). A mortality, morbidity, and hematology study of petrochemical employees potentially exposed to 1,3-butadiene monomer. *Chem Biol Interact*, 135-136: 555–567. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00186-7 PMID:11397412

Van Duuren BL, Langseth L, Orris L *et al.* (1966). Carcinogenicity of epoxides, lactones, and peroxy compounds. IV. Tumor response in epithelial and connective tissue in mice and rats. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 37: 825–838. PMID:5955045

Van Duuren BL, Nelson N, Orris L *et al.* (1963). Carcinogenicity of epoxides, lactones, and peroxy compounds. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 31: 41–55. PMID:14043038

Van Duuren BL, Orris L, Nelson N (1965). Carcinogenicity of epoxides, lactones, and peroxy compounds. II. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 35: 707–717. PMID:5841060

Ward EM, Fajen JM, Ruder AM *et al.* (1995). Mortality study of workers in 1,3-butadiene production units identified from a chemical workers cohort. *Environ Health Perspect*, 103: 598–603. doi:10.1289/ehp.95103598 PMID:7556014

Ward EM, Fajen JM, Ruder AM *et al.* (1996). Mortality study of workers employed in 1,3-butadiene production units identified from a large chemical workers cohort. *Toxicology*, 113: 157–168. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(96)03441-5 PMID:8901895

White WC (2007). Butadiene production process overview. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 10–14. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2007.01.009 PMID:17324391

Whitworth KW, Symanski E, Coker AL (2008). Childhood lymphohematopoietic cancer incidence and hazardous air pollutants in southeast Texas, 1995–2004. *Environ Health Perspect*, 116: 1576–1580. doi:10.1289/ehp.11593 PMID:19057714

Wickliffe JK, Ammenheuser MM, Adler PJ *et al.* (2009). Evaluation of frequencies of HPRT mutant lymphocytes in butadiene polymer workers in a Southeast Texas facility. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 50: 82–87. doi:10.1002/em.20437 PMID:19107895

Wickliffe JK, Ammenheuser MM, Salazar JJ *et al.* (2003). A model of sensitivity: 1,3-butadiene increases mutant frequencies and genomic damage in mice lacking a functional microsomal epoxide hydrolase gene. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 42: 106–110. doi:10.1002/em.10181 PMID:12929123

Wickliffe JK, Herring SM, Hallberg LM *et al.* (2007). Detoxification of olefinic epoxides and nucleotide excision repair of epoxide-mediated DNA damage: Insights from animal models examining human sensitivity to 1,3-butadiene. *Chem Biol Interact*, 166: 226–231. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2006.04.017 PMID:16730686

Wiencke JK, Pemble S, Ketterer B, Kelsey KT (1995). Gene deletion of glutathione S-transferase theta: correlation with induced genetic damage and potential role in endogenous mutagenesis. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 4: 253–259. PMID:7606200

Zhang L, Hayes RB, Guo W *et al.* (2004). Lack of increased genetic damage in 1,3-butadiene-exposed Chinese workers studied in relation to EPHX1 and GST genotypes. *Mutat Res*, 558: 63–74. PMID:15036120

Zhang XY & Elfarra AA (2004). Characterization of the reaction products of 2′-deoxyguanosine and 1,2,3,4-diepoxybutane after acid hydrolysis: formation of novel guanine and pyrimidine adducts. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 17: 521–528. doi:10.1021/tx034243r PMID:15089094

Zhao C, Koskinen M, Hemminki K (1998). 32P-postlabelling of N6-adenine adducts of epoxybutanediol in vivo after 1,3-butadiene exposure. *Toxicol Lett*, 102-103: 591–594. doi:10.1016/S0378-4274(98)00253-7 PMID:10022318

Zhao C, Vodicka P, Srám RJ 1, Hemminki K (2000). Human DNA adducts of 1,3-butadiene, an important environmental carcinogen. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 107–111. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.1.107 PMID:10607741

Zhuang SM, Wiseman RW, Söderkvist P (2000). Mutation analysis of the pRb pathway in 2′,3′-dideoxycytidine- and 1, 3-butadiene-induced mouse lymphomas. *Cancer Lett*, 152: 129–134. doi:10.1016/S0304-3835(99)00447-4 PMID:10773403

Zhuang SM, Wiseman RW, Söderkvist P (2002). Frequent mutations of the Trp53, Hras1 and beta-catenin (Catnb) genes in 1,3-butadiene-induced mammary adenocarcinomas in B6C3F1 mice. *Oncogene*, 21: 5643–5648. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1205649 PMID:12165863

2,3,7,8-TETRACHLORODIBENZO-*para*-DIOXIN, 2,3,4,7,8-PENTACHLORODIBENZOFURAN, AND 3,3′,4,4′,5-PENTACHLOROBIPHENYL

Two of these agents (2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin and 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran were specifically considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1977, 1987, and 1997 (IARC, 1977, 1987, 1997). The Working Group in 1987 reviewed polychlorinated biphenyls, but did not specifically consider 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl. Since the previous evaluations new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

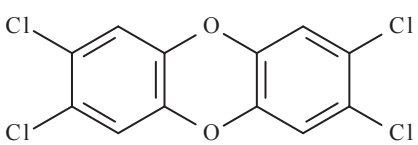
1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agents

From NTP (2006a, b, c)

1.1.1 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-para-dioxin (2,3,7,8-TCDD, TCDD)

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 1746-01-6
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo[*b*,*e*][1,4]dioxin
Synonyms: 2,3,7,8-TCDD; TCDD; dioxin; tetradioxin

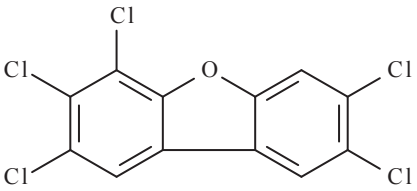


$C_{12}H_4Cl_4O_2$
Relative molecular mass: 321.98

Description: Colourless to white crystalline solid
Solubility: Insoluble in water; slightly soluble in n-octanol and methanol; and soluble in other organic solvents (e.g. dichlorobenzene, chlorobenzene, benzene, chloroform, and acetone)
Octanol/water partition coefficient: log K_{ow}, 6.80

1.1.2 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran (2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF)

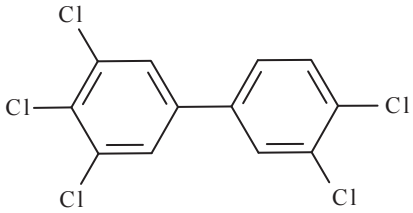
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 57117-31-4
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: 2,3,4,7,8-Pentachlorodibenzofuran
Synonym: 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF; 2,3,4,7,8-penta-CDF



$C_{12}H_3Cl_5O$
Relative molecular mass: 340.42
Description: Solid with a melting point of 195–196 °C (NTP Chemical Repository Information). It is stable under normal laboratory conditions.
Solubility in water: 2.36×10^{-4} mg/L at 22.7 °C
Octanol/water partition coefficient: log K_{ow}, 6.92

1.1.3 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 126)

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 57465-28-8
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: 3,3′,4,4′,5-Pentachlorobiphenyl
Synonym: PCB 126



$C_{12}H_5Cl_5$
Relative molecular mass: 326.42
Description: Solid with a melting point of 160–161 °C.
Solubility in water: 1.03×10^{-3} mg/L at 25 °C
Octanol/water partition coefficient: log K_{ow}, 6.89

1.2 Occurrence and use

2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin (TCDD) has no known commercial applications. It occurred as a contaminant in chlorophenoxy herbicides, including 2,4,5-trichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4,5-T), which were widely used in the 1960s and 1970s to control weeds (e.g. on pastureland and food crops) and as a defoliant during the Viet Nam war. It is used as a research chemical and was tested, but never used commercially, as a flame-proofing agent and as a pesticide against insects and wood-destroying fungi (NTP, 2004). TCDD may also be produced in thermal processes such as incineration, in metal-processing, and in the bleaching of paper pulp with free chlorine. The relative amounts of the TCDD congeners produced depend on the production or incineration process and vary widely (IARC, 1997).

Polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDFs) are not manufactured commercially other than for scientific research purposes. Release of PCDF into the environment is mainly from combustion and incineration. Based on congener-specific profiles, combustion sources all produce 2,3,7,8-substituted polychlorinated dibenzo-*para*-dioxins (PCDDs) and PCDFs, including 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran (PeCDF). The latter substance is the major congener emitted from cement kilns burning hazardous waste (approximately 20% of the total congener emission). Other major sources of PeCDF are metal smelting, refining, and processing; chemical manufacturing/processing (production of chlorophenols, PCBs, vinyl chloride); pulp bleaching; and existing reservoirs that reflect past releases (IARC, 1997; USEPA, 2000a).

Mixtures of polychlorobiphenyls (PCBs), including 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 126), were produced for commercial purposes during the period 1929–1977 for the electrical industry, to be used as dielectric insulating fluids for transformers and capacitors. PCBs

were also used in hydraulic fluids, plastics, and paints. The manufacture and use of PCBs in the United States was stopped in 1977 in view of increasing amounts of PCB residues in the environment that had accumulated during the previous decades. However, PCBs continue to be released into the environment through the use and disposal of products containing PCBs, as by-products during the manufacture of certain organic chemicals, and during combustion of some waste materials (USEPA, 2000a). Due to their lipophilic nature (log K_{ow}, 6.5–7.7) and resistance to biodegradation, specific PCBs bioconcentrate and bio-accumulate in the environment. PCBs are widespread in their distribution and are found in virtually all environmental compartments including air, soil, water, sediment, and biota (USEPA, 2000b).

1.3 Human exposure

PCDDs are ubiquitous in soil, sediments and air. Excluding occupational or accidental exposures, most human exposure to TCDD occurs as a result of eating meat, milk, eggs, fish and related products, as TCDD is persistent in the environment and accumulates in animal fat. Occupational exposures to TCDD at higher levels have occurred since the 1940s as a result of production and use of chlorophenols and chlorophenoxy herbicides. Even higher exposures have occurred sporadically in relation to accidents in these industries (IARC, 1997).

Mean background levels of TCDD in human tissues are in the range of 2–3 ng/kg (parts per trillion; ppt) fat [because PCDDs are stored in fat tissue, body burdens of PCDDs are often expressed as concentration in lipid, e.g. 100 ppt lipid]. Available data suggest that these levels have decreased three- to fivefold since the late 1970s, when the development of gas chromatography/mass spectrometry methodology permitted these extremely low concentrations of TCDD in tissues and in the environment to be measured accurately for the first time. Similarly, since the mid-1980s, mean tissue concentrations of total TCDD in the general population have decreased by two- to threefold. Human exposures related to occupation or accidents have led to tissue concentrations of TCDD up to several orders of magnitude higher than background levels (IARC, 1997).

1.3.1 Occupational exposure to dioxins

Because TCDD has never been intentionally manufactured for large-scale commercial use, estimates of the numbers of workers exposed in the past are not available. From the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–1983), it was estimated that approximately 14 workers were potentially exposed to TCDD in the USA (NIOSH, 1990). Historical occupational exposures to TCDD have been reviewed (IARC, 1997).

In a series of studies, Collins *et al.* (2006, 2007, 2008) examined concentrations of TCDD in serum from 375 workers in Michigan who had been exposed in the past (26–62 years before) to trichlorophenol and/or pentachlorophenol. Workers exposed only to trichlorophenol had mean lipid-adjusted TCDD levels of 15.9 ppt, compared with 6.5 ppt in unexposed workers and 3.3 ppt in community controls. Those exposed to pentachlorophenol only had mean TCDD concentrations of 8.0 ppt; workers exposed to both chemicals had mean TCDD levels of 13.9 ppt; and tradesmen with plant-wide responsibilities had mean levels of 20.7 ppt. A follow-up study to evaluate the influence of various factors on TCDD concentrations in serum of 412 workers exposed to penta- and trichlorophenol, showed that age and body fat were important determinants, whereas diet and jobs-outside-the-plant had little impact (Burns *et al.*, 2008).

To estimate job-specific exposures over time at a facility in New Zealand that manufactured 2,4,5-T along with other products between 1962 and 1988, Aylward *et al.* (2010) integrated

available work records, TCDD pharmacokinetic data, and serum-sampling data from 346 workers. Estimated TCDD concentrations in serum were below 300 ppt lipid for all individuals in the cohort over the entire study period, i.e. lower than estimates for other 2,4,5-T worker populations.

McLean *et al.* (2009) measured dioxin concentrations in serum of 94 randomly selected former sawmill workers (71 exposed to pentachlorophenol, 23 non-exposed) in New Zealand, twenty years after the use of pentachlorophenol (PCP) had ceased. The authors compared age-adjusted dioxin levels in the exposed and non-exposed groups, examined the effect of duration and intensity of the exposure to PCP, and compared congener profiles with those found in the commercial-grade PCP used at the time. Mean levels in exposed and unexposed workers were 1.88 pg/g (range, 0.51–4.13) and 1.48 pg/g, respectively. The congener profiles in serum were consistent with those in PCP solutions, and dioxin levels increased with both employment duration and estimated exposure intensity.

In a study of Russian workers who manufactured phenoxy herbicides and related compounds in the 1960s, workers who handled 2,4,5-T (n = 34) had median blood-lipid TCDD concentrations of 165.7 ng/kg (parts per trillion), with a range from 35 to 1680 ng/kg. Workers who manufactured 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D; n = 6) had median levels of 68.9 ng/kg. Children of workers who handled 2,4,5,-T (n = 8) and administrative workers (n = 5) had higher median levels than two control groups drawn from the general population (n = 60): the median blood-lipid TCDD concentrations in the children and administrative staff were 39.5 and 31.0 ng/kg, respectively, compared with 12 and 62.4 ng/kg for the two control groups (Ryan & Schecter, 2000).

Several exposure-response analyses have been performed in the industrial cohorts that served as a basis for the previous *IARC Monographs* evaluation (Becher *et al.*, 1998; Flesch-Janys *et al.*, 1998; Hooiveld *et al.*, 1998; Steenland *et al.*, 1999, 2004; Crump *et al.*, 2003).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure to dioxins

PCDDs, including TCDD, have been measured in all environmental compartments including ambient air, surface water, groundwater, soil, and sediment. While the manufacture and use of chlorinated compounds – chlorophenols, chlorinated phenoxy herbicides – were important sources of PCDD-release into the environment in the past, the restricted manufacture of many of these compounds has substantially reduced their contribution to environmental pollution. It is now recognized that incineration/combustion processes are the most important sources of PCDDs to the environment (Zook & Rappe, 1994; ATSDR, 1998).

The identified sources of environmental release of TCDDs have been grouped into four major categories: incineration sources (municipal waste, hospital waste, hazardous waste, sewage sludge), combustion sources (cement kilns, wood-burning, diesel vehicles, coal-fired utilities, crematoria), industrial sources (pulp and paper mills, chemical manufacturing, metal industry), and reservoir sources (biochemical processes, photolytic processes, forest fires, accidental releases) (Kulkarni *et al.*, 2008).

Human exposure to all dioxin-like compounds is usually calculated in terms of toxic equivalence quotients (TEQs).

> Because the various polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, polychlorinated dibenzofurans, and polychlorinated biphenyls have different activity levels, a toxic equivalence quotient (TEQ) is calculated by standardizing the individual congener levels detected in each sample, multiplying them with the appropriate toxic equivalency factor (TEF), and summing these normalized values. TEFs have been established by the World Health Organization and are calculated relative to 2,3,7,8-TCDD (Van den

Berg *et al.*, 2006; Charnley & Kimbrough, 2006; see also Section 4).

The US Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) reported that emissions from quantified sources – waste incineration, pesticide manufacture, chlorine bleaching of pulp and paper – in the USA decreased from about 14 000 g TEQ/year in 1987 to approximately 1500 g TEQ/year in 2000 (a 90% reduction). This decline is expected to continue (Charnley & Kimbrough, 2006; USEPA, 2006).

People are exposed to PCDDs primarily through foods that are contaminated as a result of the accumulation of these substances in the food-chain and in high-fat foods, such as dairy products, eggs, animal fats, and some fish. Additional exposure sources include industrial accidents (Baccarelli *et al.*, 2002) and several miscellaneous exposures (Yoshimura, 2003; Kulkarni *et al.*, 2008). Because dioxins are fat-soluble, lowering the fat content in food can reduce the intake of dioxin. The average adult in the USA has a daily TEQ intake of approximately 1 pg/kg, lower than a decade ago, whereas a nursing infant has an average TEQ intake of 35–53 pg/kg bw/day (Schecter *et al.*, 1994; USEPA, 2004; Schecter *et al.*, 2006).

Data on TCDD concentrations in lipids have been collected over a 30-year period (1970–2000) among the general population in the USA, Canada, Germany, and France. Mean lipid-levels of TCDD steadily decreased nearly 10-fold over this time period, with lipid-adjusted TCDD concentratrions of about 2 ppt in the year 2000. On the basis of pharmacokinetic modelling, mean concentrations of TCDD in the general population are likely to decrease further to 0.5–1 ppt by 2015, even if intake levels do not decrease further (Aylward & Hays, 2002; Hays & Aylward, 2003).

There is evidence from the NHANES serum PCDD/F data (including TCDD) that concentrations of these compounds in the US population are declining. Median serum-lipid concentrations (population-weighted) of PCDDs/Fs were 13.46, 13.98 and 11.39 TEQ/g lipid for 1999–2000 (n = 1271), 2001–2002 (n = 1244), and 2003–2004 (n = 1290), respectively. When the temporal trends are examined by age, median levels appear to have declined in the younger part of the population and remained essentially constant (or have slightly increased) in the older part (LaKind *et al.*, 2009).

Several exposure studies have shown that some US Viet Nam veterans who were exposed to Agent Orange had serum TCDD levels up to 600 ppt in lipid many years after they had left Viet Nam, compared with values of approximately 1–2 ppt of TCDD for the general population (Kahn *et al.*, 1988; Schecter *et al.*, 1990, 1992; Michalek *et al.*, 1995). In Viet Nam, TCDD levels up to 1 000 000 ppt have been found in soil or sediment from Agent Orange-contaminated areas 3–4 decades after spraying. In addition, elevated concentrations have been measured in food and wildlife in Viet Nam (Olie *et al.*, 1989) as well as in Vietnamese people from contaminated areas (Schecter *et al.*, 2001, 2002, 2003; Dwernychuk *et al.*, 2002; Schecter *et al.*, 2006).

Bates *et al.* (2004) determined persistent organochlorines, including TCDD, in serum of the non-occupationally exposed New Zealand population in 1996–1997. The weighted mean concentration of TCDD in adult New Zealanders was 2.3 ng/kg lipid weight basis (range, < 1–7.0 ng/kg). The age group-specific data showed a trend towards higher concentrations in the older age groups.

Several recent studies have assessed and reviewed the exposure to and intake of dioxins, including TCDD, from dietary sources (Liem *et al.*, 2000; Tsutsumi *et al.*, 2001; Huwe, 2002; Parzefall, 2002; Baars *et al.*, 2004; Charnley & Doull, 2005; Nakatani *et al.*, 2005; Larsen, 2006; Sasamoto *et al.*, 2006; Gies *et al.*, 2007; Todaka *et al.*, 2008).

1.3.3 Human exposure to polychlorinated dibenzofurans, polychlorinated biphenyls and dioxin-like compounds

Due to high lipophilicity and low solubility in aqueous media, polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDFs) accumulate in the fat tissue of animals. The highest concentrations of PCDFs are found in fish, meat, eggs, and dairy products (Schecter *et al.*, 1994; USEPA, 2000b). This results in widespread exposure of the general population to PCDFs and related dioxin-like compounds, with an estimated 90% of human exposure due to ingestion of contaminated food, and a small fraction via inhalation and dermal absorption.

Human exposure to all dioxin-like compounds is usually calculated in terms of TEQs (see definition above). Adult daily intake of dioxin-like compounds including PCDDs, PCDFs and dioxin-like PCBs from all sources is estimated to be approximately 70pg TEQ/day, where TEQ reflects the potency-adjusted amount of all dioxin-like compounds. The intake from all sources of PCDDs and PCDFs is estimated to be 45pg TEQ/day and intake from dioxin-like PCBs is 25pg TEQ/day. Approximately 90% of the daily intake is from food sources (40pg TEQ/day for PCDDs and PCDFs and 22pg TEQ/day for dioxin-like PCBs). Intake of PeCDF from food is approximately 6.6 pg per day and represents 16% of the total intake of PCDDs and PCDFs on a TEQ basis. This level of exposure together with the long half-life of dioxin-like compounds in humans leads to persistent body burdens in humans in the range of 25 pg TEQ/g lipid (USEPA, 2000b). Depending upon dietary practice and proximity to specific sources of exposure, some populations may have higher exposure or body burdens. In contrast to the general population, several specific groups may have been exposed to much higher levels of PeCDF as a result of occupational exposure. In European tissue samples, PeCDF levels are on average 13 ppt TEQ (lipid-adjusted) and represent approximately 36% of the TEQ contributed by PCDDs and PCDFs. PeCDF is the highest contributor of the PCDF class of DLCs to the total TEQ, based on both intake levels and tissue concentrations.

The majority (90%) of ambient human exposure to dioxin-like compounds occurs through the ingestion of food containing PCB residues. Levels of PCB 126 in food range from 0.05 to 0.83 pg/g. Human exposure to all dioxin-like compounds is usually calculated in terms of toxic equivalents (TEQs). On a TEQ basis, it is estimated that humans are exposed via food to 22 pg TEQ/day (for a 70-kg person) from dioxin-like PCBs of which PCB 126 (13 pg/day) accounts for 60% of the TEQ intake. Bioaccumulation of PCBs results in persistent levels of these substances in human tissues. With an average concentration of 12 pg TEQ/g lipid, PCB 126 accounts for approximately half of the PCB TEQ in human tissues (USEPA, 2000b).

2. Cancer in Humans

Human exposures related to occupation or accidents have led to tissue concentrations of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin (TCDD) that are 10–100-fold higher than average background levels in the 1980s. The highest exposures occurred in industrial cohorts of workers producing phenoxy herbicides and chlorophenols, while exposure to professional sprayers of these compounds was considerably lower. It has been shown that TCDD levels in professional applicators increase considerably above background only after several years of spraying of TCDD-contaminated chemicals. For example, in the most heavily exposed applicators of 2,4,5-T in New Zealand, who applied this chemical for at least 180 months, the estimated mean serum concentration of TCDD at the time of blood drawing was 53 ng/kg (Smith *et al.*, 1992).

Occasional spraying is unlikely to lead to any measurable increase in TCDD level.

The evaluation of the evidence of carcinogenicity of TCDD was based on studies with direct measurements of TCDD and studies involving heavy exposure to herbicides likely to be contaminated with TCDD. There are numerous studies that assessed dioxins, furans and polychlorobiphenyls (PCBs) in workers, but these are not systematically reviewed here. These studies indicate that the highest exposure occurs in industrial settings producing 2,4,5-T. There are also numerous studies in workers evaluating a wide range of health effects. Table 2.1 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-22-Table2.1.pdf) shows estimated exposures to TCDD in industrial workers, in workers handling and spraying 2,4,5-T and in the population in Seveso, Italy. Average exposures in industrial workers are the highest. The effects of TCDD and those of the products in which it was found cannot be separated in most of the epidemiological studies; however, the focus here is on the contaminant. The most important studies for the evaluation of the carcinogenicity of TCDD are cohort studies of herbicide producers, one each in the United States (Fingerhut *et al.*, 1991; Steenland *et al.*, 1999, 2001), the Netherlands (Bueno de Mesquita *et al.*, 1993; Hooiveld *et al.*, 1998; Boers *et al.* 2010), two in Germany (Manz *et al.*, 1991; Ott *et al.*, 1993; Flesch-Janys *et al.*, 1995, 1998; Becher *et al.*, 1996), and one cohort of residents in a contaminated area from Seveso, Italy (Bertazzi *et al.*, 2001; Pesatori *et al.*, 2009). These studies involve the highest exposures to TCDD among all epidemiological studies, although the exposures at Seveso were lower and the follow-up was shorter than those in the industrial settings. In addition, the multicountry cohort study from IARC (Saracci *et al.*, 1991; Kogevinas *et al.*, 1995, 1997) is of special interest because it includes three of four high-exposure cohorts and other industrial cohorts, many of them not reported in separate publications, as well as information on professional applicators. Most of the industrial cohort studies include analyses of subcohorts considered to have the highest exposure and/or longest latency. These cohorts and their respective high-exposure subcohorts are the focus of this evaluation. In reporting the findings, preference has been given to the most updated follow-up, unless earlier publications presented evidence not included in a later publication, e.g. results by exposure classifications of interest. Results are presented in Table 2.2 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-22-Table2.2.pdf), Table 2.3 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-22-Table2.3.pdf), Table 2.4 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-22-Table2.4.pdf), and Table 2.5 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-22-Table2.5.pdf). Additional studies of herbicide applicators, both cohort and case–control studies, which have considerably lower exposures to TCDD, are not considered critical for the evaluation and are not reported in the tables. Among the studies not included, there are several that have been widely quoted and that have been important in responding to concerns in the community and in raising public awareness regarding potential effects of dioxin exposure, such as Ketchum & Aktar (1996), Ketchum *et al.* (1999), and Hardell & Sandström (1979).

2.1 Description of the most informative studies

2.1.1 US NIOSH cohort

The largest study of production workers in the US exposed to PCDDs was conducted by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) and published by Fingerhut *et al.* (1991) and Steenland *et al.* (1999, 2001). This 12-plant cohort study included most workers in the USA likely to have been exposed to TCDD

in chemical manufacturing, comprising 5000 men with work records showing assignment to a production or maintenance job in a process involving TCDD contamination. Serum levels of TCDD in 253 cohort members at two plants measured in 1987 averaged 233 ng/g lipid, compared with 7 ng/g lipid in a group of 79 unexposed workers. Levels increased to 418 ng/kg for 119 workers exposed for more than one year. Estimates of TCDD exposure were based on occupational records, on an exposure matrix based on industrial hygiene measurements, and on modelling based on measured TCDD in serum samples. A series of publications on two separate plants were available (Zack & Suskind, 1980; Zack & Gaffey, 1983; Cook *et al.*, 1986; Ott *et al.*, 1987; Bond *et al.*, 1989; Collins *et al.*, 1993).

2.1.2 German accident cohort

In the 1953 accident at the 2,4,5-trichlorophenol (TCP) production unit of BASF at Ludwigshafen, Germany, the total number of employees identified as being involved directly or in the subsequent clean-up, repair or maintenance activities was 247 (243 men, 4 women). Analyses of adipose tissue and blood from groups of these workers were conducted. Part of the cohort was first studied by Thiess *et al.* (1982) and was completed by Ott & Zober (1996).

2.1.3 IARC multicountry study

An international cohort of workers exposed to phenoxy herbicides and chlorophenols was set up by the International Agency for Research on Cancer, France (Saracci *et al.*, 1991). The cohort included 16 863 men and 1527 women employed in production or spraying, distributed among 20 cohorts from ten countries. Exposure assessment was based on plant-production records collected in each factory through questionnaires and on detailed individual job histories. Two nested case–control studies of soft-tissue sarcoma and non-Hodgkin lymphoma were conducted by Kogevinas *et al.* (1995). The international cohort studied by Saracci *et al.* (1991) was updated and expanded with the data of Fingerhut *et al.* (1991), Becher *et al.* (1996), and Kogevinas *et al.* (1997). TCDD was measured in serum samples for workers in Germany, the Netherlands and the USA. Results from cohorts in specific countries have been published separately (Coggon *et al.*, 1991; Lynge, 1993).

2.1.4 German cohorts

Several reports have considered workers from a chemical plant operated by Boehringer-Ingelheim, Hamburg, Germany. This plant produced herbicides heavily contaminated with TCDD and other PCDDs/PCDFs (Manz *et al.*, 1991; Flesch-Janys *et al.*, 1995, 1998; Becher *et al.*, 1996). In the latter study, workers from three other German plants were also considered. TCDD analyses were done on serum samples from the workers in the Boehringer-Ingelheim cohort.

2.1.5 Dutch cohorts

The mortality of two cohorts of workers employed between 1955 and 1986 in the synthesis and formulation of phenoxy herbicides and chlorophenols in the Netherlands has been studied (Bueno de Mesquita *et al.*, 1993). In one of the plants (A), where the production was focused on 2,4,5-T and derivatives, an accident in 1963 caused a release of PCDDs, including TCDD. Serum samples have been analysed for the presence of TCDD. The study has been updated (Hooiveld *et al.*, 1998; Boers *et al.*, 2010)

2.1.6 Seveso population exposed during an industrial accident

On 10 July 1976, a runaway reaction led to a blow-out of a TCP-production reactor at the ICMESA plant at Seveso, Italy. The chemical cloud

that was released from the reactor contained a substantial amount of TCDD. The contaminated area was subdivided into Zones A and B, and Zone R in descending order of TCDD contamination in the soil. The mortality and cancer incidence in the population of Seveso exposed during this industrial accident were investigated. The exposed and referent populations were followed-up as if they belonged to a unique cohort, blind to the exposure status of the subjects. The follow-up after 20 years was > 99% successful (Bertazzi *et al.*, 2001; Pesatori *et al.*, 2009)

2.2 All cancers combined

An increased risk for all cancers combined was found in the industrial cohort studies cited above in the USA, Germany, and the Netherlands and to a lesser extent in the international cohort (see Table 2.2, online). The magnitude of the increase is generally small. It is higher in subcohorts considered to have the heaviest TCDD exposure, e.g. the chloracne subcohort in the NIOSH study. Furthermore, statistically significant positive dose–response trends for all cancers combined were present in the NIOSH cohort and in the largest and most heavily exposed German cohort. A positive trend ($P = 0.05$) was also seen in the smaller German cohort where an accident occurred with release of large amounts of TCDD. However, the positive trend in this cohort was limited to smokers. Cumulative dose in these trend analyses was estimated by combining data from TCDD concentrations in blood and information on job categories, work processes and calendar time of exposure. A metanalysis of data from three cohorts occupationally exposed to TCDD and related compounds (NIOSH, Boehringer-Ingelheim, Germany, and BASF, Germany) found a statistically significant ($P = 0.02$) trend in total cancer mortality with increasing exposure to dioxin (Crump *et al.*, 2003). The trend tests show an increase in total cancers at cumulative TEQ – a metric TCDD-like compounds that is defined here as the amount of TCDD that would produce the same toxicity as a mixture of TCDD-like compounds – serum levels that would result from lifetime intake of 7 pg TEQ/kg body weight/day. A linear dose–response provided a good fit to the combined data. There was no overall increase of cancer in the population in Seveso, with only minor increases observed for all-cancer mortality and incidence at 15 or more years since the accident in the most heavily exposed zones. [The overall increase identified in all industrial cohorts, and the positive trends with increased exposure that are based on internal comparisons, reinforce an overall positive association between all cancers combined and exposure to TCDD, making it less likely that the increase is explained by confounding, either by smoking or by other exposures to carcinogens in the industrial setting.]

2.3 Cancer of the lung

An increased risk for lung cancer was observed in the industrial cohort studies, especially in the more highly exposed subcohorts (see Table 2.3, online). The relative risk for lung cancer in the highly exposed subcohorts was around 1.5 in several studies. [It is possible that relative risks of this order for lung cancer could result from confounding by smoking, but this would only be the case if there were a pronounced difference in smoking habits between the exposed and the referent populations, a difference that seems unlikely. Therefore, confounding by smoking can probably not explain all the excess risk for lung cancer, although it could explain part of it. It is also possible that other occupational carcinogens, many of which would affect the lung, are causing some confounding.] In Seveso, increased mortality and cancer incidence for lung cancer was observed at more than 15 years since the accident.

2.4 Soft-tissue sarcoma

An association between soft-tissue sarcoma and spraying of phenoxy herbicides was first suggested by results from case–control studies in Umea, Sweden (Hardell & Sandström, 1979). Exposure to TCDD in these and other community-based case–control studies is, however, not accurately estimated. An excess risk for soft-tissue sarcoma, based on a small number of deaths, has been reported in the largest industrial cohorts, specifically those of NIOSH and IARC (see Table 2.4, online). In both, the mortality ratios (SMRs) tended to be higher among the most exposed subcohorts. Incidence data for soft-tissue sarcoma were generally not available. A dose–response relationship, with estimated exposure to TCDD, was found in a case–control study nested in the IARC cohort; however, strong positive trends were also found with exposure estimates for 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D) and 2,4,5-trichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4,5-T). In Seveso, there were no cases of soft-tissue sarcoma in the most heavily contaminated Zones A and B. [Soft-tissue sarcomas are subject to serious misclassification on death certificates. Although it is unlikely that this occurs differentially in the exposed and the referent populations, re-classification of a few cases would have important consequences on results based on small numbers.]

2.5 Non-Hodgkin lymphoma

An increased risk for non-Hodgkin lymphoma was found in most of the populations studied in the four industrial cohort studies and in the Seveso population, although the relative risks were mostly non-significant and below 2 (see Table 2.5, online). A case–control study nested in the IARC cohort provided weak evidence of a dose–response relationship with estimated exposure to TCDD. [Although it is plausible that other chemicals cause non-Hodgkin lymphoma, strong potential confounding factors are not known. The lack of complete consistency among the cohorts and the weak effect detected in most of the positive studies, however, caution against a causal interpretation of the findings.]

2.6 Other cancers

Increased risks for several other malignant neoplasms have been sporadically reported among workers exposed to TCDD, and at Seveso. Most notable are risks for breast and rectal cancers and myeloid leukaemia in Seveso, bladder cancer in the NIOSH and Dutch cohorts, multiple myeloma in the NIOSH cohort, cancers of the oral cavity and pharynx in the German cohorts, genital cancers in the Dutch cohort, and kidney cancer in the IARC cohort. [The available results are not fully consistent, and several studies have not reported the results for each individual cancer site.]

2.7 Synthesis

Overall, the strongest evidence for the carcinogenicity of TCDD is for all cancers combined, rather than for any specific site. The relative risk for all cancers combined in the most highly exposed and longer-latency subcohorts is around 1.4. In dose–response analyses, higher relative risks are observed for the groups with the highest measured and modelled exposure to TCDD. This relative risk for all neoplasms does not appear likely to be explained by confounding, particularly since dose–response was typically based on internal comparisons among workers of the same cohort. The evidence for specific cancers is strongest for lung cancer, soft-tissue sarcoma and non-Hodgkin lymphoma, but confounding cannot be ruled out for lung cancer, while the findings on soft-tissue sarcoma are based on small numbers. Several studies identified statistically significant increases in many cancers, but findings for other

cancers including major cancers are, overall, inconsistent between studies. It should be borne in mind that the general population is exposed to levels that are much lower than those experienced by the industrial populations.

The Working Group did not review the epidemiological evidence of other PCDDs, PCDFs or PCBs with a dioxin-like activity.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

3.1 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-para-*dioxin*

Carcinogenicity studies with several strains of rats, mice and Syrian hamsters treated with 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin (TCDD) via the oral route (gavage or diet), by intra-peritoneal injection, or by skin application have been reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 69 (IARC, 1997). At the time, the review of the available data led to the conclusion that there is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of TCDD. The present *Monograph* also evaluates relevant carcinogenicity studies in TCDD-treated experimental animals that were published since 1997. The results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized below and in Table 3.1 and Table 3.2.

TCDD was tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration (gavage or dose feed) in four studies in mice and six studies in rats, by skin (topical) application in two studies in mice, by intraperitoneal injection in one study in mice, one study in rats and one study in hamsters and by subcutaneous injection in one study in hamsters. TCDD produced tumours in both sexes of mice and rats, and in multiple organs and tissues.

Oral administration of TCDD caused increased incidences of thyroid follicular adenomas and hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas in male and female mice, of alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas and carcinomas in male mice, and of histiocytic lymphomas and subcutaneous fibrosarcomas in female mice. In rats, it caused increased incidences of hepatocellular adenomas in males and females, cholangiocarcinomas and hepatocellular carcinomas in females, lung cystic keratinizing epitheliomas and squamous-cell carcinomas in females, adrenal gland (cortex) adenomas and squamous-cell carcinomas of the hard palate/nasal turbinates in males and females, tongue squamous-cell carcinomas and thyroid follicular adenomas and carcinomas combined in males, subcutaneous fibromas in males and subcutaneous fibrosarcomas in females, and pituitary adenomas, uterine and oral mucosa (gingival) squamous-cell carcinomas and pancreatic adenomas and carcinomas combined in females (Van Miller *et al.*, 1977; Kociba *et al.*, 1978; Tóth *et al.*, 1979, NTP, 1982a, 2006a; Della Porta *et al.*, 1987; Goodman & Sauer, 1992; Hays *et al.*, 1997, Yoshizawa *et al.*, 2005). Skin application or gavage caused benign and malignant tumours of the skin in female mice including transgenic mice (NTP, 1982b; Wyde *et al.*, 2004). Hamsters that received TCDD by intraperitoneal or subcutaneous injection developed squamous-cell carcinomas of the facial skin (Rao *et al.*, 1988). Intraperitoneal injection caused increased incidence of hepatocellular adenomas and carcinomas in female mice and of lymphomas in male and female mice (Della Porta *et al.*, 1987).

Several studies in mice showed that administration of TCDD with known carcinogens enhanced the incidence of skin papillomas, lung adenomas, liver adenomas and hepatoblastomas. In female rats, TCDD co-administered with various nitrosamines enhanced the incidence of focal hepatic lesions. In one study, TCDD enhanced the incidence of lung carcinomas in ovariectomized female rats following administration of *N*-nitrosodiethylamine (NDEA) (IARC, 1997). In two more recent studies in female rats, TCDD given orally or subcutaneously enhanced

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in mice exposed to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin (TCDD)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mouse, Swiss-Webster (M, F) 99 or 104 wk NTP (1982b)	Skin application TCDD applied to the skin of male (0.001 µg/animal) or females (0.005 µg/animal) per application (equivalent to 0.15 µg/kg/wk and 0.75 µg/kg/wk respectively), 3 × / wk on alternate days in 0.1 ml acetone. Vehicle controls were given 0.1 ml acetone 3 × /wk. Groups of mice of either sex were also given a single application of 50 µg DMBA one week before TCDD applications. This study did not include a control group treated with DMBA alone Untreated controls: 15 mice/ group Vehicle-control: 45 animals/sex TCDD: 30 animals/sex TCDD + DMBA: 30 animals/sex	Data given for vehicle controls, TCDD (alone)- and TCDD+DMBA-treated groups. Skin: Fibrosarcomas– 3/42 (7%), 6/28 (21%), 5/30 (17%) (M); 2/41 (5%), 8/27 (30%), 8/29 (27%) (F) Myxomas– 0/41, 0/27, 1/29 (3%) (F)	 NS (M) TCDD: $P = 0.007$ *vs* vehicle control (F) TCDD+DMBA: $P = 0.01$ *vs* vehicle control (F) NS	Purity 99.4% In the DMBA-TCDD experiment, the lack of groups treated with DMBA alone, precluded interpretation of the results.
Mouse, Tg.AC (F) 26 wk Wyde *et al.* (2004)	Skin application 0, 5, 17, 36, 76, 121, 166, 355, or 760 ng/kg bw TCDD in acetone applied topically 3 × /wk for 26 wk (equivalent to 0, 2.1, 7.3, 15, 33, 52, 71, 152, 326 ng/kg/d) 20 animals/group	Skin (squamous cell papillomas): 0/20, 1/20 (5%), 3/20 (15%), 11/20 (55%), 10/20 (50%), 13/20 (65%), 17/20 (85%), 19/20 (95%), 20/20 (100%) Skin (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/20, 0/20, 1/20 (5%), 1/20 (5%), 3/20 (15%), 5/20 (25%), 8/20 (40%), 14/20 (70%), 16/20 (80%) Keratoacanthomas: 0/20, 0/20, 0/20, 0/20, 3/20 (15%), 3/20 (15%), 2/20 (10%), 3/20 (15%), 1/20 (5%)	$P < 0.01$ (15, 33, 52, 71, 152, and 326 ng/kg/d) $P < 0.01$ (52, 71, 152, 326 ng/kg/d) NS	Purity 99% Survival for TCDD-treated mice was similar as in the controls, except for lower survival rates observed in mice receiving 33 and 52 ng TCDD/kg (65 and 50%, respectively) *vs* controls (85%); however, this was thought not to be treatment-related because the survival rate of higher dose groups was similar to that of the control group. The response of TCDD-induced papilloma formation in the skin was greater in mice exposed to TCDD by the dermal route than by oral administration (see gavage study by Wyde *et al.* (2004), below)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mouse, Swiss/H/Riop (M) Lifetime Tóth *et al.* (1979)	Gavage 0, 0.007, 0.7, 7.0 µg/kg bw in sunflower oil, once/wk for 1 yr. Controls received sunflower oil 45 animals/group	Liver (tumours): 7/38 (18%), 13/44 (29%), 21/44 (48%), 13/43 (30%)	$P < 0.01$ (0.7 µg/kg)	Purity NR Tumour type NR Average lifespan decreased considerably in the 7.0-µg/kg dose group (428 d) compared with controls (588 d). [Mortality-adjusted analysis was not performed and, therefore, the tumour incidence in the high-dose group may have been underestimated.]
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 104 wk NTP (1982a)	Gavage 0.01, 0.05, 0.5 µg/kg bw 2x/wk (M) or 0.04, 0.2, 2.0 µg/kg bw 2x/wk (F) as a suspension in 9:1 corn-oil/acetone at a volume of 0.05 ml/100 g bw, for 104 wk Vehicle controls: 75 mice/sex Untreated controls: 25 mice/sex TCDD: 50 mice/sex	Liver (hepatocellular adenomas): 7/73 (9%), 3/49 (6%), 5/49 (10%), 10/50 (20%) (M); 2/73 (3%), 4/50 (8%), 4/48 (8%), 5/47 (11%) (F) Liver (hepatocellular carcinomas): 8/73 (11%), 9/49 (18%), 8/49 (16%), 17/50 (34%) (M); 1/73 (1%), 2/50 (4%), 2/48 (4%), 6/47 (13%) (F) Liver (hepatocellular adenomas or carcinomas): 15/73 (20%), 12/49 (24%), 13/49 (26%), 27/50 (54%) (M); 3/73, (4%), 6/50 (12%), 3/48 (6%), 11/47 (23%) (F)	$P = 0.024$ (trend, M) $P = 0.002$ (M) $P = 0.002$ (trend, M) $P = 0.014$ (F) $P = 0.008$ (trend, F) $P < 0.001$ (high-dose M) $P < 0.001$ (trend, M) $P < 0.005$ (high-dose F) $P < 0.002$ (trend, F)	Purity 99.4% Toxic hepatitis: 1/73, 5/49, 3/49, 44/50 (M); 0/73, 1/50, 2/48, 34/47 (F)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F1 (M, F) 104 wk NTP (1982a) Contd.		Thyroid (follicular adenomas):		
		0/69, 3/48 (6%), 0/48, 0/49 (M);	$P = 0.008$ (trend M)	
		0/69, 3/50 (6%), 1/47 (2%), 5/46 (11%) (F)	$P = 0.009$ (high-dose, F) $P = 0.016$ (trend, F)	
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas):		
		7/71 (10%), 2/48 (4%), 4/48 (8%), 11/50 (22%) (M)	$P = 0.006$ (trend, M)	
		Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas or carcinomas):		
		10/71 (14%), 2/48 (4%), 4/48 (8%), 13/50 (26%) (M)	$P = 0.004$ (trend, M)	
		Subcutaneous tissue (fibrosarcomas):		
		1/74 (1%), 1/50 (2%), 1/48 (2%), 5/47 (11%) (F)	$P = 0.032$ (high-dose, F) $P = 0.007$ (trend, F)	
		Lymphoid tissue (histiocytic lymphomas):		
		9/74 (12%), 4/50 (8%), 8/48 (17%), 14/47 (30%) (F)	$P = 0.016$ (high-dose, F) $P = 0.003$ (trend, F)	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mouse, C57BL/6J x C3Hf, (M, F) 110 wk Della Porta *et al.* (1987)	Gavage 0, 2.5, 5.0 µg/kg bw in 0.01 ml/kg bw corn-oil containing 1.2% acetone, once/wk for 52 wk, followed until 104 wk. Controls given corn-oil/acetone (~99:1) once/wk for 52 wk. At 31–39 wk, 41 M and 32 F in the 2.5-µg/kg bw group were erroneously treated once with a dose of 25 µg/kg TCDD. The treatment of these mice was interrupted for five wk and then continued until wk 57, as for the other treated mice. At the end of treatment, all groups were kept under observation until 110 wk. 45–55 animals/group	Hepatocellular adenomas: 10/43, 11/51, 10/50 (M); 2/49, 4/42, 11/48 (F) Hepatocellular carcinomas: 5/43 (12%), 15/51 (29%), 33/50 (66%) (M); 1/49 (2%), 12/42 (29%), 9/48 (19%) (F)	$P < 0.001$, for fatal tumour test (M); $P < 0.01$, for fatal tumour test (F); $P < 0.001$ for incidental tumour test (F) $P < 0.005$, for both fatal and incidental tumour test (M, F)	Laboratory grade; purity NR Treatment with both doses caused a marked depression in mean body weight (no significance given) and reduced survival ($P < 0.001$) in male and female mice. Male mice, treated once by mistake with a dose of 25 µg/kg TCDD had an increased mortality shortly after the 2.5-µg/kg treatment. The incidence of other tumour types were uniformly low in treated and control groups of both sexes, and were not treatment related.
Mouse, Tg.AC (F) 26 wk Wyde *et al.* (2004)	Gavage 0, 105, 450, or 1 250 ng TCDD/kg bw, 5 d/wk, for 26 wk (equivalent to 0, 75, 321, 893 ng/kg/d, 5 d/wk) 20 animals/group	Skin (squamous cell papillomas): 1/20 (5%), 2/20 (10%), 3/20 (15%), 11/20 (55%) Skin (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/20, 0/20, 1/20 (5%), 13/20 (65%) Keratoacanthomas: 0/20, 0/20, 0/20, 1/20 (5%)	$P < 0.01$ (high-dose) $P < 0.01$ (high-dose) NS	Purity 99%

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mouse, immature B6C3 and B6C (M, F) 78 wk Della Porta *et al.* (1987)	Intraperitoneal injection 0, 1, 30, 60 µg/kg bw in 0.01 ml/kg bw corn-oil vehicle containing 1.2% acetone starting at 10 days of age, once/wk for 5 wk and observed until 78 wk of age. Controls given corn-oil/acetone (~99:1) B6C3: 151–186; 97 controls B6C: 89–138; 105 controls	*B6C3 mice*: Hepatocellular adenomas– 6/45 (13%), 5/55 (9%), 5/52 (10%), 11/43 (26%) (M); 0/42, 1/57 (2%), 1/48 (2%), 5/56 (9%) (F) Hepatocellular carcinomas– 3/45 (7%), 1/55 (2%), 9/52 (17%), 14/43 (32%) (M); 0/42, 0/57, 1/48 (2%), 1/57 (2%) (F) Thymic lymphomas– 0/45, 0/55, 1/52 (2%), 2/43 (5%) (M); 0/42, 0/57, 0/48, 5/57 (9%) (F) Non thymic lymphomas– 1/45 (2%), 2/55 (4%), 1/52 (2%), 1/43 (2%) (M); 0/42, 1/57 (2%), 8/48 (17%), 3/57 (5%) (F)	$P < 0.043$ (trend, M) $P < 0.014$ (trend, F) $P < 0.001$ (60 µg/kg, M) $P = 0.002$ (trend, M) $P < 0.05$ (60 µg/kg, F) $P < 0.05$ (30 µg/kg, F)	Treatment with 30 and 60 µg/kg bw TCDD increased mortality in both hybrids (no statistical analysis). Animals that died within 13 wk of age were excluded from histopathological evaluation and the statistical analyses. The 15 thymic lymphomas were found in animals dying between 16 and 41 wk of age and most of them (11 out of 15) were observed within 26 wk of age. Non-thymic lymphomas involved mesenteric lymph nodes, Peycr patches, and the spleen, with secondary involvement of multiple organs.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Mouse, immature B6C3 and B6C (M, F) 78 wk Della Porta *et al.* (1987) Contd.		*B6C mice*: Hepatocellular adenomas– 1/32 (3%), 2/54 (4%), 1/27 (4%), 0/30 (M) Thymic lymphomas– 0/32, 0/54, 2/27 (7%), 2/30 (7%) (M); 0/48, 0/57, 1/39 (3%), 2/38 (5%) (F) Non thymic lymphomas– 0/32, 0/54, 1/27 (4%), 2/30 (7%) (M); 1/48 (2%), 3/57 (5%), 5/39 (13%), 3/38 (8%) (F)	 NS $P < 0.05$ (trend, M, F) $P < 0.05$ (trend, M, F)	

bw, body weight; d, day or days; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene; F, female; M, male; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; *vs*, versus; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

Table 3.2 Carcinogenicity studies in rats and hamsters exposed to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin (TCDD)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Rat, Osborne-Mendel (M, F) 104 wk NTP (1982a)	**Gavage** 0, 0.01, 0.05, 0.5 µg/kg bw twice/wk as a suspension in 9:1 corn-oil/acetone at a volume of 0.05 ml/100 g bw, for 104 wk Vehicle controls received 9:1 corn-oil/acetone Vehicle controls: 75 rats/sex Untreated controls: 25 rats/sex TCDD: 50 rats/sex	Liver neoplastic nodules (adenomas): 0/74, 0/50, 0/50, 3/50 (M); 5/75 (7%), 1/49 (2%), 3/50 (6%), 12/49 (24%) (F) Liver neoplastic nodules and hepatocellular carcinomas: 0/74, 0/50, 0/50, 3/50 (2%) (M); 5/75 (7%), 1/49 (2%), 3/50 (6%), 14/49 (29%) (F) Thyroid: Follicular adenomas: 1/69 (1%), 5/48 (10%), 6/50 (12%), 10/50 (20%) (M); 3/73 (4%), 2/45 (4%), 1/49 (2%), 6/47 (13%) (F) Follicular adenomas/carcinomas: 1/69 (1%), 5/48 (10%), 8/50 (16%), 11/50 (22%) (M); 5/73 (7%), 2/45 (4%), 1/49 (2%), 6/47 (13%) (F) Adrenal: Cortical adenomas– 6/72 (8%), 9/50 (18%), 12/49 (24%), 9/49 (18%) (M); 11/73 (15%), 8/49 (16%), 4/49 (8%), 14/46 (30%) (F) Subcutaneous tissue: Fibromas– 3/75 (4%), 1/50 (2%), 3/50 (6%), 7/50 (14%) (M) Fibrosarcomas– 0/75, 2/50 (4%), 3/50 (6%), 4/49 (8%) (F) Pituitary (adenomas): 1/66 (1%), 5/47 (8%), 2/44 (4%), 3/43 (7%) (F)	$P < 0.005$ (trend, M) $P = 0.006$ (high-dose F) $P < 0.001$ (trend, F) $P < 0.005$ (trend, M) $P = 0.001$ (high-dose F) $P < 0.001$ (trend, F) $P = 0.042$ (low-dose), 0.021 (mid-dose), 0.001 (high-dose M) $P < 0.006$ (trend, M) $P = 0.042$ (low-dose, M), $P = 0.004$ (mid-dose, M), $P < 0.001$ (high-dose M) $P < 0.005$ (trend, M) $P = 0.015$ (mid-dose M) $P = 0.019$ (trend, F) $P = 0.048$ (high-dose M) $P < 0.01$ (trend, M) $P = 0.023$ (high-dose F) $P = 0.044$ (low-dose F)	Purity 99.4% Increased incidence of hepatotoxicity occurred in the high-dose male (0/50, 0/74, 1/50, 0/50, 14/50 and female (0/49, 0/75, 0/49, 1/50, 32/49) rats. One high dose-treated male developed a hepatocellular carcinoma.

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Rat, Harlan Sprague-Dawley (F) 105 wk NTP (2006a), Yoshizawa *et al.* (2005)	**Gavage** 0, 3, 10, 22, 46, or 100 ng/kg bw, 5 d/wk, for up to 105 wk Controls given corn-oil with acetone (91:1) A stop-exposure group of 50 females received 100 ng/kg TCDD in corn-oil/acetone (91:1) for 30 wk and then the vehicle for the remainder of the study 8–10 animals/group were evaluated at 14, 31 or 53 wk; 81–82 animals/group	Liver: Hepatocellular adenomas– 0/53, 0/54, 0/53, 0/53, 1/53 (2%), 13/53 (25%), 2/50 (4%) Cholangiocarcinomas– 0/53, 0/54, 0/53, 1/53, (2%) 4/53 (8%), 25/53 (47%), 2/50 (4%) Lung (cystic keratinizing epitheliomas): 0/53, 0/54, 0/53, 0/52, 0/53, 9/52 (17%), 0/50 Oral mucosa (gingiva) (squamous cell carcinomas): 1/53 (2%), 2/54 (4%), 1/53 (2%), 0/53, 4/53 (8%), 10/53 (19%), 5/50 (10%) Uterus (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/53, 0/54, 0/53, 0/53, 5/53 (9%), 0/53, 2/50 (4%) Pancreas (acinar adenomas or carcinomas): 0/51, 0/54, 0/52, 0/53, 0/52, 3/51 (6%)	$P < 0.001$ (100 ng/kg) $P < 0.001$ (trend) $P < 0.057$ (46 ng/kg). $P < 0.001$ (100 ng/kg) $P < 0.001$ (trend) $P = 0.002$ (100 ng/kg) $P < 0.001$ (trend) $P = 0.007$ (100 ng/kg) $P < 0.001$ (trend) $P = 0.032$ (46 ng/kg) $P < 0.001$ (trend)	Purity 98% Survival of dosed groups was similar to that of the vehicle-control group. Mean body weights of the 22-, 46-, 100-ng/kg core study and stop-exposure groups were less than those of the vehicle-control group

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Rats, Sprague-Dawley (M) 95 wk Van Miller *et al.* (1977)	**Diet** Rats were placed on diet containing 0, 1, 5, 50, 500 ppt or 1, 5, 50, 500, or 1 000 ppb suspended in acetone and dissolved in corn oil, for 78 wk after which feeding with basal diet was continued. A control group was maintained on the basal diet. At 65 wk, laparotomies were performed on all animals and biopsies taken from all tumours observed. Surviving rats were sacrificed at 95 wk. 10 animals/group	Total tumours: Diet (ppt) 0/10, 0/10, 5/10 (50%)[a], 3/10 (30%), 4/10 (40%) Diet (ppb) 1 ppb–4/10 (40%) 5 ppb–7/10 (70%)[b] Neoplasms included 5 ppt: 1 ear duct carcinoma, 1 lymphocytic leukaemia, 1 renal adenocarcinoma, 1 malignant histiocytoma (peritoneal), 1 angiosarcoma (skin), 1 Leydig-cell adenoma (testes) 50 ppt: 1 fibrosarcoma (muscle), 1 squamous cell tumour (skin), 1 astrocytoma (brain) 500 ppt: 1 fibroma (striated muscle), 1 carcinoma (skin), 1 adenocarcinoma (kidney), 1 sclerosing seminoma (testes) 1 ppb–1 cholangiocarcinoma, 1 angiosarcoma (skin), 1 glioblastoma (brain), 2 malignant histiocytomas (peritoneal) 5 ppb–4 squamous cell tumours (lung), 4 neoplastic nodules (liver), 2 cholangiocarcinomas	[a][$P = 0.0325$] [b][$P = 0.0031$]	All animals given 50, 500 and 1 000 ppb died between the second and fourth wk on study. At the end of the study, 4/10, 8/10, 6/10, 6/10 and 5/10 rats were alive in the 0, 1, 5, 50 and 500 ppt treated rats, respectively. No animals were alive in the 1- and 5-ppb groups. Food intake in these groups was significantly less than that of the controls and the animals had acute toxicity. Weight gain was significantly different from that of the controls only in the 5-ppb group. Neoplasms of the liver occurred only in animals fed 1 or 5 ppb TCDD.

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (Spartan substrain) (M, F) 24 mo Kociba *et al.* (1978), Hays *et al.* (1997), Goodman & Sauer (1992)	**Diet feed** 0, 0.001, 0.01, 0.1 µg/kg bw/d (equivalent to 0, 22, 210, 2 200, ppt) in the diet. Control groups received a basal diet containing the vehicle acetone alone. Controls: 86 animals/group/sex Treated: 50 animals/group/sex	Liver: Hyperplastic nodules– 6/85 (7%), 0/50, 3/50 (6%), 2/50 (4%) (M); 8/86 (9%), 3/50 (6%), 18/50 (36%), 23/49 (47%) (F) Hepatocellular carcinomas– 2/85, 0/50, 0/50, 1/50 (2%) (M); 1/86 (1%), 0/50, 2/50 (4%), 11/49 (22%) (F) Hard palate/nasal turbinates (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/85, 0/50, 0/50, 4/50 (8%) (M); 0/86, 0/50, 1/50 (2%), 4/49 (8%) (F) Tongue (squamous cell carcinomas): 0/85, 1/50 (2%), 1/50 (2%), 3/50 (6%) (M); 1/86 (1%), 0/50, 0/50, 2/49 (4%) (F) Lung (keratinizing squamous cell carcinomas): 0/85, 0/50, 0/50, 1/50 (2%) (M); 0/86, 0/50, 0/50, 7/50 (14%) (F)	$P < 0.05$; 0.01 and 0.1µg/kg (F) $P < 0.05$; 0.1 µg/kg (F) $P < 0.05$; 0.1 µg/kg (M, F) $P < 0.05$; 0.1 and 0.01µg/kg (M) $P < 0.05$; 0.1 µg/kg (F)	Purity > 99% Reduced survivaI was observed in high-dose females and in mid- and high-dose males. Mean body weights of high-dose males and mid- and high-dose femaIes were less than those of the controls throughout the major portion of the study. Decreased incidence of tumours of the pituitary, uterus, mammary glands, pancreas, adrenal gland occurred in treated rats.

Table 3.2 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Results Incidence and/or multiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Hamster, Syrian Golden (M) 12–13 mo Rao *et al.* (1988)	**Intraperitoneal injection** 0, 100 µg/kg bw TCDD in dioxane as 6 injections at 4 wk intervals (once every 4 wk). An additional group received 2 injections of 100 µg/kg TCDD. Controls received corresponding amounts of dioxane alone. 12–24 animals/group	Skin (squamous-cell carcinomas): Dioxane alone–0/12 100 µg/kg TCDD, 6 doses–4/18 (21%) 100 µg/kg TCDD, 2 doses–0/20	[NS]	Purity NR 6/24 animals injected with 100 µg/kg died before completion of the 6-dose schedule of TCDD due to intestinal adhesions along with obstruction and peritonitis
	Subcutaneous injection 0, 50 or 100 µg/kg bw TCDD in dioxane as 6 injections at 4-wk intervals (once every 4 wk). Controls received corresponding amounts of dioxane alone. 10 or 17 animals/group	Skin (squamous cell carcinomas): Dioxane alone–0/10 50 µg/kg TCDD–0/10 100 µg/kg TCDD–3/14 (21%)	[NS]	Purity NR 4/17 injected with 100 µg/kg died before completion of the 6-dose schedule of TCDD due to marked pulmonary and hepatic congestion. Tumours were moderately differentiated squamous-cell carcinomas that developed exclusively in the facial skin

d, day or days; F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; ppb, part per billion; ppt, part per trillion; wk, week or weeks

Table 3.3 Studies on 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin (TCDD) administered to rats, in combination with known carcinogens or modifying factors

Species, strain (sex), duration, reference	Known carcinogen	Route of administration	Interval	Dose and frequency (times per week/number of weeks)	Route of administration	Tumour promotion
Liver tumour promotion						
Han/Wistar rats (F) Duration (NR) Viluksela *et al.* (2000)	30 mg/kg bw NDEA Starting 5 wk after PH	i.p.	35 d	170 µg/kg bw TCDD/weekly/20 wk Purity > 99%	s.c.	+
Mammary gland tumour promotion						
SD rats (F) Brown *et al.* (1998)	30 mg/kg bw DMBA in sesame oil (to 50-d-old offspring)	oral	N/A	1 µg/kg bw TCDD in sesame oil in pregnant F on Day 15 p.c.	oral	+
Ovarian tumour promotion						
SD rats (F) Davis *et al.* (2000)	175 mg/kg bw NDEA in saline	i.p.	14 d	1.75 µg/kg bw TCDD in corn oil, twice/wk for 60 wk	oral	+
	175 mg/kg bw NDEA in saline	i.p.	18 wk	1.75 µg/kg bw TCDD in corn oil, twice/wk for 30 wk followed by vehicle for 16 wk	oral	+

bw, body weight; d, day or days; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene; F, female; i.p., intraperitoneal injection; M, male; mo, month or months; N/A, not applicable; NDEA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine; NR, not reported; p.c., post-conception; PH, partial hepatectomy; s.c., subcutaneous injection; SD, Sprague-Dawley; wk, week or weeks

Table 3.4 Carcinogenicity and initiation-promotion studies in experimental animals exposed to 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran (PeCDF) and 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 126)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or mutiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
PeCDF				
Rats, Harlan (F) 105 wk NTP (2006b)	Groups of 81 female rats were given 0, 6, 20, 44, 92, or 200 ng PeCDF/kg bw in corn-oil/acetone (99:1) by gavage, 5 d per wk, for up to 105 wk. A stop-exposure group of 50 female rats was administered 200 ng/kg PeCDF in corn-oil/acetone (99:1) by gavage for 30 wk and then the vehicle for the remainder of the study. 8–10 rats per group were evaluated at 14, 31, and 53 wk. Controls received corn-oil.	Liver: Hepatocellular adenomas– 1/53 (2%), 0/53, 1/53 (2%), 0/52, 2/53 (4%), 4/53 (8%), 1/50 (2%) Cholangiocarcinomas– 0/53, 0/53, 0/53, 1/52 (2%), 1/53 (2%), 2/53 (4%), 0/50 Mammary gland (carcinomas): 5/53 (9%), *12/53 (23%), **13/53 (24%), 2/53 (4%), 5/53 (9%), 3/53 (6%)	 $P = 0.006$ (trend) $P = 0.036$ (trend) *$P = 0.036$ **$P = 0.021$ $P = 0.021$ (trend, negative)	Purity > 97%. Survival of dosed groups was similar to that of the vehicle-control group.
Mice, HRS/J hairless (F) 21 wk Hébert *et al.* (1990)	Skin application of 5 µmol MNNG in 50 µL acetone followed one wk later by application with 0 (control), 25, 50 or 100 ng PeCDF in 25 µL acetone twice a wk for 20 wk 20 animals/group	Skin (papillomas): 1/19 (5%); 9/19 (47%); 11/18 (61%); 8/18 (44%)	$P < 0.05$ (all PeCDF-treated groups)	

Table 3.4 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or mutiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
Rats, Wistar (M) up to 24 wk Nishizumi & Masuda (1986)	50 mg/L NDEA in the drinking-water for 4 wk followed by weekly s.c. injections of olive oil (control), 10 or 100 µg PeCDF/kg bw until end of experimental wks 16, 20 or 24 12 animals/group	Liver hyperplastic nodules + HCC: *16 wk* high-dose, 3.3/rat; control, 0.3/rat *20 wk* high-dose, 3.3/rat; control, 0.5/rat *24 wk* low-dose, 17.0/rat; high-dose, 24.3/rat; control, 3.0/rat Liver tumours at 24 wk HCC: high-dose, 2.5/rat; control, 0.3/rat	 $P < 0.05$ $P < 0.05$ $P < 0.05$ (mid-dose); $P < 0.01$ (high-dose) $P < 0.05$	Purity > 99%. Tumour incidence was not given.
Rats, Sprague-Dawley (F) 25 wk Waern *et al.* (1991)	70% partial hepatectomy 30 mg/kg bw NDEA by intraperitoneal injection followed 5 wk later by 0 (control), 0.16, 0.64 or 2.6 µg PeCDF/kg bw (weekly s.c. injections) for 20 wk 10 animals/group	Gamma-GT positive focal hepatic lesions in the liver (as%): control, 0.15; low-dose, 0.25; mid-dose, 0.5; high-dose, 0.5 Number/liver: control, 2000; low-dose, 2 500; mid-dose, 3 500; high-dose, 4 000	$P < 0.05$ (mid-dose and high-dose) $P < 0.05$ (mid-dose and high-dose)	

Table 3.4 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence and/or mutiplicity of tumours (%)	Significance	Comments
PCB 126				
Rats, Harlan (F) 104 wk NTP (2006c)	Groups of 81 female rats were given 0, 30, 100, 175, 300, 550, or 1 000 ng PCB 126/kg bw in corn-oil/acetone (99:1) by gavage, 5 d per wk, for up to 104 wk. A stop-exposure group of 50 female rats was administered 1 000 ng/kg PCB 126 in corn-oil/acetone (99:1) by gavage for 30 wk, then the vehicle for the remainder of the study. 8–10 rats per group were evaluated at 14, 31, or 53 wk.	Liver: Cholangiocarcinomas– 0/53, 0/55, 1/53, (2%) 0/53, 5/53 (9%), 6/51 (12%), 22/53*(41%), 2/50 (4%) Hepatocellular adenomas– 1/53 (2%), 2/55 (4%), 1/53 (2%), 0/53, 2/53 (4%), 4/51 (8%), 7/53* (13%), 0/50 Hepatocholangiomas– 0/53, 0/55, 0/53, 0/53, 0/53, 0/51, 3/53 (6%), 0/50 Lung: Cystic keratinizing epitheliomas– 0/53, 0/55, 0/53, 0/53, 1/53 (2%), 11/51*(22%), 35/51**(69%), 0/50 Squamous cell carcinomas– 0/53, 0/55, 0/53, 0/53, 0/53, 1/51 (2%), 2/51 (4%), 0/50 Oral Mucosa (gingival squamous cell carcinomas): 0/53, 1/55 (2%), 1/53 (2%), 1/53 (2%), 2/53 (4%), 2/53 (4%), 7/53* (13%), 2/50 (4%) Adrenal Cortex (adenomas or carcinomas): 0/52, 2/55 (4%), 1/53 (2%), 0/53, 1/53 (2%), 1/52 (2%), 4/53 (8%), 3/50 (6%)	$P < 0.01$* $P < 0.001$ (trend) $P < 0.05$* $P < 0.001$ (trend) $P < 0.001$ (trend) $P = 0.002$*, $P < 0.01$** $P < 0.001$ (trend) NS $P < 0.01$* $P < 0.001$ (trend) $P = 0.022$ (trend)	Purity 99% There was a significant change in the survival of 550 ng/kg and 1 000 ng/kg stop-exposure females, with an increase observed relative to the vehicle-control group.

bw, body weight; d, day or days; F, female; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; M, male; MNNG, *N*-methyl-*N'*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine; NDEA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine; NS, not significant; s.c., subcutaneous injection; wk, week or weeks

the carcinogenicity of previously administered NDEA (Davis *et al.*, 2000; Viluksela *et al.*, 2000). In another study, the oral administration of TCDD to pregnant rats increased 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*] anthracene-induced mammary-gland tumours in offspring (Brown *et al.*, 1998; see Table 3.3).

3.2 Dioxin-like compounds

3.2.1 2,3,4,7,8-Pentachlorodibenzofuran

Oral administration of 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran (PeCDF) resulted in significant dose-dependent trends for increased incidence of cholangiocarcinomas and hepatocellular adenomas (Walker *et al.*, 2005; NTP, 2006b). (see Table 3.4)

Skin application of PeCDF after a single dose of *N*-methyl-*N*′-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine resulted in an increased incidence of skin papillomas in mice (Hébert *et al.*, 1990). Subcutaneous injections of PeCDF after oral treatment with NDEA resulted in an increased multiplicity of hepatocellular carcinomas and liver hyperplastic nodules in male rats (Nishizumi & Masuda, 1986). Subcutaneous injections of PeCDF after a single intraperitoneal injection of NDEA increased the number of focal hepatic lesions in female rats (Waern *et al.*, 1991).

3.2.2 3,3′,4,4′,5-Pentachlorobiphenyl

Oral administration of 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 126) resulted in significantly increased incidence of hepatocellular adenomas, cholangiocarcinomas, lung cystic keratinizing epitheliomas, and oral mucosa (gingiva) squamous-cell carcinomas in female rats (Walker *et al.*, 2005; NTP, 2006c).

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 AhR activation

Most, if not all of the effects of TCDD are related to its binding to and activation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR), a member of the basic helix–loop–helix/Per-Arnt-Sim family of transcription factors. This receptor was first identified in mouse liver (Poland *et al.*, 1976) where it showed high affinity towards TCDD. Further studies found that AhR is expressed in most mammalian tissues and that many other halogenated aromatic compounds can bind this receptor, including the coplanar polychlorinated biphenyls and the polychlorinated dibenzodioxins and dibenzofurans. It is generally proposed that the toxic and carcinogenic effects of dioxin and other halogenated compounds are due to their high affinity to AhR, and to the sustained pleiotropic response from a battery of genes – many of which encode drug-metabolizing enzymes – that follows the receptor-ligand complex formation (Mandal, 2005; Walker, 2007). Much of the research in the three decades since the discovery of the AhR has focused on dissecting this pleiotropic response to fully understand the mechanisms involved in dioxin-mediated toxicity.

The free AhR resides in the cytoplasm as an inactive complex containing a heat-shock protein dimer, Hsp90, XAP2 and p23 (Meyer *et al.*, 1998). When the AhR binds to a ligand, XAP2 is released and, through a conformational change, the complex is moved to the nucleus where the Hsp90 dimer dissociates and the AhR-nuclear-translocator (ARNT) binds to the PAS domains of the receptor. The activated AhR/ARNT complex forms a heterodimer that is then capable of binding to the 5′-regulatory region of dioxin-responsive genes (Mimura & Fujii-Kuriyama, 2003). The primary targets following activation of AhR include genes encoding many phase-I and phase-II metabolic enzymes (e.g. *CYP1A1*,

CYP1A2, *CYP1B1*, *NQO1*, *UGT1A2*, *GSTA1* and *ALDH3A1*) (Nebert *et al.*, 2000; Schwarz & Appel, 2005). However, through direct and indirect pathways, TCDD is able to alter the expressions of a much larger number of genes (Martinez *et al.*, 2002; Dere *et al.*, 2006; Pastorelli *et al.*, 2006; Schwanekamp *et al.*, 2006). In addition, there is cross-talk with several other receptor-mediated systems including the estrogen receptor (Safe & Wormke, 2003) and the retinoic-acid receptor β (Lu *et al.*, 1994; Berkers *et al.*, 1995; Toyoshiba *et al.*, 2004).

Despite the strong conservation of the AhR across species, gene polymorphisms, differences in co-activators and differences in downstream signalling following activation are all likely to modulate TCDD carcinogenicity (Ema *et al.*, 1994; Tuomisto *et al.*, 1999). These factors could explain the interindividual differences observed in the magnitude of the carcinogenic response after exposure to TCDD. For example, different AhR polymorphisms triggered a threefold difference in EROD activity in human lymphocytes (Smart & Daly, 2000).

4.2 Mechanisms of carcinogenicity

TCDD is not directly genotoxic and the tumorigenic activity is likely to be due to a fairly long half-life, especially in humans, resulting in a sustained activation of the AhR. TCDD half-life in the human body is estimated at 7.2 years (Milbrath *et al.*, 2009); long half-life in the environment and the ability to bio-accumulate in the food-chain are also reported (IARC, 1997). The sustained downstream signalling may trigger an adaptive biochemical and physiological response in the cell that can promote carcinogenesis (Biegel & Safe, 1990; Lu *et al.*, 1994; Berkers *et al.*, 1995; Schwarz & Appel, 2005), also by inducing mutations (Stohs *et al.*, 1990; Tritscher *et al.*, 1996; Shertzer *et al.*, 1998; Yoshida & Ogawa, 2000; Thornton *et al.*, 2001; Nebert *et al.*, 2004; Knerr *et al.*, 2006; Schlezinger *et al.*, 2006; Lin *et al.*, 2007; Green *et al.*, 2008). TCDD may also enhance – although it sometimes inhibits – the progression and invasiveness of initiated tumours (Marlowe & Puga, 2005; Peng *et al.*, 2009), but this topic will not be discussed in detail here.

The primary mechanism by which TCDD is thought to cause cancer is by altering the cellular ability to proliferate, migrate, apoptose, senesce and terminally differentiate (Safe, 2001; Marlowe & Puga, 2005; Ray & Swanson, 2009) in a multistep process focused on the accumulation of mutations and/or heritable epigenetic changes. Chemicals that inhibit apoptosis and increase proliferation usually increase cancer risk as well. TCDD has been shown to increase cellular proliferation both *in vivo* and *in vitro* in several tissues (Maronpot *et al.*, 1993; Barrett, 1995; Dere *et al.*, 2006) possibly through interactions with protein-kinase C signalling (Barrett, 1995), inhibition of senescence (Ray & Swanson, 2009) or activation of growth-signalling factors (Kohn, 1995). In initiation-promotion models, TCDD expanded the populations of preneoplastic foci in rat liver (Dragan *et al.*, 1992; Maronpot *et al.*, 1993; Tritscher *et al.*, 1995) and promoted carcinogenesis in liver, skin and lung in rodents (DiGiovanni *et al.*, 1977; Hébert *et al.*, 1990; Lucier *et al.*, 1991; Dragan *et al.*, 1992; Beebe *et al.*, 1995; Tritscher *et al.*, 1995; Tritscher *et al.*, 2000).

Finally, TCDD may upregulate drug-metabolizing enzymes, thus increasing the presence of highly reactive intermediates that form during metabolic activation and/or transformation of several key hormones. For example, CYP1A1, CYP1A2 and CYP1B1 induction is a major source of reactive oxygen species (ROS) formation in hepatocytes and this has been linked to the decoupling of the P450 catalytic cycle (Nebert *et al.*, 2004; Knerr *et al.*, 2006; Schlezinger *et al.*, 2006; Green *et al.*, 2008). A hormonal linkage with estrogen has been demonstrated through the increase in 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine (a marker of oxidative stress) in the liver of intact female

rats compared with rats that are ovariectomized before exposure to TCDD (Tritscher *et al.*, 1996). TCDD may induce prolonged oxidative stress, and consequent DNA damage and mutations, also in several other strains of rats and mice, and in cell lines (Stohs *et al.*, 1990; Shertzer *et al.*, 1998; Yoshida & Ogawa, 2000; Thornton *et al.*, 2001; Wyde *et al.*, 2001; Lin *et al.*, 2007). TCDD is a complete carcinogen in mice and rats in multiple strains (IARC, 1997; NTP, 2006a); see Section 3).

TCDD thus may both promote and initiate carcinogenesis through indirect oxidative stress, leading some to refer to dioxin as an activator of carcinogenesis and to adopt initiation-promotion models to better explain the toxicity of TCDD and better fit pre-neoplastic and neoplastic data (Portier & Kohn, 1996; Portier *et al.*, 1996; Luebeck *et al.*, 2000).

4.3 Dioxin-like compounds

As noted above, the carcinogenicity of TCDD is tied to a sustained, pleiotropic response following exposure to dioxin. The 17 laterally-substituted (2,3,7,8-substituted) polychlorinated dibenzodioxins (PCDD-Ls), the coplanar polychlorinated biphenyls (CP-PCBs) and the 17 laterally-substituted polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDF-Ls) are all structurally and toxicologically inter-related halogenated aromatic hydrocarbons referred to as dioxin-like compounds (DLCs). They potentially induce pleiotropic responses in cells very similar to those induced by TCDD (IARC, 1978, 1987, 1997; Vezina *et al.*, 2004) as they are all able to bind to the AhR. Binding affinity is different among DLCs, with some of them having so little binding affinity that there is almost no information on their biological impact. We focus here on the 28 DLCs (DLC-28) listed in Table 4.1 that produce a TCDD-like response in human cell lines (Endo *et al.*, 2003), in animal and primary human cells, and in animal and human tissue (Vezina *et al.*, 2004; Silkworth *et al.*, 2005; Kopec *et al.*, 2008; N'Jai *et al.*, 2008).

DLCs co-occur in virtually every environmental compartment where they are found, and assessment of their potential effect on human risk can be complicated. Public health authorities (in particular WHO expert panels) have developed the toxicity equivalence factor (TEF) methodology for measuring the potency of DLCs, with TCDD as the index chemical. Exposures are calculated as a simple weighted sum of the individual amounts multiplied by their individual TEFs to yield the equivalent dose in units of TCDD exposure. Only the compounds of the DLC-28 series have TEF values > 0 (Table 4.1), all of the remaining congeners have TEF = 0.

WHO recently evaluated TEFs (Van den Berg *et al.*, 2006) thus reviewing much of the literature on DLCs (Haws *et al.*, 2006), namely 189 studies with over 1000 targets used for analysis. For every compound, there is at least one *in vitro* study showing AhR binding and one showing 7-ethoxyresorufin-*O*-dethylase activity, which is associated with an increase in CYP1A1 activity. Congeners 1,2,3,7,8-PeCDD, 2,3,7,8-TCDF, 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF, and PCB-77, -126, and -169 have a very broad spectrum of information both in animal and in human cells, demonstrating activity consistent with the mechanisms described earlier. In addition, for PCB-81 there are nine studies in human cell lines showing the same alterations in gene expression and enzyme activity as reported for TCDD.

Congeners 1,2,3,7,8-pentaCDD, 1,2,3,4,6,7,8-heptaCDD, a mixture of 1,2,3,6,7,8- and 1,2,3,7,8,9-hexaCDD, and a mixture of PCDDs have been studied in two-stage experimental models (IARC, 1978) and shown to enhance the carcinogenic potential of known carcinogens just like TCDD. There are some human studies on the compounds in the DLC-28 series, but they have either poor exposure characterization or also contain TCDD, making

Table 4.1 Toxicity Equivalence Factors (TEFs) and half-lives of the dioxin-like compounds

Congener	TEF[a]	Half-life[b] (years)
1,2,3,7,8-PeCDD	1	11.2
1,2,3,4,7,8-HxCDD	0.1	9.8
1,2,3,6,7,8-HxCDD	0.1	13.1
1,2,3,7,8,9-HxCDD	0.1	5.1
1,2,3,4,6,7,8-HpCDD	0.01	4.9
OCDD	0.0003	6.7
2,3,7,8-TCDF	0.1	2.1
1,2,3,7,8-PeCDF	0.03	3.5
2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF	0.3	7.0
1,2,3,4,7,8-HxCDF	0.1	6.4
1,2,3,6,7,8-HxCDF	0.1	7.2
1,2,3,7,8,9-HxCDF	0.1	7.2
2,3,4,6,7,8-HxCDF	0.1	2.8
1,2,3,4,6,7,8-HpCDF	0.01	3.1
1,2,3,4,7,8,9-HpCDF	0.01	4.6
OCDF	0.0003	1.4
PCB 77	0.0001	0.1
PCB 81	0.0003	0.7
PCB 126	0.1	1.6
PCB 169	0.03	7.3
PCB 105	0.00003	2.4
PCB 114	0.00003	10.0
PCB 118	0.00003	3.8
PCB 123	0.00003	7.4
PCB 156	0.00003	16.0
PCB 157	0.00003	18.0
PCB 167	0.00003	12.0
PCB 189	0.00003	22.0

[a] Toxicity equivalence factors from Van den Berg *et al.* (2006)
[b] Half-life of congeners in humans based on Milbrath *et al.* (2009)

it difficult to interpret their individual effects (IARC, 1978).

While the carcinogenicity of TCDD has been clearly established in rodents, for the remaining compounds in the DLC-28 series bioassays on two-year chronic exposure are lacking. A two-year chronic study on 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF in rodents (NTP, 2006b) demonstrated tumour effects consistent with those seen for TCDD (hepatocellular adenomas, cholangiocarcinomas, gingival squamous cell carcinomas, and an equivocal finding of lung cystic keratonizing epitheliomas). When compared for potency, the result from this study agreed with the TEF concept (Walker *et al.*, 2005). 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF and 1,2,3,4,7,8-HxCDF were also enhanced tumorigenesis in two-stage studies of cancer (IARC, 1997). Follow-up of populations in Taiwan, China (Tsai *et al.*, 2007) and Japan (Onozuka *et al.*, 2009) accidentally exposed to rice-oil containing PCDFs and PCBs, shows a significantly increased risk of mortality from chronic liver disease in men and a non-significant increase from liver cancer in men and women in Taiwan, China while in Japan all cancer mortality, and liver and lung cancer-mortalities were increased in men.

The carcinogenicity of mixtures of PCBs in rodents has also been clearly established through studies of various Aroclors (IARC, 1978; Mayes *et al.*, 1998; NTP, 2006c) yielding predominantly liver cancers (Cogliano, 1998). Two-year chronic exposure studies done by the US National Toxicology Program (NTP) on PCB 126 (NTP, 2006d) and PCB 118 (NTP, 2009), demonstrated tumour effects consistent with those seen for TCDD (hepatocellular adenomas, cholangiocarcinomas, gingival squamous cell carcinomas, and lung cystic keratonizing epitheliomas). Moreover, when equivalent TCDD doses where applied with the current TEF, a carcinogenic response equivalent to that predicted for TCDD from the NTP study (Walker *et al.*, 2005) was observed.

The set of DLC-28 (IARC, 1978, 1997; Milbrath *et al.*, 2009) have a long half-life similar to that of TCDD (estimated at 7.2 years in the human body) (Table 4.1). Many congeners have similar or longer half-lives (1,2,3,7,8-PeCDD, 1,2,3,4,7,8- and 1,2,3,6,7,8-HxCDD, 1,2,3,6,7,8- and 1.2.3.7.8.9-HxCDF, and PCBs 169, 114, 123, 156, 167 and 189) while most of the remaining half-lives are in excess of 1.4 years. Several authors report the presence of these compounds in human blood in the general population (Costopoulou *et al.*, 2006; Scott *et al.*, 2008; Zubero *et al.*, 2009) indicating a sustained, long-term exposure that, when coupled with the analyses for common pleiotropic response, argues in favour of the notion that all of the DLC-28s have the same carcinogenic potential in humans.

Experimental data on mechanism of carcinogenesis induced by DLC-28 are available for 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF and PCB 126, in particular (Table 4.2), Both have been shown to bind to the AhR in humans and animals (IARC, 1978; Safe, 2001), to translocate into the nucleus and activate numerous metabolic enzymes *in vitro* (human and non-human cell lines) and *in vivo* in experimental animals (IARC, 1997; Safe, 2001; Vezina *et al.*, 2004; Haws *et al.*, 2006), to trigger changes in growth factors and signalling pathways related to cellular replication in rodents (Hemming *et al.*, 1995; Vondrácek *et al.*, 2005; N'Jai *et al.*, 2008). 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF potential effect on cell replication is suggested in the NTP study (Walker *et al.*, 2007), and promotion in skin, liver and lung tissues is reported in initiation-promotion studies (Hébert *et al.*, 1990; Anderson *et al.*, 1991; Waern *et al.*, 1991). PCB 126 acts as a promoter of liver cancer in initiation-promotion studies (Hemming *et al.*, 1995; Haag-Grönlund *et al.*, 1998) with measured increases in cell-replication rate in the populations of initiated cells (Vondrácek *et al.*, 2005). PCB 126 and 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF induce oxidative stress, the latter in a dose-dependent manner in brain and liver of rats (Hassoun *et al.*, 2002; Hennig *et al.*, 2002). These two compounds are carcinogenic in mixtures with TCDD (IARC, 1978; Hassoun *et al.*, 2001; NTP, 2006d) and by themselves in the NTP chronic bioassays in rats, where they increase hepatocellular adenomas, cholangiocarcinomas, gingival squamous-cell carcinomas, and, possibly, lung cystic keratonizing epitheliomas (NTP, 2006b, c, d).

4.4 Synthesis

There is strong evidence to support a receptor-mediated mechanism of action for TCDD-associated carcinogenesis in humans where the primary mechanism is the promotion of tumour development through the activation of cellular replication and the alteration in cellular senescence and apoptosis. Dioxin, through activation of an array of metabolic enzymes also increases the risk for oxidative stress, which serves as an indirect initiator of carcinogenesis. These events make dioxin a complete carcinogen. The conservation of the AhR and the related signalling pathways across species strongly support this mechanism in humans.

The receptor-mediated mechanism of action for TCDD-associated carcinogenesis in humans

Table 4.2 Experimental evidence on the mechanisms of carcinogenesis for TCDD and the dioxin-like compounds 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF and PCB 126 (positive, non-determined, and indirect)

Response	TCDD	2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF	PCB 126
Binding to AhR – human and non-human	+	+	+
CYP1A1 &1A2 activation – human and non-human cells	+	+	+
CYP1A1 &1A2 activation – *in vivo*	+	+	+
Multiple other phase 1 and 2 enzymes – human and non-human cells	+	+	+
Multiple other phase 1 and 2 enzymes – *in vivo*	+	+	+
Increased replication – human cells	+	Non-determined	Non-determined
Increased replication – non-human cells	+	Non-determined	+
Increased replication – *in vivo*	+	Indirect[a]	+
Other cellular function – human and non-human cells	+	+	+
Other cellular function – *in vivo*	+	+	+
Oxidative stress biomarker – *in vivo* or *in vitro*	+	+	+
Pre-neoplastic lesions – *in vivo*	+	+	+
Promoter studies – *in vivo*	+	+	+
Four specific tumours in female Sprague-Dawley rats	+	+	+
Other species/strains complete carcinogen	+	Non-determined	Non-determined[b]

[a] Gene expression changes associated with cellular replication and metaplasia in rat lung
[b] PCB mixtures, including PCB 126 are positive in rodent studies

is strongly suggested as the mechanism of action that would result in 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF and PCB 126 causing cancer in humans. The primary mechanism is the promotion of carcinogenesis through the activation of cellular replication and the alteration in cellular senescence and apoptosis through the aryl-hydrocarbon receptor (AhR). These congeners, through activation of an array of metabolic enzymes, increase the risk for oxidative stress as an indirect initiator of carcinogenesis, which makes these congeners complete carcinogens. The conservation of the AhR and the related signalling pathways across species strongly support this mechanism of action in humans.

There is compelling evidence that the mechanism of action for TCDD-associated carcinogenesis in humans operates as the mechanism of action for carcinogenesis in humans for 1,2,3,7,8-PeCDD, 1,2,3,4,7,8-HxCDD, 1,2,3,6,7,8-HxCDD, 1,2,3,7,8,9-HxCDD, 1,2,3,4,6,7,8-HpCDD, OCDD, 2,3,7,8-TCDF, 1,2,3,7,8-PeCDF, 1,2,3,4,7,8-HxCDF, 1,2,3,6,7,8-HxCDF, 1,2,3,7,8,9-HxCDF, 2,3,4,6,7,8-HxCDF, 1,2,3,4,6,7,8-HpCDF, 1,2,3,4,7,8,9-HpCDF, OCDF and PCBs 77, 81, 105, 114, 118, 123, 156, 157, 167, 169, and 189. These compounds all bind to the AhR in human cells and demonstrate changes in gene expression consistent with those seen for TCDD, 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF and PCB 126. Where examined, data have been collected for these compounds supporting some, but not all, aspects of the mechanisms outlined for TCDD, 2,3,4,7,8-PeCDF and PCB 126 that relate to activation of cell replication, alterations in cellular senescence and apoptosis, and increases in oxidative stress.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin. The strongest evidence in humans for the carcinogenicity of

2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin is for all cancers combined.

Also, a positive association has been observed between exposure to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin and soft-tissue sarcoma, non-Hodgkin lymphoma and cancer of the lung.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl.

There is strong evidence to support a receptor-mediated mechanism that operates in humans for carcinogenesis associated with 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin, where the primary mechanism is the promotion of tumour development through modification of cell replication and apoptosis, with a secondary mechanism related to increases of oxidative stress causing DNA damage. The conservation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor and the related signalling pathways and responses across species, including humans, add additional strength to the notion that this mechanism is active in humans.

2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

2,3,4,7,8-Pentachlorodibenzofuran is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

3,3′,4,4′,5-Pentachlorobiphenyl is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

In making the second and third overall evaluations, the Working Group considered the following mechanistic arguments:

There is strong evidence to support a receptor-mediated mechanism for 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran- and 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl-associated carcinogenesis in humans based upon evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals and upon extensive evidence showing activity identical to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin (TCDD) for every step of the mechanism described for TCDD-associated carcinogenesis in humans including receptor binding, gene expression, protein-activity changes, cellular replication, oxidative stress, promotion in initiation-promotion studies and complete carcinogenesis in laboratory animals.

References

Anderson LM, Beebe LE, Fox SD *et al.* (1991). Promotion of mouse lung tumors by bioaccumulated polychlorinated aromatic hydrocarbons. *Exp Lung Res*, 17: 455–471. PMID:1904809

ATSDR (1998). *Toxicological Profile for Chlorinated Dibenzo-p-dioxins*. Atlanta, GA, pp. 21.

Aylward LL, Bodner KM, Collins JJ *et al.* (2010). TCDD exposure estimation for workers at a New Zealand 2,4,5-T manufacturing facility based on serum sampling data. *J Expo Sci Environ Epidemiol*, 20: 417–426.

Aylward LL & Hays SM (2002). Temporal trends in human TCDD body burden: Decreases over three decades and implications for exposure levels. *J Expo Anal Environ Epidemiol*, 12: 319–328. doi:10.1038/sj.jea.7500233

Baars AJ, Bakker MI, Baumann RA *et al.* (2004). Dioxins, dioxin-like PCBs and non-dioxin-like PCBs in foodstuffs: occurrence and dietary intake in The Netherlands. *Toxicol Lett*, 151: 51–61. doi:10.1016/j.toxlet.2004.01.028 PMID:15177640

Baccarelli A, Mocarelli P, Patterson DG Jr *et al.* (2002). Immunologic effects of dioxin: new results from Seveso and comparison with other studies. *Environ Health Perspect*, 110: 1169–1173. PMID:12460794

Barrett JC (1995). Mechanisms for species differences in receptor-mediated carcinogenesis. *Mutat Res*, 333: 189–202. PMID:8538627

Bates MN, Buckland SJ, Garrett N *et al.* (2004). Persistent organochlorines in the serum of the non-occupationally exposed New Zealand population. *Chemosphere*, 54: 1431–1443. doi:10.1016/j.chemosphere.2003.09.040 PMID:14659945

Becher H, Flesch-Janys D, Kauppinen T *et al.* (1996). Cancer mortality in German male workers exposed to phenoxy herbicides and dioxins. *Cancer Causes Control*, 7: 312–321. doi:10.1007/BF00052936 PMID:8734824

Becher H, Steindorf K, Flesch-Janys D (1998). Quantitative cancer risk assessment for dioxins using an occupational

cohort. *Environ Health Perspect*, 106: Suppl 2)663–670. doi:10.2307/3433817 PMID:9599714

Beebe LE, Fornwald LW, Diwan BA *et al.* (1995). Promotion of N-nitrosodiethylamine-initiated hepatocellular tumors and hepatoblastomas by 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin or Aroclor 1254 in C57BL/6, DBA/2, and B6D2F1 mice. *Cancer Res*, 55: 4875–4880. PMID:7585523

Berkers JA, Hassing I, Spenkelink B *et al.* (1995). Interactive effects of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin and retinoids on proliferation and differentiation in cultured human keratinocytes: quantification of cross-linked envelope formation. *Arch Toxicol*, 69: 368–378. PMID:7495374

Bertazzi PA, Consonni D, Bachetti S *et al.* (2001). Health effects of dioxin exposure: a 20-year mortality study. *Am J Epidemiol*, 153: 1031–1044. doi:10.1093/aje/153.11.1031 PMID:11390319

Biegel L & Safe S (1990). Effects of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) on cell growth and the secretion of the estrogen-induced 34-, 52- and 160-kDa proteins in human breast cancer cells. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*, 37: 725–732. PMID:2278856

Boers D, Portengen L, Bueno-de-Mesquita HB *et al.* (2010). Cause-specific mortality of Dutch chlorophenoxy herbicide manufacturing workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 67: 24–31. doi:10.1136/oem.2008.044222 PMID:19736176

Bond GG, McLaren EA, Lipps TE, Cook RR (1989). Update of mortality among chemical workers with potential exposure to the higher chlorinated dioxins. *J Occup Med*, 31: 121–123. PMID:2709162

Brown NM, Manzolillo PA, Zhang J-X *et al.* (1998). Prenatal TCDD and predisposition to mammary cancer in the rat. *Carcinogenesis*, 19: 1623–1629. doi:10.1093/carcin/19.9.1623 PMID:9771934

Bueno de Mesquita HB, Doornbos G, Van der Kuip DAM *et al.* (1993). Occupational exposure to phenoxy herbicides and chlorophenols and cancer mortality in The Netherlands. *Am J Ind Med*, 23: 289–300. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700230206 PMID:8427257

Burns CJ, Collins JJ, Budinsky RA *et al.* (2008). Factors related to dioxin and furan body levels among Michigan workers. *Environ Res*, 106: 250–256. doi:10.1016/j.envres.2007.10.010 PMID:18054905

Charnley G & Doull J (2005). Human exposure to dioxins from food, 1999–2002. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 43: 671–679. doi:10.1016/j.fct.2005.01.006 PMID:15778006

Charnley G & Kimbrough RD (2006). Overview of exposure, toxicity, and risks to children from current levels of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin and related compounds in the USA. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 44: 601–615. doi:10.1016/j.fct.2005.08.004 PMID:16176855

Coggon D, Pannett B, Winter P (1991). Mortality and incidence of cancer at four factories making phenoxy herbicides. *Br J Ind Med*, 48: 173–178. PMID:2015208

Cogliano VJ (1998). Assessing the cancer risk from environmental PCBs. *Environ Health Perspect*, 106: 317–323. PMID:9618347

Collins JJ, Bodner K, Haidar S *et al.* (2008). Chlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, dibenzofurans, and biphenyl profiles of workers with trichlorophenol and pentachlorophenol exposures. *Chemosphere*, 73: S284–S289. doi:10.1016/j.chemosphere.2007.12.034 PMID:18442847

Collins JJ, Bodner KM, Wilken M *et al.* (2007). Serum concentrations of chlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and dibenzofurans among former Michigan trichlorophenol and pentachlorophenol workers. *J Expo Sci Environ Epidemiol*, 17: 541–548. doi:10.1038/sj.jes.7500558 PMID:17426737

Collins JJ, Budinsky RA, Burns CJ *et al.* (2006). Serum dioxin levels in former chlorophenol workers. *J Expo Sci Environ Epidemiol*, 16: 76–84. doi:10.1038/sj.jea.7500439 PMID:16015278

Collins JJ, Strauss ME, Levinskas GJ, Conner PR (1993). The mortality experience of workers exposed to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin in a trichlorophenol process accident. *Epidemiology*, 4: 7–13. PMID:8420584

Cook RR, Bond GG, Olson RA *et al.* (1986). Evaluation of the mortalty experience of workers exposed to the chlorinated dioxins. *Chemosphere*, 15: 1769–1776. doi:10.1016/0045-6535(86)90466-2

Costopoulou D, Vassiliadou I, Papadopoulos A *et al.* (2006). Levels of dioxins, furans and PCBs in human serum and milk of people living in Greece. *Chemosphere*, 65: 1462–1469. PMID:16765419

Crump KS, Canady R, Kogevinas M (2003). Meta-analysis of dioxin cancer dose response for three occupational cohorts. *Environ Health Perspect*, 111: 681–687. PMID:12727594

Davis BJ, McCurdy EA, Miller BD *et al.* (2000). Ovarian tumors in rats induced by chronic 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin treatment. *Cancer Res*, 60: 5414–5419. PMID:11034082

Della Porta G, Dragani TA, Sozzi G (1987). Carcinogenic effects of infantile and long-term 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin treatment in the mouse. *Tumori*, 73: 99–107. PMID:3576718

Dere E, Boverhof DR, Burgoon LD, Zacharewski TR (2006). In vivo-in vitro toxicogenomic comparison of TCDD-elicited gene expression in Hepa1c1c7 mouse hepatoma cells and C57BL/6 hepatic tissue. *BMC Genomics*, 7: 80 PMID:16611356

DiGiovanni J, Viaje A, Berry DL *et al.* (1977). Tumor-initiating ability of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) and Arochlor 1254 in the two-stage system of mouse skin carcinogenesis. *Bull Environ Contam Toxicol*, 18: 552–557. PMID:412534

Dragan YP, Xu XH, Goldsworthy TL *et al.* (1992). Characterization of the promotion of altered hepatic foci

by 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin in the female rat. *Carcinogenesis*, 13: 1389–1395. PMID:1354083

Dwernychuk LW, Cau HD, Hatfield CT *et al.* (2002). Dioxin reservoirs in southern Viet Nam – a legacy of Agent Orange. *Chemosphere*, 47: 117–137. doi:10.1016/S0045-6535(01)00300-9 PMID:11993628

Ema M, Ohe N, Suzuki M *et al.* (1994). Dioxin binding activities of polymorphic forms of mouse and human arylhydrocarbon receptors. *J Biol Chem*, 269: 27337–27343. PMID:7961644

Endo F, Monsees TK, Akaza H *et al.* (2003). Effects of single non-ortho, mono-ortho, and di-ortho chlorinated biphenyls on cell functions and proliferation of the human prostatic carcinoma cell line, LNCaP. *Reprod Toxicol*, 17: 229–236. PMID:12642156

Fingerhut MA, Halperin WE, Marlow DA *et al.* (1991). Cancer mortality in workers exposed to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin. *N Engl J Med*, 324: 212–218. PMID:1985242

Flesch-Janys D, Berger J, Gurn P *et al.* (1995). Exposure to polychlorinated dioxins and furans (PCDD/F) and mortality in a cohort of workers from a herbicide-producing plant in Hamburg, Federal Republic of Germany. *Am J Epidemiol*, 142: 1165–1175. PMID:7485063

Flesch-Janys D, Steindorf K, Gurn P, Becher H (1998). Estimation of the cumulated exposure to polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins/furans and standardized mortality ratio analysis of cancer mortality by dose in an occupationally exposed cohort. *Environ Health Perspect*, 106: Suppl 2655–662. doi:10.2307/3433816 PMID:9599713

Gies A, Neumeier G, Rappolder M, Konietzka R (2007). Risk assessment of dioxins and dioxin-like PCBs in food – comments by the German Federal Environmental Agency. *Chemosphere*, 67: S344–S349. doi:10.1016/j.chemosphere.2006.05.128 PMID:17223171

Goodman DG & Sauer RM (1992). Hepatotoxicity and carcinogenicity in female Sprague-Dawley rats treated with 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD): a pathology working group reevaluation. *Regulatory Toxicology and Pharmacology*, 15: 245–252. doi:10.1016/0273-2300(92)90036-9 PMID:1509118

Green RM, Hodges NJ, Chipman JK *et al.* (2008). Reactive oxygen species from the uncoupling of human cytochrome P450 1B1 may contribute to the carcinogenicity of dioxin-like polychlorinated biphenyls. *Mutagenesis*, 23: 457–463. PMID:18583386

Haag-Grönlund M, Johansson N, Fransson-Steen R *et al.* (1998). Interactive effects of three structurally different polychlorinated biphenyls in a rat liver tumor promotion bioassay. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 152: 153–165. PMID:9772211

Hardell L & Sandström A (1979). Case-control study: soft-tissue sarcomas and exposure to phenoxyacetic acids or chlorophenols. *Br J Cancer*, 39: 711–717. PMID:444410

Hassoun EA, Li F, Abushaban A, Stohs SJ (2001). Production of superoxide anion, lipid peroxidation and DNA damage in the hepatic and brain tissues of rats after subchronic exposure to mixtures of TCDD and its congeners. *J Appl Toxicol*, 21: 211–219. PMID:11404832

Hassoun EA, Wang H, Abushaban A, Stohs SJ (2002). Induction of oxidative stress in the tissues of rats after chronic exposure to TCDD, 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran, and 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl. *J Toxicol Environ Health A*, 65: 825–842. PMID:12079609

Haws LC, Su SH, Harris M *et al.* (2006). Development of a refined database of mammalian relative potency estimates for dioxin-like compounds. *Toxicol Sci*, 89: 4–30. PMID:16120753

Hays SM & Aylward LL (2003). Dioxin risks in perspective: past, present, and future. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 37: 202–217. doi:10.1016/S0273-2300(02)00044-2 PMID:12726754

Hays SM, Aylward LL, Karch NJ, Paustenbach DJ (1997). The relative susceptibility of animals and humans to the carcinogenic hazard posed by exposure to TCDD: an analysis using standard and internal measures of dose. *Chemosphere*, 34: 1507–1522. doi:10.1016/S0045-6535(97)00447-5 PMID:9134683

Hébert CD, Harris MW, Elwell MR, Birnbaum LS (1990). Relative toxicity and tumor-promoting ability of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD), 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran (PCDF), and 1,2,3,4,7,8-hexachlorodibenzofuran (HCDF) in hairless mice. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*, 102: 362–377. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(90)90033-Q PMID:2300974

Hemming H, Bager Y, Flodström S *et al.* (1995). Liver tumour promoting activity of 3,4,5,3′,4′-pentachlorobiphenyl and its interaction with 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin. *Eur J Pharmacol*, 292: 241–249. PMID:7796862

Hennig B, Hammock BD, Slim R *et al.* (2002). PCB-induced oxidative stress in endothelial cells: modulation by nutrients. *Int J Hyg Environ Health*, 205: 95–102. PMID:12018021

Hooiveld M, Heederik DJJ, Kogevinas M *et al.* (1998). Second follow-up of a Dutch cohort occupationally exposed to phenoxy herbicides, chlorophenols, and contaminants. *Am J Epidemiol*, 147: 891–901. PMID:9583720

Huwe JK (2002). Dioxins in food: a modern agricultural perspective. *J Agric Food Chem*, 50: 1739–1750. doi:10.1021/jf011265f PMID:11902908

IARC (1977). Some fumigants, the herbicides 2,4-D and 2,4,5-T, chlorinated dibenzodioxins and miscellaneous industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 15: 1–354. PMID:330387

IARC (1978). Polychlorinated biphenyls and polybrominated biphenyls. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 18: 1–124. PMID:215509

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1997). Polychlorinated dibenzo-para-dioxins and polychlorinated dibenzofurans. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 69: 1–631. PMID:9379504

Kahn PC, Gochfeld M, Nygren M *et al.* (1988). Dioxins and dibenzofurans in blood and adipose tissue of Agent Orange-exposed Vietnam veterans and matched controls. *JAMA*, 259: 1661–1667. doi:10.1001/jama.259.11.1661 PMID:3343772

Ketchum NS, Aktar FZ (1996). *The Air Force health study: an epidemiologie investigation of health effects in air force personnel following exposure to herbicides, mortality update 1996.* (Interim Technical Report AL/AO-TR-1996-0068). Brooks Air Force Base, Texas: Arstrong Laboratory

Ketchum NS, Michalek JE, Burton JE (1999). Serum dioxin and cancer in veterans of Operation Ranch Hand. *Am J Epidemiol*, 149: 630–639. PMID:10192310

Knerr S, Schaefer J, Both S *et al.* (2006). 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin induced cytochrome P450s alter the formation of reactive oxygen species in liver cells. *Mol Nutr Food Res*, 50: 378–384. PMID:16534750

Kociba RJ, Keyes DG, Beyer JE *et al.* (1978). Results of a two-year chronic toxicity and oncogenicity study of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin in rats. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*, 46: 279–303. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(78)90075-3 PMID:734660

Kogevinas M, Becher H, Benn T *et al.* (1997). Cancer mortality in workers exposed to phenoxy herbicides, chlorophenols, and dioxins. An expanded and updated international cohort study. *Am J Epidemiol*, 145: 1061–1075. PMID:9199536

Kogevinas M, Kauppinen T, Winkelmann R *et al.* (1995). Soft tissue sarcoma and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in workers exposed to phenoxy herbicides, chlorophenols, and dioxins: two nested case-control studies. *Epidemiology*, 6: 396–402. PMID:7548348

Kohn MC (1995). Biochemical mechanisms and cancer risk assessment models for dioxin. *Toxicology*, 102: 133–138. PMID:7482548

Kopec AK, Boverhof DR, Burgoon LD *et al.* (2008). Comparative toxicogenomic examination of the hepatic effects of PCB126 and TCDD in immature, ovariectomized C57BL/6 mice. *Toxicol Sci*, 102: 61–75. PMID:18042819

Kulkarni PS, Crespo JG, Afonso CAM (2008). Dioxins sources and current remediation technologies – a review. *Environ Int*, 34: 139–153. doi:10.1016/j.envint.2007.07.009 PMID:17826831

LaKind JS, Hays SM, Aylward LL, Naiman DQ (2009). Perspective on serum dioxin levels in the United States: an evaluation of the NHANES data. *J Expo Sci Environ Epidemiol*, 19: 435–441. doi:10.1038/jes.2008.63 PMID:18854873

Larsen JC (2006). Risk assessments of polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, polychlorinated dibenzofurans, and dioxin-like polychlorinated biphenyls in food. *Mol Nutr Food Res*, 50: 885–896. doi:10.1002/mnfr.200500247 PMID:17009211

Liem AK, Fürst P, Rappe C (2000). Exposure of populations to dioxins and related compounds. *Food Addit Contam*, 17: 241–259. doi:10.1080/026520300283324 PMID:10912239

Lin PH, Lin CH, Huang CC *et al.* (2007). 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) induces oxidative stress, DNA strand breaks, and poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase-1 activation in human breast carcinoma cell lines. *Toxicol Lett*, 172: 146–158. PMID:17669606

Lu Y, Wang X, Safe S (1994). Interaction of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin and retinoic acid in MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 127: 1–8. PMID:8048042

Lucier GW, Tritscher A, Goldsworthy T *et al.* (1991). Ovarian hormones enhance 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin-mediated increases in cell proliferation and preneoplastic foci in a two-stage model for rat hepatocarcinogenesis. *Cancer Res*, 51: 1391–1397. PMID:1671757

Luebeck EG, Buchmann A, Stinchcombe S *et al.* (2000). Effects of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin on initiation and promotion of GST-P-positive foci in rat liver: A quantitative analysis of experimental data using a stochastic model. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 167: 63–73. PMID:10936080

Lynge E (1993). Cancer in phenoxy herbicide manufacturing workers in Denmark, 1947–87–an update. *Cancer Causes Control*, 4: 261–272. PMID:8318642

Mandal PK (2005). Dioxin: a review of its environmental effects and its aryl hydrocarbon receptor biology. *J Comp Physiol B*, 175: 221–230. doi:10.1007/s00360-005-0483-3 PMID:15900503

Manz A, Berger J, Dwyer JH *et al.* (1991). Cancer mortality among workers in chemical plant contaminated with dioxin. *Lancet*, 338: 959–964. doi:10.1016/0140-6736(91)91835-I PMID:1681339

Marlowe JL & Puga A (2005). Aryl hydrocarbon receptor, cell cycle regulation, toxicity, and tumorigenesis. *J Cell Biochem*, 96: 1174–1184. PMID:16211578

Maronpot RR, Foley JF, Takahashi K *et al.* (1993). Dose response for TCDD promotion of hepatocarcinogenesis in rats initiated with DEN: histologic, biochemical, and cell proliferation endpoints. *Environ Health Perspect*, 101: 634–642. PMID:8143597

Martinez JM, Afshari CA, Bushel PR *et al.* (2002). Differential toxicogenomic responses to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin in malignant and

nonmalignant human airway epithelial cells. *Toxicol Sci*, 69: 409–423. PMID:12377990

Mayes BA, McConnell EE, Neal BH *et al.* (1998). Comparative carcinogenicity in Sprague-Dawley rats of the polychlorinated biphenyl mixtures Aroclors 1016, 1242, 1254, and 1260. *Toxicol Sci*, 41: 62–76. PMID:9520342

McLean D, Eng A, Walls C *et al.* (2009). Serum dioxin levels in former New Zealand sawmill workers twenty years after exposure to pentachlorophenol (PCP) ceased. *Chemosphere*, 74: 962–967. doi:10.1016/j.chemosphere.2008.10.017 PMID:19036402

Meyer BK, Pray-Grant MG, Vanden Heuvel JP, Perdew GH (1998). Hepatitis B virus X-associated protein 2 is a subunit of the unliganded aryl hydrocarbon receptor core complex and exhibits transcriptional enhancer activity. *Mol Cell Biol*, 18: 978–988. PMID:9447995

Michalek JE, Wolfe WH, Miner JC *et al.* (1995). Indices of TCDD exposure and TCDD body burden in veterans of Operation Ranch Hand. *J Expo Anal Environ Epidemiol*, 5: 209–223. PMID:7492907

Milbrath MO, Wenger Y, Chang CW *et al.* (2009). Apparent half-lives of dioxins, furans, and polychlorinated biphenyls as a function of age, body fat, smoking status, and breast-feeding. *Environ Health Perspect*, 117: 417–425. PMID:19337517

Mimura J & Fujii-Kuriyama Y (2003). Functional role of AhR in the expression of toxic effects by TCDD. *Biochim Biophys Acta*, 1619: 263–268. PMID:12573486

N'Jai A, Boverhof DR, Dere E *et al.* (2008). Comparative temporal toxicogenomic analysis of TCDD- and TCDF-mediated hepatic effects in immature female C57BL/6 mice. *Toxicol Sci*, 103: 285–297. PMID:18343893

Nakatani T, Okazaki K, Ogaki S *et al.* (2005). Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, polychlorinated dibenzofurans, and coplanar polychlorinated biphenyls in human milk in Osaka City, Japan. *Arch Environ Contam Toxicol*, 49: 131–140. doi:10.1007/s00244-004-0051-y PMID:15983863

Nebert DW, Dalton TP, Okey AB, Gonzalez FJ (2004). Role of aryl hydrocarbon receptor-mediated induction of the CYP1 enzymes in environmental toxicity and cancer. *J Biol Chem*, 279: 23847–23850. PMID:15028720

Nebert DW, Roe AL, Dieter MZ *et al.* (2000). Role of the aromatic hydrocarbon receptor and [Ah] gene battery in the oxidative stress response, cell cycle control, and apoptosis. *Biochem Pharmacol*, 59: 65–85. PMID:10605936

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981-83)*. Cincinnati, OH: National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes3/empl0003.html

Nishizumi M & Masuda Y (1986). Enhancing effect of 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran and 1,2,3,4,7,8-hexachlorodibenzofuran on diethylnitrosamine hepatocarcinogenesis in rats. *Cancer Lett*, 33: 333–339. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(86)90073-X PMID:3802062

NTP (1982a). Carcinogenesis Bioassay of 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (CAS No. 1746–01–6) in Osborne-Mendel Rats and B6C3F1 Mice (Gavage Study). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 209: 1–195. PMID:12778226

NTP (1982b). Carcinogenesis Bioassay of 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (CAS No. 1746–01–6) in Swiss-Webster Mice (Dermal Study). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 201: 1–113. PMID:12778178

NTP (2004). 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TDCC); "dioxin" *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 241–243. PMID:21089974.

NTP (2006a). NTP technical report on the toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) (CAS No. 1746–01–6) in female Harlan Sprague-Dawley rats (Gavage Studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 521: 4–232. PMID:16835633

NTP (2006b). Toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of 2,3,4,7,8-pentachlorodibenzofuran (PeCDF) (Cas No. 57117–31–4) in female Harlan Sprague-Dawley rats (gavage studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 525: 1–198. PMID:17160103

NTP (2006c). NTP toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of 3,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 126) (CAS No. 57465–28–8) in female Harlan Sprague-Dawley rats (Gavage Studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 520: 4–246. PMID:16628245

NTP (2006d). Toxicology and Carcinogenesis Studies of a Mixture of 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-Dioxin (TCDD) (Cas No. 1746-01-6), 2,3,4,7,8-Pentachlorodibenzofuran (PeCDF) (Cas No. 57117-31-4), and 3,3',4,4',5-Pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 126) (Cas No. 57465-28-8) in Female Harlan Sprague-Dawley Rats (gavage studies) *National Toxicology Program Technical Report Series*, 526: 1–180.

NTP (2009). NTP toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of 2,3',4,4',5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 118) (CAS No. 31508-00-6) in female Harlan Sprague-Dawley rats (Gavage Studies) *National Toxicology Program Technical Report Series*, 5591-174

Olie K, Schecter A, Constable J *et al.* (1989). Chlorinated dioxin and dibenzofuran levels in food and wildlife samples in the North and South of Vietnam. *Chemosphere*, 19: 493–496. doi:10.1016/0045-6535(89)90357-3

Onozuka D, Yoshimura T, Kaneko S, Furue M (2009). Mortality after exposure to polychlorinated biphenyls and polychlorinated dibenzofurans: a 40-year follow-up study of Yusho patients. *Am J Epidemiol*, 169: 86–95. PMID:18974082

Ott MG, Messerer P, Zober A (1993). Assessment of past occupational exposure to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin using blood lipid analyses. *Int Arch Occup*

Environ Health, 65: 1–8. doi:10.1007/BF00586050 PMID:8354568

Ott MG, Olson RA, Cook RR, Bond GG (1987). Cohort mortality study of chemical workers with potential exposure to the higher chlorinated dioxins. *J Occup Med*, 29: 422–429. PMID:2439670

Ott MG & Zober A (1996). Cause specific mortality and cancer incidence among employees exposed to TCDD after a 1953 reactor accident. *Occup Environ Med*, 53: 606–612. doi:10.1136/oem.53.9.606 PMID:8882118

Parzefall W (2002). Risk assessment of dioxin contamination in human food. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 40: 1185–1189. doi:10.1016/S0278-6915(02)00059-5 PMID:12067582

Pastorelli R, Carpi D, Campagna R *et al.* (2006). Differential expression profiling of the hepatic proteome in a rat model of dioxin resistance: correlation with genomic and transcriptomic analyses *Molecular & Cellular Proteomics*, 5 (5): 882–894.

Peng TL, Chen J, Mao W *et al.* (2009). Aryl hydrocarbon receptor pathway activation enhances gastric cancer cell invasiveness likely through a c-Jun-dependent induction of matrix metalloproteinase-9. *BMC Cell Biol*, 10: 27 PMID:19371443

Pesatori AC, Consonni D, Rubagotti M *et al.* (2009). Cancer incidence in the population exposed to dioxin after the "Seveso accident": twenty years of follow-up. *Environ Health*, 8: 39 doi:10.1186/1476-069X-8-39 PMID:19754930

Poland A, Glover E, Kende AS (1976). Stereospecific, high affinity binding of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin by hepatic cytosol. Evidence that the binding species is receptor for induction of aryl hydrocarbon hydroxylase. *J Biol Chem*, 251: 4936–4946. PMID:956169

Portier C & Kohn M (1996). A biologically-based model for the carcinogenic effects of TCDD in female Sprague-Dawley rats. *Organohalogen Compounds*, 29:: 222–227.

Portier CJ, Sherman CD, Kohn M *et al.* (1996). Modeling the number and size of hepatic focal lesions following exposure to TCDD. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 138: 20–30. PMID:8658509

Rao MS, Subbarao V, Prasad JD, Scarpelli DG (1988). Carcinogenicity of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin in the Syrian golden hamster. *Carcinogenesis*, 9: 1677–1679. doi:10.1093/carcin/9.9.1677 PMID:3409472

Ray S & Swanson HI (2009). Activation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor by TCDD inhibits senescence: a tumor promoting event? *Biochem Pharmacol*, 77: 681–688. PMID:19100242

Ryan JJ & Schecter A (2000). Exposure of Russian phenoxy herbicide producers to dioxins. *J Occup Environ Med*, 42: 861–870. doi:10.1097/00043764-200009000-00003 PMID:10998761

Safe S (2001). Molecular biology of the Ah receptor and its role in carcinogenesis. *Toxicol Lett*, 120: 1–7. PMID:11323156

Safe S & Wormke M (2003). Inhibitory aryl hydrocarbon receptor-estrogen receptor alpha cross-talk and mechanisms of action. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 16: 807–816. PMID:12870882

Saracci R, Kogevinas M, Bertazzi PA *et al.* (1991). Cancer mortality in workers exposed to chlorophenoxy herbicides and chlorophenols. *Lancet*, 338: 1027–1032. doi:10.1016/0140-6736(91)91898-5 PMID:1681353

Sasamoto T, Ushio F, Kikutani N *et al.* (2006). Estimation of 1999–2004 dietary daily intake of PCDDs, PCDFs and dioxin-like PCBs by a total diet study in metropolitan Tokyo, Japan. *Chemosphere*, 64: 634–641. doi:10.1016/j.chemosphere.2005.10.057 PMID:16376969

Schecter A, Birnbaum L, Ryan JJ, Constable JD (2006). Dioxins: an overview. *Environ Res*, 101: 419–428. doi:10.1016/j.envres.2005.12.003 PMID:16445906

Schecter A, Dai LC, Päpke O *et al.* (2001). Recent dioxin contamination from Agent Orange in residents of a southern Vietnam city. *J Occup Environ Med*, 43: 435–443. doi:10.1097/00043764-200105000-00002 PMID:11382178

Schecter A, McGee H, Stanley J, Boggess K (1992). Dioxin, dibenzofuran, and PCB including coplanar PCB levels in the blood of Vietnam veterans in the Michigan Agent Orange Study. *Chemosphere*, 25: 205–208. doi:10.1016/0045-6535(92)90514-R

Schecter A, Pavuk M, Constable JD *et al.* (2002). A follow-up: high level of dioxin contamination in Vietnamese from agent orange, three decades after the end of spraying. *J Occup Environ Med*, 44: 218–220. doi:10.1097/00043764-200203000-00003 PMID:11911020

Schecter A, Quynh HT, Pavuk M *et al.* (2003). Food as a source of dioxin exposure in the residents of Bien Hoa City, Vietnam. *J Occup Environ Med*, 45: 781–788. doi:10.1097/01.jom.0000085786.50835.71 PMID:12915779

Schecter A, Ryan JJ, Constable JD *et al.* (1990). Partitioning of 2,3,7,8-chlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and dibenzofurans between adipose tissue and plasma lipid of 20 Massachusetts Vietnam veterans. *Chemosphere*, 20: 951–958. doi:10.1016/0045-6535(90)90205-8

Schecter A, Startin J, Wright C *et al.* (1994). Congener-specific levels of dioxins and dibenzofurans in U.S. food and estimated daily dioxin toxic equivalent intake. *Environ Health Perspect*, 102: 962–966. doi:10.2307/3431919 PMID:9738211

Schlezinger JJ, Struntz WD, Goldstone JV, Stegeman JJ (2006). Uncoupling of cytochrome P450 1A and stimulation of reactive oxygen species production by co-planar polychlorinated biphenyl congeners. *Aquat Toxicol*, 77: 422–432. PMID:16500718

Schwanekamp JA, Sartor MA, Karyala S *et al.* (2006). Genome-wide analyses show that nuclear and cytoplasmic RNA levels are differentially affected by dioxin. *Biochim Biophys Acta*, 1759: 388–402. PMID:16962184

Schwarz M & Appel KE (2005). Carcinogenic risks of dioxin: mechanistic considerations. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 43: 19–34. PMID:16054739

Scott LLF, Unice KM, Scott P *et al.* (2008). Addendum to: Evaluation of PCDD/F and dioxin-like PCB serum concentration data from the 2001–2002 National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey of the United States population. *J Expo Sci Environ Epidemiol*, 18: 524–532. PMID:18368012

Shertzer HG, Nebert DW, Puga A *et al.* (1998). Dioxin causes a sustained oxidative stress response in the mouse. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*, 253: 44–48. PMID:9875217

Silkworth JB, Koganti A, Illouz K *et al.* (2005). Comparison of TCDD and PCB CYP1A induction sensitivities in fresh hepatocytes from human donors, sprague-dawley rats, and rhesus monkeys and HepG2 cells. *Toxicol Sci*, 87: 508–519. PMID:16049271

Smart J & Daly AK (2000). Variation in induced CYP1A1 levels: relationship to CYP1A1, Ah receptor and GSTM1 polymorphisms. *Pharmacogenetics*, 10: 11–24. PMID:10739168

Smith AH, Patterson DG Jr, Warner ML *et al.* (1992). Serum 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin levels of New Zealand pesticide applicators and their implication for cancer hypotheses. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 84: 104–108. doi:10.1093/jnci/84.2.104 PMID:1735875

Steenland K, Bertazzi P, Baccarelli A, Kogevinas M (2004). Dioxin revisited: developments since the 1997 IARC classification of dioxin as a human carcinogen. *Environ Health Perspect*, 112: 1265–1268. PMID:15345337

Steenland K, Deddens J, Piacitelli L (2001). Risk assessment for 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) based on an epidemiologic study. *Am J Epidemiol*, 154: 451–458. doi:10.1093/aje/154.5.451 PMID:11532787

Steenland K, Piacitelli L, Deddens J *et al.* (1999). Cancer, heart disease, and diabetes in workers exposed to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 91: 779–786. doi:10.1093/jnci/91.9.779 PMID:10328108

Stohs SJ, Shara MA, Alsharif NZ *et al.* (1990). 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin-induced oxidative stress in female rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 106: 126–135. PMID:2251677

Thiess AM, Frentzel-Beyme R, Link R (1982). Mortality study of persons exposed to dioxin in a trichlorophenol-process accident that occurred in the BASF AG on November 17, 1953. *Am J Ind Med*, 3: 179–189. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700030209 PMID:6215858

Thornton AS, Oda Y, Stuart GR *et al.* (2001). Mutagenicity of TCDD in Big Blue transgenic rats. *Mutat Res*, 478: 45–50. PMID:11406168

Todaka T, Hirakawa H, Kajiwara J *et al.* (2008). Concentrations of polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, polychlorinated dibenzofurans, and dioxin-like polychlorinated biphenyls in blood and breast milk collected from 60 mothers in Sapporo City, Japan. *Chemosphere*, 72: 1152–1158. doi:10.1016/j.chemosphere.2008.03.050 PMID:18474391

Tóth K, Somfai-Relle S, Sugár J, Bence J (1979). Carcinogenicity testing of herbicide 2,4,5-trichlorophenoxyethanol containing dioxin and of pure dioxin in Swiss mice. *Nature*, 278: 548–549. doi:10.1038/278548a0 PMID:431718

Toyoshiba H, Yamanaka T, Sone H *et al.* (2004). Gene interaction network suggests dioxin induces a significant linkage between aryl hydrocarbon receptor and retinoic acid receptor beta. *Environ Health Perspect*, 112: 1217–1224. PMID:15345368

Tritscher AM, Clark GC, Sewall C *et al.* (1995). Persistence of TCDD-induced hepatic cell proliferation and growth of enzyme altered foci after chronic exposure followed by cessation of treatment in DEN initiated female rats. *Carcinogenesis*, 16: 2807–2811. PMID:7586202

Tritscher AM, Mahler J, Portier CJ *et al.* (2000). Induction of lung lesions in female rats following chronic exposure to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin. *Toxicol Pathol*, 28: 761–769. PMID:11127289

Tritscher AM, Seacat AM, Yager JD *et al.* (1996). Increased oxidative DNA damage in livers of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin treated intact but not ovariectomized rats. *Cancer Lett*, 98: 219–225. PMID:8556712

Tsai PC, Ko YC, Huang W *et al.* (2007). Increased liver and lupus mortalities in 24-year follow-up of the Taiwanese people highly exposed to polychlorinated biphenyls and dibenzofurans. *Sci Total Environ*, 374: 216–222. PMID:17257654

Tsutsumi T, Yanagi T, Nakamura M *et al.* (2001). Update of daily intake of PCDDs, PCDFs, and dioxin-like PCBs from food in Japan. *Chemosphere*, 45: 1129–1137. doi:10.1016/S0045-6535(01)00151-5 PMID:11695626

Tuomisto JT, Viluksela M, Pohjanvirta R, Tuomisto J (1999). The AH receptor and a novel gene determine acute toxic responses to TCDD: segregation of the resistant alleles to different rat lines. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 155: 71–81. PMID:10036220

USEPA (2000a). *Exposure and Human Health Reassessment of 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodiobenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) and Related Compounds (September 2000 Draft). Part I: Estimating Exposure to dioxin-like compounds. Volume 2: Sources of dioxin-like compounds in the United States.* EPA/600/P-00/001 Bb. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC: National Center for Environmental Assessment, Office of Research and Development.

USEPA (2000b). *Exposure and Human Health Reassessment of 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodiobenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) and Related Compounds (September 2000 Draft). Part I: Estimating Exposure to dioxin-like compounds. Volume 3: Properties, environmental levels and background exposures.* EPA/600/P-00/001 Bc. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC: National Center

for Environmental Assessment, Office of Research and Development.

USEPA (2004). *Exposure and human health reassessment of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin and related compounds. National Academy of Sciences Review Draft*. Washington, DC: National Center for Environmental Assessment, Office of Research and Development. Available at http://www.epa.gov/ncea/pdfs/dioxin/nas-review

USEPA (2006). *An Inventory of Sources and Environmental Releases of Dioxin-Like Compounds in the United States for the Years 1987, 1995, and 2000*. Washington, DC: National Center for Environmental Assessment, Office of Research and Development. Available at http://www.epa.gov/ncea/pdfs/dioxin/

Van den Berg M, Birnbaum LS, Denison M *et al.* (2006). The 2005 World Health Organization reevaluation of human and Mammalian toxic equivalency factors for dioxins and dioxin-like compounds. *Toxicol Sci*, 93: 223–241. PMID:16829543

Van Miller JP, Lalich JJ, Allen JR (1977). lncreased incidence of neoplasms in rats exposed to low levels of 2,3,7, 8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin. *Chemosphere*, 9: 537–544. doi:10.1016/0045-6535(77)90107-2

Vezina CM, Walker NJ, Olson JR (2004). Subchronic exposure to TCDD, PeCDF, PCB126, and PCB153: effect on hepatic gene expression. *Environ Health Perspect*, 112: 1636–1644. PMID:15598615

Viluksela M, Bager Y, Tuomisto JT *et al.* (2000). Liver tumor-promoting activity of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) in TCDD-sensitive and TCDD-resistant rat strains. *Cancer Res*, 60: 6911–6920. PMID:11156390

Vondrácek J, Machala M, Bryja V *et al.* (2005). Aryl hydrocarbon receptor-activating polychlorinated biphenyls and their hydroxylated metabolites induce cell proliferation in contact-inhibited rat liver epithelial cells. *Toxicol Sci*, 83: 53–63. PMID:15483185

Waern F, Flodström S, Busk L *et al.* (1991). Relative liver tumour promoting activity and toxicity of some polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxin- and dibenzofuran-congeners in female Sprague-Dawley rats. *Pharmacol Toxicol*, 69: 450–458. doi:10.1111/j.1600-0773.1991.tb01328.x PMID:1766921

Walker NJ (2007). Unraveling the complexities of the mechanism of action of dioxins. *Toxicol Sci*, 95: 297–299. PMID:17297723

Walker NJ, Crockett PW, Nyska A *et al.* (2005). Dose-additive carcinogenicity of a defined mixture of "dioxin-like compounds". *Environ Health Perspect*, 113: 43–48. PMID:15626646

Walker NJ, Yoshizawa K, Miller RA *et al.* (2007). Pulmonary lesions in female Harlan Sprague-Dawley rats following two-year oral treatment with dioxin-like compounds. *Toxicol Pathol*, 35: 880–889. PMID:18098034

Wyde ME, Braen AP, Hejtmancik M *et al.* (2004). Oral and dermal exposure to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) induces cutaneous papillomas and squamous cell carcinomas in female hemizygous Tg.AC transgenic mice. *Toxicological Sciences*, 82: 34–45. doi:10.1093/toxsci/kfh233 PMID:15282402

Wyde ME, Wong VA, Kim AH *et al.* (2001). Induction of hepatic 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine adducts by 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin in Sprague-Dawley rats is female-specific and estrogen-dependent. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 14: 849–855. PMID:11453731

Yoshida R & Ogawa Y (2000). Oxidative stress induced by 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin: an application of oxidative stress markers to cancer risk assessment of dioxins. *Ind Health*, 38: 5–14. PMID:10680305

Yoshimura T (2003). Yusho in Japan. *Ind Health*, 41: 139–148. doi:10.2486/indhealth.41.139 PMID:12916743

Yoshizawa K, Walker NJ, Jokinen MP *et al.* (2005). Gingival carcinogenicity in female Harlan Sprague-Dawley rats following two-year oral treatment with 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin and dioxin-like compounds. *Toxicological Sciences*, 83: 64–77. doi:10.1093/toxsci/kfi016 PMID:15509667

Zack JA, Gaffey WR (1983). *A mortality study of workers employed at the Monsanto Company plant in Nitro, West Virginia*. In: *Human and Environmental Risks of Chlorinated Dioxins and Related Compounds.* Tucker R, Young A, Grey A, editors. New York: Plenum Press, pp. 575–591

Zack JA & Suskind RR (1980). The mortality experience of workers exposed to tetrachlorodibenzodioxin in a trichlorophenol process accident. *J Occup Med*, 22: 11–14. doi:10.1097/00043764-198001000-00005 PMID:6444441

Zook DR, Rappe C (1994) Environmental sources, distribution, and fate of polychlorinated dibenzodioxins, dibenzofurans, and related organochlorines. In: Schecter, A., ed., *Dioxins and Health*. New York, Plenum Press, pp. 80-113

Zubero MB, Ibarluzea JM, Aurrekoetxea JJ *et al.* (2009). Serum levels of polychlorinated dibenzodioxins and dibenzofurans and PCBs in the general population living near an urban waste treatment plant in Biscay, Basque Country. *Chemosphere*, 76: 784–791. PMID:19482333

ETHYLENE OXIDE

Ethylene oxide was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1976, 1984, 1987, 1994, and 2007 (IARC, 1976, 1985, 1987, 1994, 2008). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

From IARC (2008), unless indicated otherwise
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 75-21-8
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: Oxirane
Synonyms: 1,2-Epoxyethane

C_2H_4O
Relative molecular mass: 44.06
Description: Colourless, flammable gas (O'Neill, 2006)
Boiling-point: 10.6 °C (Lide, 2008)
Solubility: Soluble in water, acetone, benzene, diethyl ether, and ethanol (Lide, 2008)
Conversion factor: $mg/m^3 = 1.80 \times ppm$; calculated from: mg/m^3 = (relative molecular weight/24.45) × ppm, assuming standard temperature (25 °C) and pressure (101.3 kPa).

1.2 Uses

Ethylene oxide is an important raw material used in the manufacture of chemical derivatives that are the basis for major consumer goods in virtually all industrialized countries. More than half of the ethylene oxide produced worldwide is used in the manufacture of mono-ethylene glycol. Conversion of ethylene oxide to ethylene glycols represents a major use for ethylene oxide in most regions: North America (65%), western Europe (44%), Japan (63%), China (68%), Other Asia (94%), and the Middle East (99%). Important derivatives of ethylene oxide include di-ethylene glycol, tri-ethylene glycol, poly(ethylene) glycols, ethylene glycol ethers, ethanol-amines, and ethoxylation products of fatty alcohols, fatty amines, alkyl phenols, cellulose and poly(propylene) glycol (Occupational Safety and Health Administration, 2005; Devanney, 2010).

A very small proportion (0.05%) of the annual production of ethylene oxide is used directly in the gaseous form as a sterilizing agent, fumigant and insecticide, either alone or in non-explosive mixtures with nitrogen, carbon dioxide or dichlorofluoromethane (Dever *et al.*, 2004). It is used to sterilize drugs, hospital equipment, disposable and reusable medical items, packaging

materials, foods, books, museum artefacts, scientific equipment, clothing, furs, railcars, aircraft, beehives and other items (Lacson, 2003).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

Most of the data on occupational exposure are related to the production of ethylene oxide and its use in industrial and hospital sterilization. Data were not available on exposures that are incurred outside North America and Europe, where almost half of the global amount of ethylene oxide is produced (IARC, 2008).

CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens, with data collected from 1990 to 1993 in the European Union (EU). The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 presents the results for ethylene oxide for the top-10 industries in the EU (CAREX, 1999). From the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–1983), it was estimated that approximately 270 000 workers (including approximately 120 000 women) in the USA were potentially exposed to ethylene oxide (NIOSH, 1990).

More recent data on employment in the industrial sectors that use ethylene oxide have been published by the US Occupational Safety and Health Administration (2005). Estimated employment figures were: 1100 ethylene oxide-production workers, 4000 ethoxylators, who use ethylene oxide to make chemical derivatives, and 40 000 workers using ethylene oxide as a sterilant or fumigant in hospitals. In addition, approximately 2700 workers were employed in commercial sterilization by manufacturers of medical and pharmaceutical products and producers of food spices, as contract sterilizers, and in other sterilization and fumigation facilities (IARC, 2008).

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to ethylene oxide in the European Union (top 10 industries)

Industry, occupational activity	
Medical, dental, other health and veterinary services	22300
Manufacture of other chemical products	5100
Construction	3000
Printing, publishing and allied industries	2400
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	1700
Manufacture of rubber products	1500
Crude petroleum and natural gas production	1100
Manufacture of plastic products, not elsewhere classified	1100
Agriculture and hunting	1000
Manufacture of furniture and fixtures, except primary of	1000
TOTAL	46900

From CAREX (1999)

(a) Production of ethylene oxide and its derivatives

The *IARC Monographs* Volumes 60 and 97 provide detailed descriptions of studies on historical occupational exposures to ethylene oxide (IARC, 1994, 2008).

Table 1.2 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-23-Table1.2.pdf) summarizes reported exposure levels in industries where ethylene oxide and its derivatives are manufactured. Exposures vary with job category: workers involved in loading and distribution of ethylene oxide have the highest exposure. Where comparisons over time are possible, exposures appear to have decreased, presumably as control measures have been improved, with the most recent time-weighted average (TWA) values in the range of 1 ppm or less. Exposure to a large variety of chemicals other than ethylene oxide may occur, depending on the types of industrial process and job. These other chemicals include unsaturated aliphatic

hydrocarbons (e.g. ethylene, propylene), other epoxides (e.g. propylene oxide), chlorohydrins (e.g. epichlorohydrin and ethylene chlorohydrin), chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons (e.g. dichloromethane, dichloroethane), glycols and ethers (e.g. ethylene glycol, glycol ethers, bis(2-chloroethyl)ether), aldehydes (e.g. formaldehyde), amines (e.g. aniline), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g. benzene, styrene), alkyl sulfates and other compounds (Shore *et al.*, 1993).

(b) Use of ethylene oxide for industrial sterilization

Industrial workers may be exposed to ethylene oxide during sterilization of a variety of items such as medical equipment and products (e.g. surgical instruments, single-use medical devices), disposable health-care products, pharmaceutical and veterinary products, food spices and animal feed (see Table 1.3, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-23-Table1.3.pdf). Short-term exposures may be high for some workers. Despite recent reductions in exposure, in some countries and for some job categories high exposures to ethylene oxide may still occur.

Workers involved in the sterilization of medical products may also be exposed to gases that are present with ethylene oxide in the sterilizing mixture, such as chlorofluorocarbons and carbon dioxide (Heiden Associates, 1988), and – in the past – to methyl formate, as reported in a study from Sweden (Hagmar *et al.*, 1991).

(c) Use of ethylene oxide in hospitals

Ethylene oxide is widely used in hospitals as a gaseous sterilant for heat-sensitive medical items, surgical instruments and other objects and fluids that come in contact with biological tissues. Large sterilizers are found in central supply areas of most hospitals, and smaller sterilizers are found in clinics, operating rooms, tissue banks and research facilities (Glaser, 1979).

The *IARC Monograph* Volume 97 (IARC, 2008) summarized levels of exposure to ethylene oxide in hospitals. The more recent studies from Japan and France suggest that the 8-hour TWA concentrations are often below 1 mg/m^3 in hospitals.

Exposure to ethylene oxide appears to result mainly from peak emissions during operations such as opening the door of the sterilizer and unloading and transferring sterilized material. Proper engineering controls and work practices result in full-shift exposure levels of less than 0.1 ppm [0.18 mg/m^3] and short-term exposure concentration of less than 2 ppm [3.6 mg/m^3] (Mortimer & Kercher, 1989). In a survey of 125 hospitals in the USA, however, use of personal protective equipment was found to be limited to wearing gloves while transferring sterilized items, but respirators were not used (Elliott *et al.*, 1988).

As in industrial sterilization facilities, sterilizer operators in hospitals may also be exposed to other gases present in the sterilizing mixture, e.g. chlorofluorocarbons – banned by the Montreal Protocol in 1989 – and carbon dioxide (Wolfs *et al.*, 1983; Deschamps *et al.*, 1989). Some operating-room personnel handling ethylene oxide may also be exposed to anaesthetic gases and X-rays (Sarto *et al.*, 1984a; Chessor *et al.*, 2005), and some may have occasional exposure to low concentrations of formaldehyde (Gardner *et al.*, 1989).

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

Most ethylene oxide is released into the atmosphere (WHO, 2003). Ethylene oxide degrades in the atmosphere by reaction with photochemically produced hydroxyl radicals. The half-life of ethylene oxide in the atmosphere, assuming ambient concentrations of 5×10^5 hydroxyl radicals/cm^3, was reported to be 211 days. Neither rain nor absorption into aqueous aerosols is capable

of removing ethylene oxide from the atmosphere (National Library of Medicine, 2005).

Mainstream tobacco smoke contains 7 mg/cigarette ethylene oxide (IARC, 2004). With the possible exception of cigarette smoke, other non-occupational sources of exposure to ethylene oxide (e.g. residues in spices and other food products (Jensen, 1988; Fowles *et al.*, 2001) and in skin-care products (Kreuzer, 1992) are expected to be minor. Ethylene oxide is formed during the combustion of fossil fuel, but the amount is expected to be negligible (WHO, 2003). Hospital patients may be exposed during dialysis when the equipment has been sterilized with ethylene oxide (IPCS-CEC, 2001).

2. Cancer in Humans

Epidemiological evidence of the risk for human cancer from ethylene oxide derives principally from the follow-up of 14 cohorts of exposed workers, either in chemical plants where ethylene oxide was produced or converted into derivatives, or in facilities where it was used as a sterilant. Many of the workers employed at chemical factories were also exposed to other chemicals. The *IARC Monograph* Volume 97 (IARC, 2008) concluded that there is *limited evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of ethylene oxide.

The most informative epidemiological investigation of ethylene oxide and cancer risk was a study by NIOSH of more than 18 000 employees at 14 industrial facilities where ethylene oxide was used to sterilize medical supplies or food spices, or to test the sterilizing equipment (Steenland *et al.*, 1991; Stayner *et al.*, 1993). This investigation benefited from greater statistical power than did other studies, as a consequence of its large sample size. In addition, there was a lower potential for confounding by concomitant exposure to other chemicals, while detailed quantitative assessments were made of individual exposures to ethylene oxide. For these reasons, the Working Group gave greatest weight to the findings of this study when assessing the balance of epidemiological evidence on ethylene oxide, although findings from other studies were also taken into account.

2.1 Lympho-haematopoietic malignancies

Steenland *et al.* (1991) reported on the initial mortality results for the NIOSH ethylene-oxide cohort. There were 343 deaths from cancer (380.3 expected; SMR, 0.90; 95%CI: 0.81–1.00). SMRs were not statistically significantly increased for lymphatic and haematopoietic cancers combined (SMR, 1.06; 95%CI: 0.75–1.47), for lymphosarcoma-reticulosarcoma [ICD-9 200] (SMR, 1.52; 95%CI: 0.65–3.00), Hodgkin lymphoma (SMR, 1.14; 95%CI: 0.31–2.92), leukaemia (SMR, 0.97; 95%CI: 0.52–1.67), non-Hodgkin lymphoma [ICD-9 202] (SMR, 1.20; 95%CI: 0.57–2.37) or myeloma (SMR, 0.59; 95%CI: 0.12–1.73). No significant trend in mortality was observed in relation to duration of exposure, but the SMR for leukaemia (1.79, based on five deaths) and non-Hodgkin lymphoma (1.92, based on five deaths) were higher after allowance for a latency of more than 20 years. Among the sterilizer operators, mortality ratios were 2.78 (two deaths observed) for leukaemia and 6.68 (two deaths) for lymphosarcoma/reticulosarcoma. In a further analysis of the same study (Stayner *et al.*, 1993), an exposure–response analysis was conducted with the use of previously derived quantitative estimates of individual exposure to ethylene oxide (Greife *et al.*, 1988). Analysis was limited to 13 of the facilities studied, since exposure information at one facility was inadequate. Mortality from lymphatic and haematopoietic cancer was greatest in the group with the highest category of cumulative exposure to ethylene

oxide (> 8500 ppm–days) (13 deaths; SMR, 1.24; 95%CI: 0.66–2.13), but the trend across three categories of cumulative exposure was weak (χ^2, 0.97; $P = 0.32$). A similar pattern was observed for non-Hodgkin lymphoma, but not for leukaemia. In addition, a Cox proportional-hazard model was used to examine risk in relation to cumulative exposure (ppm–days), average exposure (ppm), maximal exposure (ppm) and duration of exposure (days) to ethylene oxide. A significant positive trend in risk with increasing cumulative exposure to ethylene oxide was observed for all neoplasms of the lymphatic and haematopoietic tissues [$P < 0.05$, two-tailed]. Moreover, this trend was strengthened [$P < 0.01$] when the analysis was restricted to neoplasms of lymphoid-cell origin (lymphocytic leukaemia, ICD-9 204; non-Hodgkin lymphoma, ICD-9 200, 202). The exposure–response relationship between cumulative exposure to ethylene oxide and leukaemia was positive but non-significant [$P = 0.23$]. The regression coefficients for neoplasms of the lymphatic and haematopoietic tissues for duration of exposure, average exposure, and maximal exposure were either weakly positive or negative.

Extending the mortality assessments through 1998, an updated life-table analysis of cancer mortality in the cohort was carried out (Steenland *et al.*, 2004) (see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-23-Table2.1.pdf). There were 860 deaths from cancer overall (SMR, 0.98; 95%CI: 0.92–1.03), and a statistically significant excess was found only for cancer of the bone (SMR, 2.82; 95%CI: 1.23–5.56, based on six observed deaths). In an internal analysis (excluding one small plant for which exposure data were not available), mortality from lymphatic and haematopoietic cancer was associated with log-cumulative exposures to ethylene oxide lagged by 15 years in men (p for trend = 0.02), but not in women. However, duration of exposure, peak exposure, and average or cumulative exposure did not predict mortality from lymphatic and haematopoietic cancer. A similar pattern was observed for lymphoid-cell tumours specifically (including non-Hodgkin lymphoma, myeloma and lymphocytic leukaemia), with risks of 3.76 (95%CI: 1.03–13.64; p for trend = 0.13). [The Working Group noted that the exposure assessment in the Steenland *et al.* (2004) update was limited by the assumption that exposure levels did not change during extended follow-up for about 25% of workers who were exposed at the time of the last actual exposure-data collection. Follow-up taking place long after the period of highest exposure may have attenuated results in the most recent publication.]

A cohort of ethylene oxide-production workers in the Kanawha Valley Union Carbide facility (UC) in West Virginia (USA) was studied by Greenberg *et al.* (1990), Teta *et al.* (1993), and most recently by Swaen *et al.* (2009). The latter report updated the cohort to include 2063 men employed between 1940 and 1988, and updated mortality information through 2003. No indications were found for excess cancer risks from exposure to ethylene oxide, including risks for lympho-haematopoietic malignancies, by SMR analysis. Combining primary data from the NIOSH and UC cohorts Valdez-Flores *et al.* (2010) also reported no excess cancer risks by SMR-based analysis for these cohorts followed respectively to 1998 (Steenland *et al.*, 2004) and 2003 (Swaen *et al.*, 2009). Other cohort studies did not consistently point at an increased risk for specific haematolymphoproliferative malignancies, although moderate elevations of risk were reported in some investigations (see Table 2.1 online).

A meta-analysis on the data available on nearly 33 000 workers from Germany, Italy, Sweden, the United Kingdom and the USA was performed by Teta *et al.* (1999). The meta-SMR for all leukaemia was 1.08 (95%CI: 0.61–1.93, based on 35 deaths); for non-Hodgkin lymphoma it was 1.34 (95%CI: 0.96–1.89, based on 33 deaths).

[The Working Group noted that evaluation of the possible risks for lymphatic and haematopoietic cancer was hampered by inconsistencies in the histopathological classification of diagnoses over time. The interpretation of results for these malignancies was constrained by the diagnostic groupings that had been used by researchers when the studies were conducted.]

2.2 Cancer of the breast

Studies from four cohorts of workers exposed to ethylene oxide provided useful information on the association between this exposure and breast cancer (Gardner *et al.*, 1989; Hagmar *et al.*, 1991, 1995; Norman *et al.*, 1995; Steenland *et al.*, 2003, 2004; Coggon *et al.*, 2004; see Table 2.2, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-23-Table2.2.pdf). The NIOSH study (Steenland *et al.*, 2004) and a cohort study of hospital-based sterilization workers in the United Kingdom (Gardner *et al.*, 1989; Coggon *et al.*, 2004) examined mortality from breast cancer and found no overall excess risk. Three studies examined the incidence of breast cancer: the NIOSH study (Steenland *et al.*, 2003) and a cohort study from Sweden (Hagmar *et al.*, 1991, 1995) found no overall excess risk, while another cohort study from New York State, USA, found an excess risk of about 60%, which was borderline significant (Norman *et al.*, 1995). Internal analyses with inclusion of questionnaire data were carried out in the NIOSH study (Steenland *et al.*, 2003) showing increased relative risks for breast cancer at the highest level of cumulative exposure to ethylene oxide (> 11620 ppm–days, 15-year lag, OR = 1.87, 95%CI: 1.12–3.10), with a significant exposure–response relationship [*P* for trend = 0.002), after controlling for parity and history of breast cancer in a first-degree relative.

2.3 Other cancers

Several cohort studies provided data on exposure to ethylene oxide and mortality from other cancers (stomach, brain, pancreas; see Table 2.2, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-23-Table2.2.pdf). There was no consistent evidence of an association of these cancers with exposure to ethylene oxide.

2.4 Synthesis

The Working Group found some epidemiological evidence for associations between exposure to ethylene oxide and lymphatic and haematopoietic cancers, and specifically lymphoid tumours (i.e. non-Hodgkin lymphoma, multiple myeloma and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia).

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Carcinogenicity studies with mice and rats exposed to ethylene oxide by inhalation, oral gavage, and subcutaneous injection were previously reviewed (IARC, 1994, 2008). Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1. There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in animals reported since the previous evaluation in *IARC Monograph* Volume 97 (IARC, 2008).

3.1 Inhalation exposure

In two inhalation studies in mice, there was an increased incidence of alveolar bronchiolar carcinomas and combined adenomas and carcinomas in male and female B6C3F$_1$ mice (NTP, 1987) and of lung adenomas in strain A/J female mice (Adkins *et al.*, 1986). Treatment-related increases in lymphomas, Harderian gland

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to ethylene oxide by inhalation, oral gavage and subcutaneous injection

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, F344 (M) 2 yr Lynch *et al.* (1984)	Inhalation 0, 50, 100 ppm 7 h/d, 5 d/wk 80/group	Brain[a]: 0/76, 2/77, 5/79 Mononuclear-cell leukaemia 24/77, 38/79, 30/76 Peritoneal mesotheliomas 3/78, 9/79, 21/79	$P < 0.05$ (high dose) $P = 0.03$ (low dose) $P = 0.002$ (high dose)	99.7% purity
Rat, F344 (M) 2 yr Snellings *et al.* (1984), Garman *et al.* (1985, 1986)	Inhalation 0 (control I), 0 (control II), 10, 33, 100 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 120/group	Brain[b]: 1/181, 0/92, 3/85, 6/87 Mononuclear-cell leukaemia 13/97, 9/51, 12/39, 9/30 Peritoneal mesotheliomas 2/97, 2/51, 4/39, 4/30 Subcutaneous fibromas 3/97, 9/51, 1/39, 11/30	$P < 0.01$ (trend); $P < 0.05$ (high dose) $P < 0.05$ (trend) $P < 0.005$ (trend) $P < 0.001$ (high dose)	> 99.9% purity Two control groups combined. Interim sacrifices at 6 (10 rats), 12 (10 rats), and 18 mo (20 rats). Increased mortality due to viral sialodacryoadenitis at 15 mo. No increases in tumour incidence up to 18 mo. Incidence for all sites other than brain are for rats that died or were sacrificed after 18 mo.
Rat, F344 (F) 2 yr Snellings *et al.* (1984), Garman *et al.* (1985, 1986)	Inhalation 0 (control I), 0 (control II), 10, 33, 100 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 120/group	Brain[b] 0/187, 1/94, 2/90, 2/78 Mononuclear-cell leukaemia 11/116, 11/54, 14/48, 15/26	$P < 0.05$ (trend) $P < 0.005$ (trend); $P < 0.001$ (high dose)	> 99.9% purity Two control groups combined. Interim sacrifices at 6 (10 rats), 12 (10 rats), and 18 mo (20 rats). Increased mortality due to viral sialodacryoadenitis at 15 mo. No increases in tumour incidence up to 18 mo. Incidence for all sites other than brain are for rats that died or were sacrificed after 18 mo
Mouse, A/J (F) 6 mo Adkins *et al.* (1986)	Inhalation 0, 70, 200 ppm 6 h/d, 5d/wk 0, 200 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 30/group	Lung adenomas 8/30, 16/28, 25/29 Lung adenomas 8/29, 12/28	[$P < 0.001$, trend & high dose] NS	≥ 99.7% purity Two independent experiments; tumour multiplicities increased for high-dose *vs* control in both ($P < 0.05$).

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (M) 102 wk NTP (1987)	Inhalation 0, 50, 100 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 50/group	Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar carcinomas): 6/50, 10/50, 16/50 Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas and carcinomas combined): 11/50, 19/50, 26/50 Harderian gland cystadenomas 1/43, 9/44, 8/42[c]	$P = 0.032$ (trend), $P = 0.048$ (high dose) $P = 0.010$ (trend), $P < 0.05$ (high dose) $P < 0.03$ (trend), $P < 0.05$ (low and high dose)	> 99% purity
Mouse, B6C3F$_1$ (F) 102 wk NTP (1987), Picut *et al.* (2003)	Inhalation 0, 50, 100 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 50/group	Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar carcinomas): 0/49, 1/48, 7/49 Lung (alveolar/bronchiolar adenomas and carcinomas combined): 2/49, 5/48, 22/49 Harderian gland cystadenomas 1/46, 6/46[c], 8/47 Lymphoma: 9/49, 6/48, 22/49 Uterine adenocarcinomas 0/49, 2/47, 5/49 Mammary gland adenocarcinomas or adenosquamous carcinomas 1/49, 8/48, 6/49	$P = 0.005$ (trend), $P < 0.05$ (high dose) $P < 0.001$ (trend, high dose) $P < 0.05$ (trend, high dose) $P = 0.023$ (trend), $P < 0.05$ (high dose) $P < 0.03$ (trend) $P \leq 0.02$ (low dose)	> 99% purity
Rat, SD (F) 150 wk Dunkelberg (1982)	Gavage 0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle, salad oil), 7.5, 30.5 mg/kg bw 2x/wk 50/group	Fore-stomach squamous cell carcinomas 0/50, 0/50, 8/50, 29/50	[$P < 0.01$, low and high dose]	99.7% purity Many of the fore-stomach tumours in the high-dose group metastasized or were locally invasive to other organs.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, NMRI (F) 95 wk Dunkelberg (1981)	Subcutaneous injection 0 (untreated), 0 (vehicle, tricaprylin), 0.1, 0.3, 1.0 mg/injection once/wk 200/group (controls), 100/group	Sarcomas at the injection site: 0/200, 4/200, 5/100, 8/100, 11/100	[$P < 0.001$, trend]	99.7% purity

[a] Brain tumours were gliomas; focal proliferation of glial cells (termed 'gliosis') also observed in two low-dose and four high-dose treated rats
[b] Brain tumours included in Table are only gliomas
[c] One cystadenocarcinoma in an animal with cystadenoma
bw, body weight; d, day or days; F, female; h, hour or hours; M, male; mo, month or months; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks; yr, year or years

cystadenoma, mammary gland carcinomas and uterine adenocarcinomas were also seen in $B6C3F_1$ mice (NTP, 1987; Picut *et al.*, 2003).

In two inhalation studies in F344 rats (Lynch *et al.*, 1984; Snellings *et al.*, 1984; Garman, *et al.*, 1985, 1986), there was an increased incidence in gliomas [not further specified], mononuclear cell leukaemia and peritoneal mesotheliomas. A treatment-related increase in subcutaneous fibromas also occurred in male rats (Snellings *et al.*, 1984).

3.2 Other routes of exposure

In one study, subcutaneous injection of ethylene oxide in female NMRI mice resulted in a dose-related increase in the incidence of sarcomas at the injection site (Dunkelberg, 1981).

In one study with female Sprague-Dawley rats that received ethylene oxide by gavage, there was a treatment-related increase in fore-stomach squamous-cell carcinomas (Dunkelberg, 1982).

4. Other Relevant Data

Experimental studies on ethylene oxide have been evaluated previously in *IARC Monograph* Volumes 60 and 97 (IARC, 1994, 2008). There is an extensive body of data on the mechanism of ethylene oxide-induced carcinogenicity encompassing toxicokinetics, DNA-adduct formation, biomarkers, genotoxicity, and molecular biology. Ethylene oxide is a direct alkylating agent that reacts with nucleophiles without the need for metabolic transformation. It has been shown to have genotoxic and mutagenic activity in numerous assays in both somatic and germ cells, and prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms (IARC, 1994, 2008). Ethylene oxide is active in a wide range of *in vitro* and *in vivo* systems. Increases in both gene mutations and chromosomal alterations, two general classes of cancer-related genetic changes, have been observed. The direct reaction of ethylene oxide with DNA is thought to initiate the cascade of genetic and related events that lead to cancer (Swenberg *et al.*, 1990). Thus, formation of DNA adducts and resultant mutations are key steps in the mechanism of carcinogenicity for this agent.

4.1 Absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion

Ethylene oxide is readily taken up by the lungs and is absorbed relatively efficiently into the blood. A study of workers exposed to ethylene oxide revealed an alveolar retention of 75–80%, calculated from hourly measurements of ethylene oxide in ambient air, which ranged from 0.2 to 24.1 mg/m^3 [0.11–13.2 ppm], and in alveolar air, which ranged from 0.05 to 6 mg/m^3 [0.03–3.3 ppm] (Brugnone *et al.*, 1985, 1986). At steady-state, therefore, 20–25% of inhaled ethylene oxide that reached the alveolar space was exhaled as the unchanged compound and 75–80% was taken up by the body and metabolized. Blood samples taken from workers at four hours after the work-shift gave venous blood/alveolar air coefficients of 12–17 and venous blood/environmental air coefficients of 2.5–3.3.

The mammalian metabolic pathways of ethylene oxide are shown in Fig. 4.1 and can be summarized as follows: Ethylene oxide is converted (*a*) by enzymatic and non-enzymatic hydrolysis to ethylene glycol, which is partly excreted as such and partly metabolized further via glycolaldehyde, glycolic acid and glyoxalic acid to oxalic acid, formic acid and carbon dioxide; and (*b*) by conjugation with glutathione (GSH) followed by further metabolism to *S*-(2-hydroxyethyl)cysteine, *S*-(2-carboxymethyl) cysteine and *N*-acetylated derivatives (*N*-acetyl-*S*-(2-hydroxyethyl)cysteine (also known as *S*-(2-hydroxyethyl)mercapturic acid or HEMA) and *N*-acetyl-*S*-(2-carboxymethyl)cysteine) (Wolfs

et al., 1983; Popp *et al.*, 1994), which are partly converted to thio-diacetic acid (Scheick *et al.*, 1997).

Concentrations of ethylene glycol were determined at the end of day 3 of a normal working week in blood samples from sterilization personnel exposed to ethylene oxide. TWA concentrations of ethylene oxide determined over eight hours ranged from 0.3 to 52 ppm [0.55–95.2 mg/m^3] (overall mean, 4.2 ppm [7.7 mg/m^3]). The mean concentrations of ethylene glycol in the blood of exposed subjects were twice as high (90 mg/L) as those in controls (45 mg/L) (Wolfs *et al.*, 1983).

The concentration of thioethers excreted in urine collected at the end of sterilization processes was found to be twice as high in non-smoking personnel (10.2 mmol/mol creatinine) exposed to peak concentrations of 1–200 ppm [1.83–366 mg/m^3] ethylene oxide as the thioether concentration in unexposed workers (5.46 mmol/mol creatinine). The concentration of ethylene oxide in air was not monitored routinely (Burgaz *et al.*, 1992).

The glutathione-*S*-transferase (GST) activity towards ethylene oxide in cytosolic fractions from human livers was low (too low to determine the Michaelis-Menten constant [Km] value). The maximum velocity (V_{max}) varied from 7.6 to 10.6 nmol/min/mg protein. Epoxide-hydrolase (EH) activity in the microsomal fraction of human liver averaged 1.8 nmol/min/mg protein. The Km for hydrolysis was estimated to be approximately 0.2 mM, but non-enzymatic hydrolysis was considerable and precluded accurate measurement (Fennell & Brown, 2001).

Metabolism of ethylene oxide to the GSH conjugate and ethylene glycol is generally considered to be the major pathway for the elimination of DNA-reactive ethylene oxide. However, strongly suggestive evidence *in vitro* was presented by Hengstler *et al.* (1994) that glycolaldehyde is formed by further metabolism of ethylene glycol and that this derivative leads to DNA–protein crosslinks and DNA strand-breaks (as measured with the alkaline elution assay) after in-vitro incubation with human mononuclear peripheral blood cells.

4.2 Genetic and related effects

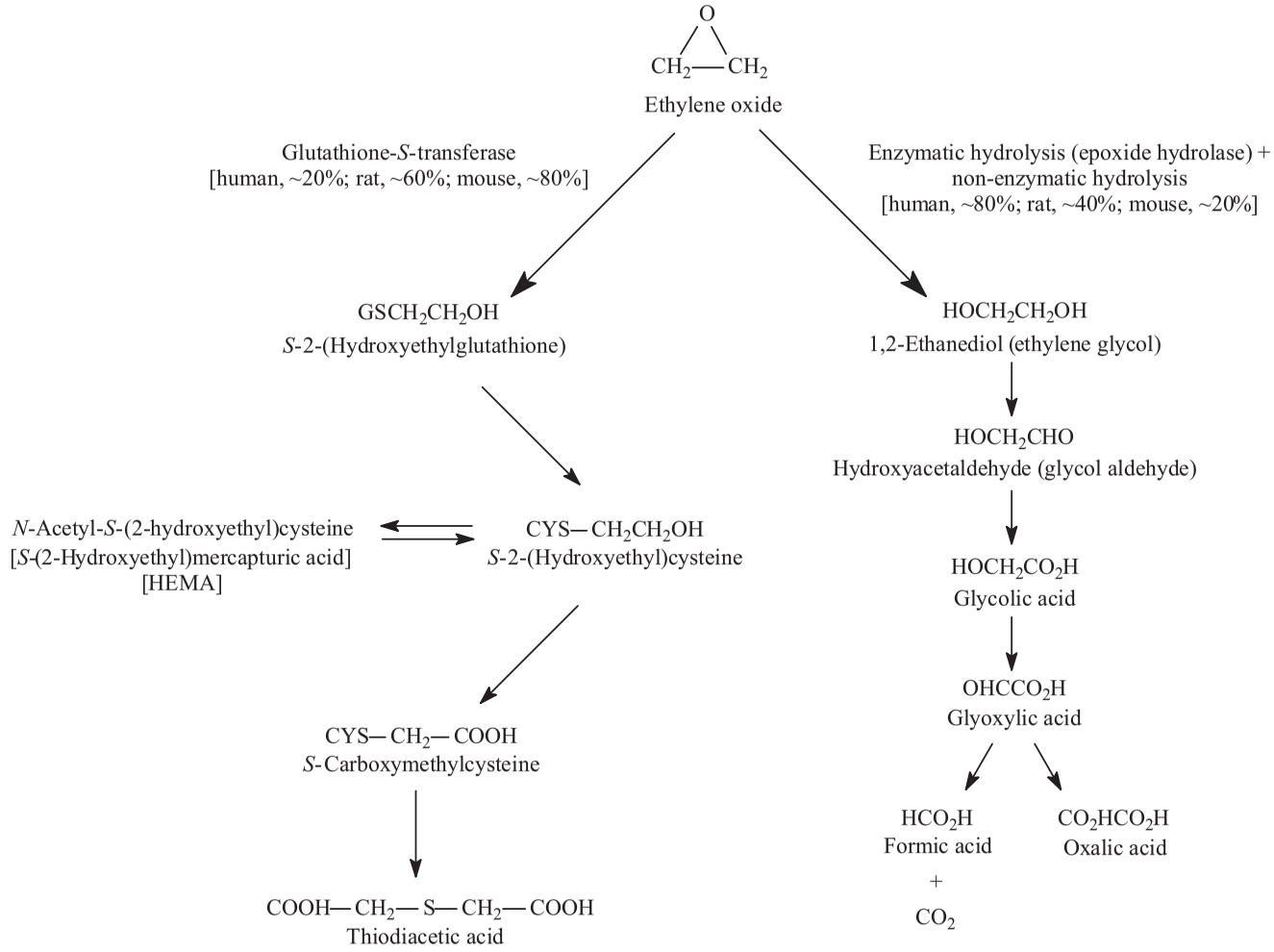
4.2.1 GST polymorphisms

Ethylene oxide is a substrate of the GST iso-enzyme T1 (Hayes *et al.*, 2005). This detoxifying enzyme is polymorphic and a relatively large proportion of the population (about 20% of Caucasians, almost 50% of Asians) has a homozygous deletion (*GSTT1*-null genotype) (Bolt & Thier, 2006). As expected, these individuals show a significantly higher amount of hydroxyethyl valine in their haemoglobin due to the presence of endogenous ethylene oxide (Thier *et al.*, 2001). Nevertheless, the influence of this genetic trait on the formation of this type of adduct as a result of exposure to exogenous ethylene oxide at the workplace is much less clear, as discussed below.

In the cytoplasm of erythrocytes obtained from 36 individuals, ethylene oxide was eliminated three to six times faster in samples from so-called conjugators (defined by a standardized conjugation reaction of methyl bromide and GSH; 75% of the population) than in those from the remaining 25% (who lack this GST-specific activity). In the latter samples, the rate of disappearance did not differ from that of controls. In this experiment, the disappearance of ethylene oxide was investigated in the gas phase, in closed vials that contained GSH and cytoplasm of erythrocytes (Hallier *et al.*, 1993).

Studies on the genotoxicity of ethylene oxide were reviewed in detail in *IARC Monograph* Volume 97 (IARC, 2008). Studies with peripheral blood of exposed workers have shown that exposure to ethylene oxide is associated with an elevated number of chromosomal aberrations including breaks, gaps, exchanges, and supernumerary chromosomes. An increased frequency

Fig. 4.1 Metabolism of ethylene oxide



Adapted from Wolfs *et al.* (1983), Scheick *et al.* (1997)

of sister chromatid exchange (SCE) in the peripheral lymphocytes of workers handling ethylene oxide was also reported.

4.2.2 DNA-adduct formation

In-vitro and in-vivo studies have shown that ethylene oxide can bind to cellular macromolecules, which results in a variety of DNA, RNA and protein adducts. The major DNA adduct recovered *in vivo* is *N*7-(2-hydroxyethyl) guanine (7-HEG), while some minor adducts such as *N*3-(2-hydroxyethyl)adenine (3-HEA) and O^6-(2-hydroxyethyl)guanine (O^6-HEG), are detected at much lower levels (Walker *et al.*, 1992). In-vitro studies indicate that other minor adducts can also be formed from the reaction of ethylene oxide with the *N*1 and N^6 positions of adenine and the *N*3 position of cytosine, uracil and thymine (IARC, 1994; Tates *et al.*, 1999; Kolman *et al.*, 2002).

Tompkins *et al.* (2009) suggested that the mutagenicity and carcinogenicity of ethylene oxide could be attributed to formation of multiple 2-hydroxyethyl (HE) DNA adducts such as 3-HEA and O^6-HEG. Boysen *et al.* (2009) argued that there is little evidence that 7-HEG adducts cause mutations since – unlike the *N*1, N^2, or O^6 positions of guanine – they do not participate in hydrogen bonding in the DNA double-helix and easily de-purinate. These authors conclude that the formation of *N*7-guanine adducts cannot be used in isolation as a quantitative biomarker for pro-mutagenic DNA lesions or mutagenic response. Marsden *et al.* (2009) used a dual-isotope approach to distinguish between endogenously formed background levels of 7-HEG and exogenously formed 7-HEG adducts in rats following exposure to [^{14}C]-labelled ethylene oxide. By combining liquid chromatography-tandem mass spectrometry and high-performance liquid chromatography/accelerator mass spectrometry analysis, both the endogenous and exogenous *N*7-HEG adducts were quantified in tissues of [^{14}C]ethylene oxide-treated rats. Levels of [^{14}C]-7-HEG induced in spleen, liver, and stomach DNA were insignificant compared with the measured background levels of *N*7-HEG naturally present.

The exact mechanism by which the other ethylene oxide-induced DNA adducts such as 3-HEA and O^6-HEG may lead to mutation is unknown. Several mechanisms could be involved, including the mispairing of altered bases or the formation of apurinic/apyrimidinic sites via DNA repair or chemical depurination/depyrimidination combined with the insertion of another base, which would typically be an adenine opposite an apurinic site (Tates *et al.*, 1999; Houle *et al.*, 2006). These lesions can also lead to the formation of DNA single-strand breaks and, subsequently, to chromosomal breakage. In addition, the putative ethylene oxide metabolite, glycolaldehyde, has been shown to form DNA–protein crosslinks and DNA single-strand breaks (Hengstler *et al.*, 1994).

4.2.3 Cytogenetic alterations and mutations

Studies of human exposure to ethylene oxide have focused on individuals employed in the operation of hospital- or factory-based sterilization units, and on workers who were involved in manufacturing or processing of ethylene oxide. The studies show that exposure to ethylene oxide results in chromosomal alterations that are related to both the level and duration of exposure, while a single study suggested that exposure to ethylene oxide causes gene mutations.

(a) Sister chromatid exchange

The induction of increased frequencies of sister chromatid exchange (SCE) has been found to be a sensitive indicator of genotoxic exposure to ethylene oxide in humans (Tates *et al.*, 1991). In several studies, significant differences were found in SCE frequencies in individuals and/or groups exposed to levels of ethylene oxide higher

than the designated low-exposure group from the same or a similar environments (Yager *et al.*, 1983; Sarto *et al.*, 1984a; Stolley *et al.*, 1984; Tates *et al.*, 1991; Schulte *et al.*, 1992). These findings support the observation that SCE frequencies varied with level and frequency of exposure to ethylene oxide. In two studies SCE frequencies were investigated over time: they remained elevated for at least six months even when exposures diminished or ceased after the first assessment (Sarto *et al.*, 1984b; Stolley *et al.*, 1984).

(b) Chromosomal aberrations

Chromosomal aberration frequencies correlate with exposure concentrations of ethylene oxide and/or duration of the exposure (Clare *et al.*, 1985; Galloway *et al.*, 1986; Tates *et al.*, 1991; Lerda & Rizzi, 1992). As reported for SCE, the validity of these comparisons is supported by the observation that some investigators found significant increases in chromosomal aberrations in high-dose groups but not in low-dose groups exposed in the same or similar environments (Sarto *et al.*, 1984b; Galloway *et al.*, 1986). In workers exposed to a range of concentrations of ethylene oxide [0.01–200 ppm; 0.02–366 mg/m^3] the presence of chromosomal aberrations was evaluated; in most of the workers significant increases in chromosomal aberrations were found (Pero *et al.*, 1981; Högstedt *et al.*, 1983, 1990; Sarto *et al.*, 1984b; Richmond *et al.*, 1985; Galloway *et al.*, 1986; Karelová *et al.*, 1987; Tates *et al.*, 1991; Lerda & Rizzi, 1992; Ribeiro *et al.*, 1994; Major *et al.*, 1996). In one study, such increases were found in individuals exposed to concentrations of ethylene oxide of approximately 1 ppm [1.83 mg/m^3] and even lower (Högstedt *et al.*, 1983). However, in other studies of workers exposed to these low concentrations of ethylene oxide, evidence of increased chromosomal aberrations was not found (Van Sittert *et al.*, 1985; Mayer *et al.*, 1991).

(c) Micronuclei

Few investigators have evaluated the impact of exposure to ethylene oxide on the frequency of micronucleated cells, and the available studies reported positive or no effects. Högstedt *et al.* (1990) and Ribeiro *et al.* (1994) found an increased frequency of micronucleated lymphocytes in workers, while Tates *et al.* (1991) found significant increases in micronucleus frequency in workers exposed to high, but not to low doses. Exposure concentrations in all these studies varied widely, ranging from < 1 ppm to 400 ppm [1.83–732 mg/m^3] ethylene oxide. Studies that evaluated micronucleus formation in individuals exposed to ethylene oxide at concentrations ≤ 1 ppm were negative (Högstedt *et al.*, 1983; Sarto *et al.*, 1990, 1991; Tates *et al.*, 1995).

In two studies micronucleus formation was determined in cells other than lymphocytes. Ribeiro *et al.* (1994) evaluated both peripheral blood lymphocytes and exfoliated buccal cells in individuals exposed to 2–5 ppm [3.66–9.15 mg/m^3] ethylene oxide (TWA); micronucleus frequencies in buccal cells were not associated with the exposure, while those in lymphocytes showed a significant positive association. Sarto *et al.* (1990) found a significant increase in micronucleus frequency in nasal mucosal cells, but not in exfoliated buccal cells of workers exposed to ethylene oxide at concentrations below 0.38 ppm [0.7 mg/m^3] (TWA).

(d) Gene mutations

The question whether occupational exposure to ethylene oxide is associated with the induction of gene mutations has been addressed in three reports. In the first study, the T-cell cloning assay was used to measure *HPRT* mutant frequencies in peripheral blood lymphocytes from nine ethylene oxide-exposed hospital workers and 15 ethylene oxide-exposed factory workers (Tates *et al.*, 1991). Hospital workers included nurses and technicians involved in the sterilization of medical

equipment and exposed to ethylene oxide once or twice a week for about 10 minutes. The concentrations of ethylene oxide ranged from 20 to 25 ppm [36.6–45.8 mg/m^3] in the sterilization room and from 22 to 72 ppm [40.3–131.8 mg/m^3] in front of the sterilizer immediately after opening. The hospital workers were matched for age, sex and smoking habits with a control group of eight unexposed administrative workers. The factory workers were employed at a plant that was involved in the production of ethylene oxide-sterilized disposable medical equipment, and were similarly matched with a group of 15 unexposed controls in the same factory. During a four-month monitoring period (equivalent to the lifespan of erythrocytes in humans), five workers were engaged in 'daily' sterilization activities, two workers were involved in 'daily' sterilization except for leave periods of 7 or 11 days, and the eight remaining workers were 'occasionally' exposed to ethylene oxide during exposure control, packing and quality control of sterilized products. Before the collection of samples in early 1990, the mean duration of exposure of factory workers to ethylene oxide had been 12 years (range, 3–27 years), with average ambient exposure levels from 1989 onwards that were estimated at about 17 ppm [~31 mg/m^3]. Based on measurements of *N*-(2-hydroxyethy)valine–haemoglobin adducts, which integrate exposure over time, average exposures to ethylene oxide in the four months before blood sampling were estimated at a 40-hour TWA of 0.025 ppm [0.046 mg/m^3] for hospital workers and 5 ppm [9.15 mg/m^3] for factory workers (Tates *et al.*, 1991). The average *HPRT* mutant frequencies in hospital workers ($12.4 \pm 9.9 \times 10^{-6}$) and factory workers ($13.8 \pm 4.4 \times 10^{-6}$) were remarkably similar and showed increases of 55% and 60%, respectively, above the background frequency in their respective control groups ($8.0 \pm 3.6 \times 10^{-6}$ and $8.6 \pm 4.4 \times 10^{-6}$); however, the mutagenic response was significantly elevated only in the factory workers, which was probably due to the higher exposure concentrations and tissue doses of ethylene oxide in these workers.

In a follow-up study of workers in an ethylene oxide-production plant, Tates *et al.* (1995) used the T-cell cloning assay to measure *HPRT* mutant frequencies in three exposed groups and one unexposed group (seven subjects per group). Group-I workers were incidentally exposed to acute high concentrations of ethylene oxide, while workers in Groups II and III had been chronically exposed to low concentrations of ethylene oxide for < 5 years and > 15 years, respectively. No significant differences in mutant frequencies were observed between any combination of worker or control groups, which implies that incidental exposure to high levels of ethylene oxide (28–429 ppm; 52–785 mg/m^3) or chronic exposure to low concentrations of ethylene oxide (< 0.005–0.02 ppm; < 0.01–0.04 mg/m^3) did not cause any measurable permanent gene mutation in lymphocytes at this locus.

In-vivo mutation-induction studies with reporter genes such as *Hprt* or the *LacI*-transgene have shown that ethylene oxide can significantly increase the frequency of mutations in both mice and rats (Walker & Skopek, 1993; Sisk *et al.*, 1997; Walker *et al.*, 1997a, b; Tates *et al.*, 1999; Recio *et al.*, 2004). The type of mutation that is recovered appears to be influenced by the assay system used. In mouse splenic and/or thymic T lymphocytes, mutations in *Hprt* could be detected after shorter exposures (a 4-week inhalation exposure or multiple intra-peritoneal injections over the course of one week) and appeared to consist of larger deletion mutations as well as base-pair substitutions and frame-shift mutations (Walker & Skopek, 1993; Walker *et al.*, 1997a, b). The latter point mutations appeared to originate primarily from either altered G or A nucleobases (Walker & Skopek, 1993; IARC, 1994). In the inhalation study, no significant increases in *LacI* mutations were seen in the spleen, bone marrow or germ cells of mice after four weeks of exposure to ethylene oxide (Sisk

et al., 1997). A modest but significant increase in *LacI* mutants was seen in the lungs of mice exposed to 200 ppm [366 mg/m^3] ethylene oxide. In a follow-up study with prolonged exposure (up to 48 weeks), significant increases in *LacI* mutants were seen in the bone marrow and testes of the ethylene oxide-exposed transgenic mice (Recio *et al.*, 2004). DNA-sequence analysis of mutants obtained from the bone marrow showed that only AT→TA transversions were recovered at a significantly increased frequency in the exposed mice. A unique mutational spectrum was not seen in the testes.

An elevated frequency of mutations or a change in mutational spectra has been seen in the tumours of ethylene oxide-treated mice (Houle *et al.*, 2006; Hong *et al.*, 2007). In the study by Hong *et al.* (2007), K-*Ras* mutations were detected in 100% (23/23) of ethylene oxide-induced lung tumours compared with 25% (27/108) of spontaneous tumours. Codon-12 G→T transversions occurred frequently in the ethylene oxide-induced lung neoplasms (21/23) but infrequently in spontaneous lung neoplasms (1/108). Similarly, K-*Ras* mutations were found in 86% (18/21) of Harderian gland tumours from ethylene oxide-treated animals, but were seen in only 7% (2/27) of the spontaneous tumours in this organ. Codon-13 G→C and codon-12 G→T transversions were common in the ethylene oxide-induced Harderian gland tumours, but they were absent in the spontaneous tumours in this organ (0/27). K-*Ras* mutations were also seen in 83% (5/6) of ethylene oxide-induced uterine tumours, all of which showed a G→C transition in codon 13. The incidence in spontaneous uterine tumours was not reported. A similar study by Houle *et al.* (2006) provided evidence of the involvement of H-*Ras* and *p53* mutations in mammary gland tumours induced by ethylene oxide in mice. The mutation frequency was only slightly elevated for H-*Ras* (33% in treated *vs* 26% in controls) or *p53* (67% in the ethylene oxide-treated versus 58% in the control animals), but the mutational spectra in tumours obtained from control and treated animals differed significantly. The mutational spectra were generally consistent with a targeting of G and A bases by ethylene oxide (Houle *et al.*, 2006; Hong *et al.*, 2007). The high frequency of mutation in these genes, particularly mutations in the critical codons of K-*Ras* and inactivation of *p53*, indicate that mutations are induced in the tumours of ethylene oxide-treated mice and that the changes probably play an important role in ethylene oxide-induced tumour development in these tissues.

Acute myelogenous leukaemia in patients previously treated with alkylating agents frequently shows specific characteristics that allow it to be distinguished from acute myelogenous leukaemia induced by other agents (such as topoisomerase II-inhibitors) or occurring spontaneously (Pedersen-Bjergaard & Rowley, 1994; Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2006). One of the hallmarks of leukaemias induced by alkylating agents is that they frequently show loss of chromosomes 5 or 7 (–5, –7) or loss of part of the long arms of these chromosomes (5q-, 7q-). In addition, mutations in *p53* are frequently seen in leukaemias with the –5/5q- karyotype, and mutations in *p53* and *Ras* are seen in a subset of those that exhibit the –7/7q- karyotype (Christiansen *et al.*, 2001; Pedersen-Bjergaard *et al.*, 2006). Although ethylene oxide has not been investigated specifically for its ability to induce losses of chromosomes 5 or 7, or deletions of the long arms of these chromosomes (5q- or 7q-), it has been reported to induce similar types of chromosomal alteration and deletions in a variety of experimental models and/or in the lymphocytes of exposed workers (IARC, 1994; Major *et al.*, 1996, 1999). The detection of elevated levels of chromosomal aberrations and micronuclei in the peripheral blood lymphocytes of ethylene oxide-exposed workers is of particular interest, as individuals with increased levels of chromosomal aberrations or micronuclei in these cells are at an increased risk for cancer (Hagmar *et al.*,

Table 4.1 Comparison of the evidence for key events – cytogenetic, genetic, and related changes – induced by ethylene oxide in humans, human cells, and experimental animals

End-point	In-vivo exposure		In-vitro exposure
	Animals	Humans	Human cells
Haemoglobin-adduct formation	Strong	Strong	Strong
DNA-adduct formation	Strong	Weak[a]	Strong
Mutations in reporter genes in somatic cells	Strong	Weak[a]	Strong
Mutations in cancer-related genes in tumours	Strong	NR	not applicable
Increased levels of cancer-related proteins in tumours	Strong	NR	not applicable
Cytogenetic alterations in somatic cells			
Sister chromatid exchange	Strong	Strong	Strong
Structural chromosomal aberrations	Strong[b]	Strong	Moderate
Micronucleus formation	Strong[b]	Strong	NR

[a] Possibly due to a lack of adequate studies
[b] Positive responses were seen only at exposure concentrations above those used in the rodent cancer-bioassays
NR, not reported
From IARC (2008)

1998; Liou *et al.*, 1999; Smerhovsky *et al.*, 2001; Hagmar *et al.*, 2004; Boffetta *et al.*, 2007; Bonassi *et al.*, 2007).

A comparison of the evidence for ethylene oxide-induced genetic and related changes in experimental animals and humans is summarized in Table 4.1.

In conclusion, the numerous studies on ethylene oxide that focused on toxicokinetics, DNA-adduct formation, biomarkers, genotoxicity, and molecular biology provide strong evidence that the carcinogenicity of ethylene oxide, a direct-acting alkylating agent, involves a genotoxic mechanism of action. The direct reaction of ethylene oxide with DNA is thought to initiate the cascade of genetic and related events that lead to cancer. Ethylene oxide induces a dose-related increase in the frequency of ethylene oxide-derived haemoglobin adducts in exposed humans and rodents, induces a dose-related increase in the frequency of ethylene oxide-derived DNA adducts in exposed rodents, consistently acts as a mutagen and clastogen at all phylogenetic levels, induces heritable translocations in the germ cells of exposed rodents, and induces a dose-related increase in the frequency of sister chromatid exchange, chromosomal aberrations and micronucleus formation in the lymphocytes of exposed workers.

5. Evaluation

There is *limited evidence* in humans for a causal association of ethylene oxide with lymphatic and haematopoietic cancers (specifically lymphoid tumours, i.e. non-Hodgkin lymphoma, multiple myeloma and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia), and breast cancer.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of ethylene oxide.

There is strong evidence that the carcinogenicity of ethylene oxide, a direct-acting alkylating agent, operates by a genotoxic mechanism. A dose-related increase in the frequency of ethylene oxide-derived haemoglobin adducts has been observed in exposed humans and rodents, and a dose-related increase in the frequency of ethylene oxide-derived DNA adducts has been demonstrated in exposed rodents. Ethylene oxide consistently acts as a mutagen and clastogen at all phylogenetic levels, it induces heritable

translocations in the germ cells of exposed rodents, and a dose-related increase in the frequency of sister chromatid exchange, chromosomal aberrations and micronucleus formation in the lymphocytes of exposed workers.

Ethylene oxide is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

In making the overall evaluation, the Working Group considered that there is *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of ethylene oxide in experimental animals, and relied heavily on the compelling data in support of the genotoxic mechanism described above.

References

Adkins B Jr, Van Stee EW, Simmons JE, Eustis SL (1986). Oncogenic response of strain A/J mice to inhaled chemicals. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 17: 311–322. PMID:3083111

Boffetta P, van der Hel O, Norppa H *et al.*Chromosomal aberrations and cancer risk: results of a cohort study from Central Europe. *Am J Epidemiol*, (2007). 165: 36–43. doi:10.1093/aje/kwj367 PMID:17071846

Bolt HM & Thier R (2006). Relevance of the deletion polymorphisms of the glutathione S-transferases GSTT1 and GSTM1 in pharmacology and toxicology. *Curr Drug Metab*, 7: 613–628. doi:10.2174/138920006778017786 PMID:16918316

Bonassi S, Znaor A, Ceppi M *et al.* (2007). An increased micronucleus frequency in peripheral blood lymphocytes predicts the risk of cancer in humans. *Carcinogenesis*, 28: 625–31. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgl177 PMID:16973674

Boysen G, Pachkowski BF, Nakamura J, Swenberg JAThe formation and biological significance of *N*7-guanine adducts *Mutat Res Genet Toxicol Environ Mutagen*, (2009). 678: 76–94. doi:10.1016/j.mrgentox.2009.05.006

Brugnone F, Perbellini L, Faccini G, Pasini F (1985). Concentration of ethylene oxide in the alveolar air of occupationally exposed workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 8: 67–72. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700080109 PMID:4025340

Brugnone F, Perbellini L, Faccini GB *et al.* (1986). Ethylene oxide exposure. Biological monitoring by analysis of alveolar air and blood. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 58: 105–112. doi:10.1007/BF00380761 PMID:3744564

Burgaz S, Rezanko R, Kara S, Karakaya AE (1992). Thioethers in urine of sterilization personnel exposed to ethylene oxide. *J Clin Pharm Ther*, 17: 169–172. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2710.1992.tb01287.x PMID:1639877

CAREX (1999). Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf

Chessor E, Verhoeven M, Hon C-Y, Teschke K (2005). Evaluation of a modified scavenging system to reduce occupational exposure to nitrous oxide in labor and delivery rooms. *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 2: 314–322. doi:10.1080/15459620590959722 PMID:16020092

Christiansen DH, Andersen MK, Pedersen-Bjergaard J (2001). Mutations with loss of heterozygosity of p53 are common in therapy-related myelodysplasia and acute myeloid leukemia after exposure to alkylating agents and significantly associated with deletion or loss of 5q, a complex karyotype, and a poor prognosis. *J Clin Oncol*, 19: 1405–1413. PMID:11230485

Clare MG, Dean BJ, de Jong G, van Sittert NJ (1985). Chromosome analysis of lymphocytes from workers at an ethylene oxide plant. *Mutat Res*, 156: 109–116. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(85)90013-8 PMID:4000173

Coggon D, Harris EC, Poole J, Palmer KT (2004). Mortality of workers exposed to ethylene oxide: extended follow up of a British cohort. *Occup Environ Med*, 61: 358–362. doi:10.1136/oem.2003.008268 PMID:15031395

Deschamps D, Laurent A-M, Festy B, Conso F (1989). Study of six ethylene oxide sterilization units in the Poor Law Administration of Paris] (Fre.). *Archives des Maladies Professionnelles*, 50: 641–649.

Devanney MT (2010). *CEH Marketing Research Report – Ethylene Oxide* (Abstract). Zürich: SRI Consulting.

Dever JP, George KF, Hoffman WC, Soo H (2004). *Ethylene oxide*. In: *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, Vol. 10, New York: John Wiley & Sons, pp. 632–673 (online)

Dunkelberg H (1981). [Carcinogenic activity of ethylene oxide and its reaction products 2-chloro-ethanol, 2-bromoethanol, ethylene glycol and diethylene glycol. I. Carcinogenicity of ethylene oxide in comparison with 1,2-propylene oxide after subcutaneous administration in mice.] *Zbl Bakt Hyg I Abt Orig B*, 174: 383–404. PMID:7342570.

Dunkelberg H (1982). Carcinogenicity of ethylene oxide and 1,2-propylene oxide upon intragastric administration to rats. *Br J Cancer*, 46: 924–933. PMID:7150486

Elliott LJ, Ringenburg VL, Morelli-Schroth P *et al.* (1988). Ethylene oxide exposures in hospitals. *Appl Ind Hyg*, 3: 141–145.

Fennell TR & Brown CD (2001). A physiologically based pharmacokinetic model for ethylene oxide in mouse, rat, and human. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 173: 161–175. doi:10.1006/taap.2001.9184 PMID:11437638

Fowles J, Mitchell J, McGrath H (2001). Assessment of cancer risk from ethylene oxide residues in spices imported into New Zealand. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, 39: 1055–1062. doi:10.1016/S0278-6915(01)00052-7 PMID:11527564

Galloway SM, Berry PK, Nichols WW *et al.* (1986). Chromosome aberrations in individuals occupationally exposed to ethylene oxide, and in a large control population. *Mutat Res*, 170: 55–74. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(86)90082-0 PMID:3960044

Gardner MJ, Coggon D, Pannett B, Harris EC (1989). Workers exposed to ethylene oxide: a follow up study. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 860–865. PMID:2611160

Garman RH, Snellings WM, Maronpot RR (1985). Brain tumors in F344 rats associated with chronic inhalation exposure to ethylene oxide. *Neurotoxicology*, 6: 117–137. PMID:3887231

Garman RH, Snellings WM, Maronpot RR (1986). Frequency, size and location of brain tumours in F-344 rats chronically exposed to ethylene oxide. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 24: 145–153. PMID:3957162

Glaser ZR (1979). Ethylene oxide: Toxicology review and field study results of hospital use. *Journal of Environmental Pathology and Toxicology*, 12: 173–208.

Greenberg HL, Ott MG, Shore RE (1990). Men assigned to ethylene oxide production or other ethylene oxide related chemical manufacturing: a mortality study. *Br J Ind Med*, 47: 221–230. PMID:2337530

Greife AL, Hornung RW, Stayner LG, Steenland KN (1988). Development of a model for use in estimating exposure to ethylene oxide in a retrospective cohort mortality study. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 14: Suppl 129–30. PMID:3393872

Hagmar L, Bonassi S, Strömberg U *et al.* (1998). Chromosomal aberrations in lymphocytes predict human cancer: a report from the European Study Group on Cytogenetic Biomarkers and Health (ESCH). *Cancer Res*, 58: 4117–4121. PMID:9751622

Hagmar L, Mikoczy Z, Welinder H (1995). Cancer incidence in Swedish sterilant workers exposed to ethylene oxide. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 52: 154–156. doi:10.1136/oem.52.3.154 PMID:7735385

Hagmar L, Strömberg U, Bonassi S *et al.*Impact of types of lymphocyte chromosomal aberrations on human cancer risk: results from Nordic and Italian cohorts. *Cancer Res*, (2004). 64: 2258–63. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-03-3360 PMID:15026371

Hagmar L, Welinder H, Lindén K *et al.* (1991). An epidemiological study of cancer risk among workers exposed to ethylene oxide using hemoglobin adducts to validate environmental exposure assessments. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 63: 271–277. doi:10.1007/BF00386377 PMID:1743769

Hallier E, Langhof T, Dannappel D *et al.* (1993). Polymorphism of glutathione conjugation of methyl bromide, ethylene oxide and dichloromethane in human blood: influence on the induction of sister chromatid exchanges (SCE) in lymphocytes. *Arch Toxicol*, 67: 173–178. doi:10.1007/BF01973304 PMID:8494496

Hayes JD, Flanagan JU, Jowsey IR (2005). Glutathione transferases. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*, 45: 51–88. doi:10.1146/annurev.pharmtox.45.120403.095857 PMID:15822171

Heiden Associates (1988). *A Medical Products Industry Profile for Evaluating Compliance with Two Ethylene Oxide Workplace STEL Scenarios: 10 ppm STEL and 5 ppm STEL*. Washington, DC

Hengstler JG, Fuchs J, Gebhard S, Oesch F (1994). Glycolaldehyde causes DNA-protein crosslinks: a new aspect of ethylene oxide genotoxicity. *Mutat Res*, 304: 229–234. PMID:7506366

Högstedt B, Bergmark E, Törnqvist M, Osterman-Golkar S (1990). Chromosomal aberrations and micronuclei in lymphocytes in relation to alkylation of hemoglobin in workers exposed to ethylene oxide and propylene oxide. *Hereditas*, 113: 133–138. doi:10.1111/j.1601-5223.1990.tb00076.x PMID:2079438

Högstedt B, Gullberg B, Hedner K *et al.* (1983). Chromosome aberrations and micronuclei in bone marrow cells and peripheral blood lymphocytes in humans exposed to ethylene oxide. *Hereditas*, 98: 105–113. doi:10.1111/j.1601-5223.1983.tb00585.x PMID:6853215

Hong H-HL, Houle CD, Ton T-VT, Sills RCK-ras mutations in lung tumors and tumors from other organs are consistent with a common mechanism of ethylene oxide tumorigenesis in the B6C3F1 mouse. *Toxicol Pathol*, (2007). 35: 81–5. doi:10.1080/01926230601063839 PMID:17325976

Houle CD, Ton T-VT, Clayton N, Huff J, Hong H-H, Sills RFrequent p53 and H-ras mutations in benzene- and ethylene oxide-induced mammary gland carcinomas from B6C3F1 mice. *Toxicol Pathol*, (2006). 34: 752–62. doi:10.1080/01926230600935912 PMID:17162533

IARC (1976). Cadmium, nickel, some epoxides, miscellaneous industrial chemicals and general considerations on volatile anaesthetics. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 11: 1–306. PMID:992654

IARC (1985). Allyl compounds, aldehydes, epoxides and peroxides. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 36: 1–369.

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1994). Some industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 60: 1–560. PMID:7869568

IARC (2004). Tobacco smoke and involuntary smoking. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 83: 1–1438. PMID:15285078

IARC (2008). 1,3-Butadiene, ethylene oxide and vinyl halides (vinyl fluoride, vinyl chloride and vinyl bromide). *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 97: 1–510. PMID: 20232717.

IPCS-CEC (2001). *International Chemical Safety Card 0155*. Geneva: World Health Organization.

Jensen KG (1988). Determination of ethylene oxide residues in processed food products by gas-liquid chromatography after derivatization. *Zeitschrift fur Lebensmittel-Untersuchung und -Forschung*, 187: 535–540. doi:10.1007/BF01042385 PMID:3223093

Karelová J, Jablonická A, Vargová M (1987). Results of cytogenetic testing of workers exposed to ethylene oxide. *J Hyg Epidemiol Microbiol Immunol*, 31: 119–126. PMID:3611756

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Kolman A, Chovanec M, Osterman-Golkar SGenotoxic effects of ethylene oxide, propylene oxide and epichlorohydrin in humans: update review (1990–2001). *Mutat Res*, (2002). 512: 173–94. doi:10.1016/S1383-5742(02)00067-4 PMID:12464351

Kreuzer PE (1992). *Permeation kinetics of ethylene oxide in gaseous form and dissolved other matrices through the skin of rats, hamsters and humans*. (GSF-Bericht 19/92), Neuherberg: GSF-Forschungszentrum für Umwelt und Gesundheit.

Lacson J (2003). *CEH Marketing Research Report — Ethylene Oxide*, Zurich: SRI Consulting.

Lerda D & Rizzi R (1992). Cytogenetic study of persons occupationally exposed to ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 281: 31–37. doi:10.1016/0165-7992(92)90033-E PMID:1371589

Lide DR, editor (2008). *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp. 3–408.

Liou SH, Lung JC, Chen YH *et al.* (1999). Increased chromosome-type chromosome aberration frequencies as biomarkers of cancer risk in a blackfoot endemic area. *Cancer Res*, 59: 1481–1484. PMID:10197617

Lynch DW, Lewis TR, Moorman WJ *et al.* (1984). Carcinogenic and toxicologic effects of inhaled ethylene oxide and propylene oxide in F344 rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 76: 69–84. PMID:6484993

Major J, Jakab MG, Tompa AGenotoxicological investigation of hospital nurses occupationally exposed to ethylene-oxide: I. Chromosome aberrations, sister-chromatid exchanges, cell cycle kinetics, and UV-induced DNA synthesis in peripheral blood lymphocytes. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, (1996). 27: 84–92. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1098-2280(1996)27:2<84::AID-EM2>3.0.CO;2-E PMID:8603670

Major J, Jakab MG, Tompa A (1999). The frequency of induced premature centromere division in human populations occupationally exposed to genotoxic chemicals. *Mutat Res*, 445: 241–249. PMID:10575433

Marsden DA, Jones DJ, Britton RG, Ognibene T, Ubick E, Johnson GE *et al.*Dose-response relationships for N7-(2-hydroxyethyl)guanine induced by low-dose [14C]ethylene oxide: evidence for a novel mechanism of endogenous adduct formation. *Cancer Res*, (2009). 69: 3052–9. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-4233 PMID:19276345

Mayer J, Warburton D, Jeffrey AM *et al.* (1991). Biologic markers in ethylene oxide-exposed workers and controls. *Mutat Res*, 248: 163–176. doi:10.1016/0027-5107(91)90098-9 PMID:2030705

Mortimer VD Jr, Kercher SL (1989). *Control Technology for Ethylene Oxide Sterilization in Hospitals* (NIOSH Publ. No. 89-120). Cincinnati, OH: National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health

National Library of Medicine (2005). *Hazardous Substances Data Bank Database*, Bethesda, MD. Available at http://toxnet.nlm.nih.gov/cgi-bin/sis/search

NIOSH (1990) *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981-1983)*, Cincinnati, OH, US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes2/32550occ.html

Norman SA, Berlin JA, Soper KA *et al.* (1995). Cancer incidence in a group of workers potentially exposed to ethylene oxide. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 24: 276–284. doi:10.1093/ije/24.2.276 PMID:7635586

NTP (1987). NTP Toxicology and Carcinogenesis Studies of Ethylene Oxide (CAS No. 75–21–8) in B6C3F1 Mice (Inhalation Studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 326: 1–114. PMID:12748727

O'Neill MJ, editor (2006). *The Merck Index*, 14th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., Inc., p. 651.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (2005). *Regulatory Review of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration's Ethylene Oxide Standard* (29 CFR 1910.1047), Washington DC

Pedersen-Bjergaard J, Christiansen DH, Desta F, Andersen MKAlternative genetic pathways and cooperating genetic abnormalities in the pathogenesis of therapy-related myelodysplasia and acute myeloid leukemia. *Leukemia*, (2006). 20: 1943–9. doi:10.1038/sj.leu.2404381 PMID:16990778

Pedersen-Bjergaard J & Rowley JD (1994). The balanced and the unbalanced chromosome aberrations of acute myeloid leukemia may develop in different ways and may contribute differently to malignant transformation. *Blood*, 83: 2780–2786. PMID:8180374

Pero RW, Widegren B, Högstedt B, Mitelman F (1981). In vivo and in vitro ethylene oxide exposure of human lymphocytes assessed by chemical stimulation of unscheduled DNA synthesis. *Mutat Res*, 83: 271–289. doi:10.1016/0027-5107(81)90011-7 PMID:7300850

Picut CA, Aoyama H, Holder JW *et al.* (2003). Bromoethane, chloroethane and ethylene oxide induced uterine neoplasms in B6C3F1 mice from 2-year NTP inhalation bioassays: pathology and incidence data revisited. *Exp Toxicol Pathol*, 55: 1–9. PMID:12940622

Popp W, Vahrenholz C, Przygoda H *et al.* (1994). DNA-protein cross-links and sister chromatid exchange frequencies in lymphocytes and hydroxyethyl

mercapturic acid in urine of ethylene oxide-exposed hospital workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 66: 325–332. doi:10.1007/BF00378365 PMID:7896417

Recio L, Donner M, Abernethy D *et al.*In vivo mutagenicity and mutation spectrum in the bone marrow and testes of B6C3F1 lacI transgenic mice following inhalation exposure to ethylene oxide. *Mutagenesis*, (2004). 19: 215–22. doi:10.1093/mutage/geh017 PMID:15123787

Ribeiro LR, Salvadori DM, Rios AC *et al.* (1994). Biological monitoring of workers occupationally exposed to ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 313: 81–87. PMID:8047079

Richmond GW, Abrahams RH, Nemenzo JH, Hine CH (1985). An evaluation of possible effects on health following exposure to ethylene oxide. *Arch Environ Health*, 40: 20–25. PMID:3994416

Sarto F, Cominato I, Pinton AM *et al.* (1984a). Workers exposed to ethylene oxide have increased incidence of sister chromatid exchange. *IARC Sci Publ*, 59: 413–419. PMID:6545292

Sarto F, Cominato I, Pinton AM *et al.* (1984b). Cytogenetic damage in workers exposed to ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 138: 185–195. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(84)90043-0 PMID:6513974

Sarto F, Tomanin R, Giacomelli L *et al.* (1990). The micronucleus assay in human exfoliated cells of the nose and mouth: application to occupational exposures to chromic acid and ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 244: 345–351. doi:10.1016/0165-7992(90)90083-V PMID:2385249

Sarto F, Törnqvist MA, Tomanin R *et al.* (1991). Studies of biological and chemical monitoring of low-level exposure to ethylene oxide. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 17: 60–64. doi:10.5271/sjweh.1733 PMID:2047808

Scheick C, Spiteller G, Dasenbrock C (1997). Thiodiacetic acid–a metabolite of Ethylene oxide. *Z Naturforsch C*, 52: 70–76. PMID:9090069

Schulte PA, Boeniger M, Walker JT *et al.* (1992). Biologic markers in hospital workers exposed to low levels of ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 278: 237–251. doi:10.1016/S0165-1218(10)80003-5 PMID:1373860

Shore RE, Gardner MJ, Pannett B (1993). Ethylene oxide: an assessment of the epidemiological evidence on carcinogenicity. *Br J Ind Med*, 50: 971–997. PMID:8280635

Sisk SC, Pluta LJ, Meyer KG *et al.* (1997). Assessment of the in vivo mutagenicity of ethylene oxide in the tissues of B6C3F1 lacI transgenic mice following inhalation exposure. *Mutat Res*, 391: 153–164. PMID:9268040

Smerhovsky Z, Landa K, Rössner P, Brabec M, Zudova Z, Hola N *et al.*Risk of cancer in an occupationally exposed cohort with increased level of chromosomal aberrations. *Environ Health Perspect*, (2001). 109: 41–5. doi:10.1289/ehp.0110941 PMID:11171523

Snellings WM, Weil CS, Maronpot RR (1984). A two-year inhalation study of the carcinogenic potential of ethylene oxide in Fischer 344 rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 75: 105–117. PMID:6464016

Stayner L, Steenland K, Greife A *et al.* (1993). Exposure-response analysis of cancer mortality in a cohort of workers exposed to ethylene oxide. *Am J Epidemiol*, 138: 787–798. PMID:8237967

Steenland K, Stayner L, Deddens J (2004). Mortality analyses in a cohort of 18 235 ethylene oxide exposed workers: follow up extended from 1987 to 1998. *Occup Environ Med*, 61: 2–7. PMID:14691266

Steenland K, Stayner L, Greife A *et al.* (1991). Mortality among workers exposed to ethylene oxide. *N Engl J Med*, 324: 1402–1407. PMID:2020295

Steenland K, Whelan E, Deddens J *et al.* (2003). Ethylene oxide and breast cancer incidence in a cohort study of 7576 women (United States). *Cancer Causes & Control*, 14: 531–539. doi:10.1023/A:1024891529592 PMID:12948284

Stolley PD, Soper KA, Galloway SM *et al.* (1984). Sister-chromatid exchanges in association with occupational exposure to ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 129: 89–102. doi:10.1016/0027-5107(84)90127-1 PMID:6493252

Swaen GM, Burns C, Teta JM *et al.* (2009). Mortality study update of ethylene oxide workers in chemical manufacturing: a 15 year update. *J Occup Environ Med*, 51: 714–723. doi:10.1097/JOM.0b013e3181a2ca20 PMID:19430313

Swenberg JA, Fedtke N, Fennell TR, Walker VE (1990). *Relationships between carcinogen exposure, DNA adducts and carcinogenesis*. In: *Progress in Predictive Toxicology*. Clayson DB, Munro IC, Shubik P, Swenberg JA, editors. Amsterdam: Elsevier Scientific Publications, pp. 161–184.

Tates AD, Boogaard PJ, Darroudi F *et al.* (1995). Biological effect monitoring in industrial workers following incidental exposure to high concentrations of ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 329: 63–77. doi:10.1016/0027-5107(95)00018-E PMID:7770077

Tates AD, Grummt T, Törnqvist M *et al.* (1991). Biological and chemical monitoring of occupational exposure to ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 250: 483–497. doi:10.1016/0027-5107(91)90205-3 PMID:1719390

Tates AD, van Dam FJ, Natarajan AT *et al.* (1999). Measurement of HPRT mutations in splenic lymphocytes and haemoglobin adducts in erythrocytes of Lewis rats exposed to ethylene oxide. *Mutat Res*, 431: 397–415. PMID:10636004

Teta MJ, Benson LO, Vitale JN (1993). Mortality study of ethylene oxide workers in chemical manufacturing: a 10 year update. *Br J Ind Med*, 50: 704–709. PMID:8398856

Teta MJ, Sielken RL Jr, Valdez-Flores C (1999). Ethylene oxide cancer risk assessment based on epidemiological data: application of revised regulatory guidelines. *Risk Anal*, 19: 1135–1155. doi:10.1111/j.1539-6924.1999.tb01134.x PMID:10765453

Thier R, Balkenhol H, Lewalter J *et al.* (2001). Influence of polymorphisms of the human glutathione transferases and cytochrome P450 2E1 enzyme on the metabolism

and toxicity of ethylene oxide and acrylonitrile. *Mutat Res*, 482: 41–46. doi:10.1016/S0027-5107(01)00208-1 PMID:11535247

Tompkins EM, McLuckie KIE, Jones DJL *et al.* (2009). Mutagenicity of DNA adducts derived from ethylene oxide exposure in the pSP189 shuttle vector replicated in human Ad293 cells *Mutat Res Genet Toxicol Environ Mutagen*, 678: 129–37. doi:10.1016/j.mrgentox.2009.05.011

Valdez-Flores C, Sielken RL Jr, Teta MJ (2010). Quantitative Cancer Risk Assessment based on NIOSH and UCC Epidemiological Data for Workers Exposed to Ethylene Oxide. *Regulatory Toxicology and Pharmacology*, (, 56:312-320.). doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2009.10.001

Van Sittert NJ, de Jong G, Clare MG *et al.* (1985). Cytogenetic, immunological, and haematological effects in workers in an ethylene oxide manufacturing plant. *Br J Ind Med*, 42: 19–26. PMID:3965011

Walker VE, Fennell TR, Upton PB *et al.* (1992). Molecular dosimetry of ethylene oxide: formation and persistence of 7-(2-hydroxyethyl)guanine in DNA following repeated exposures of rats and mice. *Cancer Res*, 52: 4328–4334. PMID:1643630 PMID:1643630

Walker VE, Meng Q, Clement NL (1997b). Spectra of mutations in *hprt* exon 3 of T-cells from F344 rats and *lacI* transgenic and nontransgenic B6C3F1 mice exposed by inhalation to ethylene oxide. *Environmental and Molecular Mutagenesis*, 29: Suppl. 2854

Walker VE, Sisk SC, Upton PB *et al.* (1997a). In vivo mutagenicity of ethylene oxide at the hprt locus in T-lymphocytes of B6C3F1 lacI transgenic mice following inhalation exposure. *Mutat Res*, 392: 211–222. PMID:9294020

Walker VE & Skopek TR (1993). A mouse model for the study of in vivo mutational spectra: sequence specificity of ethylene oxide at the hprt locus. *Mutat Res*, 288: 151–162. PMID:7686258

WHO (2003). *Ethylene Oxide* (Concise International Chemical Assessment Document 54), Geneva. Available at http://www.inchem.org

Wolfs P, Dutrieux M, Scailteur V *et al.* (1983). [Monitoring of workers exposed to ethylene oxide in a plant distributing sterilizing gases and in units for sterilizing medical equipment (Fre.). *Archives des Maladies Professionnelles*, 44: 321–328.

Yager JW, Hines CJ, Spear RC (1983). Exposure to ethylene oxide at work increases sister chromatid exchanges in human peripheral lymphocytes. *Science*, 219: 1221–1223. doi:10.1126/science.6828851 PMID:6828851

FORMALDEHYDE

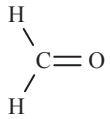
Formaldehyde was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1981, 1987, 1994, and 2004 (IARC, 1982, 1987, 1995, 2006). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1 Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

From (IARC, 2006).

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 50-00-0
Chem. Abstr. Name: Formaldehyde
IUPAC Systematic Name: Methanal
Synonyms: Formaldehyde gas; formic aldehyde; methaldehyde; methyl aldehyde; methylene oxide; oxomethane; oxymethylene



CH_2O
Relative molecular mass: 30.03
Description: Colourless gas with a pungent odour
Conversion factor: $mg/m^3 = 1.23 \times ppm$; calculated from: $mg/m^3 = (\text{relative molecular mass}/24.45) \times ppm$, assuming standard temperature (25 °C) and pressure (103.5 kPa).

1.2 Use

Formaldehyde is produced worldwide on a large scale by catalytic, vapour-phase oxidation of methanol. Formaldehyde is used mainly in the production of various types of resin. Phenolic, urea, and melamine resins have wide uses as adhesives and binders in the wood-production, pulp-and-paper, and the synthetic vitreous-fibre industries, in the production of plastics and coatings, and in textile finishing. Polyacetal resins are widely used in the production of plastics. Formaldehyde is also used extensively as an intermediate in the manufacture of industrial chemicals, such as 1,4-butanediol, 4,4′-methylenediphenyl diisocyanate, penta-erythritol, and hexamethylenetetramine. Formaldehyde is used directly in aqueous solution (known as formalin) as a disinfectant and preservative in many applications (IARC, 2006).

1.3 Occurrence and exposure

1.3.1 Environmental occurrence and exposure

Formaldehyde is found as a natural product in most living systems and in the environment. It occurs naturally in fruits and some foods, and it is formed endogenously in mammals, including humans, as a consequence of oxidative metabolism. In addition to these natural sources, common non-occupational sources of exposure to formaldehyde include combustion processes, e.g. through emissions from motor vehicles, power plants, incinerators, refineries, wood stoves, and kerosene heaters. Formaldehyde may be released from particle boards and similar building materials, carpets, paints and varnishes, during cooking of some foods, and during its use as a disinfectant. It is also present in tobacco smoke. An indirect source of exposure to formaldehyde is its formation via photochemical oxidation of hydrocarbons, such as methane, and other precursors emitted from combustion processes (NTP, 2005; IARC, 2006). Formaldehyde has a short half-life in the environment, because it is removed from the air by photochemical processes and by precipitation and biodegradation (NTP, 2005).

Concentrations of formaldehyde in outdoor air are generally below 0.001 mg/m^3 in remote areas and below 0.02 mg/m^3 in urban settings. The levels of formaldehyde in indoor air of houses are typically 0.02–0.06 mg/m^3; indoor combustion sources can significantly increase these levels. Cigarettes may contribute as much as 10–25% of the indoor exposure. Average concentrations of 0.5 mg/m^3 or more have been measured in 'mobile homes', but these have declined since the late 1980s as a result of standards that require that building materials – e.g. particle boards – emit lower concentrations of formaldehyde. A recent study of emissions from mosquito coils found the average concentration of formaldehyde exceeded 100 µg/m^3 (IARC, 2006, 2010; Lee & Wang, 2006). Data on formaldehyde concentrations in outdoor air in residential and public settings, and information on exposure to formaldehyde associated with household use of solid fuels and high-temperature frying, have been reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volumes 88 and 95 (IARC, 2006, 2010).

Automobile exhaust is a major source of formaldehyde in ambient air. Recent reports suggest that formaldehyde emissions may be higher from vehicles powered by compressed natural gas compared with those running on ethanol or gasohol (Corrêa & Arbilla, 2005), and that these emissions may be decreased by substitution of an ethanol-biodiesel-diesel blend for diesel fuel (Shi *et al.*, 2006). In addition, formaldehyde can be absorbed through the skin from cosmetics or via contact with other consumer products containing formaldehyde, such as unwashed permanent-press fabrics treated with formaldehyde-releasing resins (NTP, 2005).

1.3.2 Occupational exposure

Occupational exposure to formaldehyde occurs in a wide variety of occupations and industries. CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens based on data collected in the European Union (EU) from 1990 to 1993. The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 presents the results for formaldehyde in the EU by industry (CAREX, 1999).

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006) data were reviewed on occupational exposure to formaldehyde by type of industry. The highest continuous exposures (2–5 ppm; 2.5–6.1 mg/m^3) were measured in the past during varnishing of furniture and wooden floors, in the finishing of

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to formaldehyde above background levels in the European Union

Industry, occupational activity	
Manufacture of furniture and fixtures, except primarily of metal	179000
Medical, dental, and other health and veterinary services	174000
Manufacture of wearing apparel, except footwear	94000
Manufacture of wood and wood and cork products, except furniture	70000
Personal and household services	62000
Construction	60000
Manufacture of textiles	37000
Iron and steel basic industries	29000
Manufacture of fabricated metal products, except machinery	29000
Manufacture of other non-metallic mineral products	23000
Manufacture of machinery, except electrical	20000
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	17000
Manufacture of other chemical products	17000
Manufacture of plastic products not classified elsewhere	16000
Agriculture and hunting	16000
Manufacture of paper and paper products	13000
Printing, publishing and allied industries	13000
Wholesale and retail trade and restaurants and hotels	13000
Manufacture of transport equipment	11000
Manufacture of electrical machinery, apparatus and appliances	10000
Manufacture of footwear	9000
Manufacture of glass and glass products	8000
Research and scientific institutes	7000
Non-ferrous metal basic industries	6000
Manufacture of leather and products of leather or of its substitutes	6000
Beverage industries	4000
Manufacture of instruments, photographic and optical	4000
Other manufacturing industries	3000
Food manufacturing	3000
Crude petroleum and natural gas production	2000
Manufacture of rubber products	4000
Financing, insurance, real estate and business services	3000
Education services	2000
Sanitary and similar services	2000
Services allied to transport	2000
Manufacture of miscellaneous products of petroleum and coal	1000
Other industries	2000
Total (all industries)	971000

From Kauppinen *et al.* (2000), CAREX (1999)

textiles, in the garment industry, in the treatment of fur, and in certain jobs within manufactured board mills and foundries. Short-term exposures to high levels (3 ppm and higher; ≥ 3.7 mg/m^3) have been reported for embalmers, pathologists, and paper workers. Lower concentrations have usually been encountered during the manufacture of man-made vitreous fibres, abrasives and rubber, and in formaldehyde-production industries. A very wide range of exposure levels has been observed in the production of resins and plastic products. The development of resins that release less formaldehyde, and improved ventilation have resulted in lower exposure levels in many industrial settings in recent decades (IARC, 2006).

2. Cancer in Humans

2.1 Cancer of the nasopharynx

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006) it was concluded that there was *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of formaldehyde, based primarily on its association with nasopharyngeal cancer. There have been relatively few new studies published on this association since that time, although there have been several re-evaluations and meta-analyses.

2.1.1 Cohort studies

In the most recent follow-up of the largest cohort study from the USA of industrial workers exposed to formaldehyde, a statistically significant excess of deaths from nasopharyngeal cancer was observed in comparison with the US national population, with statistically significant exposure–response relationships for peak exposure and cumulative exposure (Hauptmann *et al.*, 2004; see Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-24-Table2.1.pdf). Based on eight cases, a significant excess mortality from nasopharyngeal cancer was observed among formaldehyde-exposed workers (SMR, 2.10; 95%CI: 1.05–4.21). A highly statistically significant (P_{trend} < 0.001) exposure–response relationship was observed between peak-exposure to formaldehyde and risk for nasopharyngeal cancer in a Poisson regression-analysis. All exposed cases were in the highest category of peak-exposure, and the relative risk was 1.83. This analysis excluded one case which, according to cancer registry data, had been misclassified as nasopharyngeal cancer. Weaker exposure–response relationships were observed between nasopharyngeal cancer and average or cumulative exposure, and duration of exposure (P_{trend} = 0.07, 0.03 and 0.15, respectively).

In the two other large cohort studies of industrial workers, cases of nasopharyngeal cancer were fewer than expected, but the power of these studies to detect an effect on nasopharyngeal cancer was low and the deficits were small. In the first study, of British chemical workers, one death was observed when 2.0 were expected (Coggon *et al.*, 2003); in the second study, no deaths were observed among US garment-manufacturers, where 0.96 were expected (Pinkerton *et al.*, 2004).

An excess of deaths from nasopharyngeal cancer was observed in a proportionate mortality analysis of the largest US cohort of embalmers (Hayes *et al.*, 1990) and in a Danish study of proportionate cancer incidence among workers at companies that used or manufactured formaldehyde (Hansen & Olsen, 1995; see Table 2.2 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-24-Table2.2.pdf).

Marsh *et al.* (1996) conducted a cohort study in one of the plants considered in the NCI study (where five of the nine cases of nasopharyngeal cancer occurred). The cohort included earlier year of entry and was enumerated independently. Significantly increased mortality due to nasopharyngeal cancer was observed among formaldehyde-exposed workers compared with US and regional populations (Connecticut State and

local county). In a recent follow-up through 2003, Marsh *et al.* (2007a) showed elevated SMRs when both national and local county rates were used. In addition, when conducting a case–control study nested within the cohort and including seven deaths from nasopharyngeal cancer, the authors obtained information on employment outside the formaldehyde industry and showed that five of these workers had been employed as a silversmith. However, while there was some evidence of effect modification by activities as a silversmith (based on small numbers), confounding alone did not explain the relatively high number of deaths from nasopharyngeal cancer in this plant (Marsh *et al.*, 2007a).

Two analyses have been conducted to re-analyse the data from the most recent update of the NCI cohort, with a focus on solid tumours (Hauptmann *et al.*, 2004). The first included an analysis of exposure category and SMR, as well as an analysis of Plant 1, where five of nine deaths from nasopharyngeal cancer occurred, compared with all other plants in the cohort (Marsh & Youk, 2005). Using their own cut-points of exposure, the authors concluded that their analysis lent uncertainty to the findings from the NCI cohort. In another re-analysis, the authors further controlled for the effect of plant for the peak-exposure metric and performed sensitivity analyses by imputing additional cases, which showed instability in the risk estimates (Marsh *et al.*, 2007b). The authors concluded that an interaction between plant group and exposure makes generalization beyond Plant 1 difficult.

2.1.2 Case–control studies

The relationship between nasopharyngeal cancer and exposure to formaldehyde has also been investigated in seven case–control studies, five of which found elevated risks for overall exposure to formaldehyde or in higher exposure categories, although not all were statistically significant (see Table 2.3 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-24-Table2.3.pdf; Vaughan *et al.*, 1986b; Roush *et al.*, 1987; West *et al.*, 1993; Vaughan *et al.*, 2000; Hildesheim *et al.*, 2001). One study found an elevation among women, but not men (Olsen *et al.*, 1984) and one found no evidence of an association (Armstrong *et al.*, 2000). Two case–control studies were considered as the most informative because of their size, their exposure assessment, and the evaluation of potential confounders. The first, a population-based case–control study in the USA, showed a significant association for the workers whose exposure duration had been the longest (OR = 2.1; 95%CI: 1.0–4.5, P_{trend} = 0.07), but not for maximum exposure (P_{trend} = 0.57) (Vaughan *et al.*, 2000). When the analysis was limited to differentiated squamous-cell and epithelial NOS, there was a significant association in the highest exposure category for both duration and cumulative exposure with significant exposure-response trends (P_{trend} = 0.014 and 0.033, respectively). In the other study, conducted in Taiwan, China, an OR of 1.6 (95%CI: 0.91–2.9, P_{trend} = 0.08) was found in the category with the longest duration of exposure (Hildesheim *et al.*, 2001). For cumulative exposure, there was a non-significant elevation in the highest exposure category and the trend test was not significant (P = 0.10). In subanalyses that were restricted to cases and controls who were seropositive for antibodies against Epstein-Barr virus, the association between exposure to formaldehyde and nasopharyngeal cancer appeared to be stronger, with an OR for ever exposure of 2.7 (95%CI: 1.2–6.2). However, no clear dose–response pattern was observed with increasing duration of exposure, or with estimated cumulative exposure.

2.1.3 Meta-analyses

A meta-analysis published in 1997 included some but not all of the above studies, and found an overall meta-relative risk for nasopharyngeal

cancer of 1.3 (95%CI: 1.2–1.5) (Collins *et al.*, 1997). From a pooled analysis including the three recently updated industrial cohorts (Coggon *et al.*, 2003; Hauptmann *et al.*, 2004; Pinkerton *et al.*, 2004), Bosetti *et al.* (2008) reported an overall SMR of 1.33 (95%CI: 0.61–2.53). A recently published meta-analysis included both case–control studies (n = 6) and cohort studies (n = 7) (Bachand *et al.*, 2010). For the case–control studies, the overall OR was 1.22 (95%CI: 1.00–1.50), with the meta-regression OR no longer significant when limited to studies that included adjustment for socioeconomic status, smoking or location. The risk estimate for cohort studies was 0.72 (95%CI: 0.40–1.29), including seven studies (Bachand *et al.*, 2010). For the cohort studies, the authors used a re-analysis of the NCI cohort study from which Plant 1 was left out (Marsh & Youk, 2005).

2.2 Leukaemia

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006) it was concluded that there was strong, but not sufficient evidence for the leukaemogenic effects of formaldehyde. Since that time, an update to the NCI cohort and a nested case–control study of workers in the funeral industry have been published (Beane Freeman *et al.*, 2009; Hauptmann *et al.*, 2009), as well as three meta-analyses (Bosetti *et al.*, 2008; Zhang *et al.*, 2009; Bachand *et al.*, 2010; see Table 2.1 online, and Table 2.5 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-24-Table2.5.pdf).

2.2.1 Cohort studies

Excess mortality from leukaemia has been observed relatively consistently in studies of professional workers (i.e. embalmers, funeral parlour workers, pathologists and anatomists), with six mortality studies showing positive associations (Walrath & Fraumeni, 1983, 1984; Levine *et al.*, 1984; Stroup *et al.*, 1986; Hayes *et al.*, 1990; Hall *et al.*, 1991) and one not (Logue *et al.*, 1986; see Table 2.2 online).

A weakness of the proportionate mortality studies among professionals has been the lack of exposure assessment. A recently published nested case–control study conducted among professionals in the funeral industry examined lifetime work practices and exposure in the funeral industry to develop metrics of exposure among this group, which included duration of jobs held while embalming, number of embalmings, average intensity of embalming and peak exposure (Hauptmann *et al.*, 2009). Details of work practices were obtained by interviews with next of kin and co-workers. Positive associations were seen – at many levels of exposure and for multiple exposure metrics – for deaths from lymphohaematopoietic malignancies of non-lymphoid origin (n = 48). For myeloid leukaemia (n = 34) the OR was 13.6 (95%CI: 1.6–119.7; P_{trend} = 0.020) for the longest duration of work in jobs with embalming. Because only one case was reported to have never embalmed, additional analyses were conducted in which those who reported to have embalmed ≤ 500 times were taken as the referent group, to provide a more stable estimate. Results were attenuated, but still significant (OR = 3.9; 95%CI: 1.2–12.5). [There was a considerable amount of missing data that required imputation for analyses.]

The findings for leukaemia in studies of professional workers appeared to be contradicted by the lack of such findings among industrial workers. However, some evidence for an excess of deaths from leukaemia has been reported in the recent updates of two of the three major cohort studies of industrial workers. Since the previous evaluation (IARC, 2006), the NCI cohort of industrial workers in the USA has been updated with an additional ten years of mortality data resulting in 123 deaths from leukaemia, including 48 from myeloid leukaemia (Beane Freeman *et al.*, 2009). This update extended the mortality follow-up

through 2004 and included additional deaths before 1994 that had not been previously considered. Risk estimates from follow-up through 2004 were diminished for leukaemia and myeloid leukaemia compared with the follow-up through 1994 (Hauptmann *et al.*, 2003), when both conditions had been significantly associated with increasing peak-exposure and average intensity of exposure to formaldehyde. As in the previous analysis of leukaemia, the association in the most recent update was stronger for myeloid leukaemia and peak exposure than for lymphatic leukaemia and for other metrics of exposure (Beane Freeman *et al.*, 2009). However, because the last known exposure occurred in 1980 and median follow-up was over 40 years, the authors not only examined risks at the end of follow-up in 2004, but also assessed associations over time by extending follow-up in yearly increments. Risks appeared to be highest before 1980, but only achieved statistical significance in the mid-1990s, when a sufficient number of deaths had accrued. Additional analyses with time since first exposure and time since first high peak-exposure indicated that risks were highest during the first twenty-five years. Patterns were similar, but attenuated, for average intensity of exposure; no association was observed with cumulative exposure.

Mortality from leukaemia was also found to be in excess in an update of the study of US garment workers exposed to formaldehyde (Pinkerton *et al.*, 2004). A small and statistically non-significant excess was observed for the entire cohort in comparison with rates among the general population (SMR = 1.09; 95%CI: 0.7–1.63). This excess was somewhat stronger for myeloid leukaemia (SMR = 1.44; 95%CI: 0.80–2.37), which is consistent with the findings from the study of industrial workers in the USA and several of the studies of medical professionals and embalmers. The excess was also stronger among workers with a longer duration of exposure and longer follow-up, and among those who had been employed early in the study period when exposures to formaldehyde were believed to be highest. The positive associations observed in the subgroup analyses presented in the study of US garment workers were based on a relatively small number of deaths, and were thus not statistically stable.

The updated study of British industrial workers found no excess mortality for leukaemia among all workers exposed to formaldehyde (SMR = 0.91; 95%CI: 0.62–1.29) or among those with the highest exposure (SMR = 0.71; 95%CI: 0.31–1.39) (Coggon *et al.*, 2003). The lack of positive findings in this study is difficult to reconcile with the findings from the studies of garment workers and industrial workers in the USA, and with the results of studies on professionals exposed to formaldehyde. This British study is a relatively large, high-quality study with sufficiently long follow-up to have had a reasonable chance to detect an excess of deaths from leukaemia. It did not examine specifically the risk for myeloid leukaemia, which represented the strongest finding in the studies of garment workers and industrial workers in the USA and in several of the studies of medical professionals and funeral workers.

2.2.2 Case–control studies

Three case–control studies evaluated exposure to formaldehyde and risk for leukaemia (Linos *et al.*, 1990; Partanen *et al.*, 1993; Blair *et al.*, 2001; Table 2.5 online). However, the numbers of exposed cases were few, and no significant elevations of risk were found.

2.2.3 Meta-analyses

A meta-analysis published in 2004 for 'ever exposure' to formaldehyde and leukaemia included eighteen studies and presented separate analyses by type of job: for industrial workers, the mRR was 0.9 (95%CI: 0.8–1.0); for

embalmers 1.6 (95%CI: 1.2–2.0); and for pathologists and anatomists 1.4 (95%CI: 1.0–1.9), with an overall mRR of 1.1 (95%CI: 1.0–1.2) (Collins & Lineker, 2004). In another meta-analysis, analysis was restricted to 13 cohort or proportionate mortality studies and similar results were found, with a pooled RR based on the weighted average of the SMRs for leukaemia among industrial workers of 0.9 (95%CI: 0.75–1.07), based on 122 deaths, and of 1.39 (95%CI: 1.15–1.68) among professionals, based on 106 deaths (Bosetti *et al.*, 2008). A further meta-analysis differed from these two previous ones by excluding all proportionate mortality studies and including the most recent update of the NCI cohort (Bachand *et al.*, 2010). For leukaemia overall, a risk estimate of 1.05 (95%CI: 0.93–1.20) was calculated for 'ever exposure', based on 15 studies with the use of a fixed-effects model. For myeloid leukaemia, the calculated mRR was 1.09 (95%CI: 0.84–1.40, based on three studies) and for lymphatic leukaemia the mRR was 1.11 (95%CI: 0.81–1.52, based on two studies).

Zhang *et al.* (2009) published a meta-analysis that included 15 cohort or case–control studies. The authors selected only studies where it was clear that the workers had been exposed to formaldehyde. In contrast to the other meta-analyses, this one used one exposure metric from each study and considered the highest exposure category for calculating the mRR. For leukaemia, the mRR was 1.54 (95%CI: 1.18–2.00). In addition, a separate analysis of myeloid leukaemia – for the six studies that reported it – found an mRR of 1.90 (95%CI: 1.31–2.76).

2.3 Cancer of the nasal sinuses

2.3.1 Cohort studies

An analysis of proportionate cancer incidence among industrial workers in Denmark showed an increased risk for squamous-cell carcinomas (Hansen & Olsen, 1995, 1996). No excess of mortality from sinonasal cancer was observed in the three recently updated studies of industrial and garment workers in the USA, and of chemical workers in the United Kingdom (see Table 2.1 online; Coggon *et al.*, 2003; Hauptmann *et al.*, 2004; Pinkerton *et al.*, 2004).

2.3.2 Case–control studies

The association between exposure to formaldehyde and the risk for sinonasal cancer has been evaluated in six case–control studies that primarily focused on formaldehyde (see Table 2.4 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-24-Table2.4.pdf; Olsen *et al.*, 1984; Hayes *et al.*, 1986; Olsen & Asnaes, 1986; Vaughan *et al.*, 1986a; Roush *et al.*, 1987; Luce *et al.*, 1993; Pesch *et al.*, 2008). Four of these six studies reported an increased risk (Olsen *et al.*, 1984; Hayes *et al.*, 1986; Vaughan *et al.*, 1986a; Luce *et al.*, 1993).

2.3.3 Pooled analysis

Four of the cohort studies contributed to a pooled analysis that collated occupational data from 12 case–control investigations (Luce *et al.*, 2002). After adjustment for known occupational confounders, this analysis showed an increased risk for adenocarcinoma associated with high exposure (> 1 ppm) to formaldehyde in both men (OR, 3.0; 95%CI: 1.5–5.7) and women (OR, 6.3; 95%CI: 2.0–19.7). An exposure–response trend was observed in relation to an index of cumulative exposure. There was some evidence of an association with squamous-cell carcinoma.

[Most epidemiological studies of sinonasal cancer have not distinguished between tumours that arise in the nose and those that develop in the nasal sinuses. Thus, any effect on the risk for nasal cancer specifically would tend to be diluted if there were no corresponding effect on the risk for cancer in the sinuses and could mask its detection, particularly in cohort studies that

have relatively low statistical power. However, the apparent discrepancy between the results of the case–control as compared with the cohort studies might also reflect residual confounding by wood dust in the former. Almost all of the formaldehyde-exposed cases in the case–control studies were also exposed to wood dust, which resulted in a high relative risk, particularly for adenocarcinomas.]

2.4 Other cancers

Several studies have identified statistically significant positive associations between exposure to formaldehyde and cancer at other sites, including the oral cavity, oro-and hypopharynx, larynx, lung, brain, pancreas, Hodgkin lymphoma, and multiple myeloma. However, the results are inconsistent (see Tables 2.4 and 2.5 online; Table 2.6 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-24-Table2.6.pdf, and Table 2.7 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-24-Table2.7.pdf).

2.5 Synthesis

The Working Group noted one industrial cohort study with both a strong overall association between exposure to formaldehyde and nasopharyngeal cancer, and the most elevated risks in the highest exposure category. Positive associations were also observed in many of the case–control studies, in particular those of larger size and higher-quality exposure assessment. While there was no association observed in the two other large industrial cohort studies, the expected number of cases in those studies was quite small. It is concluded that occupational exposure to formaldehyde causes nasopharyngeal cancer in humans. The Working Group noted that it was unlikely that confounding or bias could explain the observed association.

Elevated risks of leukaemia have been consistently observed in proportionate mortality studies of professionals exposed to formaldehyde (i.e. embalmers, workers in the funeral industry, pathologists and anatomists). Results from a nested case–control study of workers in the funeral industry show elevated risks for many measures of exposure, which are strongest for myeloid leukaemia. In two of the three large industrial cohort studies positive associations were observed for leukaemia, which were somewhat stronger for myeloid leukaemia. It is difficult to reconcile the lack of association observed in the third industrial cohort study with the overall positive associations in the others. However, there seems to be no strong evidence that confounding or bias explains the positive associations seen in multiple settings. On balance, the Working Group concluded that the epidemiologic evidence shows that occupational exposure to formaldehyde causes leukaemia.

Many case–control studies show positive associations for exposure to formaldehyde and sinonasal cancer, some with evidence of an exposure–response pattern. However, many of these cases were also exposed to wood dust, which was strongly associated with sinonasal cancer in these studies. The industrial cohort studies show no such association, which may be due to lack of statistical power, or could indicate that uncontrolled confounding to wood dust partially explains the observed associations in the case–control studies. The Working Group could not rule out the possibility of residual confounding in the case–control studies and noted the discordant results between the cohort and case–control studies.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Carcinogenicity studies with mice, rats and hamsters exposed to formaldehyde by inhalation, via the drinking-water, or through the skin were reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006). Results of adequately conducted carcinogenicity studies are summarized in Table 3.1. There have been no additional carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals reported since the previous review.

3.1 Inhalation

In one inhalation study in B6C3F1 mice, formaldehyde marginally increased the incidence of squamous cell carcinomas of the nasal cavity in males. The incidence of lymphoma in females exposed to 14.3 ppm (27/121) was also marginally increased ($P = 0.06$) when compared (pair-wise) with controls (19/121) (CIIT, 1981; Kerns *et al.*, 1983a, b; Gibson, 1984).

In six studies (Swenberg *et al.*, 1980; CIIT, 1981; Albert *et al.*, 1982; Kerns *et al.*, 1983a, b; Gibson, 1984; Sellakumar *et al.*, 1985; Feron, *et al.*, 1988; Woutersen *et al.*, 1989; Monticello *et al.*, 1996; Kamata *et al.*, 1997) in different strains of rats (F344, Wistar, and Sprague-Dawley), there were treatment-related increases in tumours of the nasal cavity (primarily squamous-cell carcinomas but also squamous-cell papillomas, polypoid adenomas, carcinomas, rhabdomyosarcomas, adenocarcinomas, and mixed/combined tumours). In one study (CIIT, 1981), the incidences of undifferentiated leukaemia [Fischer rat leukaemia, as indicated in the report] were 12/120 (control), 17/120 (2 ppm), 16/120 (5.6 ppm) and 7/120 (14.3 ppm) in females; there was a marked decrease in survival in the animals exposed to the high dose. Based on a survival-adjusted analysis, the incidence of leukaemia in females exposed to 14.3 ppm was increased compared with controls ($P = 0.0056$; Tarone-extension of the Cox test; level of significance, $P < 0.0167$). [The Working Group noted that this type of leukaemia is a very common, spontaneously occurring neoplasm in the F344 rat strain].

3.2 Oral administration (drinking-water)

In one drinking-water study in male Wistar rats, there was a treatment-related increase in fore-stomach squamous-cell papillomas (Takahashi *et al.*, 1986). Another study in male and female Wistar rats did not report any increase in tumours (Til *et al.*, 1989).

In a study with life-long exposure to formaldehyde, beginning *in utero* (transplacentally), there was an increased incidence of smooth-muscle tumours of the small intestine (leiomyosarcoma) in female offspring (Soffritti *et al.*, 1989). In another study in male and female rats, increased incidences of total malignant tumours, haematopoietic tumours, and interstitial-cell adenomas were observed in males (Soffritti *et al.*, 1989, 2002). [The Working Group reaffirmed the concerns of the previous Working Group (IARC, 2006) regarding the pooling of all 'leukaemias' diagnosed as lymphoblastic leukaemias and lymphosarcomas, immunoblastic lymphosarcomas, and "other types" of leukaemia and haemolymphoreticular sarcomas. Also noted were the lack of reporting of non-neoplastic lesions and historical control data, and the numerous discrepancies in tumour incidence between the first (Soffritti *et al.*, 1989) and second report (Soffritti *et al.*, 2002) of the results of this study].

3.3 Skin application

In one study in male and female hairless Oslo mice, topical application of 10% formaldehyde in water reduced the latency of 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene-induced skin tumours (Iversen, 1986).

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to formaldehyde

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Inhalation studies				
C3H mouse (unspecified) 35 wk (some for 64 wk) Horton *et al.* (1963)	0, 50, 100, 200 mg/m^3 1 h/d, 3 d/wk 42–60/group	No pulmonary tumours	NS	USP grade Due to severe toxicity, exposure to 200 mg/m^3 was discontinued after the 11th exposure. Thirty-six mice exposed to 50 mg/m^3 were exposed to 150 mg/m^3 for 29 additional wk. Basal-cell hyperplasia, squamous metaplasia and atypical hyperplasia were observed in trachea and bronchi of many exposed mice. Nasal tissues were not examined. Short period of exposure and short duration of study.
B6C3F1 mouse (M) 30 mo Kerns *et al.* (1983a, b), Gibson (1984)	0, 2, 5.6, 14.3 ppm (0, 2.5, 6.9, 17.6 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 24 mo 119–120/group	No increased tumour incidence Nasal cavity (malignant)[a]: 2/17 (14.3 ppm) vs 0/21 (controls) at 24 mo	NS	> 97.5% purity Interim sacrifices (10/group) at 6 and 12 mo; 0–1 at 18 mo; 17–21 at 24 mo. Squamous-cell hyperplasia, metaplasia and dysplasia were commonly present in nasal passages of mice exposed to 14.3 ppm.
B6C3F1 mouse (F) 30 mo Kerns *et al.* (1983a, b), Gibson (1984), CIIT (1981)	0, 2, 5.6, 14.3 ppm (0, 2.5, 6.9, 17.6 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 24 mo 120–121/group	No increased tumour incidence Lymphoma: 27/121 (14.3 ppm) vs 19/121 (controls)	NS (P = 0.06)	> 97.5% purity Interim sacrifices (10/group) at 6 and 12 mo; 19–20 at 18 mo; 26–41 at 24 mo; 9–16 at 27 mo. Squamous-cell hyperplasia, metaplasia and dysplasia were commonly present in nasal passages of mice exposed to 14.3 ppm.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
F344 rat (M) 30 mo Swenberg *et al.* (1980), Kerns *et al.* (1983a, b), Gibson (1984)	0, 2, 5.6, 14.3 ppm (0, 2.5, 6.9, 17.6 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 24 mo 119–120/group	Nasal cavity (malignant)[a]: 0/118, 0/118, 1/119, 51/117*	*$P < 0.001$	> 97.5% purity Interim sacrifices (10/group) at 6 and 12 mo; 20 at 18 mo; 13–54 at 24 mo; 5–10 at 27 mo; 0–6 at 30 mo. Squamous-cell hyperplasia, metaplasia and dysplasia were commonly present in nasal passages of rats exposed to 14.3 ppm.
		Nasal cavity (malignant)[b]: 0/118, 0/118, 0/119, 4/117	NS	
		Nasal cavity (benign)[c]: 1/118, 4/118, 6/119, 4/117	NS	
F344 rat (F) 30 mo Swenberg *et al.* (1980), Kerns *et al.* (1983a, b), Gibson (1984), CIIT (1981)	0, 2, 5.6, 14.3 ppm (0, 2.5, 6.9, 17.6 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 24 mo 120/group	Nasal cavity (malignant)[a]: 0/114, 0/118, 1/116, 52/115*	*$P < 0.001$	> 97.5% purity Interim sacrifices (10/group) at 6 and 12 mo; 19–20 at 18 mo; 14–47 at 24 mo; 0–10 at 27 mo; 0–5 at 30 mo. Squamous-cell hyperplasia, metaplasia and dysplasia were commonly present in nasal passages of rats exposed to 14.3 ppm.
		Nasal cavity (malignant)[b]: 0/114, 0/118, 0/116, 1/115	NS	
		Nasal cavity (benign)[c]: 0/114, 4/118, 0/116, 1/115	NS	
		Haematopoietic tissue (spleen, F344 rat leukaemia diagnosed as undifferentiated leukaemia): 12/120, 17/120, 16/120, 7/120	$P = 0.0056$; Tarone-extension of the Cox test (adjustment for mortality), level of significance is $P < 0.0167$	
Sprague-Dawley rat (M) Lifetime Albert *et al.* (1982); Sellakumar *et al.* (1985)	0, 14.3 ppm (0, 17.6 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 99–100/group	Nasal cavity (malignant)[a]: 0/99, 38/100	$P \leq 0.001$	A mixed carcinoma and fibrosarcoma of the nasal cavity was also present in the formaldehyde-treated group.
		Nasal cavity (benign): 0/99, 10/100	$P \leq 0.001$	

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Wistar rat (M) 126 wk Feron *et al.* (1988)	0, 10, 20 ppm (0, 12.3 or 25 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 4, 8 or 13 wk 45/group/interval	Nasal cavity: 2/134, 2/132, 10/132 (denominator combines all intervals of exposure for control and treated groups); the authors considered 6/10 tumours[d] in the high-dose group as treatment-related.	NR	Purity NR Hyperplasia and metaplasia of nasal epithelium were observed in all rats exposed to formaldehyde. Authors considered most nasal-cavity tumours in the high-dose group to be related to the treatment.
Wistar rat (M) 28 mo Woutersen *et al.* (1989)	0, 0.1, 1, 10 ppm (0, 0.123, 1.23, and 12.3 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 3 or 28 mo 30/group (U: undamaged) or 60/group (D: damaged)	Nasal cavity (malignant)[e]: 28 mo exposure U: 0/26, 1/26, 1/26, 1/26 D: 1/54, 1/58, 0/56, 17/58* 3 mo exposure U: 0/26, 0/30, 0/29 2/26 D: 0/57, 2/57, 2/53, 2/54	*[$P < 0.001$; Fisher's exact test]	Purity NR Mucosa severely damaged by electro-coagulation during the first wk. Eight squamous-cell carcinomas from the nasolacrimal duct were excluded by the authors.
Sprague Dawley rat (F) 104 wk Holmström *et al.* (1989)	0, 12.4 ppm (0, 15.3 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 16/group	Nasal cavity: 0/16, 1/16[a]	NS	Purity NR Pronounced squamous-cell metaplasia and/or dysplasia in 10/16 rats exposed to formaldehyde vs 0/15 controls. Small group-size noted.
F344 rat (M) 24 mo Monticello *et al.* (1996)	0, 0.69, 2.05, 6.01, 9.93, 14.96 ppm (0, 0.84, 2.4, 7.2, 12, 19 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 90 or 147 (high dose group only)/group	Nasal cavity (malignant)[a]: 0/90, 0/90, 0/90, 1/90, 20/90, 69/147* Nasal cavity (benign)[c]: 0/90, 0/90, 0/90, 0/90, 5/90, 14/147[$] One nasal rhabdomyosarcoma and nasal adenocarcinoma each present in groups given 9.93 and 14.96 ppm	NR,*[$P < 0.001$] NR,[$][$P < 0.02$]	Formaldehyde vapour of paraformaldehyde Interim sacrifices at 3, 6, 12 and 18 mo (6/group).

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
F344 rat (M) 28 mo Kamata *et al.* (1997)	0, 0, 0.3, 2.17, 14.85 ppm (0, 0, 0.36, 2.6, 17.8 mg/m^3) 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 32/group (one room-air control and one methanol-exposed control group)	Nasal cavity (malignant)[a]: 0/32, 0/32, 0/32, 0/32, 13/32* Nasal cavity (benign)[f]: 0/32, 0/32, 0/32, 0/32, 3/32	*$P < 0.01$ NR	Formaldehyde vapour of 37% aqueous formaldehyde solution with 10% methanol (4.2 ppm) Interim sacrifices at 12, 18 and 24 mo (5/group).
Rat (strain not specified) (F) Lifetime Yanysheva *et al.* (1998)	0, 0.003, 0.03, 0.3 mg/m^3, 7 h/d, 5 d/wk for 12 mo Intratracheal injection of a total dose of 0, 0.02, 0.1 or 5.0 mg B[*a*]P/animal over 20 wk 50/group	Lung tumours: 24/35 (68.6%, 5.0 mg B[a]P + 0.3 mg/m^3 formaldehyde) vs 8/28 (28.1%, 5.0 mg B[a]P)	$P < 0.01$	Purity NR Promotion effect
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) Lifetime Dalbey (1982)	0, 10 ppm (0, 12.3 mg/m^3) 5 h/d, 5 d/wk 88/group (132 controls)	No tumours	-	Purity NR Hyper- and metaplastic areas were each observed in the nasal epithelium of 5% of exposed animals
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) Lifetime Dalbey (1982)	0, 30 ppm (0, 36.9 mg/m^3) 5 h/d, 5 d/wk 50/group	No tumours	-	Purity NR
Hamster, Syrian golden (M) Lifetime Dalbey (1982)	0, 30 ppm (0, 36.9 mg/m^3) 5 h/d, 5 d/wk Both groups subcutaneously injected wkly with 0.5 mg NDEA for 10 wk 50/group	Tracheal tumours: [~2.8 tumours/tumour-bearing animal (NDEA + formaldehyde) vs ~1.7 tumours/tumour-bearing animal (NDEA)]	$P < 0.05$	Purity NR Promotion effect
Drinking-water studies				
Wistar rat (M) 40 wk Takahashi *et al.* (1986)	Experiment #1 0 or 0.5% formaldehyde 10/group	Fore-stomach squamous-cell papillomas: 8/10 vs 0/10	$P < 0.01$	Purity NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Wistar rat (M) 40 wk Takahashi *et al.* (1986)	Experiment #2 0 and 0.5% formaldehyde. MNNG administered in the drinking-water to both groups for first 8 wk with a diet containing 10% NaCl 30 (control) and 17/group	Adenocarcinoma of the pylorus: 4/17 vs 1/30	$P < 0.05$	Purity NR Weak promotion of tumour incidence in the glandular stomach. Incidence of fore-stomach papillomas was also increased vs controls, but was similar to that in the group treated with formaldehyde only (experiment #1)
Wistar rat (M) 105 wk Til *et al.* (1989)	0, 1.2, 15, 82 mg/kg bw/d 70/group	No increase in tumour incidence	NS	Formaldehyde generated from 95% pure paraformaldehyde. Interim sacrifices of 10 rats after 53 and 79 wk.
Wistar rat (F) 105 wk Til *et al.* (1989)	0, 1.8, 21, 109 mg/kg bw/d 70/group	No increase in tumour incidence	NS	Formaldehyde generated from 95% pure paraformaldehyde. Interim sacrifices of 10 rats after 53 and 79 wk.
Sprague Dawley (M, F) Lifetime Soffritti *et al.* (1989)	0 and 2 500 ppm Exposure of breeders (18–20/group/sex) and offspring (36–59/group/sex) for 104 wk. Exposure of offspring began on d 13 of gestation.	Leukaemias: Breeders (M): 2/18 (11.1%) vs 0/20 (0%) Breeders (F): 2/18 (11.1%) vs 1/20 (5%) Offspring (M): 4/36 (11.1%) vs 3/59 (5.1%) Offspring (F): 0/37 (0%) vs 3/49 (6.1%) Small intestine leiomyosarcoma: Offspring (F): 6/37 (16.2%) vs 0/49 (0%)	 NS NS NS NS $P < 0.01$	Previous and current Working Group and other authors (Feron *et al.*, 1990; IARC, 2006) noted concern about study design, significance of tumour findings and laboratory-control incidences. The Working Group also noted that leukaemias included three types, diagnosed as lymphoblastic leukaemias and lymphosarcomas, immunoblastic lymphosarcomas, and other types of leukaemias and haemolymphoreticular sarcomas. Increased incidence of a variety of benign and malignant stomach and intestinal tumours was also reported. The stomach tumours in treated groups represented single occurrences of neoplasm of different sites/cell type fore-stomach/squamous, smooth muscle and glandular stomach epithelium.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Sprague Dawley (M, F) Lifetime Soffritti *et al.* (1989, 2002)	0 (control), 0 (15 mg/L methanol control), 10, 50, 100, 500, 1 000, 1 500 mg/L for 104 wk 50/group/sex (100/control group)	Testicular interstitial-cell adenomas: 24/50 (1 000 mg/L) vs 6/50 (methanol control)	[$P < 0.01$]	Purity of 99% with 0.3% methanol as stabilizer. Concerns by the Working Group about pooling of several types of lymphohaematopoietic tumours. Concern also about interpretation of the results for lymphohaematopoietic tumours due to the numerous and extensive discrepancies in tumour incidences between the first (Soffritti *et al.*, 1989) and second report (Soffritti *et al.*, 2002) on results for this study. Increased incidence of total malignant tumours in males treated with 1 500 mg/L [$P < 0.01$].
		Lymphohaematopoietic tumours: Males 8/100, 20/50, 8/50, 20/50, 26/50, 24/50, 22/50, 46/50*	[$P < 0.01$, trend], *[$P < 0.01$, vs methanol control]	

[a] Nasal cavity tumours were squamous-cell carcinomas.
[b] Nasal cavity tumours (combined) included carcinomas (2), undifferentiated carcinomas or sarcomas (2) or carcinosarcomas (1).
[c] Nasal cavity tumours were polypoid adenomas.
[d] Three squamous-cell carcinomas, 2 polypoid adenomas, and 1 carcinoma in situ.
[e] Nasal cavity tumours were squamous-cell carcinomas except for one adenosquamous carcinoma and one adenocarcinoma at 10 ppm (D) with 28 months of exposure and one carcinoma in situ at 10 ppm (D) and one polypoid adenoma at 10 ppm (U) with 3 mo of exposure.
[f] Nasal cavity tumours were squamous-cell papillomas.
B[*a*]P, benzo[*a*]pyrene; d, day or days; h, hour or hours; F, female; M, male; mo, month or months; MNNG, *N*-methyl-*N*′-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine; NDEA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; vs, versus; wk, week or weeks

4. Other Relevant Data

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006) mechanistic considerations supported a role for cytotoxicity and genotoxicity in formaldehyde-induced nasal tissue carcinogenesis. With regards to leukaemia, it was unclear to the Working Group at the time how this reactive compound could penetrate to the bone marrow, and no animal model of formaldehyde-induced leukaemia was available.

The discussion below focuses on mechanistic issues related to the potential causal association between formaldehyde inhalation and haematological cancers, and includes considerations on the mechanism underlying nasal carcinogenesis in laboratory animals and humans. A more detailed review can be found in Volume 88 (IARC, 2006).

4.1 Absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion

One-carbon metabolism is central to many biological processes, including the biosynthesis of purines and thymidine – essential components of nucleic acids –, the biosynthesis of certain amino acids, and the demethylation of a variety of important biological compounds that are central to cell function and survival. Formaldehyde is an intermediate in the one-carbon pool and is present in measurable concentrations in all metabolically active cells and tissues (Heck *et al.*, 1982, 1985; Casanova *et al.*, 1988). In aqueous solution, formaldehyde is rapidly converted to its diol form, methanediol (formaldehyde hydrate, $CH_2(OH)_2$, methylene glycol), which enters in a dynamic equilibrium with formaldehyde. The concentration of the diol and that of formaldehyde depend on the precise conditions (temperature, pH, formaldehyde concentration) under which the reaction occurs (Walker, 1964). Importantly, methanediol, with a molecular weight of only 48, can readily penetrate into tissue (Fox *et al.*, 1985). Thus, formaldehyde may reach the bone-marrow through the blood as methanediol, where it equilibrates again to reactive formaldehyde. Further investigation of this equilibrium in living biological systems is warranted.

The absorption of formaldehyde occurs readily in the upper respiratory tract (Casanova *et al.*, 1991; Kimbell *et al.*, 2001a, b). Once inhaled, formaldehyde can react directly with mucus or with macromolecular cellular components including proteins and nucleic acids; it can be incorporated into biological molecules through folate-dependent enzymatic processes; it can be oxidized to formic acid or to carbon dioxide through enzymatic processes dependent on formaldehyde dehydrogenase, aldehyde dehydrogenase and, in limited situations, catalase (Hedberg *et al.*, 2002), or itcan be exhaled. It has been estimated that as much as 22–42% of inhaled formaldehyde may be removed by mucus flow (Schlosser, 1999).

Formaldehyde reacts readily and reversibly with amino groups to form Schiff bases, and with sulfhydryl groups resulting in the formation of *S*-hydroxymethylglutathione, which is oxidized by alcohol dehydrogenase-3 (ADH3) to *S*-formylgluthahione. The latter is further metabolized by *S*-formylgluthione hydrolase to generate formate and gluthione. The formate can also be formed non-enzymatically (Hedberg *et al.*, 2002). Incubation of 0.1–5.0 mM formaldehyde with reduced glutathione in solution followed by addition to deoxyguanosine or to calf-thymus DNA leads to the formation of the relatively stable adduct *S*-[1-(N^2-deoxyguanosinyl) methyl]glutathione (Lu *et al.*, 2009). This adduct may form endogenously, as both formaldehyde and reduced glutathione are present in reasonably high concentrations within cells. It may also serve as a biomarker to study the penetration of inhaled radio-labelled formaldehyde, to distinguish endogenous from exogenous

formaldehyde-derived adducts. Whether this could also be a mechanism by which inhaled formaldehyde could lead to bone-marrow toxicity has not been studied.

Red blood cells have relatively high levels of enzymes that rapidly metabolize formaldehyde. The concentration of formaldehyde in the blood of six human volunteers did not change immediately after exposure to 1.9 ppm [2.34 mg/m^3] formaldehyde for 40 minute (Heck *et al.*, 1985), and no change in formic acid concentration was observed in the urine of medical students over a three-week period during which they were exposed to air concentrations < 0.5 ppm [0.62 mg/m^3] (Gottschling *et al.*, 1984). No statistically significant change in the concentration of formaldehyde in blood was found after inhalation of this substance at 1.9 ppm [2.34 mg/m^3] for 40 minute by six human volunteers; at 14.4 ppm [17.8 mg/m^3] for two hours in rats (Heck *et al.*, 1985); and at 6 ppm [7.4 mg/m^3] for six hours/day, five days per week, for four weeks in Rhesus monkeys (Casanova *et al.*, 1988). Blood was drawn approximately 7 min and 45 hours after the end of the exposure period, from monkeys whose blood levels were 1.84 ± 0.15 μg/g and 2.04 ± 0.40 μg/g, respectively. However, there are methodological concerns with these studies. In the monkey study three animals were used to determine control levels and three others were exposed to formaldehyde. The mean levels were then compared. It would have been better if the monkeys had served as their own control. A similar lack of change in formaldehyde levels was reported in rats (2.25 ± 0.07 *vs* 2.24 ± 0.07 μg/g blood) and humans (2.77 ± 0.28 *vs* 2.61 ± 0.14 μg/g blood; approximately 0.1 mM) exposed for short periods to 14.4 and 1.9 ppm, respectively (Heck *et al.*, 1985; Casanova *et al.*, 1988; IARC, 2006). [The Working Group noted that, given the short half-life for formaldehyde observed in rodents, the time from end-of-exposure to sampling in monkeys and in humans was likely too long; this could not be evaluated for rats].

Studies of the uptake of radio-labelled formaldehyde by inhalation, ingestion and through the skin do not provide information that would help to determine whether unreacted formaldehyde reaches the bone marrow, because it is rapidly taken up in the one-carbon pool and incorporated in macromolecules. There was no evidence of the formation of formaldehyde-specific DNA–protein crosslinks in the bone marrow of Rhesus monkeys exposed for six hours to 0.7, 2.0 and 6.0 ppm formaldehyde (Heck & Casanova, 2004), or in rats, including glutathione (GSH)-depleted rats, exposed to concentrations of formaldehyde up to 10 ppm (Casanova-Schmitz *et al.*, 1984; Casanova & Heck, 1987). The formation of formaldehyde-DNA adducts was demonstrated in lymphocytes of smokers (Wang *et al.*, 2009). In this study, liquid chromatography-electrospray ionization-tandem mass spectrometry was used to quantify the adduct N^6-hydroxymethyldeoxyadenosine (N^6-HOMe-dAdo) in leukocyte-DNA samples from 32 smokers (≥ 10 cigarettes per day) and 30 non-smokers. This adduct would be expected to be formed upon exposure to formaldehyde. N^6-HOMe-dAdo was detected in 29 of the 32 samples from smokers, but in only 7 of the 30 samples from non-smokers ($P < 0.001$). These findings would support a role for inhaled formaldehyde in causing the DNA adducts that may ultimately lead to smoking-associated leukaemia. The authors caution that the observed adducts may result from cigarette-smoke components other than formaldehyde – such as 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK) or nicotine, which may be metabolized to formaldehyde within the cell – or from other sources, rather than reflecting the actual penetration of inhaled formaldehyde to lymphocytes.

Rietbrock (1965) reported that the half-life in plasma of formaldehyde injected intravenously in the rat was about one minute. [Assuming a similar half-life of formaldehyde in humans, this would be sufficient time for inhaled formaldehyde

to reach the blood and circulate to the bone marrow in humans].

4.2 Toxic effects

Formaldehyde produces irritation of the nose and pharynx in humans and laboratory animals under a variety of circumstances. There appears to be a large inter-individual variation in the human response to the irritating effects of formaldehyde. Under controlled exposure conditions, symptoms of irritation were noted by healthy individuals exposed to formaldehyde concentrations of 2–3 ppm during periods that varied between 40 minute and three hours (for details, see Table 30 in *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006)).

Formaldehyde is a known cause of allergic contact dermatitis and, somewhat more controversial, of occupational asthma. Nasal biopsies of workers chronically exposed to formaldehyde showed chronic inflammation, loss of cilia, mild dysplasia, hyperplasia and squamous metaplasia, although the latter finding has been inconsistent and may have been confounded by other exposures, such as to wood dust (IARC, 2006).

The cytotoxicity of formaldehyde has been confirmed in numerous in-vitro systems. Irritation of the nasal and upper respiratory tract is also noted in animal studies. Dose-dependent pathological findings include inflammation, hyperplasia, degenerative changes, necrosis and squamous metaplasia.

Recently, a finding relevant to the possible involvement of formaldehyde in leukaemogenesis was reported by Zhang *et al.* (2010). Their study showed that colony formation by colony-forming unit-granulocyte-macrophage (CFU-GM) progenitor cells is inhibited in cell cultures exposed to formaldehyde at toxicologically relevant concentrations. Furthermore, colony formation by the more primitive CFU-granulocyte- erythrocyte-monocyte-megakaryocyte (CFU-GEMM) progenitors, which give rise to formation of all myeloid cells, showed a linear negative dose–response when treated with formaldehyde. These effects were observed at formaldehyde concentrations of 100–200 μM [3–6 μg/mL], which are toxicologically relevant since background levels of formaldehyde in human blood have been reported to be 50–100 μM [1.5–3 μg/mL] (Heck *et al.*, 1985; Casanova *et al.*, 1988). Because the CFU-GEMM multipotent myeloid progenitor cells and the pluripotent stem cells are the target cells for leukaemogenesis and are converted to leukaemic stem cells in acute myeloid leukaemia, the finding that formaldehyde damages these cells *in vitro* adds some weight to the notion that it may be associated with myeloid leukaemia.

4.3 Genetic and related effects

The genotoxicity of formaldehyde was thoroughly reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006). Genotoxicity has been observed *in vitro* in many systems with multiple endpoints.

4.3.1 Humans

Micronucleus formation has been repeatedly reported to occur in cells of the nasal and oral mucosa of formaldehyde-exposed humans. The outcome of studies on induction of micronuclei, sister chromatid exchange and chromosomal aberrations in the lymphocytes of exposed humans – which is pertinent to the question concerning the potential of formaldehyde to cause lympho-haematopoietic cancer – has been less consistent (see Table 4.1).

DNA–protein crosslinks in circulating white blood cells were found to be higher in 12 workers exposed to formaldehyde in an anatomy department and a pathology institute than in eight controls (P = 0.03) (Shaham *et al.*, 1996). The number of crosslinks tended to be higher in workers who had been exposed longer (exposure duration, 2–31 years). Smoking had no effect. In a

Table 4.1 Cytogenetic studies on formaldehyde–exposed humans

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Costa *et al.* (2008), Portugal	Workers in an anatomy-pathology laboratory (n = 30) Controls non-exposed (n = 30)	0.44 ± 0.08 ppm (range 0.04–1.58)	Micronucleus formation in lymphocytes (MN/1000 cells)	5.47 ± 0.76	3.27 ± 0.69	P = 0.003
			Sister-chromatid exchange(SCE)	6.13 ± 0.29	4.49 ± 0.16	P < 0.05
			DNA-breakage (comet tail length, µm) in lymphocytes	60.00 ± 2.31	41.85 ± 1.97	P < 0.05
Pala *et al.* (2008), Italy	Laboratory workers (n = 36) in a cancer research institute	Exposure range: 4.9–268.7 µg/m^3 Low: < 26 µg/m^3 High: ≥ 26 µg/m^3		High:	Low:	
			Micronucleus formation (MN)	MN: 0.31 ± 0.17	MN: 0.26 ± 0.24	
			Chromosomal aberrations (CA)	CA: 2.22 ± 1.27	CA: 2.95 ± 1.79	
			SCE in lymphocytes	SCE: 5.06 ± 0.76	SCE: 6.57 ± 1.38	
Iarmarcovai *et al.* (2007), France	Pathologists/anatomists (n = 18) Controls (n = 18)	2.3 ppm (range 0.4–7 ppm)	MN in lymphocytes (MN/1000 cells)	21.0 ± 12.6	14.4 ± 8.1	P < 0.01
Yu *et al.* (2005), the People's Republic of China	Workers (n = 151; low-exposed, 62; high-exposed, 89) in two plywood factories; 112 non-exposed controls.	TWA: 0.10–7.88 mg/m^3 (< 0.01 mg/m^3 in controls)	MN in lymphocytes (MN/1000 cells)	High exp. 6.5 ± 3.6 Low exp. 4.1 ± 2.5	2.7 ± 1.3	P < 0.05
			DNA-breakage (comet tail length, µm) in lymphocytes	High exp., 12.6 (95% CI: 11.8–13.4) Low exp., 11.3 (95% CI: 10.1–12.5)	6.8 (95%CI: 6.1–7.6)	P < 0.05
Ye *et al.* (2005), the People's Republic of China	Workers (n = 18; all non-smokers) in a formaldehyde factory (mean exposure duration, 8.5 yrs), and waiters (n = 16; all non-smokers) exposed to formaldehyde for 12 wk in a newly fitted ballroom. Controls were 23 students (non-smokers)	Factory: 8-h TWA, 0.99 ± 0.29 mg/m^3, with peak exposure 1.69 mg/m^3. Ballroom: 5-h TWA 0.11 ± 0.07 mg/m^3, with peak exposure 0.3 mg/m^3 Control: 0.01 ± 0.003 mg/m^3, with peak 0.015 mg/m^3	MN in nasal mucosa (MN/1000 cells) of factory workers	2.70 ± 1.50	1.25 ± 0.65	P < 0.05
			SCE in lymphocytes of factory workers	8.24 ± 0.89	6.38 ± 0.41	P < 0.05
			No effects in ballroom waiters			

Table 4.1 (continued)

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Shaham *et al.* (2002), Israel	Workers (n = 90) in hospital pathology departments; controls were 52 unexposed workers from the same hospitals. Average duration of exposure 15.4 yrs (range, 1–39)	Low: 0.4 ppm (0.04–1.7) High: 2.24 ppm (0.72–5.6)	SCE in lymphocytes (mean number of SCE per chromosome)	0.27 ± 0.003	0.19 ± 0.002	$P < 0.01$
Burgaz *et al.* (2002), Turkey	a) Workers (n = 22) in a shoe factory	n-hexane, toluene, methyl ethyl ketone	MN in buccal cells (MN/1000 cells)	a) 0.62 ± 0.45		$P < 0.05$
	b) Pathologists (n = 28), anatomy laboratories	2–4 ppm formaldehyde		b) 0.71 ± 0.56		$P < 0.05$
	c) Controls (n = 18): university staff	none			c) 0.33 ± 0.30	
Burgaz *et al.* (2001), Turkey	Workers (n = 23) in pathology and anatomy laboratories, and 25 non-exposed controls	Air concentration of formaldehyde in the breathing zone 2–4 ppm.	MN in nasal mucosa (MN/1000 cells; mean ± SD).	1.01 ± 0.62	0.61 ± 0.27	$P < 0.01$
Suruda *et al.* (1993), USA	Students (n = 29) taking 85-d course in embalming; average number of embalmings, 6.9; total number 144.	Average air concentration of formaldehyde: 1.4 ppm, range 0.15–4.3 mean duration of embalming 125 minute with peak exposures > 4 ppm.	MN per 1 000 cells:	MN after course	MN before course	
			- buccal cells	0.60 ± 1.27	0.046 ± 0.17	$P < 0.05$
			- nasal cavity	0.50 ± 0.67	0.41 ± 0.52	NS
			- lymphocytes	6.36 ± 2.03	4.95 ± 1.72	$P < 0.05$
			SCE in lymphocytes	7.14 ± 0.89	7.72 ± 1.26	$P = 0.01$ (decrease in SCE)
Ying *et al.* (1999), China	Students (n = 23; non-smokers) in 8-wk (3h x 3 times weekly) anatomy class.	TWA 0.51 ± 0.30 mg/m^3, with peak exposure 1.28 Background level in dormitories 0.012 ± 0.0025 mg/m^3		SCE after course	SCE before course	
			SCE in lymphocytes	6.61 ± 0.79	6.38 ± 0.41	NS

Table 4.1 (continued)

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
He *et al.* (1998), China	Students (n = 13; non-smokers) in 12-wk (10h per wk) anatomy class. Ten other students (non-smokers) served as non-exposed controls.	Average air concentration of formaldehyde: 2.37 ppm (3.17 mg/m^3)	MN per 1 000 cells in lymphocytes	6.38 ± 2.50	3.15 ± 1.46	$P < 0.01$
			CA in lymphocytes	5.92 ± 2.40	3.40 ± 1.57	$P < 0.01$
			SCE in lymphocytes	5.91 ± 0.71	5.26 ± 0.51	$P < 0.05$
Ying *et al.* (1997), China	Students (n = 25; non-smokers) in 8-wk (3h x 3 times weekly) anatomy class.	TWA 0.51 ± 0.30 mg/m^3, with peak exposure 1.28 Background level in dormitories 0.012 ± 0.0025 mg/m^3	MN per 1 000 cells in			
			- nasal exfoliated cells	3.84 ± 1.48	1.20 ± 0.67	$P < 0.001$
			- oral mucosa cells	0.86 ± 0.56	0.57 ± 0.32	$P < 0.01$
			- lymphocytes	1.11 ± 0.54	0.91 ± 0.39	n.s.
Titenko-Holland *et al.* (1996), USA	Students (n = 28) taking a 90-d embalming class; average number of embalmings, 6.9; total number 144.	Accumulated dose over 90 d: 4.3–26.4 ppm Maximum peak exposure: 2.86 ppm	MN per 1 000 cells with centromere-specific probes (FISH) in:	MN after class	MN before class	[between parentheses: values for centromere-negative MN]
			- buccal cells	2.0 ± 2.0 (0.9 ± 1.1)	0.6 ± 0.5 (0.1 ± 0.2)	$P = 0.007$ ($P = 0.005$)
			- nasal cells	2.5 ± 1.3 (1.0 ± 0.6)	2.0 ± 1.3 (0.5 ± 0.5)	$P = 0.20$ ($P = 0.03$)

Table 4.1 (continued)

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Dobiás *et al.* (1988), Czechoslovakia	- Schoolchildren (n = 20 children) in school building constructed with wood-particle boards - Control group (n = 17 children) in brick school building in the same area - Control group in brick school building elsewhere	Formaldehyde concentration in air: 1984: 317.0 µg/m^3 1985: 130.0 µg/m^3 1986: 36.5 µg/m^3	CA in lymphocytes (per 100 cells) in lymphocytes	1984: 7 1985: 4.2 1986: NR	1984: 4.2 NR NR The frequency of chromosomal aberrations is stated 'normal' in 1986 but the value is not given	
		Building was cleaned in '85, '86	Percentage of aberrant cells	1984: 4.71 ± 2.09 1985: 2.82 ± 1.64 1986: 2.06 ± 1.51	1984: 1.37 ± 0.87 1985: 1.4 ± 0.79 NR	P = 0.005
Bauchinger & Schmid (1985), Germany	Workers (n = 20; 6 smokers) in a paper factory, where formaldehyde was used for impregnating the paper. Duration of exposure 2–30 yrs, average 14.5 ± 7.2 yrs. Controls were 20 non-exposed workers (13 smokers) elsewhere in the factory	Formaldehyde exposure, < 0.2 ppm Peak during repair and cleaning, 3 ppm	CA in lymphocytes (dicentrics, rings) per 100 cells SCE/cell ± SE	0.13 ± 0.05 8.87 ± 0.24	0.05 ± 0.02 9.53 ± 0.35	 NS

CA, chromosomal abberations; d, day or days; h, hour or hours; min, minute or minutes; MN, micronuclei; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; SCE, sister chromatid exchange; TWA, time-weighted average concentration

subsequent study, Shaham *et al.* (2003) reported an increase in the number of DNA–protein crosslinks in lymphocytes and in serum concentrations of the p53 protein in hospital pathology-department workers. The exposed subjects were assigned to a high-exposure subgroup (mean formaldehyde concentration in air, 2.24 ppm) and a low-exposure subgroup (mean, 0.4 ppm), based on personal sampling and field sampling for 15-minute periods on typical working days. The control group consisted of personnel of the administrative sections in the hospital. The amount of protein–cross-linked DNA was statistically significantly higher in the exposed group than in the controls (0.20 *vs* 0.14; these values are the ratios between protein-bound DNA – precipitable with sodium dodecyl sulfate – and total DNA) after controlling for age, smoking and other factors. Very little difference in DNA–protein crosslink levels was observed between the high- and low-exposure groups (0.20 *vs* 0.19); or between workers with > 16 years or < 16 years of exposure (0.20 *vs* 0.19). The percentage of formaldehyde-exposed male workers who had pantropic p53-protein (wild-type plus mutant p53) concentrations in serum higher than 150 pg/ml was statistically significantly greater than in the control group (54.8% *vs* 36.5%, $P < 0.05$; this difference was not seen in female workers). Formaldehyde-exposed workers with DNA–protein crosslink levels above the median had a significantly greater likelihood of having p53 concentrations in serum above 150 pg/ml. [The Working Group noted that the rationale for using a p53-protein level of 150 pg/ml as a cut-point was based upon previous experience with this assay; no reason is given for using 16 years as the cut-point between longer/shorter exposure. Questions have also been raised about the persistence of DNA–protein crosslinks, which are thought to be rapidly repaired within the cell (Schmid & Speit, 2007)]. In an earlier study, Casanova-Schmitz *et al.* (1984) failed to observe DNA–protein crosslinks in bone marrow of Fischer-344 rats exposed to [^{14}C]- and [^{3}H]-formaldehyde.

Compared with matched controls, pathology/anatomy workers from five hospitals, who were exposed to mean formaldehyde concentrations of 2.0 ppm (range, < 0.1 to 20.4 ppm) during 15 minute, or to 0.1 ppm (range < 0.1 to 0.7 ppm) during 8 hours, showed a statistically significant increase in bi-nucleated cells and in mono-centromeric micronucleus formation in a cytokinesis-blocked micronucleus assay combined with fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) (Orsière *et al.*, 2006).

A higher frequency of micronuclei was found in exfoliated nasal and oral cells of students with short-term exposure (3 hours per day; 3 days per week, for 8 weeks) to an average of 0.508 ± 0.299 mg/m^3 formaldehyde, compared with controls (Ying *et al.*, 1997, 1999). No increase in micronucleus formation or in the level of sister chromatid exchange (SCE) was observed in lymphocytes. Ye *et al.* (2005) reported a comparative analysis of 18 workers involved for various periods (mean, 8.5 years; range, 1–15 years) in a formaldehyde-manufacturing process, 16 waiters exposed for 12 weeks to an indoor source of formaldehyde during interior renovations, and a control group of 23 students; all were non-smokers. Average formaldehyde exposure-concentrations were 0.011 mg/m^3 for the student controls; 0.107 mg/m^3 for the waiters; and 0.99 mg/m^3 for the formaldehyde-plant workers. There was a statistically significantly higher frequency of micronuclei in nasal mucosal cells and of SCE in peripheral lymphocytes in the workers at the formaldehyde-manufacturing plant, but not in the waiters, although both groups were exposed to formaldehyde at comparable concentrations (Table 4.1). The result is in line with the much longer exposure duration for the plant workers. The same authors (Ye *et al.*, 2005) reported an increase in B-cells and changes in the ratios between lymphocyte subsets, similar to those reported by Madison *et al.* (1991) in an

Alaskan community subject to acute formaldehyde exposure (estimated at 2–5 ppm) for a few days. Blood analyses were done three years after the accident. Total white blood cell counts and total lymphocyte counts did not differ from those in the control community in Alaska, also measured three years later (Madison *et al.*, 1991).

An increase in SCE and other genotoxic effects were observed in the lymphocytes of workers with long-term exposure to formaldehyde (Costa *et al.*, 2008). Thirty workers from four pathology/anatomy hospital units and 30 matched controls were included in the study. Compared with the control group, statistically significant effects were seen in SCE (6.13 ± 0.29 *vs* 4.49 ± 0.16 SCE/cell, $P < 0.05$), micronucleus frequency (in 1000 bi-nucleated cells: 5.47 ± 0.76 ‰ *vs* 3.27 ± 0.69 ‰, $P = 0.003$) and tail length in the comet assay (60.0 ± 2.31 µm *vs* 41.85 ± 1.97 µm, $P < 0.05$). A statistically significant positive correlation was found between formaldehyde exposure levels and micronucleus frequency and tail length. The mean formaldehyde exposure was 0.44 ppm (range, 0.04–1.58 ppm). None of the observed effects were related to the duration of exposure.

No genotoxic effects were observed in a study of 36 laboratory workers at a cancer-research institute who were exposed to 4.9–268.7 µg/m^3 formaldehyde. There was a direct relationship between formaldehyde exposure levels and the presence of a formaldehyde human serum-albumin (FA-HSA) conjugate. The genotoxic endpoints measured were SCE, micronuclei and chromosome aberrations, but these did not show significantly elevated levels (Pala *et al.*, 2008). Although a small study, its strength is its linkage to a biological marker of formaldehyde exposure.

Hayes *et al.* (1997) evaluated O^6-Alkylguanine-DNA–alkyltransferase (AGT) activity as a measure of DNA-repair capacity in blood lymphocytes of 23 science students in a mortuary, before and after a nine-week period of classroom exposure to approximately 1.5 ppm formaldehyde. A statistically significant finding was that more students had a reduction in AGT activity than an increase. There was no clear link between the extent of exposure to formaldehyde and AGT activity.

Zhang *et al.* (2010) cultured myeloid progenitor cells from the peripheral blood of formaldehyde-exposed workers and controls and measured leukaemia-specific chromosomal changes. In a subset of ten of the most highly exposed subjects in their study, monosomy (loss) of chromosome 7 and trisomy (gain) of chromosome 8 were significantly elevated in the myeloid progenitor cells of formaldehyde-exposed workers compared with the same phenomena in 12 unexposed controls. The loss of chromosome 7 and gain of chromosome 8 were examined because they are among the most frequent cytogenetic changes observed in myeloid leukaemia and myelodysplastic syndromes; these events have been shown to be affected by exposure to the established human leukemogen, benzene. [The Working Group noted that the study is small and needs to be replicated].

4.3.2 Experimental systems

(a) In-vivo studies (laboratory animals)

Studies on a variety of genotoxic endpoints in laboratory animals inhaling formaldehyde have generally shown effects in the nasal tissues of these animals (IARC, 2006). Much less consistent have been the findings of genotoxic effects in the blood lymphocytes from exposed animals. Among the recent studies, Im *et al.* (2006) reported genotoxicity based on a positive result in the comet assay in the lymphocytes of rats inhaling 5 or 10 ppm formaldehyde for two weeks, six hours/day, five days/week. In contrast, in a review of their own work and of the literature, Speit *et al.* (2009) concluded that there was no evidence of systemic genotoxic effects in laboratory animals inhaling formaldehyde. Their own negative studies in this review focused on

lymphocyte genotoxicity, measured as micronuclei, SCE, and DNA-breakage – the latter determined with a sensitive form of the comet assay – in rats exposed for four weeks (six hours/day, five days/week) to formaldehyde concentrations of 0.5, 1, 2, 6, 10 and 15 ppm.

More recently, DNA strand-breaks were induced by formaldehyde *in vivo*, in mouse liver (maternal and fetal), and in lung cells in the rat (Wang & Liu, 2006; Sul *et al.*, 2007).

(b) In-vitro studies

The spectrum of mutations related to exposure to formaldehyde *in vitro* and *in vivo* was presented and discussed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006). In-vitro studies since then have expanded the wide range of potential mutagenic mechanisms, to include the hydroxymethylation of DNA and DNA-microsatellite instability (Zhong & Que Hee, 2004; Wang *et al.*, 2007).

The evidence of formaldehyde-induced mutations in various experimental systems is consistent, encompassing both clastogenic effects and direct DNA mutation. Formaldehyde showed mutagenic potential in several bacterial systems, both with and without S9 activation. Formaldehyde induced deletions, point mutations, insertions, and cell transformation in in-vitro assays with mammalian cells (IARC, 2006).

Formaldehyde-induced DNA strand-breaks (SSB) have been demonstrated in several mammalian cell systems, including hepatocytes, lymphosarcoma cells, and epithelial cells from the rat, leukaemia L1210 cells from the mouse, and lung/bronchial epithelial cells, skin fibroblasts, keratinocytes, and peripheral blood lymphocytes from humans (IARC, 2006).

Chromosomal aberrations, micronuclei and SCE were all increased *in vitro* in numerous rodent and human primary cells and cell lines treated with formaldehyde (IARC, 2006). Consistent with these findings, more recent data show increased numbers of chromosomal aberrations in Syrian hamster embryo cells, and chromosomal aberrations and SCE in Chinese hamster ovary and embryo cells (Hikiba *et al.*, 2005, Hagiwara *et al.*, 2006; Lorenti Garcia *et al.*, 2009).

Further evidence of formaldehyde-induced micronucleus formation was obtained in studies with human lymphocytes isolated from whole-blood cultures exposed *in vitro* to formaldehyde, 44 hours after the start of the culture (Schmid & Speit, 2007). Both micronuclei and SCE were induced upon in-vitro treatment of Chinese hamster V79 lung epithelial cells with formaldehyde (Speit *et al.*, 2007). In a recent study, SCE was induced in A549 human lung cells and V79 Chinese hamster cells following incubation with 0.1 mM [3 µg/mL] or higher concentrations of formaldehyde. One hour after the addition of the agent to the A549 cells, the culture medium still retained the capacity to produce SCE in non-exposed V79 cells, suggesting that genotoxicity persists despite the high reactivity of formaldehyde with macromolecules in the culture medium (Neuss & Speit, 2008). When the formaldehyde-exposed A549 cells were washed and then suspended in fresh culture medium containing the V79 cells, SCE formation was not observed in the latter. [The authors present no evidence that it is formaldehyde itself that persists, rather than a formaldehyde product that is responsible for genotoxicity. The Working Group noted that there is no reason to preclude the transfer of formaldehyde from cell to cell].

Formaldehyde has also been reported to interfere with DNA repair. A recent finding that chicken DT40 cells deficient in the FANC/BRCA (Fanconi's anaemia complementation groups/breast cancer A) pathway are hypersensitive to formaldehyde in plasma, is consistent with a role for this pathway in repairing DNA–protein cross-links caused by formaldehyde. The DT40 mutants were also more sensitive to acetaldehyde, but not to acrolein and other aldehydes (Ridpath *et al.*, 2007). Endogenous formaldehyde may be

important in producing leukaemia in patients with Fanconi's anaemia, a genetic disorder that is characterized by progressive pancytopenia. DT40 cells with deficient repair mechanisms have also been shown to be more sensitive to other cross-linking agents such as cisplatin, a myelotoxic chemotherapeutic agent that leads to pancytopenia and acute myelogenous leukaemia (AML) (Nojima *et al.*, 2005).

4.4 Mechanistic considerations

4.4.1 Cancer of the nasopharynx and nasal sinuses

Mechanistic evidence supporting a causal relation between inhalation of formaldehyde and induction of cancer of the nasopharynx and nasal sinuses is based on the chemical reactivity of formaldehyde in producing DNA–protein cross-links, and its genotoxicity *in vitro* and *in vivo*, including in the nasal cells of exposed humans. Computational fluid-dynamic models of formaldehyde in the nasal passages of rats, monkeys and humans have generally been accurate in predicting the area in the nose with the highest number of DNA–protein crosslinks (Georgieva *et al.*, 2003). Local effects in the nasal passages, genotoxicity, and cell-proliferation rate appear to be the major determinants of nasal carcinogenicity after exposure to formaldehyde.

4.4.2 Leukaemia

The findings reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 88 (IARC, 2006) pertaining to a potential mechanism for formaldehyde-induced leukaemogenesis were summarized as follows: "Based on the data available at this time, it was not possible to identify a mechanism for the induction of myeloid leukaemia in humans." The Working Group further stated that "It is possible that formaldehyde itself can reach the bone marrow following inhalation, although the evidence is inconsistent." Since that time, Zhang *et al.* (2009), reviewed potential pathways by which formaldehyde could act as a leukaemogen. Three mechanisms were suggested:

- by damaging stem cells in the bone marrow directly, as most other leukaemogens do;
- by damaging haematopoietic stem/progenitor cells circulating in the peripheral blood and
- by damaging the primitive pluri-potent stem cells present within the nasal turbinates and/or olfactory mucosa.

This subject was reviewed by Heck & Casanova (2004), Pyatt *et al.* (2008), and Goldstein (2011).

(a) Studies in animals

Studies of bone marrow cells in formaldehyde-exposed animals have been inconsistent. Kitaeva *et al.* (1990) described clastogenic and cytogenetic effects in the bone marrow of rats inhaling 0.5 mg/m^3 or 1.5 mg/m^3 of formaldehyde during four hours/day for four months. In contrast, Dallas *et al.* (1992) found no evidence of cytogenetic abnormalities in the bone marrow of rats exposed to 0.5, 3 or 15 ppm [0.62, 3.7 or 18.45 mg/m^3] formaldehyde for six hours/day, five days per week, for one or eight weeks. Mice that received up to 25 mg/kg bw formaldehyde in two intra-peritoneal injections within 24 hours showed no increase in chromosomal aberrations or micronuclei in the femoral bone marrow (Natarajan *et al.*, 1983). As described in section 4.1 above, no increase in formaldehyde-specific DNA–protein cross-links was observed in the bone marrow of Rhesus monkeys or rats under various experimental conditions (Heck & Casanova, 2004).

(b) Considerations of formaldehyde as a leukaemogen in relation to other known myeloleukaemogens

Known myeloid leukaemogens in humans include benzene, ionizing radiation and a variety of chemotherapeutic anti-neoplastic agents, all of which give rise to pancytopenia. There is evidence that for each of these myeloleukaemogens, pancytopenia is caused by genotoxic damage leading to destruction of primitive progenitor cells in the bone marrow. These cells are responsible for the formation of red blood cells, white blood cells and platelets, and they are the same progenitor cells in which mutations and clonal expansion leads to myeloid leukaemia.

In view of the wide variety of genotoxic mechanisms shown by the diverse agents that have pancytopenia and myeloleukaemogenesis in common, it could be anticipated that genotoxic effects of formaldehyde on myeloid progenitor cells would also result in pancytopenia.

Pancytopenia has not been among the haematological findings in experiments with laboratory animals exposed to relatively high doses of formaldehyde, including classic long-term safety assessment studies. An increase in haemoglobin and monocytes and a decrease in lymphocytes were observed in rats receiving 0, 20, 40, or 80 mg/kg bw formaldehyde by gastric intubation on five days/week for four weeks. Lymph-node weights were increased but no change in lymph-node cellularity was observed (Vargová *et al.*, 1993). In one long-term study there was actually a statistically significant increase in bone-marrow hyperplasia in rats exposed to formaldehyde at 15 ppm (Batelle, 1981), the opposite of what would be expected for an agent that has effects similar to those of other known myeloleukaemogens.

In contrast to the findings in laboratory animals, there has been some evidence suggesting a mild pancytopenic effect in humans. A study of 50 haemodialysis nurses exposed to formaldehyde compared with 71 non-exposed ward nurses from five different hospitals comprised measurements of formaldehyde and two different blood counts recorded one a year apart. Both personal and ambient measurements of formaldehyde varied widely, from non-detectable up to 2.8 ppm. Average duration of employment was three years for both groups. Symptoms attributable to formaldehyde were reported in the exposed group. For the second blood count, but not the first, there was a statistically significant inverse correlation ($P < 0.05$) between white blood-cell count and formaldehyde concentration, as well as between white blood-cell count and symptom score. No statistically significant correlation was observed between formaldehyde concentrations or symptoms and platelet or red blood-cell counts. The exposed group had a lower white blood-cell count than the control group (Kuo *et al.*, 1997). [The Working Group noted that absolute data for blood counts were not given, nor was the statistical methodology described]

An increase in B-lymphocytes and changes in ratios of lymphocyte subsets were noted in formaldehyde-plant workers exposed to an average of 0.99 mg/m^3 formaldehyde for a mean duration of 8.5 years (Ye *et al.*, 2005). Differences in the ratios of lymphocyte subsets were also observed in an Alaskan community with an acute formaldehyde exposure (2–5 ppm for a few days), but no differences with the control community were seen in total white blood-cell counts or lymphocyte counts (Madison *et al.*, 1991). Likewise, no significant differences in blood counts were found in a comparative study of students of two schools, in one of which there were elevated concentrations of formaldehyde and toluene (Vozenílková *et al.*, 1991).

In a review of formaldehyde exposure in the People's Republic of China, Tang *et al.* (2009) mentioned eight studies on formaldehyde-exposed individuals. Lower white blood-cell counts were observed in the six studies that provided information on this point, four of which were statistically significant; platelet

counts were decreased in all three studies where this was measured, two of which were statistically significant; and haemoglobin was lower in one of the three studies for which data were reported. The one study that found lower than normal values for each blood count – consistent with a pancytopenic effect – was specifically the study with the lowest exposure to formaldehyde (0.022–0.044 mg/m^3), although the largest cohort. [From the Table in the Tang *et al.* (2009) paper, it is not clear whether these are the same individuals or separate individuals who have each of the lower counts, i.e. how many were pancytopenic. There also is no information about the usual confounders, including gender and age].

The finding of statistically significant, moderately lower blood counts in formaldehyde-exposed Chinese workers as compared to a matched control group would be consistent with formaldehyde-induced damage to either circulating haematopoietic precursor cells, or with a direct effect on such cells within the bone marrow (Zhang *et al.*, 2010). In this study the 43 exposed workers at a formaldehyde-melamine producing factory or a factory in which formaldehyde-melamine resins were used to produce utensils, were exposed to a median of 1.28 ppm formaldehyde (10–90%, range 0.63–2.51 ppm; 8-hour time-weighted average), compared with a median level, in a matched control group of 51 individuals, of 0.026 ppm (10–90%, range 0.0085–0.026 ppm). Absolute blood counts were only given for total white blood-cell counts: in controls, mean (SD) 6269 (1452) cells per µl blood; and in exposed: mean 5422 (1529) cells per µl blood, $P = 0.0016$. Data for the other blood counts are presented in a bar chart, and for red blood cells, platelets, granulocytes and lymphocytes there are small but statistically significant decreases that appear to fall within the clinical range of normal. Also of note is a statistically significant increase in the mean corpuscular volume (MCV) of red blood cells. The MCV tends to be increased in myelodysplastic conditions. The study appeared to have adequately taken into account possible confounders such as alcoholism and nutritional issues that might cause pancytopenia and an increased MCV.

(c) Leukaemogenesis on the basis of reactions with myeloid stem cells within the nose

As indicated above, Zhang *et al.* (2009) have suggested that one mechanism of formaldehyde-induced leukaemogenesis might involve reaction of formaldehyde or a reactive formaldehyde derivative with myeloid precursors present within the nose. This has been questioned on two indirect grounds (Goldstein, 2011). Nasal tissue does not seem to have been reported as a location for chloromas, which are isolated collections of myeloid leukaemia cells, despite the presence of chloromas in virtually all other tissues. Second, known nasal carcinogens, including cross-linking agents such as nickel and chromium, are not reported to cause an increase in acute myelogenous leukaemia. The one possible exception is sulfur mustard, a nasal carcinogen for which an increase in leukaemia (13 deaths observed; 8.51 expected; not statistically significant) was reported by Easton *et al.* (1988) in workers producing sulfur mustard gas during World War II. However, this agent also produces pancytopenia, an outcome that led to the development of nitrogen mustard as a chemotherapeutic compound. None of the other known human nasal carcinogens has been reported to cause pancytopenia.

(d) Formaldehyde and lymphoid cancers

Genotoxicity studies on blood lymphocytes from laboratory animals that inhaled formaldehyde have tended to be negative, although not consistently so. In comparison, somewhat more studies with the lymphocytes of humans exposed to formaldehyde have reported genotoxicity, although the findings are also inconsistent. Genotoxicity in circulating lymphocytes would be consistent with the possibility that

formaldehyde is a cause of lymphatic tumours. Particularly at risk would be mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue in the nasal area.

The evolution of our understanding of lymphohaematopoitetic cancers has led to ongoing reclassification of these tumours. There is also recognition of their inter-relatedness through a common stem cell, and the fact that there is a risk for malignant transformation during various stages of the differentiation and maturation process of the precursor cells. Recent evidence suggests that an underlying cytogenetic abnormality in an early precursor cell predisposes to subsequent mutations leading to a specific haematological cancer. The possibility of a mutagenic effect of formaldehyde on circulating lymphocytes or local lymphatic tissue cannot be excluded.

4.5 Synthesis

The current data strongly indicate that genotoxicity plays an important role in the carcinogenicity of formaldehyde in nasal tissues in humans, and that cellular replication in response to formaldehyde-induced cytotoxicity promotes the carcinogenic response. Three possible mechanisms, all focused around genotoxicity, are moderately supported as the underlying mechanism for induction of haematological malignancies in humans. Further research is needed to decide which of the mechanisms is the most important.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of formaldehyde. Formaldehyde causes cancer of the nasopharynx and leukaemia.

Also, a positive association has been observed between exposure to formaldehyde and sinonasal cancer.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of formaldehyde.

The Working Group was not in full agreement on the evaluation of formaldehyde causing leukaemias in humans, with a small majority viewing the evidence as sufficient of carcinogenicity and the minority viewing the evidence as limited. Particularly relevant to the discussions regarding sufficient evidence was a recent study accepted for publication which, for the first time, reported aneuploidy in blood of exposed workers characteristic of myeloid leukaemia and myelodysplastic syndromes, with supporting information suggesting a decrease in the major circulating blood-cell types and in circulating haematological precursor cells. The authors and Working Group felt that this study needed to be replicated.

Formaldehyde is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Albert RE, Sellakumar AR, Laskin S *et al.* (1982). Gaseous formaldehyde and hydrogen chloride induction of nasal cancer in the rat. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 68: 597–603. PMID:6951075

Armstrong RW, Imrey PB, Lye MS *et al.* (2000). Nasopharyngeal carcinoma in Malaysian Chinese: occupational exposures to particles, formaldehyde and heat. *Int J Epidemiol*, 29: 991–998. doi:10.1093/ije/29.6.991 PMID:11101539

Bachand AM, Mundt KA, Mundt DJ, Montgomery RR (2010). Epidemiological studies of formaldehyde exposure and risk of leukemia and nasopharyngeal cancer: a meta-analysis. *Crit Rev Toxicol*, 40: 85–100. doi:10.3109/10408440903341696 PMID:20085478

Batelle (1981). *Final report on: A chronic inhalation toxicology study in rats and mice exposed to formaldehyde to Chemical Industry Institute of Toxicology.* Columbus, Ohio: Columbus Laboratories, No. CIIT Docket No:10922, 1:1–281

Bauchinger M & Schmid E (1985). Cytogenetic effects in lymphocytes of formaldehyde workers of a paper factory. *Mutat Res*, 158: 195–199. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(85)90085-0 PMID:4079950

Beane Freeman LE, Blair A, Lubin JH *et al.* (2009). Mortality from lymphohematopoietic malignancies

among workers in formaldehyde industries: the National Cancer Institute Cohort. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 101: 751–761. doi:10.1093/jnci/djp096 PMID:19436030

Blair A, Zheng T, Linos A *et al.* (2001). Occupation and leukemia: a population-based case-control study in Iowa and Minnesota. *Am J Ind Med*, 40: 3–14. doi:10.1002/ajim.1066 PMID:11439392

Bosetti C, McLaughlin JK, Tarone RE *et al.* (2008). Formaldehyde and cancer risk: a quantitative review of cohort studies through 2006. *Ann Oncol*, 19: 29–43. doi:10.1093/annonc/mdm202 PMID:17897961

Burgaz S, Cakmak G, Erdem O *et al.* (2001). Micronuclei frequencies in exfoliated nasal mucosa cells from pathology and anatomy laboratory workers exposed to formaldehyde. *Neoplasma*, 48: 144–147. PMID:11478696

Burgaz S, Erdem O, Cakmak G *et al.* (2002). Cytogenetic analysis of buccal cells from shoe-workers and pathology and anatomy laboratory workers exposed to n-hexane, toluene, methyl ethyl ketone and formaldehyde. *Biomarkers*, 7: 151–161. doi:10.1080/13547500110113242 PMID:12101634

CAREX (1999). *Carex industry specific estimates – Summary.* Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf.

Casanova M & Heck (1987). Further studies of the metabolic incorporation and covalent binding of inhaled [3H]- and [14C]formaldehyde in Fischer-344 rats: effects of glutathione depletion. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 89: 105–121. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(87)90181-5 PMID:2438809

Casanova M, Heck HD, Everitt JI *et al.* (1988). Formaldehyde concentrations in the blood of rhesus monkeys after inhalation exposure. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 26: 715–716. doi:10.1016/0278-6915(88)90071-3 PMID:3198038

Casanova M, Morgan KT, Steinhagen WH *et al.* (1991). Covalent binding of inhaled formaldehyde to DNA in the respiratory tract of rhesus monkeys: pharmacokinetics, rat-to-monkey interspecies scaling, and extrapolation to man. *Fundam Appl Toxicol*, 17: 409–428. doi:10.1016/0272-0590(91)90230-2 PMID:1765228

Casanova-Schmitz M, Starr TB, Heck HD (1984). Differentiation between metabolic incorporation and covalent binding in the labeling of macromolecules in the rat nasal mucosa and bone marrow by inhaled [14C]- and [3H]formaldehyde. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 76: 26–44. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(84)90026-7 PMID:6207627

CIIT Chemical Industry Institute of Toxicology (1981). *Final report on a chronic inhalation toxicology study in rats and mice exposed to formaldehyde.* CIIT docket #10922. Colombus, OH: Battelle Colombus Laboratories

Coggon D, Harris EC, Poole J, Palmer KT (2003). Extended follow-up of a cohort of british chemical workers exposed to formaldehyde. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 95: 1608–1615. PMID:14600093

Collins JJ, Acquavella JF, Esmen NA (1997). An updated meta-analysis of formaldehyde exposure and upper respiratory tract cancers. *J Occup Environ Med*, 39: 639–651. doi:10.1097/00043764-199707000-00009 PMID:9253725

Collins JJ & Lineker GA (2004). A review and meta-analysis of formaldehyde exposure and leukemia. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 40: 81–91. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2004.04.006 PMID:15450712

Corrêa SM & Arbilla G (2005). Formaldehyde and acetaldehyde associated with the use of natural gas as a fuel for light vehicles. *Atmos Environ*, 39: 4513–4518. doi:10.1016/j.atmosenv.2005.03.042

Costa S, Coelho P, Costa C *et al.* (2008). Genotoxic damage in pathology anatomy laboratory workers exposed to formaldehyde. *Toxicology*, 252: 40–48. doi:10.1016/j.tox.2008.07.056 PMID:18721846

Dalbey WE (1982). Formaldehyde and tumors in hamster respiratory tract. *Toxicology*, 24: 9–14. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(82)90058-0 PMID:7135407

Dallas CE, Scott MJ, Ward JB Jr, Theiss JC (1992). Cytogenetic analysis of pulmonary lavage and bone marrow cells of rats after repeated formaldehyde inhalation. *J Appl Toxicol*, 12: 199–203. doi:10.1002/jat.2550120309 PMID:1378462

Dobiás L, Janca L, Lochman I, Lochmanova A (1988). Genotoxic action of formaldehyde in exposed children. *Mutat Res*, 216: 310

Easton DF, Peto J, Doll R (1988). Cancers of the respiratory tract in mustard gas workers. *Br J Ind Med*, 45: 652–659. PMID:3196660

Feron VJ, Bruyntjes JP, Woutersen RA *et al.* (1988). Nasal tumours in rats after short-term exposure to a cytotoxic concentration of formaldehyde. *Cancer Lett*, 39: 101–111. doi:10.1016/0304-3835(88)90045-6 PMID:3345504

Feron VJ, Til HP, Woutersen RA (1990). Formaldehyde in Sprague-Dawley rats. *Toxicol Ind Health*, 6: 637–639. PMID:2097822

Fox CH, Johnson FB, Whiting J, Roller PP (1985). Formaldehyde fixation. *J Histochem Cytochem*, 33: 845–853. doi:10.1177/33.8.3894502 PMID:3894502

Georgieva AV, Kimbell JS, Schlosser PM (2003). A distributed-parameter model for formaldehyde uptake and disposition in the rat nasal lining. *Inhal Toxicol*, 15: 1435–1463. doi:10.1080/08958370390249085 PMID:14648358

Gibson JE (1984). Coordinated toxicology: An example study with formaldehyde. *Concepts Toxicol.*, 1: 276–282.

Goldstein BD (2011). Hematological and toxicological evaluation of formaldehyde as a potential cause of human leukemia. *Hum Exp Toxicol*, 30: 725–735. doi:10.1177/0960327110381682 PMID:20729258

Gottschling LM, Beaulieu HJ, Melvin WW (1984). Monitoring of formic acid in urine of humans exposed to low levels of formaldehyde. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 45: 19–23. doi:10.1080/15298668491399299 PMID:6702592

Hagiwara M, Watanabe E, Barrett JC, Tsutsui T (2006). Assessment of genotoxicity of 14 chemical agents used in dental practice: ability to induce chromosome aberrations in Syrian hamster embryo cells. *Mutat Res*, 603: 111–120. PMID:16406784

Hall A, Harrington JM, Aw TC (1991). Mortality study of British pathologists. *Am J Ind Med*, 20: 83–89. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700200108 PMID:1867220

Hansen J & Olsen JH (1995). Formaldehyde and cancer morbidity among male employees in Denmark. *Cancer Causes Control*, 6: 354–360. doi:10.1007/BF00051411 PMID:7548723

Hansen J & Olsen JH (1996). [Occupational exposure to formaldehyde and risk of cancer *Ugeskr Laeger*, 158: 4191–4194. PMID:8701536

Hauptmann M, Lubin JH, Stewart PA *et al.* (2003). Mortality from lymphohematopoietic malignancies among workers in formaldehyde industries. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 95: 1615–1623. PMID:14600094

Hauptmann M, Lubin JH, Stewart PA *et al.* (2004). Mortality from solid cancers among workers in formaldehyde industries. *Am J Epidemiol*, 159: 1117–1130. doi:10.1093/aje/kwh174 PMID:15191929

Hauptmann M, Stewart PA, Lubin JH *et al.* (2009). Mortality from lymphohematopoietic malignancies and brain cancer among embalmers exposed to formaldehyde. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 101: 1696–1708. doi:10.1093/jnci/djp416 PMID:19933446

Hayes RB, Blair A, Stewart PA *et al.* (1990). Mortality of U.S. embalmers and funeral directors. *Am J Ind Med*, 18: 641–652. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700180603 PMID:2264563

Hayes RB, Klein S, Suruda A *et al.* (1997). O6-alkylguanine DNA alkyltransferase activity in student embalmers. *Am J Ind Med*, 31: 361–365. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199703)31:3<361::AID-AJIM13>3.0.CO;2-Z PMID:9055960

Hayes RB, Raatgever JW, de Bruyn A, Gerin M (1986). Cancer of the nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses, and formaldehyde exposure. *Int J Cancer*, 37: 487–492. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910370403 PMID:3957459

He JL, Jin LF, Jin HY (1998). Detection of cytogenetic effects in peripheral lymphocytes of students exposed to formaldehyde with cytokinesis-blocked micronucleus assay. *Biomed Environ Sci*, 11: 87–92. PMID:9559107

Heck H & Casanova M (2004). The implausibility of leukemia induction by formaldehyde: a critical review of the biological evidence on distant-site toxicity. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 40: 92–106. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2004.05.001 PMID:15450713

Heck HD, Casanova-Schmitz M, Dodd PB *et al.* (1985). Formaldehyde (CH2O) concentrations in the blood of humans and Fischer-344 rats exposed to CH2O under controlled conditions. *Am Ind Hyg Assoc J*, 46: 1–3. doi:10.1080/15298668591394275 PMID:4025145

Heck HD, White EL, Casanova-Schmitz M (1982). Determination of formaldehyde in biological tissues by gas chromatography/mass spectrometry. *Biomed Mass Spectrom*, 9: 347–353. doi:10.1002/bms.1200090808 PMID:7126766

Hedberg JJ, Hoog JO, Grafstrom RC (2002). *Assessment of Formaldehyde Metabolizing Enzymes in Human Oral Mucosa and Cultured Oral Keratinocytes Indicate High Capacity for Detoxification of Formaldehyde*. In: *Crucial Issues in Inhalation Research — Mechanistic, Clinical and Epidemiologic (INIS Monographs)*. Heinrich U, Mohr U, editors. Stuttgart: Fraunhofer IRB Verlag, pp. 103–115.

Hikiba H, Watanabe E, Barrett JC, Tsutsui T (2005). Ability of fourteen chemical agents used in dental practice to induce chromosome aberrations in Syrian hamster embryo cells. *J Pharmacol Sci*, 97: 146–152. doi:10.1254/jphs.FPJ04044X PMID:15665446

Hildesheim A, Dosemeci M, Chan CC *et al.* (2001). Occupational exposure to wood, formaldehyde, and solvents and risk of nasopharyngeal carcinoma. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 10: 1145–1153. PMID:11700262

Holmström M, Wilhelmsson B, Hellquist H (1989). Histological changes in the nasal mucosa in rats after long-term exposure to formaldehyde and wood dust. *Acta Otolaryngol*, 108: 274–283. doi:10.3109/00016488909125528 PMID:2816342

Horton AW, Tye R, Stemmer KL (1963). Experimental carcinogenesis of the lung. Inhalation of gaseous formaldehyde or an aerosol of coal tar by C3H mice. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 30: 31–43. PMID:13964040

IARC (1982). Some industrial chemicals and dyestuffs. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 29: 1–398. PMID:6957379

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1995). Wood dust and formaldehyde. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 62: 1–405.

IARC (2006). Formaldehyde, 2-butoxyethanol and 1-tert-butoxypropan-2-ol. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 88: 1–478. PMID:17366697

IARC (2010). Household use of solid fuels and high-temperature frying. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 95: 1–424. PMID:18756632

Iarmarcovai G, Bonassi S, Sari-Minodier I *et al.* (2007). Exposure to genotoxic agents, host factors, and lifestyle influence the number of centromeric signals in micronuclei: a pooled re-analysis. *Mutat Res*, 615: 18–27. doi:10.1016/j.mrfmmm.2006.09.005 PMID:17198715

Im H, Oh E, Mun J *et al.* (2006). Evaluation of toxicological monitoring markers using proteomic analysis

in rats exposed to formaldehyde. *J Proteome Res*, 5: 1354–1366. doi:10.1021/pr050437b PMID:16739987

Iversen OH (1986). Formaldehyde and skin carcinogenesis. *Environ Int*, 12: 541–544. doi:10.1016/0160-4120(86)90148-0

Kamata E, Nakadate M, Uchida O *et al.* (1997). Results of a 28-month chronic inhalation toxicity study of formaldehyde in male Fisher-344 rats. *J Toxicol Sci*, 22: 239–254. doi:10.2131/jts.22.3_239 PMID:9279826

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Kerns WD, Donofrio DJ, Pavkov KL (1983b). *The chronic effects of formaldehyde inhalation in rats and mice: A preliminary report*. In: *Formaldehyde Toxicity*. Gibson JE, editor. Washington DC: Hemisphere, pp. 111–131

Kerns WD, Pavkov KL, Donofrio DJ *et al.* (1983a). Carcinogenicity of formaldehyde in rats and mice after long-term inhalation exposure. *Cancer Res*, 43: 4382–4392. PMID:6871871

Kimbell JS, Overton JH, Subramaniam RP *et al.* (2001b). Dosimetry modeling of inhaled formaldehyde: binning nasal flux predictions for quantitative risk assessment. *Toxicol Sci*, 64: 111–121. PMID:11606807

Kimbell JS, Subramaniam RP, Gross EA *et al.* (2001a). Dosimetry modeling of inhaled formaldehyde: comparisons of local flux predictions in the rat, monkey, and human nasal passages. *Toxicol Sci*, 64: 100–110. PMID:11606806

Kitaeva LV, Kitaev EM, Pimenova MN (1990). [The cytopathic and cytogenetic sequelae of chronic inhalational exposure to formaldehyde on female germ cells and bone marrow cells in rats] *Tsitologiia*, 32: 1212–1216. PMID:2103083

Kuo H, Jian G, Chen C *et al.* (1997). White blood cell count as an indicator of formaldehyde exposure. *Bull Environ Contam Toxicol*, 59: 261–267. doi:10.1007/s001289900473 PMID:9211697

Lee SC & Wang B (2006). Characteristics of emissions of air pollutants from mosquito coils and candles burning in a large environmental chamber. *Atmos Environ*, 40: 2128–2138. doi:10.1016/j.atmosenv.2005.11.047

Levine RJ, Andjelkovich DA, Shaw LK (1984). The mortality of Ontario undertakers and a review of formaldehyde-related mortality studies. *J Occup Med*, 26: 740–746. doi:10.1097/00043764-198410000-00014 PMID:6491780

Linos A, Blair A, Cantor KP *et al.* (1990). Leukemia and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma among embalmers and funeral directors. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 82: 66 doi:10.1093/jnci/82.1.66 PMID:2293657

Logue JN, Barrick MK, Jessup GL Jr (1986). Mortality of radiologists and pathologists in the Radiation Registry of Physicians. *J Occup Med*, 28: 91–99. PMID:3950788

Lorenti Garcia C, Mechilli M, Proietti De Santis L *et al.* (2009). Relationship between DNA lesions, DNA repair and chromosomal damage induced by acetaldehyde. *Mutat Res*, 662: 3–9. doi:10.1016/j.mrfmmm.2008.11.008 PMID:19084543

Lu K, Ye W, Gold A *et al.* (2009). Formation of S-[1-(N2-deoxyguanosinyl)methyl]glutathione between glutathione and DNA induced by formaldehyde. *J Am Chem Soc*, 131: 3414–3415. doi:10.1021/ja808048c PMID:19239220

Luce D, Gérin M, Leclerc A *et al.* (1993). Sinonasal cancer and occupational exposure to formaldehyde and other substances. *Int J Cancer*, 53: 224–231. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910530209 PMID:8425759

Luce D, Leclerc A, Bégin D *et al.* (2002). Sinonasal cancer and occupational exposures: a pooled analysis of 12 case-control studies. *Cancer Causes Control*, 13: 147–157. doi:10.1023/A:1014350004255 PMID:11936821

Madison RE, Broughton A, Thrasher JD (1991). Immunologic biomarkers associated with an acute exposure to exothermic byproducts of a ureaformaldehyde spill. *Environ Health Perspect*, 94: 219–223. doi:10.2307/3431314 PMID:1683282

Marsh GM, Stone RA, Esmen NA *et al.* (1996). Mortality among chemical workers in a factory where formaldehyde was used. *Occup Environ Med*, 53: 613–627. doi:10.1136/oem.53.9.613 PMID:8882119

Marsh GM & Youk AO (2005). Reevaluation of mortality risks from nasopharyngeal cancer in the formaldehyde cohort study of the National Cancer Institute. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 42: 275–283. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2005.05.003 PMID:15978711

Marsh GM, Youk AO, Buchanich JM *et al.* (2007a). Work in the metal industry and nasopharyngeal cancer mortality among formaldehyde-exposed workers. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 48: 308–319. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2007.04.006 PMID:17544557

Marsh GM, Youk AO, Morfeld P (2007b). Mis-specified and non-robust mortality risk models for nasopharyngeal cancer in the National Cancer Institute formaldehyde worker cohort study. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 47: 59–67. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2006.07.007 PMID:17000042

Monticello TM, Swenberg JA, Gross EA *et al.* (1996). Correlation of regional and nonlinear formaldehyde-induced nasal cancer with proliferating populations of cells. *Cancer Res*, 56: 1012–1022. PMID:8640755

Natarajan AT, Darroudi F, Bussman CJ, van Kesteren-van Leeuwen AC (1983). Evaluation of the mutagenicity of formaldehyde in mammalian cytogenetic assays in vivo and vitro. *Mutat Res*, 122: 355–360. doi:10.1016/0165-7992(83)90019-2 PMID:6656818

National Toxicology Program (2005). Formaldehyde (Gas). NTP 11th Report on Carcinogens. *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 1–A32.

Neuss S & Speit G (2008). Further characterization of the genotoxicity of formaldehyde in vitro by the sister

chromatid exchange test and co-cultivation experiments. *Mutagenesis*, 23: 355–357. doi:10.1093/mutage/gen025 PMID:18477654

Nojima K, Hochegger H, Saberi A *et al.* (2005). Multiple repair pathways mediate tolerance to chemotherapeutic cross-linking agents in vertebrate cells. *Cancer Res*, 65: 11704–11711. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-1214 PMID:16357182

Olsen JH & Asnaes S (1986). Formaldehyde and the risk of squamous cell carcinoma of the sinonasal cavities. *Br J Ind Med*, 43: 769–774. PMID:3790457

Olsen JH, Jensen SP, Hink M *et al.* (1984). Occupational formaldehyde exposure and increased nasal cancer risk in man. *Int J Cancer*, 34: 639–644. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910340509 PMID:6500742

Orsière T, Sari-Minodier I, Iarmarcovai G, Botta A (2006). Genotoxic risk assessment of pathology and anatomy laboratory workers exposed to formaldehyde by use of personal air sampling and analysis of DNA damage in peripheral lymphocytes. *Mutat Res*, 605: 30–41. PMID:16584911

Pala M, Ugolini D, Ceppi M *et al.* (2008). Occupational exposure to formaldehyde and biological monitoring of Research Institute workers. *Cancer Detect Prev*, 32: 121–126. doi:10.1016/j.cdp.2008.05.003 PMID:18639989

Partanen T, Kauppinen T, Luukkonen R *et al.* (1993). Malignant lymphomas and leukemias, and exposures in the wood industry: an industry-based case-referent study. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 64: 593–596. doi:10.1007/BF00517706 PMID:8314619

Pesch B, Pierl CB, Gebel M *et al.* (2008). Occupational risks for adenocarcinoma of the nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses in the German wood industry. *Occup Environ Med*, 65: 191–196. doi:10.1136/oem.2007.033886 PMID:17881467

Pinkerton LE, Hein MJ, Stayner LT (2004). Mortality among a cohort of garment workers exposed to formaldehyde: an update. *Occup Environ Med*, 61: 193–200. doi:10.1136/oem.2003.007476 PMID:14985513

Pyatt D, Natelson E, Golden R (2008). Is inhalation exposure to formaldehyde a biologically plausible cause of lymphohematopoietic malignancies? *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 51: 119–133. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2008.03.003 PMID:18440686

Ridpath JR, Nakamura A, Tano K *et al.* (2007). Cells deficient in the FANC/BRCA pathway are hypersensitive to plasma levels of formaldehyde. *Cancer Res*, 67: 11117–11122. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-07-3028 PMID:18056434

Rietbrock N (1965). Formaldehydoxydation bei der Ratte. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Exp Pathol Pharmakol*, 251: 189–190. doi:10.1007/BF00420161

Roush GC, Walrath J, Stayner LT *et al.* (1987). Nasopharyngeal cancer, sinonasal cancer, and occupations related to formaldehyde: a case-control study. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 79: 1221–1224. PMID:3480373

Schlosser PM (1999). Relative roles of convection and chemical reaction for the disposition of formaldehyde and ozone in nasal mucus. *Inhal Toxicol*, 11: 967–980. doi:10.1080/089583799196736 PMID:10509029

Schmid O & Speit G (2007). Genotoxic effects induced by formaldehyde in human blood and implications for the interpretation of biomonitoring studies. *Mutagenesis*, 22: 69–74. doi:10.1093/mutage/gel053 PMID:17158519

Sellakumar AR, Snyder CA, Solomon JJ, Albert RE (1985). Carcinogenicity of formaldehyde and hydrogen chloride in rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 81: 401–406. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(85)90411-9 PMID:4082190

Shaham J, Bomstein Y, Gurvich R *et al.* (2003). DNA-protein crosslinks and p53 protein expression in relation to occupational exposure to formaldehyde. *Occup Environ Med*, 60: 403–409. doi:10.1136/oem.60.6.403 PMID:12771391

Shaham J, Bomstein Y, Meltzer A *et al.* (1996). DNA–protein crosslinks, a biomarker of exposure to formaldehyde–in vitro and in vivo studies. *Carcinogenesis*, 17: 121–125. doi:10.1093/carcin/17.1.121 PMID:8565120

Shaham J, Gurvich R, Kaufman Z (2002). Sister chromatid exchange in pathology staff occupationally exposed to formaldehyde. *Mutat Res*, 514: 115–123. PMID:11815250

Shi X, Pang X, Mu Y *et al.* (2006). Emission reduction potential of using ethanol-biodiesel-diesel fuel blend on a heavy-duty diesel engine. *Atmos Environ*, 40: 2567–2574. doi:10.1016/j.atmosenv.2005.12.026

Soffritti M, Belpoggi F, Lambertin L *et al.* (2002). Results of long-term experimental studies on the carcinogenicity of formaldehyde and acetaldehyde in rats. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*, 982: 87–105. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2002.tb04926.x PMID:12562630

Soffritti M, Maltoni C, Maffei F, Biagi R (1989). Formaldehyde: an experimental multipotential carcinogen. *Toxicol Ind Health*, 5: 699–730. PMID:2815102

Speit G, Schütz P, Högel J, Schmid O (2007). Characterization of the genotoxic potential of formaldehyde in V79 cells. *Mutagenesis*, 22: 387–394. doi:10.1093/mutage/gem031 PMID:17855734

Speit G, Zeller J, Schmid O *et al.* (2009). Inhalation of formaldehyde does not induce systemic genotoxic effects in rats. *Mutat Res*, 677: 76–85. PMID:19539779

Stroup NE, Blair A, Erikson GE (1986). Brain cancer and other causes of death in anatomists. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 77: 1217–1224. PMID:3467114

Sul D, Kim H, Oh E *et al.* (2007). Gene expression profiling in lung tissues from rats exposed to formaldehyde. *Arch Toxicol*, 81: 589–597. doi:10.1007/s00204-007-0182-9 PMID:17285311

Suruda A, Schulte P, Boeniger M *et al.* (1993). Cytogenetic effects of formaldehyde exposure in students of mortuary science. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 2: 453–460. PMID:8220090

Swenberg JA, Kerns WD, Mitchell RI *et al.* (1980). Induction of squamous cell carcinomas of the rat nasal

cavity by inhalation exposure to formaldehyde vapor. *Cancer Res*, 40: 3398–3402. PMID:7427950

Takahashi M, Hasegawa R, Furukawa F *et al.* (1986). Effects of ethanol, potassium metabisulfite, formaldehyde and hydrogen peroxide on gastric carcinogenesis in rats after initiation with N-methyl-N'-nitro-N-nitrosoguanidine. *Jpn J Cancer Res*, 77: 118–124. PMID:3082823

Tang X, Bai Y, Duong A *et al.* (2009). Formaldehyde in China: production, consumption, exposure levels, and health effects. *Environ Int*, 35: 1210–1224. doi:10.1016/j.envint.2009.06.002 PMID:19589601

Til HP, Woutersen RA, Feron VJ *et al.* (1989). Two-year drinking-water study of formaldehyde in rats. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 27: 77–87. doi:10.1016/0278-6915(89)90001-X PMID:2714719

Titenko-Holland N, Levine AJ, Smith MT *et al.* (1996). Quantification of epithelial cell micronuclei by fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) in mortuary science students exposed to formaldehyde. *Mutat Res*, 371: 237–248. doi:10.1016/S0165-1218(96)90112-3 PMID:9008725

Vargová M, Wagnerová J, Lísková A *et al.* (1993). Subacute immunotoxicity study of formaldehyde in male rats. *Drug Chem Toxicol*, 16: 255–275. doi:10.3109/01480549309081819 PMID:8404546

Vaughan TL, Stewart PA, Teschke K *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to formaldehyde and wood dust and nasopharyngeal carcinoma. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 376–384. doi:10.1136/oem.57.6.376 PMID:10810126

Vaughan TL, Strader C, Davis S, Daling JR (1986a). Formaldehyde and cancers of the pharynx, sinus and nasal cavity: I. Occupational exposures. *Int J Cancer*, 38: 677–683. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910380510 PMID:3770995

Vaughan TL, Strader C, Davis S, Daling JR (1986b). Formaldehyde and cancers of the pharynx, sinus and nasal cavity: II. Residential exposures. *Int J Cancer*, 38: 685–688. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910380511 PMID:3770996

Vozenílková H, Tmějová M, Srb V *et al.* (1991). [Environmental monitoring and biological monitoring of young people exposed to nonoccupational levels of formaldehyde, toluene and other hydrocarbons] *Sb Ved Pr Lek Fak Karlovy Univerzity Hradci Kralove Suppl*, 34: 407–476. PMID:1815345

Walker FJ (1964). *Formaldehyde*. American Chemical Society Monographs 159, 3rd edition. New York: Reinhold

Walrath J & Fraumeni JF Jr (1983). Mortality patterns among embalmers. *Int J Cancer*, 31: 407–411. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910310403 PMID:6832852

Walrath J & Fraumeni JF Jr (1984). Cancer and other causes of death among embalmers. *Cancer Res*, 44: 4638–4641. PMID:6467219

Wang B & Liu DD (2006). [Detection of formaldehyde induced developmental toxicity assessed with single cell gel electrophoresis] *Fen Zi Xi Bao Sheng Wu Xue Bao*, 39: 462–466. PMID:17117557

Wang M, Cheng G, Balbo S *et al.* (2009). Clear differences in levels of a formaldehyde-DNA adduct in leukocytes of smokers and nonsmokers. *Cancer Res*, 69: 7170–7174. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-1571 PMID:19738046

Wang W, Xu J, Xu L *et al.* (2007). The instability of (GpT)n and (ApC)n microsatellites induced by formaldehyde in Escherichia coli. *Mutagenesis*, 22: 353–357. doi:10.1093/mutage/gem023 PMID:17630409

West S, Hildesheim A, Dosemeci M (1993). Non-viral risk factors for nasopharyngeal carcinoma in the Philippines: results from a case-control study. *Int J Cancer*, 55: 722–727. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910550504 PMID:7503957

Woutersen RA, van Garderen-Hoetmer A, Bruijntjes JP *et al.* (1989). Nasal tumours in rats after severe injury to the nasal mucosa and prolonged exposure to 10 ppm formaldehyde. *J Appl Toxicol*, 9: 39–46. doi:10.1002/jat.2550090108 PMID:2926095

Yanysheva NA, Balenko NV, Chernichenko IA *et al.* (1998). [Characteristics of modifying effects of formaldehyde on carcinogenesis] [in Russian]*Gig Sanit*, 8: 51–54.

Ye X, Yan W, Xie H *et al.* (2005). Cytogenetic analysis of nasal mucosa cells and lymphocytes from high-level long-term formaldehyde exposed workers and low-level short-term exposed waiters. *Mutat Res*, 588: 22–27. PMID:16257574

Ying CJ, Yan WS, Zhao MY *et al.* (1997). Micronuclei in nasal mucosa, oral mucosa and lymphocytes in students exposed to formaldehyde vapor in anatomy class. *Biomed Environ Sci*, 10: 451–455. PMID:9448927

Ying CJ, Ye XL, Xie H *et al.* (1999). Lymphocyte subsets and sister-chromatid exchanges in the students exposed to formaldehyde vapor. *Biomed Environ Sci*, 12: 88–94. PMID:10560533

Yu LQ, Jiang SF, Leng SG *et al.* (2005). [Early genetic effects on workers occupationally exposed to formaldehyde] *Zhonghua Yu Fang Yi Xue Za Zhi*, 39: 392–395. PMID:16329798

Zhang L, Tang X, Rothman N *et al.* (2010). Occupational exposure to formaldehyde, hematotoxicity, and leukemia-specific chromosome changes in cultured myeloid progenitor cells. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 19: 80–88. doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-09-0762 PMID:20056626

Zhang LSCED, Steinmaus C, Eastmond DA *et al.* (2009). Formaldehyde exposure and leukemia: a new meta-analysis and potential mechanisms. *Mutat Res*, 681: 150–168. doi:10.1016/j.mrrev.2008.07.002 PMID:18674636

Zhong W & Que Hee SS (2004). Formaldehyde-induced DNA adducts as biomarkers of in vitro human nasal epithelial cell exposure to formaldehyde. *Mutat Res*, 563: 13–24. PMID:15324745

SULFUR MUSTARD

Sulfur mustard, also known as mustard gas, was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1975 and 1987 (IARC, 1975, 1987a). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 505-60-2
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name:
1,1′-Thiobis(2-chloroethane)
Synonyms: Sulfur mustard, mustard gas
Description: Colourless, oily liquid; forms prisms on cooling (O'Neill, 2006)
Melting-point: 13–14 °C (O'Neill, 2006)
Vapour pressure: 0.90 mm Hg at 30 °C (O'Neill, 2006)
Solubility: Very sparingly soluble in water; soluble in fat solvents and other common organic solvents; high lipid solubility (O'Neill, 2006)
Octanol-water partition coefficient: log K_{ow}, 2.41 (HSDB, 2009)

$$Cl—CH_2—CH_2—S—CH_2—CH_2—Cl$$

$C_4H_8Cl_2S$
Relative molecular mass: 159.1

1.2 Uses

Vesicants or blistering agents were among the first chemicals that were applied as lethal/tactical weapons during World War I. Mustard agents, also known as sulfur mustard or mustard gas, were the most widely used (WHO, 1970).

Mustard gas was first used during World War I during the battle of Flanders, near Ypres, Belgium, in July 1917 (the French name for mustard gas is Ypérite). It was then used in 1918 and again in Ethiopia in 1936. During World War II, mustard gas was the major chemical warfare agent; it was produced and stockpiled by many countries and is probably still the most distributed chemical warfare agent in the world (Szinicz, 2005). Mustard gas has more recently been used in the Egypt-Yemen conflict (1963–67) and in the war between Iraq and the Islamic Republic of Iran in 1984 (ATSDR, 2003; WHO, 2004).

On April 29, 1997, the Chemical Weapons Convention took effect. This Convention banned the development, production, acquisition, stockpiling, and transfer (direct or indirect), of chemical weapons. It prohibits the use of chemical weapons, the engagement in any military preparations aimed at using chemical weapons

and the encouragement, induction, or assistance with such activities. Each participating/signing state is commited to take measures to destroy their own chemical weapons and production facilities and to not use riot-control agents as a method of warfare. To oversee compliance with the Chemical Weapons Convention, the Organization for Prohibition of Chemical Weapons was created. It is based in The Hague, the Netherlands (Szinicz, 2005).

Sulfur mustard has been used as an antineoplastic agent without success, because of its high toxicity. A similar product, nitrogen mustard, has been successfully employed as an anticancer agent (IARC, 1975; Saladi *et al.*, 2005). Mustard gas/sulfur mustard has provided a useful model in biological studies on the mode of action of alkylating agents (IARC, 1975). It has also been used medicinally to control hyper-proliferation of psoriatic keratinocytes (ATSDR, 2003).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

Occupational exposure to mustard gas may occur in the following activities or industrial sectors: storage and destruction of mustard gas; construction work on military bases where mustard gas was previously released and remained as a contaminant in the soil or in excavated munitions dumps; activities in research laboratories where workers do not take the necessary precautions to prevent exposure; during fishing, when lumps of mustard gas are inadvertently caught in areas where it was historically dumped in the sea; and during armed conflicts, when it is used as a chemical warfare agent (ATSDR, 2003).

Methods currently available for detection of exposure to several chemical warfare agents, including mustard gas, have been reviewed (Noort *et al.*, 2002; Riches *et al.*, 2007; Black, 2008). These include analyses of metabolites in urine and blood, DNA adducts, and protein adducts.

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

Non-occupational exposure to mustard gas may occur around sites where the agent was released during warfare (e.g. Belgium, Morocco, Ethiopia, China, Iraq, and the Islamic Republic of Iran), where munitions are buried or where contaminated soils containing mustard gas are disturbed during excavation activities (ATSDR, 2003). The average and maximum atmospheric concentrations that are likely to have occurred under war conditions in areas where mustard gas-containing grenades or artillery shells were dropped, have been estimated at 3 and 5 ppm, respectively (Thorpe, 1974).

Environmental exposure may result from mustard gas/sulfur mustard vapour being carried over long distances by the wind and from local contamination of water (WHO, 2004). Although mustard gas/sulfur mustard is a reactive substance that hydrolyses rapidly upon contact with water, the oily liquid may persist in the environment for many years, or even decades. For example, there are sites where mustard gas originating from the First and Second World Wars still poses a threat to human health and the environment. The environmental fate of mustard gas/sulfur mustard has been discussed (Munro *et al.*, 1999; Ashmore & Nathanail, 2008).

In this *Monograph* the term mustard gas will be used in connection with its military use. In other cases, the agent will be termed sulfur mustard.

2. Cancer in Humans

The carcinogenic hazards of mustard gas were previously evaluated in *IARC Monograph* Volume 9 and in Supplement 7 (IARC, 1975, 1987a). Mustard gas causes respiratory cancers. Human data on the health effects of mustard gas are from battlefield exposures and accidents (single exposures), and from long-term exposures

in chemical factories. Epidemiological studies in humans point at a causal association between exposure to mustard gas and an excess risk for respiratory cancers.

In an early study, the 1930–52 mortality records of 1267 war pensioners who had suffered from mustard gas-poisoning during World War I in the years 1917–18 were analysed and compared with records of 1421 pensioners who had chronic bronchitis but were never exposed to mustard gas, and with those of 1114 pensioners who were wounded in the war but not exposed to mustard gas (see Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-25-Table2.1.pdf). Mortality from cancer of the lung and pleura was increased in the first two groups (in both, 29 observed deaths, 14 expected), but not in the third (13 deaths observed, 16 expected). There were no significant differences with respect to cancers at other sites. Almost all mustard gas-exposed subjects also had chronic bronchitis (Case & Lea, 1955).

In a similar study, mortality records (1919–55) were examined of 2718 American soldiers exposed to mustard gas during 1917–18, of 1855 soldiers who had pneumonia but were not exposed to mustard gas, and of 2578 wounded soldiers without mustard gas-poisoning or pneumonia. Differences in mortality were seen only in the second decade (1930–39) of the follow-up. Deaths from all respiratory cancers (observed/expected), calculated from US mortality rates, showed a ratio of 39/26 (1.47) for the mustard gas-exposed soldiers (Beebe, 1960). A further study added another ten years of follow-up, but did not alter the initial conclusion: the relative risk of death from lung cancer among the exposed was 1.3 compared with the controls (95%CI: 0.9–1.9) (Norman, 1975).

In a Japanese factory producing mustard gas in the period 1929–45 – with large-scale production of 450 tonnes/month during 1937–44 – concentrations at the workplace were 50–70 mg/m^3. The first report of a cancer case in this plant appeared in 1952: a death from bronchial cancer of a 30-year old man who had been occupationally exposed to mustard gas for 16 months from 1941 (Yamada *et al.*, 1953). Further expansion and follow-up of the plant cohort were reported during the following decade (Yamada *et al.*, 1957; Yamada, 1963). In an extended study over the period 1952–67, observed numbers of deaths were compared with those expected on the basis of mortality rates in the Japanese population (Wada *et al.*, 1968). Of 495 workers who had manufactured mustard gas, 33 had died from cancers of the respiratory tract, compared with 0.9 expected. Of 960 male employees not engaged in the production, only three were known to have died since 1952 from respiratory tract cancers, compared with 1.8 expected. Although there was evidence of preferential reporting of deaths in the mustard gas-exposed group, the excess of respiratory tract cancers was substantial. There was evidence of a dose–response relationship between exposure to mustard gas and subsequent development of respiratory cancer (Nishimoto *et al.*, 1983, 1988; Yamakido *et al.*, 1996).

Another study considered workers in Germany engaged in production, testing and destruction of mustard gas and nitrogen mustard, mainly during the period 1935–45. The factory employed 878 workers, of whom 402 had worked in close contact with mustard gas, nitrogen mustard or with a mixture of the two. In addition, there had been limited exposure in the factory to bromoacetone, phosgene, chloropicrine and organic arsenicals. Among 271 workers exposed to mustard gas or nitrogen mustard and followed-up for compensation of occupational disease and mortality during 1951–74 there were 85 deaths, 32 of which were due to cancer. Twenty-six were lost to follow-up. Compared with Lower-Saxony mortality rates, a significant excess was found for bronchial carcinomas (11 deaths observed, five expected) (Weiss & Weiss, 1975).

In a follow-up of British workers involved in mustard gas-production during World War II, a

statistically significant increase in risk for cancer of the lung and pleura (RR 1.6, $0.05 < P < 0.10$) and of the larynx and trachea (three deaths, RR 7.5, $P < 0.02$) were identified among 502 individuals (Manning *et al.*, 1981).

From a cohort of 2498 men and 1032 women who had been involved in the manufacture of mustard gas in Cheshire, United Kingdom, during World War II, 3354 workers (95%) were traced for mortality until the end of 1984. Between April 1938 and November 1944 the factory had produced 24000 tonnes of mustard gas (none of this material was in fact used). Gas escaped on several occasions and several hundred individuals, mainly in the processing plants, had suffered blistering on the arms and acute effects on the eyes and respiratory tract caused by small amounts of mustard gas. Compared with national death rates for lung cancer, a highly significant excess was observed (200 obs., 138.4 exp. $P < 0.001$). In addition, large and highly significant excesses were reported for deaths from cancers of the larynx (11 observed, four expected, $P = 0.003$), pharynx (15 obs., 2.73 exp, $P < 0.001$), and all other buccal cavity and upper respiratory sites combined (lip, tongue, salivary gland, mouth, nose) (12 obs., 4.29 exp., $P = 0.002$). The risks for cancers of the lung and pharynx were significantly related to duration of employment. Significant excess mortality was also observed for cancers of the oesophagus (20 obs., 10.72 exp.) and stomach (70 obs., 49.6 exp.), but these excesses showed no consistent relation with time since first exposure, or with duration of exposure (Easton *et al.*, 1988).

A retrospective mortality follow-up study was conducted among 1545 Navy recruits who were stationed in Bainbridge, Maryland, USA. During 1944–45 they had voluntarily participated in mustard gas-chamber tests, to assess the quality of protective clothing and masks. Controls were 2663 Navy recruits who were stationed at the same location at the same time as the exposed, but had not participated in the tests. These groups were followed-up until 31 December 1995. Cause-specific mortality risks associated with mustard gas-exposure and the extent or duration of the exposure were examined by use of adjusted and unadjusted relative risk estimates. There was no excess of any cause-specific mortality associated with different levels of mustard gas-exposure among the veterans, although the concentrations had been sufficient to cause skin reactions, such as erythema and ulceration (Bullman & Kang, 2000). [The Working Group noted that levels of exposure were probably substantially lower than those in studies of production workers and World War I veterans.]

Several studies have consistently shown an increased risk for lung cancer among workers in mustard gas-production and among World War I veterans who had been exposed to mustard gas. Two studies among workers in mustard gas-production showed evidence of an exposure–response relationship with duration of employment. Two studies, both based on small numbers, reported an excess risk for laryngeal cancer. However, neither of these studies adjusted for potential confounders, such as tobacco smoking and alcoholic beverage consumption.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

Studies with experimental animals exposed to sulfur mustard were reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 9 and in Supplement 7 (IARC, 1975, 1987a). It was concluded that there was *limited evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of mustard gas (sulfur mustard). Furthermore, it was noted that some routes of administration, e.g. subcutaneous or intravascular injection, may have little relevance to common human exposures.

In an inhalation study with male and female strain-A mice, an increased incidence in lung tumours [not further specified] was observed in

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to sulfur mustard

Species, strain (sex) Duration, Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, strain A (M, F) 4–11 mo Heston (1953a)	*Inhalation* (single 15-min exposure) in 8-L dessicator containing 0 (controls) or 0.01 mL sulfur mustard on absorbent paper. 40/group/sex	Lung tumours (in M+F combined): 4 mo after exposure: 6/32 (controls), 9/30 11 mo after exposure: 10/25 (controls), 20/29 4–11 mo after exposure: 21/77 (27%, controls), 33/67* (49%)	*$P < 0.01$	Purity NR Mice were 2–3 mo of age at start Lung tumours not further specified. Three exposed mice and no controls developed lymphocytic leukaemias, which the authors considered unrelated to exposure.
Mouse, C3H, C3Hf, and strain A (M, F) Animals held until dead, moribund, or the appearance of tumours Heston (1953b)	*Subcutaneous injection* of 0.5 mL of 0.05% sulfur mustard in olive oil, once/wk C3H: 32 M, 8 F (six injections) C3Hf: 40 M, 10 F (six injections) strain A: 16 M, 14 F (five injections) Controls: C3H: 32 M, 8 F (untreated) C3Hf: 40 M (untreated) strain A: 16 M, 14 F (olive oil, five injections)	Fibrosarcomas at injection site: 1/8 C3H (M), 0/8 C3H (F), 2/38 C3Hf (M), 2/9 C3Hf (F), 1/14 strain A (M), 0/12 strain A (F) Rhabdomyosarcoma: 1/24 C3H (M) No subcutaneous sarcomas occurred in controls. Mammary tumours: *Exposed*: 2/9 C3Hf (F), 8/8 C3H (F), 1/12 strain A (F) *Controls*: 2/100 C3Hf (F, see comments), 7/8 C3H (F), 0/14 strain A (F)	NR, [NS] (see comments)	Purity NR Authors noted that 2/9 C3Hf female mice with mammary tumours is a significant incidence, compared with 2/100 untreated female C3Hf mice from another study [$P < 0.05$]. [The Working Group considered that untreated mice are inadequate controls for subcutaneous injection.]
Mouse, strain A (M, F) 4 mo Heston (1950)	*Intravenous injection* (4 × , on alternate d) of 0.25 mL 1:10 saturated solution of sulfur mustard in water (0.06–0.07%). Study 1: 15/group/sex Study 2: 24/group/sex	Pulmonary tumours (in M+F combined): Exposed, study 1: 93% [14/15]* Controls, study 1: 61% [15/28] Exposed, study 2: 68% [32/47]** Controls, study 2: 13% [6/46]	NR *[$P < 0.05$] **[$P < 0.0001$]	Purity NR Mice were 2 mo of age at start Lung tumours not further specified. The authors stated that preparation of dosing solutions differed, resulting in a slightly lower dose for study 2.
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) 42 wk Sasser *et al.* (1996)	*Oral* (*gavage*) 0, 0.03, 0.1, 0.4 mg/kg bw sulfur mustard, 5 d/wk (for 13 wk before mating and throughout gestation, parturition, lactation, in a 42-wk two-generation study) 27 F/group/generation 20 M/group/generation	Fore-stomach papillomas: F_0 (M) 0/20, 0/20, 1/20, 2/20 F_0 (F) 0/27, 0/27, 3/27, 3/27 F_1 (M) 0/20, 0/20, 2/20, 2/20 F_1 (F) 0/27, 0/27, 2/27, 3/27	NR, [NS]	Purity, 97.3% Two-generation study

bw, body weight; d, day or days; F, female; M, male; min, minute or minutes; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; wk, week or weeks

49% of the animals exposed to sulfur mustard, compared with 27% in controls (Heston, 1953a). Intravenous injection of sulfur mustard also increased the incidence in lung tumours [not further specified] in male and female strain A mice (Heston, 1950). When administered by subcutaneous injection to mice, sulfur mustard induced a few fibrosarcomas and one rhabdomyosarcoma at the injection site in males and females, and mammary tumours in females (Heston, 1953b). Oral administration of sulfur mustard induced fore-stomach papillomas in male and female rats (Sasser *et al.*, 1996; Table 3.1).

4. Other Relevant Data

Since its first use in 1917, there have been nearly 400 000 casualties among the victims of mustard gas-poisoning (Rall & Pechura, 1993). After a lethal dose, death usually occurs within 2–3 days of exposure and is related to respiratory tract injuries, in particular secondary bronchopneumonia (Papirmeister *et al.*, 1991).

4.1 Absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion

4.1.1 Humans

Sulfur mustard can be absorbed after inhalation or through dermal exposure from air and soil. It is a lipophilic substance that easily penetrates into the skin and mucosal surfaces (Drasch *et al.*, 1987; Somani & Babu, 1989), resulting in a high degree of bio-availability.

About 80% of non-occluded, topically applied sulfur mustard evaporates from human skin, while 20% penetrates the skin within ten min (Renshaw, 1946; Kehe *et al.*, 2000). A comparable result was found in studies of human foreskin grafted onto a-thymic mice (Papirmeister *et al.*, 1984a, b). Of the dose that penetrates the skin, 60% is bound in the epidermal and dermal tissue, mostly in the cornified layer, while 40% – i.e. 8% of the initially applied amount – passes rapidly into the blood stream (Cullumbine, 1946, 1947; Nagy *et al.*, 1946; Renshaw, 1946). The penetration rate of sulfur mustard into human skin was estimated to be 1–4 mg/cm^2/min (i.e. 6–25 µmol/cm^2/min), dependent on the temperature (Nagy *et al.*, 1946; Renshaw, 1946).

Elevated concentrations of thio-diglycol, the major hydrolysis product of mustard gas, were detected in human urine after exposure to mustard gas vapour and aerosol (Jakubowski *et al.*, 2000). Thio-diglycol was also found in the urine of people exposed to airborne mustard gas during the war between Iraq and the Islamic Republic of Iran (Wils *et al.*, 1985, 1988). A mustard gas-specific DNA adduct, viz. *N*7-(2-hydroxyethylthioethyl)-2′-deoxyguanosine, as well as adducts to albumin and haemoglobin have been detected in the blood of two victims of mustard gas-poisoning during the war between Iraq and the Islamic Republic of Iran (Benschop *et al.*, 1997; Noort *et al.*, 1999). Autopsy samples from an Iranian soldier who died seven days after inhalation and/or dermal exposure to mustard gas indicated the following organ-distribution pattern: brain > kidney > liver > spleen > lung (Drasch *et al.*, 1987).

4.1.2 Experimental animals

Analysis of blood samples from hairless guinea-pigs exposed nose-only to 300 mg/m^3 (46 ppm) sulfur mustard during eight min, showed that a peak concentration was reached within five min after exposure (Langenberg *et al.*, 1998). In rabbits and monkeys that had undergone tracheal cannulation and were then exposed to nominal chamber concentrations of 40, 100, and 500 mg/m^3 sulfur mustard, only 15% of the dose was recovered, indicating that 85% was absorbed through the nasal mucous membrane (Cameron *et al.*, 1946). The absorption of sulfur mustard through the cornea was demonstrated

in guinea-pigs (Klain *et al.*, 1991). Thirty min after a 5-µL single topical application of radio-labelled sulfur mustard to the cornea of guinea-pigs, radioactivity was detected in kidney, liver, lung, adipose tissue, adrenals, blood plasma, and muscle.

After six hours of cutaneous exposure with occlusion, > 90% of a topically applied dose of sulfur mustard was absorbed into rat skin (Hambrook *et al.*, 1993). Within 60 minutes of the application, the initial rate of uptake had increased linearly with the applied dose in the range of 3–605 µg/cm^2 (0.02–3.6 µmol/cm^2) and reached a maximum of approximately 7 µg/cm^2/min (0.042 µmol/cm^2/min) at a dosage of 955 µg/cm^2 (6 µmol/cm^2). The fraction of sulfur mustard retained in the skin ranged from 10–50% in different studies (Renshaw, 1946; Cullumbine, 1947; Hambrook *et al.*, 1992), while the remainder is absorbed systemically.

Exposure of experimental animals to sulfur mustard by intravenous or intra-peritoneal injection has been reviewed (ATSDR, 2003). These studies provide evidence about routes of exposure other than those involving he skin, the lung or the eyes. The concentration of radio-labelled sulfur mustard in rats four days after intravenous injection indicated the following distribution-pattern: kidney > lung > liver > spleen > brain (Maisonneuve *et al.*, 1994). The difference with the distribution in humans (see above) may be due to different measurement methods, inter-species differences, or variations in post-exposure time, but the route of exposure appears to be an important toxicokinetic factor as well.

The reactivity of sulfur mustard with a wide variety of cellular macromolecules is well documented (IARC, 1975, 1987b; ATSDR, 2003). The presence of two chlorine atoms makes it a strong bi-functional alkylating agent with a high chemical reactivity (Dacre & Goldman, 1996). The chlorine atom is typically released under formation of a carbonium ion, which then undergoes intra-molecular cyclization to create a highly reactive compound. Formation of the carbonium ion is facilitated in aqueous solution (Somani & Babu, 1989), which explains the sensitivity of mucosal tissues, such as the eye, to its effect (Solberg *et al.*, 1997).

The cyclic intermediate mentioned above reacts with and alkylates a variety of electron-rich structures in the cell, such as the guanine moieties in DNA (Dacre & Goldman, 1996) and the sulfhydryl (-SH) and amino (-NH2) groups of proteins and nucleic acids (Solberg *et al.*, 1997). Evidence of covalent binding to cellular DNA, RNA and proteins *in vivo* was obtained in mice injected intra-peritoneally with [^{35}S]-labelled sulfur mustard (IARC, 1987b). DNA is the most functionally sensitive cellular target of sulfur mustard (Crathorn & Roberts, 1966).

Sulfur mustard-specific DNA adducts have been found in the nasal epithelium, naso-pharynx, larynx, carina, lung, spleen, and bone marrow of guinea-pigs after nose-only exposure (Langenberg *et al.*, 1998). The evidence of sulfur mustard-induced DNA adducts in tissues (Somani & Babu, 1989; Fidder *et al.*, 1994, 1996a; van der Schans *et al.*, 1994; Niu *et al.*, 1996) and of sulfur mustard-derived metabolites in urine (Wils *et al.*, 1985, 1988; Jakubowski *et al.*, 2000) suggests the existence of other metabolic pathways, which may include direct alkylation reactions, reaction with glutathione, hydrolysis and oxidation.

4.2 Genetic and related effects

Exposure to sulfur mustard has long been known to produce DNA interstrand cross-links (Roberts *et al.*, 1971a, b; Shahin *et al.*, 2001), which were first noted in *E. coli* (Lawley & Brookes, 1965). When sulfur mustard reacts with DNA, one of the products comprises two guanines linked by a mustard molecule (Walker, 1971). This cross-link can arise from a pair of guanines in opposite strands of the DNA molecule: this interstrand cross-link inhibits cell division (Papirmeister,

1993). However, the cross-link can also arise in significant amounts between two neighbouring guanines in the same strand (Walker, 1971). Transcription, translation, enzyme catalysis and other cellular activities that are dependent on biological entities of much lower molecular size than chromosomal DNA are much less sensitive to sulfur mustard.

Sulfur mustard induced dose-related inter-strand cross-links in the DNA of rat epidermal keratinocytes in primary mono-layer culture (Lin *et al.*, 1996a), affecting cell cycle and DNA synthesis (Lin *et al.*, 1996b). Similar results were seen in HeLa cells (Ball & Roberts, 1972) and in rat cutaneous keratinocytes (Ribeiro *et al.*, 1991). Sulfur mustard has also been shown to affect DNA mismatch-repair in African green monkey kidney cells (Fan & Bernstein, 1991).

Sulfur mustard has been shown to form DNA adducts *in vitro* (van der Schans *et al.*, 1994; Niu *et al.*, 1996; ATSDR, 2003). Upon incubation of double-stranded calf-thymus DNA or human blood with [^{35}S]-labelled sulfur mustard, the following adducts were identified: *N*7-[2-[(2-hydroxyethyl)thio]ethyl]-guanine, bis[2-(guanin-7-yl)ethyl]sulfide, *N*3-[2-[(2-hydroxyethyl)thio]ethyl]-adenine, and O^6-[2-[(2-hydroxyethyl)thio]ethyl]-guanine and its 2′-deoxyguanosine derivative (Fidder *et al.*, 1994). The primary site of DNA-alkylation by sulfur mustard is the *N*7 position of deoxy-guanosine (Balali-Mood & Hefazi, 2005). Upon depurination of the resulting *N*7-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2′-deoxyguanosine, the base adduct *N*7-(2-hydroxyethylthioethyl)-guanine (*N*7-HETE-Gua) is released. The toxic effects of sulfur mustard have been attributed to DNA adducts such as *N*7-hydroxyethylthioethyl-guanine, 3-hydroxyethylthioethyl adenine, and the cross-link, di-(2-guanin-7-yl-ethyl) sulphide (Saladi *et al.*, 2006). DNA extracted from human leukocytes and exposed to [^{14}C]-labelled sulfur mustard *in vitro* was shown to contain the adduct *N*7-(2-hydroxyethylthioethyl)guanine (Ludlum *et al.*, 1994). It has been demonstrated that alkyltransferase is inefficient in repairing O^6-ethylthioethylguanine, and the persistence of this adduct could have serious consequences (Ludlum *et al.*, 1986). Alkylation by sulfur mustard also affects transcriptional processes and may lead to truncated transcripts by impairing RNA polymerase via an alkylated promoter (Masta *et al.*, 1996). Analysis of truncated transcripts revealed that sulfur mustard preferentially alkylates the DNA-template strand at 5′-AA and 5′-GG sequences. Low doses of sulfur mustard can also inhibit cell division by cross-linking of complementary DNA strands, or cause mutagenesis by inducing errors in replication or repair (Papirmeister, 1993; ATSDR, 2003). It has been noted that cells in late G1-phase (post-mitotic) or early S-phase (DNA synthesis) are particularly sensitive to the effects of alkylation (Somani & Babu, 1989).

The ability of sulfur mustard to induce mutations has been demonstrated in numerous experimental systems (Fox & Scott, 1980). *TP53* mutations – predominantly G→A transitions – were detected in tumours of individuals exposed to mustard gas (Hosseini-Khalili *et al.*, 2009). Sulfur mustard has been shown to induce mutations in specific DNA regions (r-RNA-coding locus) (Fahmy & Fahmy, 1971; IARC, 1975).

Fishermen who were exposed to mustard gas from leaking shells picked up during fishing showed an increased incidence of sister chromatid exchange in the lymphocytes (Wulf *et al.*, 1985). Sulfur mustard induces chromosomal aberrations and DNA damage in rodent cells *in vitro* and mutations in mouse-lymphoma cells *in vitro* and *in vivo* (IARC, 1987b). *In vivo,* sulfur mustard has been shown to induce micronuclei in mouse bone-marrow (Ashby *et al.*, 1991). It also induced chromosome aberrations in cultured rat lymphosarcoma cell lines (Scott *et al.*, 1974). In a host-mediated assay in male BDF1 mice, with a murine leukaemia cell line (L_{517}8Y/Asn) as an indicator, sulfur mustard induced both

chromosome aberrations and reversed mutations to asparagine-186 independence, after single subcutaneous doses of 100 mg/kg bw. Similar results were obtained with the same cell line tested *in vitro* (Capizzi *et al.*, 1973). Dominant lethal mutations in adult male rats were induced after exposure to sulfur mustard at 0.1 mg/m^3 for 52 weeks (Rozmiarek *et al.*, 1973). Aneuploidy, heritable translocations, dominant lethal mutations and sex-linked recessive lethal mutations have been observed in *Drosophila* exposed to sulfur mustard. The substance is mutagenic to fungi and induces DNA damage in bacteria and yeast (Kircher & Brendel, 1983).

Sulfur mustard appears to preferentially damage the cells that are the most actively regenerating after injury, such as basal cells located above the dermal papillae in the skin (Papirmeister *et al.*, 1991), and epithelial secretory cells in the trachea (Calvet *et al.*, 1996). In the cell, DNA and proteins are the main targets of alkylation by sulfur mustard; it is not unexpected, therefore, that the most severe lesions affect cells with the strongest proliferative and metabolic capacity. Impairment of the DNA-polymerase function has also been proposed. In particular, impairment of the replicative fidelity of DNA during the S-phase could contribute to mitotic and chromosomal effects (Bignold, 2006). Recently, both base-excision repair and nucleotide-excision repair were identified as repair pathways that are activated after exposure of human lymphoblastoid cell lines to the sulfur-mustard surrogate 2-chloroethyl-ethylsulphide (Jowsey *et al.*, 2009)

Several studies have shown that sulfur mustard applied topically on the skin can diffuse and produce biochemical alterations consistent with free-radical-mediated oxidative stress, including increased lipid peroxidation and antioxidant enzyme activities, depletion of glutathione content in the eye, kidney, brain, lungs, and liver of rats and mice (Arroyo *et al.*, 2000). Sulfur mustard undergoes nucleophilic substitution reactions to form a sulfonium ring (Yang *et al.*, 1992) that, in the presence of oxygen, first generates a non-toxic, reactive sulfoxide intermediate. Extensive oxidation leads to toxic sulfone species (Arroyo *et al.*, 2000).

Besides genotoxic mechanisms responsible for the acute and delayed effects of sulfur mustard, other mechanisms may be responsible for sulfur mustard-induced vesication, since acute skin injury develops much earlier than would be expected from genotoxic effects alone. Also, tissue injury does not develop when low, therapeutically effective doses of sulfur mustard are used to control the hyper-proliferation of psoriatic keratinocytes. While the mechanisms underlying the toxicity of sulfur mustard are currently not fully understood, one hypothesis to explain its cytotoxicity involves poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP). It has been proposed that sulfur mustard alkylates DNA, which causes DNA strand breaks whose accumulation can cause activation of the nuclear repair-enzyme PARP. This causes cellular depletion of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, which decreases glycolysis and leads to protease release and cellular injury. Dermal-epidermal separation and blister formation may involve the fragmentation of anchoring filaments by protease released from moribund or dead cells (Papirmeister, 1993). Treatment of HeLa cells with sulfur mustard produces a rapid stimulation of PARP activity, followed by a decline in nicotinamide-adenine-dinucleotide levels two hours later (Clark & Smith, 1993). The hypothesis is almost fully confirmed in a study in which PARP inhibitors prevent the sulfur mustard-induced losses of adenosine triphosphate, nicotinamide-adenine-dinucleotide and viability in human peripheral blood cells (Meier & Kelly, 1993). Several other studies provide partial support for this hypothesis and suggest that additional pathways may be involved.

Sulfur mustard was found to inhibit antioxidant enzyme activities in blood cells and other tissues of rats, after topical application; the treatment could impair cyto-protective

defence mechanisms (Husain *et al.*, 1996). Enzyme activities were measured 24 hours after dermal treatment with 98 mg/mg (0.5 LD50) of sulfur mustard. Superoxide dismutase activity decreased significantly in white blood cells (70%), in platelets (65%), in spleen (72%) and in brain (29%) while it was not significantly altered in red blood cells, liver, and kidney. Catalase activity decreased significantly in white (54%) and red blood (23%) cells and in spleen (51%), while the activity in platelets, liver, kidney, and brain was not significantly altered. Glutathione peroxidase activity, as a consequence of glutathione and nicotinamide-adenine-dinucleotide-phosphate depletion, decreased significantly in white blood cells (42%), spleen (43%), and liver (22%). Glutathione levels in red blood cells, platelets, kidney, and brain were within 10% of control values.

4.3 Synthesis

Data from a variety of sources all strongly support a genotoxic mechanism underlying the carcinogenic action of mustard gas/sulfur mustard, mainly based on the observation that this chemical is a bi-functional alkylating agent (IARC, 1987b). It was the first chemical reported to induce mutations and chromosome rearrangements in *Drosophila melanogaster* (Auerbach & Robson, 1947; ATSDR, 2003). The direct reaction of this substance with DNA likely initiates a cascade of genetic events that lead to cancer. There is evidence to support DNA-alkylation leading to cross-link formation, inhibition of DNA synthesis and repair, point mutation, and induction of chromosome-type and chromatid-type aberrations (ATSDR, 2003). Some of these changes are observed in nasal tissue, which is consistent with the nasal tissue being a target organ for this chemical. In addition, production of reactive oxygen species and cytotoxicity, other reported contributors to the mechanism of action, could act complementary to DNA alkylation.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of mustard gas. Mustard gas causes cancer of the lung.

Also, a positive association has been observed between mustard gas and cancer of the larynx,

There is *limited evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of sulfur mustard.

There is *strong evidence* that the carcinogenicity of sulfur mustard operates by a genotoxic mechanism of action that involves DNA alkylation leading to cross-link formation, inhibition of DNA synthesis and repair, point mutations, and induction of chromosome-type and chromatid-type aberrations.

Sulfur mustard is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Arroyo CM, Schafer RJ, Carmichael AJ (2000). Reactivity of chloroethyl sulfides in the presence of a chlorinated prophylactic: a kinetic study by EPR/spin trapping and NMR techniques. *J Appl Toxicol*, 20: Suppl 1S7–S12. doi:10.1002/1099-1263(200012)20:1+<::AID-JAT663>3.0.CO;2-P PMID:11428646

Ashby J, Tinwell H, Callander RD, Clare N (1991). Genetic activity of the human carcinogen sulphur mustard towards Salmonella and the mouse bone marrow. *Mutat Res*, 257: 307–311. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(91)90013-C PMID:2014034

Ashmore MH & Nathanail CP (2008). A critical evaluation of the implications for risk based land management of the environmental chemistry of Sulphur Mustard. *Environ Int*, 34: 1192–1203. doi:10.1016/j.envint.2008.03.012 PMID:18486211

ATSDR (2003). *Toxicological Profile for Mustard Gas*. Draft for Public Comment. Update. Atlanta, GA: Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry. 191 pp.

Auerbach C & Robson JM (1947). Tests of chemical substances for mutagenic action. *Proc R Soc Edinb Biol*, 62: 284–291. PMID:18899676

Balali-Mood M & Hefazi M (2005). The pharmacology, toxicology, and medical treatment of sulphur mustard poisoning. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol*, 19: 297–315. doi:10.1111/j.1472-8206.2005.00325.x PMID:15910653

Ball CR & Roberts JJ (1972). Estimation of interstrand DNA cross-linking resulting from mustard gas alkylation of HeLa cells. *Chem Biol Interact*, 4: 297–303. doi:10.1016/0009-2797(72)90024-5 PMID:5008943

Beebe GW (1960). Lung cancer in World War I veterans: possible relation to mustard-gas injury and 1918 influenza epidemic. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 25: 1231–1252. PMID:13688610

Benschop HP, van der Schans GP, Noort D *et al.* (1997). Verification of exposure to sulfur mustard in two casualties of the Iran-Iraq conflict. *J Anal Toxicol*, 21: 249–251. PMID:9248939

Bignold LP (2006). Alkylating agents and DNA polymerases. *Anticancer Res*, 26: 2B1327–1336. PMID:16619541

Black RM (2008). An overview of biological markers of exposure to chemical warfare agents. *J Anal Toxicol*, 32: 2–9. PMID:18269786

Bullman T & Kang H (2000). A fifty year mortality follow-up study of veterans exposed to low level chemical warfare agent, mustard gGas. *Ann Epidemiol*, 10: 333–338. doi:10.1016/S1047-2797(00)00060-0 PMID:10942882

Calvet JH, Coste A, Levame M *et al.* (1996). Airway epithelial damage induced by sulfur mustard in guinea pigs, effects of glucocorticoids. *Hum Exp Toxicol*, 15: 964–971. doi:10.1177/096032719601501204 PMID:8981100

Cameron GR, Gaddum JH, Short RHD (1946). The absorption of war gases by the nose. *J Pathol Bacteriol*, 58: 449–455. doi:10.1002/path.1700580315 PMID:20283081

Capizzi RL, Smith WJ, Field R *et al.* (1973). A host-mediated assay for chemical mutagens using L5178Y/Asn murine leukemia. *Mutat Res*, 21: 6 doi:10.1016/0165-7992(73)90007-9

Case RAM & Lea AJ (1955). Mustard gas poisoning, chronic bronchitis, and lung cancer; an investigation into the possibility that poisoning by mustard gas in the 1914–18 war might be a factor in the production of neoplasia. *Br J Prev Soc Med*, 9: 62–72. PMID:14378527

Clark E, Smith WJ (1993). *Activation of poly (ADP-RIBOSE) polymerase by sulfur mustard in hela cell cultures.* In: *Proceedings of the medical defense bioscience review.* Held in Baltimore, Maryland on 10–13 May 1993. Vol. 1. Springfield, VA: US Department of Commerce 199–205.

Crathorn AR & Roberts JJ (1966). Mechanism of the cytotoxic action of alkylating agents in mammalian cells and evidence for the removal of alkylated groups from deoxyribonucleic acid. *Nature*, 211: 150–153. doi:10.1038/211150a0 PMID:5965513

Cullumbine H (1946). The mode of penetration of the skin by mustard gas. *Br J Dermatol Syph*, 58: 291–294. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2133.1946.tb11327.x PMID:20278277

Cullumbine H (1947). Medical aspects of mustard gas poisoning. *Nature*, 159: 151–153. doi:10.1038/159151a0 PMID:20285648

Dacre JC & Goldman M (1996). Toxicology and pharmacology of the chemical warfare agent sulfur mustard. *Pharmacol Rev*, 48: 289–326. PMID:8804107

Drasch G, Kretschmer E, Kauert G, von Meyer L (1987). Concentrations of mustard gas [bis(2-chloroethyl) sulfide] in the tissues of a victim of a vesicant exposure. *J Forensic Sci*, 32: 1788–1793. PMID:3430139

Easton DF, Peto J, Doll R (1988). Cancers of the respiratory tract in mustard gas workers. *Br J Ind Med*, 45: 652–659. PMID:3196660

Fahmy OG & Fahmy MJ (1971). Mutability at specific euchromatic and heterochromatic loci with alkylating and nitroso compounds in Drosophila melanogaster. *Mutat Res*, 13: 19–34. doi:10.1016/0027-5107(71)90122-9 PMID:4999910

Fan LJ & Bernstein IA (1991). Effect of bis(β-chloroethyl) sulfide (BCES) on base mismatch repair of DNA in monkey kidney cells. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 111: 233–241. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(91)90027-C PMID:1957309

Fidder A, Moes GWH, Scheffer AG *et al.* (1994). Synthesis, characterization, and quantitation of the major adducts formed between sulfur mustard and DNA of calf thymus and human blood. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 7: 199–204. doi:10.1021/tx00038a013 PMID:8199309

Fidder A, Noort D, de Jong AL *et al.* (1996a). Monitoring of in vitro and in vivo exposure to sulfur mustard by GC/MS determination of the N-terminal valine adduct in hemoglobin after a modified Edman degradation. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 9: 788–792. doi:10.1021/tx9502150 PMID:8831824

Fox M & Scott D (1980). The genetic toxicology of nitrogen and sulphur mustard. *Mutat Res*, 75: 131–168. PMID:6988708

Hambrook JL, Harrison JM, Howells DJ, Schock C (1992). Biological fate of sulphur mustard (1,1′-thiobis(2-chloroethane)): urinary and faecal excretion of 35S by rat after injection or cutaneous application of 35S-labelled sulphur mustard. *Xenobiotica*, 22: 65–75. doi:10.3109/00498259209053104 PMID:1615709

Hambrook JL, Howells DJ, Schock C (1993). Biological fate of sulphur mustard (1,1′-thiobis(2-chloroethane)): uptake, distribution and retention of 35S in skin and in blood after cutaneous application of 35S-sulphur mustard in rat and comparison with human blood in vitro. *Xenobiotica*, 23: 537–561. doi:10.3109/00498259309059394 PMID:8342301

Heston WE (1950). Carcinogenic action of the mustards. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 11: 415–423. PMID:14795195

Heston WE (1953a). Pulmonary tumors in strain A mice exposed to mustard gas. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*, 82: 457–460. PMID:13047431

Heston WE (1953b). Occurrence of tumors in mice injected subcutaneously with sulfur mustard and nitrogen mustard. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 14: 131–140. PMID:13097144

Hosseini-Khalili A, Haines DD, Modirian E *et al.* (2009). Mustard gas exposure and carcinogenesis of lung. *Mutat Res*, 678: 1–6. PMID:19559099

HSDB (2009) *Hazardous Substances Data Bank: Bis(2-chloroethyl)sulfide*, Bethesda, MD: National Library of Medicine.

Husain K, Dube SN, Sugendran K *et al.* (1996). Effect of topically applied sulphur mustard on antioxidant enzymes in blood cells and body tissues of rats. *J Appl Toxicol*, 16: 245–253. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1099-1263(199605)16:3<245::AID-JAT339>3.0.CO;2-3 PMID:8818865

IARC (1975). IARC Monographs on the evaluation of the carcinogenic risk of chemicals to man: some aziridines, N-, S- & O-mustards and selenium. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 9: 1–268. PMID:1234596

IARC (1987b). Genetic and related effects: An updating of selected IARC monographs from Volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 6: 1–729. PMID:3504843

IARC (1987a). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

Jakubowski EM, Sidell FR, Evans RA *et al.* (2000). Quantification of thiodiglycol in human urine after an accidental sulfur mustard exposure. *Toxicol Methods*, 10: 143–150. doi:10.1080/10517230050083375

Jowsey PA, Williams FM, Blain PG (2009). DNA damage, signalling and repair after exposure of cells to the sulphur mustard analogue 2-chloroethyl ethyl sulphide. *Toxicology*, 257: 105–112. doi:10.1016/j.tox.2008.12.001 PMID:19111594

Kehe K, Reisinger H, Szinicz L (2000). Sulfur Mustard Induces Apoptosis and Necrosis in SCL II Cells in Vitro J. *Appl. Toxicol.*, 20: S1S81–S86. doi:10.1002/1099-1263(200012)20:1+<::AID-JAT684>3.0.CO;2-K

Kircher M & Brendel M (1983). DNA alkylation by mustard gas in yeast strains of different repair capacity. *Chem Biol Interact*, 44: 27–39. doi:10.1016/0009-2797(83)90127-8 PMID:6342826

Klain GJ, Omaye ST, Schuschereba ST, McKinney L (1991). Ocular toxicity of systemic and topical exposure to butyl 2-chloroethyl sulfide. *J Toxicol Cutaneous Ocul Toxicol*, 10: 289–302. doi:10.3109/15569529109052137

Langenberg JP, van der Schans GP, Spruit HET *et al.* (1998). Toxicokinetics of sulfur mustard and its DNA-adducts in the hairless guinea pig. *Drug Chem Toxicol*, 21: Suppl 1131–147. doi:10.3109/01480549809007407 PMID:10028407

Lawley PD & Brookes P (1965). Molecular mechanism of the cytotoxic action of difunctional alkylating agents and of resistance to this action. *Nature*, 206: 480–483. doi:10.1038/206480a0 PMID:5319105

Lin P, Vaughan FL, Bernstein IA (1996b). Formation of interstrand DNA cross-links by bis-(2-chloroethyl) sulfide (BCES): a possible cytotoxic mechanism in rat keratinocytes. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*, 218: 556–561. doi:10.1006/bbrc.1996.0099 PMID:8561795

Lin PP, Bernstein IA, Vaughan FL (1996a). Bis(2-chloroethyl)sulfide (BCES) disturbs the progression of rat keratinocytes through the cell cycle. *Toxicol Lett*, 84: 23–32. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(95)03453-6 PMID:8597174

Ludlum DB, Austin-Ritchie P, Hagopian M *et al.* (1994). Detection of sulfur mustard-induced DNA modifications. *Chem Biol Interact*, 91: 39–49. doi:10.1016/0009-2797(94)90005-1 PMID:8194124

Ludlum DB, Kent S, Mehta JR (1986). Formation of O6-ethylthioethylguanine in DNA by reaction with the sulfur mustard, chloroethyl sulfide, and its apparent lack of repair by O6-alkylguanine-DNA alkyltransferase. *Carcinogenesis*, 7: 1203–1206. doi:10.1093/carcin/7.7.1203 PMID:3719912

Maisonneuve A, Callebat I, Debordes L, Coppet L (1994). Distribution of [14C]sulfur mustard in rats after intravenous exposure. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 125: 281–287. doi:10.1006/taap.1994.1074 PMID:8171436

Manning KP, Skegg DCG, Stell PM, Doll R (1981). Cancer of the larynx and other occupational hazards of mustard gas workers. *Clin Otolaryngol Allied Sci*, 6: 165–170. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2273.1981.tb01527.x PMID:7261452

Masta A, Gray PJ, Phillips DR (1996). Effect of sulphur mustard on the initiation and elongation of transcription. *Carcinogenesis*, 17: 525–532. doi:10.1093/carcin/17.3.525 PMID:8631139

Meier HL, Kelly SA (1993). *The identification and ranking of poly (ADP-RIBOSE) polymerase inhibitors as protectors against sulfur mustard induced decrease in cellular energy and viability in vitro assays with human lymphocytes.* In: *Proceedings of the medical defense bioscience review.* Held in Baltimore, Maryland on 10–13 May 1993. Vol. 1. Springfield, VA: US Department of Commerce, 227–236.

Munro NB, Talmage SS, Griffin GD *et al.* (1999). The sources, fate, and toxicity of chemical warfare agent degradation products. *Environ Health Perspect*, 107: 933–974. doi:10.1289/ehp.99107933 PMID:10585900

Nagy SM, Columbic D, Stein WH *et al.* (1946). The penetration of vesicant vapors into human skin. *J Gen Physiol*, 29: 441–469. doi:10.1085/jgp.29.6.441

Nishimoto Y, Yamakido M, Ishioka S *et al.* (1988). *Epidemiological studies of lung cancer in Japanese mustard gas workers.* In: *Unusual Occurrence as Clues*

to Cancer Etiology. Miller RW *et al.* editors. Japan Sci Press: Tokyo/Taylor & Frances, Ltd, pp. 95–101.

Nishimoto Y, Yamakido M, Shigenobu T *et al.* (1983). Long-term observation of poison gas workers with special reference to respiratory cancers. *J UOEH*, 5: Suppl89–94. PMID:6091215

Niu T, Matijasevic Z, Austin-Ritchie P *et al.* (1996). A 32P-postlabeling method for the detection of adducts in the DNA of human fibroblasts exposed to sulfur mustard. *Chem Biol Interact*, 100: 77–84. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(96)03690-3 PMID:8599857

Noort D, Benschop HP, Black RM (2002). Biomonitoring of exposure to chemical warfare agents: a review. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 184: 116–126. doi:10.1006/taap.2002.9449 PMID:12408956

Noort D, Hulst AG, de Jong LPA, Benschop HP (1999). Alkylation of human serum albumin by sulfur mustard in vitro and in vivo: mass spectrometric analysis of a cysteine adduct as a sensitive biomarker of exposure. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 12: 715–721. doi:10.1021/tx9900369 PMID:10458705

Norman JE Jr (1975). Lung cancer mortality in World War I veterans with mustard-gas injury: 1919–1965. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 54: 311–317. PMID:1113317

O'Neill MJ, editor (2006). *The Merck Index*, 14th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., Inc., pp. 342.

Papirmeister B (1993). *Excitement in vesicant research – yesterday, today, and tomorrow. In: Proceedings of the medical defense bioscience review.* Held in Baltimore, Maryland on 10–13 May 1993. Vol. 1. Springfield, VA: US Department of Commerce, pp. 1–14.

Papirmeister B, Feister AJ, Robinson I, Ford RD (1991). *Medical Defense Against Mustard Gas: Toxic Mechanisms and Pharmacological Implications.* Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, Inc.

Papirmeister B, Gross CL, Petrali JP *et al.* (1984a). Pathology produced by sulfur mustard in human skin grafts on athymic nude mice: 1. Gross and light microscopic changes. *J Toxicol Cutaneous Ocul Toxicol*, 3: 371–391. doi:10.3109/15569528409036289

Papirmeister B, Gross CL, Petrali JP, Meier HL (1984b). Pathology produced by sulfur mustard in human skin grafts on athymic nude mice: 2. Ultrastructural changes. *J Toxicol Cutaneous Ocul Toxicol*, 3: 393–408. doi:10.3109/15569528409036290

Rall DP & Pechura CM (1993). Effects on health of mustard gas. *Nature*, 366: 398–399. doi:10.1038/366398b0 PMID:8247139

Renshaw B 1946. *Mechanisms in production of cutaneous injuries by sulfur and nitrogen mustards.* In: *Chemical warfare agents and related chemical problems.* Vol. 4. Chapter 23, Washington, DC: U.S. Office of Scientific Research and Development, National Defense Research Committee, pp. 479–518.

Ribeiro PL, Mitra RS, Bernstein IA (1991). Assessment of the role of DNA damage and repair in the survival of primary cultures of rat cutaneous keratinocytes exposed to bis(2-chloroethyl)sulfide. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 111: 342–351. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(91)90035-D PMID:1957317

Riches J, Read RW, Black RM (2007). Analysis of the sulphur mustard metabolites thiodiglycol and thiodiglycol sulphoxide in urine using isotope-dilution gas chromatography-ion trap tandem mass spectrometry. *J Chromatogr B Analyt Technol Biomed Life Sci*, 845: 114–120. doi:10.1016/j.jchromb.2006.07.065 PMID:16965944

Roberts JJ, Brent TP, Crathorn AR (1971a). Evidence for the inactivation and repair of the mammalian DNA template after alkylation by mustard gas and half mustard gas. *Eur J Cancer*, 7: 515–524. PMID:5143809

Roberts JJ, Pascoe JM, Smith BA, Crathorn AR (1971b). Quantitative aspects of the repair of alkylated DNA in cultured mammalian cells. II. Non-semiconservative DNA synthesis ('repair synthesis') in HeLa and Chinese hamster cells following treatment with alkylating agents. *Chem Biol Interact*, 3: 49–68. doi:10.1016/0009-2797(71)90025-1 PMID:5156326

Rozmiarek H, Capizzi RL, Papirmeister B *et al.* (1973). Mutagenic activity in somatic and germ cells following chronic inhalation of sulfur mustard. *Mutat Res Sect Environ Mutag Relat Sub*, 21: 13–14.

Saladi RN, Smith E, Persaud AN (2005). Mustard: A potent agent of chemical warfare and terrorism. *Clin Exp Dermatol*, 31: 1–5. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2230.2005.01945.x

Saladi RN, Smith E, Persaud AN (2006). Mustard: a potential agent of chemical warfare and terrorism. *Clin Exp Dermatol*, 31: 1–5. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2230.2005.01945.x PMID:16309468

Sasser LB, Cushing JA, Dacre JC (1996). Two-generation reproduction study of sulfur mustard in rats. *Reprod Toxicol*, 10: 311–319. doi:10.1016/0890-6238(96)00060-3 PMID:8829254

Scott D, Fox M, Fox BW (1974). The relationship between chromosomal aberrations, survival and DNA repair in tumour cell lines of differential sensitivity to X-rays and sulphur mustard. *Mutat Res*, 22: 207–221. doi:10.1016/0027-5107(74)90101-8 PMID:4366909

Shahin S, Cullinane C, Gray PJ (2001). Mitochondrial and nuclear DNA damage induced by sulphur mustard in keratinocytes. *Chem Biol Interact*, 138: 231–245. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00275-7 PMID:11714481

Solberg Y, Alcalay M, Belkin M (1997). Ocular injury by mustard gas. *Surv Ophthalmol*, 41: 461–466. doi:10.1016/S0039-6257(97)00021-0 PMID:9220568

Somani SM & Babu SR (1989). Toxicodynamics of sulfur mustard. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther Toxicol*, 27: 419–435. PMID:2681003

Szinicz L (2005). History of chemical and biological warfare agents. *Toxicology*, 214: 167–181. doi:10.1016/j.tox.2005.06.011 PMID:16111798

Thorpe E, editor (1974). *Thorpe's Dictionary of Applied Chemistry*, 4th ed., Vol. 3, London: Longman, pp. 8.

van der Schans GP, Scheffer AG, Mars-Groenendijk RH *et al.* (1994). Immunochemical detection of adducts of sulfur mustard to DNA of calf thymus and human white blood cells. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 7: 408–413. doi:10.1021/tx00039a019 PMID:8075373

Wada S, Miyanishi M, Nishimoto Y *et al.* (1968). Mustard gas as a cause of respiratory neoplasia in man. *Lancet*, 1: 1161–1163. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(68)91863-1 PMID:4172287

Walker IG (1971). Intrastrand bifunctional alkylation of DNA in mammalian cells treated with mustard gas. *Can J Biochem*, 49: 332–336. doi:10.1139/o71-049 PMID:5549736

Weiss A & Weiss B (1975). [Carcinogenesis due to mustard gas exposure in man, important sign for therapy with alkylating agents] *Dtsch Med Wochenschr*, 100: 919–923. PMID:1122860

WHO (1970). *Health Aspects of Chemical and Biological weapons.* Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, pp. 23–34.

WHO (2004). *WHO Guidance: Public Health Response to Biological and Chemical Weapons*. 2nd ed. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, pp. 164–170.

Wils ERJ, Hulst AG, de Jong AL *et al.* (1985). Analysis of thiodiglycol in urine of victims of an alleged attack with mustard gas. *J Anal Toxicol*, 9: 254–257. PMID:4079337

Wils ERJ, Hulst AG, van Laar J (1988). Analysis of thiodiglycol in urine of victims of an alleged attack with mustard gas, Part II. *J Anal Toxicol*, 12: 15–19. PMID:3352237

Wulf HC, Aasted A, Darre E, Niebuhr E (1985). Sister chromatid exchanges in fishermen exposed to leaking mustard gas shells. *Lancet*, 1: 690–691. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(85)91344-3 PMID:2858631

Yamada A (1963). On the late injuries following occupational inhalation of mustard gas, with special reference to carcinoma of the respiratory tract. *Acta Pathol Jpn*, 13: 131–155. PMID:14196541

Yamada A, Hirose F, Miyanishi M (1953). [An autopsy case of bronchial carcinoma found in a patient succumbed to occupational mustard gas poisoning] *Gan*, 44: 216–218. PMID:13128117

Yamada A, Hirose F, Nagai M, Nakamura T (1957). Five cases of cancer of the larynx found in persons who suffered from occupational mustard gas poisoning. *Gan*, 48: 366–368. PMID:13524406

Yamakido M, Ishioka S, Hiyama K, Maeda A (1996). Former poison gas workers and cancer: incidence and inhibition of tumor formation by treatment with biological response modifier N-CWS. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 3485–488. PMID:8781369

Yang YC, Baker JA, Ward JR (1992). Decontamination of chemical warfare agents. *Chem Rev*, 92: 1729–1743. doi:10.1021/cr00016a003

VINYL CHLORIDE

Vinyl chloride was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1974, 1978, 1987, and 2007 (IARC, 1974, 1979, 1987, 2008). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Identification of the agent

From IARC (2008) and Lide (2008)
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Reg. No.: 75-01-4
Chem. Abstr. Serv. Name: Chloroethene

$H_2C{=}CH{-}Cl$

C_2H_3Cl
Relative molecular mass: 62.5
Description: Colourless gas, with a mild, sweet odour
Boiling-point: -13.4 to -13.8 °C
Solubility: Slightly soluble in water (1.1 g/L at 25 °C); soluble in ethanol; very soluble in diethyl ether, carbon tetrachloride and benzene
Conversion factor: 1 ppm = 2.6 mg/m^3

1.2 Uses

Vinyl chloride is used primarily (> 95%) in the manufacture of polyvinyl chloride (PVC), which comprises about 12% of the total use of plastic worldwide (WHO, 1999). The largest use of PVC is in the production of plastic piping. Other important uses are in floor coverings, consumer goods, electrical applications and in the transport sector. About 1% of PVC is used to produce vinyl chloride/vinyl acetate copolymer. Minor uses of vinyl chloride (monomer) include the manufacture of chlorinated solvents (primarily 10000 tonnes per year of 1,1,1-trichloroethane) and the production of ethylene diamine for the manufacture of resins (WHO, 1999; European Commission, 2003).

Vinyl chloride has been used in the past as a refrigerant, as an extraction solvent for heat-sensitive materials, in the production of chloroacetaldehyde, as an aerosol propellant and in drugs and cosmetic products; these uses were banned in the United States of America (USA) by the Environmental Protection Agency in 1974 (IARC, 2008).

1.3 Human exposure

1.3.1 Occupational exposure

The main route of occupational exposure to vinyl chloride is by inhalation, which occurs primarily in vinyl chloride/PVC plants and in PVC-processing plants. Only few exposure

measurements have been reported, but estimates from the chemical industry indicate that exposure to vinyl chloride monomer (VCM) amounted to several thousands of milligrams per cubic metre in the 1940s and 1950s, and were several hundreds of milligrams per cubic metre in the 1960s and early 1970s. After its recognition as a human carcinogen (IARC, 1974), occupational exposure standards were set at approximately 13–26 mg/m^3 [5–10 ppm] in most countries in the 1970s (Fleig & Thiess, 1974; NTP, 2005; IARC, 2008).

CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens based on data collected in the European Union (EU) from 1990 to 1993. The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 presents the estimated numbers of workers exposed to vinyl chloride in the EU for the top-10 industries (CAREX, 1999).

From the US National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83) it was estimated that approximately 81 300 workers (including approximately 28 400 women) were potentially exposed to vinyl chloride (NIOSH, 1990).

A report from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in the USA concluded that the development and acceptance by the PVC-manufacturing industry of a closed-loop polymerization process in the late 1970s "almost completely eliminated worker exposures" (CDC, 1997). Even after the late 1970s, however, high concentrations may still be encountered and were in fact reported in some countries (IARC, 2008).

(a) Production of vinyl chloride and its derivatives

In vinyl-chloride production, workers may be exposed to ethylene dichloride and to catalysts such as iron(III)chloride. In PVC production, concurrent exposure to PVC-dust may occur (Casula *et al.*, 1977).

Measurements of VCM concentrations in indoor air of vinyl chloride/PVC production plants have been summarized in *IARC Monograph* Volume 97 (IARC, 2008). In a study on occupational exposure to vinyl chloride that was not included in the previous *Monograph*, Zhu *et al.* (2005) reported the exposure to VCM of workers in a plant in the People's Republic of China. Concentrations in air of VCM at different worksites in the plant ranged from 0.3 to 17.8 ppm [0.8–48.4 mg/m^3]; the geometric mean concentration was 2.6 ppm [7.1 mg/m^3].

(b) PVC processing

Measured concentrations of VCM in PVC-processing plants were considerably lower than those in plants where vinyl chloride and PVC were produced (IARC, 2008). Improvements in PVC production in the 1970s resulted in a much lower content of residual VCM in PVC resin. The lower monomer content led automatically to reduced concentrations of vinyl chloride in the workplace air of PVC-processing factories, reaching values of < 0.1 ppm [0.26 mg/m^3] (Holm *et al.*, 1982).

In PVC processing, the polymer may be mixed with antioxidants (such as *p*-nonylphenol), stabilizers (such as organic tin compounds), plasticizers (phthalates) and colouring agents (pigments) (Summers, 2006) and occupational exposure to these compounds, as well as to PVC-dust, may occur (Boraiko & Batt, 2005).

(c) Hairdressers and barbers

Infante *et al.* (2009) presented two case reports of hairdressers and barbers who used hairsprays containing vinyl chloride over a period of 4–5 years between 1966 and 1973, and developed angiosarcoma of the liver (ASL). The ranges of exposure were estimated at 129–1234 ppm (peak concentration), and as 70–1037 ppm (average concentration).

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to vinyl chloride in the European Union (top-10 industries)

Industry, occupational activity	
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	10400
Manufacture of plastic products, not elsewhere classified	9100
Manufacture of other chemical products	7600
Manufacture of fabricated metal products, except machinery and equipment	2900
Manufacture of machinery, except electrical	2400
Services allied to transport	1300
Manufacture of electrical machinery, apparatus, appliances	980
Education services	870
Construction	800
Petroleum refineries	570
TOTAL	39600

From CAREX (1999)

1.3.2 Non-occupational exposure

The general population is potentially exposed to vinyl chloride through inhalation of contaminated air, ingestion of contaminated drinking-water and foods, or dermal contact with consumer products. However, the exposure levels for the majority of the population are very low (NTP, 2005).

(a) Ambient air

Vinyl chloride is released into the environment in emissions and effluents from the plastics industry. Atmospheric concentrations of VCM in ambient air are low (usually < 3 μg/m^3) and ambient air samples in rural and urban areas of the USA typically do not contain detectable levels of vinyl chloride (NTP, 2005). Vinyl chloride has been reported in landfill gas and groundwater, as a degradation product of chlorinated solvents that were deposited in landfills (WHO, 1999).

Populations living near emission sources (e.g. emissions and effluents from the plastics industry) may be exposed to relatively high concentrations of airborne vinyl chloride. Measured concentrations ranged from trace levels to over 2600 μg/m^3, and the average daily intake of vinyl chloride by residents living near such emission sources ranged from trace amounts up to 2100 μg (NTP, 2005). A monitoring programme in the 1970s around VCM- and PVC-production plants found some relatively high concentrations of vinyl chloride in the ambient air. Maximum 24-hour average concentrations ranged from 0.32 to 10.6 ppm [0.8–28 mg/m^3]. Levels of VCM were much lower in the vicinity of plants where PVC products were manufactured than near VCM- and PVC-production plants (Dimmick, 1981).

(b) Accidental releases

In June 1996, ten of 18 tank wagons filled with vinyl chloride derailed on the Magdeburg-Halle railway line just outside the Schönebeck train station in Germany. Vinyl chloride concentrations of 0.06–8 ppm [0.16–20.8 mg/m^3] were measured in surrounding residential areas. Nearly 300 urine samples were taken from rescue workers, residents and a control group, and analysed for the presence of the vinyl-chloride metabolite thiodiacetic acid. The measured values appeared to be in the range of those of non-exposed people (Thriene *et al.*, 2000).

(c) Residues in PVC resin and products

PVC products may contain VCM as a residue from production and release it in the air. In a German survey (1976–77), the following articles released VCM at levels > 0.05 ppm [0.13 mg/m^3] by off-gassing in the air: bathroom tiles, piping, plastic bottles for table oil, and kitchen wrapping-film. The highest concentrations were observed to come from vinyl music records, with values of 20–50 ppm measured for nine of 14 records sampled, but even higher in some of the others. The VCM concentrations released by toys, kitchen utensils, food wrappings, wall-paper, and car interiors were < 0.05 ppm (German Environmental Office, 1978). The introduction of improved manufacturing practices has considerably reduced the residual content of VCM in PVC products (WHO, 1999).

(d) Other sources of exposure

VCM is present in mainstream smoke of cigarettes (1.3–16 ng/cigarette) and cigars (14–27 ng/cigar). The measured concentrations correlated with the inorganic chloride content of the tobacco (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1976; IARC, 2004).

Exposure to vinyl chloride in drinking-water is unlikely for the majority of the general population. In a US survey of 945 ground-water supplies and 11202 public water supplies that used surface waters as their primary source, less than 1% of the samples contained detectable levels of vinyl chloride (detection limit, 1 ppb [1 µg/L]). The US Environmental Protection Agency estimated that approximately 0.9% of the US population is exposed to vinyl chloride in drinking-water at concentrations of 1.0 µg/L or higher, and that 0.3% is exposed to concentrations higher than 5 µg/L (NTP, 2005).

2. Cancer in Humans

Vinyl chloride was evaluated in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1979, 1987, 2008) and was classified in Group 1 based on increased risks for ASL and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC).

A report of three cases of ASL in men who had been employed in the manufacture of PVC resins provided the first evidence of an association between vinyl chloride and cancer in humans (Creech & Johnson, 1974). The case report was particularly informative because of the extreme rarity of this tumour in the general population. The Working Group in 1974 already considered this observation to provide evidence of a causal relationship.

Epidemiological evidence for the carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride in humans derives principally from two large, multicentre cohort studies, one of which was carried out in the USA and the other in Europe. These investigations focused on plants that manufactured vinyl chloride monomer, polyvinyl chloride or polyvinyl chloride products. In addition to reports that pertained to these cohorts in their entirety, several studies reported findings from individual subcohorts. Results for subcohorts are given in the Tables, but only when they provide important information that is not available in analyses of the full cohorts. Results on six cohort studies have also been reported, in addition to and separate from the two multicentre investigations.

The first published report of the North-American multicentre cohort study (Cooper, 1981) included 10173 workers from 37 plants. Among the 37 plants included in the study, 11 plants with 1214 workers produced only VCM, 18 plants with 6848 workers produced only PVC, three plants with 935 workers produced both VCM and PVC and five plants with 1176 workers produced homopolymers and copolymers. To be eligible for inclusion into the cohort, male employees at the 37 participating plants

were required to have been exposed to VCM for at least one year before 31 December 1972 and to have been employed in or after 1942. A second major update of this cohort was published by Wong *et al.* (1991). A third major follow-up included 10 109 subjects and provided an update of the vital status through to 31 December 1995 (Mundt *et al.*, 2000).

The European cohort study was conducted in four countries (Italy, Norway, Sweden and the United Kingdom). It included workers from 19 factories: 11 of these produced VCM/PVC, two produced VCM only, five produced PVC only and one was a PVC-processing plant. Male workers who had been employed for at least one year in 1942–1972 in jobs that entailed exposure to VCM were included (Simonato *et al.*, 1991). An update of the study (Ward *et al.*, 2001) analysed incidence and mortality through to the latest year for which data were available in each country, which ranged between 1993 and 1997.

2.1 Angiosarcoma of the liver

In both multicentre cohort studies (Mundt *et al.*, 2000; Ward *et al.*, 2001) a substantial excess of ASL in exposed workers was found (see Table 2.1 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-26-Table2.1.pdf). This tumour is extremely rare in the general population and it is not possible to calculate an SMR or SIR, because age- and calendar time-specific reference rates are not available. In the study from the US, 33 of the 80 deaths from cancer of the liver and biliary tract were identified from the death certificate as due to ASL. A total of 48 deaths due to ASL were identified by combining information from death certificates with that from a registry of ASL-cases that were related to exposure to VCM. This registry is maintained and updated by the Association of Plastics Manufacturers of Europe.

In the European study there were 53 deaths from primary liver cancer and 18 incident cases of liver cancer. This total of 71 cases comprised 37 ASL, 10 HCC, 7 cases of other known histology, and 17 cases of an unspecified type of liver cancer. [The Working Group noted that the authors searched for the best evidence for diagnosis of liver cancers by reviewing all available documentation, including death certificates, cancer-registry records, medical records, and listings of ASL from two registries.]

In both studies, the risk for ASL increased strongly with duration of exposure to vinyl chloride. In the European study, there was also a clear trend of higher risk with increasing cumulative exposure. Multiple cases of ASL were also reported in one smaller cohort study (Thériault & Allard, 1981). Two cases of ASL were reported among hairdressers and barbers who had been exposed to vinyl chloride for 4–5-year periods in the late 1960s and early 1970s, when it was used as a propellant in hairspray (Infante *et al.*, 2009).

2.2 Hepatocellular carcinoma

The assessment of vinyl chloride as a cause of HCC is complicated because many studies do not have histological or other definitive clinical information to discriminate HCC from ASL and/or secondary neoplasms (see Table 2.1 online). In the US multicentre study, mortality from cancers of the liver and biliary tract (ICD9-code, 155–156) was increased (SMR 3.6, 95%CI: 2.8–4.5; 80 deaths). Of the 80 deaths, 48 were identified as ASL. The diagnosis of HCC among the remaining deaths was not verified.

In an internal analysis of the European multicentre cohort (Ward *et al.*, 2001) based on 10 verified cases of HCC, the risk increased significantly and substantially with duration of employment and with cumulative exposure to vinyl chloride. The relative risk for workers with the longest duration of employment (> 26 years) was 35 (95%CI: 3.3–377) compared with workers with < 10 years of employment. An analysis of a single Italian plant with extended follow-up – that

was included in the European study – indicated 12 confirmed cases of HCC (Pirastu *et al.*, 2003). The maximal overlap between these two analyses was four cases, since only four HCC from Italy were included in the multicentre cohort. In this subcohort, the incidence of HCC again increased significantly with cumulative exposure to vinyl chloride. There was suggestive evidence that the risk for HCC from vinyl chloride is substantially higher among workers who are infected with hepatitis B virus (Wong *et al.*, 2003), or who report high levels of alcoholic beverage consumption (Mastrangelo *et al.*, 2004).

A meta-analysis of cohort studies of vinyl choride-exposed workers published up to 2002 (Boffetta *et al.*, 2003) was based on eight independent studies, i.e. two multicentric investigations (Mundt *et al.*, 2000; Ward *et al.*, 2001) and six additional, smaller studies (Thériault & Allard, 1981; Weber *et al.*, 1981; Smulevich *et al.*, 1988; Laplanche *et al.*, 1992; Huang, 1996; Wong *et al.*, 2002) (*P*-value for the test for heterogeneity was ≥ 0.01). Six of these eight studies reported results for liver cancer, but these were considered to be too heterogeneous to be included in a meta-analysis because for 'liver cancer overall' and for 'liver cancer other than ASL', the *P*-value for heterogeneity was < 0.001. For the two multicentre studies (Mundt *et al.*, 2000; Ward *et al.*, 2001), the lack of heterogeneity allowed calculation of summary estimates for liver cancer overall (meta-SMR, 2.96; 95%CI: 2.00–4.39; random effects model; *P*-value for heterogeneity = 0.03) and for liver cancer other than ASL (meta-SMR, 1.35; 95%CI: 1.04–4.39; random effects model; *P*-value for heterogeneity = 0.7).

[The Working Group noted that the meta-analysis did not evaluate the quality of the studies and that some heterogeneity between studies may have resulted from variable quality of the data. Excluding one study from the People's Republic of China, other studies reported SMRs that ranged from 1.78 (95%CI: 1.15–2.62) to 57.1 (95%CI: 24.6–113) for liver cancer overall and from 1.27 (95%CI: 0.84–1.83) to 10.1 (95%CI: 4.37–20.0) for liver cancer other than ASL.]

2.3 Cancer of the lung

Among workers exposed to vinyl chloride, there was no overall evidence of an increased risk for lung cancer (see Table 2.2 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-26-Table2.2.pdf). However, in PVC-packers and -baggers, the risk for lung cancer increased significantly with cumulative exposure to vinyl chloride (Ward *et al.*, 2001). [These workers are known to have had concomitant exposure to PVC-dust; the study did not allow attribution of the association to a specific agent or combination of agents.]

2.4 Malignant neoplasms of connective and soft tissue

Suggestive evidence was found for malignant neoplasms of connective and soft tissue (ICD9-code, 171). This derived from the multicentre study in the USA (Mundt *et al.*, 2000), in which a nearly threefold statistically significant overall increase in mortality from these neoplasms was observed (SMR 2.7, 95%CI: 1.4–4.7; 12 observed, 4.4 expected). The risk was higher for workers with longer duration of employment (i.e. 10–19 *vs* > 20 years) and for those first employed before 1960. Four of the 12 observed deaths were from angiosarcomas for which the site was unknown. The increased mortality from neoplasms of connective and soft tissue persisted even after exclusion of these four angiosarcomas. [This presumes that the malignant neoplasms of connective and soft tissue were mis-classified deaths from angiosarcoma of the liver.]

The findings mentioned above were not supported by results from the European multicentre study, in which the number of deaths from connective-tissue neoplasms was too small

for an evaluation of exposure–response (Ward *et al.*, 2001): there were six observed deaths from neoplasms of connective and soft tissue (SMR = 1.9, 95%CI: 0.7–4.1), but in a re-evaluation of the diagnoses three of the six deaths coded as tumours of the connective tissue were found to be ASL. [The Working Group noted that, although a statistically significant increase in mortality from neoplasms of connective and soft tissue was found in the US study, the discrepant results with the European study and the difficulties in arriving at a correct diagnosis and coding of the tumour site for this type of neoplasm, complicate an evaluation of these findings.]

2.5 Other cancers

The Working Group did not find strong evidence for associations of exposure to vinyl chloride with cancers of the brain or the lymphatic and haematopoeitic tissues, with melanoma of the skin (see Table 2.3 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-26-Table2.3.pdf, Table 2.4 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-26-Table2.4.pdf, and Table 2.5 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-26-Table2.5.pdf). Although the associations found for these cancers in specific studies may reflect true increases in risk, the findings were inconsistent between studies, no clear exposure–response relationships were found in the European multicentre study (Ward *et al.*, 2001), and, for several of the sites, the numbers of observed/expected cases were small.

No conclusion could be reached for breast cancer since the available studies included too few women.

2.6 Synthesis

There is compelling evidence that exposure to vinyl chloride is associated with angiosarcoma of the liver, and strong evidence that it is associated with hepatocellular carcinoma. Together with the observation that vinyl chloride increases the risk for liver cirrhosis, which is a known risk factor for hepatocellular carcinoma, the findings from two large multicentre cohort studies provide convincing evidence that vinyl chloride causes hepatocellular carcinoma as well as angiosarcoma of the liver. There is contradictory evidence that exposure to vinyl chloride is associated with malignant neoplasms of connective and soft tissue, and inconsistent or scanty evidence that it is associated with cancers of the lung, brain, lymphohaematopoietic system, and breast, or with melanoma of the skin.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

The carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride has been studied intensively and repeatedly in experimental animals, with a wide range of concentrations, spanning orders of magnitude. The many studies consistently showed hepatic and extrahepatic angiosarcomas in mice and rats. Various other malignant neoplasms also occurred at several anatomical sites. However, the reporting of the results has often been incomplete, and the outcomes of many studies are available only from summary tables in the published literature, in which technical details are given in footnotes.

Studies of the carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride in experimental animals after oral administration, inhalation, subcutaneous injection, intraperitoneal injection, and transplacental and perinatal exposure have been reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1974, 1979, 1987, 2008). No studies have been published since the most recent evaluation (IARC, 2008). The

following is a summary of the available data (see also Table 3.1).

3.1 Inhalation exposure

Vinyl chloride was tested by inhalation exposure in several studies in mice (Holmberg *et al.*, 1976; Lee *et al.*, 1978; Hong *et al.*, 1981; Maltoni *et al.*, 1981; Drew *et al.*, 1983; Suzuki, 1983), in several studies in rats (Lee *et al.*, 1978; Feron *et al.*, 1979; Feron & Kroes, 1979; Groth *et al.*, 1981; Kurliandskiĭ *et al.*, 1981; Maltoni *et al.*, 1981; Drew *et al.*, 1983), and in two studies in hamsters (Maltoni *et al.*, 1981; Drew *et al.*, 1983). Male and female animals of all three species were included, although some experiments were carried out only in one sex. Vinyl chloride induced hepatic angiosarcomas in three experiments in mice and in eight experiments in rats; a dose–response was observed for hepatic angiosarcomas in both species over a wide range of exposures. Extrahepatic angiosarcomas related to treatment with vinyl chloride were observed in three studies in mice and one study in rats. Vinyl chloride increased the incidence of malignant mammary tumours in seven experiments in mice, in two experiments in one study in rats, and in one study in hamsters. Exposure to vinyl chloride increased the incidence of skin epitheliomas in one study in rats and one study in hamsters, and of skin carcinomas in another study in hamsters. It increased the incidence of Zymbal gland carcinomas in three experiments in rats, with a dose–response pattern in one experiment. In mice, vinyl chloride increased the incidence of benign lung tumours in six experiments, and of lung carcinomas in two experiments. It also increased the incidence of nasal cavity carcinomas in one study in rats, of hepatocellular carcinomas in two experiments in rats, of glandular adenomas in one study in hamsters, and of benign fore-stomach tumours in another study in hamsters.

In one study in rats, combined oral administration of ethanol and inhalation exposure to vinyl chloride increased the incidence of hepatic angiosarcomas compared with exposure to vinyl chloride alone (Radike *et al.*, 1981).

3.2 Oral administration

Vinyl chloride was tested by oral administration in four experiments in male and female rats (Feron *et al.*, 1981; Maltoni *et al.*, 1981; Til *et al.*, 1991). It induced hepatic angiosarcomas in two experiments, lung angiosarcomas in one experiment and hepatocellular adenomas and hepatocellular carcinomas in two experiments.

3.3 Subcutaneous and intraperitoneal injection

When vinyl chloride was tested in rats by subcutaneous injection and by intraperitoneal injection in single studies, no increase in tumour incidence was observed (Maltoni *et al.*, 1981).

3.4 Transplacental administration and perinatal exposure

The transplacental carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride was evaluated in one study in the offspring of rats exposed by inhalation on days 12–18 of pregnancy. A low incidence of tumours was observed in prenatally exposed offspring at several sites including the kidney (nephroblastomas) and the Zymbal gland (carcinomas). However, no angiosarcomas or hepatomas developed in the offspring (Maltoni *et al.*, 1981).

Vinyl chloride was tested by perinatal inhalation exposure in two studies in rats. In one study, rats were exposed transplacentally, as neonates, and during adulthood. Treatment with vinyl chloride induced hepatic angiosarcomas and hepatocellular carcinomas. The rats also showed

Table 3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals exposed to vinyl chloride and chloroethylene oxide

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, NMRI (M, F) 26 or 52 wk Holmberg *et al.* (1976)	Inhalation, 0, 50, 500 ppm [0, 130, 1 300 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, for 26 wk (0, 500 ppm) or 52 wk, (0, 50 ppm) 12/group/sex	Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: (M) 0/24, 6/12*, 3/12*; (F) 0/24, 8/12*, 5/12* Lung adenomas: (M) 0/24, 9/12*, 12/12*; (F) 0/24, 4/12*, 12/12* Mammary carcinomas: (F) 1/24, 1/12, 4/12	NR, *[$P < 0.05$]	Purity NR The animals exposed to 500 ppm were sacrificed after 26 wk because of poor survival. Control groups were combined.
Mouse, CD-1 (M, F) 52 wk Lee *et al.* (1978)	Inhalation 0, 50, 250, 1000 ppm [0, 130, 650, 2 600 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, 52 wk 36/group/sex, 4 animals/group were sacrificed at 1, 2, 3, 6 or 9 mo	Liver angiosarcomas: (M) 0/26, 3/29, 7/29*, 13/33*; (F) 0/36, 0/34, 16/34*, 18/36* Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: (M): 0/26, 5/29*, 2/29, 0/33; (F) 0/36, 1/34, 3/34, 9/36* Lung adenomas: (M) 1/26, 8/29**, 10/29**, 22/23**; (F): 0/36, 4/34, 12/34**, 26/36** Mammary gland tumours (malignant): (F) 0/36, 9/34**, 3/34, 13/36**	*$P < 0.05$ NR, **[$P < 0.05$]	99.8% pure Mammary gland tumours were adenocarcinomas and carcinomas
Mouse, CD-1 (M, F) up to 18 mo Hong *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0, 340, 1690, 6760 ppm [0, 130, 650, 2600 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 1, 3 or 6 mo and observed for additional 12 mo 8–28/group/sex	Cumulative incidence Liver haemangiosarcomas: (M) 0/60, 1/40, 8/44*, 6/38*; (F) 1/60, 1/40, 5/40*, 12/38* Bronchioloalveolar tumours: (M) 8/60, 12/40, 29/44*, 27/38*; (F) 8/60, 6/40, 23/40*, 23/38* Mammary gland tumours (malignant): (F) 4/60, 10/40, 13/40*, 6/38*	*$P < 0.05$	Mammary gland tumours were adenocarcinomas and carcinomas; bronchioalveolar tumours were not further described.
Mouse, Swiss (M, F) 81 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0, 50, 250, 500, 2500, 6000, 10000 ppm [0, 130, 650, 1300, 6500, 15600, 26000 mg/m^3] 4 h/d, 5 d/wk, 30 wk 30/group/sex, 150 controls	Liver angiosarcomas: 0/150, 1/60, 18/60, 14/60, 16/59, 13/60, 10/56 Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: 1/150, 1/60, 3/60, 7/60, 8/59, 1/60, 1/56 Lung tumours: 15/150, 6/60, 41/60, 50/60, 40/59, 47/60, 46/56 Mammary gland carcinomas: 1/150, 12/60, 12/60, 8/60, 8/59, 8/60, 13/56	NR [$P < 0.05$, many exposed group], angiosarcomas (all sites including the liver), lung tumours and mammary gland carcinomas	99.97% pure Data reported for both sexes combined. A low incidence of skin tumours was also reported; lung tumours were not further described.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse, CD-1 (F) Lifetime Drew *et al.* (1983)	Inhalation Study 1: 8–9 wk old mice exposed to 0 or 50 ppm [0, 130 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, for 6, 12, or 18 mo Initial group size NR	Study 1, incidence for controls and incidences for animals exposed for 6, 12, 18 mo Haemangiosarcomas (all sites): 1/71, 29/67, 30/47, 20/45 Lung carcinomas: 9/71, 18/65, 15/47, 11/45 Mammary gland carcinomas: 2/71, 33/67, 22/47, 22/45	Study 1, $P < 0.01$ (all vinyl chloride-exposed group)	Commercial grade, purity NR
	Study 2: 8 or 14 mo old mice exposed to 0 or 50 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, for 6 or 12 mo Initial group size NR	Study 2, incidence for controls and incidences for animals exposed for 6 mo (8 mo old at start), 6 mo (14 mo old), 12 mo (8 mo old), 12 mo (14 mo old) Haemangiosarcomas(all sites): 1/71, 11/49**, 5/53, 17/46**, 3/50 Lung carcinomas: 9/71, 13/49*, 7/53, 9/46*, 3/50 Mammary gland carcinomas: 2/71, 13/49**, 2/53, 8/45**, 0/50	Study 2, *$P < 0.05$ **$P < 0.01$	
Mouse, B6C3F1 (F) Lifetime Drew *et al.* (1983)	Inhalation Study 1: 8–9 wk old mice exposed to 0 or 50 ppm [0, 130 mg/m3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, for 6 or 12 mo Initial group size NR	Study 1: incidence for controls and incidences for animals exposed for 6, 12 mo Haemangiosarcomas (all sites): 4/69, 46/67**, 69/90** Mammary gland carcinomas: 3/69, 29/67**, 37/90**	*$P < 0.05$ **$P < 0.01$	Commercial grade, purity NR
	Study 2: 8 or 14 mo old mice exposed to 0 or 50 ppm 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, for 6 or 12 mo Initial group size NR	Study 2: incidence for controls and incidence for animals exposed for 6 mo (8 mo old at start), 6 mo (14 mo old), 12 mo (8 mo old), or 12 mo (14 mo old) Haemangiosarcomas (all sites): 4/69, 27/42**, 30/51**, 30/84**, 29/48** Mammary gland carcinomas: 3/69, 13/42**, 4/51*, 9/48**, 4/48**		

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Mouse CD-1 (M) up to 44–45 wk Suzuki (1983)	Inhalation 0, 1, 10, 100, 300, 600 ppm [0, 2.6, 26, 260, 780, 1560 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, 4 wk 30/group except 60/control group and 40/600 ppm-treated group	Benign pulmonary tumours: 12 wk after exposure: 0/18, 0/10, 0/9, 0/6, 6/9*, 8/9* 40–41 wk after exposure: 0/17, 1/9, 3/9, 6/9*, 5/7*, 6/7*	NR *[$P < 0.05$]	Purity NR
Rat, CD (M, F) 52 wk Lee *et al.* (1978)	Inhalation 0, 50, 250, 1000 ppm [0, 130, 650, 2600 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 36/group/sex, 4 animals/group were sacrificed at 1, 2, 3, 6 and 9 mo	Liver angiosarcomas: (M) 0/35, 0/36, 2/36, 6/34; (F) 0/35, 0/36, 10/34*, 15/36* Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: (M) 0/35, 1/36, 2/36, 4/34; (F) 0/35, 1/36, 3/34, 10/36*	*$P < 0.05$	99.8% pure
Rat, Wistar (M, F) 52 wk Feron & Kroes (1979) Feron *et al.* (1979)	Inhalation 0, 5000 ppm [0, 13000 mg/m^3] 7 h/d, 5 d/wk 62/group/sex, 10 animals/group/sex were sacrificed at 4, 13, 26 or 52 wk	At 52 wk Liver angiosarcomas: (M) 3/9; (F): 6/10* Zymbal gland squamous-cell carcinomas: (M) 3/9; (F): 2/10 Nasal cavity carcinomas: (M) 2/9; (F) 5/10* No tumours observed in controls: (M) 0/10; (F) 0/10	NR *[$P < 0.05$]	99.97% pure Information on survival NR
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) 43 wk Groth *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0, 940 ppm [0, 2465 mg/m^3] 7 h/d, 5 d/wk, 24.5 wk to rats 6, 18, 32, 52 wk of age 110–128/group/sex	Angiosarcomas (mostly in the liver): In rats 6, 18, 32, 52 wk of age at start: (M) 0/37, 0/44, 3/45, 13/55; (F) 2/38, 7/47, 23/49*, 11/54 In controls 32 wk of age at start: (M) 1/86; (F) 0/85	NR *[$P < 0.0001$]	Purity NR Epidemic of pneumonia during the 28th wk prematurely ended the study.
Rat, random bred white (M) 126 wk Kurliandskiĭ *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0, 5.4, 9.6, 102, 1420 ppm [0, 14, 25, 266, 3690 mg/m^3] 4.5 h/d, 5 d/wk, 52 wk 50–58/group, 93 controls	Angiosarcomas (all sites): 0% in controls, 9.3–15.7% in the two higher dose-treated group Liver angiosarcomas: 0% in controls, 9.3–11.8% in the two higher dose-treated group	NR	Purity NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague Dawley (M, F) 156 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0, 50, 250, 500, 2500, 6000, 10000 ppm [130, 650, 1300, 6500, 15600, 26000 mg/m^3] 4 h/d, 5 d/wk, 17 wk 30/group/sex, 190 controls	Liver angiosarcomas: 0/190, 0/58, 0/59, 1/60, 1/60, 1/60, 0/58 Hepatomas: 0/190, 0/58, 0/59, 0/60, 2/60, 1/60, 1/58 Zymbal gland carcinomas: 2/190, 0/58, 1/59, 1/60, 7/60, 9/60, 9/58 Skin epitheliomas: 1/190, 1/58, 0/59, 0/60, 2/60, 5/60, 5/58	NR [$P < 0.05$, some exposed group], Zymbal gland carcinoma, skin epithelioma	99.97% purity Data reported for both sexes combined
Rat, Sprague Dawley (M, F) 154 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0 (control), 6000 (group I, III, V), 10 000 (group II, IV, VI) ppm [0, 15 600, 26 000 mg/m^3] group I, II: 4 h/d, 5 d/wk, 5 wk; group III, IV: 1 h/d, 4 d/wk, 25 wk; group V, VI: 4 h/d, 1/wk, 25 wk 60/group/sex, 240 controls	controls, I, II, III, IV, V, VI Liver angiosarcomas: 0/227, 1/118, 0/120, 1/119, 3/118, 1/119, 1/120 Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: 0/227, 0/118, 0/120, 0/119, 2/118, 0/119, 1/120 Zymbal gland carcinomas: 0/227, 9/118, 9/120, 9/119, 5/118, 8/119. 9/120 Mammary gland tumours (malignant): 17/227, 13/118, 13/120, 16/119, 11/118, 20/119, 12/120	NR [$P < 0.05$, all exposed group], Zymbal gland carcinoma	99.97% purity Data reported for both sexes combined
Rat, Sprague Dawley (M, F) up to 147 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0, 1, 5, 10, 25, 50, 50, 100, 150, 200, 250, 500, 2500, 6000, 10000, 30000 ppm [0, 2.6, 13, 26, 65, 130, 130, 260, 390, 520, 650, 1300, 6500, 15600, 26000, 78000 mg/m^3] 4 h/d, 5 d/wk, 52 wk 60–300 M+F/group, 461 controls	Liver angiosarcomas: 0/461, 0/118, 0/119, 1/119, 5/120, 1/60, 14/294, 1/120, 6/119, 12/120, 3/59, 6/60, 13/60, 13/59, 7/60, 18/60 Zymbal gland carcinomas: 4/461, 1/118, 1/119, 2/119, 4/120, 0/60, 9/294, 1/120, 4/119, 4/120, 0/59, 4/60, 2/60, 7/59, 16/60, 35/60	NR [$P < 0.05$, many exposed group] [$P < 0.05$, some exposed group]	99.97% purity Five studies combined to construct a dose–response table. Rats exposed to highest concentration were observed for 68 wk, others for 135–147 wk. There was no dose–response
Rat, Wistar (M) up to 165 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0, 1, 50, 250, 500, 2500, 6000, 10000 ppm [0, 2.6, 130, 650, 1300, 6500, 15600, 26000 mg/m^3] 4 h/d, 5 d/wk, 52 wk 30–130/group	Liver angiosarcomas: 0/132, 0/99, 0/28, 1/27, 3/28, 3/25, 3/26, 8/27 Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: 1/132, 3/99, 0/28, 1/27, 0/28, 1/25, 1/26, 0/27 Hepatomas: 0/132, 1/99, 0/28, 0/27, 0/28, 1/25, 2/26, 0/27 Zymbal gland carcinomas: 3/132, 2/99, 0/28, 0/27, 0/28, 0/25, 2/26, 2/27	NR [$P < 0.05$, some exposed group], liver angiosarcoma	99.97% purity

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Fischer (F) Lifetime Drew *et al.* (1983)	Inhalation 0, 100 ppm [0, 260 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk, for 6, 12, 18 or 24 mo 55–112/group	Tumour incidence after 24 mo of exposure: Liver haemangiosarcomas: 1/112, 19/55* Haemangiosarcomas (all sites): 2/112, 24/55* Mammary gland adenocarcinomas: 5/112, 5/55* Hepatocellular carcinomas: 1/112, 9/55*	*$P < 0.01$	Purity NR Rats necropsied when moribund or dead
Rat, Fischer (F) Lifetime Drew *et al.* (1983)	Inhalation 0 (control), 100 ppm [0, 260 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk for 6 mo (rats 2, 8, 14 or 20 mo old at start) or 12 mo (rats 2, 8 or 14 mo old at start) 51–112/group	Liver haemangiosarcomas: 1/112, 4/76*, 2/52, 0/51, 0/53, 11/55*, 5/54*, 2/49 Haemangiosarcomas (all sites): 2/112, 4/76, 2/53, 0/53, 0/53, 12/56*, 5/55*, 2/50 Mammary gland adenocarcinomas: 5/112, 6/76, 2/53, 3/53, 2/53, 11/56*, 4/55, 0/50 Hepatocellular carcinomas: 1/112, 3/75, 6/52*, 0/51, 1/53, 4/56*, 1/54, 0/49	*$P < 0.01$	Rats necropsied when moribund or dead. Statistically significant increases were also observed for mammary gland fibroadenomas and hepatocellular adenomas.
Rat, Sprague Dawley (M, F) 136 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Oral (gastric intubation) 0, 3.3, 17, 50 mg/kg bw, 4–5 × / wk, 52 wk 40/group/sex	Liver angiosarcomas: 0/80, 0/80, 10/80*, 17/80* Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: 0/80, 2/80, 0/80, 2/80 Nephroblastomas: 0/80, 0/80, 3/80, 2/80	NR *[$P < 0.05$]	99.97% purity Information on survival NR Data reported for both sexes combined
Rat, Sprague Dawley (M, F) 136 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Oral (gastric intubation) 0, 0.03, 0.3, 1 mg/kg bw, 4–5 × /wk, 52–59 wk 75/group/sex	Liver angiosarcomas: 0/150, 0/150, 0/148, 3/149. Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: 0/150, 0/150, 0/148, 1/149 Hepatomas: 0/150, 0/150, 1/148, 1/149 Zymbal gland carcinomas: 1/150, 0/150, 0/148, 5/149 Mammary gland tumours (malignant): 7/150, 14/150, 4/148, 12/149	NR, [NS]	99.7% purity Data reported for both sexes combined
Rat, Wistar (M, F) 135 wk (M), 144 wk (F) Feron *et al.* (1981)	Oral (feed) 0, 1, 3, 10% of 4000 ppm vinyl chloride in a PVC powder [resulting in a daily dose of 0, 1.7, 5.0, 14 mg vinyl chloride/kg bw] 4 h/d, 7 d/wk 60–80/group/sex	Liver haemangiosarcomas: (M) 0/55, 0/58, 6/56*, 27/59*; (F) 0/57, 0/58, 2/59, 9/57* Hepatocellular carcinomas: (M) 0/55, 1/58, 2/56, 8/59*; (F) 0/57, 4/58, 19/59*, 29/57* Hepatocellular adenomas: (M) 0/55, 1/58, 7/56*, 23/59*; (F) 2/57, 26/58, 39/59*, 44/57* Lung angiosarcomas: (M) 0/55, 0/58, 4/56*, 19/59*; (F) 0/57, 0/58, 1/59, 5/57*	*$P < 0.05$	99.7% purity

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Wistar (M, F) 149 wk (M), 150 wk (F) Til *et al.* (1991)	Oral (feed) PVC powder in food that resulted in dose of 0, 0.014, 0.13, 1.3 mg vinyl chloride/kg bw 4–6 h/d, 7 d/wk 50–100/group/sex	Hepatocellular carcinomas: (M) 0/99, 0/99, 0/99, 3/49*; (F) 1/98, 0/100, 1/96, 3/49 Hepatocellular adenomas: (M) 0/99, 0/99, 0/99, 1/49; (F) 0/98, 1/100, 1/96, 9/49* Liver haemangiosarcomas: (M) 0/99, 0/99, 0/99, 1/49; (F) 0/98, 0/100, 0/96, 2/49	*$P < 0.05$	99.7% purity
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) 145 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Subcutaneous injection Single injection of 0, 4.25 mg in 1 ml olive oil, 35 M/group, 40 F/group	Mammary gland tumours (malignant): 3/75, 1/75. Nephroblastomas: 0/75, 1/75	NR, [NS]	99.97% purity No other tumour types observed Data reported for both sexes combined
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) 144 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Intraperitoneal injection 0 (olive oil, once); 4.25 mg/kg bw, once, twice, three, or four times at 2 mo intervals 30/group/sex	Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: 0/55, 0/55, 1/56, 1/53, 0/56 Mammary gland tumours (malignant): 0/55, 2/55, 3/56, 1/53, 1/56	NR, [NS]	99.97% purity No liver angiosarcomas observed Data reported for both sexes combined
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) 143 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Transplacental Pregnant females exposed by inhalation to 6000, 10000 ppm [15600, 26000 mg/m^3] on D 12–18 of pregnancy 30–54 dams/group	In offspring Extrahepatic angiomas: 1/32, 0/51 Nephroblastomas: 0/32, 3/51 Zymbal gland carcinomas: 3/32, 5/51 Skin epitheliomas: 1/32, 0/51 Forestomach papillomas and achanthomas: 1/32, 1/51 Mammary gland tumours (malignant): 2/32, 1/51	-	99.97% purity No angiosarcomas (all sites) or hepatomas were observed in offspring. One Zymbal gland tumour at high dose (1/30) was the only tumour observed in dams. Despite the lack of controls, this study provides some evidence of the transplacental carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride. Data reported for both sexes combined.

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) 124 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Perinatal Breeders and newborn offspring exposed together by inhalation to. 6000, 10000 ppm [15600, 26000 mg/m^3] 4 h/d, 5 d/wk, 5 wk 42–44/group (offspring)	In offspring Hepatic angiosarcomas: 17/42, 15/42 Liver angiomas: 1/42, 0/44 Extrahepatic angiosarcomas: 1/42, 0/44 Extrahepatic angiomas: 1/42, 3/44 Hepatomas: 20/42, 20/44 Zymbal gland carcinomas: 2/42, 1/44 Skin epitheliomas: 2/42, 1/44 Mammary gland tumours (malignant): 1/42, 0/44	-	99.97% No concurrent controls No tumours observed in breeders at sites where tumours occurred in offspring Data reported for both sexes combined
Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M, F) Lifetime Maltoni & Cotti (1988)	Perinatal Breeders exposed by inhalation to 0, 2500 ppm [0, 6500 mg/m^3], 4 h/d, 5 d/wk, 7 wk; dams became pregnant and delivered offspring. Dams exposed (7 h/d) for 69 additional wk with group I offspring; group II offspring exposed only for 8 additional wk 54–60 breeders (F)/group, 60–63 offspring/group/sex, 149–158 control offspring/group/sex	Hepatocarcinomas: Breeders (F): 0/60, 5/54 Offspring group I: (M) 27/64; (F) 38/63; group II: (M) 42/60; (F) 43/60; controls: (M) 1/158; (F) 0/149 Liver angiosarcomas: Breeders (F): 0/60, 27/54 Offspring group I: (M) 36/64; (F) 46/63; group II: (M) 24/60; (F) 28/60; controls: (M) 0/158; (F) 0/149 Neuroblastomas (see comments): Breeders (F): 0/60, 32/54 Offspring group I: (M) 31/64; (F) 27/63; group II: (M) 7/60; (F) 11/60; controls: (M) 0/158; (F) 0/149	NR [$P < 0.05$], all exposed group	99.97% purity The photomicrographs and the preferential location of the neuroblastomas in the anterior frontal lobes support the alternative diagnosis of an origin in the metabolically active olfactory neuroepithelium of the posterior nasal cavity (aesthesioneuroepithelioma)
Hamster, Golden (M) 109 wk Maltoni *et al.* (1981)	Inhalation 0, 50, 250, 500, 2500, 6000, 10 000 ppm [0, 130, 650, 1300, 6500, 15600, 26000 mg/m^3] 4 h/d, 5 d/wk, 30 wk 30/group, 60 controls	Liver angiosarcomas: 0/60, 0/30, 0/30, 2/30, 0/30, 1/30, 0/30 Skin epitheliomas: 3/60, 9/30*, 3/30, 7/30*, 3/30, 1/30, 7/30* Forestomach papillomas and acanthomas: 3/60, 3/30, 4/30, 9/30*, 17/30*, 10/30*, 10/30* Leukaemia: 8/60, 6/30, 6/30, 5/30, 9/30, 6/30, 5/30	NR *[$P < 0.05$]	99.97% purity Information on survival NR

Table 3.1 (continued)

Species, strain (sex) Duration Reference	Dosing regimen, Animals/group at start	Incidence of tumours	Significance	Comments
Hamster, Syrian golden (F) Lifetime Drew *et al.* (1983)	Inhalation 200 ppm [520 mg/m^3] 6 h/d, 5 d/wk 0 (untreated control); 6, 12, or 18 mo exposure of hamsters 8 wk old at onset; 6 mo exposure of hamsters 8, 14, or 20 mo old at onset; 12 mo exposure of hamsters 2, 8, 14 mo old at onset Initial group size NR	Haemangiosarcomas (all sites): 0/143, 13/88**, 4/52**, 2/103, 3/53*, 0/50, 0/52, 4/52**, 1/44, 0/43 Mammary gland carcinomas: 0/143, 28/87**, 31/52**, 47/102**, 2/52*, 0/50, 1/52, 31/52**, 6/44**, 0/42 Stomach adenomas: 5/138, 23/88**, 3/50*, 20/101**, 15/53**, 6/49*, 0/52, 3/50*, 10/44**, 3/41 Skin carcinomas: 0/133, 2/80, 9/48**, 3/90, 0/49, 0/46, 0/50, 2/80, 0/38, 0/30	*$P < 0.05$ **$P < 0.01$	Purity NR, commercial grade. Decrease in survival of exposed animals. Hamsters were necropsied when moribund or dead.
Chloroethylene oxide				
Mice, XVIInc./Z (M, F) ~80 wk Zajdela *et al.* (1980)	Subcutaneous 32 injections of 0 (control) or 0.1 mg chloroethylene oxide over 42 wk	Local tumours (mainly fibrosarcomas): 15/28 (M); 12/24 (F); 0/30 (M, controls)	[$P < 0.0001$]	Purity NR
Mice, XVIInc./Z (M) 52–54 wk Zajdela *et al.* (1980)	Skin painting with 1 mg chloroethylene oxide followed by TPA as a promoter 2 wk after initiation (3 × /wk, 42 wk)	Skin papillomas: 18/28 vs 4/28 (TPA controls). Skin carcinomas: 5/28 vs 0/28 (TPA controls)	[$P < 0.001$] $P < 0.02$	Purity NR Chloroethylene oxide tested as an initiator Chloroethylene oxide (1 mg) dissolved in 80 µL benzene

bw, body weight; d, day or days; h, hour or hours; F, female; M, male; h, hour or hours; mo, month or months; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; TPA, 12-*O*-tetradecanoyl phorbol-13-acetate; vs, versus; wk, week or weeks

a high incidence of tumours that were probably of olfactory neuroepithelial origin, but were formerly reported as cerebral neuroblastomas in some studies. Similar results were observed in co-exposed dams (Maltoni & Cotti, 1988). In a second study, rats were exposed to vinyl chloride for five weeks, beginning at birth. Angiosarcomas of the liver and hepatomas occurred at a high incidence in the offspring, but not in the dams that were co-exposed with the offspring (Maltoni *et al.*, 1981).

3.5 Carcinogenicity of metabolites

Chloroethylene oxide, a chemically reactive metabolite of vinyl chloride, was tested for carcinogenicity in a single study in mice by subcutaneous injection and in an initiation–promotion protocol by skin application. It caused a massive increase of fibrosarcomas at the site of injection and increased the incidence of squamous-cell papillomas and carcinomas of the skin at the site of application (Zajdela *et al.*, 1980).

4. Other Relevant Data

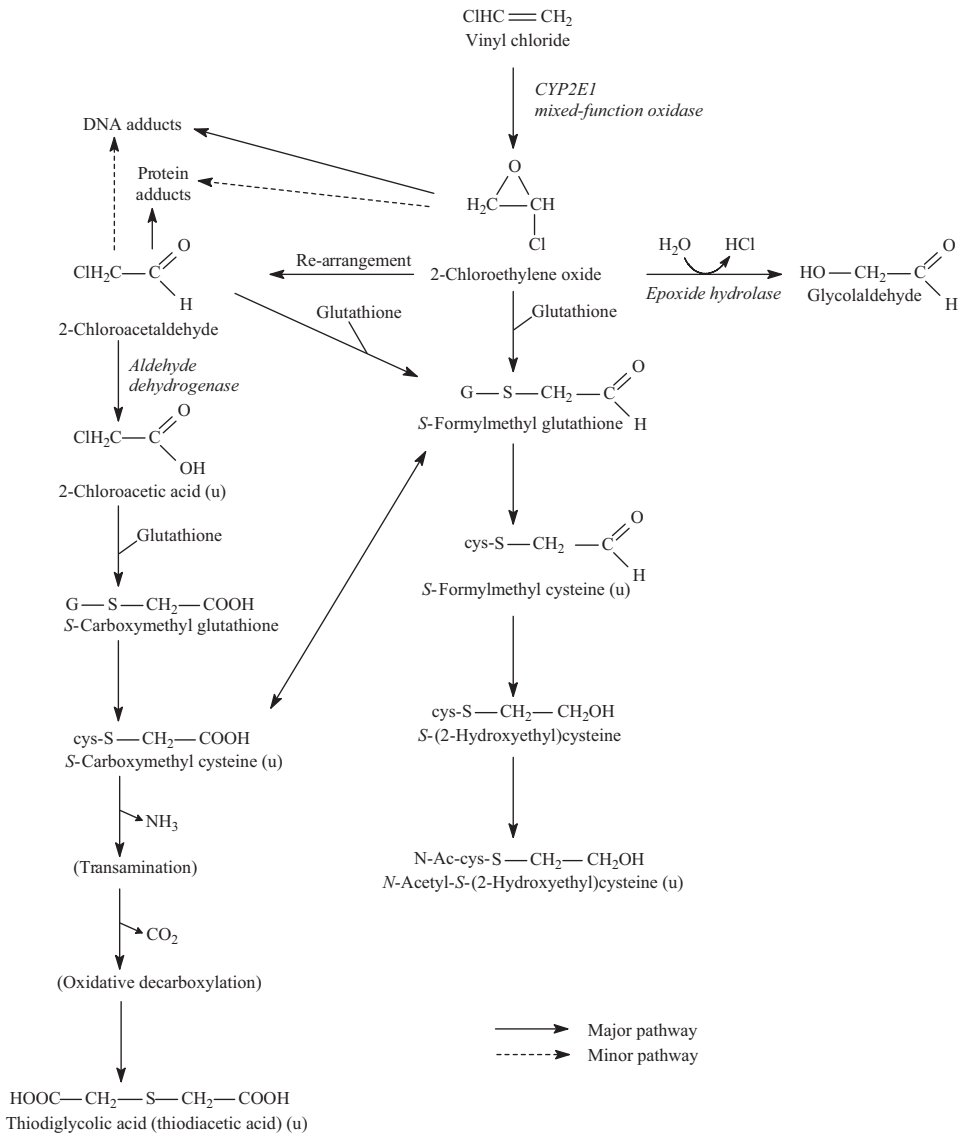
4.1 Kinetics and metabolism – studies in humans

Pulmonary absorption of vinyl chloride in humans appears to be rapid and the percentage absorbed is independent of the concentration inhaled. Adult male volunteers exposed for six hours to air containing 2.9–23.1 ppm [7.5–60 mg/m^3] vinyl chloride, retained on average approximately 42% of the inhaled amount (Krajewski *et al.*, 1980; cited in ATSDR, 2006). Pulmonary uptake is determined in part by the blood–air partition constant, which is 1.16 for vinyl chloride (Gargas *et al.*, 1989). Even if no data in humans were available, by assuming an identical solubility of vinyl chloride in rodent and human tissues, the tissue–blood partition constants would be twofold greater in humans (Clewell *et al.*, 2001), as a consequence of the twofold lower blood–air partition coefficient of vinyl chloride in humans compared with rats and mice.

In the postmitochondrial fractions of liver homogenates of humans and rats, large interindividual variations were noted in the metabolism of vinyl chloride, while the average activity was comparable between rat and human samples (Sabadie *et al.*, 1980). Vinyl chloride is primarily and rapidly metabolized in the liver (see Fig. 4.1), with a saturable mechanism (Reynolds *et al.*, 1975; Ivanetich *et al.*, 1977; Barbin & Bartsch, 1989; Lilly *et al.*, 1998; Bolt, 2005). The first step is oxidation in the liver, predominantly mediated by the human cytochrome P450 (CYP) isoenzyme 2E1 (WHO, 1999). Since CYP2E1 is present in several tissues at low levels – compared with concentrations in the liver – extrahepatic metabolism of systemically available vinyl chloride does occur. Inhibitors of CYP, such as 3-bromophenyl-4(5)-imidazole or 6-nitro-1,2,3-benzothiadiazole, reduce the metabolism of vinyl chloride *in vivo* (Bolt *et al.*, 1976). The primary metabolites of vinyl chloride are the highly reactive chloroethylene oxide, which is formed in a dose-dependent process and has a half-life of 1.6 minutes in aqueous solution at neutral pH (Barbin *et al.*, 1975; Dogliotti, 2006), and its rearrangement product chloroacetaldehyde (Bonse *et al.*, 1975). Both can bind to proteins, DNA and RNA and form ethenoadducts; chloroethylene oxide is the most reactive with nucleotides (Guengerich *et al.*, 1979).

Conjugation of chloroethylene oxide and chloroacetaldehyde with glutathione (GSH) eventually leads to the major urinary metabolites *N*-acetyl-*S*-(2-hydroxyethyl)cysteine and thiodiglycolic acid (Plugge & Safe, 1977). The latter compound has been reported to be the major metabolite in the urine of exposed workers (Cheng *et al.*, 2001) with concentrations in

Fig. 4.1 Proposed metabolic pathways for vinyl chloride



From Barbin *et al.* (1975), Plugge & Safe (1977), Green & Hathway (1977), Guengerich & Watanabe (1979), Guengerich *et al.* (1979), Bolt *et al.* (1980), adapted from ATSDR (2006).
CYP, cytochrome P450; (u), excreted in urine

urine that correlated with environmental vinyl chloride concentrations of > 5 ppm (ATSDR, 2006). Chloroethylene oxide can also be detoxified to glycolaldehyde by microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEH), while chloroacetaldehyde can be converted to chloroacetic acid by aldehyde dehydrogenase 2 (ALDH2) in the urine (Guengerich & Watanabe, 1979; ATSDR, 2006; IARC, 2008). Another route of elimination of vinyl chloride is exhalation of the unmetabolized compound, which occurs at low levels in humans (Müller *et al.*, 1978; Krajewski *et al.*, 1980; Pleil & Lindstrom, 1997). When volunteers were exposed for six hours to air containing 6.8–23.1 ppm [15–60 mg/m^3] vinyl chloride, the mean concentration in exhaled air ranged from 0.21 to 1.11 ppm [0.54–2.84 mg/m^3], representing 3.6 and 4.7%, respectively, of the inhaled amount of vinyl chloride (Krajewski *et al.*, 1980).

4.2 Kinetics and metabolism – studies in animals

Experimental studies on vinyl chloride have been evaluated in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1979, 1987, 2008). Comprehensive data on the mechanism of vinyl chloride-induced carcinogenicity are available, encompassing toxicokinetics, metabolism, biomarkers, and genotoxicity. Many key events in the pathway of vinyl chloride-induced hepatocarcinogenesis have been established (Bolt, 2005; Dogliotti, 2006; IARC, 2008).

The absorption, distribution, metabolism and elimination of vinyl chloride in rats and mice have been reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volumes 19 and 97 (IARC, 1979, 2008) and elsewhere (WHO, 1999; ATSDR, 2006); the most relevant data are summarized below.

In animals, pulmonary and gastrointestinal absorption of vinyl chloride occurs readily and rapidly, while dermal absorption is probably not significant. In monkeys exposed (whole body, except the head) to atmospheres containing 7000 and 800 ppm vinyl chloride for, respectively, 2.0 and 2.5 hours, only 0.023–0.031% of the total available amount of vinyl chloride was absorbed via the dermal route (Hefner *et al.*, 1975a), whereas intestinal absorption and uptake in blood was virtually complete in 10 minutes in rats after single oral doses (44–92 mg/kg bw) in aqueous solution (Withey, 1976). Pulmonary absorption in rats amounted to about 40% of inhaled [^{14}C]-labelled vinyl chloride for initial exposure concentrations below 260 mg/m^3 [100 ppm] (Bolt *et al.*, 1976).

The tissue–blood partition constants determine the distribution volume of vinyl chloride, and range from 0.4 (muscle) to 10 (fat) in male rats (Barton *et al.*, 1995). The fat–air partition constant for vinyl chloride, reported by several authors, tends to be higher in females than in males (WHO, 1999). Following inhalation, vinyl chloride is distributed in several tissues such as brain, liver, spleen, kidney, adipose tissue and muscle, with the highest levels found in liver and kidney (Bolt *et al.*, 1976). It has also been detected in fetal blood and amniotic fluid of rats after a 2.5-hour exposure to ~2000–13000 ppm [5200–33800 mg/m^3]), which indicates its capability to cross the placental barrier (Ungváry *et al.*, 1978).

CYP2E1 appears to account for all metabolic activity in rat liver microsomes, with a maximum velocity (V_{max}) of 4674 pmol/mg protein/min and a Michaelis-Menten constant (Km) of 7.42 µmol/L (El Ghissassi *et al.*, 1998). Chloroacetic acid was metabolized in rats to two major urinary metabolites, *viz.* *S*-(carboxymethyl) cysteine and thiodiacetic acid (Yllner, 1971). *S*-(carboxymethyl)cysteine, *S*-(2-chloroethyl) cysteine and *N*-acetyl-*S*-vinylcysteine are metabolites of vinyl chloride in rats after oral administration (Watanabe *et al.*, 1976a; Green & Hathway, 1975 and 1977) and *N*-acetyl-*S*-(2-hydroxyethyl)cysteine is a metabolite after inhalation (Watanabe *et al.*, 1976b). Thiodiglycolic

acid was obtained as a common metabolite in rats dosed separately with either chloroacetaldehyde, chloroacetic acid or *S*-(carboxymethyl) cysteine. Therefore, the identification of the same *S*-containing metabolite from vinyl chloride-treated animals lends support to the hypothesis that chloroethylene oxide or chloroacetaldehyde are formed and react with GSH (Green & Hathway, 1977). Following oral administration of [^{14}C]-labelled vinyl chloride to rats, [^{14}C]-carbon dioxide (Green & Hathway, 1975; Watanabe *et al.*, 1976a), [^{14}C]-labelled urea and glutamic acid were identified as minor metabolites (Green & Hathway, 1975).

Saturation of the metabolism of vinyl chloride (Gehring *et al.*, 1978; Filser & Bolt, 1979) appears to occur at inhalation concentrations above 200 ppm [520 mg/m^3] in rhesus monkeys (Buchter *et al.*, 1980) and above 250 ppm [650 mg/m^3] in rats (Bolt *et al.*, 1977; Filser & Bolt, 1979). The plateau of incidence of ASL in carcinogenicity bioassays is also observed in rats at exposures above 250 ppm (reviewed in Bolt, 2005).

ATSDR (2006) summarized the kinetic constants obtained *in vivo* in male Sprague-Dawley rats (V_{max}, 58 µmol/h/kg; Km, 1 µM) and rhesus monkeys (V_{max}, 50 µmol/h/kg) (based on Buchter *et al.*, 1980; Barton *et al.*, 1995). The latter value (50 µmol/h/kg) was suggested to be a closer approximation to human metabolism than the value of 110 µmol/h/kg estimated for rats by Filser & Bolt (1979) (ATSDR, 2006).

Watanabe *et al.* (1978a) reported that the elimination rate of vinyl chloride was not altered during repeated exposures via inhalation (five days per week during seven weeks) compared with a single inhalation exposure (~13 000 mg/m^3 [5000 ppm]).

Urinary excretion of polar metabolites of vinyl chloride is the predominant route of elimination at low concentrations, and only very small amounts are expired in the air unchanged (Hefner *et al.*, 1975b). Once metabolic saturation is attained, vinyl chloride is eliminated via other routes, mainly exhalation of the parent chemical. Following exposure of male rats to 26 mg/m^3 [10 ppm] [^{14}C]-labelled vinyl chloride by inhalation during six hours, urinary [^{14}C] radioactivity and expired vinyl chloride (measured as [^{14}C]-labelled carbon dioxide) were recovered in amounts of 68% and 2%, respectively; after exposure to a 100-fold higher concentration, the proportion of radioactivity in the urine decreased to 56% and the amount expired increased to 12% (Watanabe *et al.*, 1976b). Moreover, the same authors showed that after single oral doses of 0.05, 1 or 100 mg/kg bw [^{14}C]-labelled vinyl chloride, urinary excretion of radioactivity was 68, 59 and 11%, respectively; expired [^{14}C]-labelled carbon dioxide accounted for 9, 13 and 3%, respectively; pulmonary elimination of [^{14}C]-labelled vinyl chloride represented only 1–3% of the lower dose and 67% of the higher dose (Watanabe *et al.*, 1976a). The route of elimination may depend upon the route of administration, since urinary excretion is favoured after oral or intra-peritoneal administration, which indicates a first-pass effect due to metabolism in the liver (Clewell *et al.*, 2001).

4.3 Reaction with cellular macromolecules

Vinyl chloride is a genotoxic carcinogen in animals and humans (Block, 1974; Creech & Johnson, 1974; Lee & Harry, 1974; Maltoni *et al.*, 1974, 1981). It is mutagenic, usually in the presence of metabolic activation, in various assays with bacteria, yeast or mammalian cells; it is also clastogenic *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Vinyl chloride induces unscheduled DNA synthesis, increases the frequency of sister chromatid exchange in rat and human cells, and increases the frequency of chromosomal aberrations and micronucleus formation in mice, rats, and hamsters *in vivo* (IARC, 2008).

Osterman-Golkar *et al.* (1976) reported the alkylation of haemoglobin – at cysteine and

histidine – and small amounts of alkylated histidine in proteins from the testis of mice exposed to [^{14}C]-labelled vinyl chloride. Binding of non-volatile metabolites of [^{14}C]-labelled vinyl chloride to liver macromolecules has been observed, both *in vitro* and in rats exposed by inhalation (Kappus *et al.*, 1976; Watanabe *et al.*, 1978a, b; Guengerich & Watanabe, 1979; Guengerich *et al.*, 1979; Bolt *et al.*, 1980; Guengerich *et al.*, 1981; Barton *et al.*, 1995). A decrease in non-protein sulfhydryl concentration was seen in rats after exposure to high concentrations of vinyl chloride (Jedrychowski *et al.* (1984). Kappus *et al.* (1975) and Laib & Bolt (1977) reported binding of vinyl chloride to RNA in an in-vitro incubation with rat-liver microsomes, and to liver RNA of rats exposed *in vivo*. Watanabe *et al.* (1978b) reported macromolecular binding proportional to the amount of vinyl chloride metabolized, but not proportional to the exposure concentration.

Chloroethylene oxide and chloroacetaldehyde can form etheno adducts with nucleic acid bases *in vitro* (Guengerich, 1992). Chloroethylene oxide yields the *N*7-(2-oxoethyl)guanine adduct (7-OEG), four etheno adducts – 1,N^6-ethenoadenine (εA), 3,N^4-ethenocytosine (εC), N^2,3-ethenoguanine (N^2,3-εG) and 1,N^2-ethenoguanine (1,N^2-εG) (Ciroussel *et al.*, 1990; Guengerich, 1992), and 5,6,7,9-tetrahydro-7-hydroxy-9-oxoimidazo[1,2-*a*]purine (HO-ethanoG) (Müller *et al.*, 1996). In rats, the DNA adducts εA and εC have been found in various organs after exposure to vinyl chloride by inhalation. 7-OEG was the major DNA adduct formed *in vivo* and was found in greater amounts in young animals (Swenberg *et al.*, 2000). However, 7-OEG has a short half-life of about 62 hours, while the etheno adducts are more persistent. For example, N^2,3-εG (which is 10–100-fold more abundant than other etheno adducts in exposed animals) has a half-life of about 30 days (Fedtke *et al.*, 1990). After exposure of rats to 500 ppm [1300 mg/m^3] vinyl chloride for eight weeks, the εA level was significantly increased above background in liver, lung, lymphocytes and testis, while the amount of εC was increased in liver, kidney, lymphocytes and spleen, but not in brain (Guichard *et al.*, 1996; Barbin, 1999). When adult rats were exposed to 1100 ppm [2860 mg/m^3] vinyl chloride for one or four weeks, there was a significant increase in the level of N^2,3-εG in hepatocytes and non-parenchymal cells, but not in the brain, with a linear increase at exposure concentrations from 0 to 100 ppm [260 mg/m^3] and a plateau at 100–1100 ppm [260–2860 mg/m^3]. In weanling animals there was a small, statistically significant increase in N^2,3-εG in the brain after five days of exposure and the amount of N^2,3-εG in hepatocytes was significantly greater than that measured in non-parenchymal cells after exposures to 10 and 100 ppm [26 and 260 mg/m^3] vinyl chloride (Morinello *et al.*, 2002a). These differential responses between weanlings and adults may contribute to the particular susceptibility of young rats to vinyl chloride-induced neuroblastomas and HCC (Maltoni & Cotti, 1988). There was no significant difference in N^2,3-εG-adduct levels, nor in the rate of repair between hepatocytes and non-parenchymal cells (Morinello *et al.*, 2002b), which confirms the earlier observation of Yang *et al.* (2000). Data on the occurrence and persistence of vinyl chloride-DNA adducts in humans are still lacking. Nair *et al.* (1995) used immunoaffinity purification of the etheno adducts and subsequent [^{32}P]-postlabelling, and reported values of 14.1 εA and 8.1 εC per 10^9 parent bases in non-neoplastic liver tissue of a vinyl chloride-exposed patient with HCC. These adducts may also result from lipid peroxidation (El Ghissassi *et al.*, 1995) and their level can be quite high in patients with unknown exposure (up to 0.5–40 εA and εC per 10^9 parent bases in liver-DNA samples) (Bartsch & Nair, 2000a, b).

Barbin *et al.* (1985) reported that the 7-OEG–DNA adduct lacks miscoding or promutagenic properties. In contrast, etheno adducts and related exocyclic DNA adducts (e.g. εA, εC,

N^2,3–εG, and HO-ethanoG) may be involved in base-pair substitution and other specific mutations in cancer-related genes (i.e. *RAS* oncogenes, *TP53* tumour-suppressor gene) (WHO, 1999). The DNA lesions εA, εC and *N*2,3-εG have demonstrated miscoding potential *in vitro* and *in vivo* (Singer *et al.*, 1987; Cheng *et al.*, 1991; Mroczkowska & Kuśmierek, 1991; Singer *et al.*, 1991; Basu *et al.*, 1993). The adduct εA causes A→G transitions and A→T transversions, εC causes C→A transversions and C→T transitions and εG causes G→A transitions (Bolt, 2005). The same mutation types are observed in *TP53* and *RAS* genes in vinyl chloride-induced tumours. Mutations in K_i-*RAS* are associated with vinyl chloride-induced angiosarcomas in humans but not in rats, and to a lesser extent with vinyl chloride-induced HCC (CAA61CTA Ha-*Ras* mutation) in rats (IARC, 2008). In half of the cases, these mutations led to the incorporation of aspartate instead of glycine. *TP53* mutations associated with exposure to vinyl chloride (frequently A→T transversions) are found in approximately half of the angiosarcomas in both humans and rats. The presence of mutated p21ras and p53 proteins in the blood of a high proportion of workers exposed to vinyl chloride and the positive correlation between the occurrence of the mutated proteins and cumulative exposure to vinyl chloride, suggest that the mutation is an early event (IARC, 2008).

Various assays have been designed to explore the mutagenic properties of DNA adducts introduced into oligonucleotides or into site-specific vectors. Vector plasmids have also been treated with 2-chloroethyleneoxide or 2-chloroacetaldehyde and propagated in *E. coli* or mammalian cells. The mechanism by which adducts cause mutations still remains unclear, as misincorporation events depend on the individual mechanisms of DNA polymerases (Choi *et al.*, 2006). HO-ethanoG and 1,N^2-εG block the replication process with many different polymerases, thereby causing base misincorporation (Langouët *et al.*, 1997, 1998; Guengerich *et al.*, 1999).

The induction of extrahepatic tumours (e.g. in the brain or lung) by vinyl chloride has been established experimentally, but the mechanism is not well elucidated (Bolt, 2005). Overall, data suggest that etheno adducts are probably involved in the initiation of hepatocarcinogenesis, but the effects of the observed tissue- and cell-specificity and the variability in various biomarkers such as mutant p53 and anti-p53 antibodies are not completely clear (Trivers *et al.*, 1995; Brandt-Rauf *et al.*, 1996). One source for this variability may be explained by differences in polymorphisms in genes (i.e. *CYP2E1*, *GSTT1*, *GSTM1*, *ALDH2*) that encode metabolising enzymes or DNA-repair proteins (i.e. the *XRCC1* gene) (Li *et al.*, 2003a).

4.4 Synthesis

Numerous studies on the toxicokinetics, metabolism, genotoxicity, and molecular biology of vinyl chloride provide strong evidence that the carcinogenicity of this chamical involves a genotoxic mechanism of action, mediated by reactive metabolites. The extensive information on the mechanism underlying vinyl chloride-induced carcinogenicity has established many key events in the pathway of vinyl chloride-induced liver carcinogenesis. These key events include metabolic activation to reactive metabolites, binding of the metabolites to DNA, promutagenic action of these adducts leading to G→A and A→T transitions, and the effects of such mutations on the functioning of proto-oncogenes and tumour-suppressor genes at the gene and protein levels, with tumourigenesis as the final outcome. Many of these key events identified in experimental animals have also been demonstrated in humans.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride. Vinyl chloride causes angiosarcoma of the liver, and hepatocellular carcinoma.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride.

There is *sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of chloroethylene oxide.

There is strong evidence that the carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride operates by a genotoxic mechanism that involves metabolic activation to reactive metabolites, binding of the metabolites to DNA, promutagenic action of these adducts leading to mutations in proto-oncogenes and tumour-suppressor genes. Many of these key events identified in experimental animals have also been demonstrated in humans.

Vinyl chloride is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

ATSDR (2006). *Toxicological Profile on Vinyl Chloride*. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Available at http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/toxprofiles/phs20.html

Barbin A (1999). Role of etheno DNA adducts in carcinogenesis induced by vinyl chloride in rats. *IARC Sci Publ*, 150: 303–313. PMID:10626230

Barbin A & Bartsch H (1989). Nucleophilic selectivity as a determinant of carcinogenic potency (TD50) in rodents: a comparison of mono- and bi-functional alkylating agents and vinyl chloride metabolites. *Mutat Res*, 215: 95–106. PMID:2811916

Barbin A, Brésil H, Croisy A *et al.* (1975). Liver-microsome-mediated formation of alkylating agents from vinyl bromide and vinyl chloride. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*, 67: 596–603. doi:10.1016/0006-291X(75)90854-2 PMID:1201042

Barbin A, Laib RJ, Bartsch H (1985). Lack of miscoding properties of 7-(2-oxoethyl)guanine, the major vinyl chloride-DNA adduct. *Cancer Res*, 45: 2440–2444. PMID:3986785

Barton HA, Creech JR, Godin CS *et al.* (1995). Chloroethylene mixtures: pharmacokinetic modeling and in vitro metabolism of vinyl chloride, trichloroethylene, and trans-1,2-dichloroethylene in rat. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 130: 237–247. doi:10.1006/taap.1995.1029 PMID:7871537

Bartsch H & Nair J (2000a). New DNA-based biomarkers for oxidative stress and cancer chemoprevention studies*European Journal of Cancer (Oxford, England)*, 36: 1229–1234.

Bartsch H & Nair J (2000b). Ultrasensitive and specific detection methods for exocylic DNA adducts: markers for lipid peroxidation and oxidative stress. *Toxicology*, 153: 105–114. PMID:11090950

Basu AK, Wood ML, Niedernhofer LJ *et al.* (1993). Mutagenic and genotoxic effects of three vinyl chloride-induced DNA lesions: 1,N6-ethenoadenine, 3,N4-ethenocytosine, and 4-amino-5-(imidazol-2-yl) imidazole. *Biochemistry*, 32: 12793–12801. doi:10.1021/bi00210a031 PMID:8251500

Block JB (1974). Angiosarcoma of the liver following vinyl chloride exposure. *JAMA*, 229: 53–54. doi:10.1001/jama.229.1.53 PMID:4406736

Boffetta P, Matisane L, Mundt KA, Dell LD (2003). Meta-analysis of studies of occupational exposure to vinyl chloride in relation to cancer mortality. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 29: 220–229. PMID:12828392

Bolt HM (2005). Vinyl chloride-a classical industrial toxicant of new interest. *Crit Rev Toxicol*, 35: 307–323. doi:10.1080/10408440490915975 PMID:15989139

Bolt HM, Filser JG, Laib RJ, Ottenwälder H (1980). Binding kinetics of vinyl chloride and vinyl bromide at very low doses. *Arch Toxicol Suppl*, 3: 129–142. PMID:6930940

Bolt HM, Kappus H, Buchter A, Bolt W (1976). Disposition of (1,2–14C) vinyl chloride in the rat. *Arch Toxicol*, 35: 153–162. doi:10.1007/BF00293562 PMID:989287

Bolt HM, Laib RJ, Kappus H, Buchter A (1977). Pharmacokinetics of vinyl chloride in the rat. *Toxicology*, 7: 179–188. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(77)90063-4 PMID:857343

Bonse G, Urban T, Reichert D, Henschler D (1975). Chemical reactivity, metabolic oxirane formation and biological reactivity of chlorinated ethylenes in the isolated perfused rat liver preparation. *Biochem Pharmacol*, 24: 1829–1834. doi:10.1016/0006-2952(75)90468-2 PMID:1233985

Boraiko C & Batt JTin Stabilizers Association (2005). Evaluation of employee exposure to organic tin compounds used as stabilizers at PVC processing facilities. *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 2: 73–76, quiz D6–D7. doi:10.1080/15459620590906810 PMID:15764527

Brandt-Rauf PW, Chen JM, Marion MJ *et al.* (1996). Conformational effects in the p53 protein of mutations induced during chemical carcinogenesis: molecular dynamic and immunologic analyses. *J Protein Chem*, 15: 367–375. doi:10.1007/BF01886863 PMID:8819013

Buchter A, Filser JG, Peter H, Bolt HM (1980). Pharmacokinetics of vinyl chloride in the Rhesus monkey. *Toxicol Lett*, 6: 33–36. doi:10.1016/0378-4274(80)90099-5 PMID:7423542

CAREX (1999). Carex: industry specific estimates – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf

Casula D, Cherchi P, Spiga G, Spinazzola A (1977). Environmental dust in a plant for the production of polyvinyl chloride *Ann Ist Super Sanita*, 13: 189–198. PMID:603117

CDC (1997). Epidemiologic notes and reports. Angiosarcoma of the liver among polyvinyl chloride workers–Kentucky. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*, 46: 97–101. PMID:9045039

Cheng KC, Preston BD, Cahill DS *et al.* (1991). The vinyl chloride DNA derivative N2,3-ethenoguanine produces G — -A transitions in Escherichia coli. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*, 88: 9974–9978. doi:10.1073/pnas.88.22.9974 PMID:1946466

Cheng TJ, Huang YF, Ma YC (2001). Urinary thiodiglycolic acid levels for vinyl chloride monomer-exposed polyvinyl chloride workers. *J Occup Environ Med*, 43: 934–938. doi:10.1097/00043764-200111000-00002 PMID:11725332

Choi JY, Zang H, Angel KC *et al.* (2006). Translesion synthesis across 1,N2-ethenoguanine by human DNA polymerases. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 19: 879–886. doi:10.1021/tx060051v PMID:16780368

Ciroussel F, Barbin A, Eberle G, Bartsch H (1990). Investigations on the relationship between DNA ethenobase adduct levels in several organs of vinyl chloride-exposed rats and cancer susceptibility. *Biochem Pharmacol*, 39: 1109–1113. doi:10.1016/0006-2952(90)90291-R PMID:2322297

Clewell HJ, Gentry PR, Gearhart JM *et al.* (2001). Comparison of cancer risk estimates for vinyl chloride using animal and human data with a PBPK model. *Sci Total Environ*, 274: 37–66. doi:10.1016/S0048-9697(01)00730-6 PMID:11453305

Cooper WC (1981). Epidemiologic study of vinyl chloride workers: mortality through December 31, 1972. *Environ Health Perspect*, 41: 101–106. doi:10.2307/3429301 PMID:7199425

Creech JL Jr & Johnson MN (1974). Angiosarcoma of liver in the manufacture of polyvinyl chloride. *J Occup Med*, 16: 150–151. PMID:4856325

Dimmick WF (1981). EPA programs of vinyl chloride monitoring in ambient air. *Environ Health Perspect*, 41: 203–206. doi:10.2307/3429316 PMID:6895871

Dogliotti E (2006). Molecular mechanisms of carcinogenesis by vinyl chloride. *Ann Ist Super Sanita*, 42: 163–169. PMID:17033136

Drew RT, Boorman GA, Haseman JK *et al.* (1983). The effect of age and exposure duration on cancer induction by a known carcinogen in rats, mice, and hamsters. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 68: 120–130. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(83)90361-7 PMID:6682580

El Ghissassi F, Barbin A, Bartsch H (1998). Metabolic activation of vinyl chloride by rat liver microsomes: low-dose kinetics and involvement of cytochrome P450 2E1. *Biochem Pharmacol*, 55: 1445–1452. doi:10.1016/S0006-2952(97)00645-X PMID:10076537

El Ghissassi F, Boivin S, Lefrançois L *et al.* (1995). Glutathione transferase Mu1–1 (GSTM1) getotype in individuals exposed to vinyl chloride: Relation to 'vinyl chloride disease' and liver angiosarcoma. *Clinical Chemistry*, 41: 1922–1924.

European Commission (2003). *Integrated Pollution Prevention and Control (IPPC). Reference Document on Best Available Techniques in the Large Volume Organic Chemical Industry*. Luxembourg.

Fedtke N, Boucheron JA, Walker VE, Swenberg JA (1990). Vinyl chloride-induced DNA adducts. II: Formation and persistence of 7-(2′ -oxoethyl)guanine and N2,3-ethenoguanine in rat tissue DNA. *Carcinogenesis*, 11: 1287–1292. doi:10.1093/carcin/11.8.1287 PMID:2387014

Feron VJ, Hendriksen CF, Speek AJ *et al.* (1981). Lifespan oral toxicity study of vinyl chloride in rats. *Food Cosmet Toxicol*, 19: 317–333. doi:10.1016/0015-6264(81)90391-6 PMID:7196371

Feron VJ & Kroes R (1979). One-year time-sequence inhalation toxicity study of vinyl chloride in rats. II. Morphological changes in the respiratory tract, ceruminous glands, brain, kidneys, heart and spleen. *Toxicology*, 13: 131–141. PMID:516073

Feron VJ, Kruysse A, Til HP (1979). One-year time sequence inhalation toxicity study of vinyl chloride in rats. I. Growth, mortality, haematology, clinical chemistry and organ weights. *Toxicology*, 13: 25–28. PMID:516069

Filser JG & Bolt HM (1979). Pharmacokinetics of halogenated ethylenes in rats. *Arch Toxicol*, 42: 123–136. doi:10.1007/BF00316492 PMID:485853

Fleig I & Thiess AM (1974). Chromosome tests in vinyl chloride exposed workers] (Ger.). *Arbeitsmedizin, Sozialmedizin, Praventivmedizin*, 12: 280–283.

Gargas ML, Burgess RJ, Voisard DE *et al.* (1989). Partition coefficients of low-molecular-weight volatile chemicals in various liquids and tissues. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 98: 87–99. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(89)90137-3 PMID:2929023

Gehring PJ, Watanabe PG, Park CN (1978). Resolution of dose-response toxicity data for chemicals requiring metabolic activation: example–vinyl chloride. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 44: 581–591. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(78)90266-1 PMID:567390

German Environmental Office (1978). Air contamination with vinyl chloride (VC) from PVC products] (Ger.). *Umweltbundes Ber*, 5: 1–23.

Green T & Hathway DE (1975). The biological fate in rats of vinyl chloride in relation to its oncogenicity. *Chem Biol Interact*, 11: 545–562. doi:10.1016/0009-2797(75)90030-7 PMID:1201617

Green T & Hathway DE (1977). The chemistry and biogenesis of the S-containing metabolites of vinyl chloride in rats. *Chem Biol Interact*, 17: 137–150. doi:10.1016/0009-2797(77)90080-1 PMID:328181

Groth DH, Coate WB, Ulland BM, Hornung RW (1981). Effects of aging on the induction of angiosarcoma. *Environ Health Perspect*, 41: 53–57. doi:10.2307/3429293 PMID:7199429

Guengerich FP (1992). Roles of the vinyl chloride oxidation products 1-chlorooxirane and 2-chloroacetaldehyde in the in vitro formation of etheno adducts of nucleic acid bases [corrected] *Chem Res Toxicol*, 5: 2–5. doi:10.1021/tx00025a001 PMID:1581532

Guengerich FP, Crawford WM Jr, Watanabe PG (1979). Activation of vinyl chloride to covalently bound metabolites: roles of 2-chloroethylene oxide and 2-chloroacetaldehyde. *Biochemistry*, 18: 5177–5182. doi:10.1021/bi00590a023 PMID:497175

Guengerich FP, Mason PS, Stott WT *et al.* (1981). Roles of 2-haloethylene oxides and 2-haloacetaldehydes derived from vinyl bromide and vinyl chloride in irreversible binding to protein and DNA. *Cancer Res*, 41: 4391–4398. PMID:7030476

Guengerich FP & Watanabe PG (1979). Metabolism of [14C]- and [36C]-labeled vinyl chloride in vivo and in vitro. *Biochem Pharmacol*, 28: 589–596. doi:10.1016/0006-2952(79)90140-0 PMID:444246

Guichard Y, el Ghissassi F, Nair J *et al.* (1996). Formation and accumulation of DNA ethenobases in adult Sprague-Dawley rats exposed to vinyl chloride. *Carcinogenesis*, 17: 1553–1559. PMID:8761409

Guengerich FP, Langouët S, Mican AN *et al.* (1999). Formation of etheno adducts and their effects on DNA polymerases. *IARC Sci Publ*, 150: 137–145. PMID:10626215

Hefner RE Jr, Watanabe PG, Gehring PJ (1975a). Percutaneous absorption of vinyl chloride. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 34: 529–532. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(75)90149-0 PMID:813333

Hefner RE Jr, Watanabe PG, Gehring PJ (1975b). Preliminary studies on the fate of inhaled vinyl chloride monomer (VCM) in rats. *Environ Health Perspect*, 11: 85–95. doi:10.2307/3428329 PMID:1175571

Hoffmann D, Patrianakos C, Brunnemann KD, Gori GB (1976). Chromatographic determination of vinyl chloride in tobacco smoke. *Anal Chem*, 48: 47–50. doi:10.1021/ac60365a063 PMID:1244767

Holm L, Westlin A, Holmberg B (1982). *Technical control measures in the prevention of occupational cancer. An example from the PVC industry.* In: *Proc. Int. Symp. Prevent. Occup. Cancer.* Geneva: International Labour Office, pp. 538–546.

Holmberg B, Kronevi T, Winell M (1976). The pathology of vinyl chloride exposed mice. *Acta Vet Scand*, 17: 328–342. PMID:988738

Hong CB, Winston JM, Thornburg LP *et al.* (1981). Follow-up study on the carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride and vinylidene chloride in rats and mice: tumour incidence and mortality subsequent to exposure. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 7: 909–924. doi:10.1080/15287398109530034 PMID:7265317

Huang M (1996). Epidemiological investigation on occupational malignant tumor in workers exposed to vinyl chloride. In: *Ministry of Public Health of China. National epidemiological study on eight occupational cancers (1982–1984) [in Chinese].* Beijing: Ministry of Public Health of China, pp. 86–98.

IARC (1974). Some anti-thyroid and related substances, nitrofurans and industrial chemical. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 7: 1–326.

IARC (1979). Some monomers, plastics and synthetic elastomers, and acrolein. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 19: 1–513. PMID:285915

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (2004). Tobacco smoke and involuntary smoking. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 83: 1–1438. PMID:15285078

IARC (2008). 1,3-Butadiene, ethylene oxide and vinyl halides (vinyl fluoride, vinyl chloride and vinyl bromide). *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 97: 1–510. PMID: 20232717.

Infante PF, Petty SE, Groth DH *et al.* (2009). Vinyl chloride propellant in hair spray and angiosarcoma of the liver among hairdressers and barbers: case reports. *Int J Occup Environ Health*, 15: 36–42. PMID:19267125

Ivanetich KM, Aronson I, Katz ID (1977). The interaction of vinyl chloride with rat hepatic microsomal cytochrome P-450 in vitro. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*, 74: 1411–1418. doi:10.1016/0006-291X(77)90599-X PMID:14640

Jedrychowski RA, Sokal JA, Chmielnicka J (1984). Influence of exposure mode on vinyl chloride action. *Arch Toxicol*, 55: 195–198. PMID:6497652

Kappus H, Bold HM, Buchter A, Bolt W (1975). Rat liver microsomes catalyse covalent binding of 14C-vinyl chloride to macromolecules. *Nature*, 257: 134–135. PMID:240126

Kappus H, Bolt HM, Buchter A, Bolt W (1976). Liver microsomal uptake of (14C)vinyl chloride and transformation to protein alkylating metabolites in vitro. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 37: 461–471. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(76)90208-8 PMID:9709

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European

Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Krajewski J, Dobecki M, Gromiec J (1980). Retention of vinyl chloride in the human lung. *Br J Ind Med*, 37: 373–374. PMID:7448132

Kurliandskiĭ BA, Stovbur NN, Turusov VS (1981). Hygienic regulation of vinyl chloride *Gig Sanit*, 374–76. PMID:7194205

Laib RJ & Bolt HM (1977). Alkylation of RNA by vinyl chloride metabolites in vitro and in vivo: formation of 1-N(6)-etheno-adenosine. *Toxicology*, 8: 185–195. PMID:929626

Langouët S, Mican AN, Müller M *et al.* (1998). Misincorporation of nucleotides opposite five-membered exocyclic ring guanine derivatives by escherichia coli polymerases in vitro and in vivo: 1,N2-ethenoguanine, 5,6,7,9-tetrahydro-9-oxoimidazo[1, 2-a]purine, and 5,6,7,9-tetrahydro-7-hydroxy-9-oxoimidazo[1, 2-a]purine. *Biochemistry*, 37: 5184–5193. doi:10.1021/bi972327r PMID:9548749

Langouët S, Müller M, Guengerich FP (1997). Misincorporation of dNTPs opposite 1,N2-ethenoguanine and 5,6,7,9-tetrahydro-7-hydroxy-9-oxoimidazo[1,2-a]purine in oligonucleotides by Escherichia coli polymerases I exo- and II exo-, T7 polymerase exo-, human immunodeficiency virus-1 reverse transcriptase, and rat polymerase beta. *Biochemistry*, 36: 6069–6079. doi:10.1021/bi962526v PMID:9166777

Laplanche A, Clavel-Chapelon F, Contassot JC, Lanouzière CThe French VCM Group (1992). Exposure to vinyl chloride monomer: results of a cohort study after a seven year follow up. *Br J Ind Med*, 49: 134–137. PMID:1536821

Lee CC, Bhandari JC, Winston JM *et al.* (1978). Carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride and vinylidene chloride. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 4: 15–30. doi:10.1080/15287397809529640 PMID:633405

Lee FI & Harry DS (1974). Angiosarcoma of the liver in a vinyl-chloride worker. *Lancet*, 1(7870):1316–8. PMID:4134297 doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(74)90683-7

Li Y, Marion MJ, Ho R *et al.* (2003a). Polymorphisms for vinyl chloride metabolism in French vinyl chloride workers. *Int J Occup Med Environ Health*, 16: 55–59. PMID:12705718

Lide DR, editor (2008). *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*. 89th ed., Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, pp. 3–100.

Lilly PD, Thornton-Manning JR, Gargas ML *et al.* (1998). Kinetic characterization of CYP2E1 inhibition in vivo and in vitro by the chloroethylenes. *Arch Toxicol*, 72: 609–621. doi:10.1007/s002040050551 PMID:9851676

Maltoni C & Cotti G (1988). Carcinogenicity of vinyl chloride in Sprague-Dawley rats after prenatal and postnatal exposure. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*, 534: 1 Living in a C145–159. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.1988.tb30108.x PMID:3389652

Maltoni C, Lefemine G, Chieco P, Carretti D (1974). Vinyl chloride carcinogenesis: current results and perspectives. *Med Lav*, 65: 421–444. PMID:4477887

Maltoni C, Lefemine G, Ciliberti A *et al.* (1981). Carcinogenicity bioassays of vinyl chloride monomer: a model of risk assessment on an experimental basis. *Environ Health Perspect*, 41: 3–29. doi:10.2307/3429291 PMID:6800782

Mastrangelo G, Fedeli U, Fadda E *et al.* (2004). Increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma and liver cirrhosis in vinyl chloride workers: synergistic effect of occupational exposure with alcohol intake. *Environ Health Perspect*, 112: 1188–1192. PMID:15289165

Morinello EJ, Ham AJL, Ranasinghe A *et al.* (2002b). Molecular dosimetry and repair of N(2),3-ethenoguanine in rats exposed to vinyl chloride. *Cancer Res*, 62: 5189–5195. PMID:12234983

Morinello EJ, Koc H, Ranasinghe A, Swenberg JA (2002a). Differential induction of N(2),3-ethenoguanine in rat brain and liver after exposure to vinyl chloride. *Cancer Res*, 62: 5183–5188. PMID:12234982

Mroczkowska MM & Kuśmierek JT (1991). Miscoding potential of N2,3-ethenoguanine studied in an Escherichia coli DNA-dependent RNA polymerase in vitro system and possible role of this adduct in vinyl chloride-induced mutagenesis. *Mutagenesis*, 6: 385–390. doi:10.1093/mutage/6.5.385 PMID:1795643

Müller G, Norpoth K, Kusters E *et al.* (1978). Determination of thiodiglycolic acid in urine specimens of vinyl chloride exposed workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 41: 199–205. doi:10.1007/BF00572892 PMID:649210

Müller M, Belas F, Ueno H, Guengerich FP (1996). Development of a mass spectrometric assay for 5,6,7,9-tetrahydro-7-hydroxy-9-oximidazo[1,2-alpha] purine in DNA modified by 2-chloro-oxirane. *Adv Exp Med Biol*, 387: 31–36. PMID:8794191

Mundt KA, Dell LD, Austin RP *et al.* (2000). Historical cohort study of 10 109 men in the North American vinyl chloride industry, 1942–72: update of cancer mortality to 31 December 1995. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 774–781. doi:10.1136/oem.57.11.774 PMID:11024202

Nair J, Barbin A, Guichard Y, Bartsch H (1995). 1,N6-ethenodeoxyadenosine and 3,N4-ethenodeoxycytine in liver DNA from humans and untreated rodents detected by immunoaffinity/32P-postlabeling. *Carcinogenesis*, 16: 613–617. PMID:7697821

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83)*. Cincinnati, OH: National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes2/76445occ.html

NTP (2005). Vinyl ChlorideReport on Carcinogens, Eleventh Edition. *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 1–A32. PMID:19826456

Osterman-Golkar S *et al.* (1976). Alkylation of DNA and proteins in mice exposed to vinyl

chloride *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, 76 (2): 259–266. PMID:1027429 doi:10.1016/0006-291X(77)90720-3

Pirastu R, Baccini M, Biggeri A, Comba P (2003). Epidemiologic study of workers exposed to vinyl chloride in Porto Marghera: mortality update *Epidemiol Prev*, 27: 161–172. PMID:12958735

Pleil JD & Lindstrom AB (1997). Exhaled human breath measurement method for assessing exposure to halogenated volatile organic compounds. *Clin Chem*, 43: 723–730. PMID:9166222

Plugge H & Safe S (1977). Vinyl chloride metabolism — a review *Chemosphere*, 6: 309–325. doi:10.1016/0045-6535(77)90095-9

Radike MJ, Stemmer KL, Bingham E (1981). Effect of ethanol on vinyl chloride carcinogenesis. *Environ Health Perspect*, 41: 59–62. doi:10.1289/ehp.814159 PMID:6277614

Reynolds ES, Moslen MT, Szabo S, Jaeger RJ (1975). Vinyl chloride-induced deactivation of cytochrome P-450 and other components of the liver mixed function oxidase system: an in vivo study. *Res Commun Chem Pathol Pharmacol*, 12: 685–694. PMID:175418

Sabadie N, Malaveille C, Camus AM, Bartsch H (1980). Comparison of the hydroxylation of benzo(a)pyrene with the metabolism of vinyl chloride, N-nitrosomorpholine, and N-nitroso-N'-methylpiperazine to mutagens by human and rat liver microsomal fractions. *Cancer Res*, 40: 119–126. PMID:7349891

Simonato L, L'Abbé KA, Andersen A *et al.* (1991). A collaborative study of cancer incidence and mortality among vinyl chloride workers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 17: 159–169. PMID:2068554

Singer B, Kuśmierek JT, Folkman W *et al.* (1991). Evidence for the mutagenic potential of the vinyl chloride induced adduct, N2, 3-etheno-deoxyguanosine, using a site-directed kinetic assay. *Carcinogenesis*, 12: 745–747. doi:10.1093/carcin/12.4.745 PMID:2013138

Singer B, Spengler SJ, Chavez F, Kuśmierek JT (1987). The vinyl chloride-derived nucleoside, N2,3-ethenoguanosine, is a highly efficient mutagen in transcription. *Carcinogenesis*, 8: 745–747. doi:10.1093/carcin/8.5.745 PMID:3581434

Smulevich VB, Fedotova IV, Filatova VS (1988). Increasing evidence of the rise of cancer in workers exposed to vinylchloride. *Br J Ind Med*, 45: 93–97. PMID:3342200

Summers (2006). Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology. John Wiley & Sons, Inc

Suzuki Y (1983). Neoplastic effect of vinyl chloride in mouse lung–lower doses and short-term exposure. *Environ Res*, 32: 91–103. doi:10.1016/0013-9351(83)90195-0 PMID:6617622

Swenberg JA, Ham A, Koc H *et al.* (2000). DNA adducts: effects of low exposure to ethylene oxide, vinyl chloride and butadiene. *Mutat Res*, 464: 77–86. PMID:10633179

Thériault G & Allard P (1981). Cancer mortality of a group of Canadian workers exposed to vinyl chloride monomer. *J Occup Med*, 23: 671–676. doi:10.1097/00043764-198110000-00009 PMID:7299502

Thriene B, Benkwitz F, Willer H *et al.* (2000). Chemical accident in Schönbeck–an assessment of the risk to health and environment *Gesundheitswesen*, 62: 34–38. PMID:10705663

Til HP, Feron VJ, Immel HR (1991). Lifetime (149-wk) oral carcinogenicity study of vinyl chloride in rats. *Food Chem Toxicol*, 29: 713–718. doi:10.1016/0278-6915(91)90130-Y PMID:1959825

Trivers GE, Cawley HL, DeBenedetti VM *et al.* (1995). Anti-p53 antibodies in sera of workers occupationally exposed to vinyl chloride. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 87: 1400–1407. doi:10.1093/jnci/87.18.1400 PMID:7658501

Ungváry G, Hudák A, Tátrai E *et al.* (1978). Effects of vinyl chloride exposure alone and in combination with trypan blue–applied systematically during all thirds of pregnancy on the fetuses of CFY rats. *Toxicology*, 11: 45–54. doi:10.1016/S0300-483X(78)90389-X PMID:705803

Ward E, Boffetta P, Andersen A *et al.* (2001). Update of the follow-up of mortality and cancer incidence among European workers employed in the vinyl chloride industry. *Epidemiology*, 12: 710–718. PMID:11679801

Watanabe PG, McGowan GR, Gehring PJ (1976a). Fate of (14C)vinyl chloride after single oral administration in rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 36: 339–352. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(76)90013-2 PMID:1273852

Watanabe PG, McGowan GR, Madrid EO, Gehring PJ (1976b). Fate of [14C]vinyl chloride following inhalation exposure in rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 37: 49–59. doi:10.1016/S0041-008X(76)80007-5 PMID:968906

Watanabe PG, Zempel JA, Gehring PJ (1978a). Comparison of the fate of vinyl chloride following single and repeated exposure in rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 44: 391–399. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(78)90199-0 PMID:675709

Watanabe PG, Zempel JA, Pegg DG, Gehring PJ (1978b). Hepatic macromolecular binding following exposure to vinyl chloride. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 44: 571–579. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(78)90265-X PMID:684749

Weber H, Reinl W, Greiser E (1981). German investigations on morbidity and mortality of workers exposed to vinyl chloride. *Environ Health Perspect*, 41: 95–99. doi:10.2307/3429300 PMID:7333247

WHO (1999). *Vinyl Chloride (Environmental Health Criteria 215)*. Geneva: World Health Organization

Withey JR (1976). Pharmacodynamics and uptake of vinyl chloride monomer administered by various routes to rats. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 1: 381–394. doi:10.1080/15287397609529338 PMID:1246084

Wong O, Whorton MD, Foliart DE, Ragland D (1991). An industry-wide epidemiologic study of vinyl chloride workers, 1942–1982. *Am J Ind Med*, 20: 317–334. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700200305 PMID:1928109

Wong RH, Chen PC, Du CL *et al.* (2002). An increased standardised mortality ratio for liver cancer among polyvinyl chloride workers in Taiwan. *Occup Environ Med*, 59: 405–409. doi:10.1136/oem.59.6.405 PMID:12040117

Wong RH, Chen PC, Wang JD *et al.* (2003). Interaction of vinyl chloride monomer exposure and hepatitis B viral infection on liver cancer. *J Occup Environ Med*, 45: 379–383. doi:10.1097/01.jom.0000063622.37065.fd PMID:12708141

Yang Y, Nair J, Barbin A, Bartsch H (2000). Immunohistochemical detection of 1,N(6)-ethenodeoxyadenosine, a promutagenic DNA adduct, in liver of rats exposed to vinyl chloride or an iron overload. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 777–781. doi:10.1093/carcin/21.4.777 PMID:10753215

Yllner S (1971). Metabolism of chloroacetate-1–14C in the mouse. *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology and Toxicology*, 30: 69–80.

Zajdela F, Croisy A, Barbin A *et al.* (1980). Carcinogenicity of chloroethylene oxide, an ultimate reactive metabolite of vinyl chloride, and bis(chloromethyl)ether after subcutaneous administration and in initiation-promotion experiments in mice. *Cancer Res*, 40: 352–356. PMID:7356519

Zhu SM, Ren XF, Wan JX, Xia ZL (2005). Evaluation in vinyl chloride monomer-exposed workers and the relationship between liver lesions and gene polymorphisms of metabolic enzymes. *World J Gastroenterol*, 11: 5821–5827. PMID:16270392

ISOPROPYL ALCOHOL MANUFACTURE BY THE STRONG-ACID PROCESS

Isopropyl alcohol and isopropyl alcohol manufacture (strong-acid process) were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1977 and 1987 (IARC, 1977, 1987). Since that time, new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation. A separate *Monograph* on 'Mists from Strong Inorganic Acids' – updating earlier evaluations on this agent (IARC, 1992) – appears elsewhere in this volume.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Manufacturing processes

Isopropyl alcohol has been called the first petrochemical (IARC, 1992). It can be prepared via three different methods: indirect hydration of propylene, direct hydration of propylene, and catalytic hydrogenation of acetone. Indirect hydration, also called the sulfuric-acid process, was the only method used to produce isopropanol worldwide until the first commercial direct-hydration process was introduced in 1951. Each method has its advantages and disadvantages. For example, direct hydration is less corrosive than indirect hydration mediated by sulfuric acid. However, the direct method requires a pure propylene feed, in contrast to the indirect process, which can use a dilute, refinery stream (Lee *et al.*, 2003).

In the indirect-hydration process, propylene is reacted with sulfuric acid to produce mono- and diisopropyl sulfates, which are then hydrolysed to isopropanol. In the two-step strong-acid process, separate reactors are used for the propylene-absorption phase and the hydrolysis of the sulfate esters. The reaction occurs at high sulfuric acid concentration (> 80% wt) and low temperature (e.g. 20–30 °C). The weak-acid process is conducted in a single step at lower acid concentration (60–80% wt) and higher temperature (60–65 °C) (Logsdon & Loke, 2001).

1.2 Human exposure

1.2.1 Occupational exposure

CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens, based on data collected in the European Union (EU) from 1990 to 1993. The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). No results for isopropanol were reported. For data on EU workers exposed to strong inorganic acid mists containing sulfuric acid, see the *Monograph* on Mists from Strong Inorganic Acids in this volume.

From the National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83) it was estimated that approximately 4.7 million workers (including approximately 2.1 million women) in the United States of America (USA) were potentially exposed to isopropanol (NIOSH, 1990). No specific information on the numbers of workers exposed during isopropanol production was provided.

Although no data were available on exposure measurements at the workplace during isopropanol production, potential exposures from the indirect-hydration process include propylene, sulfuric acid, isopropanol, diisopropyl and isopropyl hydrogen sulfates, diisopropyl ether, propanal, acetone, sulfur oxides, polymeric oils and residues. In the past, benzene was used as an azeotroping agent to remove water from 'wet isopropanol', but nowadays diisopropyl ether or cyclohexane are preferentially used for this purpose (IARC, 1992; Papa, 2000; Logsdon & Loke, 2001).

2. Cancer in Humans

In *IARC Monographs* Supplement 7 it was concluded that there was *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of work in the manufacture of isopropyl alcohol by the strong-acid process and *inadequate evidence* for the carcinogenicity of exposure to isopropyl alcohol and isopropyl oils (IARC, 1987). The carcinogenic hazards to humans of work in the manufacture of isopropyl alcohol by other methods, and of exposure to diisopropyl sulfate were not evaluated. The evaluation was based on an increased incidence of cancer of the paranasal sinuses observed in workers at factories where isopropyl alcohol was manufactured by the strong-acid process. The risk for laryngeal cancer may also have been elevated in these workers.

In *IARC Monograph* Volume 54 (IARC, 1992) an evaluation was made of exposure to mists from strong inorganic acids. The epidemiological data on isopropanol production in that *Monograph* are updated and reviewed elsewhere in the present volume, and partly overlap with the information given below.

2.1 Cohort studies

See also Section 2.1.3 in the *Monograph* on Mists from Strong Inorganic Acids in this volume.

Two cases of nasal sinus cancer and two cases of laryngeal cancer had occurred among an unspecified number of workers at a Baton Rouge, Louisiana, USA, isopropyl alcohol-production plant by about 1950 (Eckardt, 1974; Hueper, 1966). Subsequent analyses considered isopropyl alcohol workers in combination with employees in ethanol production and other production units (Lynch *et al.*, 1979; Hanis *et al.*, 1982; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-27-Table2.1.pdf). At this plant, a nested case–control study of workers in isopropyl alcohol manufacturing and others ascertained 50 cases of upper respiratory tract cancer among employees and former employees who had worked during at least 10–15 years. The study made use of an unidentified non-company tumour registry (see Table 2.1, on-line). Cases and controls were assessed for exposure to sulfuric acid and other agents; those with high exposure to sulfuric acid had a significantly elevated odds ratio (OR) of 5.2 (95%CI: 1.2–22.1) for pharyngeal, nasal sinus, or laryngeal cancer (Soskolne *et al.*, 1984).

Six cases of cancer occurred in the 1970s at an isopropyl alcohol-production unit in the USA, which began operation in 1943 and had employed 600 workers through 1976 (Fishbein, 1976). Mortality through 1978 was studied among 433 isopropyl alcohol-manufacturing workers in this facility (see Table 2.1, on-line): two buccal cavity/pharyngeal cancer deaths were reported (Enterline, 1982). Subsequent studies of workers

at this plant did not include data on the mortality experience of isopropyl alcohol-manufacturing workers (Enterline *et al.*, 1990; Marsh *et al.*, 1991).

Among 182 workers employed 1928–50 in another isopropyl alcohol-production unit in the USA, a statistically significant excess of sinus cancer occurred (four cases) (Hueper, 1966; Weil *et al.*, 1952). Subsequently, a case–control study that used reported lymphohaematopoetic cancer deaths as the cases was conducted. Workers ever having had exposure to alkyl sulfates, including diisopropyl sulfate, were at elevated risk for non-Hodgkin lymphoma (8 deaths; OR, 5.1; $P < 0.05$) (Ott *et al.*, 1989). A later mortality study analysed isopropyl alcohol-manufacturing workers together with ethyl alcohol-manufacturing workers at the same and another facility ($n = 1031$) (Teta *et al.*, 1992). Excesses of cancers of the larynx, buccal cavity and pharynx were observed, but based on very small numbers. There was one death due to sinus cancer (see Table 2.1, on-line).

Among 262 men employed in an isopropyl alcohol-manufacturing unit in the United Kingdom, nine cancer deaths had occurred by 1980, including one from nasal sinus cancer, corresponding to a 50-fold increased risk (see Table 2.1, on-line; Alderson & Rattan, 1980)

No further cancer mortality or incidence studies specifically updating any of these cohorts in isopropyl alcohol manufacture have been conducted, and no studies of other isopropyl alcohol-manufacturing plants have appeared in the scientific literature.

2.2 Case–Control Studies

Hu *et al.* (2002) conducted a study of carcinoma of the kidney (renal cell) in eight Canadian provinces. From cases and population-based cancer-free controls, data were collected on exposures during one year or more to 17 substances, including isopropyl oil. The OR – adjusted for age, province of residence, education, body-mass index, pack-years of cigarettes smoked, alcohol, and meat consumption – was 1.6 for men (95%CI: 1.0–2.6) and 1.2 for women (95%CI: 0.4–3.5) (see Table 2.2, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-27-Table2.2.pdf).

Pan *et al.* (2005) conducted a similar study of cancer of the brain in eight Canadian provinces. Likewise, from cases and population-based cancer-free controls, data were collected on occupational exposures during one year or more to 18 substances, including isopropyl oil. Exposure to this type of oil was associated with an elevated but not significantly increased risk for brain cancer (see Table 2.2, on-line).

Overall, there is evidence from epidemiological studies that exposure of humans during the manufacture of isopropyl alcohol by the strong-acid process causes cancer of the nasal sinuses, based on three cohort studies. The evidence is inadequate to draw conclusions on other cancer sites.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion

4.1.1 Humans

The kinetics of the toxic effects of inhaled acid mists on the respiratory tract depend on several interrelated factors, which include whether exposure occurs to a gas or an aerosol; the particle size, with small particles being more able to penetrate deeply into the lung (Martonen *et al.*, 1985; Jarabek *et al.*, 1989; US EPA, 1989); the solubility in water, with agents of higher solubility

being more likely to be deposited in the nose and mouth; the free hydrogen ion concentration; the breathing rate and pattern; the buffering capacity of the mucosal layer of the airways and the local deposition site (Utell *et al.*, 1989); and the presence of other chemicals carried along with the aerosol particle.

Acid mists that contain particles with a diameter of up to a few micrometers will be deposited in both the upper and lower airways. It is difficult to identify the principal site of deposition within the respiratory tract. For example, 90% of an aerosol of sulfuric acid (mass median aerodynamic diameter of particles, 5 μm) to which lead-acid battery workers are exposed, would be deposited in the extra-thoracic region of the respiratory tract, whereas only 50% of an aerosol with 2-μm particle size would be deposited in that same portion of the respiratory tract. This relationship between size and deposition renders estimation of the changes in pH of the mucus problematic, as diffuse deposition challenges the buffering capacity much less than does deposition of large particles at local sites (Gamble *et al.*, 1984; Jarabek *et al.*, 1989).

Assuming an average particle size of 1 μm and exposure concentrations of 0.4–1 mg/m^3, Amdur *et al.* (1952) showed that on average 77% of an inhaled aerosol of sulfuric acid was retained in the airways of exposed human subjects. Martonen *et al.* (1985) demonstrated that the hygroscopic growth of particles (≤ 1 μm) of several inorganic acids within the respiratory tract depended on temperature, humidity, particle size, respiratory characteristics and the hygroscopic nature of the acid.

The breathing pattern (i.e. mouth *vs* nose breathing, with normal augmentation through the mouth) also influences deposition. For all particle sizes, the dose deposited regionally below the nasopharynx is higher for mouth breathers. The effect of mouth breathing is most evident from the increasing deposition in the oropharynx, larynx and upper trachea (Jarabek *et al.*, 1989).

In the moist environment of the respiratory tract, sulfur trioxide – the anhydride of sulfuric acid – reacts instantaneously with water to form sulfuric acid (IARC, 1992); therefore, the toxicology of sulfur trioxide would be expected to be the same as that of sulfuric acid.

The medical condition called Barrett's oesophagus provides supporting evidence for an association between exposure to an acidic environment and cancer. Barrett's oesophagus refers to a metaplastic change of the lining of the lower end of the oesophagus, which is thought to be caused by chronic exposure to acid from gastric reflux. Genetic polymorphisms associated with an inflammatory response, DNA repair and chemical detoxication are all associated with the presence or progression of the condition. Changes in gene expression have been seen in metaplastic cells as a result of chronic inflammation, which could be due to genetic changes, epigenetic changes or modifications to signalling pathways (Shaheen & Richter, 2009).

4.1.2 Experimental systems

Generally, with respect to acid aerosol deposition similar effects were observed in animals. Regional deposition of sulfuric acid aerosols in experimental animals is also dependent on particle size (e.g. Dahl *et al.*, 1983). However, animal species differ from humans with regard to the dimensions and architecture of the respiratory tract, and deposition patterns of aerosols may vary accordingly (Jarabek *et al.*, 1989). A study in anaesthetized dogs showed that production of ammonia by the respiratory tract partially neutralizes acid aerosols, but larger-size aerosols are neutralized less efficiently than smaller-size aerosols (Larson *et al.*, 1982).

4.2 Genetic and related effects

4.2.1 Humans

Significant increases in the incidence of sister chromatid exchange (SCE), micronucleus formation and chromosomal aberrations in peripheral lymphocytes were detected in a study of 40 workers at a sulfuric acid plant in China, compared with 42 controls working and studying at a university in the same city as the factory. The controls were matched according to sex, age and smoking habits. The mean number of SCE/cell was 6.72 ± 0.22 for workers and 2.71 ± 0.31 for unexposed controls ($P < 0.01$); the mean frequency of micronuclei in cultivated lymphocytes was 0.168% in those from the workers and 0.071% from the control group ($P < 0.001$); and the mean frequency of several types of chromosomal aberration (including rings, translocations and di-centrics) per 100 metaphases was 0.963 for the workers and 0.227 for controls ($P < 0.01$). No positive correlation was observed between the frequency of sister chromatid exchange, micronuclei or chromosomal aberrations and length of employment of the workers. While there was no significant difference between smokers and non-smokers with regard to the frequencies of sister chromatid exchange and chromosomal aberrations, smokers among both the workers and the controls had significantly more micronuclei than non-smokers ($P < 0.001$) (Meng & Zhang 1990a, b).

4.2.2 Experimental systems

No data were available on genetic and related effects of exposures to acid mists in experimental systems; however, studies on genotoxic effects under extreme culture conditions with respect to pH have been reviewed (Scott *et al.*, 1991; Swenberg & Beauchamp, 1997).

The carcinogenic activity of sulfuric acid may be related to the genotoxicity of low pH conditions. Reduced pH environments enhance the depurination rate of DNA and the deamination rate of cytidine (Singer & Grunberger, 1983; IARC, 1992); it has been suggested that the fidelity of enzymes involved in DNA replication and repair may be reduced by low pH (Brusick, 1986). Also, low pH (5.4–6.5) is associated with induction of clastogenicity, sister chromatid exchange and chromosomal aberrations (Morita *et al.*, 1991, 1992; Morita, 1995).

Deamination of cytidine at CpG sites appears to be one of the mechanisms of mutation induction in the *p53* tumour-suppressor gene (Harris, 1993).

4.3 Toxicity relevant to carcinogenicity

Acid mists are irritating to mucous epithelia; they cause dental erosion and produce acute effects in the lungs (symptoms and changes in pulmonary function) (IARC, 1992).

Workers exposed to sulfuric acid mists had an increased incidence of symptoms and macroscopic and microscopic changes of the nasal mucosa, including squamous metaplasia and atypia, with an exposure-response relationship (Grasel *et al.*, 2003).

4.4 Synthesis

Little information on possible mechanisms of carcinogenicity of inorganic acid mists is available. The increased incidence of cancer of the paranasal sinuses in workers involved in the strong-acid process of isopropyl alcohol manufacture may be due to exposure to the strong acid mists and/or the presence of diisopropyl sulfate, an intermediate that shows sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals.

Available data suggest that localized low pH from inhalation of inorganic acid mists could damage DNA and lead to neoplasia. There is no evidence that would support the occurrence of DNA damage by any other mechanism of carcinogenesis.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of isopropyl alcohol manufacture by the strong-acid process. Isopropyl alcohol manufacture by the strong-acid process causes cancer of the nasal cavity.

No data on carcinogenicity of strong acid mists in experimental animals were available to the Working Group.

It is plausible that areas of localized low pH from inhalation of inorganic acid mists could damage DNA and increase cancer risks. There is no evidence to support DNA-damage induction by any other mechanism as the cause of the observed cancers due to exposure to inorganic acid mists.

Isopropyl alcohol manufacture by the strong-acid process is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Alderson MR & Rattan NS (1980). Mortality of workers on an isopropyl alcohol plant and two MEK dewaxing plants. *Br J Ind Med*, 37: 85–89. PMID:7370197

Amdur MO, Silverman L, Drinker P (1952). Inhalation of sulfuric acid mist by human subjects. *A M A Arch Ind Hyg Occup Med*, 6: 305–313. PMID:12984841

Brusick D (1986). Genotoxic effects in cultured mammalian cells produced by low pH treatment conditions and increased ion concentrations. *Environ Mutagen*, 8: 879–886. doi:10.1002/em.2860080611 PMID:3780620

Dahl AR, Felicetti SA, Muggenburg BA (1983). Clearance of sulfuric acid-introduced 35S from the respiratory tracts of rats, guinea pigs and dogs following inhalation or instillation. *Fundam Appl Toxicol*, 3: 293–297. doi:10.1016/S0272-0590(83)80142-0 PMID:6628891

Eckardt RE (1974). Annals of industry–noncasualties of the work place. *J Occup Med*, 16: 472–477. PMID:4858314

Enterline PE (1982). Importance of sequential exposure in the production of epichlorohydrin and isopropanol. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*, 381: 1 Brain Tumors344–349. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.1982.tb50398.x PMID:6953799

Enterline PE, Henderson V, Marsh G (1990). Mortality of workers potentially exposed to epichlorohydrin. *Br J Ind Med*, 47: 269–276. PMID:2078204

Fishbein GW (1976). Shell Oil reports 14 cases of cancer at its Texas facilities. *Occup Health Saf Letter*, 6: 3

Gamble J, Jones W, Hancock J (1984). Epidemiological-environmental study of lead acid battery workers. II. Acute effects of sulfuric acid on the respiratory system. *Environ Res*, 35: 11–29. doi:10.1016/0013-9351(84)90111-7 PMID:6386450

Grasel SS, Alves VA, da Silva CS *et al.* (2003). Clinical and histopathological changes of the nasal mucosa induced by occupational exposure to sulphuric acid mists. *Occup Environ Med*, 60: 395–402. doi:10.1136/oem.60.6.395 PMID:12771390

Hanis NM, Holmes TM, Shallenberger G, Jones KE (1982). Epidemiologic study of refinery and chemical plant workers. *J Occup Med*, 24: 203–212. doi:10.1097/00043764-198203000-00012 PMID:7062157

Harris CC (1993). p53: at the crossroads of molecular carcinogenesis and risk assessment. *Science*, 262: 1980–1981. doi:10.1126/science.8266092 PMID:8266092

Hu J, Mao Y, White K (2002). Renal cell carcinoma and occupational exposure to chemicals in Canada. *Occup Med (Lond)*, 52: 157–164. PMID:12063361

Hueper WC 1966. *Occupational and Environmental Cancers of the Respiratory System*. Berlin/New York: Springer-Verlag.

IARC (1977). Some fumigants, the herbicides 2,4-D and 2,4,5-T, chlorinated dibenzodioxins and miscellaneous industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 15: 1–354. PMID:330387

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1992). Occupational exposures to mists and vapours from sulfuric acid and other strong inorganic acids. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 54: 41–130. PMID:1345377

Jarabek AM, Menache MG, Overton JH Jr *et al.* (1989). Inhalation reference dose (RfDi): an application of interspecies dosimetry modeling for risk assessment of insoluble particles. *Health Phys*, 57: Suppl 1177–183. PMID:2606680

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Larson TV, Frank R, Covert DS *et al.* (1982). Measurements of respiratory ammonia and the chemical neutralization of inhaled sulfuric acid aerosol in anesthetized dogs. *Am Rev Respir Dis*, 125: 502–506. PMID:7081806

Lee GSJ, McCain JH, Bhasin MM (2003). Chapter 22. *Synthetic Organic Chemicals*. In: Kent, J.A., editor, *Riegel's Handbook of Industrial Chemistry*, 10th Ed., New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, pp. 851–854.

Logsdon JE, Loke RA (2001). *Isopropyl alcohol*. In: *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, 5th Ed., New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc. [online edition]

Lynch J, Hanis NM, Bird MG *et al.* (1979). An association of upper respiratory cancer with exposure to diethyl sulfate. *J Occup Med*, 21: 333–341. PMID:469594

Marsh GM, Enterline PE, McCraw D (1991). Mortality patterns among petroleum refinery and chemical plant workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 19: 29–42. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700190105 PMID:1989434

Martonen TB, Barnett AE, Miller FJ (1985). Ambient sulfate aerosol deposition in man: modeling the influence of hygroscopicity. *Environ Health Perspect*, 63: 11–24. doi:10.2307/3430025 PMID:4076076

Meng ZQ & Zhang LZ (1990a). Chromosomal aberrations and sister-chromatid exchanges in lymphocytes of workers exposed to sulphur dioxide. *Mutat Res*, 241: 15–20. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(90)90105-B PMID:2333082

Meng ZQ & Zhang LZ (1990b). Observation of frequencies of lymphocytes with micronuclei in human peripheral blood cultures from workers in a sulphuric acid factory. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 15: 218–220. doi:10.1002/em.2850150408 PMID:2357974

Morita T (1995). Low pH leads to sister-chromatid exchanges and chromosomal aberrations, and its clastogenicity is S-dependent. *Mutat Res*, 334: 301–308. PMID:7753094

Morita T, Nagaki T, Fukuda I, Okumura K (1991). Effect of pH on the activity and stability of clastogens in the in vitro chromosomal aberration test with Chinese hamster ovary K1 cells. *Mutat Res*, 262: 159–166. doi:10.1016/0165-7992(91)90016-W PMID:1900572

Morita T, Nagaki T, Fukuda I, Okumura K (1992). Clastogenicity of low pH to various cultured mammalian cells. *Mutat Res*, 268: 297–305. PMID:1379335

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey 1981–83*. Cincinnati, OH, US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes4/40987sco.html

Ott MG, Teta MJ, Greenberg HL (1989). Lymphatic and hematopoietic tissue cancer in a chemical manufacturing environment. *Am J Ind Med*, 16: 631–643. PMID:2556914

Pan SY, Ugnat AM, Mao YCanadian Cancer Registries Epidemiology Research Group (2005). Occupational risk factors for brain cancer in Canada. *J Occup Environ Med*, 47: 704–717. doi:10.1097/01.jom.0000165747.95801.c5 PMID:16010197

Papa AJ (2000). *Propanols*. In: *Ullmann's Encyclopedia of Industrial Chemistry*, 7th Ed., New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc. [online edition; copyright: 2009]

Scott D, Galloway SM, Marshall RR *et al.* (1991). International Commission for Protection Against Environmental Mutagens and Carcinogens. Genotoxicity under extreme culture conditions. A report from ICPEMC Task Group 9. *Mutat Res*, 257: 147–205. PMID:2005937

Shaheen NJ & Richter JE (2009). Barrett's oesophagus. *Lancet*, 373: 850–861. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(09)60487-6 PMID:19269522

Singer B, Grunberger D (1983) *Molecular biology of mutagens and carcinogens*. Springer: New York, pp. 347

Soskolne CL, Zeighami EA, Hanis NM *et al.* (1984). Laryngeal cancer and occupational exposure to sulfuric acid. *Am J Epidemiol*, 120: 358–369. PMID:6475913

Swenberg JA & Beauchamp RO Jr (1997). A review of the chronic toxicity, carcinogenicity, and possible mechanisms of action of inorganic acid mists in animals. *Crit Rev Toxicol*, 27: 253–259. doi:10.3109/10408449709089894 PMID:9189654

Teta MJ, Perlman GD, Ott MG (1992). Mortality study of ethanol and isopropanol production workers at two facilities. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 18: 90–96. PMID:1604278

US EPA (1989). *An Acid Aerosols Issue Paper: Health Effects and Aerometrics* (EPA Report No. EPA-600/8-88-005F), Washington DC, Office of Health and Environmental Assessment

Utell MJ, Mariglio JA, Morrow PE *et al.* (1989). Effects of inhaled acid aerosols on respiratory function: the role of endogenous ammonia. *Journal of Aerosol Medicine*, 2: 141–147. doi:10.1089/jam.1989.2.141

Weil CS, Smyth HF Jr, Nale TW (1952). Quest for a suspected industrial carcinogen. A M *Archives of Industrial Hygiene and Occupational Medicine*, 5: 535–547.

MISTS FROM STRONG INORGANIC ACIDS

Occupational exposures to mists and vapours from sulfuric acid and other strong inorganic acids were considered by an IARC Working Group in 1991 (IARC, 1992). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation. A separate *Monograph* on 'Isopropyl Alcohol Manufacture by the Strong-acid Process' – updating earlier evaluations on this agent (IARC, 1977, 1987) – appears elsewhere in this volume.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Manufacturing processes

Major industries with exposure to strong inorganic acid mists include those that manufacture phosphate fertilizer, isopropanol (isopropyl alcohol), synthetic ethanol (ethyl alcohol), sulfuric acid, nitric acid, and lead batteries. Exposure also occurs during copper smelting, and pickling and other acid treatment of metals (Suresh, 2009).

Minor uses of sulfuric acid include applications in petroleum refining, mining, metallurgy, and ore processing, in the synthesis of inorganic and organic chemicals, synthetic rubber and plastics, in the processing of pulp and paper, the manufacture of soap and detergents, cellulose fibres and films, inorganic pigments and paints, and in water treatment. The use of sulfuric acid is declining in some industries. For example, there is a trend in the steel industry to use hydrochloric acid instead of sulfuric acid in the metallurgic process of pickling, and hydrofluoric acid has replaced sulfuric acid for some applications in the petroleum industry (IARC, 1992; ATSDR, 1998; NTP, 2005).

1.2 Human exposure

1.2.1 Occupational exposure

Strong inorganic acid mists may be produced as a result of the use of inorganic acids, including sulfuric acid, in various industrial processes, as indicated in the previous section (IARC, 1992). The amount of vapour or mist that is produced varies with the process and the method. In pickling, for instance, mist may escape from tanks filled with acid, when hydrogen gas and steam rise from the surface of the solution (NTP, 2005).

CAREX (CARcinogen EXposure) is an international information system on occupational exposure to known and suspected carcinogens, based on data collected in the European Union from 1990 to 1993. The CAREX database provides selected exposure data and documented estimates of the number of exposed workers by country, carcinogen, and industry (Kauppinen *et al.*, 2000). Table 1.1 shows the results for strong inorganic acid mists containing sulfuric acid in the European Union by industry (CAREX, 1999).

From the National Occupational Exposure Survey (1981–83) it was estimated that

Table 1.1 Estimated numbers of workers exposed to strong inorganic acid mists containing sulfuric acid in the European Union

Industry, occupational activity	
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	78400
Manufacture of fabricated metal products, except machinery and equipment	67800
Construction	63600
Wholesale and retail trade and restaurants and hotels	63300
Medical, dental, other health and veterinary services	58000
Iron and steel basic industries	37100
Manufacture of other chemical products	33800
Manufacture of electrical machinery, apparatus, appliances and supplies	30800
Manufacture of machinery except electrical	29300
Food manufacturing	25300
TOTAL	700000

From CAREX (1999), see also Kauppinen *et al.* (2000)

approximately 776000 workers (including approximately 174000 women) in the United States of America (USA) were potentially exposed to sulfuric acid (NIOSH, 1990). [The Working Group noted that these numbers do not specifically reflect exposures to strong inorganic acid mists.]

Exposure to strong inorganic acid mists containing sulfuric acid may occur by inhalation, ingestion, and dermal contact. Exposure depends on many factors including particle size, proximity to the source, and control measures such as ventilation and containment. Data on particle-size distribution of acid mists are limited, and sampling methods have generally not differentiated between liquid and gaseous forms of the acids (IARC, 1992; NTP, 2005).

Sulfuric acid is used with other strong inorganic acids in many manufacturing processes, during which strong inorganic acid mists may be generated. Data from studies on exposure to inorganic acid mists published since the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1992) are briefly summarized below.

Sathiakumar *et al.* (1997) reviewed and categorized 25 epidemiological studies on the basis of high (> 1 mg/m^3; 8-hour time-weighted average), moderate (0.1–1 mg/m^3) and low (< 0.1 mg/m^3) exposure to sulfuric acid mists. Workers in the production of sulfuric acid and isopropanol, and in metal pickling were considered to have potentially high exposure, while workers in the production of soap and detergent, nitric acid, and ethanol were assumed to have moderate exposure. The lowest estimated exposures were for workers in copper and zinc refining and in the production of phosphate fertilizers and lead batteries. This grouping generally applies to exposures that occurred before 1970. In the early 1970s, the exposure started to decline due to the use of lower concentrations of the acids and improved industrial control measures.

Aerosol sampling was conducted at 24 locations in eight plants that manufactured phosphoric acid and concentrated fertilizer in Florida (USA) and in two locations as control sites elsewhere in Florida. In general, sulfate, fluoride, ammonium, and phosphate were the major chemical species found in the fertilizer plants. At the sulfuric acid tank, sulfate was the dominant substance, with a maximum PM_{10} sulfate concentration of 181 μg/m^3. The concentrations of sulfate-containing PM_{10}, including ammonium sulfate, calcium sulfate, and sulfuric acid were lower than 200 μg/m^3 at all locations (Hsu *et al.*, 2007a, b, 2008).

In a multidisciplinary cross-sectional study of 22 galvanic plants in Sao Paulo, Brazil from 1993 to 1996, ambient air was collected and personal exposure measurements were conducted on five consecutive working days. The geometric means for the concentration of sulphuric acid in ambient-air samples from five anodising plants varied from 34.7 to 2133.6 µg/m3 (total range, 7.2–2780.0 µg/m3); for personal samples, the geometric means ranged from 12.7 to 396.5 µg/m3 (total range, 5.3–865.6 µg/m3) (Grasel *et al.*, 2003).

Steenland (1997) described a follow-up study of a cohort of 1156 acid-exposed steelworkers employed in the USA between 1940 and 1965. The workers were followed until the end of October 1994. Historically, sulfuric acid was the most common acid used for pickling, but in the mid-1960s it was gradually replaced by hydrochloric, nitric, hydrofluoric, and hydrocyanic acid, with hydrochloric acid being the most common. For two of the three plants, personal exposure levels for sulfuric acid in air averaged 0.19 mg/m^3 in the period 1975–79 (time-weighted average, based on 15 samples) and the average concentration in the work area was 0.29 mg/m^3 (based on 34 samples). Exposures in the third plant were estimated to have been similar.

Exposure to mineral acid mists was assessed at two battery manufacturers (factories A and B, established in 1914 and 1929, respectively) and two steel works (factories C and D, established in 1948 and 1945, respectively) in the United Kingdom. In both factories exposure to sulfuric acid occurred principally during the formation and charging processes. Other exposures included those to asbestos – crocidolite and chrysotile –, lead, stibine, and pitch. Fixed-site monitoring of sulfuric acid was conducted from 1970 onwards and showed concentrations in air of 0.1–0.7 mg/m^3 in factory A, and 0.4–2.0 mg/m^3 in factory B. In the steel works C and D, sulfuric acid was used to clean steel before plating and galvanizing. Although its use was phased out in favour of hydrochloric acid in both factories, sulphuric acid continued to be used in the hot sheet finishing and plating areas in factory C, and in galvanizing processes in factory D. No occupational hygiene measurements of acid mists were available for either steel factory (Coggon *et al.*, 1996).

2. Cancer in Humans

Occupational exposures to mists from strong inorganic acids (e.g. sulfuric, hydrochloric, nitric and phosphoric acids) were last evaluated by a previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1992), which concluded that there is *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity to humans of occupational exposure to strong-inorganic-acid mists containing sulfuric acid.

2.1 Cohort studies

Industries with exposure to strong inorganic acids have been categorized with respect to potential average exposure levels to sulfuric acid mists: highest — metal pickling, sulfuric acid production, isopropanol production; moderate — soap and detergent production, nitric acid, and ethanol production; and low — copper and zinc refining, phosphate fertilizer production, and lead battery production (Sathiakumar *et al.*, 1997).

2.1.1 Metal pickling

Sulfuric acid and other inorganic acids have been used to pickle steel (i.e. remove scale and oxides from the metal surface) as part of the finishing process in the steel industry. Cohorts in Sweden, the USA and France have been studied (Mazumdar *et al.*, 1975; Ahlborg *et al.*, 1981; Beaumont *et al.*, 1987; Steenland *et al.*, 1988; Steenland & Beaumont, 1989; Steenland, 1997; Moulin *et al.*, 2000; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-28-Table2.1.pdf). Studies on cancer of the larynx showed statistically significant

excess risks in Sweden (Ahlborg *et al.*, 1981) and the USA (Steenland, 1997), while in a study from France non-significant excesses were found (Moulin *et al.*, 2000). In the US cohort, Steenland & Beaumont (1989) found a significant excess risk for cancer of the lung, considering a latency period of 20 years.

2.1.2 Sulfuric and nitric acid manufacture

Englander *et al.* (1988) reported a non-significant twofold excess of respiratory cancers and increases in bladder-cancer mortality in a Swedish sulfuric acid factory. Excesses of myeloid leukaemia were noted in an Italian sulfuric acid factory (Pesatori *et al.*, 2006), and increased risks for lung and pleural cancer were found in a Norwegian nitric acid plant (SIR = 4.5; 95%CI: 2.6–7.2) (Hilt *et al.*, 1985). An elevated lung-cancer mortality was observed among men working with acid mixtures in an Italian factory, but the increase was not statistically significant (Rapiti *et al.*, 1997). Likewise, at two US tanneries where sulfuric acid was used in the de-liming, bating and pickling subdepartments of the beamhouse, an elevated lung-cancer mortality was found, but the increase was not significant (Stern, 2003; see Table 2.1, on-line).

2.1.3 Manufacture of isopropanol and ethanol

See also the *Monograph* on Isopropyl Alcohol Manufacture by the Strong-acid Process in this volume.

In addition to acid mists, workers in isopropanol and ethanol production may be exposed to alloy/sulfates and isopropanol oils. Cohort studies in one factory in the United Kingdom and four in the USA where isopropyl alcohol and ethyl alcohol were manufactured by the strong-acid process showed a significant excess of cancers in the upper respiratory tract – nasal sinus, pharynx, larynx – and buccal cavity. Hueper (1966) found significant excesses of nasal sinus and larynx cancers combined (SIR 21.9, 95%CI: 7.9–56.1) based on two cases each. In the same facility, Lynch *et al.* (1979) reported significant excesses for cancer of the larynx. Subsequently, a nested case–control study among workers in the same plant assessed 50 upper respiratory tract cancer cases and controls with regards to exposure to sulfuric acid and other agents. Those with "high" sulfuric acid exposure had an increased risk (OR, 5.2; 95%CI: 1.2–22.1) for pharyngeal, sinus, or laryngeal cancer (Soskolne *et al.*, 1984; see Table 2.1, on-line).

Excess risks for buccal cavity and pharynx cancer were identified in an isopropyl alcohol production unit in the USA, which began operation in 1941 and had employed 433 workers through 1965 (Enterline, 1982).

Weil *et al.* (1952) reported a highly significant risk for nasal sinus cancer, based on four cases, in an isopropyl alcohol production facility in the USA. A case–control study of lympho-haematopoietic malignancies at the same plant showed an elevated risk for non-Hodgkin lymphoma among workers ever exposed to alkyl sulfates, including those in the isopropyl and ethyl alcohol production units, where sulfuric acid was used (Ott *et al.*, 1989). In a subsequent mortality study conducted in this facility, workers in isopropanol and ethanol production had a statistically significantly increased mortality risk for lympho- and reticulosarcoma (Teta *et al.*, 1992; see Table 2.1, on-line). Mortality from upper respiratory and lympho-haematopoietic cancers was also investigated in another isopropanol- and ethanol-manufacturing facility in the USA, but significant cancer excesses were not observed in this case (Teta *et al.*, 1992). In an isopropyl alcohol-manufacturing unit in the United Kingdom, nine cancer deaths had occurred by 1980, including one from nasal sinus cancer; this was statistically significant (Alderson & Rattan, 1980).

2.1.4 Soap manufacture

The only study of soap-manufacturing workers exposed to sulfuric acid vapours in the hydrolysis and saponification areas, found increased risks – not statistically significant – for laryngeal cancer incidence and mortality through 1983 (Forastiere *et al.*, 1987).

2.1.5 Manufacture of phosphate and nitrate fertilizer

Sulfuric acid is used to convert phosphate rock to phosphoric acid and superphosphate; nitric acid is the precursor of nitrate fertilizers. Many fertilizer plants manufacture these two acids on site (Al-Dabbagh *et al.*, 1986; Rafnsson & Gunnarsdóttir, 1990; Hagmar *et al.*, 1991; Fandrem *et al.*, 1993; Checkoway *et al.*, 1996). Several research groups studied phosphate-fertilizer manufacturing in the USA (Stayner *et al.*, 1985; Block *et al.*, 1988; Checkoway *et al.*, 1996). All found elevated lung cancer mortality, with higher rates for those who had been employed longer. Nitrate-fertilizer manufacture has been studied in Iceland, Norway, the Russian Federation, Sweden, and the United Kingdom (Al-Dabbagh *et al.*, 1986; Rafnsson & Gunnarsdóttir, 1990; Hagmar *et al.*, 1991; Fandrem *et al.*, 1993; Zandjani *et al.*, 1994; Bulbulyan *et al.*, 1996). None of these studies found statistically significantly elevated risks among workers potentially exposed to nitric acid mists except the study from Sweden (Zandjani *et al.*, 1994), which showed a standardized incidence ratio (SIR) for stomach cancer of 1.50 ($P < 0.05$) for 27 men hired before 1960, and an SIR for testicular cancer of 3.33 ($P < 0.05$) for 5 men hired during or after 1960. In a factory complex where both phosphate and nitrate fertilizers were manufactured, Bulbulyan *et al.* (1996) reported a statistically significant increase in stomach-cancer mortality for men in the sulfuric acid tower department (11 deaths, SMR 2.04, 95%CI: 1.02–3.66) (see Table 2.1, on-line).

2.1.6 Battery manufacture

Mortality for all cancers combined and for various separate respiratory cancers has been reported from four cohort studies of battery-manufacturing workers (one including cohorts from steel works as well) in the United Kingdom and the USA (Malcolm & Barnett, 1982; Cooper et. al., 1985; Coggon *et al.*, 1996; Sorahan & Esmen, 2004; see Table 2.1, on-line). In two studies, excesses of laryngeal cancer were found (Cooper *et al.*, 1985; Sorahan & Esmen, 2004). Within the United Kingdom cohort, a nested case–control analysis was carried out in two battery-manufacturing plants and two steel works, with respect to exposure to acid mists. The study included 15 cases with upper aerodigestive cancers (ICD-9 140–141, 143–149, 160–161) and 75 controls. The odds of cancer among those with high exposure to acids, or among those with five or more years of high exposure were increased compared with those with no exposure to acids, but this was not statistically significant (Coggon *et al.*, 1996).

2.1.7 Other industries

Two nested case–control studies, one in the Norwegian nickel-refining industry (Grimsrud *et al.*, 2005) and one in the chemical industry in the USA (Bond *et al.*, 1986; 1991) were reviewed. In the first study, a job-exposure matrix for sulfuric acid mist was developed, the second study developed a job-exposure matrix for hydrochloric acid; neither found an association between acid mist exposure and lung cancer.

2.2 Case–control studies

Case–control studies of cancer of the upper respiratory tract, larynx, lung, stomach, and other sites have evaluated whether exposure to acid mists affected the cancer risk (see Table 2.2, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-28-Table2.2.pdf).

2.2.1 Cancer of the nasal cavity and sinuses

Incident cases of sinonasal (ICD-9 160) cancer in Piedmont, Italy, were matched with hospital controls from the ear/nose/throat and orthopaedics departments over a four-year period. For those whose histology was basocellular, mucoepidermoid, neuroendocrine, undifferentiated, or unspecified, ever having been exposed to acid mists at work was associated with a higher risk for these cancers (OR, 7.5; 95%CI: 2.0–28) (d'Errico *et al.*, 2009).

2.2.2 Cancer of the larynx

In Uruguay, 112 men diagnosed with laryngeal cancer between 1993 and 1995 were compared with 509 controls with cancer at other sites: there was an OR of 1.2 (95%CI: 0.6–2.5) for those who had been occupationally exposed to acid mists for up to 20 years, while the OR for 21 or more years of exposure was 1.8 (95%CI: 1.1–3.1) (De Stefani *et al.*, 1998). Soskolne *et al.* (1992) assessed the duration and intensity of exposure to sulfuric acid among laryngeal cancer cases in a case–control study in Canada and found a dose–response progression from ≤ 10 years of probable exposure (OR, 1.97; 95%CI: 0.6–6.1) to > 10 years of substantial exposure (OR, 5.6; 95%CI: 2.0–15.5). Zemła *et al.* (1987) asked 328 men with laryngeal cancer and 656 controls without cancer about "constant exposure to vapours of sulfuric, hydrochloric, or nitric acid" and reported a relative risk of 4.27 ($P < 0.001$). In five other studies (Olsen & Sabroe, 1984; Cookfair *et al.*, 1985; Brown *et al.*, 1988; Eisen *et al.*, 1994; Shangina *et al.*, 2006) no increased risks, or elevations that were not statistically significant, were found (see Table 2.2, on-line).

2.2.3 Cancer of the lung

Risks for cancer of the lung in association with exposure to acid mists, sulfuric or hydrochloric acid, or "any inorganic acid or base" have been reported from six case–control studies (see Table 2.2, on-line). No increased risks were found in three nested case–control studies (Bond *et al.*, 1986; Bond *et al.*, 1991; Moulin *et al.*, 2000; Grimsrud *et al.*, 2005) in the USA, France and Norway, or in an ecological study in Lithuania (Petrauskaite *et al.*, 2002).

2.2.4 Cancer at other sites

Three studies compared information on death certificates. The limitations of this type of study include possible misclassification, e.g. when the death certificate lists occupation and industry only for the most recent job rather than for the longest employment. Data on possible confounders are often lacking as well.

In two studies from the USA an increased risk for cancer of the stomach was found associated with exposure to sulfuric acid, which was derived from a job-exposure matrix applied to the occupation and industry indicated on the death certificates (Cocco *et al.*, 1998, 1999; see Table 2.2, on-line). Nearly 42000 certificates for deaths from stomach cancer were compared with certificates for decedents from non-malignant diseases. White men with low, medium, or high exposures to sulfuric acid, showed increasing ORs (p for trend < 0.01) for stomach cancer, compared with those not exposed to sulfuric acid. For black men the increase was more moderate, and for women – among whom only 17 of 16864 were rated as having high exposure to sulfuric acid – the ORs were lowest for the high-intensity group (Cocco *et al.*, 1999). A smaller study of cancer of the gastric cardia (ICD-9 151.0) compared 1056 men who died of this cancer with 5280 men who died of non-malignant disease. Men ever-exposed to sulfuric acid showed an OR of 1.2 (95%CI: 1.0–1.4), and increasing probability and increasing intensity of exposure were both associated with a significant *P* for trend (< 0.05 for probability, < 0.01 for intensity) (Cocco *et al.*, 1998).

Another US study based on death certificates evaluated breast-cancer risk and exposure to

acid mists, comparing 33509 cases and 117 794 controls. Homemakers had been excluded, as well as controls who had died of other cancers. Thus excluding women with a low probability of exposure, those with the highest level of exposure to acid mists had statistically significantly elevated ORs for breast cancer, i.e. 1.16 (for whites) and 1.44 (for blacks), after adjustment for age and imputed socioeconomic status (Cantor *et al.*, 1995).

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Other Relevant Data

See the *Monograph* on 'Isopropyl Alcohol Manufacture by the Strong-acid Process' in this volume.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of mists from strong inorganic acids. Mists from strong inorganic acids cause cancer of the larynx.

Also, a positive association has been observed between exposure to mists from strong inorganic acids and cancer of the lung.

No data on the carcinogenicity of mists from strong inorganic acids in experimental animals were available to the Working Group.

While it is plausible that areas of localized low pH from inhalation of inorganic acid mists could damage DNA and increase cancer risks, the evidence supporting DNA-damage induction or any other mechanism as the cause of the observed cancers due to the inorganic acid mists is weak.

Mists from strong inorganic acids are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Ahlborg GA Jr, Hogstedt C, Sundell L, Aman CG (1981). Laryngeal cancer and pickling house vapors. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment & Health*, 7: 239–240.

Al-Dabbagh S, Forman D, Bryson D *et al.* (1986). Mortality of nitrate fertiliser workers. *Br J Ind Med*, 43: 507–515. PMID:3015194

Alderson MR & Rattan NS (1980). Mortality of workers on an isopropyl alcohol plant and two MEK dewaxing plants. *Br J Ind Med*, 37: 85–89. PMID:7370197

ATSDR (1998). *Toxicological Profile for Sulfur Trioxide and Sulfuric Acid* (TP-117). Atlanta, GA: Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, pp. 189.

Beaumont JJ, Leveton J, Knox K *et al.* (1987). Lung cancer mortality in workers exposed to sulfuric acid mist and other acid mists. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 79: 911–921. PMID:3479642

Block G, Matanoski GM, Seltser R, Mitchell T (1988). Cancer morbidity and mortality in phosphate workers. *Cancer Res*, 48: 7298–7303. PMID:3191500

Bond GG, Flores GH, Shellenberger RJ *et al.* (1986). Nested case-control study of lung cancer among chemical workers. *Am J Epidemiol*, 124: 53–66. PMID:3717140

Bond GG, Flores GH, Stafford BA, Olsen GW (1991). Lung cancer and hydrogen chloride exposure: results from a nested case-control study of chemical workers. *J Occup Med*, 33: 958–961. PMID:1744744

Brown LM, Mason TJ, Pickle LW *et al.* (1988). Occupational risk factors for laryngeal cancer on the Texas Gulf Coast. *Cancer Res*, 48: 1960–1964. PMID:3349470

Bulbulyan MA, Jourenkova NJ, Boffetta P *et al.* (1996). Mortality in a cohort of Russian fertilizer workers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 22: 27–33. PMID:8685670

Cantor KP, Stewart PA, Brinton LA, Dosemeci M (1995). Occupational exposures and female breast cancer mortality in the United States. *J Occup Environ Med*, 37: 336–348. doi:10.1097/00043764-199503000-00011 PMID:7796202

CAREX (1999). *Carex industry specific estimates* – Summary. Available at http://www.ttl.fi/en/chemical_safety/carex/Documents/5_exposures_by_agent_and_industry.pdf.

Checkoway H, Heyer NJ, Demers PA (1996). An updated mortality follow-up study of Florida phosphate industry workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 30: 452–460. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199610)30:4<452::AID-AJIM11>3.0.CO;2-3 PMID:8892551

Cocco P, Ward MH, Dosemeci M (1998). Occupational risk factors for cancer of the gastric cardia. Analysis of death certificates from 24 US states. *J Occup Environ Med*, 40: 855–861. doi:10.1097/00043764-199810000-00004 PMID:9800169

Cocco P, Ward MH, Dosemeci M (1999). Risk of stomach cancer associated with 12 workplace hazards: analysis of death certificates from 24 states of the United States with the aid of job exposure matrices. *Occup Environ Med*, 56: 781–787. doi:10.1136/oem.56.11.781 PMID:10658565

Coggon D, Pannett B, Wield G (1996). Upper aerodigestive cancer in battery manufacturers and steel workers exposed to mineral acid mists. *Occup Environ Med*, 53: 445–449. doi:10.1136/oem.53.7.445 PMID:8704867

Cookfair D, Wende K, Michalek A, Vena J (1985). A case-control study of laryngeal cancer among workers exposed to sulfuric acid. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 122: 521

Cooper WC, Wong O, Kheifets L (1985). Mortality among employees of lead battery plants and lead-producing plants, 1947–1980. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 11: 331–345. PMID:4070998

d'Errico A, Pasian S, Baratti A *et al.* (2009). A case-control study on occupational risk factors for sino-nasal cancer. *Occup Environ Med*, 66: 448–455. doi:10.1136/oem.2008.041277 PMID:19153109

De Stefani E, Boffetta P, Oreggia F *et al.* (1998). Occupation and the risk of laryngeal cancer in Uruguay. *Am J Ind Med*, 33: 537–542. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199806)33:6<537::AID-AJIM3>3.0.CO;2-N PMID:9582944

Eisen EA, Tolbert PE, Hallock MF *et al.* (1994). Mortality studies of machining fluid exposure in the automobile industry. III: A case-control study of larynx cancer. *Am J Ind Med*, 26: 185–202. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700260205 PMID:7977395

Englander V, Sjöberg A, Hagmar L *et al.* (1988). Mortality and cancer morbidity in workers exposed to sulphur dioxide in a sulphuric acid plant. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 61: 157–162. doi:10.1007/BF00381012 PMID:3220587

Enterline PE (1982). Importance of sequential exposure in the production of epichlorohydrin and isopropanol. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*, 381: 1 Brain Tumors344–349. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.1982.tb50398.x PMID:6953799

Fandrem SI, Kjuus H, Andersen A, Amlie E (1993). Incidence of cancer among workers in a Norwegian nitrate fertiliser plant. *Br J Ind Med*, 50: 647–652. PMID:8393697

Forastiere F, Valesini S, Salimei E *et al.* (1987). Respiratory cancer among soap production workers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 13: 258–260. PMID:3616557

Grasel SS, Alves VAF, da Silva CS *et al.* (2003). Clinical and histopathological changes of the nasal mucosa induced by occupational exposure to sulphuric acid mists. *Occup Environ Med*, 60: 395–402. doi:10.1136/oem.60.6.395 PMID:12771390

Grimsrud TK, Berge SR, Haldorsen T, Andersen A (2005). Can lung cancer risk among nickel refinery workers be explained by occupational exposures other than nickel? *Epidemiology*, 16: 146–154. doi:10.1097/01.ede.0000152902.48916.d7 PMID:15703528

Hagmar L, Bellander T, Andersson C *et al.* (1991). Cancer morbidity in nitrate fertilizer workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 63: 63–67. doi:10.1007/BF00406200 PMID:1649801

Hilt B, Langård S, Andersen A, Rosenberg J (1985). Asbestos exposure, smoking habits, and cancer incidence among production and maintenance workers in an electrochemical plant. *Am J Ind Med*, 8: 565–577. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700080608 PMID:3000174

Hsu Y-M, Wu C-Y, Lundgren DA *et al.* (2007a). Chemical characteristics of aerosol mists in phosphate fertilizer manufacturing facilities. *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 4: 17–25. doi:10.1080/15459620601067225 PMID:17162477

Hsu Y-M, Wu C-Y, Lundgren DA, Birky BK (2007b). Size-resolved sulfuric acid mist concentrations at phosphate fertilizer manufacturing facilities in Florida. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 51: 81–89. doi:10.1093/annhyg/mel066 PMID:17032693

Hsu Y-M, Wu C-Y, Lundgren DA, Birky BK (2008). Size distribution, chemical composition and acidity of mist aerosols in fertilizer manufacturing facilities in Florida. *Aerosol Sci*, 39: 127–140. doi:10.1016/j.jaerosci.2007.10.008

Hueper WC (1966). *Occupational and Environmental Cancers of the Respiratory System*. Berlin/New York: Springer-Verlag.

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (1977). Some fumigants, the herbicides 2,4-D and 2,4,5-T, chlorinated dibenzodioxins and miscellaneous industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Man*, 15: 1–354. PMID:330387

IARC (1992). Occupational exposures to mists and vapours from strong inorganic acids and other industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 54: 1–310. PMID:1345371

Kauppinen T, Toikkanen J, Pedersen D *et al.* (2000). Occupational exposure to carcinogens in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 10–18. doi:10.1136/oem.57.1.10 PMID:10711264

Lynch J, Hanis NM, Bird MG *et al.* (1979). An association of upper respiratory cancer with exposure to diethyl sulfate. *J Occup Med*, 21: 333–341. PMID:469594

Malcolm D & Barnett HA (1982). A mortality study of lead workers 1925–76. *Br J Ind Med*, 39: 404–410. PMID:7138801

Mazumdar S, Lerer T, Redmond CK (1975). Long-term mortality study of steelworkers. IX. Mortality patterns among sheet and tin mill workers. *J Occup Med*, 17: 751–755. PMID:1206443

Moulin JJ, Clavel T, Roy D *et al.* (2000). Risk of lung cancer in workers producing stainless steel and metallic

alloys. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 73: 171–180. doi:10.1007/s004200050024 PMID:10787132

NIOSH (1990). *National Occupational Exposure Survey 1981–83*. US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. http://www.cdc.gov/noes/noes4/70870sco.html

NTP (2005). NTP 11th Report on Carcinogens. *Rep Carcinog*, 11: 1–A32. PMID:19826456

Olsen J & Sabroe S (1984). Occupational causes of laryngeal cancer. *J Epidemiol Community Health*, 38: 117–121. doi:10.1136/jech.38.2.117 PMID:6747509

Ott MG, Teta MJ, Greenberg HL (1989). Lymphatic and hematopoietic tissue cancer in a chemical manufacturing environment. *Am J Ind Med*, 16: 631–643. PMID:2556914

Pesatori AC, Consonni D, Rubagotti M *et al.* (2006). Mortality study in a cohort of workers employed in a plant producing sulphuric acid *Med Lav*, 97: 735–748. PMID:17219763

Petrauskaite R, Pershagen G, Gurevicius R (2002). Lung cancer near an industrial site in Lithuania with major emissions of airway irritants. *International Journal of Cancer*, 99: 106–111. doi:10.1002/ijc.10314

Rafnsson V & Gunnarsdóttir H (1990). Mortality study of fertiliser manufacturers in Iceland. *Br J Ind Med*, 47: 721–725. PMID:2173946

Rapiti E, Fantini F, Dell'Orco V *et al.* (1997). Cancer mortality among chemical workers in an Italian plant. *Eur J Epidemiol*, 13: 281–285. doi:10.1023/A:1007355519112 PMID:9258526

Sathiakumar N, Delzell E, Amoateng-Adjepong Y *et al.* (1997). Epidemiologic evidence on the relationship between mists containing sulfuric acid and respiratory tract cancer. *Crit Rev Toxicol*, 27: 233–251. doi:10.3109/10408449709089893 PMID:9189653

Shangina O, Brennan P, Szeszenia-Dabrowska N *et al.* (2006). Occupational exposure and laryngeal and hypopharyngeal cancer risk in central and eastern Europe. *Am J Epidemiol*, 164: 367–375. doi:10.1093/aje/kwj208 PMID:16801374

Sorahan T & Esmen NA (2004). Lung cancer mortality in UK nickel-cadmium battery workers, 1947–2000. *Occup Environ Med*, 61: 108–116. doi:10.1136/oem.2003.009282 PMID:14739376

Soskolne CL, Jhangri GS, Siemiatycki J *et al.* (1992). Occupational exposure to sulfuric acid in southern Ontario, Canada, in association with laryngeal cancer. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 18: 225–232. PMID:1411364

Soskolne CL, Zeighami EA, Hanis NM *et al.* (1984). Laryngeal cancer and occupational exposure to sulfuric acid. *Am J Epidemiol*, 120: 358–369. PMID:6475913

Stayner LT, Meinhardt T, Lemen R *et al.* (1985). A retrospective cohort mortality study of a phosphate fertilizer production facility. *Arch Environ Health*, 40: 133–138. PMID:2992396

Steenland K (1997). Laryngeal cancer incidence among workers exposed to acid mists (United States). *Cancer Causes & Control*, 8: 34–38. doi:10.1023/A:1018427003878 PMID:9051320

Steenland K & Beaumont J (1989). Further follow-up and adjustment for smoking in a study of lung cancer and acid mists. *Am J Ind Med*, 16: 347–354. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700160403 PMID:2610208

Steenland K, Schnorr T, Beaumont J *et al.* (1988). Incidence of laryngeal cancer and exposure to acid mists. *Br J Ind Med*, 45: 766–776. PMID:3203082

Stern FB (2003). Mortality among chrome leather tannery workers: an update. *Am J Ind Med*, 44: 197–206. doi:10.1002/ajim.10242 PMID:12874853

Suresh B (2009). *Sulfuric acid*. In: *Chemical Economics Handbook Program*. Menlo Park, CA: SRI International.

Teta MJ, Perlman GD, Ott MG (1992). Mortality study of ethanol and isopropanol production workers at two facilities. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 18: 90–96. PMID:1604278

Weil CS, Smyth HF Jr, Nale TW (1952). Quest for a suspected industrial carcinogen. *Archives of Industrial Hygiene and Occupational Medicine*, 5: 535–547.

Zandjani F, Høgsaet B, Andersen A, Langård S (1994). Incidence of cancer among nitrate fertilizer workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 66: 189–193. doi:10.1007/BF00380779 PMID:7814099

Zemła B, Day N, Swiatnicka J, Banasik R (1987). Larynx cancer risk factors. *Neoplasma*, 34: 223–233. PMID:3600887

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES DURING IRON AND STEEL FOUNDING

Iron and steel founding was considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1983 and 1987 (IARC, 1984, 1987). Since that time, new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph*, and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Manufacturing process

Foundries produce shaped castings from re-melted metal ingots and scrap. Although foundry work is assumed to start with re-melting of ingots and scrap and to end with the fettling of castings, the industry is often so integrated that the distinction is not obvious. Machine shops are not normally part of the work environment where castings are produced; however, simple and accessory machining may be carried out, and these activities may be part of small foundry operations. The processes in iron and steel founding generally comprise pattern-making, moulding and core-making, melting, pouring and shake-out, and fettling. A detailed description of these production steps can be found in IARC (1984).

1.2 Human exposures

The iron and steel industry is very diverse in materials and processes, resulting in occupational exposures to a wide variety of substances. Substantial exposures to silica and carbon monoxide continue to occur in many foundries. Occupational exposures to airborne polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) are also present, resulting mainly from the thermal decomposition of carbonaceous ingredients commonly added to foundry sand. In addition, some steel-foundry workers (e.g. fettlers) are exposed to airborne chromium and nickel compounds. The introduction of organic binder materials in the late 1950s has resulted in exposures of foundry workers to other chemicals, including phenol, formaldehyde, isocyanates and various amines.

Earlier exposure studies have been reviewed previously (IARC, 1984). More recent studies are presented here and summarized in Table 1.1.

1.2.1 Respirable dust and respirable quartz

Nearly all production workers in iron and steel foundries are exposed to silica dust and other mineral constituents of foundry sand (IARC, 1984). In a study from Sweden, the 'furnace and ladle repair workers' and fettlers were the highest exposed individuals. For the furnace workers (n = 33), geometric mean levels of respirable dust and respirable quartz were 1.2 mg/m^3 (range, 0.25–9.3) and 0.052 mg/m^3

Table 1.1 Exposures of workers in the iron and steel founding industry

Reference, Country	Year of study	Operation/Job/Task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	Exposure	Air levels (μg/m³)		Urine levels (μmol/mol creatinine)	
							Geometric Mean	Range	Mean	Range or SD
Respirable dust and respirable quartz										
Andersson *et al.* (2009) Sweden	2005–2006	11 iron foundries		436		Respirable dust	580	76–31000		
				435		Respirable quartz	28	3–2100		
Chen *et al.* (2006) Taiwan, China	1990		1234	277	645	Respirable dust				
		Iron making								
		Sinter	112	27				90–5080		
		Coal preparation	40	9				20–430		
		Blast furnace	311	72				90–830		
		Steel making								
		Steel materials plant	192	30				130–7590		
		Basic oxygen furnace	174	47				170–310		
		Continuous steel casting	333	75				320–790		
		Steel slab rectifying	72	17				160–1140		
Binder compounds – methyl isocyanate, isocyanic acid and formaldehyde										
Westberg *et al.* (2005) Sweden	2001	Four foundries using the Hot Box core-binder system								
						Short-term samples:				
		Total		298		methyl isocyanate	4.9	< 4–68		
				297		isocyanic acid	24	< 4–280		
		Core maker		179		methyl isocyanate	4	< 4–60		
				178		isocyanic acid	22	< 4–130		
		Die caster		71		methyl isocyanate	10	< 4–68		
				71		isocyanic acid	48	< 4–280		
		Others		48		methyl isocyanate	3.4	< 4–12		
				48		isocyanic acid	12	< 4–66		

Table 1.1 (continued)

Reference, Country	Year of study	Operation/Job/Task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	Exposure	Air levels (µg/m³)		Urine levels (µmol/mol creatinine)	
							Geometric Mean	Range	Mean	Range or SD
Westberg *et al.* (2005) (contd)						**8-hour TWA samples**				
		Total		64		methyl isocyanate	5.3	< 4–31		
				64		isocyanic acid	27	< 4–190		
				64		formaldehyde	120	14–1600		
		Core maker		39		methyl isocyanate	4.2	< 4–20		
				39		isocyanic acid	24	5.3–84		
				39		formaldehyde	200	50–1600		
		Die caster		15		methyl isocyanate	12	< 4–31		
				15		isocyanic acid	55	6–190		
				15		formaldehyde	63	21–220		
		Others		10		methyl isocyanate	3.5	< 4–8.2		
				10		isocyanic acid	14	< 4–32		
				10		formaldehyde	32	14–170		

Table 1.1 (continued)

Reference, Country	Year of study	Operation/Job/Task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	Exposure	Air levels (µg/m³)		Urine levels (µmol/mol creatinine)	
							Geometric Mean	Range	Mean	Range or SD
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons										
Hansen *et al.* (1994) Denmark	1988–89	**Iron foundry workers**		24		**Pyrene**				
		- melters		5			0.02			
		- transporters		2			0.0			
		- casters		9			0.22			
		- machine moulders		1			0.12			
		- hand moulders		2			0.22			
		- shake workers		3			0.01			
		- finishing workers		2			0.0			
						Benzo[a]pyrene				
		- melters					0.01			
		- transporters					0.0			
		- casters					0.02			
		- machine moulders					0.04			
		- hand moulders					0.03			
		- shake workers					0.0			
		- finishing workers					0.0			
						Sum of 15 PAHs				
		- melters					6.66			
		- transporters					5.78			
		- casters					10.91			
		- machine moulders					9.64			
		- hand moulders					5.63			
		- shake workers					11.17			
		- finishing workers					0.58			

Table 1.1 (continued)

Reference, Country	Year of study	Operation/Job/Task	No. of subjects	No. of samples	No. of smokers	Exposure	Air levels (µg/m³)		Urine levels (µmol/mol creatinine)	
							Geometric Mean	Range	Mean	Range or SD
Hansen *et al.* (1994) (contd)		**B[a]P exposed workers:**								
		- Foundry 1 – low		19						0.023
		- Foundry 2 – low		13						0.065
		- Foundry 1 – medium		14						0.030
		- Foundry 2 – medium		24						0.046
		- Foundry 1 – high		1						–
		- Foundry 2 – high		18						0.033
		Pyrene exposed workers:								
		- Foundry 1 – low		19						0.023
		- Foundry 2 – low		5						0.062
		- Foundry 1 – medium		5						0.013
		- Foundry 2 – medium		32						0.044
		- Foundry 1 – high		10						0.036
		- Foundry 2 – high		18						0.046
		PAH exposed workers[b]:								
		- Foundry 1 – low		0						–
		- Foundry 2 – low		0						–
		- Foundry 1 – medium		29						0.022
		- Foundry 2 – medium		29						0.041
		- Foundry 1 – high		5						0.043
		- Foundry 2 – high		26						0.053

[a] Calculated from short-term samples
[b] Sum of 15 PAHs

(range, 0.0098–0.83), respectively. For the fettlers (n = 115), geometric mean levels of respirable dust and respirable quartz were 0.69 mg/m^3 (range, 0.076–31) and 0.041 mg/m^3 (range, 0.004–2.1), respectively. Major improvements with respect to occupational hygiene in the foundries showed maximum average concentrations of respirable dust being almost equal to the minimum average concentrations for various jobs in the past (Andersson *et al.*, 2009). A study from Taiwan, China in a continuous steel-casting plant showed similar respirable dust levels (Chen *et al.*, 2006).

1.2.2 Carbon monoxide

Carbon monoxide (CO) is formed whenever there is incomplete combustion of carbonaceous material. In the foundry environment, CO is mainly produced by cupola melting and casting operations. Other sources of CO exposure are oil burners used for charge and ladle preheating, furnaces for annealing and carburizing, transport equipment powered by internal combustion engines and fettling operations such as welding and flame cutting. Workers in the furnace area may be exposed to gases leaking from the charging and bottom levels of the cupolas (IARC, 1984).

Results of recent measurements of exposure levels to CO in iron and steel foundries were not available to the Working Group.

1.2.3 Binder compounds

Organic binder materials for cores and moulds include furan, phenol-formaldehyde, urea-formaldehyde and urethane resins as well as oleo-resinous oils. These ingredients may volatilize into the workplace air during mixing, blowing, ramming, drying or baking operations. Curing reactions and thermal decomposition give rise to formation of additional compounds, which are released during pouring and shake-out. When organic binders are subjected to high temperatures, pyrolysis may produce gases and smoke aerosols. Only a few components of these emissions have been identified: aliphatic components include methane, ethane, ethylene, acetylene, and smaller amounts of high molecular-weight compounds; aromatic substances include benzene, toluene, xylenes, naphthalenes and a variety of PAHs in lower concentrations. Nitrogen compounds such as ammonia, cyanides and amines may be formed from the nitrogen-containing urea, ammonium salts and hexamethylenetetramine that are used as binder chemicals. Urethane resins may emit free isocyanates under moulding and pouring conditions. No-bake catalysts, based on arylsulphonic acids, may produce sulfur dioxide and hydrogen sulphide by thermal processes. If phosphoric acid is used as a catalyst, phosphine can be formed in the strongly reducing atmosphere of the hot emissions. In air, phosphine rapidly oxidizes to phosphorus oxide. Furan binders contain free furfuryl alcohol, which can volatilize during mixing, moulding or core-making. Similarly, furan and phenolic resins may emit formaldehyde, phenol and other derivatives by volatilization or thermal decomposition. Core oils and alkyd-isocyanate resins are partly composed of natural drying oils, and heating of these materials gives rise to acrolein, various aldehydes, ketones, acids and esters as well as aliphatic hydrocarbons. When organic solvents are used in sand binders, the vapours may add to the exposure of workers (Toeniskoetter & Schafer, 1977; IARC, 1984).

A study from Sweden by Westberg *et al.* (2005) showed that core-makers had higher average exposure to formaldehyde that casters who were more exposed to methyl-isocyanate and isocyanic acid. All four Swedish foundries using the Hot Box core-binder system were included in this study.

1.2.4 Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons

PAHs result from thermal decomposition of carbonaceous ingredients in foundry sand. During casting, PAHs are formed and partly vapourised under the extremely hot and reducing conditions at the mould-metal interface. They are then adsorbed onto soot, fume or sand particles and spread throughout the workplace during shake-out and other dusty operations. Although the mechanism of PAH formation is complex and variable, the reactions proceed via pathways that involve free radicals. Various radical species containing carbon atoms combine in rapid fashion at the temperature range of 500–800 °C. This pyro-synthesis is influenced by many variables, such as the composition of the gaseous atmosphere and the chemical structure of the carbonaceous material. Organic binders, coal powder and other carbonaceous additives are the predominant sources of PAHs in iron and steel foundries. In some cases, exhaust gases from engines, furnaces and ovens may increase the exposure of workers to these compounds (IARC, 1984).

Studies from the late 1980s in Denmark showed low levels of exposure to PAHs in the foundry workplace atmosphere (Hansen *et al.*, 1994; Table 1.1).

1.2.5 Metals

Metal fumes are formed by evaporation, condensation and oxidation of metals in air. Furnace tenders, melters, casters, ladle-men, pourers and crane drivers are exposed to fumes from molten metal; fettlers are exposed to metal fumes and dusts from grinding, welding and flame-cutting operations (IARC, 1984).

Apostoli *et al.* (1988) measured concentrations of thallium in urine of workers in two cast-iron foundries (with 9 and 12 subjects, respectively) employed in cupola furnace operating and iron casting. These workers were potentially exposed to coke dust. The mean urinary thallium concentrations were higher for the cast-iron foundry workers (n = 21; mean, 0.33 µg/l; range, 0.06–1.04) than for non-exposed individuals (n = 72; mean, 0.22 µg/l; range, 0.06–0.61), but lower than those of cement workers (n = 30; mean, 0.38 µg/l; range, 0.08–1.22).

In a study from the United Kingdom, concentrations of 14 elements in the blood of workers with low-alloy steel and stainless steel, and of workers exposed to lead- and cadmium-containing dusts were measured and compared with values of similar measurements in an unexposed control group. Concentrations of 20 elements in dust samples were also measured. The only elements that showed significantly elevated levels in whole blood were cadmium in workers with non-ferrous metals and lead in all workers. The values for lead were 97.2 ± 39.9 ppb in 19 workers with low-alloy steel, 74.9 ± 25.1 ppb in 20 workers with stainless steel, and 54.0 ± 18.2 ppb in 42 controls. The high concentrations cadmium and lead in the dusts confirmed the exposure of the workers (Triger *et al.*, 1989).

In a Danish study conducted over a 16-month period in 1996–1997, manganese concentrations were measured in air, and in blood from 24 furnace-men employed in three small-size foundries and from 21 scrap-recycling workers at another plant. Furnace-men who work in poorly ventilated smelting departments were found to have higher levels of manganese in their blood (approx. 2.5 ± 5 µg/L above reference values) despite low concentrations of manganese in fumes (0.002 ± 0.064 mg/m^3) (Lander *et al.*, 1999).

In a Taiwan, China study among 63 steel-production workers, Horng *et al.* (2003) measured urinary concentrations of cadmium, cobalt, nickel and lead by use of differential-pulse stripping voltammetry. Mean concentrations of the metals were elevated: cadmium: 9.52 µg/L, range, 3.19–22.07; cobalt: 8.18 µg/L, range, 3.06–23.30; nickel: 33.10 µg/L, range, 13.90–78.90; lead:

53.50 µg/L, range, 28.90–85.60. Age and duration of employment were correlated with the urinary concentrations of these metals. [The limited information provided on the actual job content of the workers did not give insight whether these workers were employed in primary steel production or in the steel foundry.]

1.2.6 Refractory ceramic fibres

In a study on refractory ceramic fibres (RCF) from Belgium, ferruginous bodies mimicking asbestos were detected in nine of 1800 bronchoalveolar lavage samples collected during 1992–1997 (Dumortier *et al.*, 2001). The nine individuals from whom these samples originated had been employed either as foundry worker, steel worker, or welder and the majority had worked on furnace insulation. Mean airborne fibre concentrations measured during installation or removal of RCF furnace insulation are close to 1 fibre/mL air (Maxim *et al.*, 1997), but concentrations as high as 23 fibres/mL have been detected (Strübel & Faul, 1994).

Two Finnish steel plants, three foundries and a repair shop were studied for the presence of airborne ceramic fibres under normal production and maintenance conditions (i.e. during the replacement of oven insulation). While ceramic fibres were found in most production phases (range < 0.01–0.29 fibres/cm^3), considerably higher fibre counts were obtained during maintenance work (range < 0.01–14.2 fibres/cm^3). Results from nasal sampling were found to correlate with the airborne fibre concentrations at the group level. The mean fibre concentrations varied from 34 to 930 fibres/cm^3 of lavage fluid (Linnainmaa *et al.*, 2007).

2. Cancer in Humans

2.1 Cohort studies

There are 13 cohort studies available on iron and steel founding workers in various parts of the world. Nearly all of these show a significantly increased risk for lung cancer, either in the entire cohort or in high-exposed subgroups (Koskela *et al.*, 1976; Gibson *et al.*, 1977; Tola *et al.*, 1979; Sitas *et al.*, 1989; Andjelkovich *et al.*, 1990, 1992, 1995; Moulin *et al.*, 1993; Sorahan *et al.*, 1994; Adzersen *et al.*, 2003; Hoshuyama *et al.*, 2006; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-29-Table2.1.pdf). There was a non-significantly increased lung-cancer risk in one study (Decoufle & Wood, 1979). In the cohort study from the United Kingdom (Sorahan *et al.*, 1994) an internal dose–response in terms of years of employment was found. A study from the USA showed a significantly increased lung-cancer risk after adjustment for smoking (Andjelkovich *et al.*, 1994). There are two additional cohorts, based on proportional mortality, that provide supporting evidence for an excess of lung cancer in foundry workers (Egan-Baum *et al.*, 1981; Silverstein *et al.*, 1986).

2.2 Case–control studies

Two population-based case–control studies, one from the USA (Blot *et al.*, 1983) and one from Poland (Becher *et al.*, 1989), showed a statistically significant excess of lung cancer in association with foundry work, with adjustment for smoking (see Table 2.2, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-29-Table2.2.pdf).

2.3 Synthesis

Considering the consistent findings in the available cohort studies and the positive evidence from two case–control studies, the epidemiological data clearly support the notion that work in iron and steel foundries is associated with an increased risk for lung cancer. Chance, bias and confounding are not likely to explain the excess risk.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Other Relevant Data

4.1 Mechanistic evidence relevant to the carcinogenic hazards from occupational exposures during iron and steel founding

4.1.1 Experimental systems

In several studies extracts of particulates from samples collected at a steel foundry were mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* strain TA98 in the presence or absence of an exogenous metabolic activation system. In another study filter extracts were mutagenic in *Salmonella typhimurium* strains TA98 and TA100 in the presence or absence of an exogenous metabolic activation system (IARC, 1984).

Exposures in the iron and steel founding industry are complex and include a wide variety of known genotoxic and carcinogenic substances including PAHs, metals (e.g. nickel, chromium) and formaldehyde. These agents have been previously reviewed by IARC (1983, 1990, 1995, 2010).

4.1.2 Humans

Workers in a Finnish iron foundry with occupational exposure to PAHs and control subjects without occupational exposure were examined for the presence in peripheral white blood cells of aromatic DNA adducts by use of ^{32}P-postlabelling. There was a significant correlation between the estimated exposures and DNA-adduct levels (Phillips *et al.*, 1988; Reddy *et al.*, 1991). The competitive ELISA assay was used to study another population of foundry workers with respect to the presence of aromatic DNA-adducts, which showed a positive trend with exposure (Santella *et al.*, 1993). Foundry workers studied over a period of five years were evaluated for aromatic DNA adducts in their leukocytes. During this time exposure to PAHs decreased and the level of DNA adducts decreased also. In the total group exposure was related to the level of DNA adducts (Perera *et al.*, 1994; Hemminki *et al.*, 1997; Perera *et al.*, 2000).

4.2 Synthesis

There is moderate evidence that extracts of particles collected from a steel foundry act via a genotoxic mechanism, based on bacterial mutation studies. There is weak evidence for a genotoxic mechanism of action for exposures during iron and steel founding, based on DNA-adduct studies.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposures during iron and steel founding. Occupational exposures during iron and steel founding cause cancer of the lung.

No data on the carcinogenicity to experimental animals of mixtures present in iron and steel founding were available to the Working Group.

Occupational exposures during iron and steel founding are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Adzersen KH, Becker N, Steindorf K, Frentzel-Beyme R (2003). Cancer mortality in a cohort of male German iron foundry workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 43: 295–305. doi:10.1002/ajim.10187 PMID:12594777

Andersson L, Bryngelsson I-L, Ohlson C-G *et al.* (2009). Quartz and dust exposure in Swedish iron foundries. *J Occup Environ Hyg*, 6: 9–18. doi:10.1080/15459620802523943 PMID:18982534

Andjelkovich DA, Janszen DB, Brown MH *et al.* (1995). Mortality of iron foundry workers: IV. Analysis of a subcohort exposed to formaldehyde. *J Occup Environ Med*, 37: 826–837. doi:10.1097/00043764-199507000-00012 PMID:7552467

Andjelkovich DA, Mathew RM, Richardson RB, Levine RJ (1990). Mortality of iron foundry workers: I. Overall findings. *J Occup Med*, 32: 529–540. doi:10.1097/00043764-199006000-00010 PMID:2166148

Andjelkovich DA, Mathew RM, Yu RC *et al.* (1992). Mortality of iron foundry workers. II. Analysis by work area. *J Occup Med*, 34: 391–401. PMID:1564577

Andjelkovich DA, Shy CM, Brown MH *et al.* (1994). Mortality of iron foundry workers. III. Lung cancer case-control study. *J Occup Med*, 36: 1301–1309. doi:10.1097/00043764-199412000-00011 PMID:7884571

Apostoli P, Maranelli G, Minoia C *et al.* (1988). Urinary thallium: critical problems, reference values and preliminary results of an investigation in workers with suspected industrial exposure. *Sci Total Environ*, 71: 513–518. doi:10.1016/0048-9697(88)90226-4 PMID:3406716

Becher H, Jedrychowski W, Flak E *et al.* (1989). Lung cancer, smoking, and employment in foundries. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 15: 38–42. doi:10.5271/sjweh.1884 PMID:2922587

Blot WJ, Brown LM, Pottern LM *et al.* (1983). Lung cancer among long-term steel workers. *Am J Epidemiol*, 117: 706–716. PMID:6859026

Chen P-C, Doyle PE, Wang J-D (2006). Respirable dust exposure and respiratory health in male Taiwanese steelworkers. *Ind Health*, 44: 190–199. doi:10.2486/indhealth.44.190 PMID:16610559

Decoufle P & Wood DJ (1979). Mortality patterns among workers in a gray iron foundry. *Am J Epidemiol*, 109: 667–675. PMID:453187

Dumortier P, Broucke I, De Vuyst P (2001). Pseudoasbestos bodies and fibers in bronchoalveolar lavage of refractory ceramic fiber users. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*, 164: 499–503. PMID:11500357

Egan-Baum E, Miller BA, Waxweiler RJ (1981). Lung cancer and other mortality patterns among foundrymen. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 7: Suppl 4147–155. PMID:7330626

Gibson ES, Martin RH, Lockington JN (1977). Lung cancer mortality in a stell foundry. *J Occup Med*, 19: 807–812. doi:10.1097/00043764-197712000-00006 PMID:592002

Hansen AM, Omland O, Poulsen OM *et al.* (1994). Correlation between work process-related exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and urinary levels of alpha-naphthol, beta-naphthylamine and 1-hydroxypyrene in iron foundry workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 65: 385–394. doi:10.1007/BF00383249 PMID:8034363

Hemminki K, Dickey C, Karlsson S *et al.* (1997). Aromatic DNA adducts in foundry workers in relation to exposure, life style and CYP1A1 and glutathione transferase M1 genotype. *Carcinogenesis*, 18: 345–350. doi:10.1093/carcin/18.2.345 PMID:9054627

Horng C-J, Horng P-H, Hsu JW, Tsai J-L (2003). Simultaneous determination of urinary cadmium, cobalt, lead, and nickel concentrations in steel production workers by differential pulse stripping voltammetry. *Arch Environ Health*, 58: 104–110. doi:10.3200/AEOH.58.2.104-110 PMID:12899211

Hoshuyama T, Pan G, Tanaka C *et al.* (2006). Mortality of iron-steel workers in Anshan, China: a retrospective cohort study. *Int J Occup Environ Health*, 12: 193–202. PMID:16967824

IARC (1983). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 1, chemical, environmental and experimental data. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 32: 1–453. PMID:6586639

IARC (1984). Polynuclear aromatic compounds, Part 3, industrial exposures in aluminium production, coal gasification, coke production, and iron and steel founding. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 34: 1–219.

IARC (1990). Chromium, nickel and welding. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 49: 1–648. PMID:2232124

IARC (1995). Wood dust and formaldehyde. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 62: 1–405.

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

IARC (2010). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

Koskela RS, Hernberg S, Kärävä R *et al.* (1976). A mortality study of foundry workers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 2: Suppl 173–89. doi:10.5271/sjweh.2829 PMID:968468

Lander F, Kristiansen J, Lauritsen JM (1999). Manganese exposure in foundry furnacemen and scrap recycling workers. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 72: 546–550. doi:10.1007/s004200050414 PMID:10592008

Linnainmaa M, Kangas J, Mäkinen M *et al.* (2007). Exposure to refractory ceramic fibres in the metal industry. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 51: 509–516. doi:10.1093/annhyg/mem027 PMID:17607019

Maxim LD, Allshouse JN, Kelly WP *et al.* (1997). A multi-year workplace-monitoring program for refractory ceramic fibers: findings and conclusions. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*, 26: 156–171. doi:10.1006/rtph.1997.1153 PMID:9356279

Moulin JJ, Wild P, Mantout B *et al.* (1993). Mortality from lung cancer and cardiovascular diseases among stainless-steel producing workers. *Cancer Causes Control*, 4: 75–81. doi:10.1007/BF00053147 PMID:8386949

Perera F, Tsai WY, Dickey C, Hemminki K (2000). Re: Hemminki,K., Dickey,C., Karlsson,S., Bell,D., Hsu,Y., Tsai,W.-Y., Mooney,L.A., Savela,K. and Perera,F.P. (1997) Aromatic DNA adducts in foundry workers in relation to exposure, lifestyle and CYP1A1 and glutathione transferase M1 genotype. Carcinogenesis, 18, 345–350. *Carcinogenesis*, 21: 849 doi:10.1093/carcin/21.4.849 PMID:10753227

Perera FP, Dickey C, Santella R *et al.* (1994). Carcinogen-DNA adducts and gene mutation in foundry workers with low-level exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Carcinogenesis*, 15: 2905–2910. doi:10.1093/carcin/15.12.2905 PMID:8001254

Phillips DH, Hemminki K, Alhonen A *et al.* (1988). Monitoring occupational exposure to carcinogens: detection by 32P-postlabelling of aromatic DNA adducts in white blood cells from iron foundry workers. *Mutat Res*, 204: 531–541. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(88)90047-X PMID:3347220

Reddy MV, Hemminki K, Randerath K (1991). Postlabeling analysis of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-DNA adducts in white blood cells of foundry workers. *J Toxicol Environ Health*, 34: 177–185. doi:10.1080/15287399109531557 PMID:1920524

Santella RM, Hemminki K, Tang DL *et al.* (1993). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-DNA adducts in white blood cells and urinary 1-hydroxypyrene in foundry workers. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*, 2: 59–62. PMID:8420613

Silverstein M, Maizlish N, Park R *et al.* (1986). Mortality among ferrous foundry workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 10: 27–43. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700100105 PMID:3740065

Sitas F, Douglas AJ, Webster EC (1989). Respiratory disease mortality patterns among South African iron moulders. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 310–315. PMID:2751928

Sorahan T, Faux AM, Cooke MA (1994). Mortality among a cohort of United Kingdom steel foundry workers with special reference to cancers of the stomach and lung, 1946–90. *Occup Environ Med*, 51: 316–322. doi:10.1136/oem.51.5.316 PMID:8199681

Strübel G & Faul L (1994). Pollutant load caused by ceramic fibers and new results about their behaviour of recrystallization. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 38: Suppl 1713–722.

Toeniskoetter RH, Schafer RJ (1977). *Industrial hygiene aspects of the use of sand binders and additives*. In: *The Working Environment in Iron Foundries*. Birmingham, United Kingdom: British Cotton Industry Research Association, pp. 19-1–19-28.

Tola S, Koskela RS, Hernberg S, Järvinen E (1979). Lung cancer mortality among iron foundry workers. *J Occup Med*, 21: 753–759. doi:10.1097/00043764-197911000-00010 PMID:512720

Triger DR, Crowe W, Ellis MJ *et al.* (1989). Trace element levels in the blood of workers in two steel works and a non-ferrous plant handling lead and cadmium compared with a non-exposed population. *Sci Total Environ*, 78: 241–261. doi:10.1016/0048-9697(89)90037-5 PMID:2717924

Westberg H, Löfstedt H, Seldén A *et al.* (2005). Exposure to low molecular weight isocyanates and formaldehyde in foundries using hot box core binders. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 49: 719–725. doi:10.1093/annhyg/mei040 PMID:16126762

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE AS A PAINTER

Occupational exposure as a painter was considered by previous Working Groups in 1988 and 2007 (IARC, 1989, 2010a). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

1.1 Description of paint products

Paint is a suspension of finely divided pigment particles in a liquid composed of a binder (resin), a volatile solvent or water, and additives that impart special characteristics. The volatile components evaporate from the drying film after application, while the binder holds the pigment in the dry film, causing it to adhere to the substrate. Some high quality, hard gloss paints are referred to as enamels.

The basic components of paints vary widely in terms of chemical composition, depending on the colour, the durability, and other required properties of the paint. Table 1.1 lists the main substances and classes of chemicals present in paints, to which workers may be exposed in the painting trades.

Thousands of chemical compounds are used in paint products as pigments, extenders, binders, solvents, and additives. Azo pigments that contain 3,3′-dichlorobenzidine are common, although free aromatic amines are not present in significant quantities. Asbestos was used as a filler until the early 1990s. The main organic solvents used in paints are toluene, xylene, aliphatic compounds, ketones, alcohols, esters, and glycol ethers. Nowadays, solvent-based paints contain much less solvent – and less hazardous solvents – than a decade ago. In some cases the solvent content is reduced to such an extent that the amounts of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) released from the paint are similar to those from water-based paints.

Several hazardous chemicals (including benzene, phthalates (plasticizers), chromium, and lead oxides) have been reduced or replaced in paint in some countries, although they are still used elsewhere. The increasing use of water-based paints and powder coatings has promoted this trend. New formulations contain lower-toxicity solvents, biocides, and neutralizing agents, such as amines.

1.1.1 Pigments and fillers

Paints may contain pigments, dyes and fillers. Hazardous pigments and fillers, especially chromate- or lead-based substances, are increasingly replaced by other compounds, even though many of the new products have a lower performance in corrosion protection or mechanical properties of the paint layers. Many paints for industrial or individual use are lead- and chromate-free, especially in western Europe, but the situation is extremely diverse and complex across countries worldwide.

Table 1.1 Main substances (and classes of substances) to which workers may be exposed in the painting trades[a]

Material	Principal uses or sources of emissions	Agent evaluated	Evaluation
Acrylates (e.g. ethyl acrylate, methyl methacrylate)	Acrylic resins, ultraviolet curing paints	Ethyl acrylate Acrylic acid Methyl acrylate Methyl methacrylate	2B 3 3 3
Acrylic resins	Binders	As above	
Alcohols, aliphatic (e.g. methanol, isopropanol, *n*-butanol)	Solvents (lacquers), paint removers	Methanol Ethanol Isopropanol *n*-Butanol	– – 3 –
Alkalis (e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide)	Paint removers	–	–
Alkyd resins	Binders	–	–
Aluminium, powder	Pigment	–	–
Amides, aliphatic (e.g. dimethylformamide)	Solvents	Dimethylformamide	2A
Amines (mono), aliphatic (e.g. diethylamine) and alkanolamines (e.g. 2-amino-2-methyl-1-propanol)	Water-based paints	Triethanolamine	3
Amines (poly), aliphatic (e.g. diethylenetriamine)	Curing agents (epoxy resins)	–	–
Amines, aromatic (e.g. *meta*-phenylenediamine, 4,4-methylenedianiline)	Curing agents (epoxy resins)	*meta*-Phenylenediamine 4,4-Methylenedianiline	3 2B
Amino resins (e.g. urea-formaldehyde resins, melamine-formaldehyde resins)	Binders	See formaldehyde	
Ammonia	Water-based paints	–	–
Anhydrides, organic (e.g. maleic anhydride, phthalic anhydride, trimellitic anhydride)	Alkyd resin synthesis, curing agents (epoxy resins)	Succinic anhydride	3
Antimony compounds (e.g. antimony trioxide)	Pigments, fire retardant pigments	Antimony trioxide Antimony trisulfide	2B 3
Arsenic compounds (e.g. copper aceto-arsenate)	Antifouling agents	–	1
Asbestos	Filler, spackling and taping compounds, talc	Asbestos	1
Barium compounds (e.g. barium sulfate, barium carbonate)	Pigments	–	–
Benzoyl peroxide	Catalyst	Benzoyl peroxide	3
Bisphenol A	Epoxy resins		3
Cadmium compounds (e.g. cadmium sulfide, cadmium sulfoselenide)	Pigments	Cadmium and cadmium compounds	1

Table 1.1 (continued)

Material	Principal uses or sources of emissions	Agent evaluated	Evaluation
Calcium compounds (e.g. calcium sulfate, calcium carbonate)	Fillers	–	–
Camphor	Plasticizer	–	–
Carbon black	Pigment	Carbon black	2B
Cellulose ester resins (e.g. cellulose nitrate, cellulose acetate)	Binders	–	–
Chloracetamide	Fungicide (water-based paints)	–	–
Chlorofluorocarbons	Spray-can paint propellants	Chlorofluoromethane	3
Chromium and chromium compounds (e.g. chromic oxide, chromates)	Pigments	Chromium (III) compounds Chromium (VI) compounds Chromium, metallic	3 1 3
Clays (e.g. bentonite)	Fillers	–	–
Coal-tar and asphalt	Special waterproof coatings (ships, tanks, pipes)	Coal tar Coal-tar pitches Bitumen extracts Bitumen refined	1 1 2B 3
Cobalt compounds	Pigments, driers	Cobalt and cobalt compounds Cobalt, metallic	2B 2B
Copper and copper compounds (e.g. bronze powder, cuprous oxide)	Pigments, antifouling agents	–	–
Dyes and pigments, organic (e.g. aromatic azo dyes, phthalocyanines, rhodamine)	Pigments	CI Basic Red 9 } Magenta production } 2-naphthylamine } 4-aminobiphenyl } Auramine production } Benzidine } Benzidine-based dyes }	2B 1 1 1 1 1 1
Epichlorohydrin	Epoxy resins	Epichlorohydrin	2A
Epoxy resin	Binders	–	–
Esters, aliphatic (e.g. ethyl acetate, isopropyl acetate)	Solvents	–	–
Ethers, aliphatic (e.g. isopropyl ether, tetrahydrofuran) and glycol ethers (e.g. methyl cellosolve)	Solvents	2-Butoxyethanol 1-*tert*-Butoxypropan-2-ol	3 3

Table 1.1 (continued)

Material	Principal uses or sources of emissions	Agent evaluated	Evaluation
Formaldehyde	Amino resin varnishes, biocide (water-based paints)	Formaldehyde	1
Gasoline	Solvent	Gasoline	2B
Glycidyl ethers (e.g. *n*-butyl glycidyl ether and bisphenol A diglycidyl ether)	Epoxy resin diluents and constituents	Phenylglycidyl ether Triethylene glycol diglycidyl ether Bisphenol A diglycidyl ether	2B 3 3
Glycols (e.g. ethylene glycol)	Polyester resins, water-based paints	–	–
Hydrocarbons, aliphatic (e.g. hexanes, heptanes)	Solvents (naphthas, white spirits)	–	–
Hydrocarbons, aromatic (e.g. benzene, toluene, xylenes, trimethylbenzene)	Solvents (naphthas, white spirits), paint removers	Benzene Toluene Xylene Ethylbenzene	1 3 3 2B
Hydrocarbons, chlorinated (e.g. dichloromethane, 1,1,1-trichloroethane, carbon tetrachloride, trichloroethylene)	Solvents, paint removers, metal degreasers	Dichloromethane 1,1,1-Trichloroethane Carbon tetrachloride Trichloroethylene	2B 3 2B 2A
Hydrochloric acid (hydrogen chloride)	Catalyst (amino resins)	–	3
Iron compounds (e.g. iron oxides, ferric ferrocyanide)	Pigments	Ferric oxide	3
Isocyanates (e.g. 1,6-hexamethylene diisocyanate, toluene diisocyanate)	Two-component polyurethane resins	Toluene diisocyanate	2B
Isothiazolones (e.g. 1,2-benzisothiazolin-3-one)	Biocides in tinned foods	–	–
Kerosene	Solvent	Jet fuel	3
Ketones, aliphatic (e.g. acetone, methyl ethyl ketone, cyclohexanone, isophorone, diacetone alcohol)	Solvents, lacquers, paint removers	Cyclohexanone	3
Lead compounds (e.g. lead chromate, lead oxides, basic lead carbonate, lead naphthenate)	Primers, pigments, driers	Lead Lead compounds, inorganic	2B 2A
Magnesium compounds (e.g. magnesium carbonate)	Fillers	–	–
Manganese naphthenate	Drier	–	–
Mercury compounds (e.g. mercuric oxide, phenyl mercuric acetate)	Fungicides (water-based paints)	Mercury and inorganic mercury compounds	3
Methyl cellulose	Thickener (water-based paints)	–	–
Mica	Filler	–	–
Molybdenum compounds (e.g. lead molybdate)	Pigments	–	–
Nickel, metal powder	Pigment	Nickel compounds Nickel, metallic and alloys	1 2B 2B

Table 1.1 (continued)

Material	Principal uses or sources of emissions	Agent evaluated	Evaluation
Nitroparaffins (e.g. nitroethane, 2-nitropropane)	Solvents	2-Nitropropane	2B
Oils, vegetable (e.g. linseed oil, tung oil)	Binders	–	–
Oximes (e.g. methyl ethyl ketoxime)	Anti-oxidants, anti-skinning agents	–	–
Petroleum solvents (e.g. Stoddard solvent, VM & P naphtha)	Solvents, paint removers	Petroleum solvents	3
Phenol	Phenol-formaldehyde resins, paint remover (formerly)	Phenol	3
Phenol-formaldehyde resins	Binders	See phenol, and formaldehyde	
Phenols, chlorinated (e.g. pentachlorophenol)	Fungicides (water-based paints)	Polychlorophenols and their sodium salts Pentachlorophenol	2B 2B
Phosphates, organic (e.g. tricresyl-*ortho*-phosphate, tributyl phosphate)	Plasticizers	–	–
Phthalate esters (e.g. dibutyl phthalate, dioctyl phthalate	Plasticizers	Di(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate Butyl benzyl phthalate	3 3
Polychlorinated biphenyls	Plasticizers	Polychlorinated biphenyls	2A
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons	Special waterproof coatings (ships, tanks, pipes)	Selected polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons	–[b]
Polyester resins	Binders	–	–
Polyurethane resins	Binders	Polyurethane foams	3
Polyvinylacetate resins	Binders	Polyvinyl acetate	3
Pyrolysis fumes	Removal of paint by burning; heat-curing operations	–	–
Rosin	Binder	–	–
Rubber, synthetic (e.g. butyl rubber, styrene-butadiene rubber)	Binders (special paints, water-based paints)	Rubber industry	1
Shellac resin	Binder	–	–
Silica, amorphous (e.g. diatomaceous earth)	Filler	Silica, amorphous	3
Silica, crystalline (e.g. quartz)	Filler, sand-blasting operation	Silica, crystalline	1
Silicates (e.g. sodium silicate, aluminium silicate)	Fillers	–	–
Stearates (e.g. aluminium stearates, zinc stearates)	Soaps, flattening agents	–	–
Strontium compounds (e.g. strontium chromate, strontium sulfide)	Pigments	Strontium chromate see chromium and chromium compounds	
Styrene	Polyester resins	Styrene	2B

Table 1.1 (continued)

Material	Principal uses or sources of emissions	Agent evaluated	Evaluation
Styrene oxide	Diluent (epoxy resins)	Styrene-7,8-oxide	2A
Sulfuric acid	Metal cleaner	–	–
Talc	Filler	Talc containing asbestiform fibres Talc, not containing asbestiform fibres	1 3
Tin, metal powder	Lacquers (tinplate containers)	–	–
Tin, organic compounds (e.g. tri-*n*-butyltin oxide, dibutyltin laurate)	Antifouling agents, catalysts	–	–
Titanium dioxide	Pigment	Titanium dioxide	2B
para-Toluenesulfonic acid	Catalyst (amino resins)	–	–
Turpentine	Solvent	–	–
Vinyl acetate	Polyvinylacetate resins	Vinyl acetate Vinyl chloride – vinyl acetate copolymers	2B 3
Zinc and compounds (e.g. zinc metal powder, zinc oxide, zinc chromate)	Pigments, catalysts, bodying agents	Zinc chromate see chromium and chromium compounds	

[a] Updated from IARC (1989)

[b] Groups 1–3; see (IARC, 2010d) for details

–, not evaluated by IARC

(a) Pigments

Pigments can be classified as inorganic and organic (Bentley & Turner, 1998; Stoye & Freitag, 1998; Brock *et al.*, 2000; Smith, 2002) and they are generally added in considerable proportion (3–60% by weight) to paint formulations to provide colour, opacity, and sheen. Pigments also affect the viscosity, flow, toughness, durability, and other physical or chemical characteristics of the coating (e.g. corrosion-protective properties). The diameter of pigment particles is generally less than 3 μm, but for special performance the particle size can be up to 15 or 20 μm (Oyarzún, 2000).

Today the most common pigment employed in paint is the white pigment titanium dioxide, TiO_2 (IARC, 2010b). It occurs in two different crystal forms – rutile and anatase – with distinct colour properties. The rutile crystal structure has an almost 25% greater opacity than the anatase form. Because of its chemical inertness, extreme whiteness, excellent covering power and lack of toxicity compared with white lead, titanium dioxide is the predominant component in the manufacture of white paint, representing 90% of all pigments on the market worldwide. The most important black pigment in paints is carbon black (micro-crystalline carbon, 10–40 nm, graphite-similar), which belongs to the inorganic pigments (Buxbaum & Pfaff, 2005; IARC, 2010b).

In the 1960s, there were probably more than 200 different organic pigments used in paints. At the time, azo pigments such as Benzidine Yellow were considered to have relatively low toxicity, and were widely used. These pigments have relatively low solubility, and although they are based on the aromatic amine 3,3′-dichlorobenzidine, the free amine is not readily bioavailable. Three 3,3′-dichlorobenzidine-based paint pigments were commonly used in architectural finishes in the mid-to-late 1960s. Benzidine was used as the basis for the paint-pigment pyrazolone maroon (IARC, 2010c). The free aromatic amines used in the synthesis of azo pigments can be found in trace amounts as impurities. The aromatic amines 4-aminobiphenyl, benzidine, 2-naphthylamine and 2-methyl-4-chloroaniline [4-chloro-*ortho*-toluidine] have been found in azo pigments (IARC, 2010c).

(b) Dyes

Dyes, unlike pigments, are soluble in paint medium. Dyes are used only in a few instances or products, because they provide much less long-term stability against light and other influences. Examples of use of dyes are in transparent wood stains (Zollinger & Iqbal, 2003), and as transparent colourants in automobile coatings (Streitberger & Dössel, 2008).

1.1.2 Binders (resins)

The ‘vehicle’ part of paints contains components collectively termed ‘binders’ or film formers. Almost all binders in modern paint films are composed of polymer materials such as resins and drying oils, whose main functions are to provide film hardness, gloss, and surface adhesion, as well as resistance of the film to weather influences, air pollutants that stimulate corrosion through the atmosphere, acids, alkalis, and other agents (Stoye & Freitag, 1998; Brock *et al.*, 2000; Müller & Poth, 2006). A large variety of natural and synthetic binders or resins, mostly synthetic, have been used in paints.

(a) Natural resins and oils

Shellac and insect exudations are natural oleoresins that have been used in paints for centuries. Another useful natural resin is rosin (colophony), which is obtained as a residue after distilling pine oleoresin for the production of turpentine. Vegetable and fish oils have long been used as binders in traditional paints and varnishes. White linseed oil has been the most important oil in standard exterior paints, despite its relatively slow drying rate. Other important

oils include castor oil, tall oil, soya-bean oil, coconut oil, cottonseed oil, tung oil and various fish oils (Brock *et al.*, 2000).

(b) Synthetic resins

A wide variety of synthetic resins have been commercially available since the early 1900s. Those that have been most frequently used in paints, varnishes and lacquers include cellulose-based resins, phenolic, alkyd, vinyl, acrylic and methacrylic resins, polyester and polyurethane resins, chlorinated rubber derivatives, styrene-butadiene, and silicone oils. Mixtures of synthetic resins provide characteristic properties that cannot be obtained from a single resin. While the amount of resin in paint varies, concentrations of 20–60% by weight are not uncommon.

1.1.3 Solvents

Since the early 1900s, the number of solvents in paints has increased considerably to encompass a broad range of petroleum and coal-tar distillates, alcohols, esters, ketones, glycols, synthetic glycol ethers and esters (mainly ethylene-derived), and propylene glycol derivatives, as well as a large variety of mixtures of these chemical classes. The choice of solvent depends on properties such as adequate polarity, possibility of hydrogen-bonding, volatility and vapour pressure, cooling effects during atomization, surface tension, viscosity, flash point, flammability and – more and more importantly – lack of adverse physiological effects. In western Europe, derivatives of ethylene-glycol monoethyl-ether (ethyl glycol) have been removed from many formulations since the 1980s. Since 1990, the use of styrene has been restricted by legislation in the European Union. Water-based coatings generally require water-soluble solvents such as glycol ethers (butyl glycol), *n*-butanol or, less commonly, *N*-methyl-pyrrolidone.

1.1.4 Additives

Additives are defined as chemicals that have a specific function or impart a special property to paints or coatings. They are present at low concentrations (generally 0.1–5% by weight) and include surfactants and dispersing agents, driers, rheological agents, plasticizers, biocides, anti-skinning agents, antifoam agents (de-foamers), corrosion inhibitors, light (UV) stabilizers and catalysts (Stoye & Freitag, 1998; Brock *et al.*, 2000). Many additives are adapted to the new paint systems by modification of existing products rather than by the development of new ones.

(a) Surfactants and dispersing additives

Anionic, cationic, amphoteric or non-ionic surfactants are used in paints as pigment dispersants (in both non-aqueous and aqueous systems), emulsifying agents, protective colloids, wetting agents and antifoaming agents. Dispersants employed in non-aqueous paints include lecithin, zinc or calcium naphthenate or octoate, oleates, oleic acid, polyurethanes, polyamides and other chemicals. Dispersants in aqueous paints include polyphosphates, pyrophosphates, salts of arylalkyl-sulfonic acids and salts of polycarboxylic acids, e.g. polyacrylic acid (Oyarzún, 2000; Müller & Poth, 2006). Surfactants used in water-based paints include aluminium stearate, cellulose ethers, polydimethyl siloxanes, polyethylene, alkali metal phosphates and sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate.

A variety of other surface-active agents are added to paints to control flow, levelling, sagging, settling and viscosity. These include hydrogenated castor oils, lecithin, metallic soaps (e.g. linoleates, palmitates and stearates), treated montmorillonite clays, peptized oil gels, polyol esters, siloxan-polyester resins, silicas, and soap solutions (Brock *et al.*, 2000; Müller & Poth, 2006). Mineral oils and specially modified siloxanes are used as antifoaming agents.

(b) Driers

Driers (siccatives) used in solvent-based and water-based paints containing unsaturated polymers are principally metal salts – lead, calcium, cobalt, manganese, zirconium, vanadium, barium, zinc, cerium and lanthanum – of naphthenic acid, tall-oil acid, 2-ethylhexanolic acid and neodecanoic acid, generally at concentrations ranging from 0.3 to 0.8% (Brock *et al.*, 2000). Cobalt-based driers are the most commonly used commercially as active catalysts in both air-drying and heat-cure systems. Other metal-containing siccatives serve as auxiliary driers and are generally used in combination with cobalt- and manganese-based driers. Lead-containing products were at one time the major auxiliary driers, but legislation that limits the amount of lead used in coatings has practically eliminated its use during the period 1990–2000 (IARC, 2006). The most suitable replacements for lead are reported to be zirconium, calcium and cobalt-zirconium compounds (Müller & Poth, 2006).

(c) Rheological additives

The rheological properties of a coating material influence its optimal performance during application ('good flow without dripping') as well as its storage life. Water-soluble hydrophilic colloids that are used as rheological additives include agents such as gum arabic, gum tragacanth, starch, sodium alginate, methyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, polyvinyl alcohol, ammonium caseinate, polyurethane derivates, and polyacrylates. Acrylate salts, casein and cellulose-derived compounds are widely used in acrylic paints, while the major thickeners for styrene–butadiene paints are alkali-soluble proteins (e.g. soy-bean proteins). Methyl cellulose and hydroxyethyl cellulose are common thickeners for polyvinyl acetate paints (Brock *et al.*, 2000).

Agents used in water-based and solvent-based paints as rheological additives not derived from cellulose include maleic anhydride copolymers, mineral fillers such as colloidal attapulgite (IARC, 1997), treated magnesium montmorillonite clays, pyrogenic silicic acid (SiO_2), natural products (e.g. alginic acid, casein and soya-bean protein), polyacrylamides, polyacrylic acid salts and acid-containing cross-linked acrylic emulsion copolymers (Brock *et al.*, 2000).

(d) Plasticizers

Plasticizers are generally added in quantities of up to about 2% by weight and include dibutyl-, diethyl-, diethylhexyl- and dioctylphthalates. To a lesser extent, plasticizers also contain the low molecular-weight esters of adipic and sebacic acid, tributyl phosphate, and castor oil. Polyester resins, including maleic residues, sulfonamides, tri-*ortho*-cresyl phosphate and chlorinated diphenyls, are used occasionally (Stoye & Freitag, 1998).

(e) Biocides (fungicides, preservatives, and mildew killers)

Water-based paints contain organic substances and represent an ideal growth medium for fungi, algae and bacteria. With the reduced content of residual monomers and organic solvents (which often have anti-microbial action), there is a greater risk for microbial contamination in the new formulations. The growth of microorganisms in the coating or subsequently in the film can be reduced or even prevented by adding chemical biocides to the paint in concentrations below 1% by weight (Brock *et al.*, 2000; Schwartz & Baumstark, 2001).

In-can preservatives protect the paint against microbial growth during production, transportation and storage. Substances commonly used for this purpose are formaldehyde – now less and less common – and its reaction products with alcohols, amines and amides, as well as *N*,*S*-heterocyclic compounds such as isothiazolinones and

chloroacetamide (Brock *et al.*, 2000). *In-film preservatives*, also encompassing *antifouling additives* in marine paints, protect the applied paint against attack by bacteria, moulds, algae or mosses. Substances currently in use for this purpose include several *S*- and *N*-containing chemicals, cyclic compounds such as dithiocarbamates, thiophthalimide derivates, benzimidazole derivates and trialkyl compounds, as well as ecologically harmful substances such as organic mercury compounds (Brock *et al.*, 2000).

(f) Anti-skinning agents

Anti-skinning agents are added to paints to retard the formation of skin on the surface of the liquid coating, in either closed or open cans, without delaying the drying of the product. The principal anti-skinning agents are oximes (e.g. methyl ethyl ketoxime, butyraldoxime, cyclohexanone oxime) and phenol derivatives (methoxyphenol, *ortho*-aminophenol, poly-hydroxyphenol). Small quantities of cresols, guaiacol, hydroquinone (IARC, 1999), isobutoxysafrol and lignocol have also been used as anti-skinning agents.

(g) Corrosion inhibitors

Corrosion inhibitors can be divided into inorganic pigments and organic inhibitors (Brock *et al.*, 2000). Red lead and chromate-containing pigments are both chemically and electrochemically active. Pigments containing red lead are still used in heavy-duty anti- corrosion systems, because they possess excellent protection properties. Some zinc chromates are still essential for the protection of aluminium on aircraft. Lead- and chromate-containing anti-corrosion pigments are increasingly being substituted by phosphates (zinc, chromium(III), aluminium, calcium and magnesium phosphates). Zinc-dust primers are widely used in the protection of steel structures. The synthetic micaceous iron-oxide pigment haematite (Fe_2O_3) acts via a physical mechanism, mainly by the barrier effect of its crystal-lattice structure (platelets). The most important compound in the group of organic inhibitors is the zinc salt of 5-nitrophthalic acid.

(h) Asbestos

In the early twentieth century, asbestos was used as a filler to improve the technical properties of paints, particularly those used in shipyards and on bridges. The paints may have contained up to about 20% asbestos by weight. Usage decreased after about 1950, although special textured paints or coatings continued to be widely used in home decoration until the early 1990s. These paints contained approximately 5% chrysotile asbestos by weight (Williams *et al.*, 2007).

(i) Nanoparticles

The use of 0.5–5% (w/w) nanoparticles (10–100 nm) remarkably improves the properties of paint layers in terms of scratch resistance, hardness, gloss, weather stability, and cross-linking and hardening properties. Nanoparticles are present as single particles only at the time of manufacturing. They increase in effective size by agglomeration and by absorption of polymers and surface-active agents onto their surface. During drying of the paint, the particles continue to agglomerate and are incorporated irreversibly into the polymer matrix.

1.2 Human exposure

Workers in the painting industry are potentially exposed to the chemicals found in paint products during their application and removal. Exposure to dichloromethane occurs during paint stripping from wood and metal surfaces. Diisocyanate is present in some binders and is released during painting. Silica is used in the preparation of surfaces before painting. As bystanders during construction or demolition activities, painters may also be exposed to asbestos or crystalline silica. During the

application of paint, workers are exposed primarily to solvents, whereas the mechanical removal of paint mainly leads to exposure to pigments and fillers. In the past, exposure to hazardous substances frequently exceeded current occupational exposure limits, but exposure levels have generally decreased over time.

Exposure, both by inhalation and via skin contact, occurs specifically in operations that involve manual handling during preparation of the paint, such as weighing ingredients (pigments, extenders, resins, additives), loading them into mixing equipment, adding solvents to mills, and cleaning equipment (mixers, mills, reactors, kettles, tanks, filters). Additional exposure to solvents occurs during thinning, tinting and shading, during filling operations, and during the filtering of varnishes. The cooking of varnishes may produce emissions of various aldehydes such as acrolein, of phenol, ketones, glycerine and fatty acids as well as dusts or vapours of maleic, phthalic and fumaric anhydrides during the loading of kettles. The production of powder coatings can be associated with significant exposure to dust from resin powders, pigments, curing agents and other additives. In the manufacture of radiation-curable coatings, exposures may occur to monomers such as ethyl acrylate, other acrylates, and photo-initiators. While inhalation and cutaneous contact are the major routes of exposure, ingestion related to personal work habits constitutes another potential route of entry.

Bio-monitoring of workers exposed to paints has shown elevated levels of paint compounds or their metabolites in blood and urine. Appropriate selection and use of personal protective equipment can substantially reduce uptake, although painters do not generally wear respirators or gloves.

The main substances to which workers may be exposed are listed in Table 1.1. Quantitative studies of occupational exposure in the major painting trades are summarized in IARC (2010a).

As indicated above, the use of 0.5–5% (w/w) nanoparticles (10–100 nm) remarkably improves several properties of paint. Because these particles agglomerate and become incorporated irreversibly into the polymer matrix, painters are not exposed to single nanoparticles as such. Since nanoparticles are made by special manufacturers and sold as aqueous or solvent-based slurry because of their strong potential for agglomeration, workers in paint manufacture do not come into contact with nanoparticles (Aitken *et al.*, 2006).

2. Cancer in Humans

Occupational exposure as a painter was classified as a Group-1 carcinogen in *IARC Monograph* Volume 47 (IARC, 1989), based on an increased risk for lung cancer, and reaffirmed in *Monograph* Volume 98 (IARC, 2010a), based also on increased risks for mesothelioma and bladder cancer. The recent Working Group noted that there was *limited evidence*, based primarily on studies of maternal exposure, that painting is associated with childhood leukaemia. The epidemiological evidence on occupational exposure as a painter did not allow identification of the specific carcinogenic agent in paint.

2.1 Cancer of the lung

2.1.1 Cohort studies

Eighteen independent cohort studies of painters – excluding reports with substantial population overlap – have investigated the association between occupation as a painter and lung cancer (OPCS, 1958, 1972, 1979, 1986, 1996; Guralnick, 1963; Dunn & Weir, 1965; Menck & Henderson, 1976; Whorton *et al.*, 1983; Dubrow & Wegman, 1984; Gubéran *et al.*, 1989; Hrubec *et al.*, 1995; Alexander *et al.*, 1996; van Loon *et al.*, 1997; Boice *et al.*, 1999; Steenland & Palu,

1999; Pronk *et al.*, 2009; Pukkala *et al.*, 2009; see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-30-Table2.1.pdf). Overall, these studies have shown a significantly increased incidence or mortality from lung cancer, with a magnitude of effect that was relatively consistent between studies. Several of these studies were adjusted for tobacco smoking (Dunn & Weir, 1965; Hrubec *et al.*, 1995; van Loon *et al.*, 1997; Pronk *et al.*, 2009).

2.1.2 Case–control studies

Thirty independent case–control studies of lung cancer that reported on the association with occupation as a painter demonstrated relatively consistent increased risks for lung cancer (generally ranging between 1.10 and 2.70) (Wynder & Graham, 1951; Breslow *et al.*, 1954; Viadana *et al.*, 1976; Williams *et al.*, 1977; Milne *et al.*, 1983; Kjuus *et al.*, 1986; Lerchen *et al.*, 1987; Levin *et al.*, 1988; Ronco *et al.*, 1988; Vineis *et al.*, 1988; Zahm *et al.*, 1989; Bethwaite *et al.*, 1990; Burns & Swanson, 1991b; Siemiatycki, 1991; Morabia *et al.*, 1992; Notani *et al.*, 1993; Wu-Williams *et al.*, 1993; Finkelstein, 1995; De Stefani *et al.*, 1996, 2005; Muscat *et al.*, 1998; Wünsch-Filho *et al.*, 1998; Jahn *et al.*, 1999; Pezzotto & Poletto, 1999; Brüske-Hohlfeld *et al.*, 2000; Matos *et al.*, 2000; Pohlabeln *et al.*, 2000; Bouchardy *et al.*, 2002; Richiardi *et al.*, 2004; Baccarelli *et al.*, 2005; Zeka *et al.*, 2006; see Table 2.2, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-30-Table2.2.pdf). Twenty-seven of these studies showed positive associations (with statistically significant or borderline significant results in 15 studies) and three studies had odds ratios below 1, but not statistically significant (Morabia *et al.*, 1992; Wünsch-Filho *et al.*, 1998; Baccarelli *et al.*, 2005). All except six studies adjusted for tobacco smoking (Wynder & Graham, 1951; Breslow *et al.*, 1954; Milne *et al.*, 1983; Bethwaite *et al.*, 1990; Finkelstein, 1995; Bouchardy *et al.*, 2002).

2.1.3 Meta-analyses

Two comprehensive meta-analyses of the epidemiological literature on painters and lung cancer have been published since the previous *Monograph* (IARC, 2010a).

One meta-analysis included 39 studies (23 case–control and 16 cohort studies) (Bachand *et al.*, 2010). Summary risk estimates were derived and sensitivity analysis performed to evaluate smoking, socioeconomic status and exposure variables. Overall summary risk estimates for lung cancer were 1.29 (95%CI: 1.10–1.51) for case–control studies, and 1.22 (95%CI: 1.16–1.29) and 1.36 (95%CI: 1.34–1.41) for cohort studies, respectively. The 20 case–control studies that adjusted for smoking gave a summary relative risk (RR) of 1.32 (95%CI: 1.10–1.59). Only one of the cohort studies included in the meta-analysis adjusted for smoking and an external adjustment for smoking demonstrated an increased mortality from lung cancer in painters. [The Working Group noted that the methods for external adjustment for smoking were not clearly described.]

Guha *et al.* (2010a) performed a meta-analysis to assess the association between occupation as a painter and lung cancer. Forty-seven independent studies (18 cohort and 29 case–control studies) were included. Overall, a statistically significant increased risk for lung cancer was observed (meta-relative risk, 1.35; 95%CI: 1.29–1.41). When the analysis was restricted to smoking-adjusted estimates, the summary relative risk was 1.35 (95%CI: 1.21–1.51). On the basis of data from three studies that investigated risk in never smokers, the meta-relative risk was 2.00 (95%CI: 1.09–3.67). The increased risk persisted when the analysis was restricted to studies that adjusted for other occupational exposures (RR 1.57; 95%CI: 1.21–2.04). A duration–response relationship was also identified: the meta-relative risk for < 10 years of exposure was 1.13 (95%CI: 0.77–1.65) and 1.95 (95%CI: 1.26–3.02) for > 10

years of exposure; similarly, the meta-RR was 1.37 (95%CI: 0.89–2.13) for < 20 years of exposure and 2.00 (95%CI: 1.01–3.92) for > 20 years (the reference category was no exposure).

2.2 Mesothelioma

The association between occupation as a painter and mesothelioma was investigated in four cohort studies (Malker *et al.*, 1990; Peto *et al.*, 1995; Brown *et al.*, 2002; Pukkala *et al.*, 2009) and two case–control studies (Teschke *et al.*, 1997a; Pan *et al.*, 2005). An increase in mortality from mesothelioma was observed in each of the four cohort studies, with borderline significant relative risks ranging from 1.31 to 1.70. The two case–control studies on mesothelioma also showed an increased risk (OR, 4.5; 95%CI: 1.0–23.7; 6 exposed cases; and OR, 2.6; 95%CI: 1.3–5.3; 31 exposed cases, respectively) for persons ever employed as painters.

[The Working Group noted that it is improbable that the presence of asbestos would completely explain the excess of lung cancer; if this had been the case, a more pronounced excess of mesothelioma would have been observed.]

2.3 Cancer of the urinary bladder

2.3.1 Cohort studies

The association between occupational exposure as a painter and urinary bladder cancer was investigated in 11 cohort studies, excluding reports with substantial population overlap (OPCS, 1958, 1972, 1979, 1986; Guralnick, 1963; Whorton *et al.*, 1983; Gubéran *et al.*, 1989; Hrubec *et al.*, 1995; Steenland & Palu, 1999; Zeegers *et al.*, 2001; Pukkala *et al.*, 2009) see Table 2.3, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-30-Table2.3.pdf). Two of the cohort and record-linkage studies controlled for tobacco smoking (Hrubec *et al.*, 1995; Zeegers *et al.*, 2001). Overall these studies showed consistent increases in incidence of or mortality from urinary bladder cancer.

2.3.2 Case–control studies

Several case–control studies have investigated the association between urinary bladder cancer and occupation as a painter. Thirty-one independent case–control studies were identified (Wynder *et al.*, 1963; Cole *et al.*, 1972; Decouflé *et al.*, 1977; Williams *et al.*, 1977; Howe *et al.*, 1980; Schoenberg *et al.*, 1984; Morrison *et al.*, 1985; Coggon *et al.*, 1986; Iscovich *et al.*, 1987; Risch *et al.*, 1988; Silverman *et al.*, 1989a, b; Bethwaite *et al.*, 1990; La Vecchia *et al.*, 1990; Burns & Swanson, 1991a; Barbone *et al.*, 1994; Teschke *et al.*, 1997b; Golka *et al.*, 1999, 2008; Bouchardy *et al.*, 2002; Pelucchi *et al.*, 2002; Zheng *et al.*, 2002; Kogevinas *et al.*, 2003; Colt *et al.*, 2004; Gaertner *et al.*, 2004; Band *et al.*, 2005; Reulen *et al.*, 2007; Dryson *et al.*, 2008; Ramanakumar *et al.*, 2008; Kobrosly *et al.*, 2009 ; see Table 2.4, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-30-Table2.4.pdf). Three studies showed no association (Howe *et al.*, 1980; Colt *et al.*, 2004; Ramanakurmar *et al.*, 2007) and six reported odds ratios less than 1.0, although none were statistically significant (Morrison *et al.*, 1985 – the United Kingdom and Japanese populations; Williams *et al.*, 1977; Coggon *et al.*, 1986; Iscovich *et al.*, 1987; Gaertner *et al.*, 2004). Twenty-two case–control studies demonstrated an increased risk for bladder cancer associated with occupation as a painter. Although the results of three studies were statistically significant (Silverman *et al.*, 1989a, b; Golka *et al.*, 1999; Band *et al.*, 2005) and those of six studies were of borderline statistical significance (Wynder *et al.*, 1963; Decouflé *et al.*, 1977; Risch *et al.*, 1988; Bethwaite *et al.*, 1990; Zheng *et al.*, 2002; Kogevinas *et al.*, 2003), all studies that showed an increased risk for bladder cancer among painters were relatively consistent in the magnitude of the effect reported.

2.3.3 Meta-analyses

Five meta-analyses have also demonstrated a significant or borderline significant increased incidence of or mortality from bladder cancer among persons occupationally exposed as a painter (Yamaguchi *et al.*, 1991; Chen & Seaton, 1998; Bosetti *et al.*, 2005; Bachand *et al.*, 2010; Guha *et al.*, 2010b). The two most recent meta-analyses are highlighted below.

The meta-analysis by Bachand *et al.* (2010) included 40 case–control and 11 cohort studies. Overall bladder-cancer summary risk estimates were 1.28 (95%CI: 1.17–1.41) for case–control and 1.14 (95%CI: 1.06–1.22) and 1.27 (95%CI: 1.16–1.38) for cohort morbidity and mortality studies, respectively. The 33 case–control studies that adjusted for smoking gave a summary RR of 1.30 (95%CI: 1.17–1.44). None of the cohort studies adjusted for smoking. When an external adjustment for smoking was applied to the meta-analysis of the cohort studies, an increased incidence of and mortality from bladder cancer persisted. [The Working Group noted that the methods for the external adjustment for smoking were not clearly described.]

A separate meta-analysis of 41 independent studies (11 cohort and record-linkage studies and 30 case–control studies) conducted by Guha *et al.* (2010b) showed a meta-relative risk of 1.25 (95%CI: 1.16–1.34). This association did not change significantly when the analysis was restricted to population-based studies or studies that adjusted for smoking and other potentially confounding occupational exposures. Furthermore, exposure-response analyses suggested that the risk increased with duration of employment: those exposed < 10 years had a lower risk (meta-RR, 1.41; 95%CI: 1.00–2.01) than those exposed > 10 years (meta-RR, 1.81; 95%CI: 1.20–2.75) (reference category was no exposure).

2.4 Childhood leukaemia

2.4.1 Maternal exposure

The association between maternal exposure during painting and childhood leukaemia was evaluated in nine population-based case–control studies (van Steensel-Moll *et al.*, 1985; Lowengart *et al.*, 1987; Buckley *et al.*, 1989; Shu *et al.*, 1999, 2004; Schuz *et al.*, 2000; Freedman *et al.*, 2001; Alderton *et al.*, 2006; Scélo *et al.*, 2009; see Table 2.5, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-30-Table2.5.pdf). Most of the studies presented results for the combined exposure to paints, stains, and lacquers. Shu *et al.* (2004) presented a case-only analysis that examined whether maternal exposure to paint was associated with development of mutation in the *RAS* gene in acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (ALL) cases compared with ALL cases without *RAS* mutation and, therefore, is not directly relevant to the discussion of whether maternal exposure during painting increases the risk for childhood leukaemia compared with healthy controls.

In five studies significant positive associations were found between maternal exposure during painting, either before or during pregnancy, and acute leukaemia (van Steensel-Moll *et al.*, 1985; Lowengart *et al.*, 1987), acute non-lymphoblastic leukaemia (ANLL) (Buckley *et al.*, 1989); and ALL (Shu *et al.*, 1999; Schuz *et al.*, 2000). All these studies controlled for age and/or sex, race, social class (measured through income, socioeconomic status, or degree of urbanization) or other variables. Additionally, borderline significant positive associations were found with ALL (Freedman *et al.*, 2001; Scélo *et al.*, 2009) and non-significantly elevated ORs for ALL and acute myeloid leukaemia (AML) (Alderton *et al.*, 2006). Furthermore, significant exposure-response relationships, according to duration of maternal exposure to paint, were observed in two studies (Buckley *et al.*, 1989; Shu *et al.*, 1999).

2.4.2 Paternal exposure

The association between paternal exposure during painting and childhood leukaemia was considered in 12 population-based case–control studies (Fabia & Thuy, 1974; Hakulinen *et al.*, 1976; Kwa & Fine, 1980; Hemminki *et al.*, 1981; Sanders *et al.*, 1981; Gold *et al.*, 1982; van Steensel-Moll *et al.*, 1985; Lowengart *et al.*, 1987; Buckley *et al.*, 1989; Shu *et al.*, 1999; Schuz *et al.*, 2000; McKinney *et al.*, 2003; (see Table 2.6, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-30-Table2.6.pdf). In three of the four case–control studies on ALL, non-significant positive associations were found (van Steensel-Moll *et al.*, 1985; Schuz *et al.*, 2000; McKinney *et al.*, 2003) and in the only case–control study of ANLL (Buckley *et al.*,1989) a significant, positive association was observed. Of the eight studies that considered combined leukaemia subtypes, positive associations were found in five (either significant or borderline significant) (Fabia & Thuy, 1974; Hemminki *et al.*, 1981; Gold *et al.*, 1982; Lowengart *et al.*, 1987; McKinney *et al.*, 2003), while there was no association in two studies (Kwa & Fine, 1980; Sanders *et al.*, 1981).

2.5 Lympho-haematopoietic cancers

The risk for lymphatic and haematopoietic cancers among painters was evaluated in 21 case–control studies (Persson *et al.*, 1989, 1993; Lindquist *et al.*, 1987; La Vecchia *et al.*, 1989; Bethwaite *et al.*, 1990; Heineman *et al.*, 1992; Scherr *et al.*, 1992; Blair *et al.*, 1993; Demers *et al.*, 1993; Mele *et al.*, 1994; Nordström *et al.*, 1997; Clavel *et al.*, 1998; Persson & Fredrikson, 1999; Blair *et al.*, 2001; Costantini *et al.*, 2001; Adegoke *et al.*, 2003; Dryver *et al.*, 2004; Kato *et al.*, 2005; Colt *et al.*, 2007; Ramanakumar *et al.*, 2008; Purdue *et al.*, 2009). Although increased risks were observed, the results were inconsistent and the data are inadequate to draw a conclusion about the association between occupation as a painter and the risk for lymphatic and haematopoietic cancers.

2.6 Other cancers

A few case–control studies of cancers of the upper aerodigestive tract (oral cavity, nose, pharynx, nasopharynx, larynx, and oesophagus), stomach, pancreas, liver, colon, rectum, kidney, brain, prostate, testis, ovary and breast, and of melanoma and soft–tissue sarcoma have been conducted among painters (Tarvainen *et al.*, 2008; IARC, 2010a). Results were inconclusive for all sites.

2.7 Synthesis

The Working Group reviewed a large body of epidemiological evidence evaluating the association between occupational exposure as a painter and the risk for lung cancer (30 case–control studies, 18 cohort studies), urinary bladder cancer (30 case–control studies, 11 cohort studies) and mesothelioma (2 case–control studies, 4 cohort studies). This evidence demonstrates that occupational exposure as a painter is causally associated with the risk for cancer of the lung and urinary bladder, and for mesothelioma. The Working Group noted that the magnitude of the effect was consistent across studies and the elevated risks persisted after controlling for other occupational exposures and for tobacco smoking. Increased risks for these cancers were also observed in never smokers and current non-smokers. Several studies that demonstrated significant positive duration-response relationships support this evaluation.

The Working Group noted that no particular agent could be identified from epidemiological studies as the specific cause of the excess of lung and urinary bladder cancers. It is improbable that the presence of asbestos in paint would completely explain the excess of lung cancer; if

this had been the case, a more pronounced excess of mesothelioma would have been observed. There is little information from epidemiological studies on the risk associated with the use of paint pigments that are known lung carcinogens, such as chromium or cadmium.

There is evidence suggesting a causal association between maternal exposure during painting and childhood leukaemia in the offspring. Although there were few studies and exposure assessments were relatively poor, all of the studies showed significant positive associations after adjusting for potential confounders such as age and/or sex, race and social class, although confounding or recall bias could not be ruled out.

The evidence is inconclusive for cancer at other sites.

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Other Relevant Data

The chemicals discussed below are common components of paints: benzene, toluene, chlorinated solvents (dichloromethane, trichloroethylene), xylenes, metals (cadmium, chromium, inorganic lead), styrene, PAHs, and aromatic azo dyes.

4.1 Toxicokinetics and metabolism

4.1.1 Solvents

(a) Aromatic hydrocarbons

The aromatic hydrocarbons present in paints (benzene, toluene, xylenes and styrene) are absorbed mainly through inhalation, although oral or dermal exposure could be important as well. They are metabolized primarily in the liver by oxidation, in a process catalysed mainly by the CYP2E1 enzyme:

(i) Benzene

The toxicokinetics of benzene is reviewed in the *Monograph* on Benzene in this volume.

(ii) Toluene

Toluene is metabolised to benzyl alcohol followed by oxidation to benzoic acids, which are excreted as conjugates with glycine or with UDP-glucuronate (ATSDR, 2000a).

(iii) Xylene

All three isomers of xylene are metabolised to methylbenzyl alcohol and conjugated with glycine to form methylhippuric acid. Aromatic hydroxylation of xylene to xylenol occurs to only a limited extent in humans. About 90% of the absorbed xylene is excreted in the urine as methylhippuric acid, and less than 2% as xylenol. Approximately 5% is eliminated unchanged in exhaled air (ATSDR, 2007b).

(b) Chlorinated solvents

(i) Dichloromethane

Dichloromethane (DCM) is absorbed mainly into the bloodstream after inhalation and is found in highest concentration in adipose tissue and liver. DCM can be metabolised by the cytochrome P450(CYP)-associated enzyme CYP2E1 to form formyl chloride, CO and CO_2, and by GSTT1-1 to carbon dioxide via a postulated glutathione-conjugate (*S*-chloromethyl glutathione), and to formaldehyde. Both pathways can give rise to toxic metabolites. After inhalation exposure, humans eliminate dichloromethane mainly in expired air, but also in the urine (ATSDR, 2000b).

(ii) Trichloroethylene

Trichloroethylene (TCE) is also absorbed mainly into the bloodstream after inhalation and is widely distributed in the liver, kidneys, and the cardiovascular and nervous systems.

Trichloroethylene is mainly metabolized in the liver through an oxidative pathway by CYP isoenzymes and through conjugation with

glutathione (Davidson & Beliles, 1991; Lash *et al.*, 2000a), leading to the formation of major metabolites such as chloral hydrate, trichloroethanol and trichloroacetic acid. Four CYP isoforms play a role in TCE metabolism: CYP2A1/2, CYP2B1/2, CYP2C11/6 and CYP2E1 (Koop *et al.*, 1985; Nakajima *et al.*, 1988; Guengerich & Shimada, 1991; Lash *et al.*, 2000a). The resulting metabolites are thought to be associated with liver toxicity and liver carcinogenesis in animals. The glutathione conjugation pathway leads to the formation of dichlorovinyl glutathione and dichlorovinyl cysteine. The latter can be further metabolized by β-lyase to reactive chemical species that are thought to play a role in the toxicity of TCE in the proximal renal tubules and in the renal carcinogenicity of TCE in animals. The CYP pathway is thought to predominate and formation of reactive species via the glutathione *S*-transferase (GST) pathway is less important (Lash *et al.*, 2000b).

4.1.2 Metals

Metal compounds used as paint pigments such as cadmium, chromium, and inorganic lead, are predominantly absorbed in the lung. Dermal absorption is generally low and depends on the chemical properties of the compound, the vehicle, and the integrity of the skin. Absorbed metals are distributed to the organs and, in the case of lead, are concentrated in the bone. Elimination of metals varies from several days to several years.

(a) Cadmium

Cadmium (Cd) enters the body mainly by inhalation in the working environment, whereas the general population is exposed via food and drinking-water. Fractional intestinal absorption is influenced by dietary factors and increases with dietary Cd concentration, while pulmonary fractional absorption depends partly on the solubility of cadmium. Cd and other agents induce synthesis of metallothionein, a protein that binds to cadmium and transfers it via the blood, primarily to the liver and the kidney. In the kidney, the complex is filtered through the renal glomeruli and then reabsorbed from the filtrate in the proximal tubules where the protein portion is rapidly degraded to release Cd. As a result, most of the body burden of Cd is retained in the liver and kidneys (where the half-life is estimated to be 7–16 years (IARC, 2012). Excretion occurs mainly via the urine and, in individuals without renal dysfunction, primarily reflects the amount of cadmium retained in the kidneys (IARC, 1993).

(b) Chromium

The toxicokinetics of chromium compounds depend on the solubility and particle size, on the valence state of the chromium atom and the nature of its ligands. Absorption of chromium(VI) compounds is higher than that of chromium(III) compounds, the latter occurring via passive diffusion and phagocytosis. Absorption of inhaled chromium compounds takes place in the lung via transfer across cell membranes and in the gastrointestinal tract from particles cleared from the lungs. Absorption after dermal exposure depends on the physical and chemical properties of the compound, the vehicle, and the integrity of the skin. Once taken up in the blood, chromium compounds are distributed to all organs, with highest concentrations in kidney, liver and bone (NTP, 2010).

Particles containing chromium can be retained in the lung for years after occupational exposure (ATSDR, 2000c). After exposure by inhalation, excretion occurs predominantly via the urine, and after oral exposure via the faeces, due to low absorption of chromium compounds from the gastrointestinal tract (ATSDR, 2008).

(c) Lead compounds, inorganic lead

Lead compounds have been used in paints as primers, pigments and driers. Lead can be absorbed after inhalation, oral or dermal exposure. Patterns and rates of particle deposition are highly dependent on size and ventilation rate. However, all lead settled deep in the lung is eventually absorbed. Dermal absorption of inorganic lead is negligible, although slightly increased by high perspiration in humans. Absorption from the gastrointestinal tract in both humans and experimental animals is strongly influenced by age, fasting/fed status, nutrition, solubility, and particles size. Absorbed lead is rapidly distributed from plasma into erythrocytes, soft tissues and – mainly – bone. Bone can be a significant source of endogenous lead, in particular when the resorption rate is increased, such as during pregnancy, lactation, and just after the menopause. After oral ingestion, absorbed lead is primarily excreted in the urine and, via the bile, in the faeces. Inorganic lead that has not been absorbed in the gastrointestinal tract is excreted in the faeces (IARC, 2006).

4.1.3 Other compounds

(a) Styrene

Styrene is used as polyester resin in paints. After inhalation, oral intake, or dermal absorption, styrene is rapidly distributed throughout the body, with the highest concentrations found in adipose tissue (IARC, 1994, 2002). In humans, styrene is metabolised to the predominant first metabolite, styrene-7,8-oxide, principally by CYP2E1, CYP2F, but also by CYP2B6. Isolated erythrocytes are also capable of non-enzymatic conversion of styrene totyrene-7,8-oxide. After its oxidation, a large percentage of styrene is excreted as urinary mandelic and phenylglyoxylic acids; glutathione conjugates represent a minor fraction of the metabolites of styrene-7,8-oxide (IARC, 1994, 2002).

(b) PAHs

PAH exposure during painting occurs through the use of special waterproof coatings or by pyrolysis of paint residues during removal. There are more than 100 different PAHs, which generally occur as complex mixtures rather than single compounds, but their identity is unknown in paints. Therefore, the toxicokinetics is discussed in broad general terms. Little is known about the toxicokinetics of PAH mixtures or individual PAHs in humans and most of the available data come from benzo[*a*]pyrene in experimental studies (described in IARC, 2010d; see also the *Monograph* on Benzene elsewhere in this volume).

(c) Aromatic amines and azo dyes

The toxicokinetics of aromatic amines and azo dyes, such as 4-aminobiphenyl, benzidine, benzidine-based dyes and 2-naphthylamine, are described in *IARC Monograph* Volume 99 (IARC, 2010c) and in the *Monographs* on these agents elsewhere in this volume.

4.2 Genetics and related effects

4.2.1 Genotoxicity

(a) Chromosomal aberrations, micronuclei, and sister chromatid exchange

Six of eight studies on chromosomal aberrations among painters reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 98 (IARC, 2010a) showed consistent and significant elevated frequencies, and three of these studies reported an association with years of employment (Silva & Santos-Mello, 1996; Pinto *et al.*, 2000; Gajalakshmi *et al.*, 2002) while the others did not report analyses on duration of employment (Capomazza & Botta, 1990; Piña-Calva *et al.*, 1991; Testa *et al.*, 2005).

Several chromosomal abnormalities could be detected in the bone marrow of patients with acute myeloid leukaemia (AML). In a study by

Crane *et al.* (1996), routine cytogenetic data from 213 patients (129 enrolled in the period 1976–1983 and 84 enrolled in the period 1986–1990) with AML were correlated with environmental exposures to organic chemicals (e.g. benzene), paints, pesticides, and other substances such as dyes, glues, or varnishes. A suggestive association was found between exposure to paints and the –7/7q chromosomal abnormality but this was non-significant and only observed in the set of patients enrolled between 1986 and 1990.

In a study in Columbia, chromosomal aberrations were evaluated in 200 unexposed control subjects and in 200 car-painters recruited from several workshops. Painters were exposed for at least five years to the same commercial thinners, a complex mixture which contains toluene, isobutane, xylene, hexane, ethyl-benzene, and octane. After exclusion of current smokers, ex-smokers and those under medical treatment, the chromosomal aberration frequency was significantly higher in exposed workers compared with controls. The chromatid-type aberration was the most common aberration found in both groups, and was significantly higher in painters compared with controls, whereas no statistical difference was detected between frequencies of chromosome-type aberration in exposed workers and controls (Hoyos-Giraldo *et al.*, 2009).

Five of six studies reported significant increases in the frequency of micronuclei among painters (Diaz *et al.*, 1990; Di Giorgio *et al.*, 1994; Lemasters *et al.*, 1997, 1999; Pinto *et al.*, 2000; Martino-Roth *et al.*, 2003; Testa *et al.*, 2005). Chromosomal aberrations and micronuclei were found both in cultured lymphocytes and in buccal cells. Significantly increased frequencies of sister chromatid exchange were found in four of seven studies among painters (Haglund *et al.*, 1980; Kelsey *et al.*, 1988, 1989; Cullen *et al.*, 1992; Sardas *et al.*, 1994; Lemasters *et al.*, 1997, 1999; Pinto *et al.*, 2000; Testa *et al.*, 2005). Exposure–response relationships with duration of employment were reported in three of these studies (Sardas *et al.*, 1994; Lemasters *et al.*, 1997, 1999; Pinto *et al.*, 2000).

(b) DNA strand-breaks

Increased levels of DNA single-strand breaks among painters were reported in three of four studies (Oesch *et al.*, 1994; Fuchs *et al.*, 1996a, b; Zhu *et al.*, 2001; Martino-Roth *et al.*, 2003); a dose-gradient with years or weeks worked and the cytogenetic end-point which remained after adjusting for smoking was found in two (Oesch *et al.*, 1994; Zhu *et al.*, 2001). These data strongly suggest that occupational exposures in painting lead to increased levels of DNA damage.

(c) Aromatic DNA adducts

In a study among 208 Korean workers, aromatic DNA adducts assessed by ^{32}P-postlabelling tended to be higher in paint users (particularly coal-tar paint users) compared with on-site controls. When the data from general painters and coal-tar painters were combined, they showed higher adduct levels than on-site controls (Lee *et al.*, 2003).

4.2.2 Genetic effects for some individual constituents of paints

(a) Benzene

See Section 4 of the *Monograph* on Benzene in this volume.

(b) Toluene

Toluene is mainly converted to benzyl alcohol and excreted as hippurate. Human data are inconclusive with regards to the genotoxicity of toluene. Studies in exposed workers are limited by concurrent exposure to other chemicals, small cohort size, and a lack of historical exposure monitoring, and it is likely that the methods are not sufficiently sensitive to detect small, but significant, manifestations of genetic toxicity (ATSDR, 2000a). In some cytogenetic studies in

occupationally exposed populations, increases in chromosomal aberrations (two studies), micronuclei (one study) and DNA strand-breaks (one study) have been reported. Genotoxicity testing in experimental systems (rats, mice and cultured mammalian cells including studies on DNA strand-breaks) has been limited and has produced mostly negative results (Chen *et al.*, 2008). DNA-adduct formation has not been detected (IARC, 1999).

Higher frequencies of micronucleated polychromatic erythrocytes (PCE) have been observed in mice following co-exposure to benzene and toluene via inhalation at lower and intermittent co-exposures, compared with mice exposed to benzene or toluene alone (Wetmore *et al.*, 2008). The authors suggested that, at the doses used in this study (50 ppm for benzene and 100 ppm for toluene), toluene could enhance benzene-induced clastogenic or aneugenic bone-marrow injury.

(c) Xylene

Genotoxicity studies on mixtures of xylenes and on the individual isomers of xylene have provided consistently negative results in a variety of *in vitro* and *in vivo* assays and test systems (bacteria, yeast, cultured mammalian cells, mice, rats, and humans). Xylenes may cause DNA fragmentation indirectly, i.e. at cytotoxic concentrations because of nucleases released from lysosomes in dying cells. There is some evidence from bacterial test systems suggesting that xylene metabolites, specifically *meta*-xylenol, *para*-xylenol, 2,4-dimethylphenol, and *ortho*-methylbenzyl alcohol, are non-mutagenic (ATSDR, 2007b).

(d) Dichloromethane

Dichloromethane is consistently mutagenic in microorganisms. Weaker and less consistent responses are seen in mammalian systems, predominantly in mice, both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. The compound induced SCE, chromosome breakage, chromosome loss and DNA single-strand breaks in human cells, while results in rodent cells were inconclusive or negative (IARC, 1999). Mechanistic studies have established a link between GST-mediated metabolism of dichloromethane and its genotoxicity and carcinogenicity in mice. The GST enzyme responsible for the metabolism of dichloromethane is expressed to a significantly greater extent in mouse tissues than in rat, hamster or human tissues. The available data suggest a plausible mechanism for the development of liver and lung tumours in mice, but not in rats exposed to dichloromethane (IARC, 1999).

(e) Trichloroethylene

Studies of structural chromosomal aberrations, aneuploidy and SCE in peripheral lymphocytes of workers exposed to TCE were inconclusive but suggested clastogenic effects (IARC, 1995; ATSDR, 1997). TCE did not induce chromosomal aberrations, dominant lethal mutations, SCE or unscheduled DNA synthesis in rodents, whereas an increased induction of micronuclei and DNA single-strand breaks or alkali-labile sites was observed. Although TCE may not be genotoxic, several of its metabolites are reactive and potentially genotoxic substances, suggesting that genotoxic effects may be a concern for workers exposed to trichloroethylene (ATSDR, 1997; Lash *et al.*, 2000b; Tabrez & Ahmad, 2009). Several isomers of 1,2-dichlorovinyl-cysteine, a product of TCE metabolism in the kidney, are mutagenic in the *in vitro* Ames assay. These products have been identified in the urine of workers exposed to TCE.

(f) Cadmium and chromium

The genotoxic effects of cadmium and chromium are described in Section 4 of the *Monograph* on these two metals in *IARC Monograph* Volume 100C (IARC, 2012).

(g) Inorganic lead

Equivocal results have been published with respect to the mutagenicity of water-soluble lead compounds in mammalian cells in culture; in most classical test systems, effects were weak or restricted to toxic doses. In cultures of various mammalian cells and in lead-exposed animals, lead acetate, lead chromate and lead nitrate induced DNA strand-breaks. Chromosomal aberrations and micronuclei have been shown consistently in mammalian cells in culture, in experimental animals (in bone-marrow cells of lead-exposed animals) and in several cases also in humans occupationally exposed to lead. In some studies, these effects were correlated with blood-lead concentrations. However, with respect to epidemiological studies, confounding exposures cannot be ruled out (IARC, 2006).

Two mechanisms may underlie lead-induced genotoxicity, namely a disruption of pro-oxidant/antioxidant balance, at least in part through interaction with the sulfhydryl groups of key enzymes, and as a result of interference with DNA-repair systems. There is little evidence that lead interacts directly with DNA at blood-lead concentrations normally encountered. The involvement of reactive oxygen species (ROS) in lead-induced genotoxicity has been shown at different experimental levels. Molecular mechanisms may be enhanced lipid peroxidation, inhibition of antioxidant defence systems, catalysis of Fenton-type reactions and the inhibition of aminolevulinic acid dehydratase. The latter reaction leads to the accumulation of the haeme precursor aminolevulinic acid, with the subsequent generation of ROS and induction of oxidative DNA damage (IARC, 2006).

Lead interacts with proteins, including those involved in DNA repair. Lead has been shown to inhibit the apurinic/apyrimidinic endonuclease (APE1) at low concentrations (in the micromolar range) in cultured AA8 cells, leading to accumulation of a-purinic sites and to an increase in methylmethane sulfonate-induced mutagenicity (McNeill *et al.*, 2007). This latter mechanism may be responsible for enhancing the genotoxicity of other agents. Furthermore, lead interferes with the repair of DNA double-strand breaks via interaction with the stress-response pathway induced by the ATM (ataxia-telangiectasia mutated) protein (Gastaldo *et al.*, 2007). Low concentrations of lead stimulate cell growth via mobilization of free intracellular Ca^{2+} and activation of protein kinase C (PKC), which triggers a signal-transduction cascade leading to stimulation of DNA synthesis (IARC, 2006).

(h) Styrene

Data from studies in experimental systems (*in vitro* and *in vivo*) and from studies in humans indicate that exposure to styrene can result in the formation of DNA adducts. However, mice, but not rats, develop lung tumours after exposure to styrene, even though both species form DNA adducts, also in organs other than the lung. Circulating styrene 7,8-oxide – the active metabolite of styrene – may also play a role. Since the concentration of styrene in blood is two orders of magnitude higher in the rat than in the mouse, the lung tumours in mice probably develop as a result of in situ formation of styrene 7,8-oxide, which causes cytotoxicity, or increased cell proliferation, or DNA-adduct formation. It is likely that the proposed mechanism involving conversion of styrene to styrene 7,8-oxide in mouse Clara cells is not operative in human lungs to a biologically significant extent. However, based on the observations in human workers regarding styrene 7,8-oxide in blood, and DNA adducts and chromosomal damage in lymphocytes, it cannot be excluded that this and other mechanisms are important for organs other than the lung (IARC, 2002).

(i) PAHs

Genotoxic effects of PAHs are described in *IARC Monograph* Volume 92 (IARC, 2010d) and the *Monograph* on benzene in this volume.

After metabolic activation, PAH mixtures are genotoxic in humans and individual PAHs are genotoxic in experimental systems. In the complex mixtures to which humans are exposed, some of the genotoxic effects of PAHs can be ascribed to benzo[*a*]pyrene and are described in Volume 96 (IARC, 2010d) and in the *Monograph* on Benzene in this volume.

(j) Aromatic amines and azo dyes

The genotoxic effects of aromatic amines and azo dyes such as 4-aminobiphenyl, benzidine, benzidine-based dyes and 2-naphthylamine, are described in *IARC Monograph* Volume 99 (IARC, 2010c), and in the *Monographs* on these specific substances elsewhere in this Volume.

4.2.3 Indirect effects potentially related to genotoxicity

(a) Haematological and immunological effects

Haematological changes were observed in several studies of painters. These included reduced levels of total white blood cells, T-cells and natural killer cells (Moszczyński *et al.*, 1996; Rothman *et al.*, 1997; Kim *et al.*, 1999). Furthermore, an increased prevalence of leukopenia, anaemia and granulocytopenia was observed among painters. Immunological changes were also reported in several studies. These effects included specific immunoglobulin (G and E) responses to hexamethylene diisocyanate – an aliphatic diisocyanate used in the manufacture of paints and surface coating, which can induce asthma (Grammer *et al.*, 1988; Cartier *et al.*, 1989; Baur *et al.*, 1996; Tee *et al.*, 1998; Redlich *et al.*, 2001; Pronk *et al.*, 2007) and increased proliferation of lymphocytes after *in vitro* stimulation with this substance (Redlich *et al.*, 2001; IARC, 2010a).

4.3 Susceptible populations

Several studies have addressed the interplay between genetic factors, biological and clinical endpoints and were reviewed in *IARC Monograph* Volume 98 (IARC, 2010a). In one study considering bladder cancer as an endpoint, the slow acetylation status (*N*-acetyltransferase 2 phenotype) was over-represented in painters (n = 16) with bladder cancer (88%) compared with their healthy colleagues (65%) (n = 26) (Golka *et al.*, 2001). The effects of the *NAT2* polymorphism are also described for arylamines in Volume 99 (IARC, 2010c).

Few studies have addressed the effect of genetic polymorphism on biological endpoints. In one study no significant associations were detected between any of the biomarker responses (chromosomal aberrations, SCE, micronuclei) and either the *GSTM1* or *GSTT1* genotype. However, the small size of the study (25 car painters and 37 unexposed controls) does not allow definite conclusions to be made on the relationship between genetic polymorphisms and biomarkers (Testa *et al.*, 2005).

In another study, among 181 painters using coal-tar paints (n = 111) or general paints (n = 70) and 27 on-site controls, no gene–environment interactions between *GSTM1* (all workers, 51% *GSTM1*-null) or *GSTT1* (all workers, 54% *GSTT1*-null) and aromatic DNA-adduct formation was found among any of the groups exposed (Lee *et al.*, 2003).

Only one recent study has addressed the interplay between genetic polymorphisms and biological endpoints. In this study the effect of polymorphisms in genes involved in metabolism of xenobiotics (*CYP2E1*, *GSTM1*) and in DNA repair ($XRCC1^{194}$ *Arg/Trp*, *Trp/Trp*, $XRCC1^{280}$ *Arg/His*, $XRCC3^{241}$ *Thr/Met*) on chromosomal aberration (CA) frequency was investigated (Hoyos-Giraldo *et al.*, 2009). A significant effect was observed of the *CYP2E1 C1/C1* genotype, which increased the CA frequency in exposed

workers. Exposed workers with the *GSTM1-null* genotype had a statistically significantly elevated CA frequency compared with controls and exposed workers with a *GSTM1*-positive genotype. Exposed workers with *XRCC1*^{194}*Arg/Trp* and *Trp/Trp* genotypes had statistically higher CA frequencies compared with those with the *XRCC1*^{194}*Arg/Arg* genotype. Also, there was an association between the *XRCC1*^{280}*Arg/Arg* and *XRCC3*^{241}*Thr/Thr* genotypes and a significant increase of CA frequency in exposed workers. The authors suggested that these wild-type genotypes may decrease the capacity to repair DNA single- and double-strand breaks and influence the formation of chromosomal aberrations (Hoyos-Giraldo *et al.*, 2009).

In most studies that measured a variety of cytogenetic end-points and markers of genotoxicity, elevated levels of genetic damage were reported in painters. Mechanistic data reviewed by ATSDR (1997, 2000a, b, 2007a, b) and by previous *IARC Monograph* evaluations on selected specific chemicals that had been or still are prevalent in exposures during painting, strongly support a role of these substances in the induction of haematopoietic malignancies (benzene, trichloroethylene), liver cancer (trichloroethylene), lung cancer (cadmium, chromium, PAHs) and bladder cancer (aromatic azo dyes).

4.4 Synthesis

The multiple genetic and cytogenetic effects observed among workers employed as painters or in the paint industry provide strong evidence in support of genotoxicity as one mechanism underlying the observed increase in cancer risk. However, due to the complexity and changing nature of the exposure mixtures and the potential interactions between exposures as a painter, other mechanisms are also likely. While it is clear that exposures to some agents in the paint industry have decreased over time, recent cytotoxicity studies and the ongoing exposures to multiple mutagens and carcinogens continue to raise concerns about cancer risks.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposure as a painter. Occupational exposure as a painter causes mesothelioma, and cancers of the urinary bladder and lung.

Also, a positive association has been observed between maternal exposure to painting (including pre-conception and during pregnancy) and childhood leukaemia in the offspring.

No data in experimental animals relevant to exposure as a painter were available to the Working Group.

The multiple genetic and cytogenetic effects observed among workers employed as painters and the information on individual chemicals to which painters are exposed provide strong evidence to support genotoxicity as a mechanism underlying the observed increase in cancer risk. However, due to the complexity and changing nature of the exposure mixtures and the potential interactions between exposures as painters, other mechanisms are also likely. While it is clear that exposures as a painter to some agents have been reduced over time, recent genotoxicity studies and the exposure to multiple mutagens and carcinogens continue to raise concerns about cancer risks.

Occupational exposure as a painter is *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)*.

References

Adegoke OJ, Blair A, Shu XO *et al.* (2003). Occupational history and exposure and the risk of adult leukemia in Shanghai. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 13: 485–494. doi:10.1016/S1047-2797(03)00037-1 PMID:12932623

Aitken RJ, Chaudhry MQ, Boxall AB, Hull M (2006). Manufacture and use of nanomaterials: current status in the UK and global trends. *Occup Med (Lond)*, 56: 300–306. doi:10.1093/occmed/kql051 PMID:16868127

Alderton LE, Spector LG, Blair CK *et al.* (2006). Child and maternal household chemical exposure and the risk of acute leukemia in children with Down's syndrome: a report from the Children's Oncology Group. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 164: 212–221. doi:10.1093/aje/kwj203 PMID:16760223

Alexander BH, Checkoway H, Wechsler L *et al.* (1996). Lung cancer in chromate-exposed aerospace workers. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 38: 1253–1258. doi:10.1097/00043764-199612000-00011 PMID:8978517

ATSDR (1997). *Toxicological Profile for Trichloroethylene*. Atlanta: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service.

ATSDR (2000a). *Toxicological Profile for Toluene*. Atlanta: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service.

ATSDR (2000b). *Toxicological Profile for Methylene Chloride*. Atlanta: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service.

ATSDR (2000c). *Toxicological Profile for Chromium*. Atlanta: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service.

ATSDR (2007a). *Toxicological Profile for Benzene*. Atlanta; US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service.

ATSDR (2007b). *Toxicological Profile for Xylene*. Atlanta: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service.

ATSDR (2008). *Toxicological Profile for chromium*. Atlanta: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service.

Baccarelli A, Tretiakova M, Gorbanev S *et al.* (2005). Occupation and lung cancer risk in Leningrad Province, Russia. *Med Lav*, 96: 142–154. PMID:16001514

Bachand A, Mundt KA, Mundt DJ, Carlton LE (2010). Meta-analyses of occupational exposure as a painter and lung and bladder cancer morbidity and mortality 1950–2008. *Crit Rev Toxicol*, 40: 101–125. doi:10.3109/10408440903352826 PMID:20085479

Band PR, Le ND, MacArthur AC *et al.* (2005). Identification of occupational cancer risks in British Columbia: a population-based case-control study of 1129 cases of bladder cancer. *J Occup Environ Med*, 47: 854–858. PMID:16093936

Barbone F, Franceschi S, Talamini R *et al.* (1994). Occupation and bladder cancer in Pordenone (north-east Italy): a case-control study. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 23: 58–65. doi:10.1093/ije/23.1.58 PMID:8194925

Baur X, Chen Z, Flagge A *et al.* (1996). EAST and CAP specificity for the evaluation of IgE and IgG antibodies to diisocyanate-HSA conjugates. *Int Arch Allergy Immunol*, 110: 332–338. doi:10.1159/000237325 PMID:8768800

Bentley J, Turner GPA (1998). *Introduction to Paint Chemistry*, 4th ed. London: Chapman & Hall.

Bethwaite PB, Pearce N, Fraser J (1990). Cancer risks in painters: study based on the New Zealand Cancer Registry. *Br J Ind Med*, 47: 742–746. PMID:2245185

Blair A, Linos A, Stewart PA *et al.* (1993). Evaluation of risks for non-Hodgkin's lymphoma by occupation and industry exposures from a case-control study. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 23: 301–312. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700230207 PMID:8427258

Blair A, Zheng T, Linos A *et al.* (2001). Occupation and leukemia: a population-based case-control study in Iowa and Minnesota. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 40: 3–14. doi:10.1002/ajim.1066 PMID:11439392

Boice JD Jr, Marano DE, Fryzek JP *et al.* (1999). Mortality among aircraft manufacturing workers. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 56: 581–597. doi:10.1136/oem.56.9.581 PMID:10615290

Bosetti C, Pira E, La Vecchia C (2005). Bladder cancer risk in painters: a review of the epidemiological evidence, 1989–2004. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 16: 997–1008. doi:10.1007/s10552-005-3636-5 PMID:16184465

Bouchardy C, Schüler G, Minder C *et al.* (2002). Cancer risk by occupation and socioeconomic group among men–a study by the Association of Swiss Cancer Registries. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 28: Suppl 11–88. PMID:11871426

Breslow L, Hoaglin L, Rasmussen G, Abrams HK (1954). Occupations and cigarette smoking as factors in lung cancer. *Am J Public Health Nations Health*, 44: 171–181. doi:10.2105/AJPH.44.2.171 PMID:13114492

Brock T, Groteklaes M, Mischke P (2000). *European Coatings Handbook*, 2nd ed. Hannover: Vincentz Network.

Brown LM, Moradi T, Gridley G *et al.* (2002). Exposures in the painting trades and paint manufacturing industry and risk of cancer among men and women in Sweden. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 44: 258–264. doi:10.1097/00043764-200203000-00013 PMID:11911027

Brüske-Hohlfeld I, Möhner M, Pohlabeln H *et al.* (2000). Occupational lung cancer risk for men in Germany: results from a pooled case-control study. *Am J Epidemiol*, 151: 384–395. PMID:10695597

Buckley JD, Robison LL, Swotinsky R *et al.* (1989). Occupational exposures of parents of children with acute nonlymphocytic leukemia: a report from the Childrens Cancer Study Group. *Cancer Res*, 49: 4030–4037. PMID:2736544

Burns PB & Swanson GM (1991a). Risk of urinary bladder cancer among blacks and whites: the role of cigarette

use and occupation. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 2: 371–379. doi:10.1007/BF00054297 PMID:1764561

Burns PB & Swanson GM (1991b). The Occupational Cancer Incidence Surveillance Study (OCISS): risk of lung cancer by usual occupation and industry in the Detroit metropolitan area. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 19: 655–671. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700190510 PMID:2053580

Buxbaum G, Pfaff G (2005). *Industrial Inorganic Pigments*, 3rd ed. Weinheim: Wiley-VCH.

Capomazza C & Botta A (1990). Study of lymphocytes T chromosome aberrations in painters exposed to genotoxic risk *Ann Biol Clin (Paris)*, 48: 381–383. PMID:2221498

Cartier A, Grammer L, Malo JL *et al.* (1989). Specific serum antibodies against isocyanates: association with occupational asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*, 84: 507–514. doi:10.1016/0091-6749(89)90364-3 PMID:2794294

Chen CS, Hseu YC, Liang SH *et al.* (2008). Assessment of genotoxicity of methyl-tert-butyl ether, benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and xylene to human lymphocytes using comet assay. *J Hazard Mater*, 153: 351–356. doi:10.1016/j.jhazmat.2007.08.053 PMID:17900805

Chen R & Seaton A (1998). A meta-analysis of painting exposure and cancer mortality. *Cancer Detection and Prevention*, 22: 533–539. doi:10.1046/j.1525-1500.1998.00A47.x PMID:9824376

Clavel J, Mandereau L, Conso F *et al.* (1998). Occupational exposure to solvents and hairy cell leukaemia. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 55: 59–64. doi:10.1136/oem.55.1.59 PMID:9536165

Coggon D, Pannett B, Osmond C, Acheson ED (1986). A survey of cancer and occupation in young and middle aged men. I. Cancers of the respiratory tract. *Br J Ind Med*, 43: 332–338. PMID:3707871

Cole P, Hoover R, Friedell GH (1972). Occupation and cancer of the lower urinary tract. *Cancer*, 29: 1250–1260. doi:10.1002/1097-0142(197205)29:5<1250::AID-CNCR2820290518>3.0.CO;2-T PMID:5021618

Colt JS, Baris D, Stewart P *et al.* (2004). Occupation and bladder cancer risk in a population-based case-control study in New Hampshire. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 15: 759–769. doi:10.1023/B:CACO.0000043426.28741.a2 PMID:15456989

Colt JS, Hartge P, Davis S *et al.* (2007). Hobbies with solvent exposure and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 18: 385–390. doi:10.1007/s10552-006-0108-5 PMID:17262168

Costantini AS, Miligi L, Kriebel D *et al.* (2001). A multicenter case-control study in Italy on hematolymphopoietic neoplasms and occupation. *Epidemiology (Cambridge, Mass.)*, 12: 78–87. doi:10.1097/00001648-200101000-00014 PMID:11138825

Crane MM, Strom SS, Halabi S *et al.* (1996). Correlation between selected environmental exposures and karyotype in acute myelocytic leukemia. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 5(8): 639–644.

Cullen MR, Solomon LR, Pace PE *et al.* (1992). Morphologic, biochemical, and cytogenetic studies of bone marrow and circulating blood cells in painters exposed to ethylene glycol ethers. *Environ Res*, 59: 250–264. doi:10.1016/S0013-9351(05)80244-0 PMID:1425515

Davidson IW & Beliles RP (1991). Consideration of the target organ toxicity of trichloroethylene in terms of metabolite toxicity and pharmacokinetics. *Drug Metab Rev*, 23: 493–599. doi:10.3109/03602539109029772 PMID:1802654

De Stefani E, Boffetta P, Brennan P *et al.* (2005). Occupational exposures and risk of adenocarcinoma of the lung in Uruguay. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 16: 851–856. doi:10.1007/s10552-005-2819-4 PMID:16132795

De Stefani E, Kogevinas M, Boffetta P *et al.* (1996). Occupation and the risk of lung cancer in Uruguay. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 22: 346–352. PMID:8923607

Decouflé P, Stanislawczyk K, Houten L *et al.* (1977). *A Retrospective Survey of Cancer in Relation to Occupation.* National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health ed. Cincinnati, OH: DHEW (NIOSH) Publication No. 77–178.

Demers PA, Vaughan TL, Koepsell TD *et al.* (1993). A case-control study of multiple myeloma and occupation. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 23: 629–639. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700230410 PMID:8338527

Di Giorgio C, De Méo MP, Laget M *et al.* (1994). The micronucleus assay in human lymphocytes: screening for inter-individual variability and application to biomonitoring. *Carcinogenesis*, 15: 313–317. doi:10.1093/carcin/15.2.313 PMID:8313524

Diaz S, Fonseca G, Fernandez I (1990). Analysis of lymphocyte and oral mucosa cell micronuclei in Cuban paint industry workers. *Hereditas*, 113: 77–80. doi:10.1111/j.1601-5223.1990.tb00700.x PMID:2272847

Dryson E, 't Mannetje A, Walls C *et al.* (2008). Case-control study of high risk occupations for bladder cancer in New Zealand. *International Journal of Cancer*, 122: 1340–1346. doi:10.1002/ijc.23194

Dryver E, Brandt L, Kauppinen T, Olsson H (2004). Occupational exposures and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in Southern Sweden. *Int J Occup Environ Health*, 10: 13–21. http://www.ijoeh.com/archive_01.html PMID:15070021

Dubrow R & Wegman DH (1984). Cancer and occupation in Massachusetts: a death certificate study. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 6: 207–230. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700060305 PMID:6475966

Dunn JE Jr & Weir JM (1965). Cancer experience of several occupational groups followed prospectively. *Am J Public Health Nations Health*, 55: 1367–1375. doi:10.2105/AJPH.55.9.1367 PMID:14334758

Fabia J & Thuy TD (1974). Occupation of father at time of birth of children dying of malignant diseases. *Br J Prev Soc Med*, 28: 98–100. PMID:4853418

Finkelstein MM (1995). Occupational associations with lung cancer in two Ontario cities. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 27: 127–136. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700270112 PMID:7900730

Freedman DM, Stewart P, Kleinerman RA *et al.* (2001). Household solvent exposures and childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *American Journal of Public Health*, 91: 564–567. doi:10.2105/AJPH.91.4.564 PMID:11291366

Fuchs J, Hengstler JG, Boettler G, Oesch F (1996b). Primary DNA damage in peripheral mononuclear blood cells of workers exposed to bitumen-based products. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 68: 141–146. doi:10.1007/BF00381622 PMID:8919840

Fuchs J, Hengstler JG, Hummrich F, Oesch F (1996a). Transient increase in DNA strand breaks in car refinishing spray painters. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 22: 438–443. PMID:9000311

Gaertner RR, Trpeski L, Johnson KCCanadian Cancer Registries Epidemiology Research Group (2004). A case-control study of occupational risk factors for bladder cancer in Canada. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 15: 1007–1019. doi:10.1007/s10552-004-1448-7 PMID:15801485

Gajalakshmi P, Balasundaram A, Venkatesan P *et al.* (2002). Cytogenetic studies on spray painters in south India. *Mutat Res*, 514: 1–6. PMID:11815239

Gastaldo J, Viau M, Bencokova Z *et al.* (2007). Lead contamination results in late and slowly repairable DNA double-strand breaks and impacts upon the ATM-dependent signalling pathways. *Toxicol Lett*, 173: 201–214. doi:10.1016/j.toxlet.2007.08.003 PMID:17855027

Gold EB, Diener MD, Szklo M (1982). Parental occupations and cancer in children–a case-control study and review of the methodologic issues. *Journal of Occupational Medicine.*, 24: 578–584. doi:10.1097/00043764-198208000-00011 PMID:6750059

Golka K, Bandel T, Reckwitz T *et al.* (1999). Occupational risk factors for bladder carcinoma. A case control study *Urologe A*, 38: 358–363. doi:10.1007/s001200050298 PMID:10444795

Golka K, Heitmann P, Gieseler F *et al.* (2008). Elevated bladder cancer risk due to colorants–a statewide case-control study in North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany. *Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health. Part A.*, 71: 851–855. doi:10.1080/15287390801985869 PMID:18569584

Golka K, Weistenhöfer W, Jedrusik P *et al.* (2001). N-acetyltransferase 2 phenotype in painters with bladder cancer and controls. *Ann Acad Med Singapore*, 30: 464–467. PMID:11603126

Grammer LC, Eggum P, Silverstein M *et al.* (1988). Prospective immunologic and clinical study of a population exposed to hexamethylene diisocyanate. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*, 82: 627–633. doi:10.1016/0091-6749(88)90975-X PMID:3171003

Gubéran E, Usel M, Raymond L *et al.* (1989). Disability, mortality, and incidence of cancer among Geneva painters and electricians: a historical prospective study. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 16–23. PMID:2920139

Guengerich FP & Shimada T (1991). Oxidation of toxic and carcinogenic chemicals by human cytochrome P-450 enzymes. *Chem Res Toxicol*, 4: 391–407. doi:10.1021/tx00022a001 PMID:1912325

Guha N, Merletti F, Steenland NK *et al.* (2010a). Lung cancer risk in painters: a meta-analysis. *Environ Health Perspect*, 118: 303–312. doi:10.1289/ehp.0901402 PMID:20064777

Guha N, Steenland NK, Merletti F *et al.* (2010b). Bladder cancer risk in painters: a meta-analysis. *Occup Environ Med*, 67: 568–573. doi:10.1136/oem.2009.051565 PMID:20647380

Guralnick L (1963). *Mortality by Occupation Level and Cause of Death Among Men 20 to 64 Years of Age: USA, 1950 2334.* Guralnick L, editor. Washington DC: US Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

Haglund U, Lundberg I, Zech L (1980). Chromosome aberrations and sister chromatid exchanges in Swedish paint industry workers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 6: 291–298. PMID:7233117

Hakulinen T, Salonen T, Teppo L (1976). Cancer in the offspring of fathers in hydrocarbon-related occupations. *Br J Prev Soc Med*, 30: 138–140. PMID:953378

Heineman EF, Olsen JH, Pottern LM *et al.* (1992). Occupational risk factors for multiple myeloma among Danish men. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 3: 555–568. doi:10.1007/BF00052753 PMID:1420859

Hemminki K, Saloniemi I, Salonen T *et al.* (1981). Childhood cancer and parental occupation in Finland. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 35: 11–15. doi:10.1136/jech.35.1.11 PMID:7264527

Howe GR, Burch JD, Miller AB *et al.* (1980). Tobacco use, occupation, coffee, various nutrients, and bladder cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 64: 701–713. PMID:6928984

Hoyos-Giraldo LS, Carvajal S, Cajas-Salazar N *et al.* (2009). Chromosome aberrations in workers exposed to organic solvents: Influence of polymorphisms in xenobiotic-metabolism and DNA repair genes. *Mutat Res*, 666: 8–15. PMID:19481674

Hrubec A, Blair A, Vaught J (1995). *Mortality risks by occupation among US veterans of know smoking status 1954–1980.* NIH 95–2747. Hrubec A, Blair A, Vaught J, editors. Washington, DC: National Cancer Institute.

IARC (1989). Some organic solvents, resin monomers and related compounds, pigments and occupational exposures in paint manufacture and painting. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 47: 1–442. PMID:2636273

IARC (1993). Beryllium, cadmium, mercury, and exposures in the glass manufacturing industry. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 58: 1–415. PMID:8022054

IARC (1994). Some industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 60: 1–560. PMID:7869568

IARC (1995). Dry cleaning, some chlorinated solvents and other industrial chemicals. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 63: 1–551.

IARC (1997). Silica, some silicates, coal dust and para-aramid fibrils. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 68: 1–475. PMID:9303953

IARC (1999). Re-evaluation of some organic chemicals, hydrazine and hydrogen peroxide. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 71: 1–315. PMID:10507919

IARC (2002). Some traditional herbal medicines, some mycotoxins, naphthalene and styrene. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 82: 1–556. PMID:12687954

IARC (2006). Inorganic and organic lead compounds. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 87: 1–471. PMID:17191367

IARC (2010a). Painting, firefighting, and shiftwork. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 98: 1–804.

IARC (2010b). Carbon black, titanium dioxide, and talc. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 93: 1–452. PMID:21449489.

IARC (2010c). Some aromatic amines, organic dyes, and related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 99: 1–678. PMID:21528837.

IARC (2010d). Some non-heterocyclic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and some related exposures. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 92: 1–853. PMID:21141735 PMID:18756632

IARC (2012). Metals, arsenic, dusts and fibres. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum*, 100C: 1–499. PMID:18335640

Iscovich J, Castelletto R, Esteve J *et al.* (1987). Tobacco smoking, occupational exposure and bladder cancer in Argentina. *International Journal of Cancer*, 40: 734–740. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910400604

Jahn I, Ahrens W, Brüske-Hohlfeld I *et al.* (1999). Occupational risk factors for lung cancer in women: results of a case-control study in Germany. *Am J Ind Med*, 36: 90–100. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199907)36:1<90::AID-AJIM13>3.0.CO;2-V PMID:10361592

Kato I, Koenig KL, Watanabe-Meserve H *et al.* (2005). Personal and occupational exposure to organic solvents and risk of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL) in women (United States). *Cancer Causes & Control*, 16: 1215–1224. doi:10.1007/s10552-005-0385-4 PMID:16215872

Kelsey KT, Wiencke JK, Little FF *et al.* (1988). Effects of cigarette smoking and solvent exposure on sister chromatid exchange frequency in painters. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 11: 389–399. doi:10.1002/em.2850110310 PMID:3356184

Kelsey KT, Wiencke JK, Little FF *et al.* (1989). Sister chromatid exchange in painters recently exposed to solvents. *Environ Res*, 50: 248–255. doi:10.1016/S0013-9351(89)80005-2 PMID:2583070

Kim Y, Lee N, Sakai T *et al.* (1999). Evaluation of exposure to ethylene glycol monoethyl ether acetates and their possible haematological effects on shipyard painters. *Occup Environ Med*, 56: 378–382. doi:10.1136/oem.56.6.378 PMID:10474532

Kjuus H, Skjaerven R, Langård S *et al.* (1986). A case-referent study of lung cancer, occupational exposures and smoking. I. Comparison of title-based and exposure-based occupational information. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 12: 193–202. PMID:3749833

Kobrosly RW, Meliker JR, Nriagu JO (2009). Automobile industry occupations and bladder cancer: a population-based case-control study in southeastern Michigan, USA. *Occup Environ Med*, 66: 650–656. PMID:19465410

Kogevinas M, 't Mannetje A, Cordier S *et al.* (2003). Occupation and bladder cancer among men in Western Europe. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 14: 907–914. doi:10.1023/B:CACO.0000007962.19066.9c PMID:14750529

Koop DR, Crump BL, Nordblom GD, Coon MJ (1985). Immunochemical evidence for induction of the alcohol-oxidizing cytochrome P-450 of rabbit liver microsomes by diverse agents: ethanol, imidazole, trichloroethylene, acetone, pyrazole, and isoniazid. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*, 82: 4065–4069. doi:10.1073/pnas.82.12.4065 PMID:3858864

Kwa SL & Fine LJ (1980). The association between parental occupation and childhood malignancy. *Journal of Occupational Medicine.*, 22: 792–794. doi:10.1097/00043764-198012000-00012 PMID:7218055

La Vecchia C, Negri E, D'Avanzo B, Franceschi S (1989). Occupation and lymphoid neoplasms. *Br J Cancer*, 60: 385–388. PMID:2789947

La Vecchia C, Negri E, D'Avanzo B, Franceschi SILVIA (1990). Occupation and the risk of bladder cancer. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 19: 264–268. doi:10.1093/ije/19.2.264 PMID:2376434

Lash LH, Fisher JW, Lipscomb JC, Parker JC (2000a). Metabolism of trichloroethylene. *Environ Health Perspect*, 108: Suppl 2177–200. PMID:10807551

Lash LH, Parker JC, Scott CS (2000b). Modes of action of trichloroethylene for kidney tumorigenesis. [Review] *Environ Health Perspect*, 108: Suppl 2225–240. PMID:10807554

Lee KH, Ichiba M, Zhang J *et al.* (2003). Multiple biomarkers study in painters in a shipyard in Korea. *Mutat Res*, 540: 89–98. PMID:12972061

Lemasters GK, Livingston GK, Lockey JE *et al.* (1997). Genotoxic changes after low-level solvent and fuel exposure on aircraft maintenance personnel.

Mutagenesis, 12: 237–243. doi:10.1093/mutage/12.4.237 PMID:9237768

Lemasters GK, Lockey JE, Olsen DM *et al.* (1999). Comparison of internal dose measures of solvents in breath, blood and urine and genotoxic changes in aircraft maintenance personnel. *Drug Chem Toxicol*, 22: 181–200. doi:10.3109/01480549909029731 PMID:10189578

Lerchen ML, Wiggins CL, Samet JM (1987). Lung cancer and occupation in New Mexico. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 79: 639–645. PMID:3477658

Levin LI, Zheng W, Blot WJ *et al.* (1988). Occupation and lung cancer in Shanghai: a case-control study. *Br J Ind Med*, 45: 450–458. PMID:3395581

Lindquist R, Nilsson B, Eklund G, Gahrton G (1987). Increased risk of developing acute leukemia after employment as a painter. *Cancer*, 60: 1378–1384. doi:10.1002/1097-0142(19870915)60:6<1378::AID-CNCR2820600636>3.0.CO;2-D PMID:3621121

Lowengart RA, Peters JM, Cicioni C *et al.* (1987). Childhood leukemia and parents' occupational and home exposures. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 79: 39–46. PMID:3474448

Malker HS, Weiner JA, McLaughlin JK (1990). Register epidemiology studies of recent cancer trends in selected workers. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 609: 1 Trends in Can322–332, discussion 332–333. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.1990.tb32079.x PMID:2264654

Martino-Roth MG, Viégas J, Roth DM (2003). Occupational genotoxicity risk evaluation through the comet assay and the micronucleus test. *Genet Mol Res*, 2: 410–417. PMID:15011144

Matos EL, Vilensky M, Mirabelli D, Boffetta P (2000). Occupational exposures and lung cancer in Buenos Aires, Argentina. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 42: 653–659. doi:10.1097/00043764-200006000-00017 PMID:10874659

McKinney PA, Fear NT, Stockton DUK Childhood Cancer Study Investigators (2003). Parental occupation at periconception: findings from the United Kingdom Childhood Cancer Study. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 60: 901–909. doi:10.1136/oem.60.12.901 PMID:14634180

McNeill DR, Wong H-K, Narayana A, Wilson DM 3rd (2007). Lead promotes abasic site accumulation and co-mutagenesis in mammalian cells by inhibiting the major abasic endonuclease Ape1. *Mol Carcinog*, 46: 91–99. doi:10.1002/mc.20196 PMID:17013835

Mele A, Szklo M, Visani G *et al.*Italian Leukemia Study Group (1994). Hair dye use and other risk factors for leukemia and pre-leukemia: a case-control study. *Am J Epidemiol*, 139: 609–619. PMID:8172172

Menck HR & Henderson BE (1976). Occupational differences in rates of lung cancer. *Journal of Occupational Medicine.*, 18: 797–801. doi:10.1097/00043764-197612000-00005 PMID:993873

Milne KL, Sandler DP, Everson RB, Brown SM (1983). Lung cancer and occupation in Alameda County: a death certificate case-control study. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 4: 565–575. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700040410 PMID:6869381

Morabia A, Markowitz S, Garibaldi K, Wynder EL (1992). Lung cancer and occupation: results of a multicentre case-control study. *Br J Ind Med*, 49: 721–727. PMID:1419861

Morrison AS, Ahlbom A, Verhoek WG *et al.* (1985). Occupation and bladder cancer in Boston, USA, Manchester, UK, and Nagoya, Japan. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 39: 294–300. doi:10.1136/jech.39.4.294 PMID:4086958

Moszczyński P, Rutowski J, Słowiński S (1996). The effect of cigarettes smoking on the blood counts of T and NK cells in subjects with occupational exposure to organic solvents. *Cent Eur J Public Health*, 4: 164–168. PMID:8884050

Müller B, Poth U (2006). *Coatings Formulation*. Hannover: Vincentz Network.

Muscat JE, Stellman SD, Richie JP Jr, Wynder EL (1998). Lung cancer risk and workplace exposures in black men and women. *Environmental Research*, 76: 78–84. doi:10.1006/enrs.1997.3787 PMID:9515062

Nakajima T, Okino T, Okuyama S *et al.* (1988). Ethanol-induced enhancement of trichloroethylene metabolism and hepatotoxicity: difference from the effect of phenobarbital. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*, 94: 227–237. doi:10.1016/0041-008X(88)90264-5 PMID:3388420

NTP (2010). Toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of 2,3′,4,4′,5-pentachlorobiphenyl (PCB 118) (CAS No. 31508–00–6) in female harlan Sprague-Dawley rats (gavage studies). *Natl Toxicol Program Tech Rep Ser*, 5591–174. PMID:21383778

Nordström M, Hardell L, Magnusson A *et al.* (1997). Occupation and occupational exposure to UV light as risk factors for hairy cell leukaemia evaluated in a case-control study. *Eur J Cancer Prev*, 6: 467–472. PMID:9466117

Notani PN, Shah P, Jayant K, Balakrishnan V (1993). Occupation and cancers of the lung and bladder: a case-control study in Bombay. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 22: 185–191. doi:10.1093/ije/22.2.185 PMID:8505172

Oesch F, Hengstler JG, Fuchs J (1994). Cigarette smoking protects mononuclear blood cells of carcinogen exposed workers from additional work exposure-induced DNA single strand breaks. *Mutat Res*, 321: 175–185. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(94)90042-6 PMID:7513068

OPCS (1958). *The Registrar General's decennial supplement, England and Wales 1951: Occupational mortality. Part II, Vol. 2, Tables, Majesty's Stationery Office.* Part II, Vol. 2. London: Office of Population Censuses and Surveys

OPCS (1972). *The Registrar General's Decennial Supplement, England and Wales 1961: Occupational mortality tables. Majesty's Stationery Office.* London: Office of Population Censuses and Surveys

OPCS (1979). *Occupational mortality 1970–1972, England and Wales, Decennial Supplement. Majesty's Stationery Office.* London: Office of Population Censuses and Surveys

OPCS (1986). *Occupational Mortality 1979–80, 1982–83, Great Britain, Decennial Supplement.* London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Office of Population Censuses and Surveys

OPCS (1996). *The Registrar General's Health and Safety Executive; Occupational Health: Decennial supplement.*10. Drever F, editor. London: HMSO.

Oyarzún JM (2000). *Pigment Processing.* Hannover: Vincentz Network.

Pan XL, Day HW, Wang W *et al.* (2005). Residential proximity to naturally occurring asbestos and mesothelioma risk in California. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 172: 1019–1025. doi:10.1164/rccm.200412-1731OC PMID:15976368

Pelucchi C, La Vecchia C, Negri E *et al.* (2002). Smoking and other risk factors for bladder cancer in women. *Preventive Medicine*, 35: 114–120. doi:10.1006/pmed.2002.1061 PMID:12200095

Persson B, Dahlander AM, Fredriksson M *et al.* (1989). Malignant lymphomas and occupational exposures. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 516–520. PMID:2775671

Persson B & Fredrikson M (1999). Some risk factors for non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. *Int J Occup Med Environ Health*, 12: 135–142. PMID:10465904

Persson B, Fredriksson M, Olsen K *et al.* (1993). Some occupational exposures as risk factors for malignant lymphomas. *Cancer*, 72: 1773–1778. doi:10.1002/1097-0142(19930901)72:5<1773::AID-CNCR2820720542>3.0.CO;2-6 PMID:8348507

Peto J, Hodgson JT, Matthews FE, Jones JR (1995). Continuing increase in mesothelioma mortality in Britain. *Lancet*, 345: 535–539. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(95)90462-X PMID:7776771

Pezzotto SM & Poletto L (1999). Occupation and histopathology of lung cancer: A case-control study in Rosario, Argentina. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 36: 437–443. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0274(199910)36:4<437::AID-AJIM4>3.0.CO;2-C PMID:10470008

Piña-Calva A, Madrigal-Bujaidar E, Fuentes MV *et al.* (1991). Increased frequency of chromosomal aberrations in railroad car painters. *Arch Environ Health*, 46: 335–339. PMID:1772257

Pinto D, Ceballos JM, García G *et al.* (2000). Increased cytogenetic damage in outdoor painters. *Mutat Res*, 467: 105–111. PMID:10838197

Pohlabeln H, Boffetta P, Ahrens W *et al.* (2000). Occupational risks for lung cancer among nonsmokers. *Epidemiology (Cambridge, Mass.)*, 11: 532–538. doi:10.1097/00001648-200009000-00008 PMID:10955405

Pronk A, Coble J, Ji BT *et al.* (2009). Occupational risk of lung cancer among lifetime non-smoking women in Shanghai, China. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 66: 672–678. doi:10.1136/oem.2008.043695 PMID:19625285

Pronk A, Preller L, Raulf-Heimsoth M *et al.* (2007). Respiratory symptoms, sensitization, and exposure response relationships in spray painters exposed to isocyanates. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*, 176: 1090–1097. doi:10.1164/rccm.200702-215OC PMID:17656675

Pukkala E, Martinsen JI, Lynge E *et al.* (2009). Occupation and cancer - follow-up of 15 million people in five Nordic countries. *Acta Oncologica (Stockholm, Sweden)*, 48: 646–790. doi:10.1080/02841860902913546 PMID:19925375

Purdue MP, Severson RK, Colt JS *et al.* (2009). Degreasing and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 66: 557–560. doi:10.1136/oem.2008.040386 PMID:19017696

Ramanakumar AV, Nadon L, Siemiatycki J (2008). Exposures in painting related occupations and risk of selected cancers: results from a case-control study in Montreal. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 51: 419–427. doi:10.1002/ajim.20564 PMID:18324661

Ramanakurmar AV, Parent ME, Siemiatycki J (2007). Exposures in painting related occupations and risk of lung cancer: results From two case-control studies in Montreal. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, In press

Redlich CA, Stowe MH, Wisnewski AV *et al.* (2001). Subclinical immunologic and physiologic responses in hexamethylene diisocyanate-exposed auto body shop workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 39: 587–597. doi:10.1002/ajim.1058 PMID:11385643

Reulen RC, Kellen E, Buntinx F, Zeegers MP (2007). Bladder cancer and occupation: a report from the Belgian case-control study on bladder cancer risk. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 50: 449–454. doi:10.1002/ajim.20469 PMID:17450546

Richiardi L, Boffetta P, Simonato L *et al.* (2004). Occupational risk factors for lung cancer in men and women: a population-based case-control study in Italy. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 15: 285–294. doi:10.1023/B:CACO.0000024223.91059.ed PMID:15090723

Risch HA, Burch JD, Miller AB *et al.* (1988). Occupational factors and the incidence of cancer of the bladder in Canada. *Br J Ind Med*, 45: 361–367. PMID:3395572

Ronco G, Ciccone G, Mirabelli D *et al.* (1988). Occupation and lung cancer cancer in two industrialized areas of nothern Italy. *International Journal of Cancer*, 41: 354–358. doi:10.1002/ijc.2910410306

Rothman N, Smith MT, Hayes RB *et al.* (1997). Benzene poisoning, a risk factor for hematological malignancy, is associated with the NQO1 609C–>T mutation and

rapid fractional excretion of chlorzoxazone. *Cancer Res*, 57: 2839–2842. PMID:9230185

Sanders BM, White GC, Draper GJ (1981). Occupations of fathers of children dying from neoplasms. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 35: 245–250. doi:10.1136/jech.35.4.245 PMID:7338698

Sardas S, Karakaya AE, Furtun Y (1994). Sister chromatid exchanges in workers employed in car-painting workshops. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 66: 33–35. doi:10.1007/BF00386576 PMID:7927840

Scélo G, Metayer C, Zhang L *et al.* (2009). Household exposure to paint and petroleum solvents, chromosomal translocations, and the risk of childhood leukemia. *Environ Health Perspect*, 117: 133–139. PMID:19165400

Scherr PA, Hutchison GB, Neiman RS (1992). Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and occupational exposure. *Cancer Res*, 52: Suppl5503s–5509s. PMID:1394164

Schoenberg JB, Stemhagen A, Mogielnicki AP *et al.* (1984). Case-control study of bladder cancer in New Jersey. I. Occupational exposures in white males. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 72: 973–981. PMID:6585596

Schuz J, Kaletsch U, Meinert R *et al.* (2000). Risk of childhood leukemia and parental self-reported occupational exposure to chemicals, dusts, and fumes: results from pooled analyses of German population-based case-control studies. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 9: 835–838.

Schwartz M, Baumstark R (2001). *Waterbased Acrylates for Decorative Coatings*. Hannover: Vincentz Network.

Shu XO, Perentesis JP, Wen W *et al.* (2004). Parental exposure to medications and hydrocarbons and ras mutations in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia: a report from the Children's Oncology Group. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 13: 1230–1235.

Shu XO, Stewart P, Wen WQ *et al.* (1999). Parental occupational exposure to hydrocarbons and risk of acute lymphocytic leukemia in offspring. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 8: 783–791.

Siemiatycki J (1991). *Risk Factors for Cancer in the Workplace*. Siemiatycki J, editor. Boca Raton, Florida: CRC Press.

Silva JM & Santos-Mello R (1996). Chromosomal aberrations in lymphocytes from car painters. *Mutat Res*, 368: 21–25. doi:10.1016/S0165-1218(96)90036-1 PMID:8637507

Silverman DT, Levin LI, Hoover RN (1989a). Occupational risks of bladder cancer in the United States: II Nonwhite men. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 81: 1480–1483. doi:10.1093/jnci/81.19.1480 PMID:2778835

Silverman DT, Levin LI, Hoover RN, Hartge P (1989b). Occupational risks of bladder cancer in the United States: I. White men. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 81: 1472–1480. doi:10.1093/jnci/81.19.1472 PMID:2778834

Smith HM (2002). *High Performance Pigments*. Weinheim: Wiley-VCH.

Steenland K & Palu S (1999). Cohort mortality study of 57,000 painters and other union members: a 15 year update. *Occup Environ Med*, 56: 315–321. doi:10.1136/oem.56.5.315 PMID:10472305

Stoye D, Freitag W, editors (1998). *Paints, Coatings and Solvents*. Weinheim: Wiley-VCH.

Streitberger H-J, Dössel K-F, editors (2008). *Automotive Paints and Coatings*. Weinheim: Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co.

Tabrez S & Ahmad M (2009). Toxicity, biomarkers, genotoxicity, and carcinogenicity of trichloroethylene and its metabolites: a review. *J Environ Sci Health C Environ Carcinog Ecotoxicol Rev*, 27: 178–196. PMID:19657920

Tarvainen L, Kyyronen P, Kauppinen T, Pukkala E (2008). Cancer of the mouth and pharynx, occupation and exposure to chemical agents in Finland [in 1971–95]*International Journal of Cancer*, 123: 653–659. doi:10.1002/ijc.23286

Tee RD, Cullinan P, Welch J *et al.* (1998). Specific IgE to isocyanates: a useful diagnostic role in occupational asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*, 101: 709–715. doi:10.1016/S0091-6749(98)70181-2 PMID:9600510

Teschke K, Morgan MS, Checkoway H *et al.* (1997a). Mesothelioma surveillance to locate sources of exposure to asbestos. *Canadian Journal of Public Health*, 88: 163–168.

Teschke K, Morgan MS, Checkoway H *et al.* (1997b). Surveillance of nasal and bladder cancer to locate sources of exposure to occupational carcinogens. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 54: 443–451. doi:10.1136/oem.54.6.443 PMID:9245952

Testa A, Festa F, Ranaldi R *et al.* (2005). A multi-biomarker analysis of DNA damage in automobile painters. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 46: 182–188. doi:10.1002/em.20147 PMID:16206220

van Loon AJ, Kant IJ, Swaen GM *et al.* (1997). Occupational exposure to carcinogens and risk of lung cancer: results from The Netherlands cohort study. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 54: 817–824. doi:10.1136/oem.54.11.817 PMID:9538355

van Steensel-Moll HA, Valkenburg HA, van Zanen GE (1985). Childhood leukemia and parental occupation. A register-based case-control study. *Am J Epidemiol*, 121: 216–224. PMID:3860001

Viadana E, Bross IDJ, Houten L (1976). Cancer experience of men exposed to inhalation of chemicals or to combustion products. *Journal of Occupational Medicine.*, 18: 787–792. doi:10.1097/00043764-197612000-00003 PMID:993872

Vineis P, Thomas T, Hayes RB *et al.* (1988). Proportion of lung cancers in males, due to occupation, in different areas of the USA. *International Journal of Cancer*, 42: 851–856.

Wetmore BA, Struve MF, Gao P *et al.* (2008). Genotoxicity of intermittent co-exposure to benzene and toluene in

male CD-1 mice. *Chem Biol Interact*, 173: 166–178. doi:10.1016/j.cbi.2008.03.012 PMID:18455711

Whorton MD, Schulman J, Larson SR *et al.* (1983). Feasibility of identifying high-risk occupations through tumor registries. *Journal of Occupational Medicine.*, 25: 657–660. doi:10.1097/00043764-198309000-00013 PMID:6631564

Williams PRD, Phelka AD, Paustenbach DJ (2007). A review of historical exposures to asbestos among skilled craftsmen (1940–2006). *J Toxicol Environ Health B Crit Rev*, 10: 319–377. doi:10.1080/10937400601034191 PMID:17687724

Williams RR, Stegens NL, Goldsmith JR (1977). Associations of cancer site and type with occupation and industry from the Third National Cancer Survey Interview. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 59: 1147–1185. PMID:903993

Wu-Williams AH, Xu ZY, Blot WJ *et al.* (1993). Occupation and lung cancer risk among women in northern China. *Am J Ind Med*, 24: 67–79. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700240107 PMID:8352293

Wünsch-Filho V, Moncau JE, Mirabelli D, Boffetta P (1998). Occupational risk factors of lung cancer in São Paulo, Brazil. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 24: 118–124. PMID:9630059

Wynder EL & Graham EA (1951). Etiologic factors in bronchiogenic carcinoma with special reference to industrial exposures; report of eight hundred fifty-seven proved cases. *AMA Arch Ind Hyg Occup Med*, 4: 221–235. PMID:14867935

Wynder EL, Onderdonk J, Mantel N (1963). AN EPIDEMIOLOGICAL INVESTIGATION OF CANCER OF THE BLADDER. *Cancer*, 16: 1388–1407. doi:10.1002/1097-0142(196311)16:11<1388::AID-CNCR2820161104>3.0.CO;2-8 PMID:14090576

Yamaguchi N, Watanabe S, Okubo T, Takahashi K (1991). Work-related bladder cancer risks in male Japanese workers: estimation of attributable fraction and geographical correlation analysis. *Jpn J Cancer Res*, 82: 624–631. PMID:1906848

Zahm SH, Brownson RC, Chang JC, Davis JR (1989). Study of lung cancer histologic types, occupation, and smoking in Missouri. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 15: 565–578. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700150509 PMID:2741962

Zeegers MP, Swaen GM, Kant I *et al.* (2001). Occupational risk factors for male bladder cancer: results from a population based case cohort study in the Netherlands. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 58: 590–596. doi:10.1136/oem.58.9.590 PMID:11511746

Zeka A, Mannetje A, Zaridze D *et al.* (2006). Lung cancer and occupation in nonsmokers: a multicenter case-control study in Europe. *Epidemiology (Cambridge, Mass.)*, 17: 615–623. doi:10.1097/01.ede.0000239582.92495.b5 PMID:17068414

Zheng T, Cantor KP, Zhang Y, Lynch CF (2002). Occupation and bladder cancer: a population-based, case-control study in Iowa. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 44: 685–691. doi:10.1097/00043764-200207000-00016 PMID:12134533

Zhu CQ, Lam TH, Jiang CQ (2001). Lymphocyte DNA damage in bus manufacturing workers. *Mutat Res*, 491: 173–181. PMID:11287310

Zollinger H, Iqbal A (2003). *Color Chemistry: Syntheses, Properties, and Applications of Organic Dyes and Pigments*, 3rd ed. Weinheim: Wiley-VCH.

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES IN THE RUBBER-MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

Occupational exposures in the rubber-manufacturing industry were considered by previous IARC Working Groups in 1981 and 1987 (IARC, 1982, 1987). Since that time new data have become available, which have been incorporated in this *Monograph,* and taken into consideration in the present evaluation.

1. Exposure Data

In the context of this *Monograph*, the rubber industry is restricted to the rubber-manufacturing industry, including the production of tyres and general rubber goods and the process of re-treading. The production of synthetic polymers in chemical plants is not discussed.

1.1 Manufacturing process

Rubber manufacturing generally comprises the following operations: raw materials handling, weighing and mixing; milling; extruding and calendering; component assembly and building; 'curing' or vulcanizing; inspection and finishing; storage and dispatch. A detailed description of these steps in the production process can be found in IARC (1982).

Although the stages described below are applicable to the majority of rubber goods manufactured from solid polymer, a substantial proportion of rubber production involves the use of liquid latex. This applies to the manufacture of dipped rubber goods (such as rubber gloves and some footwear), foam-latex products (such as mattresses, cushions, etc.), and extruded thread products (such as elasticated fabrics and surgical hose).

1.1.1 Raw materials handling, weighing and mixing

All the materials required for the manufacture of the finished product are assembled. The raw polymer, either natural or synthetic is brought together at this stage with a variety of compounding chemical additives before being introduced into a mixer. The extensive range of chemicals required and the volume of raw material handled can give rise to substantial quantities of airborne dust.

1.1.2 Milling

From the mixer, the uncured rubber compound usually passes to one or more milling machines, where it is thoroughly blended to ensure an even dispersion of its chemical constituents. At this stage, considerable heat is generated, and, although many technical improvements have been introduced in recent years, the job of mill operator still involves a considerable degree of physical exertion and exposure to fumes arising from the heated compound.

1.1.3 Extruding and calendering

The extruders force the rubber compound through a die into various forms, which are then cut to appropriate lengths. Strips of softened rubber compound are fed into multiple-roll milling machines (calenders) to form rubber sheeting, or to apply the rubber directly onto woven textile fabric, which can then be wound off onto a roll. During such manufacturing operations, fumes are often generated.

1.1.4 Component assembly and building

At this stage, solvents are frequently used, with the possibility of inhalation of solvent vapours or of direct effects of the solvent on the skin of the operator.

1.1.5 Curing or vulcanizing

Heat is applied to the product, usually by use of steam, in a curing mould, press, or autoclave. Operators working in the area are exposed both to heat from the presses and to fumes from the heated rubber products. Chemical reactions take place throughout the manufacturing process, and may give rise to new, more volatile chemicals.

1.1.6 Inspection and finishing

This involves the handling of cured rubber products, often while still hot. It usually involves direct and extensive skin-contact with the surface of the finished article (during inspection) and may also involve exposure to vulcanizing fumes. Grinding, trimming, repair, painting and cleaning may also entail exposure to rubber dust, fumes and solvents.

1.1.7 Storage and dispatch

Large quantities of stored rubber goods may release considerable amounts of toxic substances, either as vapours or as constituents of the 'bloom' on the surface of finished goods.

1.2 Chemicals used in the rubber-production process

A wide variety of natural or synthetic elastomers, fillers (e.g. carbon black, precipitated silica or silicates) and additives are used in compounding to create the necessary properties of the final rubber product. The actual chemicals used in this process have changed over time and vary extensively depending on the manufacturing sector (e.g. tyres, general rubber goods, re-treading), and on the specific plant.

Compounding ingredients are classified as vulcanising agents (e.g. elemental sulfur, sulfur donors such as organic disulphides and higher sulphides, peroxides, urethane cross-linking agents); vulcanization accelerators (e.g. sulphenamides, thiazoles, guanidines, thiurams, dithiocarbamates, dithiophosphates, and miscellaneous accelerators such as zinc isopropyl xanthate and ethylene thiourea); vulcanization activators (e.g. zinc oxide, magnesium oxide, lead oxide); retarders and inhibitors of vulcanization (e.g. benzoic acid, salicylic acid, phthalic anhydride, *N*-nitrosodiphenylamine (NDPA), *N*-(cyclohexylthio)phthalimide); antidegradants; antioxidants (e.g. phenolics, phosphites, thioesters, amines, bound antioxidants such as quinone-diimines, miscellaneous antioxidants such as zinc and nickel salts of dithiocarbamates); antiozonants (e.g. *para*-phenylenediamines, triazine derivatives, waxes); anti-reversion agents (e.g. zinc carboxylates, thiophosphoryl derivatives, silane coupling agents, sulphenimide accelerator, hexamethylene-1,6-bis thiosulphate disodium dehydrate, and 1,3-bis(citranimidomethyl) benzene); plasticisers and softeners (e.g. petroleum products such as petroleum waxes and mineral oils, coal-tar products such as coumarone resin, pine products, synthetic softeners, and other products such as vegetable oils and fats); and miscellaneous ingredients (such as peptising agents, blowing agents, bonding agents, and pigments) (Datta & Ingham, 2001).

1.3 Human exposure

Workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry are exposed to dusts and fumes from the rubber-making and vulcanization processes. Potential exposures include *N*-nitrosamines, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, solvents, and phthalates. Inhalation is the main route of exposure, although workers may have dermal exposure as well (e.g. to cyclohexane-soluble compounds). Details on historical occupational exposures in the rubber-manufacturing industry can be found in the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1982).

Data from studies published since the previous evaluation (IARC, 1982) are summarized below. These are mainly from Europe and North America. Hardly any current exposure data from Asia, where production of rubber goods has increased considerably during the last two decades, was available to the Working Group.

Several industry-wide surveys have been carried out in the United Kingdom (Dost *et al.*, 2000) and in the Netherlands (Kromhout *et al.*, 1994; Vermeulen *et al.*, 2000). In these studies, inhalable dust concentrations, curing-fume concentrations and solvents were measured. A recent European Concerted Action created a large exposure database for the rubber-manufacturing industry in five countries (the United Kingdom, Germany, the Netherlands, Poland, and Sweden). The Improved Exposure Assessment for Prospective Cohort Studies and Exposure Control in the Rubber-Manufacturing Industry (EXASRUB) database contains results of 59609 measurements collected from 523 surveys in 333 factories between 1956 and 2003. The database consists primarily of measurements of *N*-nitrosamines ($n = 21202$), rubber dust ($n = 13655$), solvents ($n = 8615$) and rubber fumes ($n = 5932$) (de Vocht *et al.*, 2005). The long timespan and the presence of longitudinal data from several countries provide insight into long-term temporal trends in exposure concentrations in the rubber-manufacturing industry.

1.3.1 Dust from rubber processing

An industry-wide survey in the Netherlands in 1998 showed geometric mean concentrations of inhalable dust that varied from 0.8 to 1.9 mg/m^3 and from 0.2 to 2.0 mg/m^3 when analysed by plant and by department, respectively. Actual inhalable dust concentrations depended to a large extent on specific conditions within the departments of the 10 plants involved in the study (Kromhout *et al.*, 1994). Comparison of the exposure levels nine years later revealed a reduction rate of 5.7% per annum for exposure to inhalable particulate matter. On average, median inhalable dust concentrations went down from 1.00 mg/m^3 to 0.59 mg/m^3 between 1988 and 1997. The steepest decline was observed in companies and departments with the highest exposure levels in 1988 and in workers with long employment. However, the highest concentrations were still seen in the compounding and mixing departments (Vermeulen *et al.*, 2000).

Dost *et al.* (2000) reported on exposure data collected in an industry-wide inventory in the United Kingdom during 1995–97 from 29 re-treading plants, 52 producers of general rubber goods, and seven producers of new tyres. The results show similar patterns at somewhat elevated levels.

These findings were confirmed in an analysis of dust-exposure data (13380 inhalable and 816 respirable dust measurements collected between 1969 and 2003) in the EXASRUB database. Geometric mean inhalable dust concentrations changed by −4% (range −5.8 to +2.9%) per year. Significant reductions were found in all five participating countries for 'handling of crude materials and mixing and milling' (–7% to –4% per year) and for 'miscellaneous workers' (–11% to –5% per year). Average geometric mean personal exposure levels ranged from 0.72 mg/m^3 in the Netherlands to 1.97 mg/m^3 in Germany. Up to 4–5-fold differences were observed between the countries in the early eighties, but these

differences diminished considerably in the two decades afterwards. In most countries, personal measurements appeared to be on average 2–4 times higher than stationary measurements (de Vocht *et al.*, 2008).

1.3.2 Fumes from rubber curing

Heating and curing of rubber compounds generates a visible fume. This fume has a complex chemical composition, which makes detailed analysis rather difficult. The cyclohexane-soluble fraction (CSF) of total particulate matter has been used as an indicator of fume contamination in the areas in which the samples were taken. Such monitoring studies are reviewed below.

In the 1988 Dutch industry-wide survey, Kromhout *et al.* (1994) reported a geometric mean CSF concentration of 0.39 mg/m^3 (n = 163) in the curing departments of 10 factories. Considerable variation was seen between the companies, with a range of geometric mean concentrations of 0.21–1.16 mg/m^3.

Median exposures reported for the United Kingdom industry-wide study were highest in the general rubber goods companies at 0.40 mg/m^3, intermediate for re-treading plants at 0.32 mg/m^3 and lowest for manufacturers of new tyres at 0.22 mg/m^3. Process-specific CSF concentrations in rubber goods production were as follows: 0.40 mg/m^3 in moulding, 0.33 mg/m^3 in extrusion, 0.18 mg/m^3 in milling. For re-treading, levels were 0.32 mg/m^3 for pressing, 0.19 mg/m^3 for extruding and 0.10 mg/m^3 for autoclaving (Dost *et al.*, 2000).

Analysis of 5657 CSF measurements in the EXASRUB database collected between 1977 and 2003 showed an annual decrease in concentration of 3% (range –8.6% to 0%). Steepest declines were seen in curing (–8.6% per year) and maintenance and engineering departments (–5.4% per year) (de Vocht *et al.*, 2008).

1.3.3 N-nitrosamines

Nitrosamines in the rubber-manufacturing industry are formed in the vulcanising process, with its extensive use of chemicals such as tetramethyl thiuram disulfide, zinc-diethyldithiocarbamate and morpholinomercaptobenzothiazole.

Exposures to volatile nitrosamines were measured at 24 French rubber-manufacturing plants from 1992 to 1995. A total of 709 exposure measurements (109 in the personal breathing zone, and 600 area samples) were collected. The following five different nitrosamines were identified: *N*-nitrosodimethylamine (NDMA), *N*-nitrosodiethylamine (NDEA), *N*-nitrosodibutylamine, *N*-nitrosopiperidine, and *N*-nitrosomorpholine (NMor). Eighty samples, in which the concentrations were either zero or not quantifiable were excluded. NDMA was the most frequently encountered nitrosamine (detected in 98% of the remaining 629 samples) and represented the most important fraction of the total nitrosamine concentration. For all nitrosamines present, 141 of the concentrations measured exceeded 2.5 µg/m^3. The salt-bath curing process generated particularly high nitrosamine levels, with 90% of the 96 measurements showing concentrations higher than 2.5 µg/m^3, many values even exceeding 20 µg/m^3 (Oury *et al.*, 1997).

Time trends of personal exposure to NDMA and to NMor over two decades (1980–2000) in the German rubber-manufacturing industry were analysed and compared with exposures observed in the Netherlands, Poland, Sweden, and the United Kingdom over the same time period. A total of 2319 NDMA and 2316 NMor measurements contained in the EXASRUB database were analysed. Results from Germany accounted for 88% and 85% of the data for these two amines, respectively. For both NDMA and NMor, the average geometric mean concentration in Germany was 0.13 µg/m^3. Geometric mean concentrations of NDMA ranged from

0.05 μg/m^3 in the Netherlands to 0.34 μg/m^3 in Sweden, while those of NMor ranged from 0.03 μg/m^3 in the United Kingdom to 0.17 μg/m^3 in Poland and Sweden. Exposure to NDMA and NMor decreased on average 2–5-fold in the German rubber-manufacturing industry over this time period, mainly due to the introduction of modern curing systems. Comparable levels were observed in the other European countries (de Vocht *et al.*, 2007).

In a study from Italy, personal exposures to nine airborne *N*-nitrosamines (NDMA, NDEA, *N*-nitrosodi-*n*-propylamine, *N*-nitrosodiisopropylamine, *N*-nitrosodi-n-butylamine, N-nitrosopiperidine, N-nitrosopyrrolidine, and NMor) were measured in 34 workers from four Italian factories that manufactured rubber drive belts for automobile engines. Airborne levels were very low and, in most cases, below the limit of detection of 0.06 μg/m3 (Iavicoli & Carelli, 2006)

Personal exposures to six nitrosamines (NDMA, NDEA, *N*-nitrosodi-*n*-butylamine, *N*-nitrosomorpholine, *N*-nitrosopiperidine, and *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine) were measured in the rubber-manufacturing industry in Sweden (Jönsson *et al.*, 2009). The exposures ranged from less than the limit of detection to 36 μg/m^3, and differed with the vulcanization method used. Workers involved in salt-bath vulcanization had the highest level of exposure (median, 4.2 μg/m^3).

Although average levels of *N*-nitrosamines are nowadays well below the current exposure limits, exposure to these chemicals has not been eliminated and incidental high exposures do still occur.

1.3.4 PAHs

In a 1997 cross-sectional study of 116 Dutch male workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry, Peters *et al.* (2008) collected urine samples on weekdays and on Sundays, and determined the concentration of 1-hydroxypyrene. The concentrations were significantly higher in workweek samples compared with those collected on Sunday. However, this increase was not uniform across tasks and only reached statistical significance for the curing department ($P = 0.003$).

1.3.5 Solvents

Kromhout *et al.* (1994) measured exposures to solvents in 10 rubber-manufacturing plants in the Netherlands in the late 1980s. The extent of use of individual solvents varied widely and total solvent concentrations were reported. The quantitative assessment of exposure to solvents was restricted to paraffins (hexane, heptane and octane); aromatic compounds (toluene, xylene, trimethylbenzene, naphthalene and isopropylbenzene); chlorinated hydrocarbons (trichloroethylene and 1,1,1-trichloroethane); ketones, alcohols and esters (methylisobutylketone, 2-ethoxyethanol and isobutylacetate). These were chosen on the basis of information on solvents, cements, and release and bonding agents used in the 10 plants. The geometric mean concentration by plant varied from 0.5–46.9 mg/m^3 and ranged from 0.4–34.6 mg/m^3 by department, with the highest exposures reported in the pretreating departments.

1.3.6 Phthalates

Two studies reported on exposure to phthalates, which are used as plasticizers in the rubber-manufacturing industry. A total of 386 spot-urine samples were collected from 101 Dutch workers employed in nine different factories, and analysed for the presence of phthalic acid and 2-thiothiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid. Samples were collected on Sunday and during the workweek on Tuesday, Wednesday, and Thursday. Geometric mean concentrations of phthalic acid showed a significant 2-fold increase (paired *t*-test; $P < 0.05$) during the workweek compared with the concentrations measured on Sunday

(GM, 83 µg/l), with absolute increases of approximately 70 µg/l. The concentrations did not differ markedly between Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday (GM, 148 µg/l, 152 µg/l and 164 µg/l, respectively). Increases seemed to be restricted to specific factories and/or departments (e.g. moulding and curing) (Vermeulen *et al.*, 2005).

In a pilot biomonitoring study in several industries, Hines *et al.* (2009) reported that workers from a rubber boot manufacturing plant had 3-fold higher geometric mean concentrations of diethylhexyl-phthalate metabolites in post-shift urine than the concentrations measured in the general population.

1.3.7 Dermal exposure

Kromhout *et al.* (1994) and Vermeulen *et al.* (2000) reported on dermal exposures to cyclohexane soluble compounds in the rubber-manufacturing industry in the Netherlands. Dermal CSF levels decreased in a similar pattern as inhalation exposures over a 9-year period (1988–1997).

2. Cancer in Humans

The literature reviewed in previous *IARC Monographs* (IARC, 1982, 1987) provided *sufficient evidence* of a causal association between exposures in the rubber-manufacturing industry and cancer. The recent Working Group decided to review evidence from individual studies that appeared after the earlier evaluation (IARC, 1982) making use of a systematic review by Kogevinas *et al.* (1998). Evidence from meta-analyses published by Stewart *et al.* (1999), Borak *et al.* (2005) and Alder *et al.* (2006) was not considered since these studies combined a variety of exposure circumstances that would tend to dilute any observed effect. The Working Group realized that the complexity of occupational exposure in the rubber-manufacturing industry had so far precluded a clear conclusion about an association between increased cancer mortality and incidence and exposure to particular chemicals (except historically well known associations between 2-naphthylamine and bladder cancer, and benzene and leukaemia). Future studies in the rubber-manufacturing industry may overcome this problem by making use more systematically of the wealth of exposure data available in the industry (de Vocht *et al.*, 2005, 2009).

2.1 Cancer of the bladder

In the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1982) it was concluded that there was *sufficient evidence* of an excess occurrence of urinary bladder cancer in workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry. The first evidence appeared when a substantial excess of bladder cancer was noted among workers in this industry in the United Kingdom (Case *et al.*, 1954).

2.1.1 Cohort studies

Among workers in the British rubber-manufacturing industry, the death rate from bladder cancer during 1936–1951 was almost twice that of the general population (Case & Hosker, 1954). Studies in other countries also showed an excess of bladder cancer in workers in this industry, but these studies were based on small numbers.

Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) conducted a systematic review of epidemiological studies on cancer in the rubber-manufacturing industry. This review included cohort and case–control studies published after the previous evaluation (IARC, 1982), which were conducted in facilities that manufactured and repaired tyres, manufactured cables and other rubber goods. The authors found that moderately increased risks for bladder cancer were reported in 6 of 8 cohort studies of workers employed in the rubber-manufacturing industry in different regions of the world. In four studies that reported results by calendar period, the risk was highest among workers employed before 1950 (Delzell & Monson, 1984a,

b, 1985a, b; Gustavsson *et al.*, 1986; Negri *et al.*, 1989; Szeszenia-Dabrowska *et al.*, 1991). One of these studies reported potential co-exposure to 2-naphthylamine (Szeszenia-Dabrowska *et al.*, 1991).

Two cohort studies of Polish workers published before 1998 were updated and an excess mortality risk for bladder cancer was reported (see Table 2.1, available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-31-Table2.1.pdf). In the most recent follow-up of a cohort of Polish workers involved in the manufacture of rubber footwear, non-statistically significant increased risks for bladder cancer were found among men and women (Szymczak *et al.*, 2003). In a cohort study among workers in rubber-tyre manufacture in Poland (Wilczyńska *et al.*, 2001), no increased risk for bladder cancer was observed among all workers, but analysis of a subcohort of men involved in mixing and weighing of raw materials, milling, extruding and calendaring, showed a non-significantly increased risk. A job-exposure matrix (JEM) for occupational exposure to aromatic amines was used in the analysis of this cohort (de Vocht *et al.*, 2009). This JEM was set-up with data from EXASRUB, which provided estimates of geometric mean concentrations for airborne chemicals in each department in the factory during the study period. Internal analyses showed an increased risk in the highest two quartiles of exposure to aromatic amines.

2.1.2 Synthesis

Studies in the rubber-manufacturing industry with documented exposure to 2-naphthylamine clearly show an increased risk of cancer of the urinary bladder. More recent studies that included workers with no recorded exposure to 2-naphthylamine identified moderately increased risks for bladder cancer. [The Working Group could not rule out that the increased risks in recent studies were attributable to exposure to 2-naphthylamine, or whether other exposures in this industry contributed to this risk.]

2.2 Leukaemia

It was concluded in the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1982) that there was *sufficient evidence* of an excess occurrence of leukaemia in workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry.

2.2.1 Cohort studies

Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) noted four cohort studies that found moderately increased risks for leukaemia among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry in the USA (Norseth *et al.*, 1983; Delzell & Monson, 1984a, b, in two departments of a rubber plant in Akron, Ohio), in Italy (Bernardinelli *et al.*, 1987), and in Germany (Weiland *et al.*, 1996), while four studies did not report an excess risk (Gustavsson *et al.*, 1986; Negri *et al.*, 1989; Sorahan *et al.*, 1989; Carlo *et al.*, 1993). The magnitude of the risk varied between studies, with the highest risks found in studies conducted in North America. The results supported the conclusion that the excess risk for leukaemia was attributable to exposure to solvents, particularly benzene. The authors indicated that a variety of solvent mixtures, with or without benzene, had been used in rubber cements, glues, binding agents, and release agents.

Cohort studies on leukaemia that were published since the review paper mentioned above (Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) are summarized in Table 2.2 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-31-Table2.2.pdf). Straif *et al.* (1998) reported an excess risk for leukaemia in a cohort of male workers employed in one of five large plants in Germany that produced tyres or general rubber goods (SMR, 1.5; 95%CI: 1.0–2.1). An increased risk was observed in work area I (Preparation of Materials) where solutions were made up,

and in work area II (Technical Rubber Goods). Non-significant excesses were also seen in other areas. Longer duration of employment was associated with increased incidence of leukaemia in work area I, particularly among those workers with 10 or more years of employment (SMR, 3.0; 95%CI: 1.5–5.6).

Li & Yu (2002a) conducted a nested case–control study (7 cases of leukaemia, 28 controls) in a rubber-manufacturing facility, and reported an excess risk for leukaemia in workers of the inner-tube department, but not in other departments of the plant. The odds ratio for leukaemia was 7.81 (95%CI: 0.8–78.8) for one or more years of work in the inner-tube department.

2.2.2 Case–control study

McLean *et al.* (2009) conducted a population-based case–control study in New Zealand, with 225 cases of leukaemia and 471 controls. Full occupational histories were obtained by interview. Among those reporting working as rubber/plastics machine-operators (9 cases, 4 controls), the age-, sex- and smoking-adjusted risk estimate was 3.8 (95%CI: 1.1–13.1). The strongest findings, nonetheless, were for plastics rather than for the rubber-manufacturing industry.

2.2.3 Synthesis

The Working Group concluded that there was an increased risk for leukaemia among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry. The excess risks may be associated with exposure to solvents, in particular benzene.

2.3 Malignant lymphoma including multiple myeloma and other lymphopoietic cancers

It was concluded in the previous review (IARC, 1982) that there was *limited evidence* of an excess occurrence of lymphoma among rubber-manufacturing workers. Excess occurrence of lymphoma had been noted in workers exposed to solvents in departments like footwear production and tyre manufacture (Veys, 1982).

2.3.1 Cohort studies

Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) reported excess risks for malignant lymphoma, including multiple myeloma, ranging from 1.7 to 3.6 in three cohort studies in the USA (Norseth *et al.*, 1983; Delzell & Monson, 1984a, b, in a rubber plant in Akron, Ohio) and Italy (Bernardinelli *et al.*, 1987), while there was no excess risk in two other cohort studies, in Italy and the United Kingdom (Negri *et al.*, 1989; Sorahan *et al.*, 1989). Delzell & Monson (1984b, 1985b) reported excess risks for multiple myeloma in certain departments of a rubber plant in Akron, Ohio, as did Gustavsson *et al.* (1986) in Sweden.

Cohort studies published since 1998 are included in Table 2.2, on-line. In Germany, Mundt *et al.* (1999) observed an increased risk for lymphatic system cancers among women employed in one of five large plants that produced tyres or general rubber goods. All cases were seen among women hired after 1950. In the United Kingdom, an increased mortality risk for multiple myeloma was found among men and women in 41 British rubber factories that manufactured tyres and general rubber goods (Dost *et al.*, 2007). Women also had increased multiple-myeloma incidence (SRR, 8.1; 95%CI: 1.7–23.7). Excess mortality was observed among workers in the general rubber sector (seven deaths observed, one expected).

Wilczyńska *et al.* (2001). did not find an overall increase in mortality risk for cancers of lymphatic and haematopoietic tissues in a rubber-tyre plant in Poland.

2.3.2 Synthesis

The Working Group concluded that there is *sufficient evidence* of excess malignant lymphoma among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry.

2.4 Cancer of the lung

In the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1982) it was concluded that there was suggestive evidence of an excess incidence of lung cancer among rubber-manufacturing workers, but that the evidence for a causal association with occupational exposures was *limited*.

2.4.1 Cohort studies

Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) noted that the more recently reviewed studies tended to confirm a moderate excess risk for lung cancer. Positive findings were reported in five cohort studies (Delzell & Monson, 1985a, in the curing department; Gustavsson *et al.*, 1986; Zhang *et al.*, 1989; Szeszenia-Dabrowska *et al.*, 1991; Solionova & Smulevich, 1993). These risks were found among workers in tyre-curing departments, mixing and milling, in vulcanization workers, and in a study on jobs with high exposure to fumes or solvents. In three studies excess risks up to 1.5 were reported (Delzell & Monson, 1984b, in the aerospace-product department; Sorahan *et al.*, 1989; Weiland *et al.*, 1996), while in five cohort studies excess risks were not found (Norseth *et al.*, 1983; Delzell & Monson, 1984a, 1985b, in industrial-products and reclaim departments; Bernardinelli *et al.*, 1987; Negri *et al.*, 1989; Carlo *et al.*, 1993).

Cohort studies on lung cancer published after the above-mentioned review (Kogevinas *et al.*, 1998) are listed in Table 2.3 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-31-Table2.3.pdf). In most studies moderate but consistent increases in risk for lung cancer were found; two studies reported no increase in risk (Dost *et al.*, 2007; deVocht *et al.*, 2009).

From a study of a cohort of German women employed in rubber-manufacturing plants, Mundt *et al.* (1999) reported an increased risk for lung cancer mortality. Stronger associations were observed for certain periods of employment. Among a cohort of German men, a significantly increased risk for lung cancer mortality was observed (Straif *et al.*, 2000a). Using internal comparisons, the authors showed increased risks among those employed during one year or more in work areas that involved preparation of materials, technical rubber goods and tyre production (Straif *et al.*, 1999). Through retrospective, semiquantitative estimates of exposures to nitrosamines, asbestos and talc, an increased risk for lung cancer in association with high exposure levels for asbestos was observed. An exposure characterization in which categories of medium and high exposure levels of talc were combined with medium exposure to asbestos revealed an exposure-response relationship with lung-cancer incidence (Straif *et al.*, 2000a).

Szymczak *et al.* (2003) reported excess lung-cancer mortality among men and women employed in a rubber-footwear plant in Poland. There were increased risks by duration of employment, but no trend was observed. A population-based cohort study of non-smoking women in China also showed an increased risk for lung cancer, after controlling for exposure to second-hand smoke, education level and family history of lung cancer (Pronk *et al.*, 2009).

2.4.2 Case–control studies

The findings of population-based case–control studies are listed in Table 2.4 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-31-Table2.4.pdf). Most notably, in two large multicentre studies of non-smokers, increased risks for lung cancer were found among

women who reported having been employed in the rubber-manufacturing industry (Pohlabeln *et al.*, 2000; Zeka *et al.*, 2006).

2.4.3 Synthesis

Overall, the cohort studies suggest an increased lung-cancer risk among workers in the rubber-maufacturing industry. This conclusion is supported by the findings of population-based case–control studies. The Working Group concluded that there is evidence of excess lung cancer among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry.

2.5 Cancer of the larynx

In a previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1987) it was indicated that cancer of the larynx had been reported as occurring in excess in workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry, but this excess was not consistent.

2.5.1 Cohort studies

In his review, Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) reported a small but consistent excess risk for laryngeal cancer in seven cohorts, but indicated that the available evidence did not permit an evaluation to be made of the specific agents that may be associated with the increased risk for this cancer.

Straif *et al.* (2000a) found increased mortality from laryngeal cancer among workers in the German rubber-manufacturing industry (see Table 2.3, on-line). The authors indicated that the excess risk may be associated with employment in weighing and mixing and with exposure to asbestos, talc or carbon black. Dost *et al.* (2007) did not find an increased risk for laryngeal cancer mortality and incidence among workers in the British rubber-manufacturing industry. De Vocht *et al.* (2009) did not find increased mortality from laryngeal cancer in a plant that manufactured rubber tyres. They also did not find an association with exposure to aromatic amines or inhalable aerosol.

2.5.2 Synthesis

The Working Group concluded that there was inconsistent evidence of excess laryngeal cancer among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry. [Tobacco smoking is a risk factor for laryngeal cancer, yet in many studies no adjustment for smoking status was made.]

2.6 Cancer of the stomach

In the previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1982) it was concluded that there was *sufficient evidence* of an excess of stomach cancer among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry, and limited evidence of a causal association with occupational exposures.

2.6.1 Cohort studies

The conclusions of the previous Working Group (IARC, 1982) were supported by cohort studies of male workers in specific rubber factories. A study in a rubber plant in Akron, Ohio (USA) showed an excess of stomach cancer primarily among workers involved in jobs early in the production line, where exposures are mainly to particulate matter, but also to some fume from uncured rubber (Delzell & Monson, 1982). A case–control analysis of stomach cancer among male workers in the same plant showed a positive association with work early in the production line and with jobs in curing and maintenance (McMichael *et al.*, 1976). Further analysis, according to estimated exposure to specific agents, showed a positive association with exposure to talc (Blum *et al.*, 1979). In one study in the United Kingdom, mortality from stomach cancer was increased among all workers, but particularly among men in jobs early in the production process (Parkes *et al.*, 1982). In a second study in the United Kingdom,

excess mortality from stomach cancer was also observed among all workers, but not among particular occupations (Baxter & Werner, 1980).

Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) reported low excess risks for stomach cancer in seven cohort studies. The risk was elevated mainly in mixing and milling departments in two studies (Wang *et al.*, 1984; Gustavsson *et al.*, 1986) and in jobs with high exposure to dust in a third study (Sorahan *et al.*, 1989). Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) indicated that cohort studies published after 1982 either did not confirm the presence of an excess risk or suggested the presence of only a slightly elevated risk.

Cohort studies on stomach cancer published since the above-mentioned review are listed in Table 2.5 (available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-31-Table2.5.pdf). In case–cohort study in China of workers in a rubber-manufacturing plant, Li & Yu (2002b) reported an increased risk for stomach cancer. Increased risks were also reported by duration of work in inner tyre-tube manufacturing and milling departments. Mundt *et al.* (1999) found excess risks for stomach cancer among German women employed in the rubber-manufacturing industry, which was stronger among workers hired after 1960.

Straif *et al.* (2000a) reported a moderately increased risk for stomach cancer among male workers in the German rubber-manufacturing industry. An exposure-effect association with talc was observed, but no association with nitrosamines. Data appeared to indicate an association with carbon black, but after adjustment for talc- and asbestos-containing dusts, the risk estimate was lower and no longer significant.

On the basis of internal comparisons, Neves *et al.* (2006) found an increasing risk for stomach cancer among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry employed in small companies in comparison with workers at large companies, with 10-year lagging and control for confounding (RR, 3.47; 95%CI: 2.57–4.67). Company size was used as a surrogate of probability of exposure to carcinogenic substances. De Vocht *et al.* (2009) found a moderate excess risk for stomach cancer, particularly among workers in the maintenance department of a tyre-manufacturing plant, while Dost *et al.* (2007) showed a modest excess of stomach-cancer incidence among male workers in a study of British rubber plants.

2.6.2 Synthesis

The Working Group concluded that there was evidence of an excess of stomach cancer among rubber-manufacturing workers.

2.7 Cancer of the oesophagus

The previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1982) determined that there was *inadequate evidence* for excess occurrence of cancer of the oesophagus among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry.

2.7.1 Cohort studies

Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) reported an increased risk for oesophageal cancer in four cohorts (Delzell & Monson, 1985b, in reclaim-department workers; Sorahan *et al.*, 1989; Szeszenia-Dabrowska *et al.*, 1991, Weiland *et al.*, 1996). Other cohorts studies showed no effect.

Straif *et al.* (2000b) reported a significantly increasing trend for oesophageal cancer with increasing exposure to nitrosamines (see Table 2.5, on-line). Tests for trend and associations were also significant for cancers of the lip and oral cavity. In Poland, Szymczak *et al.* (2003) reported a significant excess risk among rubber-footwear workers.

2.7.2 Synthesis

The Working Group concluded that there was some evidence for an excess risk for cancer of the oesophagus among workers in the

rubber-manufacturing industry. [The Working Group noted that in none of the studies adjustments were made for tobacco or alcohol use.]

2.8 Cancer of the prostate

The previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1982) concluded that the evidence of excess risk for prostate cancer was *limited* and that the evidence for a causal association with occupational exposures was inadequate.

2.8.1 Cohort studies

Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) reported excess risks for prostate cancer in five studies (Norseth *et al.*, 1983; Delzell & Monson 1984a, in the industrial-products department; Bernardinelli *et al.*, 1987; Solionova & Smulevich, 1993; Weiland *et al.*, 1996). Other studies did not report any excess (Delzell & Monson, 1984b, 1985b; in the aerospace-products and re-claim departments; Gustavsson *et al.*, 1986; Sorahan *et al.*, 1989; Szeszenia-Dabrowska *et al.*, 1991).

Since then, only one case–cohort study that investigated the association between prostate cancer and work in the rubber-manufacturing industry has been published (Zeegers *et al.*, 2004). In this study a non-statistically significant increased risk for prostate cancer was found.

2.8.2 Synthesis

The Working Group concluded that there is weak evidence of excess risk for prostate cancer among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry.

2.9 Other cancers

The previous *IARC Monograph* (IARC, 1982) determined that for cancers of the brain, thyroid and pancreas, the evidence was *inadequate* for an excess in occurrence of these cancers and for a causal association with occupational exposures.

2.9.1 Cohort studies

Kogevinas *et al.* (1998) reported that findings for other cancer sites were not consistent between studies, or were derived from too few studies. Since this review, studies on workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry with excess cancers of the brain, pancreas, gallbladder, cervix and liver have been reported (see Table 2.6 available at http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol100F/100F-31-Table2.6.pdf).

2.9.2 Synthesis

The Working Group concluded that there is little evidence of excess risks for cancers at sites other than those mentioned above, being associated with work in the rubber-manufacturing industry. [Excess risks found in single studies may be related to specific exposure circumstances occurring in particular rubber-manufacturing plants. One problem in evaluating findings for other cancer sites is that reporting may have been incomplete in cohort and case–control studies, with possibly preferential reporting of positive findings.]

3. Cancer in Experimental Animals

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Other Relevant Data

The rubber-manufacturing industry has used and still uses a wide variety of substances that belong to many different chemical categories, e.g. carbon black, aromatic amines, PAH, *N*-nitrosamines, mineral oils, other volatile organic compounds from curing fumes, trace amounts of monomers from synthetic rubber like 1,3-butadiene, acetonitrile, styrene, vinyl chloride, ethylene oxide, etc. (See Section 1). For this reason, it has been difficult to relate the observed

Table 4.1 Biomonitoring studies and cytogenetic assays among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Degrassi *et al.* (1984) Italy	Exposed: Vulcanizers (n = 34) in a rubber plant Controls: Workers (n = 16) in the same plant and living in the same geographic area	Airborne particulate matter ranged from 0.5 to 3.4, with an average (± SD) of 1.1 (± 1.1) mg/m^3. Exposure duration (± SE) was 8.2 ± 0.8 yr	Chromosomal aberrations (per 100 cells) SCE (per cell)	1.9 ± 1.4 (excl. gaps) 5.2 ± 1.3	2.1 ± 1.5 (excl gaps) 5.2 ± 0.7	NS Cigarette smoking was associated with increased SCE in exposed and controls. Chromosomal aberrations were not correlated
Hema Prasad *et al.* (1986) India	Exposed: Workers (n = 35) employed for 3–12 yr in a rubber factory. There were 20 unexposed controls (not specified)	NR	Chromosomal aberrations (per 100 cells)	Ranged from 1.57 to 2.75, increased with longer time at work	0.6 per 100 cells	$P < 0.05$ No information is given about smoking.
Sasiadek (1992) Poland	Exposed: Vulcanizers (14 women, 7 men; 14 were smokers) in a rubber plant. Controls: Non-exposed women (n = 7) and men (n = 7), of whom 5 were smokers	Exposure duration was 14.2 ± 9.7 yr (range 2–35 yr)	Chromosomal aberrations (per 100 cells) SCE (per cell)	2.2 ± 1.06 (incl. gaps) 16.1 ± 3.5	0.9 ± 1.0 (incl. gaps) 10.0 ± 1.5	$P < 0.01$ $P < 0.001$
Sasiadek (1993) Poland	Exposed: Vulcanizers (19 women, 7 men; 10 were smokers) in a rubber plant. Controls: Non-exposed women (n = 15) and men (n = 10), of whom 10 were smokers	Exposure duration was 0.5–30 yr (mean 15.6 ± 9.5 yr).	SCE (per cell)	13.2 ± 2.9 (range 9–20)	9.8 ± 1.8 (range 7–14)	$P < 0.001$

Table 4.1 (continued)

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Ward *et al.* (1996) USA	Workers in a butadiene-production plant (10 high-exposed, 10 low-exposed) in Texas, USA. Non-exposed controls from elsewhere (n = 9). All 29 were non-smokers. Second study: follow-up after 8 mo. Ongoing study among workers in a styrene-butadiene rubber plant in the same area. Data are presented on 16 high-exposed (5 smokers) and 9 low-exposed (3 smokers) subjects	Exposure survey by the company: mean level 3.5 ± 7.25 ppm From 8-h personal breathing zone air samples: 0.30 ± 0.59, 0.21 ± 0.21, and 0.12 ± 0.27 ppm for high-, intermediate- and low-exposure areas Passive dosimeters worn during the 8-h shift: of 40 samples, 20 were > 0.25 ppm, 11 were > 1 ppm	a) *HPRT* mutants, lymphocytes b) butadiene metabolite in urine (see comments)	3.99 ± 2.81 (high) and 1.20 ± 0.51 (low) *HPRT* mutants/10^{-6} cells 5.33 ± 3.76* (high) 2.27 ± 0.99 (medium), 2.14 ± 0.97 (low) mutants/10^{-6} cells *Non-smokers:* 7.47 ± 5.69 (high)** 1.68 ± 0.85 (low) *Smokers:* 6.24 ± 4.37 (high)** 3.42 ± 1.57 (low)	1.03 ± 0.12 *HPRT* mutants per 10^{-6} cells	$P < 0.02$ *$P < 0.02$ ** $P < 0.01$ *Comment:* dihydroxybutane mercapturate, 1,2-dihydroxy-4(*N*-acetyl-cysteinyl) butane, was measured in urine by GC/MS. The high-exposure groups (butadiene-monomer plant only) had significantly higher levels.
Moretti *et al.* (1996) Italy	Workers at 4 rubber plants (n = 19; 9 smokers) and 20 age-matched (± 5 yr) blood donors as controls (8 of whom were smokers)	NR	a) mutagenicity in urine b) urinary excretion of thioethers	a), b): no differences between exposed and controls		
			c) DNA damage in lymphocytes	median migration distance in Comet assay: 37.99 µm	median migration distance: 33.81 µm	$P > 0.05$
			d) SCE	5.51 ± 0.82 / metaphase	6.06 ± 1.15	$P > 0.05$
			e) MN formation	22.84 ± 15.82 MN per 1000 binucleated cells	13.74 ± 4.42	$P < 0.05$

Table 4.1 (continued)

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Major *et al.* (1999) Hungary	Subjects (n = 29, among whom 24 were smokers; 23 men, 6 women) with mixed industrial exposure during 3–20 yr in the rubber-manufacturing industry. Controls were living and/or working in the vicinity of chemical plants, but had no occupational exposure to chemicals (industrial controls)	Exposures included aromatic solvents, dust, tar, lubricating oil. No quantitative data given		*Exposed*	*Industrial controls*	
			a) chromosomal aberrations per 2900 metaphases scored	3.38 ± 0.26	1.60 ± 0.62	$P < 0.01$
			b) PCD: - mitoses with ≤ 3 chromosomes	11.45 ± 1.43	1.57 ± 0.44	$P < 0.01$
			- mitoses with > 3 chromosomes	6.00 ± 1.18	0.32 ± 0.10	$P < 0.01$
			c) aneuploidy	5.64 ± 0.44	6.20 ± 0.43	NS
Somorovská *et al.* (1999) Slovak Republic	Workers (27 men, 2 women; 18 smokers, 11 non-smokers) in a rubber tyre factory. The industrial controls comprised 22 clerks (8 men, 14 women; 14 smokers, 8 non-smokers) from the same factory. A second control group comprised 17 men and 5 women (7 smokers, 15 non-smokers) who worked in a laboratory in Bratislava	Air sampling was followed by analysis of styrene, toluene, butadiene, PAHs, alkanes, and alkenes	a) DNA breakage (Comet assay) b) chromosomal aberrations c) MN assay	*Sample 1* (1996): 33% DNA in tail *Sample 2* (1997): 45% DNA in tail	*Factory controls:* 13% DNA in tail *Laboratory controls:* 22% DNA in tail	$P < 0.00001$
				1 aberration/100 cells	*Factory controls:* 0.4 aberr./100 cells *Laboratory controls:* 0.2 aberr./100 cells	$P < 0.00001$
				6.5 MN/2000 cells	*Factory controls:* 2.1 MN/2000 cells *Laboratory controls:* 1.5 MN/2000 cells	$P < 0.00001$

Table 4.1 (continued)

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Zhu *et al.* (2000) Guangzhou, China	Workers [197 men (130 smokers) and 174 women (6 smokers)] at a factory that produced tyres, pads and other products. Among these, 281 were in rubber-processing jobs, and 90 controls were in management. There were 318 drinkers and 53 non-drinkers	Environmental monitoring of dust, toluene, xylene, gasoline, H_2S, SO_2	DNA breakage (Comet assay; results given as tail moment)	*All rubber workers:* 1.77 (1.64–1.90)* μm *Finishing:* 1.81 (1.48–2.21) μm *Calendering:* 1.77 (1.54–2.03) μm *Vulcanizing:* 1.64 (1.46–1.83) μm *Mixing:* 2.54 (1.95–3.31)** μm	*Managerial workers:* 1.52 (1.36–1.71) μm	* $P = 0.04$ *Comment*: Non-drinking, non-smoking mixers also had higher tail moment than comparable managers: 2.25 (1.66–3.03) vs 1.39 (1.18–1.63) μm ($P = 0.049$) ** $P = 0.002$
Ma *et al.* (2000) Texas, USA	Male non-smoking workers at a styrene-butadiene polymer plant. Controls were employees at the University of Texas Medical Branch	Breathing-zone air sampling with personal monitors	Analysis of *HPRT* variants and mutants, and of exon deletions in the *HPRT* gene in lymphocytes, with a multiplex PCR assay	*HPRT* variants per 10^{-6} cells: 6.86 ± 3.25 ($n = 12$) *HPRT* mutants per 10^{-6} cells: 17.63 ± 5.05 ($n = 10$)	2.36 ± 1.04 ($n = 8$) 8.47 ± 2.88 ($n = 11$)	$P < 0.05$ $P < 0.05$
Ward *et al.* (2001) Texas, USA (study conducted in 1998)	Workers in a BD rubber plant: 22 in a high-exposure and 15 in a low-exposure group, with levels of 1.71 ± 0.54 (SE) and 0.07 ± 0.03 (SE) ppm butadiene, respectively	Exposure to 1,3-BD was monitored with organic vapour monitors and varied from 4.04 ± 3.45 ppm (tank farm) to 0.29 ± 0.33 (laboratory). Low areas* had 0.05 ± 0.06 ppm *packaging, baling, warehouse, shipping	*HPRT* mutant analysis in lymphocytes	*High-exposure group:* All ($n = 22$)–10.67 ± 1.51 (SE) Non-smokers ($n = 12$)–8.64 ± 1.60 Smokers ($n = 10$)–13.10 ± 2.57	*Low-exposure group:* All ($n = 15$)–3.54 ± 0.61 Non-smokers ($n = 14$)–3.46 ± 0.65 Smokers–4.61	$P = 0.001$ $P = 0.011$ *Comment*: increases in *HPRT* variant frequency of about threefold are seen at average BD exposure levels of 1–3 ppm

Table 4.1 (continued)

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Ammenheuser *et al.* (2001) Texas, USA	Workers (n = 24) in the reactor, recovery, tank farm and laboratory area of a BD rubber plant represented a high-exposure group. Workers (n = 25) in blending, coagulation, baling, shipping, the control room and utility areas were a low-exposure group	Workers were asked to wear an organic vapour monitor during one 8-h work-shift, to measure exposure to butadiene/styrene. Lower detection limit: 0.25 ppm BD	*HPRT* mutant analysis in lymphocytes	*High-exposure group:* Non-smokers (n = 19)– 6.8 ± 1.2* (SE) Smokers (n = 5)– 6.1 ± 2.0	*Low-exposure group:* Non-smokers (n = 20)– 1.8 ± 0.2 Smokers (n = 5)–3.3 ± 0.5	* $P < 0.0005$
Vermeulen *et al.* (2002) the Netherlands	Workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry (n = 52; all non-smokers)	Mutagenicity on likely skin-contact surfaces (high, ≥ 25 revertants/cm^2; low, < 25 rev/cm^2) and in ambient air (high, ≥ 210 rev/m^3 low, < 210 rev/m^3) tested in YG1041 of *S. typhimurium*	DNA-adduct analysis in exfoliated bladder cells collected from 24-h urine, by ^{32}P-postlabelling. Samples from 32 slow and 20 fast acetylators (based on *NAT2* analysis)	Of 52 urine samples, 46 gave reliable data for the presence of three main adducts: 1 in 41 samples, 2 in 13 samples, 3 in 29 samples	NR	The 'slow *NAT2*' subjects had lower levels of adducts 1–3 than the fast acetylators. ($P < 0.04$; $P = 0.32$; $P = 0.15$, resp) No information is given on the identity of the adducts
Laffon *et al.* (2006) Portugal	Exposed male workers (n = 32) and non-exposed male controls (n = 32) in a rubber tyre factory in Oporto, of whom 39% were smokers	NR	a) thio-ethers in post-shift urine	0.41 ± 0.05 mM	0.24 ± 0.02 mM	$P < 0.01$
			b) micronucleus test (MN per 1000 cells)	2.34 ± 0.33	1.84 ± 0.29	NS
			c) SCE/cell	4.35 ± 0.20	4.38 ± 0.17	NS
			d) DNA-breakage (Comet assay) (tail length, µm)	44.72 ± 0.66	48.25 ± 0.71	$P < 0.01$

Table 4.1 (continued)

Reference	Description of exposed and controls	Exposure levels	Cytogenetic/genotoxic end-point	Response in exposed	Response in controls	Comments
Peters *et al.* (2008) the Netherlands	Workers (n = 116; 45 smokers, 71 non-smokers) in the Dutch rubber-manufacturing industry, selected on the basis of their function in the production process. Urine and blood were collected	NR		*Weekday samples:*	*Sunday samples:*	
			a) Hydroxypyrene in urine (result for non-smokers)	0.15–0.19 µmol/mol creatinine	0.12 µmol/mol creatinine	$P < 0.0001$
			b) Mutagenic activity in urine (revertants/g creatinine) of workers in compounding and mixing	10 511	6522	$P < 0.05$
			c) DNA adducts in urothelial cells and in peripheral blood monocytes	Increased compared with control		
Musak *et al.* (2008) Czech Republic	Workers in a tyre plant (n = 177; 69 smokers) and 172 controls (49 smokers)	Personal samplers worn in breathing zone. Average BD level in the mixing department was 2.6 ± 0.2 mg/m^3	Chromosomal aberrations (per 100 metaphases)	2.5 ± 1.8	1.7 ± 1.2	$P = 0.055$
Wickliffe *et al.* (2009) Texas, USA	Workers in a BD rubber plant (see Ward *et al.*, 2001 above)	Current exposures: mean 93.5 ppb, median 2.5 ppb	*HPRT* mutant analysis in lymphocytes	Current, low, exposures to butadiene in this plant do not seem to increase the *HPRT* mutant frequency. However, older workers showed increased *HPRT* mutant frequencies, likely due to previous chronic exposure to higher levels of butadiene.		

BD, styrene-butadiene; h, hour or hours; *HPRT,* hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase; mo, month or months; MN, micronucleus; NR, not reported; NS, not significant; PCD, premature chromosome condensation; SCE: Sister-chromatid exchange; SD standard deviation; SE standard error; vs, versus; yr, year or years

cancer hazards in the rubber-manufacturing industry to exposure to specific chemicals.

Table 4.1 presents a list of bio-monitoring studies and cytogenetic assays among workers in the rubber-manufacturing industry in various countries and at different times. These studies have focused on analysis of chromosomal aberrations, sister-chromatid exchange, micronucleus formation, premature chromosome condensation, DNA breakage, DNA-adduct formation, mutagenicity in urine, and mutation in the *HPRT* gene. For each of these endpoints, in most studies a positive response has been observed in exposed workers compared with non-exposed controls. It is noted that the studies listed in Table 4.1 span a period of approximately 25 years.

The multiple genetic and cytogenetic effects observed among workers employed in the rubber-manufacturing industry provide strong evidence to support genotoxicity as one mechanism for the observed increase in cancer risk. However, due to the complexity and changing nature of the exposure mixture and the potential interactions between exposures in this industry, other mechanisms are also likely to play a role.

While it is clear that exposures to some agents in the rubber-manufacturing industry have been reduced over time, the outcome of recent cytogenetic studies continues to raise concerns about cancer risks.

5. Evaluation

There is *sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of occupational exposures in the rubber-manufacturing industry. Occupational exposures in the rubber-manufacturing industry cause leukaemia, lymphoma, and cancers of the urinary bladder, lung, and stomach.

lso, a positive association has been observed between occupational exposures in the rubber-manufacturing industry and cancers of the prostate, oesophagus, and larynx.

No data in experimental animals with relevance to the rubber-manufacturing industry were available to the Working Group.

The multiple genetic and cytogenetic effects observed among workers employed in the rubber-manufacturing industry provide strong evidence to support genotoxicity as one mechanism for the observed increase in cancer risks. However, due to the complexity and changing nature of the exposure mixture and the potential interactions between exposures in the rubber-manufacturing industry, other mechanisms are also likely to play a role. While it is clear that exposure to some agents in the rubber-manufacturing industry has been reduced over time, the results of recent cytogenetic studies continue to raise concerns about cancer risks.

Occupational exposures in the rubber-manufacturing industry are *carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).*

References

Alder N, Fenty J, Warren F *et al.* (2006). Meta-analysis of mortality and cancer incidence among workers in the synthetic rubber-producing industry. *Am J Epidemiol*, 164: 405–420. doi:10.1093/aje/kwj252 PMID:16873420

Ammenheuser MM, Bechtold WE, Abdel-Rahman SZ *et al.* (2001). Assessment of 1,3-butadiene exposure in polymer production workers using HPRT mutations in lymphocytes as a biomarker. *Environ Health Perspect*, 109: 1249–1255. doi:10.2307/3454747 PMID:11748032

Baxter PJ, Werner JB (1980) *Mortality in the British Rubber Industries 1967–76*, London, Her Majesty's Stationery Office

Bernardinelli L, de Marco R, Tinelli C (1987). Cancer mortality in an Italian rubber factory. *Br J Ind Med*, 44: 187–191. PMID:3470049

Blum S, Arp EW Jr, Smith AH, Tyroler HA (1979*). Stomach cancer among rubber workers an epidemiologic investigation.* In: *Dusts and Diseases.* Park Forest South, IL: Pathotox Publishers, pp. 325–334

Borak J, Slade MD, Russi M (2005). Risks of brain tumors in rubber workers: a metaanalysis. *J Occup Environ Med*, 47: 294–298. doi:10.1097/01.jom.0000155715.08657.a2 PMID:15761326

Carlo GL, Jablinske MR, Lee NL *et al.* (1993). Reduced mortality among workers at a rubber plant. *J Occup*

Med, 35: 611–616. doi:10.1097/00043764-199306000-00019 PMID:8331443

Case RAM & Hosker ME (1954). Tumour of the urinary bladder as an occupational disease in the rubber industry in England and Wales. *Br J Prev Soc Med*, 8: 39–50. PMID:13160351

Case RAM, Hosker ME, McDONALD DB, Pearson JT (1954). Tumours of the urinary bladder in workmen engaged in the manufacture and use of certain dyestuff intermediates in the British chemical industry. I. The role of aniline, benzidine, alpha-naphthylamine, and beta-naphthylamine. *Br J Ind Med*, 11: 75–104. PMID:13149741

Datta RN, Ingham FAA (2001). *Rubber Additives – Compounding ingredients*. In: *Rubber Technologist's Handbook*. White J, De SK, editors. Shrewsbury, UK: iSmithers Rarpa Publishing

de Vocht F, Burstyn I, Straif K *et al.* (2007). Occupational exposure to NDMA and NMor in the European rubber industry. *J Environ Monit*, 9: 253–259. doi:10.1039/b615472g PMID:17344951

de Vocht F, Sobala W, Wilczynska U *et al.* (2009). Cancer mortality and occupational exposure to aromatic amines and inhalable aerosols in rubber tire manufacturing in Poland. *Cancer Epidemiol*, 33: 94–102. doi:10.1016/j.canep.2009.06.013 PMID:19679054

de Vocht F, Straif K, Szeszenia-Dabrowska N *et al.* (2005). A database of exposures in the rubber manufacturing industry: design and quality control. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 49: 691–701. doi:10.1093/annhyg/mei035 PMID:16126766

de Vocht F, Vermeulen R, Burstyn I *et al.*on behalf ofEU-EXASRUB consortium (2008). Exposure to inhalable dust and its cyclohexane soluble fraction since the 1970s in the rubber manufacturing industry in the European Union. *Occup Environ Med*, 65: 384–391. doi:10.1136/oem.2007.034470 PMID:17928385

Degrassi F, Fabri G, Palitti F *et al.* (1984). Biological monitoring of workers in the rubber industry. I. Chromosomal aberrations and sister-chromatid exchanges in lymphocytes of vulcanizers. *Mutat Res*, 138: 99–103. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(84)90091-0 PMID:6493265

Delzell E & Monson RR (1982). Mortality among rubber workers: V. processing workers. *J Occup Med*, 24: 539–545. PMID:7119914

Delzell E & Monson RR (1984a). Mortality among rubber workers: VIII. Industrial products workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 6: 273–279. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700060405 PMID:6496478

Delzell E & Monson RR (1984b). Mortality among rubber workers: VII. Aerospace workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 6: 265–271. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700060404 PMID:6496477

Delzell E & Monson RR (1985a). Mortality among rubber workers: IX. Curing workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 8: 537–544. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700080605 PMID:4073051

Delzell E & Monson RR (1985b). Mortality among rubber workers: X. Reclaim workers. *Am J Ind Med*, 7: 307–313. doi:10.1002/ajim.4700070406 PMID:3993647

Dost A, Straughan J, Sorahan T (2007). A cohort mortality and cancer incidence survey of recent entrants (1982–91) to the UK rubber industry: findings for 1983–2004. *Occup Med (Lond)*, 57: 186–190. doi:10.1093/occmed/kql171 PMID:17229717

Dost AA, Redman D, Cox G (2000). Exposure to rubber fume and rubber process dust in the general rubber goods, tyre manufacturing and retread industries. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 44: 329–342. doi:10.1016/S0003-4878(99)00110-6 PMID:10930497

Gustavsson P, Hogstedt C, Holmberg B (1986). Mortality and incidence of cancer among Swedish rubber workers, 1952–1981. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 12: 538–544. PMID:3823802

Hema Prasad M, Pushpavathi K, Reddy PP (1986). Cytogenetic damage in lymphocytes of rubber industry workers. *Environ Res*, 40: 199–201. doi:10.1016/S0013-9351(86)80096-2 PMID:3709495

Hines CJ, Nilsen Hopf NB, Deddens JA *et al.* (2009). Urinary phthalate metabolite concentrations among workers in selected industries: a pilot biomonitoring study. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 53: 1–17. PMID:18948546

IARC (1982). The rubber industry. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risk Chem Hum*, 28: 1–486. PMID:6957378

IARC (1987). Overall evaluations of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC Monographs volumes 1 to 42. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum Suppl*, 7: 1–440. PMID:3482203

Iavicoli I & Carelli G (2006). Evaluation of occupational exposure to N-nitrosamines in a rubber-manufacturing industry. *J Occup Environ Med*, 48: 195–198. doi:10.1097/01.jom.0000200938.96781.64 PMID:16474268

Jönsson LS, Lindh CH, Bergendorf U *et al.* (2009). N-nitrosamines in the southern Swedish rubber industries - exposure, health effects, and immunologic markers. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 35: 203–211. PMID:19404559

Kogevinas M, Sala M, Boffetta P *et al.* (1998). Cancer risk in the rubber industry: a review of the recent epidemiological evidence. *Occup Environ Med*, 55: 1–12. doi:10.1136/oem.55.1.1 PMID:9536156

Kromhout H, Swuste P, Boleij JS (1994). Empirical modelling of chemical exposure in the rubber-manufacturing industry. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 38: 3–22. doi:10.1093/annhyg/38.1.3 PMID:8161092

Laffon B, Teixeira JP, Silva S *et al.* (2006). Assessment of occupational genotoxic risk in the production of rubber tyres. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 50: 583–592. doi:10.1093/annhyg/mel036 PMID:16799159

Li K & Yu S (2002a). Leukemia mortality and occupational exposure to rubber: a nested case-control study. *Int J*

Hyg Environ Health, 204: 317–321. doi:10.1078/1438-4639-00104 PMID:11885354

Li K & Yu S (2002b). Mortality in a chinese rubber factory; a prospective cohort study. *J Occup Health*, 44: 76–82. doi:10.1539/joh.44.76

Ma H, Wood TG, Ammenheuser MM *et al.* (2000). Molecular analysis of hprt mutant lymphocytes from 1, 3-butadiene-exposed workers. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 36: 59–71. doi:10.1002/1098-2280(2000)36:1<59::AID-EM9>3.0.CO;2-# PMID:10918361

Major J, Jakab MG, Tompa A (1999). The frequency of induced premature centromere division in human populations occupationally exposed to genotoxic chemicals. *Mutat Res*, 445: 241–249. PMID:10575433

McLean D, Mannetje A, Dryson E *et al.* (2009). Leukaemia and occupation: a New Zealand Cancer Registry-based case-control Study. *Int J Epidemiol*, 38: 594–606. doi:10.1093/ije/dyn220 PMID:18953052

McMichael AJ, Spirtas R, Gamble JF, Tousey PM (1976). Mortality among rubber workers: Relationship to specific jobs. *J Occup Med*, 18: 178–185. doi:10.1097/00043764-197603000-00012 PMID:1255279

Moretti M, Villarini M, Scassellati-Sforzolini G *et al.* (1996). Biological monitoring of genotoxic hazard in workers of the rubber industry. *Environ Health Perspect*, 104: Suppl 3543–545. doi:10.2307/3432820 PMID:8781380

Mundt KA, Weiland SK, Bucher AM *et al.* (1999). An occupational cohort mortality study of women in the German rubber industry: 1976 to 1991. *J Occup Environ Med*, 41: 807–812. doi:10.1097/00043764-199909000-00013 PMID:10491797

Musak L, Soucek P, Vodickova L *et al.* (2008). Chromosomal aberrations in tire plant workers and interaction with polymorphisms of biotransformation and DNA repair genes. *Mutat Res*, 641: 36–42. PMID:18394656

Negri E, Piolatto G, Pira E *et al.* (1989). Cancer mortality in a northern Italian cohort of rubber workers. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 624–628. PMID:2789965

Neves H, Moncau JE, Kaufmann PR, Wünsch Filho V (2006). Cancer mortality among rubber industry workers in São Paulo, Brazil *Rev Saude Publica*, 40: 271–279. PMID:16583038

Norseth T, Andersen A, Giltvedt J (1983). Cancer incidence in the rubber industry in Norway. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 9: Suppl 269–71. PMID:6635618

Oury B, Limasset JC, Protois JC (1997). Assessment of exposure to carcinogenic N-nitrosamines in the rubber industry. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 70: 261–271. doi:10.1007/s004200050217 PMID:9342627

Parkes HG, Veys CA, Waterhouse JAH, Peters AT (1982). Cancer mortality in the British rubber industry. *Br J Ind Med*, 39: 209–220. PMID:7093147

Peters S, Talaska G, Jönsson BA *et al.* (2008). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon exposure, urinary mutagenicity, and DNA adducts in rubber manufacturing workers. *Cancer Epidemiol, Biomarkers Prev*, 17: 1452–1459. doi:10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-07-2777

Pohlabeln H, Boffetta P, Ahrens W *et al.* (2000). Occupational risks for lung cancer among nonsmokers. *Epidemiology*, 11: 532–538. doi:10.1097/00001648-200009000-00008 PMID:10955405

Pronk A, Coble J, Ji BT *et al.* (2009). Occupational risk of lung cancer among lifetime non-smoking women in Shanghai, China. *Occup Environ Med*, 66: 672–678. doi:10.1136/oem.2008.043695 PMID:19625285

Sasiadek M (1992). Cytogenetic studies of workers from the rubber industry. *Mutat Res*, 279: 195–198. doi:10.1016/0165-1218(92)90066-9 PMID:1377334

Sasiadek M (1993). Sister-chromatid exchanges and cell-cycle kinetics in the lymphocytes of workers occupationally exposed to a chemical mixture in the tyre industry. *Mutat Res*, 302: 197–200. doi:10.1016/0165-7992(93)90104-4 PMID:7688857

Solionova LG & Smulevich VB (1993). Mortality and cancer incidence in a cohort of rubber workers in Moscow. *Scand J Work Environ Health*, 19: 96–101. PMID:8316785

Somorovská M, Szabová E, Vodicka P *et al.* (1999). Biomonitoring of genotoxic risk in workers in a rubber factory: comparison of the Comet assay with cytogenetic methods and immunology. *Mutat Res*, 445: 181–192. PMID:10575429

Sorahan T, Parkes HG, Veys CA *et al.* (1989). Mortality in the British rubber industry 1946–85. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 1–10. PMID:2920137

Stewart RE, Dennis LK, Dawson DV, Resnick MI (1999). A meta-analysis of risk estimates for prostate cancer related to tire and rubber manufacturing operations. *J Occup Environ Med*, 41: 1079–1084. doi:10.1097/00043764-199912000-00012 PMID:10609228

Straif K, Chambless L, Weiland SK *et al.* (1999). Occupational risk factors for mortality from stomach and lung cancer among rubber workers: an analysis using internal controls and refined exposure assessment. *Int J Epidemiol*, 28: 1037–1043. doi:10.1093/ije/28.6.1037 PMID:10661645

Straif K, Keil U, Taeger D *et al.* (2000a). Exposure to nitrosamines, carbon black, asbestos, and talc and mortality from stomach, lung, and laryngeal cancer in a cohort of rubber workers. *Am J Epidemiol*, 152: 297–306. doi:10.1093/aje/152.4.297 PMID:10968374

Straif K, Weiland SK, Bungers M *et al.* (2000b). Exposure to high concentrations of nitrosamines and cancer mortality among a cohort of rubber workers. *Occup Environ Med*, 57: 180–187. doi:10.1136/oem.57.3.180 PMID:10810100

Straif K, Weiland SK, Werner B *et al.* (1998). Workplace risk factors for cancer in the German rubber industry: Part 2. Mortality from non-respiratory cancers. *Occup Environ Med*, 55: 325–332. doi:10.1136/oem.55.5.325 PMID:9764110

Szeszenia-Dabrowska N, Wilczyńska U, Kaczmarek T, Szymczak W (1991). Cancer mortality among male workers in the Polish rubber industry. *Pol J Occup Med Environ Health*, 4: 149–157. PMID:1799640

Szymczak W, Sobala W, Wilczyńska U, Szeszenia-Dabrowska N (2003). Assessment of risk of death due to malignant neoplasms induced by occupational exposure in a rubber footwear plant *Med Pr*, 54: 221–228. PMID:14669574

Vermeulen R, de Hartog J, Swuste P, Kromhout H (2000). Trends in exposure to inhalable particulate and dermal contamination in the rubber manufacturing industry: effectiveness of control measures implemented over a nine-year period. *Ann Occup Hyg*, 44: 343–354. doi:10.1016/S0003-4878(00)00020-X PMID:10930498

Vermeulen R, Jönsson BA, Lindh CH, Kromhout H (2005). Biological monitoring of carbon disulphide and phthalate exposure in the contemporary rubber industry. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*, 78: 663–669. doi:10.1007/s00420-005-0017-z PMID:16041606

Vermeulen R, Talaska G, Schumann B *et al.* (2002). Urothelial cell DNA adducts in rubber workers. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 39: 306–313. doi:10.1002/em.10078 PMID:12112382

Veys C (1982). *The rubber industry: reflections on health risks*. In: *Current Approaches to Occupational Health* Vol. 2. Gardner AW, editor. Bristol, UK: Wright PSG, pp. 1–29.

Wang HW, You XJ, Qu YH *et al.* (1984). Investigation of cancer epidemiology and study of carcinogenic agents in the Shanghai Rubber Industry. *Cancer Res*, 44: 3101–3105. PMID:6722825

Ward JB Jr, Abdel-Rahman SZ, Henderson RF *et al.* (2001). Assessment of butadiene exposure in synthetic rubber manufacturing workers in Texas using frequencies of hprt mutant lymphocytes as a biomarker. *Chem Biol Interact*, 135–136: 465–483. doi:10.1016/S0009-2797(01)00183-1 PMID:11397407

Ward JB Jr, Ammenheuser MM, Whorton EB Jr *et al.* (1996). Biological monitoring for mutagenic effects of occupational exposure to butadiene. *Toxicology*, 113: 84–90. doi:10.1016/0300-483X(96)03431-2 PMID:8901886

Weiland SK, Mundt KA, Keil U *et al.* (1996). Cancer mortality among workers in the German rubber industry: 1981–91. *Occup Environ Med*, 53: 289–298. doi:10.1136/oem.53.5.289 PMID:8673175

Wickliffe JK, Ammenheuser MM, Adler PJ *et al.* (2009). Evaluation of frequencies of HPRT mutant lymphocytes in butadiene polymer workers in a Southeast Texas facility. *Environ Mol Mutagen*, 50: 82–87. doi:10.1002/em.20437 PMID:19107895

Wilczyńska U, Szadkowska-Stańczyk I, Szeszenia-Dabrowska N *et al.* (2001). Cancer mortality in rubber tire workers in Poland. *Int J Occup Med Environ Health*, 14: 115–125. PMID:11548060

Zeegers MP, Friesema IH, Goldbohm RA, van den Brandt PA (2004). A prospective study of occupation and prostate cancer risk. *J Occup Environ Med*, 46: 271–279. doi:10.1097/01.jom.0000116961.48464.6b PMID:15091290

Zeka A, Mannetje A, Zaridze D *et al.* (2006). Lung cancer and occupation in nonsmokers: a multicenter case-control study in Europe. *Epidemiology*, 17: 615–623. doi:10.1097/01.ede.0000239582.92495.b5 PMID:17068414

Zhang ZF, Yu SZ, Li WX, Choi BC (1989). Smoking, occupational exposure to rubber, and lung cancer. *Br J Ind Med*, 46: 12–15. PMID:2920138

Zhu CQ, Lam TH, Jiang CQ *et al.* (2000). Increased lymphocyte DNA strand breaks in rubber workers. *Mutat Res*, 470: 201–209. PMID:11027975

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

4-ABP	4-aminobiphenyl
2-NA	2-naphthylamine
AIDS	acquired immune-deficiency syndrome
ALL	acute lymphocytic leukemia
ANLL	acute nonlymphocytic leukemia
AhR	aryl hydrocarbon receptor
ASCR	Association of Swiss Cancer Registries
ASL	angiosarcoma of the liver
ATSDR	Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry
B[*a*]P	benzo[*a*]pyrene
BCME	bis(chloromethyl)ether
b.p.	boiling point
BSF	benzene-soluble fraction
BSM	benzene-soluble materials
bw	body weight
CA	chromosomal aberration
CAS	Chemical Abstracts Service (of the American Chemical Society)
CI	confidence interval
CMME	chloromethyl methyl ether
CNS	central nervous system
CPTV	coal-tar pitch volatiles
CSF	cyclohexane-soluble fraction
CYP	cytochrome P450
DCM	dichloromethane
DEHP	diethylhexylphthalate
DHBMA	1,2-dihydroxybutyl mercapturic acid
DLC	dioxin-like compound
DMSO	dimethyl sulfoxide
EH	epoxide hydrolase
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency (USA)
EU	European Union
EXASRUB	Improved Exposure Assessment for Prospective Cohort Studies and Exposure Control in the Rubber-Manufacturing Industry
FISH	fluorescence *in situ* hybridisation
GST	glutathione *S*-transferase
HCC	hepatocellular carcinoma

HPRT	hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase
HRR	hazard rate ratio
IH	industrial hygiene
IP	Institute for Petroleum
IRR	incidence rate ratio
ISCO	International Standard Classification of Occupations
ISIC	International Standard Industrial Classification
MBT	2-mercaptobenzothiazole
MBS	morpholinomercaptobenzothiazole
MDS	myelodysplastic syndromes
mEH	microsomal epoxide hydrolase
MGP	manufactured gas plant residues
MHBMA	monohydroxy-3-butenyl mercapturic acid
MHBVal	*N*-(2-hydroxy-3-butenyl)valine
MN	micro nucleus
MOCA	4,4′-methylene-bis-(2-chloroaniline)
MPD	myeloproliferative disorder
MT	metallothionein
NAT	*N*-acetyltransferase
NACE	Nomenclature Générale des Activités Économiques dans les Communautés
NDBA	*N*-nitrosodibutylamine
NDEA	*N*-nitrosodiethylamine
NDMA	*N*-nitrosodimethylamine
NDPA	*N*-nitrosodiphenylamine
NG	not given
NIOSH	National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (USA)
NMor	*N*-nitrosomorpholine
NPIP	*N*-nitrosopiperidine
NTP	National Toxicology Program (USA)
OR	odds ratio
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration (USA)
PAH	polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons
PARP	poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase
PBNA	phenyl-β-naphthylamine
PCB	polychlorobiphenyl
PCDD	polychlorinated dibenzo-*para*-dioxins
PCP	pentachlorophenol
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PeCDF	2,3,4,7,8-Pentachlorodibenzofuran
PKC	protein kinase C
POG	pediatric oncology group
ppb	parts per billion
ppm	parts per million
ppt	parts per trillion
PVC	polyvinyl chloride
PyrVal	*N,N*-(2,3-dihydroxy-1,4-butadiyl) valine
RDD	random digit dialling
ROS	reactive oxygen species

RR	relative risk
SCE	sister chromatid exchange
SD	standard deviation
SE	standard error
SES	socioeconomic status
SIC	Standard Industrial Classification
SOC	Standard Occupational Classification
SIR	standardised incidence ratio
SMR	standardised mortality ratio
SRR	standardized rate ratio
TCDD	tetrachlorodibenzo-*p*-dioxin
TCE	trichloroethylene
TEF	toxicity equivalence factor
TEQ	toxic equivalence quotient: unit of measurement for TCDD-like compounds that is defined as the amount of TCDD that would produce the same toxicity as a mixture of TCDD-like compounds
THBVal	*N*-(2,3,4-trihydroxybutyl)valine
TWA	time-weighted average
USA	United States of America
VA	Veterans Administration
VC	vinyl chloride
VCM	vinyl chloride monomer
VOC	volatile organic compound
wk	week
yr	year
ZDEC	zinc-diethyldithiocarbamate

CUMULATIVE CROSS INDEX TO *IARC MONOGRAPHS*

The volume, page and year of publication are given. References to corrigenda are given in parentheses.

A

A-α-C . . . . . 40, 245 (1986); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
Acenaphthene 92, 35 (2010)
Acepyrene 92, 35 (2010)
Acetaldehyde . . . . . 36, 101 (1985) (corr. 42, 263); Suppl. 7, 77 (1987); 71, 319 (1999)
Acetaldehyde associated with the consumption of alcoholic beverages 100E, 377 (2012)
Acetaldehyde formylmethylhydrazone (see Gyromitrin)
Acetamide . . . . . 7, 197 (1974); Suppl. 7, 56, 389 (1987); 71, 1211 (1999)
Acetaminophen (see Paracetamol)
Aciclovir 76, 47 (2000)
Acid mists (see Sulfuric acid and other strong inorganic acids, occupational exposures to mists and vapours from)
Acridine orange . . . . . 16, 145 (1978); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
Acriflavinium chloride . . . . . 13, 31 (1977); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
Acrolein . . . . . 19, 479 (1979); 36, 133 (1985); Suppl. 7, 78 (1987); 63, 337 (1995) (corr. 65, 549)
Acrylamide . . . . . 39, 41 (1986); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987); 60, 389 (1994)
Acrylic acid . . . . . 19, 47 (1979); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987); 71, 1223 (1999)
Acrylic fibres . . . . . 19, 86 (1979); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
Acrylonitrile . . . . . 19, 73 (1979); Suppl. 7, 79 (1987); 71, 43 (1999)
Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene copolymers . . . . . 19, 91 (1979); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
Actinolite (see Asbestos)
Actinomycin D (see also Actinomycins) . . . . . Suppl. 7, 80 (1987)
Actinomycins . . . . . 10, 29 (1976) (corr. 42, 255)
Adriamycin . . . . . 10, 43 (1976); Suppl. 7, 82 (1987)
AF-2 . . . . . 31, 47 (1983); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
Aflatoxins . . . . . 1, 145 (1972) (corr. 42, 251); 10, 51 (1976); Suppl. 7, 83 (1987); 56, 245 (1993); 82, 171 (2002); 100F, 225 (2012)
Aflatoxin B_1 (see Aflatoxins)

Aflatoxin B_2 (see Aflatoxins)
Aflatoxin G_1 (see Aflatoxins)
Aflatoxin G_2 (see Aflatoxins)
Aflatoxin M_1 (see Aflatoxins)
Agaritine . . . . . 31, 63 (1983); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
Alcohol consumption 44 (1988); 96, 51 (2010); 100E, 373 (2012)
Aldicarb 53, 93 (1991)
Aldrin . . . . . 5, 25 (1974); Suppl. 7, 88 (1987)
Allyl chloride . . . . . 36, 39 (1985); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987); 71, 1231 (1999)
Allyl isothiocyanate . . . . . 36, 55 (1985); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987); 73, 37 (1999)
Allyl isovalerate . . . . . 36, 69 (1985); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987); 71, 1241 (1999)
Aluminium production . . . . . 34, 37 (1984); Suppl. 7, 89 (1987); 92, 35 (2010); 100F, 215 (2012)
Amaranth . . . . . 8, 41 (1975); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
5-Aminoacenaphthene . . . . . 16, 243 (1978); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
2-Aminoanthraquinone . . . . . 27, 191 (1982); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
para-Aminoazobenzene . . . . . 8, 53 (1975); Suppl. 7, 56, 390 (1987)
ortho-Aminoazotoluene . . . . . 8, 61 (1975) (corr. 42, 254); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
para-Aminobenzoic acid . . . . . 16, 249 (1978); Suppl. 7, 56 (1987)
4-Aminobiphenyl . . . . . 1, 74 (1972) (corr. 42, 251); Suppl. 7, 91 (1987); 100F, 41 (2012)
2-Amino-3,4-dimethylimidazo[4,5-*f*]quinoline (see MeIQ)
2-Amino-3,8-dimethylimidazo[4,5-*f*]quinoxaline (see MeIQx)
3-Amino-1,4-dimethyl-5H-pyrido[4,3-*b*]indole (see Trp-P-1)
2-Aminodipyrido[1,2-*a*:3′,2′-*d*]imidazole (see Glu-P-2)
1-Amino-2-methylanthraquinone . . . . . 27, 199 (1982); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
2-Amino-3-methylimidazo[4,5-*f*]quinoline (see IQ)
2-Amino-6-methyldipyrido[1,2-*a*:3′,2′-*d*]imidazole (see Glu-P-1)
2-Amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine (see PhIP)
2-Amino-3-methyl-9*H*-pyrido[2,3-*b*]indole (see MeA-α-C)
3-Amino-1-methyl-5*H*-pyrido[4,3-*b*]indole (see Trp-P-2)
2-Amino-5-(5-nitro-2-furyl)-1,3,4-thiadiazole . . . . . 7, 143 (1974); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
2-Amino-4-nitrophenol 57, 167 (1993)
2-Amino-5-nitrophenol 57, 177 (1993)
4-Amino-2-nitrophenol . . . . . 16, 43 (1978); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
2-Amino-5-nitrothiazole . . . . . 31, 71 (1983); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
2-Amino-9*H*-pyrido[2,3-*b*]indole (see A-α-C)
11-Aminoundecanoic acid . . . . . 39, 239 (1986); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
Amitrole . . . . . 7, 31 (1974); 41, 293 (1986) (corr. 52, 513; Suppl. 7, 92 (1987); 79, 381 (2001)
Ammonium potassium selenide (see Selenium and selenium compounds)
Amorphous silica (see also Silica) . . . . . 42, 39 (1987); Suppl. 7, 341 (1987); 68, 41 (1997) (corr. 81, 383)
Amosite (see Asbestos)
Ampicillin 50, 153 (1990)
Amsacrine 76, 317 (2000)
Anabolic steroids (see Androgenic (anabolic) steroids)
Anaesthetics, volatile . . . . . 11, 285 (1976); Suppl. 7, 93 (1987)
Analgesic mixtures containing phenacetin
(see also Phenacetin) . . . . . Suppl. 7, 310 (1987); 100A, 377 (2012)

Androgenic (anabolic) steroids ..... Suppl. 7, 96 (1987)
Angelicin and some synthetic derivatives (see also Angelicins) 40, 291 (1986)
Angelicin plus ultraviolet radiation
(see also Angelicin and some synthetic derivatives) ..... Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
Angelicins ..... Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
Aniline ..... 4, 27 (1974) (corr. 42, 252); 27, 39 (1982); Suppl. 7, 99 (1987)
ortho-Anisidine ..... 27, 63 (1982); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987); 73, 49 (1999)
para-Anisidine ..... 27, 65 (1982); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
Anthanthrene ..... 32, 95 (1983); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Anthophyllite (see Asbestos)
Anthracene ..... 32, 105 (1983); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Anthranilic acid ..... 16, 265 (1978); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
Anthraquinones 82, 129 (2002)
Antimony trioxide 47, 291 (1989)
Antimony trisulfide 47, 291 (1989)
ANTU (see 1-Naphthylthiourea)
Apholate ..... 9, 31 (1975); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
para-Aramid fibrils 68, 409 (1997)
Aramite® ..... 5, 39 (1974); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
Areca nut (see also Betel quid) 85, 39 (2004); 100E, 333 (2012)
Aristolochia species (see also Traditional herbal medicines) 82, 69 (2002); 100A, 347 (2012)
Aristolochic acids 82, 69 (2002); 100A, 347 (2012)
Arsanilic acid (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Arsenic and arsenic compounds .1, 41 (1972); 2, 48 (1973); 23, 39 (1980); Suppl. 7, 100 (1987); 100C, 41 (2012)
Arsenic in drinking-water 84, 39 (2004)
Arsenic pentoxide (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Arsenic trioxide (see Arsenic in drinking-water)
Arsenic trisulfide (see Arsenic in drinking-water)
Arsine (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Asbestos 2, 17 (1973) (corr. 42, 252); 14 (1977) (corr. 42, 256); Suppl. 7, 106 (1987) (corr. 45, 283); 100C, 219 (2012)
Atrazine 53, 441 (1991); 73, 59 (1999)
Attapulgite (see Palygorskite)
Auramine (technical-grade) ..... 1, 69 (1972) (corr. 42, 251); Suppl. 7, 118 (1987); 100F, 101 (2012)
Auramine, manufacture of
(see also Auramine, technical-grade) ..... Suppl. 7, 118 (1987); 100F, 101 (2012)
Aurothioglucose ..... 13, 39 (1977); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
Azacitidine ..... 26, 37 (1981); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987); 50, 47 (1990)
5-Azacytidine (see Azacitidine)
Azaserine ..... 10, 73 (1976) (corr. 42, 255); Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
Azathioprine ..... 26, 47 (1981); Suppl. 7, 119 (1987); 100A, 319 (2012)
Aziridine ..... 9, 37 (1975); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 71, 337 (1999)
2-(1-Aziridinyl)ethanol ..... 9, 47 (1975); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987)
Aziridyl benzoquinone ..... 9, 51 (1975); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987)
Azobenzene ..... 8, 75 (1975); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987)

AZT (see Zidovudine)

B

Barium chromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Basic chromic sulfate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
BCNU (see Bischloroethyl nitrosourea)
11*H*-Benz[*bc*]aceanthrylene 92, 35 (2010)
Benz[*j*]aceanthrylene 92, 35 (2010)
Benz[*l*]aceanthrylene 92, 35 (2010)
Benz[*a*]acridine ..... 32, 123 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987)
Benz[*c*]acridine ..... 3, 241 (1973); 32, 129 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987)
Benzal chloride (see also α-Chlorinated toluenes and benzoyl chloride) ..... 29, 65 (1982); Suppl. 7, 148 (1987); 71, 453 (1999)
Benz[*a*]anthracene ..... 3, 45 (1973); 32, 135 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzene ..... 7, 203 (1974) (corr. 42, 254); 29, 93, 391 (1982); Suppl. 7, 120 (1987); 100F, 249 (2012)
Benzidine ..... 1, 80 (1972); 29, 149, 391 (1982); Suppl. 7, 123 (1987); 100F, 53 (2012)
Benzidine-based dyes ..... Suppl. 7, 125 (1987); 100F, 65 (2012)
Benzo[*b*]chrysene 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*g*]chrysene 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*a*]fluoranthene 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*b*]fluoranthene ..... 3, 69 (1973); 32, 147 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*j*]fluoranthene ..... 3, 82 (1973); 32, 155 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*k*]fluoranthene ..... 32, 163 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*ghi*]fluoranthene ..... 32, 171 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*a*]fluorene ..... 32, 177 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*b*]fluorene ..... 32, 183 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*c*]fluorene ..... 32, 189 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzofuran 63, 431 (1995)
Benzo[*ghi*]perylene ..... 32, 195 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*c*]phenanthrene ..... 32, 205 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Benzo[*a*]pyrene 3, 91 (1973); 32, 211 (1983); (corr. 68, 477); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010); 100F, 111 (2012)
Benzo[*e*]pyrene ..... 3, 137 (1973); 32, 225 (1983); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
1,4-Benzoquinone (see *para*-Quinone)
1,4-Benzoquinone dioxime ..... 29, 185 (1982); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 71, 1251 (1999)
Benzotrichloride (see also α-Chlorinated toluenes and benzoyl chloride) ..... 29, 73 (1982); Suppl. 7, 148 (1987); 71, 453 (1999)
Benzoyl chloride (see also α-Chlorinated toluenes and benzoyl chloride) ..... 29, 83 (1982) (corr. 42, 261); Suppl. 7, 126 (1987); 71, 453 (1999)
Benzoyl peroxide ..... 36, 267 (1985); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 71, 345 (1999)
Benzyl acetate ..... 40, 109 (1986); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 71, 1255 (1999)
Benzyl chloride (see also α-Chlorinated toluenes and benzoyl chloride) ..... 11, 217 (1976) (corr. 42, 256); 29, 49 (1982); Suppl. 7, 148 (1987); 71, 453 (1999)

Benzyl violet 4B . . . . . 16, 153 (1978); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987)
Bertrandite (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium and beryllium compounds. . . 1, 17 (1972); 23, 143 (1980) (corr. 42, 260); Suppl. 7, 127 (1987); 58, 41 (1993); 100C, 95 (2012)
Beryllium acetate (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium acetate, basic (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium-aluminium alloy (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium carbonate (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium chloride (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium-copper alloy (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium-copper-cobalt alloy (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium fluoride (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium hydroxide (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium-nickel alloy (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium oxide (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium phosphate (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium silicate (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryllium sulfate (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Beryl ore (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Betel quid with added tobacco . . . . 37, 141 (1985); Suppl. 7, 128 (1987); 85, 39 (2004); 100E, 333 (2012)
Betel quid without added tobacco . 37, 141 (1985); Suppl. 7, 128 (1987); 85, 39 (2004); 100E, 333 (2012)
BHA (see Butylated hydroxyanisole)
BHT (see Butylated hydroxytoluene)
Biomass fuel (primarily wood),
indoor emissions from household combustion of 95, 41 (2010)
Bis(1-aziridinyl)morpholinophosphine sulfide . . . . . 9, 55 (1975); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987)
2,2-Bis(bromomethyl)propane-1,3-diol. 77, 455 (2000)
Bis(2-chloroethyl)ether . . . . . 9, 117 (1975); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 71, 1265 (1999)
N,*N*-Bis(2-chloroethyl)-2-naphthylamine . . 4, 119 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 130 (1987); 100A, 333 (2012)
Bischloroethyl nitrosourea
(see also Chloroethyl nitrosoureas) . . . . . 26, 79 (1981); Suppl. 7, 150 (1987)
1,2-Bis(chloromethoxy)ethane . . . . . 15, 31 (1977); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 71, 1271 (1999)
1,4-Bis(chloromethoxymethyl)benzene . . . . . 15, 37 (1977); Suppl. 7, 58 (1987); 71, 1273 (1999)
Bis(chloromethyl)ether . . . . . 4, 231 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 131 (1987); 100F, 295 (2012)
Bis(2-chloro-1-methylethyl)ether . . . . . 41, 149 (1986); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987); 71, 1275 (1999)
Bis(2,3-epoxycyclopentyl)ether 47, 231 (1989); 71, 1281 (1999)
Bisphenol A diglycidyl ether (see also Glycidyl ethers) 71, 1285 (1999)
Bisulfites (see Sulfur dioxide and some sulfites, bisulfites and metabisulfites)
Bitumens . . . . . 35, 39 (1985); Suppl. 7, 133 (1987)
Bleomycins (see also Etoposide) . . . . . 26, 97 (1981); Suppl. 7, 134 (1987)
Blue VRS . . . . . 16, 163 (1978); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Boot and shoe manufacture and repair. . . . . 25, 249 (1981); Suppl. 7, 232 (1987)
Bracken fern . . . . . 40, 47 (1986); Suppl. 7, 135 (1987)
Brilliant Blue FCF, disodium salt . . . . . 16, 171 (1978) (corr. 42, 257); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Bromochloroacetonitrile

(see also Halogenated acetonitriles) 71, 1291 (1999)
Bromodichloromethane 52, 179 (1991); 71, 1295 (1999)
Bromoethane 52, 299 (1991); 71, 1305 (1999)
Bromoform 52, 213 (1991); 71, 1309 (1999)
Busulfan . . . . . (see 1,4-Butanediol dimethanesulfonate)
1,3-Butadiene . . 39, 155 (1986) (corr. 42, 264); Suppl. 7, 136 (1987); 54, 237 (1992); 71, 109 (1999); 97,45 (2008); 100F, 309 (2012)
1,4-Butanediol dimethanesulfonate. . . . . 4, 247 (1974); Suppl. 7, 137 (1987); 100A, 39 (2012)
2-Butoxyethanol 88, 329
1-*tert*-Butoxypropan-2-ol 88, 415
n-Butyl acrylate . . . . . 39, 67 (1986); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987); 71, 359 (1999)
Butylated hydroxyanisole. . . . . 40, 123 (1986); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Butylated hydroxytoluene . . . . . 40, 161 (1986); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Butyl benzyl phthalate . . . . . 29, 193 (1982) (corr. 42, 261); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987); 73, 115 (1999)
β-Butyrolactone. . . . . 11, 225 (1976); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987); 71, 1317 (1999)
γ-Butyrolactone . . . . . 11, 231 (1976); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987); 71, 367 (1999)

C

Cabinet-making (see Furniture and cabinet-making)
Cadmium acetate (see Cadmium and cadmium compounds)
Cadmium and cadmium compounds 2, 74 (1973); 11, 39 (1976) (corr. 42, 255); Suppl. 7, 139 (1987); 58, 119 (1993); 100C, 121 (2012)
Cadmium chloride (see Cadmium and cadmium compounds)
Cadmium oxide (see Cadmium and cadmium compounds)
Cadmium sulfate (see Cadmium and cadmium compounds)
Cadmium sulfide (see Cadmium and cadmium compounds)
Caffeic acid 56, 115 (1993)
Caffeine. 51, 291 (1991)
Calcium arsenate (see Arsenic in drinking-water)
Calcium carbide production 92, 35 (2010)
Calcium chromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Calcium cyclamate (see Cyclamates)
Calcium saccharin (see Saccharin)
Cantharidin . . . . . 10, 79 (1976); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Caprolactam . . . 19, 115 (1979) (corr. 42, 258); 39, 247 (1986) (corr. 42, 264); Suppl. 7, 59, 390 (1987); 71, 383 (1999)
Captafol 53, 353 (1991)
Captan. . . . . 30, 295 (1983); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Carbaryl . . . . . 12, 37 (1976); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Carbazole . . . . . 32, 239 (1983); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987); 71, 1319 (1999)
3-Carbethoxypsoralen. . . . . 40, 317 (1986); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Carbon black. 3, 22 (1973); 33, 35 (1984); Suppl.7, 142 (1987); 65, 149 (1996); 93, 2010
Carbon electrode manufacture 92, 35 (2010)
Carbon tetrachloride . . . . . 1, 53 (1972); 20, 371 (1979); Suppl. 7, 143 (1987); 71, 401 (1999)

Carmoisine . . . . . 8, 83 (1975); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Carpentry and joinery . . . . . .25, 139 (1981); Suppl. 7, 378 (1987)
Carrageenan . . . . . 10, 181 (1976) (corr. 42, 255); 31, 79 (1983); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Cassia occidentalis (see Traditional herbal medicines)
Catechol . . . . . 15, 155 (1977); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987); 71, 433 (1999)
CCNU (see 1-(2-Chloroethyl)-3-cyclohexyl-1-nitrosourea)
Ceramic fibres (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Chemotherapy, combined, including alkylating agents
(see MOPP and other combined chemotherapy including alkylating agents)
Chimney sweeps and other exposures to soot 92, 35 (2010); 100F, 209 (2012)
Chloral (see also Chloral hydrate) 63, 245 (1995); 84, 317 (2004)
Chloral hydrate 63, 245 (1995); 84, 317 (2004)
Chlorambucil . . . . . .9, 125 (1975); 26, 115 (1981); Suppl. 7, 144 (1987); 100A, 47 (2012)
Chloramine 84, 295 (2004)
Chloramphenicol . . . . . 10, 85 (1976); Suppl. 7, 145 (1987); 50, 169 (1990)
Chlordane (see also Chlordane/Heptachlor) . . . . . .20, 45 (1979) (corr. 42, 258)
Chlordane and Heptachlor . . . . . .Suppl. 7, 146 (1987); 53, 115 (1991); 79, 411 (2001)
Chlordecone . . . . . 20, 67 (1979); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Chlordimeform . . . . . 30, 61 (1983); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Chlorendic acid 48, 45 (1990)
Chlorinated dibenzodioxins (other than TCDD)
(see also Polychlorinated dibenzo-para-dioxins) . . . . . 15, 41 (1977); Suppl. 7, 59 (1987)
Chlorinated drinking-water 52, 45 (1991)
Chlorinated paraffins 48, 55 (1990)
α-Chlorinated toluenes and benzoyl chloride . . . . . .Suppl. 7, 148 (1987); 71, 453 (1999)
Chlormadinone acetate . . . . . .6, 149 (1974); 21, 365 (1979); Suppl. 7, 291, 301 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)
Chlornaphazine (see *N*,*N*-Bis(2-chloroethyl)-2-naphthylamine)
Chloroacetonitrile (see also Halogenated acetonitriles) 71, 1325 (1999)
para-Chloroaniline 57, 305 (1993)
Chlorobenzilate . . . . . .5, 75 (1974); 30, 73 (1983); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987)
Chlorodibromomethane 52, 243 (1991); 71, 1331 (1999)
3-Chloro-4-(dichloromethyl)-5-hydroxy-2(5*H*)-furanone 84, 441 (2004)
Chlorodifluoromethane . . . . . .41, 237 (1986) (corr. 51, 483); Suppl. 7, 149 (1987); 71, 1339 (1999)
Chloroethane 52, 315 (1991); 71, 1345 (1999)
1-(2-Chloroethyl)-3-cyclohexyl-1-nitrosourea
(see also Chloroethyl nitrosoureas) . . . . . .26, 137 (1981) (corr. 42, 260); Suppl. 7, 150 (1987)
1-(2-Chloroethyl)-3-(4-methylcyclohexyl)-1-nitrosourea
(see also Chloroethyl nitrosoureas) . . . . . Suppl. 7, 150 (1987); 100A, 57 (2012)
Chloroethyl nitrosoureas . . . . . .Suppl. 7, 150 (1987)
Chlorofluoromethane . . . . . .41, 229 (1986); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987); 71, 1351 (1999)
Chloroform . . . . . .1, 61 (1972); 20, 401 (1979); Suppl. 7, 152 (1987); 73, 131(1999)
Chloromethyl methyl ether (technical-grade)
(see also Bis(chloromethyl)ether) . . . . . .4, 239 (1974); Suppl. 7, 131 (1987); 100F, 295 (2012)
(4-Chloro-2-methylphenoxy)acetic acid (see MCPA)
1-Chloro-2-methylpropene 63, 315 (1995)
3-Chloro-2-methylpropene 63, 325 (1995)

2-Chloronitrobenzene 65, 263 (1996)
3-Chloronitrobenzene 65, 263 (1996)
4-Chloronitrobenzene 65, 263 (1996)
Chlorophenols (see also Polychlorophenols and their sodium salts) . . . . . .Suppl. 7, 154 (1987)
Chlorophenols (occupational exposures to) 41, 319 (1986)
Chlorophenoxy herbicides. . . . . .Suppl. 7, 156 (1987)
Chlorophenoxy herbicides (occupational exposures to). 41, 357 (1986)
4-Chloro-*ortho*-phenylenediamine. . . . . 27, 81 (1982); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987)
4-Chloro-*meta*-phenylenediamine . . . . . 27, 82 (1982); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987)
Chloroprene . . . . . .19, 131 (1979); Suppl. 7, 160 (1987); 71, 227 (1999)
Chloropropham . . . . . 12, 55 (1976); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987)
Chloroquine . . . . . 13, 47 (1977); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987)
Chlorothalonil. . . . . 30, 319 (1983); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987); 73, 183 (1999)
para-Chloro-*ortho*-toluidine and its strong acid salts
(see also Chlordimeform) . . . . 16, 277 (1978); 30, 65 (1983); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987); 48, 123 (1990); 77, 323 (2000)
4-Chloro-ortho-toluidine (see para-chloro-ortho-toluidine)
5-Chloro-ortho-toluidine 77, 341 (2000)
Chlorotrianisene (see also Nonsteroidal estrogens) . . . . . .21, 139 (1979); Suppl. 7, 280 (1987)
2-Chloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane . . . . . .41, 253 (1986); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987); 71, 1355 (1999)
Chlorozotocin 50, 65 (1990)
Cholesterol. . . . . 10, 99 (1976); 31, 95 (1983); Suppl. 7, 161 (1987)
Chromic acetate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chromic chloride (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chromic oxide (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chromic phosphate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chromite ore (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chromium and chromium compounds (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 2, 100 (1973); 23, 205 (1980); Suppl. 7, 165 (1987); 49, 49 (1990) (corr. 51, 483); 100C,147 (2012)
Chromium carbonyl (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chromium potassium sulfate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chromium sulfate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chromium trioxide (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Chrysazin (see Dantron)
Chrysene. . . . . .3, 159 (1973); 32, 247 (1983); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Chrysoidine . . . . . 8, 91 (1975); Suppl. 7, 169 (1987)
Chrysotile (see Asbestos)
Ciclosporin. 50, 77 (1990); 100A, 337 (2012)
CI Acid Orange 3 . . . . . 57, 121 (1993)
CI Acid Red 114 . . . . . 57, 247 (1993)
CI Basic Red 9 (see also Magenta) 57, 215 (1993)
CI Direct Blue 15. . . . . 57, 235 (1993)
CI Disperse Yellow 3 (see Disperse Yellow 3)
Cimetidine 50, 235 (1990)
Cinnamyl anthranilate . . . . . 16, 287 (1978); 31, 133 (1983); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987); 77, 177 (2000)
CI Pigment Red 3 . . . . . 57, 259 (1993)

CI Pigment Red 53:1 (see D&C Red No. 9)
Cisplatin (see also Etoposide) . . . . . 26, 151 (1981); Suppl. 7, 170 (1987)
Citrinin. . . . . 40, 67 (1986); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987)
Citrus Red No. 2 . . . . . 8, 101 (1975) (corr. 42, 254); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987)
Clinoptilolite (see Zeolites)
Clofibrate . . . . . 24, 39 (1980); Suppl. 7, 171 (1987); 66, 391 (1996)
Clomiphene citrate . . . . . 21, 551 (1979); Suppl. 7, 172 (1987)
Clonorchis sinensis (infection with) 61, 121 (1994); 100B, 341 (2012)
Coal, indoor emissions from household combustion of 95, 43 (2010); 100E, 515 (2012)
Coal dust. 68, 337 (1997)
Coal gasification. . . . . 34, 65 (1984); Suppl. 7, 173 (1987); 92, 35 (2010); 100F, 145 (2012)
Coal-tar distillation 92, 35 (2010); 100F, 153 (2012)
Coal-tar pitches (see also Coal-tars) . . . . . 35, 83 (1985); Suppl. 7, 174 (1987); 100F, 161 (2012)
Coal-tars . . . . . 35, 83 (1985); Suppl. 7, 175 (1987); 100F, 161 (2012)
Cobalt[III] acetate (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Cobalt-aluminium-chromium spinel (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Cobalt and cobalt compounds (see also Implants, surgical) 52, 363 (1991)
Cobalt[II] chloride (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Cobalt-chromium alloy (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Cobalt-chromium-molybdenum alloys (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Cobalt metal powder (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Cobalt metal with tungsten carbide. 86, 37 (2006)
Cobalt metal without tungsten carbide 86, 37 (2006)
Cobalt naphthenate (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Cobalt[II] oxide (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Cobalt[II,III] oxide (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Cobalt sulfate and other soluble cobalt(II) salts 86, 37 (2006)
Cobalt[II] sulfide (see Cobalt and cobalt compounds)
Coffee . . . . . 51, 41 (1991) (corr. 52, 513)
Coke production . . . . . 34, 101 (1984); Suppl. 7, 176 (1987); 92, 35 (2010); 100F, 167 (2012)
Combined estrogen–progestogen
contraceptives. . . . . Suppl. 7, 297 (1987); 72, 49 (1999); 91, 39 (2007); 100A, 283 (2012)
Combined estrogen–progestogen
menopausal therapy. . . . . Suppl. 7, 308 (1987); 72, 531 (1999); 91, 203 (2007); 100A, 249 (2012)
Conjugated equine estrogens 72, 399 (1999)
Conjugated estrogens (see also Steroidal estrogens). . . . . 21, 147 (1979); Suppl. 7, 283 (1987)
Continuous glass filament (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Copper 8-hydroxyquinoline . . . . . 15, 103 (1977); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Coronene . . . . . 32, 263 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Coumarin . . . . . 10, 113 (1976); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 77, 193 (2000)
Creosotes (see also Coal-tars) . . . . . 35, 83 (1985); Suppl. 7, 177 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
meta-Cresidine. . . . . 27, 91 (1982); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
para-Cresidine . . . . . 27, 92 (1982); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Cristobalite (see Crystalline silica)
Crocidolite (see Asbestos)
Crotonaldehyde. . . . . 63, 373 (1995) (corr. 65, 549)

Crude oil 45, 119 (1989)
Crystalline silica (see also Silica) . . 42, 39 (1987); Suppl. 7, 341 (1987); 68, 41 (1997) (corr. 81, 383); 100C, 355 (2012)
Cycasin
(see also Methylazoxymethanol) . . . . . 1, 157 (1972) (corr. 42, 251); 10, 121 (1976); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Cyclamates. . . . . 22, 55 (1980); Suppl. 7, 178 (1987); 73, 195 (1999)
Cyclamic acid (see Cyclamates)
Cyclochlorotine . . . . . 10, 139 (1976); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Cyclohexanone. 47, 157 (1989); 71, 1359 (1999)
Cyclohexylamine (see Cyclamates)
4-Cyclopenta[*def*]chrysene 92, 35 (2010)
Cyclopenta[*cd*]pyrene . . . . . 32, 269 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
5,6-Cyclopenteno-1,2-benzanthracene. 92, 35 (2010)
Cyclopropane (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
Cyclophosphamide. . . . . 9, 135 (1975); 26, 165 (1981); Suppl. 7, 182 (1987); 100A, 63 (2012)
Cyproterone acetate. 72, 49 (1999)

D

2,4-D (see also Chlorophenoxy herbicides;
Chlorophenoxy herbicides, occupational exposures to) 15, 111 (1977)
Dacarbazine . . . . . 26, 203 (1981); Suppl. 7, 184 (1987)
Dantron. . . . . 50, 265 (1990) (corr. 59, 257)
D&C Red No. 9. . . . . 8, 107 (1975); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 57, 203 (1993)
Dapsone . . . . . 24, 59 (1980); Suppl. 7, 185 (1987)
Daunomycin . . . . . 10, 145 (1976); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
DDD (see DDT)
DDE (see DDT)
DDT. . . . . 5, 83 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 186 (1987); 53, 179 (1991)
Decabromodiphenyl oxide 48, 73 (1990); 71, 1365 (1999)
Deltamethrin. 53, 251 (1991)
Deoxynivalenol (see Toxins derived from *Fusarium graminearum*, *F. culmorum* and *F. crookwellense*)
Diacetylaminoazotoluene . . . . . 8, 113 (1975); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
N,*N*′-Diacetylbenzidine . . . . . 16, 293 (1978); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Diallate . . . . . 12, 69 (1976); 30, 235 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
2,4-Diaminoanisole and its salts. . . . . 16, 51 (1978); 27, 103 (1982); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 79, 619 (2001)
4,4′-Diaminodiphenyl ether. . . . . 16, 301 (1978); 29, 203 (1982); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
1,2-Diamino-4-nitrobenzene. . . . . 16, 63 (1978); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
1,4-Diamino-2-nitrobenzene. . . . . 16, 73 (1978); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 57, 185 (1993)
2,6-Diamino-3-(phenylazo)pyridine (see Phenazopyridine hydrochloride)
2,4-Diaminotoluene (see also Toluene diisocyanates) . . . . . 16, 83 (1978); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
2,5-Diaminotoluene (see also Toluene diisocyanates) . . . . . 16, 97 (1978); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
ortho-Dianisidine (see 3,3′-Dimethoxybenzidine)
Diatomaceous earth, uncalcined (see Amorphous silica)
Diazepam . . . . . 13, 57 (1977); Suppl. 7, 189 (1987); 66, 37 (1996)

Diazomethane . . . . . 7, 223 (1974); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Dibenz[*a,h*]acridine . . . . . 3, 247 (1973); 32, 277 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Dibenz[*a,j*]acridine . . . . . 3, 254 (1973); 32, 283 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Dibenz[*a,c*]anthracene . . . . . 32, 289 (1983) (corr. 42, 262); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenz[*a,h*]anthracene . . . 3, 178 (1973) (corr. 43, 261); 32, 299 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenz[*a,j*]anthracene . . . . . 32, 309 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
7*H*-Dibenzo[*c,g*]carbazole . . . . . 3, 260 (1973); 32, 315 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987)
Dibenzodioxins, chlorinated (other than TCDD) (see Chlorinated dibenzodioxins (other than TCDD))
Dibenzo[*a,e*]fluoranthene . . . . . 32, 321 (1983); Suppl. 7, 61 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
13*H*-Dibenzo[*a,g*]fluorene 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenzo[*h,rst*]pentaphene . . . . . 3, 197 (1973); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenzo[*a,e*]pyrene . . . . . .3, 201 (1973); 32, 327 (1983); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenzo[*a,h*]pyrene . . . . . .3, 207 (1973); 32, 331 (1983); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenzo[*a,i*]pyrene . . . . . .3, 215 (1973); 32, 337 (1983); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenzo[*a,l*]pyrene . . . . . .3, 224 (1973); 32, 343 (1983); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenzo[*e,l*]pyrene 92, 35 (2010)
Dibenzo-*para*-dioxin 69, 33 (1997)
Dibromoacetonitrile (see also Halogenated acetonitriles) 71, 1369 (1999)
1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane . . . . . 15, 139 (1977); 20, 83 (1979); Suppl. 7, 191 (1987); 71, 479 (1999)
1,2-Dibromoethane (see Ethylene dibromide)
2,3-Dibromopropan-1-ol 77, 439 (2000)
Dichloroacetic acid 63, 271 (1995); 84, 359 (2004)
Dichloroacetonitrile (see also Halogenated acetonitriles) 71, 1375 (1999)
Dichloroacetylene . . . . . .39, 369 (1986); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 1381 (1999)
ortho-Dichlorobenzene . . . . . 7, 231 (1974); 29, 213 (1982); Suppl. 7, 192 (1987); 73, 223 (1999)
meta-Dichlorobenzene 73, 223 (1999)
para-Dichlorobenzene . . . . . 7, 231 (1974); 29, 215 (1982); Suppl. 7, 192 (1987); 73, 223 (1999)
3,3′-Dichlorobenzidine . . . . . 4, 49 (1974); 29, 239 (1982); Suppl. 7, 193 (1987)
trans-1,4-Dichlorobutene . . . . . .15, 149 (1977); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 1389 (1999)
3,3′-Dichloro-4,4′-diaminodiphenyl ether . . . . . .16, 309 (1978); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
1,2-Dichloroethane . . . . . .20, 429 (1979); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 501 (1999)
Dichloromethane . . . . . 20, 449 (1979); 41, 43 (1986); Suppl. 7, 194 (1987); 71, 251 (1999)
2,4-Dichlorophenol (see Chlorophenols; Chlorophenols, occupational exposures to; Polychlorophenols and their sodium salts)
(2,4-Dichlorophenoxy)acetic acid (see 2,4-D)
2,6-Dichloro-*para*-phenylenediamine . . . . . .39, 325 (1986); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
1,2-Dichloropropane . . . . . .41, 131 (1986); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 1393 (1999)
1,3-Dichloropropene (technical-grade) . . . . . .41, 113 (1986); Suppl. 7, 195 (1987); 71, 933 (1999)
Dichlorvos . . . . . 20, 97 (1979); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 53, 267 (1991)
Dicofol . . . . . 30, 87 (1983); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
Dicyclohexylamine (see Cyclamates)
Didanosine 76, 153 (2000)
Dieldrin . . . . . .5, 125 (1974); Suppl. 7, 196 (1987)
Dienoestrol (see also Nonsteroidal estrogens) . . . . . .21, 161 (1979); Suppl. 7, 278 (1987)
Diepoxybutane (see also 1,3-Butadiene) . . . . . 11, 115 (1976) (corr. 42, 255); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 109 (1999)

Diesel and gasoline engine exhausts 46, 41 (1989)
Diesel fuels. . . . . 45, 219 (1989) (corr. 47, 505)
Diethanolamine 77, 349 (2000)
Diethyl ether (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
Di(2-ethylhexyl) adipate . . . . . 29, 257 (1982); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 77, 149 (2000)
Di(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate . . . . . 29, 269 (1982) (corr. 42, 261); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 77, 41 (2000)
1,2-Diethylhydrazine . . . . . 4, 153 (1974); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 1401 (1999)
Diethylstilbestrol . . . . . 6, 55 (1974); 21, 173 (1979) (corr. 42, 259); Suppl. 7, 273 (1987); 100A, 175 (2012)
Diethylstilbestrol dipropionate (see Diethylstilbestrol)
Diethyl sulfate. . . . . 4, 277 (1974); Suppl. 7, 198 (1987); 54, 213 (1992); 71, 1405 (1999)
N,*N*′-Diethylthiourea. 79, 649 (2001)
Diglycidyl resorcinol ether . . . . . 11, 125 (1976); 36, 181 (1985); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 1417 (1999)
Dihydrosafrole . . . . . 1, 170 (1972); 10, 233 (1976) Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
1,2-Dihydroaceanthrylene 92, 35 (2010)
1,8-Dihydroxyanthraquinone (see Dantron)
Dihydroxybenzenes (see Catechol; Hydroquinone; Resorcinol)
1,3-Dihydroxy-2-hydroxymethylanthraquinone 82, 129 (2002)
Dihydroxymethylfuratrizine. . . . . 24, 77 (1980); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
Diisopropyl sulfate 54, 229 (1992); 71, 1421 (1999)
Dimethisterone (see also Progestins; Sequential oral contraceptives) . . . . . 6, 167 (1974); 21, 377 (1979))
Dimethoxane . . . . . 15, 177 (1977); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
3,3′-Dimethoxybenzidine . . . . . 4, 41 (1974); Suppl. 7, 198 (1987)
3,3′-Dimethoxybenzidine-4,4′-diisocyanate . . . . . 39, 279 (1986); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
para-Dimethylaminoazobenzene . . . . . 8, 125 (1975); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
para-Dimethylaminoazobenzenediazo sodium sulfonate . . . . . 8, 147 (1975); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
trans-2-[(Dimethylamino)methylimino]-5-
[2-(5-nitro-2-furyl)-vinyl]-1,3,4-oxadiazole . . . . . 7, 147 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987)
4,4′-Dimethylangelicin plus ultraviolet radiation
(see also Angelicin and some synthetic derivatives) . . . . . Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
4,5′-Dimethylangelicin plus ultraviolet radiation
(see also Angelicin and some synthetic derivatives) . . . . . Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
2,6-Dimethylaniline 57, 323 (1993)
N,*N*-Dimethylaniline 57, 337 (1993)
Dimethylarsinic acid (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
3,3′-Dimethylbenzidine . . . . . 1, 87 (1972); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 100F, 93 (2012)
Dimethylcarbamoyl chloride. . . . . 12, 77 (1976); Suppl. 7, 199 (1987); 71, 531 (1999)
Dimethylformamide 47, 171 (1989); 71, 545 (1999)
1,1-Dimethylhydrazine . . . . . 4, 137 (1974); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 1425 (1999)
1,2-Dimethylhydrazine . . . . . 4, 145 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 71, 947 (1999)
Dimethyl hydrogen phosphite 48, 85 (1990); 71, 1437 (1999)
1,4-Dimethylphenanthrene . . . . . 32, 349 (1983); Suppl. 7, 62 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Dimethyl sulfate. . . . . 4, 271 (1974); Suppl. 7, 200 (1987); 71, 575 (1999)
3,7-Dinitrofluoranthene 46, 189 (1989); 65, 297 (1996)
3,9-Dinitrofluoranthene 46, 195 (1989); 65, 297 (1996)
1,3-Dinitropyrene 46, 201 (1989)
1,6-Dinitropyrene 46, 215 (1989)

1,8-Dinitropyrene . . . . . 33, 171 (1984); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987); 46, 231 (1989)
Dinitrosopentamethylenetetramine . . . . . 11, 241 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
2,4-Dinitrotoluene . . . . . 65, 309 (1996) (corr. 66, 485)
2,6-Dinitrotoluene . . . . . 65, 309 (1996) (corr. 66, 485)
3,5-Dinitrotoluene 65, 309 (1996)
1,4-Dioxane . . . . . 11, 247 (1976); Suppl. 7, 201 (1987); 71, 589 (1999)
2,4′-Diphenyldiamine . . . . . 16, 313 (1978); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Direct Black 38 (see also Benzidine-based dyes) . . . . . 29, 295 (1982) (corr. 42, 261)
Direct Blue 6 (see also Benzidine-based dyes) 29, 311 (1982)
Direct Brown 95 (see also Benzidine-based dyes) 29, 321 (1982)
Disperse Blue 1 . . . . . 48, 139 (1990)
Disperse Yellow 3 . . . . . 8, 97 (1975); Suppl. 7, 60 (1987); 48, 149 (1990)
Disulfiram . . . . . 12, 85 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Dithranol . . . . . 13, 75 (1977); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Divinyl ether (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
Doxefazepam 66, 97 (1996)
Doxylamine succinate 79, 145 (2001)
Droloxifene 66, 241 (1996)
Dry cleaning 63, 33 (1995)
Dulcin . . . . . 12, 97 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)

E

Endrin . . . . . 5, 157 (1974); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Enflurane (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
Eosin . . . . . 15, 183 (1977); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Epichlorohydrin . . . . . 11, 131 (1976) (corr. 42, 256); Suppl. 7, 202 (1987); 71, 603 (1999)
1,2-Epoxybutane 47, 217 (1989); 71, 629 (1999)
1-Epoxyethyl-3,4-epoxycyclohexane (see 4-Vinylcyclohexene diepoxide)
3,4-Epoxy-6-methylcyclohexylmethyl
3,4-epoxy-6-methyl-cyclohexane carboxylate . . . . . 11, 147 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987); 71, 1441 (1999)
cis-9,10-Epoxystearic acid . . . . . 11, 153 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987); 71, 1443 (1999)
Epstein-Barr virus 70, 47 (1997); 100B, 49 (2012)
d-Equilenin 72, 399 (1999)
Equilin 72, 399 (1999)
Erionite . . . . . 42, 225 (1987); Suppl. 7, 203 (1987); 100C, 311 (2012)
Estazolam 66, 105 (1996)
Estradiol . . . . . 6, 99 (1974); 21, 279 (1979); Suppl. 7, 284 (1987); 72, 399 (1999)
Estradiol-17β (see Estradiol)
Estradiol 3-benzoate (see Estradiol)
Estradiol dipropionate (see Estradiol)
Estradiol mustard . . . . . 9, 217 (1975); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
Estradiol valerate (see Estradiol)
Estriol . . . . . 6, 117 (1974); 21, 327 (1979); Suppl. 7, 285 (1987); 72, 399 (1999)
Estrogen replacement therapy (see Post-menopausal estrogen therapy)

Estrogens (see Estrogens, progestins and combinations)
Estrogens, conjugated (see Conjugated estrogens)
Estrogens, nonsteroidal (see Nonsteroidal estrogens)
Estrogens, progestins (progestogens)
and combinations . . . . . 6 (1974); 21 (1979); Suppl. 7, 272(1987); 72, 49, 339, 399, 531 (1999)
Estrogens, steroidal (see Steroidal estrogens)
Estrone . . . . . 6, 123 (1974); 21, 343 (1979) (corr. 42, 259); Suppl. 7, 286 (1987); 72, 399 (1999)
Estrone benzoate (see Estrone)
Ethanol in alcoholic beverages. 41, 96 (2010); 100E, 373 (2012)
Ethinyloestradiol . . . . . .6, 77 (1974); 21, 233 (1979); Suppl. 7, 286 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)
Ethionamide . . . . . 13, 83 (1977); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Ethyl acrylate. . . . . 19, 57 (1979); 39, 81 (1986); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987); 71, 1447 (1999)
Ethyl carbamate. . . . . 7, 111 (1974); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 96, 1295 (2010)
Ethylbenzene 77, 227 (2000)
Ethylene . . . . . 19, 157 (1979); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987); 60, 45 (1994); 71, 1447 (1999)
Ethylene dibromide . . . . . .15, 195 (1977); Suppl. 7, 204 (1987); 71, 641 (1999)
Ethylene oxide 11, 157 (1976); 36, 189 (1985) (corr. 42, 263); Suppl. 7, 205 (1987); 60, 73 (1994); 97, 185 (2008); 100F, 379 (2012)
Ethylene sulfide . . . . . .11, 257 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Ethylenethiourea. . . . . 7, 45 (1974); Suppl. 7, 207 (1987); 79, 659 (2001)
2-Ethylhexyl acrylate 60, 475 (1994)
Ethyl methanesulfonate . . . . . 7, 245 (1974); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
N-Ethyl-*N*-nitrosourea . . . . . 1, 135 (1972); 17, 191 (1978); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Ethyl selenac (see also Selenium and selenium compounds) . . . . . .12, 107 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Ethyl tellurac . . . . . .12, 115 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Ethynodiol diacetate . . . . . 6, 173 (1974); 21, 387 (1979); Suppl. 7, 292 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)
Etoposide 76, 177 (2000); 100A, 91 (2012)
Eugenol. . . . . 36, 75 (1985); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Evans blue . . . . . 8, 151 (1975); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Extremely low-frequency electric fields 80 (2002)
Extremely low-frequency magnetic fields 80 (2002)

F

Fast Green FCF . . . . . .16, 187 (1978); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Fenvalerate 53, 309 (1991)
Ferbam . . . . . 12, 121 (1976) (corr. 42, 256); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Ferric oxide . . . . . 1, 29 (1972); Suppl. 7, 216 (1987)
Ferrochromium (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Firefighting 98, 395 (2010)
Fission products, mixtures of 100D, 285 (2012)
Fluometuron . . . . . .30, 245 (1983); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Fluoranthene . . . . . 32, 355 (1983); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Fluorene . . . . . 32, 365 (1983); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Fluorescent lighting (exposure to) (see Ultraviolet radiation)

Fluorides (inorganic, used in drinking-water) . . . . . 27, 237 (1982); Suppl. 7, 208 (1987)
5-Fluorouracil . . . . . 26, 217 (1981); Suppl. 7, 210 (1987)
Fluorspar (see Fluorides)
Fluosilicic acid (see Fluorides)
Fluroxene (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
Foreign bodies 74 (1999)
Formaldehyde . . 29, 345 (1982); Suppl. 7, 211 (1987); 62, 217 (1995) (corr. 65, 549; corr. 66, 485); 88, 39 (2006); 100F, 401 (2012)
2-(2-Formylhydrazino)-4-(5-nitro-2-furyl)thiazole . . . . . 7, 151 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Frusemide (see Furosemide)
Frying, emissions from high-temperature 95, 309 (2010)
Fuel oils (heating oils) . . . . . 45, 239 (1989) (corr. 47, 505)
Fumonisin B1 (see also Toxins derived from Fusarium moniliforme) 82, 301 (2002)
Fumonisin B2 (see Toxins derived from Fusarium moniliforme)
Furan 63, 393 (1995)
Furazolidone . . . . . 31, 141 (1983); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987)
Furfural 63, 409 (1995)
Furniture and cabinet-making 25, 99 (1981)
Furosemide 50, 277 (1990)
2-(2-Furyl)-3-(5-nitro-2-furyl)acrylamide (see AF-2)
Fusarenon-X (see Toxins derived from *Fusarium graminearum*, *F. culmorum* and *F. crookwellense*)
Fusarenone-X (see Toxins derived from *Fusarium graminearum*, *F. culmorum* and *F. crookwellense*)
Fusarin C (see Toxins derived from Fusarium moniliforme)

G

Gallium arsenide 86, 163 (2006)
Gamma (γ)-radiation 75, 121 (2000); 100D, 103 (2012)
Gasoline . . . . . 45, 159 (1989) (corr. 47, 505)
Gasoline engine exhaust (see Diesel and gasoline engine exhausts)
Gemfibrozil 66, 427 (1996)
Glass fibres (see Man-made mineral fibres)
Glass manufacturing industry, occupational exposures in 58, 347 (1993)
Glass wool (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Glass filaments (see Man-made mineral fibres)
Glu-P-1 . . . . . 40, 223 (1986); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
Glu-P-2 . . . . . 40, 235 (1986); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
L-Glutamic acid, 5-[2-(4-hydroxymethyl)phenylhydrazide] (see Agaritine)
Glycidaldehyde . . . . . 11, 175 (1976); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987); 71, 1459 (1999)
Glycidol 77, 469 (2000)
Glycidyl ethers 47, 237 (1989); 71, 1285, 1417, 1525, 1539 (1999)
Glycidyl oleate . . . . . 11, 183 (1976); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
Glycidyl stearate . . . . . 11, 187 (1976); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
Griseofulvin . . . . . 10, 153 (1976); Suppl. 7, 64, 391 (1987); 79, 289 (2001)
Guinea Green B . . . . . 16, 199 (1978); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)

Gyromitrin . . . . . 31, 163 (1983); Suppl. 7, 64, 391 (1987)

H

Haematite . . . . . 1, 29 (1972); Suppl. 7, 216 (1987)
Haematite and ferric oxide. . . . . .Suppl. 7, 216 (1987)
Haematite mining, underground, with
exposure to radon. . . . . .1, 29 (1972); Suppl. 7, 216 (1987); 100D, 241 (2012)
Hairdressers and barbers (occupational exposure as) 57, 43 (1993)
Hair dyes, epidemiology of 16, 29 (1978); 27, 307 (1982)
Halogenated acetonitriles 52, 269 (1991); 71, 1325, 1369, 1375, 1533 (1999)
Halothane (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
HC Blue No. 1 . . . . . 57, 129 (1993)
HC Blue No. 2 . . . . . 57, 143 (1993)
α-HCH (see Hexachlorocyclohexanes)
β-HCH (see Hexachlorocyclohexanes)
γ-HCH (see Hexachlorocyclohexanes)
HC Red No. 3 . . . . . 57, 153 (1993)
HC Yellow No. 4 . . . . . 57, 159 (1993)
Heating oils (see Fuel oils)
Helicobacter pylori (infection with) 61, 177 (1994); 100B, 385 (2012)
Hepatitis B virus 59, 45 (1994); 100B, 93 (2012)
Hepatitis C virus. 59, 165 (1994); 100B, 135 (2012)
Hepatitis D virus. 59, 223 (1994)
Heptachlor (see also Chlordane/Heptachlor) 5, 173 (1974); 20, 129 (1979)
Hexachlorobenzene . . . . . .20, 155 (1979); Suppl. 7, 219 (1987); 79, 493 (2001)
Hexachlorobutadiene . . . . . 20, 179 (1979); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987); 73, 277 (1999)
Hexachlorocyclohexanes . . . . . 5, 47 (1974); 20, 195 (1979) (corr. 42, 258); Suppl. 7, 220 (1987)
Hexachlorocyclohexane, technical-grade (see Hexachlorocyclohexanes)
Hexachloroethane. . . . . 20, 467 (1979); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987); 73, 295 (1999)
Hexachlorophene . . . . . .20, 241 (1979); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
Hexamethylphosphoramide . . . . . .15, 211 (1977); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987); 71, 1465 (1999)
Hexestrol (see also Nonsteroidal estrogens) . . . . . .Suppl. 7, 279 (1987)
Hormonal contraceptives, progestogens only 72, 339 (1999)
Human herpesvirus 8. . . . . 70, 375 (1997)
Human immunodeficiency viruses 67, 31 (1996); 100B, 215 (2012)
Human papillomaviruses . . . . . 64 (1995) (corr. 66, 485); 90 (2007); 100B, 255 (2012)
Human T-cell lymphotropic viruses 67, 261 (1996); 100B, 315 (2012)
Hycanthone mesylate . . . . . 13, 91 (1977); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
Hydralazine . . . . . .24, 85 (1980); Suppl. 7, 222 (1987)
Hydrazine. . . . . .4, 127 (1974); Suppl. 7, 223 (1987); 71, 991 (1999)
Hydrochloric acid 54, 189 (1992)
Hydrochlorothiazide 50, 293 (1990)
Hydrogen peroxide. . . . . .36, 285 (1985); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987); 71, 671 (1999)

Hydroquinone ..... 15, 155 (1977); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987); 71, 691 (1999)
1-Hydroxyanthraquinone 82, 129 (2002)
4-Hydroxyazobenzene ..... 8, 157 (1975); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
17*α*-Hydroxyprogesterone caproate (see also Progestins) ..... 21, 399 (1979) (corr. 42, 259)
8-Hydroxyquinoline ..... 13, 101 (1977); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
8-Hydroxysenkirkine ..... 10, 265 (1976); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
Hydroxyurea 76, 347 (2000)
Hypochlorite salts 52, 159 (1991)

I

Implants, surgical 74, 1999
Indeno[1,2,3-*cd*]pyrene ..... 3, 229 (1973); 32, 373 (1983); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Indium phosphide 86, 197 (2006)
Inorganic acids (see Sulfuric acid and other strong inorganic acids, occupational exposures to mists and vapours from)
Inorganic lead compounds ..... Suppl. 7, 230 (1987); 87 (2006)
Insecticides, occupational exposures in spraying and application of 53, 45 (1991)
Insulation glass wool (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Involuntary smoking (see Tobacco, Second-hand smoke)
Ionizing radiation (all types) 100D, 103 (2012)
IQ ..... 40, 261 (1986); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987); 56, 165 (1993)
Iron and steel founding ..... 34, 133 (1984); Suppl. 7, 224 (1987); 100F, 497 (2012)
Iron-dextran complex ..... 2, 161 (1973); Suppl. 7, 226 (1987)
Iron-dextrin complex ..... 2, 161 (1973) (corr. 42, 252); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
Iron oxide (see Ferric oxide)
Iron oxide, saccharated (see Saccharated iron oxide)
Iron sorbitol-citric acid complex ..... 2, 161 (1973); Suppl. 7, 64 (1987)
Isatidine ..... 10, 269 (1976); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Isoflurane (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
Isoniazid (see Isonicotinic acid hydrazide)
Isonicotinic acid hydrazide ..... 4, 159 (1974); Suppl. 7, 227 (1987)
Isophosphamide ..... 26, 237 (1981); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Isoprene 60, 215 (1994); 71, 1015 (1999)
Isopropanol ..... 15, 223 (1977); Suppl. 7, 229 (1987); 71, 1027 (1999)
Isopropanol manufacture (strong-acid process)
(see also Isopropanol; Sulfuric acid and other strong inorganic acids, occupational exposures to mists and vapours from) ..... Suppl. 7, 229 (1987); 100F, 479 (2012)
Isopropyl oils ..... 15, 223 (1977); Suppl. 7, 229 (1987); 71, 1483 (1999)
Isosafrole ..... 1, 169 (1972); 10, 232 (1976); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)

J

Jacobine . . . . . 10, 275 (1976); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Jet fuel 45, 203 (1989)
Joinery (see Carpentry and joinery)

K

Kaempferol . . . . . 31, 171 (1983); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Kaposi sarcoma herpesvirus 70, 375 (1997); 100B, 169 (2012)
Kepone (see Chlordecone)
Kojic acid 79, 605 (2001)

L

Lasiocarpine . . . . . 10, 281 (1976); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Lauroyl peroxide . . . . . 36, 315 (1985); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987); 71, 1485 (1999)
Lead acetate (see Lead and lead compounds)
Lead and lead compounds (see also Foreign bodies). . . 1, 40 (1972) (corr. 42, 251); 2, 52, 150 (1973); 12, 131 (1976); 23, 40, 208, 209, 325 (1980); Suppl. 7, 230 (1987); 87 (2006)
Lead arsenate (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Lead carbonate (see Lead and lead compounds)
Lead chloride (see Lead and lead compounds)
Lead chromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Lead chromate oxide (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Lead compounds, inorganic and organic . . . . . Suppl. 7, 230 (1987); 87 (2006)
Lead naphthenate (see Lead and lead compounds)
Lead nitrate (see Lead and lead compounds)
Lead oxide (see Lead and lead compounds)
Lead phosphate (see Lead and lead compounds)
Lead subacetate (see Lead and lead compounds)
Lead tetroxide (see Lead and lead compounds)
Leather goods manufacture . . . . . 25, 279 (1981); Suppl. 7, 235 (1987); 100C, 317 (2012)
Leather industries . . . . . 25, 199 (1981); Suppl. 7, 232 (1987); 100C, 317 (2012)
Leather tanning and processing . . . . . 25, 201 (1981); Suppl. 7, 236 (1987); 100C, 317 (2012)
Ledate (see also Lead and lead compounds). 12, 131 (1976)
Levonorgestrel 72, 49 (1999)
Light Green SF . . . . . 16, 209 (1978); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
d-Limonene 56, 135 (1993); 73, 307 (1999)
Lindane (see Hexachlorocyclohexanes)
Liver flukes (see Clonorchis sinensis, Opisthorchis felineus and Opisthorchis viverrini)
Lucidin (see 1,3-Dihydro-2-hydroxymethylanthraquinone)
Lumber and sawmill industries (including logging) . . . . . 25, 49 (1981); Suppl. 7, 383 (1987)

Luteoskyrin . . . . . 10, 163 (1976); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Lynoestrenol . . . . . 21, 407 (1979); Suppl. 7, 293 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)

M

Madder root (see also Rubia tinctorum) 82, 129 (2002)
Magenta . . . . . 4, 57 (1974) (corr. 42, 252); Suppl. 7, 238 (1987); 57, 215 (1993); 100F, 105 (2012)
Magenta, manufacture of (see also Magenta) . . . . . Suppl. 7, 238 (1987); 57, 215 (1993); 100F, 105 (2012)
Malathion . . . . . 30, 103 (1983); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Maleic hydrazide . . . . . 4, 173 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Malonaldehyde . . . . . 36, 163 (1985); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987); 71, 1037 (1999)
Malondialdehyde (see Malonaldehyde)
Maneb . . . . . 12, 137 (1976); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Man-made mineral fibres (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Man-made vitreous fibres 43, 39 (1988); 81 (2002)
Mannomustine . . . . . 9, 157 (1975); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Mate 51, 273 (1991)
MCPA (see also Chlorophenoxy herbicides; Chlorophenoxy herbicides, occupational exposures to) 30, 255 (1983)
MeA-α-C . . . . . 40, 253 (1986); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Medphalan . . . . . 9, 168 (1975); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Medroxyprogesterone acetate 6, 157 (1974); 21, 417 (1979) (corr. 42, 259); Suppl. 7, 289 (1987); 72, 339 (1999)
Megestrol acetate . . . . . Suppl. 7, 293 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)
MeIQ . . . . . 40, 275 (1986); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987); 56, 197 (1993)
MeIQx . . . . . 40, 283 (1986); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987) 56, 211 (1993)
Melamine . . . . . 39, 333 (1986); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987); 73, 329 (1999)
Melphalan . . . . . 9, 167 (1975); Suppl. 7, 239 (1987); 100A, 107 (2012)
6-Mercaptopurine . . . . . 26, 249 (1981); Suppl. 7, 240 (1987)
Mercuric chloride (see Mercury and mercury compounds)
Mercury and mercury compounds 58, 239 (1993)
Merphalan . . . . . 9, 169 (1975); Suppl. 7, 65 (1987)
Mestranol . . . . . 6, 87 (1974); 21, 257 (1979) (corr. 42, 259); Suppl. 7, 288 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)
Metabisulfites (see Sulfur dioxide and some sulfites, bisulfites and metabisulfites)
Metallic mercury (see Mercury and mercury compounds)
Methanearsonic acid, disodium salt (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Methanearsonic acid, monosodium salt (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Methimazole 79, 53 (2001)
Methotrexate . . . . . 26, 267 (1981); Suppl. 7, 241 (1987)
Methoxsalen (see 8-Methoxypsoralen)
Methoxychlor . . . . . 5, 193 (1974); 20, 259 (1979); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
Methoxyflurane (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
5-Methoxypsoralen . . . . . 40, 327 (1986); Suppl. 7, 242 (1987)
8-Methoxypsoralen (see also 8-Methoxypsoralen plus ultraviolet radiation) 24, 101 (1980)

8-Methoxypsoralen plus ultraviolet radiation . . . . . Suppl. 7, 243 (1987); 100A, 363 (2012)
Methyl acrylate . . . . . 19, 52 (1979); 39, 99 (1986); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 71, 1489 (1999)
5-Methylangelicin plus ultraviolet radiation
(see also Angelicin and some synthetic derivatives) . . . . . Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
2-Methylaziridine . . . . . 9, 61 (1975); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 71, 1497 (1999)
Methylazoxymethanol acetate (see also Cycasin) . . . . . 1, 164 (1972); 10, 131 (1976); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
Methyl bromide . . . . . 41, 187 (1986) (corr. 45, 283); Suppl. 7, 245 (1987); 71, 721 (1999)
Methyl tert-butyl ether 73, 339 (1999)
Methyl carbamate . . . . . 12, 151 (1976); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
Methyl-CCNU (see 1-(2-Chloroethyl)-3-(4-methylcyclohexyl)-1-nitrosourea)
Methyl chloride . . . . . 41, 161 (1986); Suppl. 7, 246 (1987); 71, 737 (1999)
1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- and 6-Methylchrysenes . . . . . 32, 379 (1983); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
N-Methyl-N,4-dinitrosoaniline . . . . . 1, 141 (1972); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
4,4′-Methylene bis(2-chloroaniline) . . . . 4, 65 (1974) (corr. 42, 252); Suppl. 7, 246 (1987); 57, 271 (1993); 100F, 73 (2012)
4,4′-Methylene bis(*N*,*N*-dimethyl)benzenamine . . . . . 27, 119 (1982); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
4,4′-Methylene bis(2-methylaniline) . . . . . 4, 73 (1974); Suppl. 7, 248 (1987)
4,4′-Methylenedianiline . . . . . 4, 79 (1974) (corr. 42, 252); 39, 347 (1986); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
4,4′-Methylenediphenyl diisocyanate . . . . . 19, 314 (1979); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 71, 1049 (1999)
2-Methylfluoranthene . . . . . 32, 399 (1983); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
3-Methylfluoranthene . . . . . 32, 399 (1983); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Methylglyoxal 51, 443 (1991)
Methyl iodide . . . . . 15, 245 (1977); 41, 213 (1986); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 71, 1503 (1999)
Methylmercury chloride (see Mercury and mercury compounds)
Methylmercury compounds (see Mercury and mercury compounds)
Methyl methacrylate . . . . . 19, 187 (1979); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 60, 445 (1994)
Methyl methanesulfonate . . . . . 7, 253 (1974); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 71, 1059 (1999)
2-Methyl-1-nitroanthraquinone . . . . . 27, 205 (1982); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
N-Methyl-*N*′-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine . . . . . 4, 183 (1974); Suppl. 7, 248 (1987)
3-Methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde [see 3-(*N*-Nitrosomethylamino)-propionaldehyde]
3-Methylnitrosaminopropionitrile [see 3-(*N*-Nitrosomethylamino)-propionitrile]
4-(Methylnitrosamino)-4-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanal [see 4-(*N*-Nitrosomethyl-amino)-4-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanal]
4-(Methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone [see 4-(*N*-Nitrosomethyl-amino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone]
N-Methyl-*N*-nitrosourea . . . . . 1, 125 (1972); 17, 227 (1978); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
N-Methyl-*N*-nitrosourethane . . . . . 4, 211 (1974); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
N-Methylolacrylamide 60, 435 (1994)
Methyl parathion . . . . . 30, 131 (1983); Suppl. 7, 66, 392 (1987)
1-Methylphenanthrene . . . . . 32, 405 (1983); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
7-Methylpyrido[3,4-*c*]psoralen . . . . . 40, 349 (1986); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Methyl red . . . . . 8, 161 (1975); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
Methyl selenac (see also Selenium and selenium compounds) . . . . . 12, 161 (1976); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
Methylthiouracil . . . . . 7, 53 (1974); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987); 79, 75 (2001)
Metronidazole . . . . . 13, 113 (1977); Suppl. 7, 250 (1987)
Microcystin-LR 94, 331 (2010)

Microcystis extracts 94, 367 (2010)
Mineral oils .....3, 30 (1973); 33, 87 (1984) (corr. 42, 262); Suppl. 7, 252 (1987); 100F, 179 (2012)
Mirex ..... 5, 203 (1974); 20, 283 (1979) (corr. 42, 258); Suppl. 7, 66 (1987)
Mists and vapours from sulfuric acid and other strong inorganic acids . 54, 41 (1992); 100F, 487 (2012)
Mitomycin C ..... 10, 171 (1976); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Mitoxantrone 76, 289 (2000)
MNNG (see *N*-Methyl-*N'*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine)
MOCA (see 4,4'-Methylene bis(2-chloroaniline))
Modacrylic fibres ..... 19, 86 (1979); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Monochloramine (see Chloramine)
Monocrotaline ..... 10, 291 (1976); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Monuron..... 12, 167 (1976); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 53, 467 (1991)
MOPP and other combined chemotherapy
including alkylating agents ..... Suppl. 7, 254 (1987); 100A, 119 (2012)
Mordanite (see Zeolites)
Morinda officinalis (see also Traditional herbal medicines) 82, 129 (2002)
Morpholine 47, 199 (1989); 71, 1511 (1999)
5-(Morpholinomethyl)-3-[(5-nitrofurfurylidene)amino]-2-oxazolidinone..... 7, 161 (1974); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Musk ambrette..... 65, 477 (1996)
Musk xylene 65, 477 (1996)
Mustard gas..... 9, 181 (1975) (corr. 42, 254); Suppl. 7, 259 (1987); 100F, 437 (2012)
Myleran (see 1,4-Butanediol dimethanesulfonate)

N

Nafenopin ..... 24, 125 (1980); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Naphthalene..... 82, 367 (2002)
1,5-Naphthalenediamine ..... 27, 127 (1982); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
1,5-Naphthalene diisocyanate ..... 19, 311 (1979); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 71, 1515 (1999)
Naphtho[1,2-*b*]fluoranthene..... 92, 35 (2010)
Naphtho[2,1-*a*]fluoranthene..... 92, 35 (2010)
Naphtho[2,3-*e*]pyrene..... 92, 35 (2010)
1-Naphthylamine ..... 4, 87 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 260 (1987)
2-Naphthylamine ..... 4, 97 (1974); Suppl. 7, 261 (1987); 100F, 83 (2012)
1-Naphthylthiourea .....30, 347 (1983); Suppl. 7, 263 (1987)
Neutron radiation 75, 361 (2000); 100D, 231 (2012)
Nickel acetate (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickel ammonium sulfate (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickel and nickel compounds (see also Implants, surgical) . . 2, 126 (1973) (corr. 42, 252); 11, 75 (1976); Suppl. 7, 264 (1987) (corr. 45, 283); 49, 257 (1990) (corr. 67, 395); 100C, 169 (2012)
Nickel carbonate (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickel carbonyl (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickel chloride (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickel-gallium alloy (see Nickel and nickel compounds)

Nickel hydroxide (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickelocene (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickel oxide (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickel subsulfide (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Nickel sulfate (see Nickel and nickel compounds)
Niridazole . . . . . 13, 123 (1977); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Nithiazide . . . . . 31, 179 (1983); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Nitrate or nitrite, ingested,
under conditions that result in endogenous nitrosation 94, 43 (2010)
Nitrilotriacetic acid and its salts 48, 181 (1990); 73, 385 (1999)
Nitrite (see Nitrate or nitrite)
5-Nitroacenaphthene . . . . . 16, 319 (1978); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
5-Nitro-*ortho*-anisidine . . . . . 27, 133 (1982); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
2-Nitroanisole 65, 369 (1996)
9-Nitroanthracene . . . . . 33, 179 (1984); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
7-Nitrobenz[*a*]anthracene 46, 247 (1989)
Nitrobenzene 65, 381 (1996)
6-Nitrobenzo[*a*]pyrene . . . . . 33, 187 (1984); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 46, 255 (1989)
4-Nitrobiphenyl . . . . . 4, 113 (1974); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
6-Nitrochrysene . . . . . 33, 195 (1984); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 46, 267 (1989)
Nitrofen (technical-grade) . . . . . 30, 271 (1983); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
3-Nitrofluoranthene . . . . . 33, 201 (1984); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
2-Nitrofluorene 46, 277 (1989)
Nitrofural . . . . . 7, 171 (1974); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 50, 195 (1990)
5-Nitro-2-furaldehyde semicarbazone (see Nitrofural)
Nitrofurantoin 50, 211 (1990)
Nitrofurazone (see Nitrofural)
1-[(5-Nitrofurfurylidene)amino]-2-imidazolidinone . . . . . 7, 181 (1974); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
N-[4-(5-Nitro-2-furyl)-2-thiazolyl]acetamide . . . . . 1, 181 (1972); 7, 185 (1974); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Nitrogen mustard . . . . . 9, 193 (1975); Suppl. 7, 269 (1987)
Nitrogen mustard *N*-oxide . . . . . 9, 209 (1975); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
Nitromethane 77, 487 (2000)
1-Nitronaphthalene 46, 291 (1989)
2-Nitronaphthalene 46, 303 (1989)
3-Nitroperylene 46, 313 (1989)
2-Nitro-para-phenylenediamine (see 1,4-Diamino-2-nitrobenzene)
2-Nitropropane . . . . . 29, 331 (1982); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 71, 1079 (1999)
1-Nitropyrene . . . . . 33, 209 (1984); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 46, 321 (1989)
2-Nitropyrene 46, 359 (1989)
4-Nitropyrene 46, 367 (1989)
N-Nitrosatable drugs . . . . . 24, 297 (1980) (corr. 42, 260)
N-Nitrosatable pesticides 30, 359 (1983)
N′-Nitrosoanabasine (NAB) . . . . . 37, 225 (1985); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 89, 419 (2007)
N′-Nitrosoanatabine (NAT) . . . . . 37, 233 (1985); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 89, 419 (2007)
N-Nitrosodi-n-butylamine . . . . . 4, 197 (1974); 17, 51 (1978); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
N-Nitrosodiethanolamine . . . . . 17, 77 (1978); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987); 77, 403 (2000)

N-Nitrosodiethylamine .... 1, 107 (1972) (corr. 42, 251); 17, 83 (1978) (corr. 42, 257); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
N-Nitrosodimethylamine .... 1, 95 (1972); 17, 125 (1978) (corr. 42, 257); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
N-Nitrosodiphenylamine .... 27, 213 (1982); Suppl. 7, 67 (1987)
para-Nitrosodiphenylamine .... 27, 227 (1982) (corr. 42, 261); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N-Nitrosodi-n-propylamine .... 17, 177 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N-Nitroso-N-ethylurea (see *N*-Ethyl-*N*-nitrosourea)
N-Nitrosofolic acid .... 17, 217 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N-Nitrosoguvacine .... 37, 263 (1985); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987); 85, 281 (2004)
N-Nitrosoguvacoline .... 37, 263 (1985); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987); 85, 281 (2004)
N-Nitrosohydroxyproline .... 17, 304 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
3-(*N*-Nitrosomethylamino)propionaldehyde .... 37, 263 (1985); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987); 85, 281 (2004)
3-(*N*-Nitrosomethylamino)propionitrile .... 37, 263 (1985); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987); 85, 281 (2004)
4-(*N*-Nitrosomethylamino)-4-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanal .... 37, 205 (1985); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
4-(*N*-Nitrosomethylamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone
(NNK) .... 37, 209 (1985); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987); 89, 419 (2007); 100E, 319 (2012)
N-Nitrosomethylethylamine .... 17, 221 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N-Nitroso-*N*-methylurea (see *N*-Methyl-*N*-nitrosourea)
N-Nitroso-*N*-methylurethane (see *N*-Methyl-*N*-nitrosourethane)
N-Nitrosomethylvinylamine .... 17, 257 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N-Nitrosomorpholine .... 17, 263 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N′-Nitrosonornicotine
(NNN) .... 17, 281 (1978); 37, 241 (1985); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987); 89, 419 (2007); 100E, 319 (2012)
N-Nitrosopiperidine .... 17, 287 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N-Nitrosoproline .... 17, 303 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N-Nitrosopyrrolidine .... 17, 313 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
N-Nitrososarcosine .... 17, 327 (1978); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
Nitrosoureas, chloroethyl (see Chloroethyl nitrosoureas)
5-Nitro-*ortho*-toluidine 48, 169 (1990)
2-Nitrotoluene 65, 409 (1996)
3-Nitrotoluene 65, 409 (1996)
4-Nitrotoluene 65, 409 (1996)
Nitrous oxide (see Anaesthetics, volatile)
Nitrovin .... 31, 185 (1983); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)
Nivalenol (see Toxins derived from *Fusarium graminearum*, *F. culmorum* and *F. crookwellense*)
NNK (see 4-(*N*-Nitrosomethylamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone)
NNN (see *N′*-Nitrosonornicotine)
Nodularins 94, 329 (2010)
Nonsteroidal estrogens .... Suppl. 7, 273 (1987)
Norethisterone .... 6, 179 (1974); 21, 461 (1979); Suppl. 7, 294 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)
Norethisterone acetate 72, 49 (1999)
Norethynodrel .... 6, 191 (1974); 21, 461 (1979) (corr. 42, 259); Suppl. 7, 295 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)
Norgestrel .... 6, 201 (1974); 21, 479 (1979); Suppl. 7, 295 (1987); 72, 49 (1999)
Nylon 6 .... 19, 120 (1979); Suppl. 7, 68 (1987)

O

Ochratoxin A . . . . . 10, 191 (1976); 31, 191 (1983) (corr. 42, 262); Suppl. 7, 271 (1987); 56, 489 (1993)
Oil Orange SS . . . . . 8, 165 (1975); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Oestrogen and Oestrogen-type compounds (see Estrogen)
Opisthorchis felineus (infection with) 61, 121 (1994)
Opisthorchis viverrini (infection with) 61, 121 (1994); 100B, 341 (2012)
Oral contraceptives, sequential (see Sequential oral contraceptives)
Orange I . . . . . 8, 173 (1975); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Orange G . . . . . 8, 181 (1975); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Organic lead compounds . . . . . Suppl. 7, 230 (1987); 87 (2006)
Organolead compounds (see Organic lead compounds)
Oxazepam . . . . . 13, 58 (1977); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987); 66, 115 (1996)
Oxymetholone (see also Androgenic (anabolic) steroids) 13, 131 (1977)
Oxyphenbutazone . . . . . .13, 185 (1977); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)

P

Paint manufacture and painting (occupational exposures in) . . 47, 329 (1989); 98, 41 (2010); 100F, 509 (2012)
Palygorskite . . . . . .42, 159 (1987); Suppl. 7, 117 (1987); 68, 245 (1997)
Panfuran S (see also Dihydroxymethylfuratrizine) . . . . . 24, 77 (1980); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Paper manufacture (see Pulp and paper manufacture)
Paracetamol 50, 307 (1990); 73, 401 (1999)
Parasorbic acid . . . . . 10, 199 (1976) (corr. 42, 255); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Parathion . . . . . .30, 153 (1983); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Patulin . . . . . 10, 205 (1976); 40, 83 (1986); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Paving and roofing with coal-tar pitch 92, 35 (2010)
Penicillic acid. . . . . .10, 211 (1976); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Pentachloroethane . . . . . .41, 99 (1986); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987); 71, 1519 (1999)
Pentachloronitrobenzene (see Quintozene)
Pentachlorophenol (see also Chlorophenols; Chlorophenols, occupational exposures to; Polychlorophenols and their sodium salts) 20, 303 (1979); 53, 371 (1991)
Permethrin. 53, 329 (1991)
Perylene . . . . . 32, 411 (1983); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Petasitenine. . . . . .31, 207 (1983); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987)
Petasites japonicus (see also Pyrrolizidine alkaloids) 10, 333 (1976)
Petroleum refining (occupational exposures in) 45, 39 (1989)
Petroleum solvents 47, 43 (1989)
Phenacetin. . . . . 13, 141 (1977); 24, 135 (1980); Suppl. 7, 310 (1987); 100A, 377 (2012)
Phenanthrene. . . . . 32, 419 (1983); Suppl. 7, 69 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Phenazopyridine hydrochloride. . . . . 8, 117 (1975); 24, 163 (1980) (corr. 42, 260); Suppl. 7, 312 (1987)
Phenelzine sulfate . . . . . .24, 175 (1980); Suppl. 7, 312 (1987)
Phenicarbazide. . . . . .12, 177 (1976); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)

Phenobarbital and its sodium salt . . . . . 13, 157 (1977); Suppl. 7, 313 (1987); 79, 161 (2001)
Phenol . . . . . 47, 263 (1989) (corr. 50, 385); 71, 749 (1999)
Phenolphthalein 76, 387 (2000)
Phenoxyacetic acid herbicides (see Chlorophenoxy herbicides)
Phenoxybenzamine hydrochloride . . . . . 9, 223 (1975); 24, 185 (1980); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Phenylbutazone . . . . . 13, 183 (1977); Suppl. 7, 316 (1987)
meta-Phenylenediamine . . . . . 16, 111 (1978); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
para-Phenylenediamine . . . . . 16, 125 (1978); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Phenyl glycidyl ether (see also Glycidyl ethers) 71, 1525 (1999)
N-Phenyl-2-naphthylamine . . . . . 16, 325 (1978) (corr. 42, 257); Suppl. 7, 318 (1987)
ortho-Phenylphenol . . . . . 30, 329 (1983); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987); 73, 451 (1999)
Phenytoin . . . . . 13, 201 (1977); Suppl. 7, 319 (1987); 66, 175 (1996)
Phillipsite (see Zeolites)
PhIP 56, 229 (1993)
Phosphorus-32 as phosphate 100D, 285 (2012)
Picene 92, 35 (2010)
Pickled vegetables 56, 83 (1993)
Picloram 53, 481 (1991)
Piperazine oestrone sulfate (see Conjugated estrogens)
Piperonyl butoxide . . . . . 30, 183 (1983); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Pitches, coal-tar (see Coal-tar pitches)
Plutonium-239 . . . . . 100D, 241 (2012)
Polyacrylic acid . . . . . 19, 62 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polybrominated biphenyls . . . . . 18, 107 (1978); 41, 261 (1986); Suppl. 7, 321 (1987)
Polychlorinated biphenyls . . . . . 7, 261 (1974); 18, 43 (1978) (corr. 42, 258); Suppl. 7, 322 (1987)
Polychlorinated camphenes (see Toxaphene)
Polychlorinated dibenzo-*para*-dioxins
(other than 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzodioxin) 69, 33 (1997)
Polychlorinated dibenzofurans 69, 345 (1997)
Polychlorophenols and their sodium salts 71, 769 (1999)
Polychloroprene . . . . . 19, 141 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polyestradiol phosphate (see Estradiol-17β)
Polyethylene (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 19, 164 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Poly(glycolic acid) (see Implants, surgical)
Polymethylene polyphenyl isocyanate
(see also 4,4′-Methylenediphenyl diisocyanate) . . . . . 19, 314 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polymethyl methacrylate (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 19, 195 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polypropylene (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 19, 218 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polystyrene (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 19, 245 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polytetrafluoroethylene (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 19, 288 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polyurethane foams (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 19, 320 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polyvinyl acetate (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 19, 346 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polyvinyl alcohol (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 19, 351 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polyvinyl chloride (see also Implants, surgical) . . . . . 7, 306 (1974); 19, 402 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Polyvinyl pyrrolidone . . . . . 19, 463 (1979); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987); 71, 1181 (1999)
Ponceau MX . . . . . 8, 189 (1975); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)

Ponceau 3R . . . . . 8, 199 (1975); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Ponceau SX . . . . . 8, 207 (1975); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Post-menopausal estrogen therapy . . . . . Suppl. 7, 280 (1987); 72, 399 (1999); 100A, 219 (2012)
Potassium arsenate (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Potassium arsenite (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Potassium bis(2-hydroxyethyl)dithiocarbamate . . . . . 12, 183 (1976); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Potassium bromate. . . . . 40, 207 (1986); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987); 73, 481 (1999)
Potassium chromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Potassium dichromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Prazepam 66, 143 (1996)
Prednimustine 50, 115 (1990)
Prednisone. . . . . 26, 293 (1981); Suppl. 7, 326 (1987)
Printing processes and printing inks 65, 33 (1996)
Procarbazine hydrochloride . . . . . 26, 311 (1981); Suppl. 7, 327 (1987)
Proflavine salts . . . . . 24, 195 (1980); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Progesterone (see also Progestins;
Combined oral contraceptives) . . . . . 6, 135 (1974); 21, 491 (1979) (corr. 42, 259)
Progestins (see Progestogens)
Progestogens . . . . . Suppl. 7, 289 (1987); 72, 49, 339, 531 (1999)
Pronetalol hydrochloride . . . . . 13, 227 (1977) (corr. 42, 256); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
1,3-Propane sultone . . . . . 4, 253 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987); 71, 1095 (1999)
Propham. . . . . 12, 189 (1976); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
β-Propiolactone. . . . . 4, 259 (1974) (corr. 42, 253); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987); 71, 1103 (1999)
n-Propyl carbamate . . . . . 12, 201 (1976); Suppl. 7, 70 (1987)
Propylene. . . . . 19, 213 (1979); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987); 60, 161 (1994)
Propyleneimine (see 2-Methylaziridine)
Propylene oxide. . . . . 11, 191 (1976); 36, 227 (1985) (corr. 42, 263); Suppl. 7, 328 (1987); 60, 181 (1994)
Propylthiouracil . . . . . 7, 67 (1974); Suppl. 7, 329 (1987); 79, 91 (2001)
Ptaquiloside (see also Bracken fern) . . . . . 40, 55 (1986); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Pulp and paper manufacture . . . . . 25, 157 (1981); Suppl. 7, 385 (1987)
Pyrene . . . . . 32, 431 (1983); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Pyridine. 77, 503 (2000)
Pyrido[3,4-*c*]psoralen. . . . . 40, 349 (1986); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Pyrimethamine. . . . . 13, 233 (1977); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Pyrrolizidine alkaloids
(see Hydroxysenkirkine; Isatidine; Jacobine; Lasiocarpine; Monocrotaline; Retrorsine; Riddelliine; Seneciphylline; Senkirkine)

Q

Quartz (see Crystalline silica)
Quercetin (see also Bracken fern) . . . . . 31, 213 (1983); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987); 73, 497 (1999)
para-Quinone . . . . . 15, 255 (1977); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987); 71, 1245 (1999)
Quintozene . . . . . 5, 211 (1974); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)

R

Radiation (see gamma-radiation, neutrons, ultraviolet radiation, X-radiation)
Radionuclides, internalized, that emit α-particles 78 (2001); 100D, 241 (2012)
Radionuclides, internalized, that emit β-particles 78 (2001); 100D, 285 (2012)
Radioisotopes of iodine, short-lived, including Iodine-131 . . . . . 100D, 285 (2012)
Radium-224, radium-226, radium-228 . . . . . 100D, 241 (2012)
Radon-222 with its decay products . . . . . 43, 173 (1988) (corr. 45, 283); 100D, 241 (2012)
Refractory ceramic fibres (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Reserpine . . . . . 10, 217 (1976); 24, 211 (1980) (corr. 42, 260); Suppl. 7, 330 (1987)
Resorcinol . . . . . 15, 155 (1977); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987); 71, 1119 (1990)
Retrorsine . . . . . 10, 303 (1976); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Rhodamine B . . . . . 16, 221 (1978); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Rhodamine 6G . . . . . 16, 233 (1978); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Riddelliine . . . . . 10, 313 (1976); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987); 82, 153 (2002)
Rifampicin . . . . . 24, 243 (1980); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Ripazepam 66, 157 (1996)
Rock (stone) wool (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Rubber industry . . . . . 28 (1982) (corr. 42, 261); Suppl. 7, 332 (1987) ; 100F, 541 (2012)
Rubia tinctorum (see also Madder root, Traditional herbal medicines) 82, 129 (2002)
Rugulosin . . . . . 40, 99 (1986); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)

S

Saccharated iron oxide . . . . . 2, 161 (1973); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Saccharin and its salts . . . . . 22, 111 (1980) (corr. 42, 259); Suppl. 7, 334 (1987); 73, 517 (1999)
Safrole . . . . . 1, 169 (1972); 10, 231 (1976); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Salted fish, Chinese-style 56, 41 (1993); 100E, 501 (2012)
Sawmill industry (including logging) (see Lumber and sawmill industry (including logging))
Scarlet Red . . . . . 8, 217 (1975); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Schistosoma haematobium (infection with) 61, 45 (1994); 100B, 371 (2012)
Schistosoma japonicum (infection with) 61, 45 (1994)
Schistosoma mansoni (infection with) 61, 45 (1994)
Selenium and selenium compounds . . . . . 9, 245 (1975) (corr. 42, 255); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Selenium dioxide (see Selenium and selenium compounds)
Selenium oxide (see Selenium and selenium compounds)
Semicarbazide hydrochloride . . . . . 12, 209 (1976) (corr. 42, 256); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Senecio jacobaea L. (see also Pyrrolizidine alkaloids) 10, 333 (1976)
Senecio longilobus (see also Pyrrolizidine alkaloids, Traditional) herbal medicines) 10, 334 (1976); 82, 153 (2002)
Senecio riddellii (see also Traditional herbal medicines) 82, 153 (1982)
Seneciphylline . . . . . 10, 319, 335 (1976); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)

Senkirkine . . . . . 10, 327 (1976); 31, 231 (1983); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Sepiolite . . . . . 42, 175 (1987); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987); 68, 267 (1997)
Sequential oral contraceptives
(see also Estrogens, progestins and combinations) . . . . . .Suppl. 7, 296 (1987)
Shale-oils . . . . . .35, 161 (1985); Suppl. 7, 339 (1987); 100F, 197 (2012)
Shiftwork 98, 561 (2010)
Shikimic acid (see also Bracken fern) . . . . . 40, 55 (1986); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Shoe manufacture and repair (see Boot and shoe manufacture and repair)
Silica (see also Amorphous silica; Crystalline silica) 42, 39 (1987); 100C, 355 (2012)
Silicone (see Implants, surgical)
Simazine 53, 495 (1991); 73, 625 (1999)
Slag wool (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Sodium arsenate (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Sodium arsenite (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Sodium cacodylate (see Arsenic and arsenic compounds)
Sodium chlorite 52, 145 (1991)
Sodium chromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Sodium cyclamate (see Cyclamates)
Sodium dichromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Sodium diethyldithiocarbamate . . . . . .12, 217 (1976); Suppl. 7, 71 (1987)
Sodium equilin sulfate (see Conjugated estrogens)
Sodium estrone sulfate (see Conjugated estrogens)
Sodium fluoride (see Fluorides)
Sodium monofluorophosphate (see Fluorides)
Sodium *ortho*-phenylphenate
(see also *ortho*-Phenylphenol) . . . . . 30, 329 (1983); Suppl. 7, 71, 392 (1987); 73, 451 (1999)
Sodium saccharin (see Saccharin)
Sodium selenate (see Selenium and selenium compounds)
Sodium selenite (see Selenium and selenium compounds)
Sodium silicofluoride (see Fluorides)
Solar radiation 55 (1992); 100D, 35 (2012)
Soots . . . . . 3, 22 (1973); 35, 219 (1985); Suppl. 7, 343 (1987); 100F, 209 (2012)
Special-purpose glass fibres such as E-glass and '475' glass fibres (see Man-made vitreous fibres)
Spironolactone . . . . . .24, 259 (1980); Suppl. 7, 344 (1987); 79, 317 (2001)
Stannous fluoride (see Fluorides)
Static electric fields 80 (2002)
Static magnetic fields 80 (2002)
Steel founding (see Iron and steel founding)
Steel, stainless (see Implants, surgical)
Sterigmatocystin . . . . . 1, 175 (1972); 10, 245 (1976); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Steroidal estrogens . . . . . .Suppl. 7, 280 (1987)
Streptozotocin . . . . . 4, 221 (1974); 17, 337 (1978); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Strobane® (see Terpene polychlorinates)
Strong-inorganic-acid mists containing sulfuric acid (see Mists and vapours from sulfuric acid and other strong inorganic acids)
Strontium chromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)

Styrene 19, 231 (1979) (corr. 42, 258); Suppl. 7, 345 (1987); 60, 233 (1994) (corr. 65, 549); 82, 437 (2002)
Styrene-acrylonitrile copolymers . . . . . 19, 97 (1979); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Styrene-butadiene copolymers . . . . . 19, 252 (1979); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Styrene-7,8-oxide . . . . 11, 201 (1976); 19, 275 (1979); 36, 245 (1985); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987); 60, 321 (1994)
Succinic anhydride . . . . . 15, 265 (1977); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Sudan I . . . . . 8, 225 (1975); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Sudan II . . . . . 8, 233 (1975); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Sudan III . . . . . 8, 241 (1975); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Sudan Brown RR. . . . . 8, 249 (1975); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Sudan Red 7B . . . . . 8, 253 (1975); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Sulfadimidine (see Sulfamethazine)
Sulfafurazole . . . . . 24, 275 (1980); Suppl. 7, 347 (1987)
Sulfallate . . . . . 30, 283 (1983); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Sulfamethazine and its sodium salt 79, 341 (2001)
Sulfamethoxazole . . . . . 24, 285 (1980); Suppl. 7, 348 (1987); 79, 361 (2001)
Sulfites (see Sulfur dioxide and some sulfites, bisulfites and metabisulfites)
Sulfur dioxide and some sulfites, bisulfites and metabisulfites. 54, 131 (1992)
Sulfur mustard (see Mustard gas)
Sulfuric acid and other strong inorganic acids,
occupational exposures to mists and vapours from 54, 41 (1992)
Sulfur trioxide 54, 121 (1992)
Sulphisoxazole (see Sulfafurazole)
Sunset Yellow FCF . . . . . 8, 257 (1975); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Symphytine . . . . . 31, 239 (1983); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)

T

2,4,5-T (see also Chlorophenoxy herbicides;
Chlorophenoxy herbicides, occupational exposures to) 15, 273 (1977)
Talc . . . . . 42, 185 (1987); Suppl. 7, 349 (1987)
Talc, inhaled, not containing asbestos or asbestiform fibres 93 (2010)
Talc-based body powder, perineal use of 93 (2010)
Tamoxifen. 66, 253 (1996); 100A, 131 (2012)
Tannic acid . . . . . 10, 253 (1976) (corr. 42, 255); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Tannins (see also Tannic acid) . . . . . 10, 254 (1976); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
TCDD (see 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin)
TDE (see DDT)
Tea 51, 207 (1991)
Temazepam 66, 161 (1996)
Teniposide 76, 259 (2000)
Terpene polychlorinates . . . . . 5, 219 (1974); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Testosterone (see also Androgenic (anabolic) steroids). 6, 209 (1974); 21, 519 (1979)
Testosterone oenanthate (see Testosterone)
Testosterone propionate (see Testosterone)
2,2′,5,5′-Tetrachlorobenzidine . . . . . 27, 141 (1982); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)

2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-*para*-dioxin .... 15, 41 (1977); Suppl. 7, 350 (1987); 69, 33 (1997); 100F, 339 (2012)
1,1,1,2-Tetrachloroethane..... 41, 87 (1986); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987); 71, 1133 (1999)
1,1,2,2-Tetrachloroethane..... 20, 477 (1979); Suppl. 7, 354 (1987); 71, 817 (1999)
Tetrachloroethylene..... 20, 491 (1979); Suppl. 7, 355 (1987); 63, 159 (1995) (corr. 65, 549)
2,3,4,6-Tetrachlorophenol (see Chlorophenols; Chlorophenols, occupational exposures to; Polychlorophenols and their sodium salts)
Tetrachlorvinphos..... 30, 197 (1983); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Tetraethyllead (see Lead and lead compounds)
Tetrafluoroethylene ..... 19, 285 (1979); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987); 71, 1143 (1999)
Tetrakis(hydroxymethyl)phosphonium salts..... 48, 95 (1990); 71, 1529 (1999)
Tetramethyllead (see Lead and lead compounds)
Tetranitromethane 65, 437 (1996)
Textile manufacturing industry, exposures in ..... 48, 215 (1990) (corr. 51, 483)
Theobromine 51, 421 (1991)
Theophylline..... 51, 391 (1991)
Thioacetamide ..... 7, 77 (1974); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
4,4′-Thiodianiline..... 16, 343 (1978); 27, 147 (1982); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987)
Thiotepa..... 9, 85 (1975); Suppl. 7, 368 (1987); 50, 123 (1990); 100A, 163 (2012)
Thiouracil ..... 7, 85 (1974); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987); 79, 127 (2001)
Thiourea ..... 7, 95 (1974); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987); 79, 703 (2001)
Thiram..... 12, 225 (1976); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987); 53, 403 (1991)
Thorium-232 (as Thorotrast) 100D, 241 (2012)
Titanium (see Implants, surgical)
Titanium dioxide 47, 307 (1989); 93 (2010)
Tobacco
—Second-hand tobacco smoke..... 83, 1189 (2004); 100E, 213 (2012)
—Smokeless tobacco .. 37 (1985) (corr. 42, 263; 52, 513); Suppl. 7, 357 (1987); 89, 39 (2007); 100E, 265 (2012)
—Tobacco smoking ..... 38 (1986) (corr. 42, 263); Suppl. 7, 359 (1987); 83, 51 (2004); 100E, 43 (2012)
ortho-Tolidine (see 3,3′-Dimethylbenzidine)
2,4-Toluene diisocyanate (see also Toluene diisocyanates) 19, 303 (1979); 39, 287 (1986)
2,6-Toluene diisocyanate (see also Toluene diisocyanates) 19, 303 (1979); 39, 289 (1986)
Toluene..... 47, 79 (1989); 71, 829 (1999)
Toluene diisocyanates..... 39, 287 (1986) (corr. 42, 264); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987); 71, 865 (1999)
Toluenes, α-chlorinated (see α-Chlorinated toluenes and benzoyl chloride)
ortho-Toluenesulfonamide (see Saccharin)
ortho-Toluidine..... 16, 349 (1978); 27, 155 (1982) (corr. 68, 477); Suppl. 7, 362 (1987); 77, 267 (2000)
Toremifene..... 66, 367 (1996)
Toxaphene..... 20, 327 (1979); Suppl. 7, 72 (1987); 79, 569 (2001)
T-2 Toxin (see Toxins derived from Fusarium sporotrichioides)
Toxins derived from *Fusarium graminearum*, *F. culmorum* and *F. crookwellense* ...11, 169 (1976); 31, 153, 279 (1983); Suppl. 7, 64, 74 (1987); 56, 397 (1993)
Toxins derived from *Fusarium moniliforme*..... 56, 445 (1993)
Toxins derived from *Fusarium sporotrichioides* ..... 31, 265 (1983); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 56, 467 (1993)

Traditional herbal medicines 82, 41 (2002); 100A, 347 (2012)
Tremolite (see Asbestos)
Treosulfan . . . . . 26, 341 (1981); Suppl. 7, 363 (1987); 100A, 171 (2012)
Triaziquone (see Tris(aziridinyl)-*para*-benzoquinone)
Trichlorfon . . . . . 30, 207 (1983); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
Trichlormethine . . . . . 9, 229 (1975); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 50, 143 (1990)
Trichloroacetic acid . . . . . 63, 291 (1995) (corr. 65, 549); 84 (2004)
Trichloroacetonitrile (see also Halogenated acetonitriles) 71, 1533 (1999)
1,1,1-Trichloroethane . . . . . 20, 515 (1979); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 71, 881 (1999)
1,1,2-Trichloroethane . . . . . 20, 533 (1979); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 52, 337 (1991); 71, 1153 (1999)
Trichloroethylene . . . . . 11, 263 (1976); 20, 545 (1979); Suppl. 7, 364 (1987); 63, 75 (1995) (corr. 65, 549)
2,4,5-Trichlorophenol (see also Chlorophenols; Chlorophenols, occupational exposures to; Polychlorophenols and their sodium salts) 20, 349 (1979)
2,4,6-Trichlorophenol (see also Chlorophenols; Chlorophenols, occupational exposures to; Polychlorophenols and their sodium salts) 20, 349 (1979)
(2,4,5-Trichlorophenoxy)acetic acid (see 2,4,5-T)
1,2,3-Trichloropropane 63, 223 (1995)
Trichlorotriethylamine-hydrochloride (see Trichlormethine)
T2-Trichothecene (see Toxins derived from Fusarium sporotrichioides)
Tridymite (see Crystalline silica)
Triethanolamine 77, 381 (2000)
Triethylene glycol diglycidyl ether . . . . . 11, 209 (1976); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 71, 1539 (1999)
Trifluralin 53, 515 (1991)
4,4′,6-Trimethylangelicin plus ultraviolet radiation (see also Angelicin and some synthetic derivatives) . . . . . Suppl. 7, 57 (1987)
2,4,5-Trimethylaniline . . . . . 27, 177 (1982); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
2,4,6-Trimethylaniline . . . . . 27, 178 (1982); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
4,5′,8-Trimethylpsoralen . . . . . 40, 357 (1986); Suppl. 7, 366 (1987)
Trimustine hydrochloride (see Trichlormethine)
2,4,6-Trinitrotoluene 65, 449 (1996)
Triphenylene . . . . . 32, 447 (1983); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 92, 35 (2010)
Tris(aziridinyl)-*para*-benzoquinone . . . . . 9, 67 (1975); Suppl. 7, 367 (1987)
Tris(1-aziridinyl)phosphine-oxide . . . . . 9, 75 (1975); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
Tris(1-aziridinyl)phosphine-sulphide (see Thiotepa)
2,4,6-Tris(1-aziridinyl)-s-triazine . . . . . 9, 95 (1975); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
Tris(2-chloroethyl) phosphate 48, 109 (1990); 71, 1543 (1999)
1,2,3-Tris(chloromethoxy)propane . . . . . 15, 301 (1977); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 71, 1549 (1999)
Tris(2,3-dibromopropyl) phosphate . . . . . 20, 575 (1979); Suppl. 7, 369 (1987); 71, 905 (1999)
Tris(2-methyl-1-aziridinyl)phosphine-oxide . . . . . 9, 107 (1975); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
Trp-P-1 . . . . . 31, 247 (1983); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
Trp-P-2 . . . . . 31, 255 (1983); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
Trypan blue . . . . . 8, 267 (1975); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
Tussilago farfara L. (see also Pyrrolizidine alkaloids) 10, 334 (1976)

U

Ultraviolet radiation 40, 379 (1986); 55 (1992); 100D, 35 (2012)
Underground haematite mining with exposure to radon (see Haematite mining, underground)
Uracil mustard ..... 9, 235 (1975); Suppl. 7, 370 (1987)
Uranium, depleted (see Implants, surgical)
Urethane (see Ethyl carbamate)
UV-emitting tanning devices, use of 100D, 35 (2012)

V

Vanadium pentoxide 86, 227 (2006)
Vat Yellow 4 ..... 48, 161 (1990)
Vinblastine sulfate ..... 26, 349 (1981) (corr. 42, 261); Suppl. 7, 371 (1987)
Vincristine sulfate ..... 26, 365 (1981); Suppl. 7, 372 (1987)

Vinyl acetate ..... 19, 341 (1979); 39, 113 (1986); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 63, 443 (1995)
Vinyl bromide ..... 19, 367 (1979); 39, 133 (1986); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 71, 923 (1999); 97, 445 (2008)
Vinyl chloride ..... 7, 291 (1974); 19, 377 (1979) (corr. 42, 258); Suppl. 7, 373 (1987); 97, 311 (2008); 100F, 451 (2012)
Vinyl chloride-vinyl acetate copolymers ..... 7, 311 (1976); 19, 412 (1979) (corr. 42, 258); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
4-Vinylcyclohexene ..... 11, 277 (1976); 39, 181 (1986) Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 60, 347 (1994)
4-Vinylcyclohexene diepoxide ..... 11, 141 (1976); Suppl. 7, 63 (1987); 60, 361 (1994)
Vinyl fluoride ..... 39, 147 (1986); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 63, 467 (1995); 97, 459 (2008)
Vinylidene chloride ..... 19, 439 (1979); 39, 195 (1986); Suppl. 7, 376 (1987); 71, 1163 (1999)
Vinylidene chloride-vinyl chloride copolymers ..... 19, 448 (1979) (corr. 42, 258); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987)
Vinylidene fluoride ..... 39, 227 (1986); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 71, 1551 (1999)
N-Vinyl-2-pyrrolidone ..... 19, 461 (1979); Suppl. 7, 73 (1987); 71, 1181 (1999)
Vinyl toluene 60, 373 (1994)
Vitamin K substances 76, 417 (2000)

W

Welding ..... 49, 447 (1990) (corr. 52, 513)
Wollastonite ..... 42, 145 (1987); Suppl. 7, 377 (1987); 68, 283 (1997)
Wood dust 62, 35 (1995); 100C, 407 (2012)

Wood industries . . . . . 25 (1981); Suppl. 7, 378 (1987)

X

X-radiation 75, 121 (2000); 100D, 103 (2012)
Xylenes 47, 125 (1989); 71, 1189 (1999)
2,4-Xylidine . . . . . 16, 367 (1978); Suppl. 7, 74 (1987)
2,5-Xylidine . . . . . 16, 377 (1978); Suppl. 7, 74 (1987)
2,6-Xylidine (see 2,6-Dimethylaniline)

Y

Yellow AB . . . . . 8, 279 (1975); Suppl. 7, 74 (1987)
Yellow OB . . . . . 8, 287 (1975); Suppl. 7, 74 (1987)

Z

Zalcitabine 76, 129 (2000)
Zearalenone (see Toxins derived from *Fusarium graminearum*, *F. culmorum* and *F. crookwellense*)
Zectran . . . . . 12, 237 (1976); Suppl. 7, 74 (1987)
Zeolites other than erionite 68, 307 (1997)
Zidovudine 76, 73 (2000)
Zinc beryllium silicate (see Beryllium and beryllium compounds)
Zinc chromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Zinc chromate hydroxide (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Zinc potassium chromate (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Zinc yellow (see Chromium and chromium compounds)
Zineb . . . . . 12, 245 (1976); Suppl. 7, 74 (1987)
Ziram . . . . . 12, 259 (1976); Suppl. 7, 74 (1987); 53, 423 (1991)

LIST OF *IARC MONOGRAPHS*

Volume 1

Some Inorganic Substances, Chlorinated Hydrocarbons, Aromatic Amines, N-Nitroso Compounds, and Natural Products

1972; 184 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 2

Some Inorganic and Organometallic Compounds

1973; 181 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 3

Certain Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons and Heterocyclic Compounds

1973; 271 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 4

Some Aromatic Amines, Hydrazine and Related Substances, N-Nitroso Compounds and Miscellaneous Alkylating Agents

1974; 286 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 5

Some Organochlorine Pesticides

1974; 241 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 6

Sex Hormones

1974; 243 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 7

Some Anti-Thyroid and Related Substances, Nitrofurans and Industrial Chemicals

1974; 326 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 8

Some Aromatic Azo Compounds

1975; 357 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 9

Some Aziridines, N-, S- and O-Mustards and Selenium

1975; 268 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 10

Some Naturally Occurring Substances

1976; 353 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 11

Cadmium, Nickel, Some Epoxides, Miscellaneous Industrial Chemicals and General Considerations on Volatile Anaesthetics

1976; 306 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 12

Some Carbamates, Thio- carbamates and Carbazides

1976; 282 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 13

Some Miscellaneous Pharmaceutical Substances

1977; 255 pages

Volume 14

Asbestos

1977; 106 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 15

Some Fumigants, the Herbicides 2,4-D and 2,4,5-T, Chlorinated Dibenzodioxins and Miscellaneous Industrial Chemicals

1977; 354 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 16

Some Aromatic Amines and Related Nitro Compounds—Hair Dyes, Colouring Agents and Miscellaneous Industrial Chemicals

1978; 400 pages

Volume 17

Some N-Nitroso Compounds

1978; 365 pages

Volume 18

Polychlorinated Biphenyls and Polybrominated Biphenyls

1978; 140 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 19

Some Monomers, Plastics and Synthetic Elastomers, and Acrolein

1979; 513 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 20

Some Halogenated Hydrocarbons

1979; 609 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 21

Sex Hormones (II)

1979; 583 pages

Volume 22

Some Non-Nutritive Sweetening Agents

1980; 208 pages

Volume 23

Some Metals and Metallic Compounds

1980; 438 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 24

Some Pharmaceutical Drugs

1980; 337 pages

Volume 25

Wood, Leather and Some Associated Industries

1981; 412 pages

Volume 26

Some Antineoplastic and Immunosuppressive Agents

1981; 411 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 27

Some Aromatic Amines, Anthraquinones and Nitroso Compounds, and Inorganic Fluorides Used in Drinking-water and Dental Preparations

1982; 341 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 28

The Rubber Industry

1982; 486 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 29

Some Industrial Chemicals and Dyestuffs

1982; 416 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 30

Miscellaneous Pesticides

1983; 424 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 31

Some Food Additives, Feed Additives and Naturally Occurring Substances

1983; 314 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 32

Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds, Part 1: Chemical, Environmental and Experimental Data

1983; 477 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 33

Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds, Part 2: Carbon Blacks, Mineral Oils and Some Nitroarenes

1984; 245 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 34

Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds, Part 3: Industrial Exposures in Aluminium Production, Coal Gasification, Coke Production, and Iron and Steel Founding

1984; 219 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 35

Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds, Part 4: Bitumens, Coal-tars and Derived Products, Shale-oils and Soots

1985; 271 pages

Volume 36

Allyl Compounds, Aldehydes, Epoxides and Peroxides

1985; 369 pages

Volume 37

Tobacco Habits Other than Smoking; Betel-Quid and Areca-Nut Chewing; and Some Related Nitrosamines

1985; 291 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 38

Tobacco Smoking

1986; 421 pages

Volume 39

Some Chemicals Used in Plastics and Elastomers

1986; 403 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 40

Some Naturally Occurring and Synthetic Food Components, Furocoumarins and Ultraviolet Radiation

1986; 444 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 41

Some Halogenated Hydrocarbons and Pesticide Exposures

1986; 434 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 42

Silica and Some Silicates

1987; 289 pages

Volume 43

Man-Made Mineral Fibres and Radon

1988; 300 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 44

Alcohol Drinking

1988; 416 pages

Volume 45

Occupational Exposures in Petroleum Refining; Crude Oil and Major Petroleum Fuels

1989; 322 pages

Volume 46

Diesel and Gasoline Engine Exhausts and Some Nitroarenes

1989; 458 pages

Volume 47

Some Organic Solvents, Resin Monomers and Related Compounds, Pigments and Occupational Exposures in Paint Manufacture and Painting

1989; 535 pages (out-of-print)

Volume 48

Some Flame Retardants and Textile Chemicals, and Exposures in the Textile Manufacturing Industry

1990; 345 pages

Volume 49

Chromium, Nickel and Welding

1990; 677 pages

Volume 50

Pharmaceutical Drugs

1990; 415 pages

Volume 51

Coffee, Tea, Mate, Methylxanthines and Methylglyoxal

1991; 513 pages

Volume 52

Chlorinated Drinking-water; Chlorination By-products; Some Other Halogenated Compounds; Cobalt and Cobalt Compounds

1991; 544 pages

Volume 53

Occupational Exposures in Insecticide Application, and Some Pesticides

1991; 612 pages

Volume 54

Occupational Exposures to Mists and Vapours from Strong Inorganic Acids; and Other Industrial Chemicals

1992; 336 pages

Volume 55

Solar and Ultraviolet Radiation

1992; 316 pages

Volume 56

Some Naturally Occurring Substances: Food Items and Constituents, Heterocyclic Aromatic Amines and Mycotoxins

1993; 599 pages

Volume 57

Occupational Exposures of Hairdressers and Barbers and Personal Use of Hair Colourants; Some Hair Dyes, Cosmetic Colourants, Industrial Dyestuffs and Aromatic Amines

1993; 428 pages

Volume 58

Beryllium, Cadmium, Mercury, and Exposures in the Glass Manufacturing Industry

1993; 444 pages

Volume 59

Hepatitis Viruses

1994; 286 pages

Volume 60

Some Industrial Chemicals

1994; 560 pages

Volume 61

Schistosomes, Liver Flukes and Helicobacter pylori

1994; 270 pages

Volume 62
Wood Dust and Formaldehyde
1995; 405 pages

Volume 63
Dry Cleaning, Some Chlorinated Solvents and Other Industrial Chemicals
1995; 551 pages

Volume 64
Human Papillomaviruses
1995; 409 pages

Volume 65
Printing Processes and Printing Inks, Carbon Black and Some Nitro Compounds
1996; 578 pages

Volume 66
Some Pharmaceutical Drugs
1996; 514 pages

Volume 67
Human Immunodeficiency Viruses and Human T-Cell Lymphotropic Viruses
1996; 424 pages

Volume 68
Silica, Some Silicates, Coal Dust and para-Aramid Fibrils
1997; 506 pages

Volume 69
Polychlorinated Dibenzo-para-Dioxins and Polychlorinated Dibenzofurans
1997; 666 pages

Volume 70
Epstein-Barr Virus and Kaposi's Sarcoma Herpesvirus/Human Herpesvirus 8
1997; 524 pages

Volume 71
Re-evaluation of Some Organic Chemicals, Hydrazine and Hydrogen Peroxide
1999; 1586 pages

Volume 72
Hormonal Contraception and Post-menopausal Hormonal Therapy
1999; 660 pages

Volume 73
Some Chemicals that Cause Tumours of the Kidney or Urinary Bladder in Rodents and Some Other Substances
1999; 674 pages

Volume 74
Surgical Implants and Other Foreign Bodies
1999; 409 pages

Volume 75

Ionizing Radiation, Part 1, X-Radiation and γ-Radiation, and Neutrons

2000; 492 pages

Volume 76

Some Antiviral and Antineoplastic Drugs, and Other Pharmaceutical Agents

2000; 522 pages

Volume 77

Some Industrial Chemicals

2000; 563 pages

Volume 78

Ionizing Radiation, Part 2, Some Internally Deposited Radionuclides

2001; 595 pages

Volume 79

Some Thyrotropic Agents

2001; 763 pages

Volume 80

Non-Ionizing Radiation, Part 1: Static and Extremely Low-Frequency (ELF) Electric and Magnetic Fields

2002; 429 pages

Volume 81

Man-made Vitreous Fibres

2002; 418 pages

Volume 82

Some Traditional Herbal Medicines, Some Mycotoxins, Naphthalene and Styrene

2002; 590 pages

Volume 83

Tobacco Smoke and Involuntary Smoking

2004; 1452 pages

Volume 84

Some Drinking-Water Disinfectants and Contaminants, including Arsenic

2004; 512 pages

Volume 85

Betel-quid and Areca-nut Chewing and Some Areca-nut-derived Nitrosamines

2004; 334 pages

Volume 86

Cobalt in Hard Metals and Cobalt Sulfate, Gallium Arsenide, Indium Phosphide and Vanadium Pentoxide

2006; 330 pages

Volume 87

Inorganic and Organic Lead Compounds

2006; 506 pages

Volume 88

Formaldehyde, 2-Butoxyethanol and 1-tert-Butoxypropan-2-ol

2006; 478 pages

Volume 89

Smokeless Tobacco and Some Tobacco-specific N- Nitrosamines

2007; 626 pages

Volume 90

Human Papillomaviruses

2007; 670 pages

Volume 91

Combined Estrogen- Progestogen Contraceptives and Combined Estrogen-Progestogen Menopausal Therapy

2007; 528 pages

Volume 92

Some Non-heterocyclic Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons and Some Related Exposures

2010; 853 pages

Volume 93

Carbon Black, Titanium Dioxide, and Talc

2010; 452 pages

Volume 94

Ingested Nitrate and Nitrite, and Cyanobacterial Peptide Toxins

2010; 450 pages

Volume 95

Household Use of Solid Fuels and High-temperature Frying

2010; 430 pages

Volume 96

Alcohol Consumption

2010; 1431 pages

Volume 97

1,3-Butadiene, Ethylene Oxide and Vinyl Halides (Vinyl Fluoride, Vinyl Chloride and Vinyl Bromide)

2008; 510 pages

Volume 98

Painting, Firefighting, and Shiftwork

2010; 806 pages

Volume 99

Some Aromatic Amines, Organic Dyes, and Related Exposures

2010; 692 pages

Volume 100A

Pharmaceuticals

2012; 435 pages

Volume 100B

Biological Agents

2012; 475 pages

Volume 100C

Arsenic, metals, fibres, and dusts

2012; 501 pages

Volume 100D

Radiation

2012; 341 pages

Volume 100E

Personal habits and indoor combustions

2012; 575 pages

Volume 100F

Chemical agents and related occupations

2012; 599 pages

Supplement No. 1

Chemicals and Industrial Processes Associated with Cancer in Humans (IARC Monographs, Volumes 1 to 20)

1979; 71 pages (out-of-print)

Supplement No. 2

Long-term and Short-term Screening Assays for Carcinogens: A Critical Appraisal

1980; 426 pages (out-of-print)
(updated as IARC Scientific Publications No. 83, 1986)

Supplement No. 3

Cross Index of Synonyms and Trade Names in Volumes 1 to 26 of the IARC Monographs

1982; 199 pages (out-of-print)

Supplement No. 4

Chemicals, Industrial Processes and Industries Associated with Cancer in Humans (IARC Monographs, Volumes 1 to 29)

1982; 292 pages (out-of-print)

Supplement No. 5

Cross Index of Synonyms and Trade Names in Volumes 1 to 36 of the IARC Monographs

1985; 259 pages (out-of-print)

Supplement No. 6

Genetic and Related Effects: An Updating of Selected IARC Monographs from Volumes 1 to 42

1987; 729 pages (out-of-print)

Supplement No. 7

Overall Evaluations of Carcinogenicity: An Updating of IARC Monographs Volumes 1–42

1987; 440 pages (out-of-print)

Supplement No. 8

Cross Index of Synonyms and Trade Names in Volumes 1 to 46 of the IARC Monographs

1990; 346 pages (out-of-print)